

PREVOST

COACH MANUFACTURER

MAINTENANCE MANUAL

H3-41, H3-45, VIP



PA1217

SECTION 00: GENERAL INFORMATION

CONTENTS

1. FOREWORD.....	00-2
2. SCHEMATICS	00-2
3. PRECAUTIONS TO BE OBSERVED BEFORE WELDING	00-2
4. SAFETY NOTICE	00-4
4.1 DATA PLATES AND CERTIFICATIONS.....	00-4
4.1.1 Engine.....	00-4
4.1.2 Transmission.....	00-4
4.1.3 Drive Axle.....	00-5
4.1.4 Front Axle.....	00-5
4.1.5 Power Steering Pump.....	00-5
4.1.6 Coach Final Record.....	00-5
4.1.7 Safety Certification	00-5
4.1.8 DOT Certification Label	00-5
4.1.9 EPA Engine Label	00-6
4.1.10 Fuel Tank Label.....	00-6
4.1.11 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	00-6
5. FASTENER STRENGTH IDENTIFICATION.....	00-8
5.1 SELF-LOCKING FASTENERS	00-9
5.2 RECOMMENDATIONS FOR REUSE	00-9
5.3 SIX LOBED SOCKET HEAD	00-9

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: DETROIT DIESEL SERIES 60.....	00-4
FIGURE 2: WORLD TRANSMISSION	00-4
FIGURE 3: ZF-ASTRONIC TRANSMISSION.....	00-4
FIGURE 4: TYPICAL SERIAL & MODEL NUMBERS	00-5
FIGURE 5: TYPICAL SERIAL AND MODEL NUMBERS	00-5
FIGURE 6: ISS TYPICAL SERIAL & MODEL NUMBERS	00-5
FIGURE 7 : POWER STEERING PUMP SERIAL NUMBER	00-5
FIGURE 8: DOT CERTIFICATION PLATE.....	00-5
FIGURE 9: ENGINE COMPARTMENT	00-6
FIGURE 10: VEHICLE I.D.	00-6
FIGURE 11: VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER	00-7
FIGURE 12 : THREAD NOTATION.....	00-8
FIGURE 13: BOLT STRENGTH MARKINGS	00-8
FIGURE 14 : SELF-LOCKING FASTENERS.....	00-9
FIGURE 15: METRIC - US STANDARD CONVERSION TABLE	00-10
FIGURE 16: CONVERSION CHART.....	00-11

1. FOREWORD

This manual includes procedures for diagnosis, service, maintenance and repair for components of the H3 series coaches or VIP model listed on the front cover page.

This manual should be kept in a handy place for ready reference by the technician. If properly used, it will meet the needs of the technician and owner.

Information provided in Section 1 through 24 pertains to standard equipment items, systems and components as well as the most commonly used optional equipment and special equipment offered on the coach models covered by this manual.

At the beginning of each section; a Table of Contents and a list of illustrations give the page number on which each subject begins and where each figure is located.

Coach operating information is provided in a separate Operator's Manual. Audio/Video system operator instructions are also included in a separate manual.

More specific information on engine and transmission operating, maintenance, and overhaul information is contained in the applicable engine or transmission service manual published by the engine or transmission manufacturer. Engine and transmission parts information is contained in the applicable engine or transmission parts catalog published by the engine or transmission manufacturer.

All information, illustrations and specifications contained in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication approval. The right is reserved to make product changes at any time without notice.

Note: *Typical illustrations may be used; therefore minor illustration difference may exist when compared to actual parts or other publications.*

Prévost Car occasionally sends Maintenance Information, Warranty Bulletins, Safety Recalls or other literature to update users with the latest service procedures. They are issued, when required, to supplement or supersede information in this manual. Update sheet should be filled out and bulletins should be filed at the end of their respective section for future reference.

2. SCHEMATICS

Vehicle AIR SCHEMATICS are provided at the end of Section 12, "Brake". SUSPENSION AIR SCHEMATICS are provided at the end of Section 16, "Suspension". Moreover, ELECTRICAL SCHEMATICS are provided in the technical publications box. Refer to those schematics for detailed circuit information or during diagnosis.

3. PRECAUTIONS TO BE OBSERVED BEFORE WELDING

Caution: *Cut off battery power in main power compartment using battery safety switch.*

1. Disconnect "Ground" cables from battery terminals.

Note: *Disconnect "Ground" cables only.*

2. If welding must be done near the dashboard i.e. steering column, you must disconnect all electronic control modules (radio & control head, HVAC, TTLT cluster Volvo). You must also disconnect alternator module located in rear electrical compartment.
 3. Disconnect three wiring harness connectors from ECM (Electronic Control Module). The ECM is mounted on the starter side of the engine.
 4. For vehicles equipped with an Allison automatic transmission, disconnect three wiring harness connectors from ECU (Electronic Control Unit). The ECU is located in main power compartment.
 5. For vehicles equipped with a WCL system, disconnect electronic controller connector.
 6. For vehicles equipped with ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System), disconnect wiring harness connectors from ABS Electronic Control Unit. The ABS Electronic Control Unit is located in the 1st baggage compartment.
 7. Cover electronic control components and wiring to protect from hot sparks, etc.
 8. Do not connect welding cables to electronic control components.
 9. Do the appropriate welding on vehicle.
- Caution:** *Position welding machine ground clamp as close as possible to the work.*
10. When welding is complete, reconnect ECM, ECU, ABS electronic control units, etc.
 11. Terminate by reconnecting "Ground" cables to battery terminals.

STEEL – STEEL WELDING

Caution: Before welding, disconnect electronic modules and battery terminals.

Warning: Welding surfaces must be free of scale, slag, rust, paint, grease, humidity or other foreign material that would render welding impossible.

Warning: Only a qualified and experienced person must do welding.

- FCAW (Flux Cored Arc Welding) process ;
- Electrode wire conforms to A5.20 AWS (American Welding Society) specifications ;
- E4801T-9-CH, type electrode wire with 0,045" diameter (1,14 mm) ;

Material Thickness	Voltage	Current	Wire Feed Rate	Shielding Gas
1/8" to 1/2"	26 ± 2 volts	260 Amps	450 ipm. approx.	75% argon – 25% CO2 or 100% CO2

If necessary and with great care to prevent perforating the material, it is possible to use a conventional electric arc welding machine according to the following specifications:

- SMAW (Shielded Metal-Arc Welding) process ;
- Welding rod conforms to A5.1 of AWS (American Welding Society) specifications; E 7018 type welding rod with 1/8" diameter (3,2 mm).
- Current: 100 amperes to 150 amperes; optimum at 120 amps.

It is important to grind weld bead starts and stops and also to grind arc strikes from surfaces.

STEEL - STAINLESS STEEL OR STAINLESS STEEL - STAINLESS STEEL WELDING

Caution: Before welding, disconnect electronic modules and battery terminals.

Warning: Welding surfaces must be free of scale, slag, rust, paint, grease, humidity or other foreign material that would render welding impossible.

Warning: Only a qualified and experienced person must do welding.

- GMAW (Gas Metal-Arc Welding) process;
- Welding wire conforms to AWS (American Welding Standards) A5.9 specifications;
- 308LSi type welding wire with 0.035" diameter (0,9 mm);

STEEL - STAINLESS STEEL WELDING

Steel Thickness	SS Thickness	Voltage	Current	Wire Feed Rate	Shielding Gas
Less than 1/8"	Any type	20±1.5 volts	130±15 Amps	290 ipm approx.	90% He, 7.5% Ar, 2.5% CO2
1/8" and more	Any type	22±1.5 volts	160±15 Amps	330 ipm approx.	90% He, 7.5% Ar, 2.5% CO2

STAINLESS STEEL - STAINLESS STEEL WELDING

SS Thickness	Voltage	Current	Wire Feed Rate	Shielding Gas
Any type	20 ± 1.5 volts	130 ± 15 Amps	290 ipm approx.	90% He – 7.5% Ar, 2.5% CO2

If necessary and with great care to prevent perforating the material, it is possible to use a conventional electric arc welding machine according to the following specifications:

- SMAW (Shield Metal-Arc Welding) process;
- Welding rod conforms to AWS (American Welding Standards) A5.4 specifications; 308L-17 type welding rod with 3/32" diameter (2,4 mm);
- Current: - 50 amperes to 90 amperes, optimum at 60 amperes.

It is important to grind weld bead starts and stops and also to grind arc strikes from surfaces.

4. SAFETY NOTICE

This maintenance manual has been prepared in order to assist skilled mechanics in the efficient repair and maintenance of PRÉVOST vehicles.

This manual covers only the procedures as of manufacturing date.

Safety features may be impaired if other than genuine PRÉVOST parts are installed.

Torque wrench tightening specifications must be strictly observed. Locking devices must be installed or replaced by new ones, where specified. If the efficiency of a locking device is impaired, it must be replaced.

This manual emphasizes particular information outlined by the wording and symbols:

Warning: Identifies an instruction which, if not followed, could cause personal injuries.

Caution: Outlined an instruction which, if not followed, could severely damage vehicle components.

Note: Indicates supplementary information needed to fully complete an instruction. Although, the mere reading of such information does not eliminate the hazard, understanding of the information will promote its correct use.

4.1 DATA PLATES AND CERTIFICATIONS

Delay and confusion can be avoided by placing the complete vehicle identification number of the coach and the serial numbers of the engine on parts orders and correspondence. Also, the transmission, axles, power steering pump chassis and other major components are identified by serial numbers.

4.1.1 Engine

The engine serial and model number are stamped on the cylinder block (as viewed from the flywheel end) on the left side just below the fire deck and above the cast-in Detroit Diesel logo (Fig. 1).

In addition, option plates made of laminated paper are located on the rocker cover (starter side). The engine serial and model number and a list of the optional engine equipment is written on the option plate. Refer to this information when ordering replacement parts (Fig. 1).

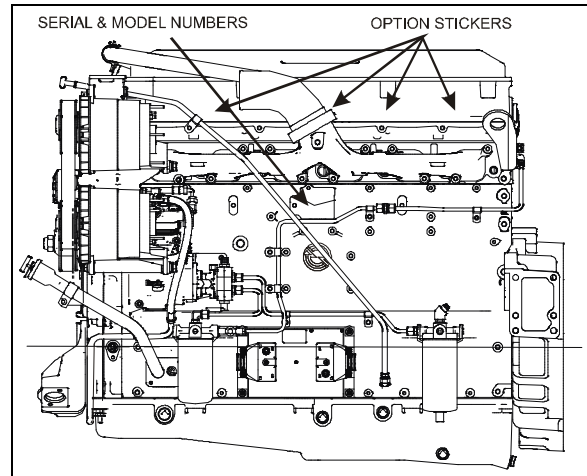


FIGURE 1 : DETROIT DIESEL SERIES 60

00043

4.1.2 Transmission

The transmission identification plate is located on the right-rear side or output side of the transmission. The identification plate shows the transmission serial number, part number (assembly number), and model number. Use all three numbers when ordering parts.

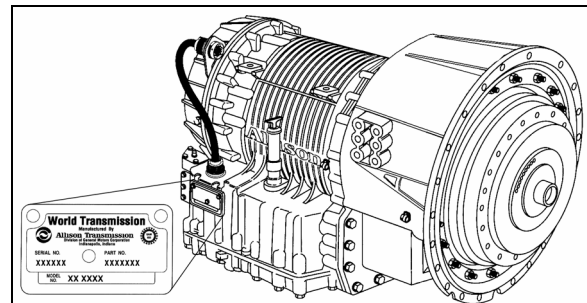


FIGURE 2 : WORLD TRANSMISSION

07076

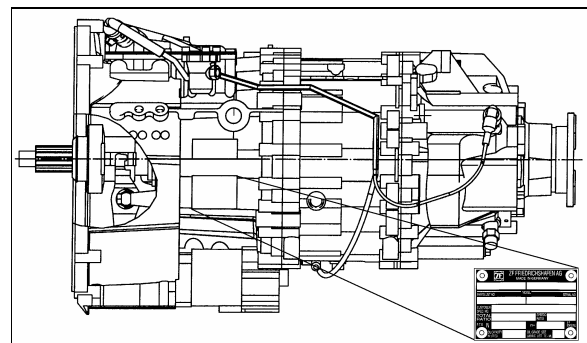


FIGURE 3 : ZF-ASTRONIC TRANSMISSION

00040

4.1.3 Drive Axle

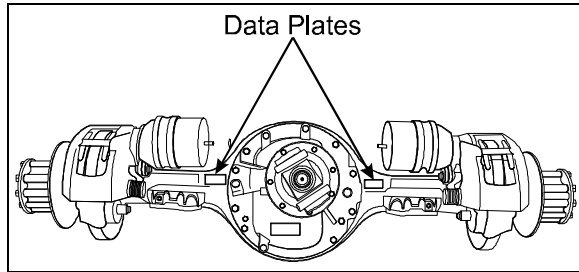


FIGURE 4: TYPICAL SERIAL & MODEL NUMBERS 11019

4.1.4 Front Axle

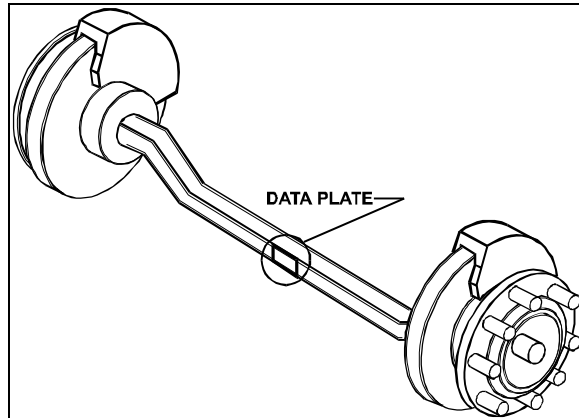


FIGURE 5 : TYPICAL SERIAL AND MODEL NUMBERS 10024

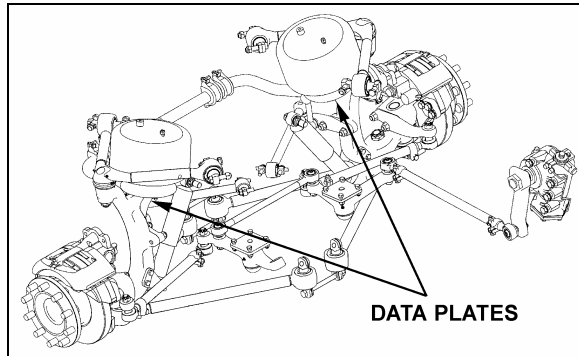


FIGURE 6: ISS TYPICAL SERIAL & MODEL NUMBERS 00025C

4.1.5 Power Steering Pump

Power steering pump serial number is engraved on the pump casing (Fig. 7). The pump is mounted on the engine beside the crankshaft pulley.

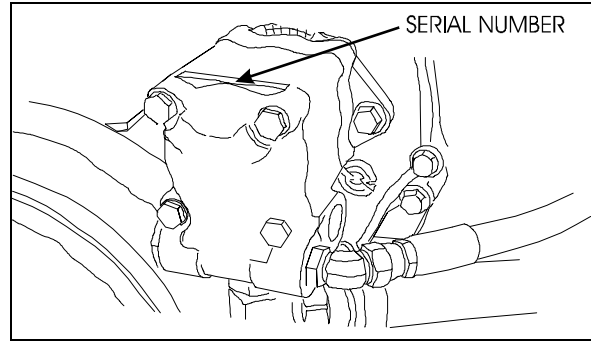


FIGURE 7 : POWER STEERING PUMP SERIAL NUMBER 00035

4.1.6 Coach Final Record

The Coach Final Record is a record of all data pertaining to the assembly of the coach. This record is included in the technical publication package supplied with the coach. Retain this record in the company records office for reference and safe-keeping.

4.1.7 Safety Certification

Coach components meet specifications and standards as follows:

- Material and parts conform to ASTM and/or SAE standards in effect at the time of manufacture.
- All factory-installed interior materials meet FMVSS 302 for fire resistance.
- Certified according to Provincial, State and Federal Safety standards (Canadian and US) BMCS, FMVSS, and CMVSS.

Other applicable certification labels are affixed to the component.

4.1.8 DOT Certification Label

This certifies that coaches manufactured by Prevost Car Inc., comply with all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards at the time of manufacture. The DOT Certification label is affixed on the wall, behind the driver's seat.

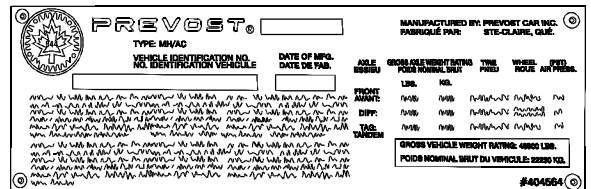


FIGURE 8: DOT CERTIFICATION PLATE

00016

4.1.9 EPA Engine Label

The exhaust emission certification label affixed above the oil reserve tank certifies that the engine conforms to federal and any state exhaust emission regulations (Fig. 9). It gives the operating conditions under which certification was made.

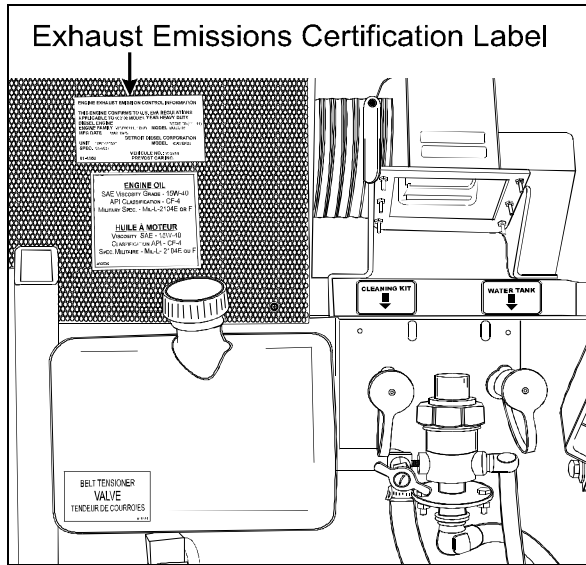


FIGURE 9: ENGINE COMPARTMENT

23229

4.1.10 Fuel Tank Label

The fuel tank label is molded on the side of the fuel tank. To read this label, unscrew the fuel tank access panel nuts located at the left in the condenser compartment.

4.1.11 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The seventeen digit vehicle identification number (VIN) is located on a plate (Fig. 10 & 11) located on the windshield frame pillar (driver's side). The VIN is visible from the outside of the coach. Make sure the correct vehicle identification number is given when ordering replacement parts. Using the VIN when ordering parts will facilitate processing.



FIGURE 10 : VEHICLE I.D.

18479

Note: Record the VIN in the coach documentation and keep with company records. The VIN will normally be used for vehicle registration and for obtaining vehicle insurance coverage.

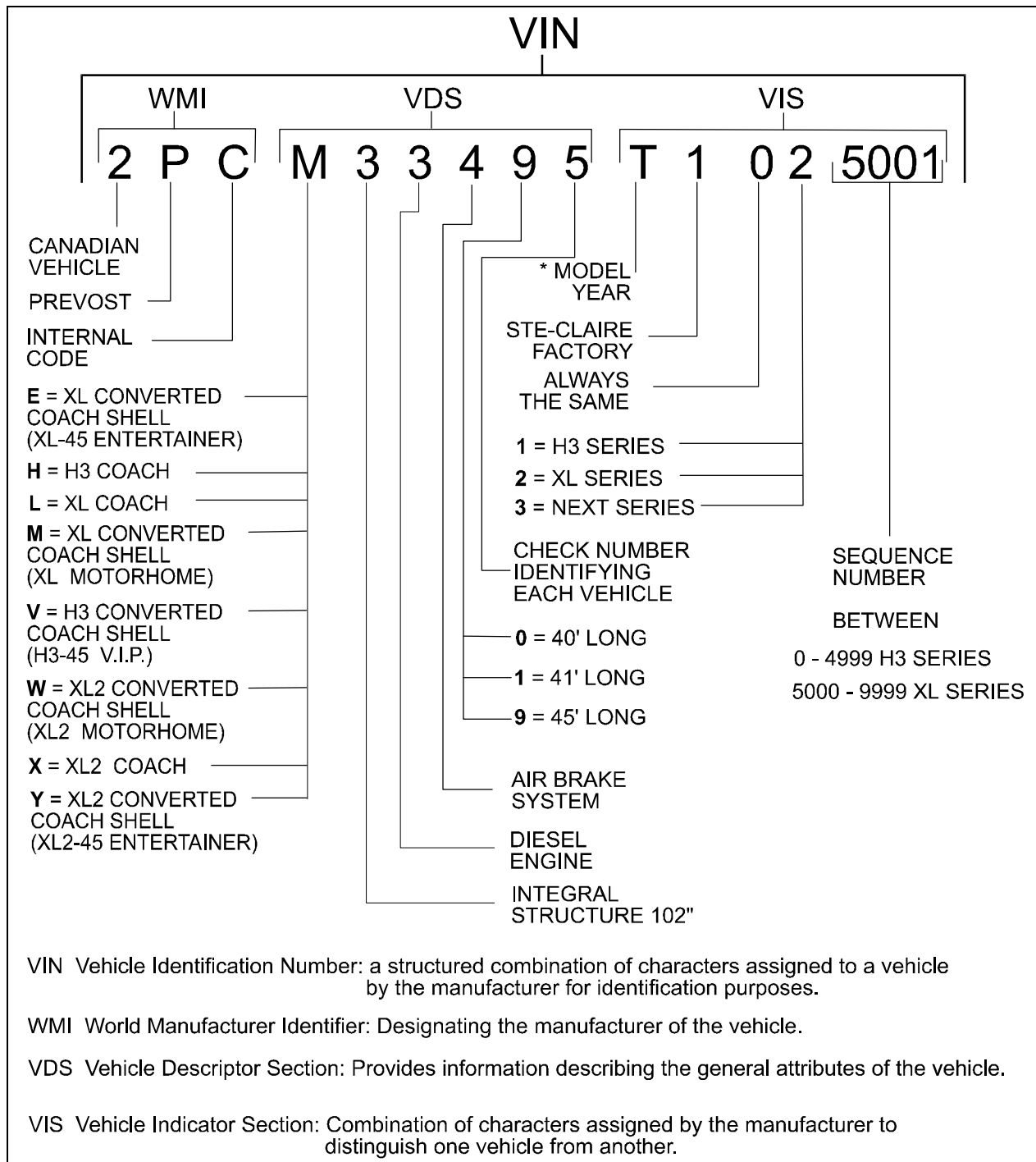


FIGURE 11 : VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

VIN

YEAR	CODE	YEAR	CODE
1995	S	2001	1
1996	T	2002	2
1997	V	2003	3
1998	W	2004	4
1999	X	2005	5
2000	Y	2006	6

5. FASTENER STRENGTH IDENTIFICATION

Most commonly used metric fastener strength property classes are 9.8 and 10.9 with the class identification embossed on the head of each bolt. Customary (inch) strength classes range from grade 2 to 8 with radial line identification embossed on each bolt head actual grade (i.e., a grade 7 bolt will have 5 embossed radial lines on the bolt head). Some metric nuts will be marked with single digit strength identification numbers on the nut face. Fig. 13 shows the different strength markings. When replacing

metric fasteners, be careful to use fasteners of the same or greater strength than the original fasteners (the same number marking or higher). It is also important to select replacement fasteners of the correct size. Correct replacement fasteners are available through the parts division. Some metric fasteners available in after-market parts sources were designed to metric standards of countries other than the United States and may be of a lower strength, may not have the numbered head marking system, and may be of a different thread pitch.

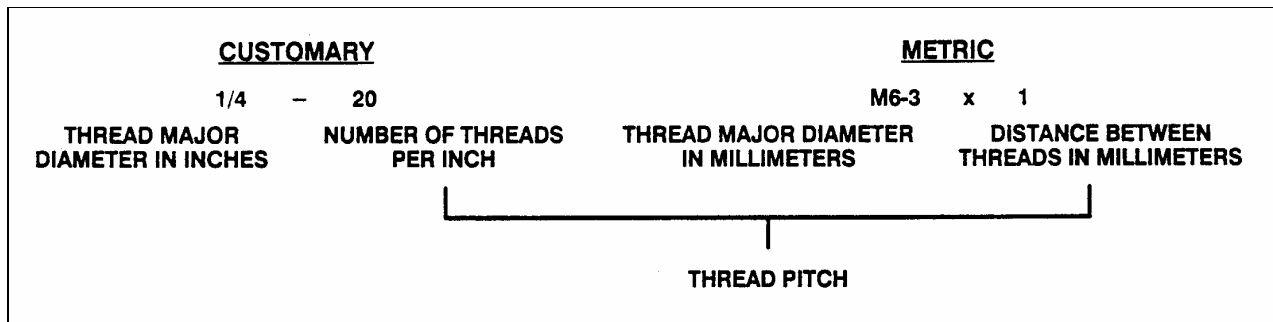


FIGURE 12 : THREAD NOTATION

00002

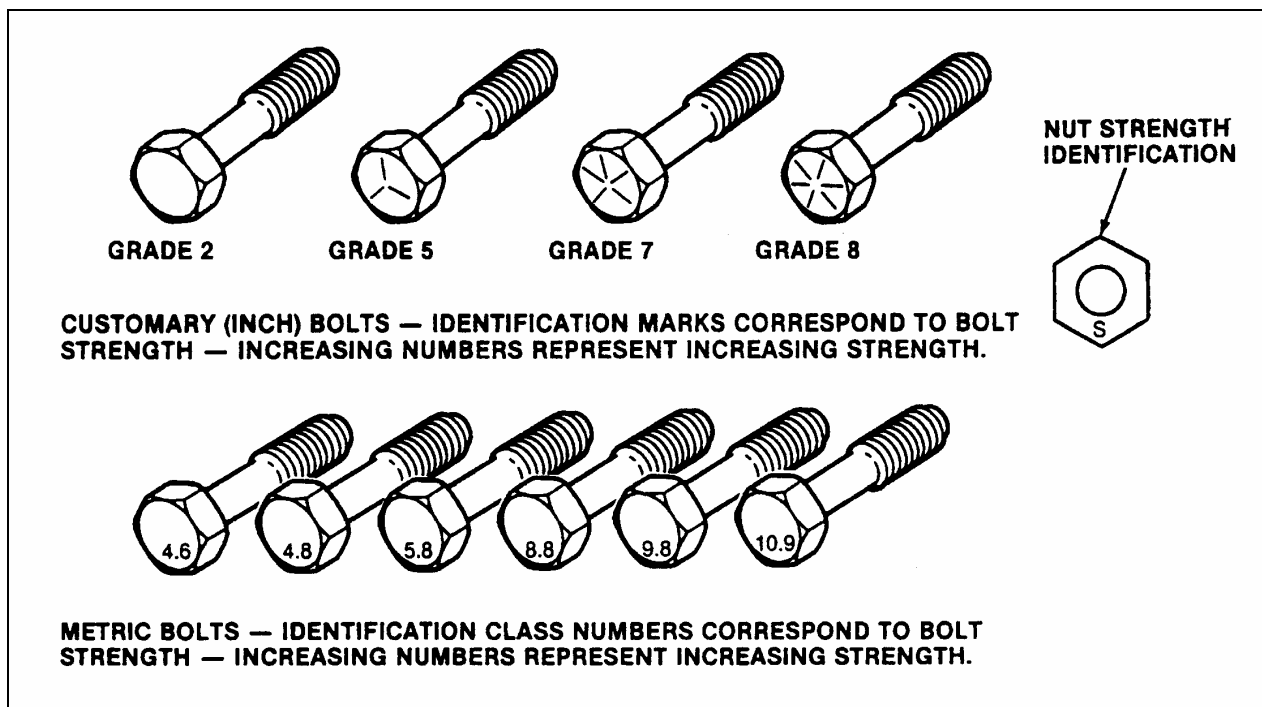


FIGURE 13: BOLT STRENGTH MARKINGS

00003

The metric fasteners used on the coach are designed to new standards and may not yet be manufactured by some non-domestic fastener suppliers. In general, except for special applications, the common sizes and pitches are:

- M 8 X 1.25;
- M 10 X 1.5;
- M 12 X 1.75;
- M 14 X 2;

5.1 SELF-LOCKING FASTENERS

A self-locking fastener is designed with an interference fit between the nut and bolt threads. This is most often accomplished by distortion of the top thread of an all-metal nut or bolt or by using a nylon patch on the threads. A nylon insert or the use of adhesives may also be used as a method of interference between nut and bolt threads (Fig. 14).

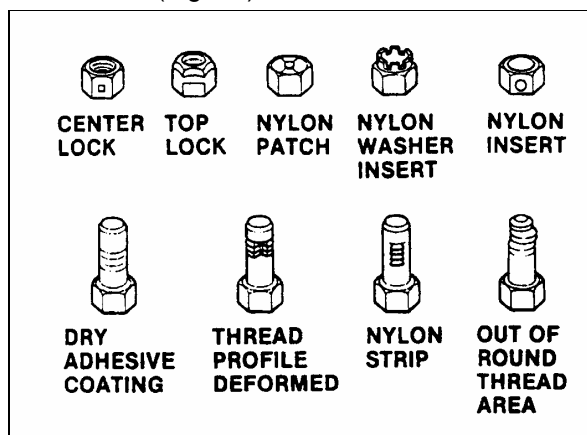


FIGURE 14 : SELF-LOCKING FASTENERS

00004

5.2 RECOMMENDATIONS FOR REUSE

Clean, unruined self-locking fasteners may be reused as follows:

- Clean dirt and other foreign matter from the fastener;
- Inspect the fastener to ensure there is no crack, elongation, or other sign of fatigue or overtightening. If there is any doubt, replace with a new self-locking fastener of equal or greater strength;
- Assemble parts and hand start fastener;
- Observe that, before the fastener seats, it develops torque per the chart in table two. If there is any doubt, replace with a new self-locking fastener of equal or greater strength;
- Tighten the fastener to the torque specified in the applicable section of this manual;

Fasteners which are rusty or damaged should be replaced with new ones of equal or greater strength.

SELF-LOCKING FASTENER TORQUE CHART									
METRIC		6 & 6.3	8	10	12	14	16	20	
NUTS AND ALL-METAL BOLTS	Nm	0.4	0.8	1.4	2.2	3.0	4.2	7.0	
	Lbf-in	4.0	7.0	12	18	25	35	57	
ADHESIVE OR NYLON COATED BOLTS	Nm	0.4	0.6	1.2	1.6	2.4	3.4	5.6	
	Lbf-in	4.0	5.0	10	14	20	28	46	
US STANDARD		.250	.312	.375	.437	.500	.562	.625	.750
NUTS AND ALL-METAL BOLTS	Nm	0.4	0.6	1.4	1.8	2.4	3.2	4.2	6.2
	Lbf-in	4.0	5.0	12	15	20	27	35	51
ADHESIVE OR NYLON COATED BOLTS	Nm	0.4	0.6	1.0	1.4	1.8	2.6	3.4	5.2
	Lbf-in	4.0	5.0	9.0	12	15	22	28	43

5.3 SIX LOBED SOCKET HEAD

Six lobed socket head (Torx) fasteners are used in some applications on vehicles covered in this manual. The tools designed for these fasteners are available commercially. However, in some cases, if the correct tool is not available, a hex socket head wrench may be used.

Multiply	by	to get equivalent number of:	Multiply	by	to get equivalent number of:		
LENGTH							
Inch	25.4	millimeters (mm)	Foot/sec ² Inch/sec ²	0.305 0.026	meter/sec ² (m/s ²) meter/sec ²		
Foot	0.305	meters (m)					
Yard	0.914	meters					
Mile	1.609	kilometers (km)	ACCELERATION				
AREA							
Inch ²	645.2	millimeters ² (mm ²)	Pound-Inch Pound-foot	0.113 1.35	newton-meters (N·m) newton-meters		
Foot ²	6.45	centimeters ² (cm ²)					
Yard ²	0.093 0.836	meters ² (m ²)					
VOLUME							
Inch ³	16 387.0	mm ³	Horsepower	0.746	kilowatts (kW)		
Quart	0.946	liters (l)					
Gallon	3.785	liters					
Yard ³	0.765	meters ³ (m ³)	PRESSURE OR STRESS				
MASS							
Pound	0.453	kilograms (kg)	BTU Foot-pound kilowatt-hour	1 055.0 1.356 3 600 000.0 or 3.6 x 10 ⁶	joules (J) joules joules (J = one W's)		
Ton	907.18	kilograms (kg)					
Ton	0.907	ton (t)					
ENERGY OR WORK							
FORCE							
Kilogram	9.807	newtons (N)	Foot candle	1.076	lumens/meter ² (lm/m ²)		
Ounce	0.278	newtons					
Pound	4.448	newtons	VELOCITY				
TEMPERATURE							
Degree Fahrenheit	(°F - 32) ÷ 1.8	Degree Celsius (C)	Miles/hour	1.609	kilometers/hr (km/h)		

°F

-40

-20

0

20

40

60

80

100

120

140

160

180

200

212

°C

°F

-40

-20

0

20

40

60

80

100

120

140

160

180

200

212

°C

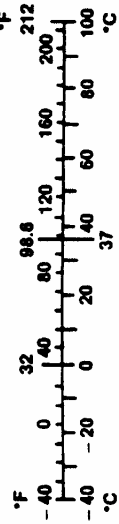


FIGURE 15: METRIC - US STANDARD CONVERSION TABLE

00005

DECIMAL AND METRIC EQUIVALENTS

FRACTIONS	DECIMAL IN.	METRIC MM	FRACTIONS	DECIMAL IN.	METRIC MM
1/64	.015625	.39688	33/64	.515625	13.09687
1/32	.03125	.79375	17/32	.53125	13.49375
3/64	.046875	1.19062	35/64	.546875	13.89062
1/16	.0625	1.58750	9/16	.5625	14.28750
5/64	.078125	1.98437	37/64	.578125	14.68437
3/32	.09375	2.38125	19/32	.59375	15.08125
7/64	.109375	2.77812	39/64	.609375	15.47812
1/8	.125	3.1750	5/8	.625	15.87500
9/64	.140625	3.57187	41/64	.640625	16.27187
5/32	.15625	3.96875	21/32	.65625	16.66875
11/64	.171875	4.36562	43/64	.671875	17.06562
3/16	.1875	4.76250	11/16	.6875	17.46250
13/64	.203125	5.15937	45/64	.703125	17.85937
7/32	.21875	5.55625	23/32	.71875	18.25625
15/64	.234375	5.95312	47/64	.734375	18.65312
1/4	.250	6.35000	3/4	.750	19.05000
17/64	.265625	6.74687	49/64	.765625	19.44687
9/32	.28125	7.14375	25/32	.78125	19.84375
19/64	.296875	7.54062	51/64	.796875	20.24062
5/16	.3125	7.93750	13/16	.8125	20.63750
21/64	.328125	8.33437	53/64	.828125	21.03437
11/32	.34375	8.73125	27/32	.84375	21.43125
23/64	.359375	9.12812	55/64	.859375	21.82812
3/8	.375	9.52500	7/8	.875	22.22500
25/64	.390625	9.92187	57/64	.890625	22.62187
13/32	.40625	10.31875	29/32	.90625	23.01875
27/64	.421875	10.71562	59/64	.921875	23.41562
7/16	.4375	11.11250	15/16	.9375	23.81250
29/64	.453125	11.50937	61/64	.953125	24.20937
15/32	.46875	11.90625	31/32	.96875	24.60625
31/64	.484375	12.30312	63/64	.984375	25.00312
1/2	.500	12.70000	1	1.00	25.40000

FIGURE 16: CONVERSION CHART

00006

ELECTRONIC MODULES DISCONNECTION PROCEDURE PRIOR TO WELDING

PROCEDURE NO: PR060013

**REVISION 3
2003-03-05**

Materiel: N/A

Equipment(s): Flat blade screwdriver
Ratchet handle
1/4" socket

Reference schematics: N/A

Safety rules:

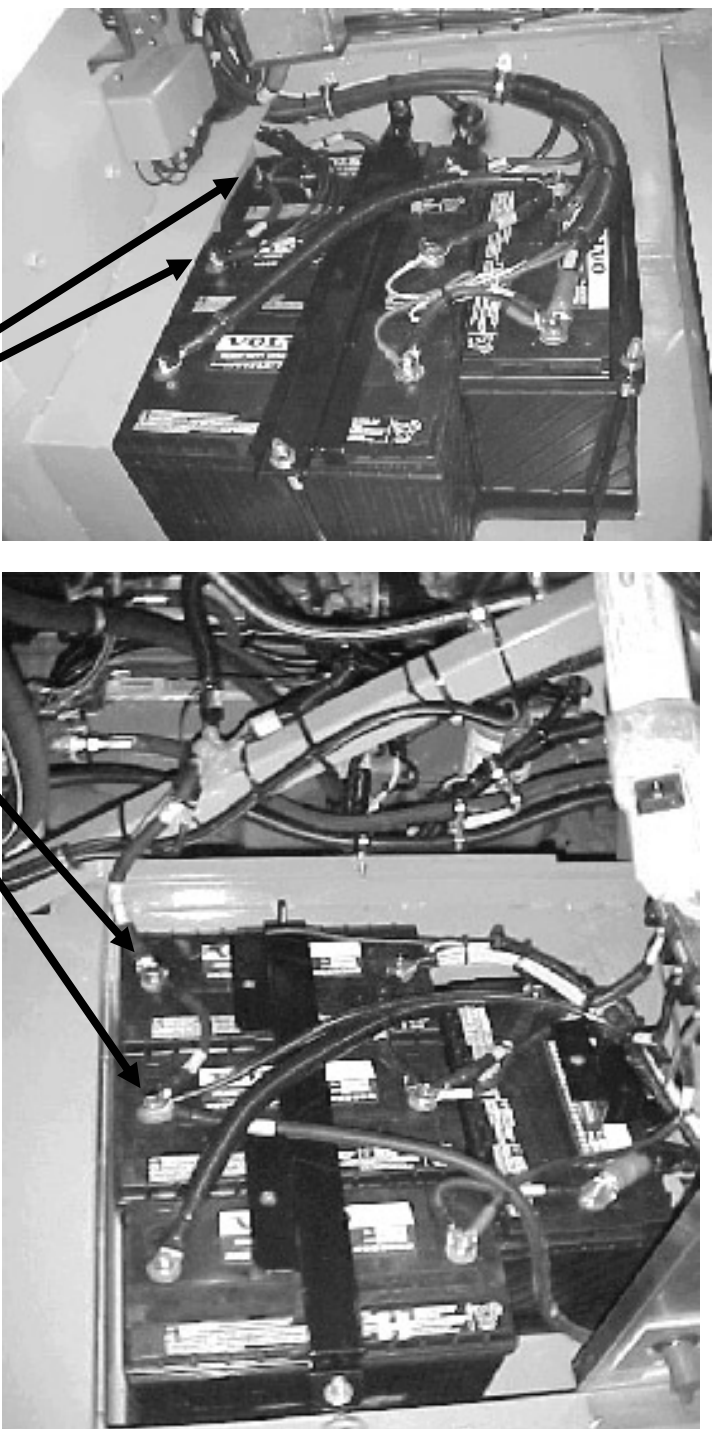
- Wear safety goggles.
- Set the battery master switch to the OFF position first.
- Always be very precautious when disconnecting and reconnecting the battery cables.

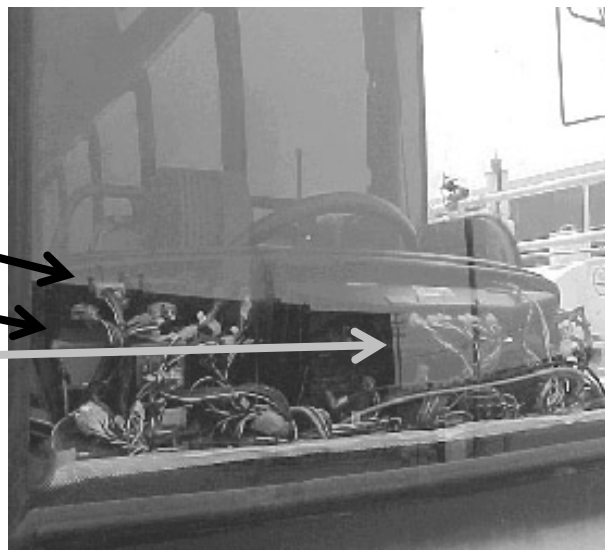

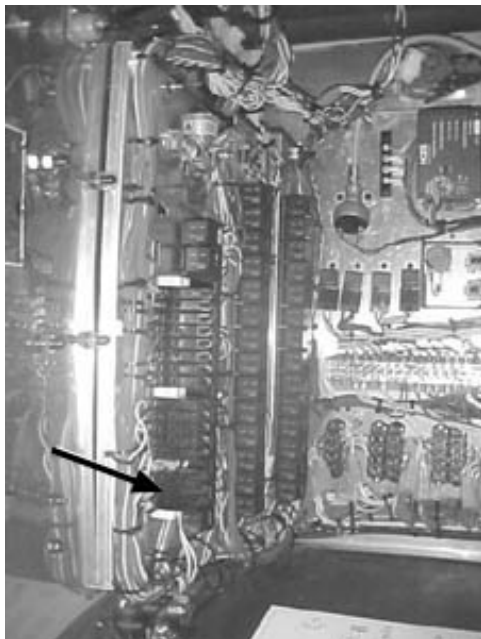
Recommendations: This procedure should be performed by qualified personnel only.

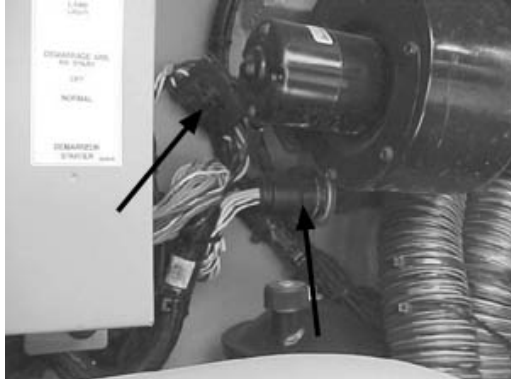
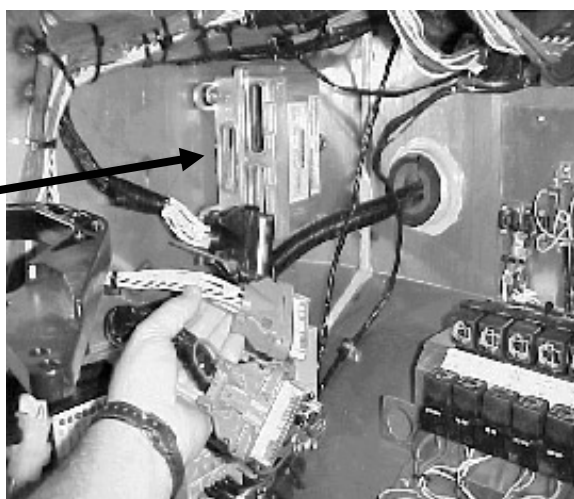

Revision 3 : updated for cooling and ZF transmission

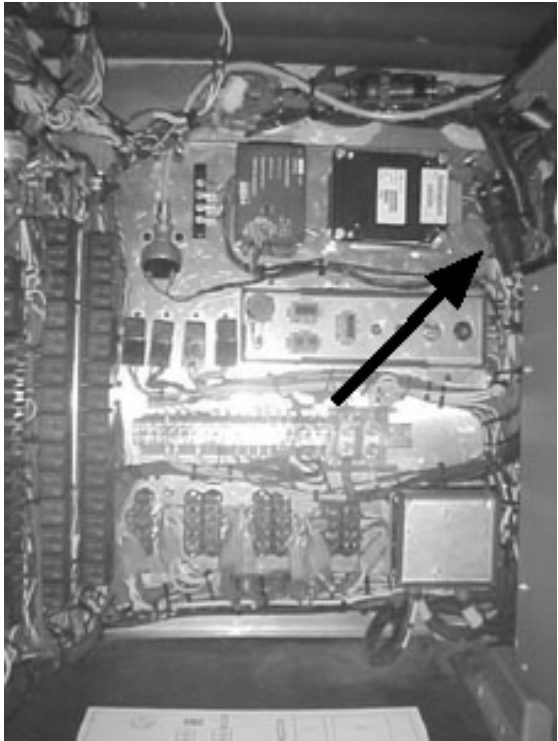
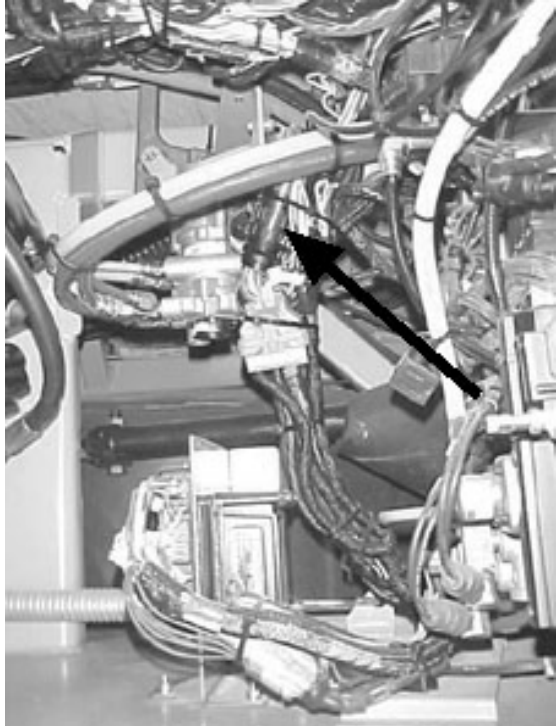
Effective

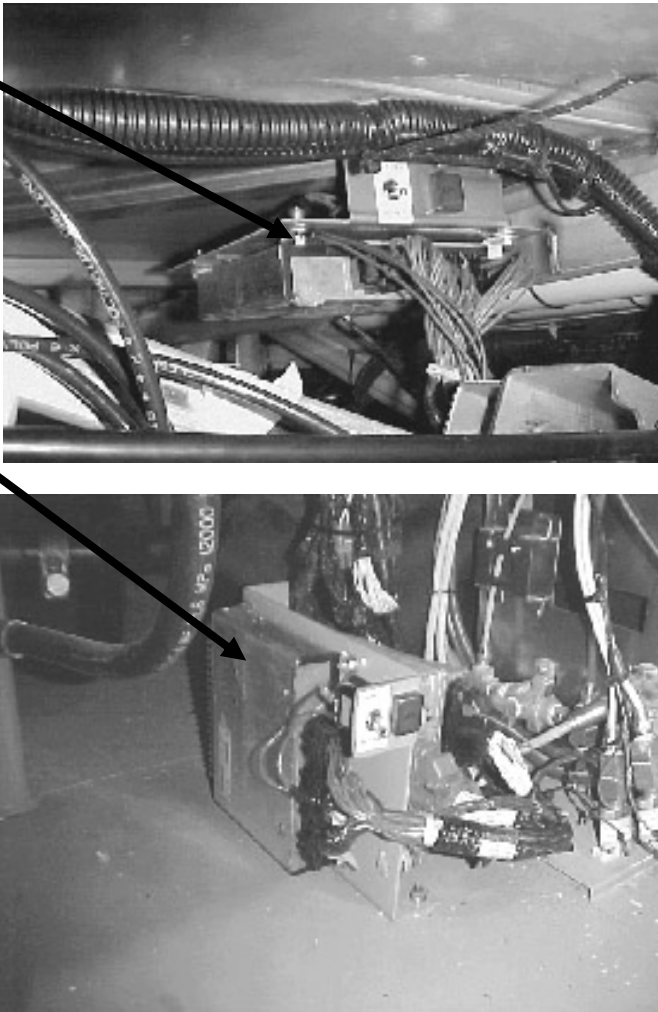
**H 4758
XL2 8165**

1.00	Set the battery master switch to the OFF position.	<u>VERY IMPORTANT</u>
2.00	<p>Disconnect all the "GROUND" cables connected to the battery terminals.</p> <p><u>"GROUND" only</u></p>	 <p>The top photograph shows a battery bank with multiple terminals. Two arrows originate from the text 'GROUND' only and point to two specific ground cables connected to the terminals. The bottom photograph shows a similar battery bank from a different angle, with two arrows also originating from the text 'GROUND' only and pointing to ground cables.</p>

<p>3.00</p>	<p>When welding has to be done near the dashboard, the following electronic components must be disconnected.</p> <p>RADIO & CONTROL HEAD</p> <p>HVAC CONTROL UNIT</p> <p>TELLTALE MODULE & CLUSTER</p> <p>also disconnect the M2S MODULE (ELECTRICAL SYSTEM MONITOR) located in front service compartment (XL2) located in main power compartment (H3)</p>	
<p>4.00</p> <p>*</p>	<p>H3</p> <p>In the engine compartment, unplug connector C397</p> <p>In the main power compartment, trip circuit breakers CB19 & CB20</p>	 

4.50 *	XL2	In engine compartment, unplug connector C158 & C159	
5.00 *	Allison Transmission		
Location: Main power compartment (H3) Front service compartment (XL2)			
H3 - Unplug the 3 connectors (gray, black, blue) from the ECU			
<p style="text-align: center;">⚠ CAUTION ⚠</p> <p>The connectors are secured by a red locking tab.</p>			
<u>OR</u>			
XL2 - Unplug the 3 connectors (gray, black, blue) from the ECU			

5.50 *	ZF Transmission	
	<p>H3 In the main power compartment, unplug connector C717</p>	
	<p>XL2 In front service compartment, unplug connector C717</p>	

<p>6.00</p>	<p>H3 - In the first baggage compartment, disconnect the ABS module</p> <p><u>OR</u></p> <p>XL2 - in the front service compartment, disconnect the ABS module</p>	
<p>7.00</p>	<p>When all the previous steps are done, you can do welding on the vehicle</p>	<p>ENSURE THAT THE WELDING GROUND CLAMP IS WELL SECURED AND MAKES A GOOD ELECTRICAL CONTACT WITH A LARGE METALLIC AREA OF THE CHASSIS LOCATED NEAR THE WELDING POINT AS MUCH AS POSSIBLE.</p>
<p>8.00</p>	<p>When welding is completed, reconnect ECM, ECU, & ABS modules and connectors.</p> <p>Make sure that the connectors locking tab are well engaged.</p> <p>Reinstall the battery ground cables.</p>	<p>Be careful to make the proper connections, if not, some systems or components may not be usable.</p>

SECTION 01: ENGINE

CONTENTS

1. ENGINE.....	01-3
2. ENGINE-MOUNTED COMPONENTS	01-3
2.1 ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULE	01-4
2.2 N3 ELECTRONIC UNIT INJECTOR	01-4
2.3 VPOD	01-4
2.3.1 VPOD Removal.....	01-5
2.3.2 VPOD Installation.....	01-5
2.4 EGR HYDRAULIC VALVE.....	01-5
2.5 SYNCHRONOUS REFERENCE SENSOR.....	01-5
2.6 TIMING REFERENCE SENSOR	01-5
2.7 TURBO BOOST PRESSURE SENSOR.....	01-6
2.8 COOLANT TEMPERATURE SENSOR	01-6
2.9 FUEL TEMPERATURE SENSOR	01-6
2.10 AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR.....	01-6
2.11 TURBO COMPRESSOR IN TEMPERATURE SENSOR.....	01-6
2.12 ABSOLUTE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR	01-6
2.13 OIL TEMPERATURE SENSOR.....	01-7
3. ENGINE-RELATED COMPONENTS	01-7
3.1 COOLANT LEVEL SYSTEM (CLS)	01-7
3.2 ELECTRONIC FOOT PEDAL ASSEMBLY (EFPA) & THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR	01-7
3.3 CRUISE CONTROL SWITCHES (CCS).....	01-7
3.4 DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM ACCESSORIES (DSA)	01-8
3.4.1 Check Engine Telltale Light.....	01-8
3.4.2 Stop Engine Warning Light.....	01-8
3.4.3 Stop Engine Override Switch.....	01-8
3.4.4 Diagnostic Data Link (DDL) Connectors.....	01-8
4. DDEC V DIAGNOSTIC CODES	01-8
4.1 READING DIAGNOSTIC CODES – FLASHING LIGHT METHOD:.....	01-8
5. ENGINE OIL LEVEL	01-19
6. ENGINE OIL AND FILTER CHANGE	01-19
7. RECOMMENDED ENGINE OIL TYPE	01-20
8. POWER PLANT ASSEMBLY REMOVAL.....	01-20
9. POWER PLANT ASSY. INSTALLATION	01-24
10. VALVE COVER REMOVAL	01-24
11. JAKE BRAKE	01-24
12. ENGINE MOUNTS	01-24
13. ENGINE TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE.....	01-26
14. SPECIFICATIONS.....	01-27

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: DETROIT DIESEL SERIES 60 ENGINE (TYPICAL).....	01-3
FIGURE 2: ELECTRONIC CONTROL MODULE (ECM).....	01-4
FIGURE 3: UNIT INJECTOR CROSS SECTION	01-4
FIGURE 4: VPOD LOCATION	01-4
FIGURE 5: VPOD INSTALLATION	01-5
FIGURE 6: EGR VALVE & ACTUATOR ASSEMBLY	01-5
FIGURE 7: TURBO BOOST PRESSURE SENSOR.....	01-6
FIGURE 8: FUEL TEMPERATURE SENSOR.....	01-6
FIGURE 9: TURBO COMPRESSOR IN TEMPERATURE SENSOR LOCATION	01-6
FIGURE 10: ENGINE OPS.....	01-6
FIGURE 11: ELECTRONIC FOOT PEDAL ASSEMBLY	01-7
FIGURE 12: ENGINE OIL LEVEL DIPSTICK	01-19
FIGURE 13: ENGINE COMPARTMENT	01-19
FIGURE 14: UNDER VEHICLE VIEW	01-20
FIGURE 15: ENGINE COMPARTMENT	01-21
FIGURE 16: ENGINE COMPARTMENT	01-21
FIGURE 17: ENGINE COMPARTMENT H3 COACHES (TYPICAL)	01-23
FIGURE 18: ENGINE COMPARTMENT VIP (TYPICAL).....	01-23
FIGURE 19: RUBBER DAMPER TOLERANCE	01-24
FIGURE 20: POWER PLANT CRADLE INSTALLATION.....	01-25

1. ENGINE

This vehicle is powered by a 6-cylinder, four-cycle, Detroit Diesel series 60 engine, equipped with an electronic control system (DDEC V).

Two engine displacements are used in the Series 60 engines: 12.7 and 14.0 liters. Summary information on the Electronic Control System is given in this section.

Complete maintenance and repair information on the engine will be found in the current DDEC V Service Manual. This maintenance manual covers engine accessories, controls and related components.

Procedures for engine removal and installation are given at the end of this section. The DDEC system is self-diagnostic. It can identify faulty components and other engine-related problems by providing the technician with a diagnostic code.

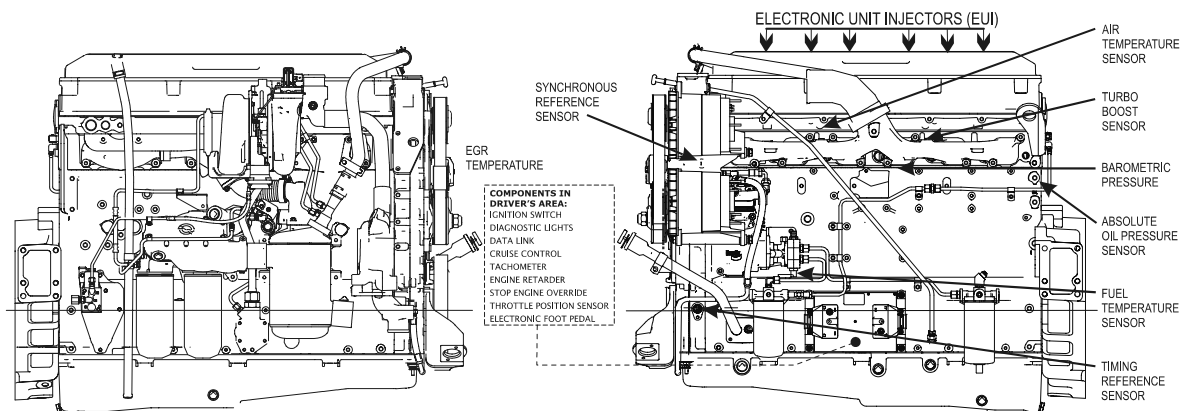
Refer to DDEC Troubleshooting Guide published by Detroit Diesel for more complete information on diagnosis of components and system problems.

DDEC V (Detroit Diesel Electronic Control) controls the timing and amount of fuel injected by the electronic unit injectors (EUI). The system also monitors several engine functions using electrical sensors, which send electrical signals to the Electronic Control Module (ECM). The ECM computes the electrical signals and determines the correct fuel output and timing for optimum power, fuel economy and emissions. The ECM also has the ability to display warnings or shut down the engine completely (depending on option selection) in the event of damaging engine conditions, such as low oil pressure, low coolant level, or high oil temperature.

Two categories divide system components: engine-mounted components and engine-related components.

2. ENGINE-MOUNTED COMPONENTS

NOTE: COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR IS MOUNTED ON COOLANT SURGE TANK, LOCATED ON UPPER L. H. SIDE OF ENGINE COMPARTMENT. TURBO COMPRESSOR IN TEMPERATURE SENSOR IS MOUNTED ON ENGINE AIR INTAKE DUCT.



SECTION 03: FUEL SYSTEM

CONTENTS

1. FUEL SYSTEM DESCRIPTION	03-3
2. FUEL LINES AND FLEXIBLE HOSES.....	03-4
3. FUEL VALVES.....	03-4
4. FILTERS AND WATER SEPARATOR	03-4
4.1 FUEL FILTER/WATER SEPARATOR SERVICING	03-4
4.2 FUEL FILTER SERVICING (PRIMARY AND SECONDARY)	03-5
4.3 DAVCO FUEL PRO 382.....	03-6
4.4 PREHEATER FUEL FILTER	03-7
5. FUEL TANK.....	03-7
5.1 TANK REMOVAL	03-7
5.2 TANK INSTALLATION	03-8
5.3 FUEL TANK VERIFICATION	03-9
5.4 POLYETHYLENE FUEL TANK REPAIR.....	03-9
6. PRIMING FUEL SYSTEM	03-9
7. FUEL PUMP INSTALLATION.....	03-10
8. FUEL OIL SPECIFICATIONS	03-10
9. AIR CLEANER (DRY TYPE)	03-10
9.1 PRE-CLEANER SERVICING.....	03-11
9.2 AIR CLEANER SERVICING	03-11
9.3 GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS	03-11
9.4 AIR CLEANER RESTRICTION INDICATOR	03-11
10. FUEL COOLER	03-12
11. FUEL PEDAL	03-12
11.1 FUEL PEDAL ADJUSTMENT	03-12
11.2 POTENTIOMETER REPLACEMENT.....	03-12
12. SPECIFICATIONS	03-13

ILLUTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: FUEL SYSTEM SCHEMATIC	03-3
FIGURE 2: MANUAL SHUT-OFF VALVES.....	03-4
FIGURE 3: FUEL FILTER/WATER SEPARATOR	03-5
FIGURE 4: DAVCO FUEL PRO 382 INSTALLATION	03-6
FIGURE 5: DAVCO FUEL PRO 382 EXPLODED VIEW	03-7
FIGURE 6: FUEL TANK ARRANGEMENT	03-8
FIGURE 7: FUEL TANK INSTALLATION.....	03-8
FIGURE 8: FUEL TANK RETENTION	03-9
FIGURE 9: FUEL TANK REPAIR	03-9
FIGURE 10: PRIME PUMP SWITCH LOCATION	03-10
FIGURE 11: FUEL PUMP LOCATION	03-10
FIGURE 12: RESTRICTION INDICATOR.....	03-11
FIGURE 13: FUEL COOLER LOCATION	03-12
FIGURE 14: ELECTRONIC FOOT PEDAL ASSEMBLY	03-12

1. FUEL SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

Figure 1 shows a schematic of the fuel system. Fuel is drawn from the fuel tank through a manual shut-off valve, a primary fuel filter or a fuel filter/water separator (optional) before it enters the fuel pump. If the vehicle is equipped with the optional “Davco Fuel Pro 382”, it is designed to be the only fuel filter in the system, no secondary fuel filter is necessary. Leaving the pump under pressure, the fuel flows through a secondary fuel filter and a shut-off valve, then to the cylinder head. The fuel reaches the injectors in the cylinder head through passages within the head. Excess fuel exits at the rear of the head just above the inlet, through a restrictive return fitting which maintains fuel pressure in the system. Finally, the fuel flows through the check valve and the fuel cooler before it returns to the fuel tank. One preheater is available: 104 000 BTU. If the vehicle is equipped with the 104 000 BTU preheater, the fuel is drawn from the fuel tank through the fuel filter to the preheater. Excess fuel returns to the fuel tank.

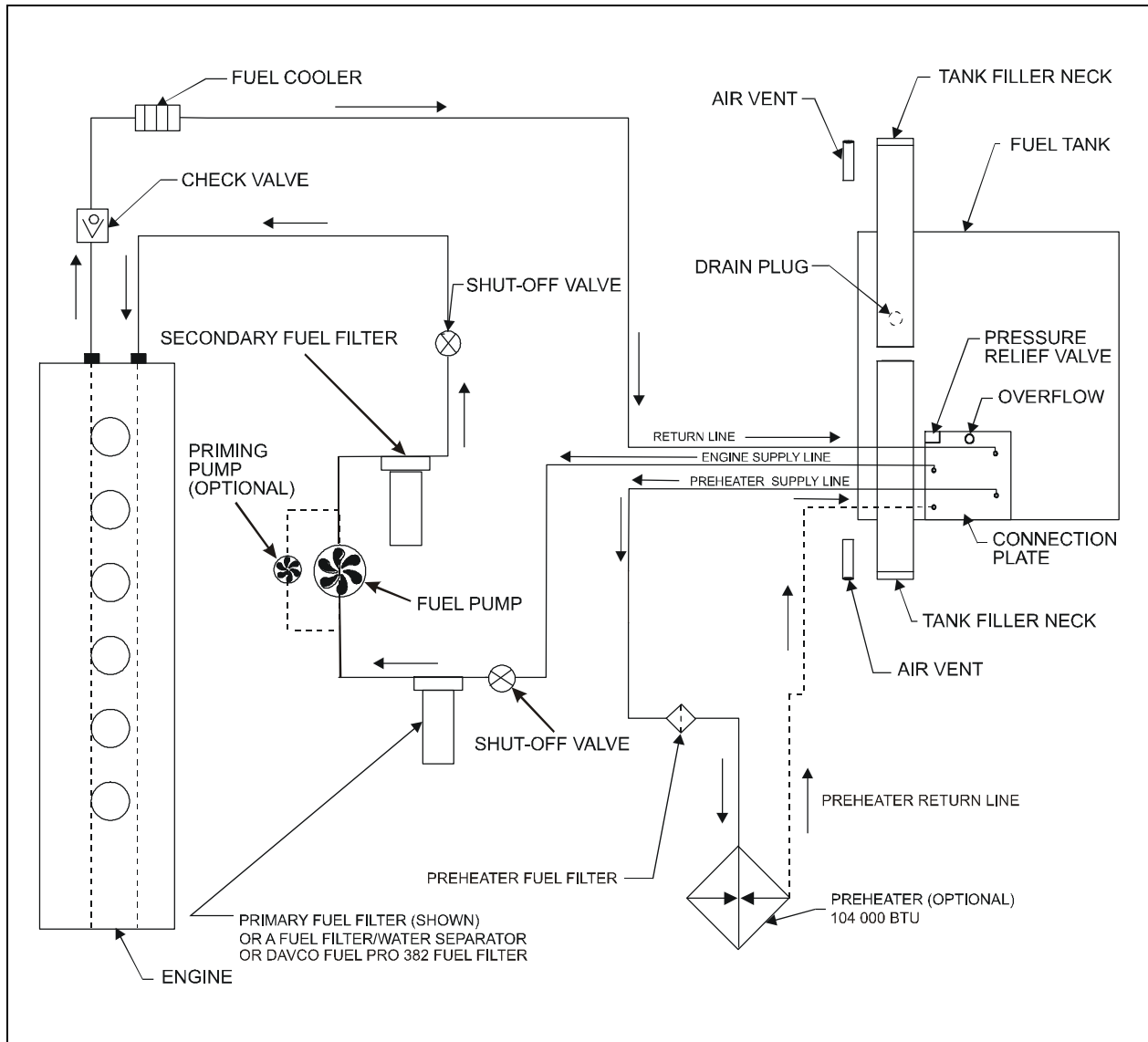


FIGURE 1: FUEL SYSTEM SCHEMATIC

03056

Section 03: FUEL SYSTEM

2. FUEL LINES AND FLEXIBLE HOSES

Make a visual check for fuel leaks at all engine-mounted fuel lines and connections and at the fuel tank suction and return lines. Since fuel tanks are susceptible to road hazards, leaks in this area may best be detected by checking for accumulation of fuel under the tank. Engine performance and auxiliary equipment is greatly dependent on the ability of flexible hoses to transfer lubricating oil, air, coolant and fuel oil. Diligent maintenance of hoses is an important step in ensuring efficient, economical and safe operation of engine and related equipment.

Check hoses daily as part of the pre-start-up inspection. Examine hoses for leaks and check all fittings, clamps and ties carefully. Make sure that the hoses are not resting on or touching shafts, couplings, and heated surfaces, including exhaust manifolds, any sharp edges or other obviously hazardous areas. Since all machinery vibrates and moves to a certain extent, clamps and ties can fatigue with age. To ensure continued proper support, inspect fasteners frequently and tighten or replace them as necessary. Refer to the schematic diagram of the fuel system (Fig. 1).

Caution: Oil level above the dipstick full mark or a decrease in lube oil consumption may indicate internal fuel leaks. Check oil level frequently.

3. FUEL VALVES

Manual shut-off valves on engine fuel-supply line are located on the R.H. side of engine compartment (Fig. 2). A manual shut-off valve is located at the inlet side of the primary fuel filter (fuel filter/water separator, if vehicle is so equipped) under the starter or at the inlet side of Davco Fuel Pro 282 fuel filter. Another manual shut-off valve is located at the outlet side of the secondary fuel filter, under the air compressor or at the outlet side of the pump in the case of Davco. No manual valve is required on preheater fuel-supply line, since the positive-displacement fuel pump (located close to the fuel tank) prevents fuel flow when not activated.

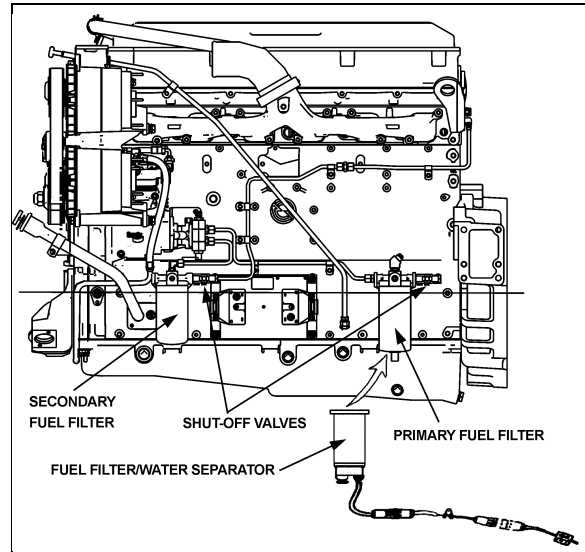


FIGURE 2: MANUAL SHUT-OFF VALVES

03060

4. FILTERS AND WATER SEPARATOR

The fuel system is equipped with primary and secondary fuel filters for additional protection of the injectors. A fuel-filter/water-separator may be installed in primary fuel-filter location, to prevent water infiltration in engine fuel system (Fig. 2). It should be drained periodically, or when the water separator telltale light on the dashboard illuminates. To drain, loosen positive seal drain valve below separator, and tighten after water has been flushed out.

Note: The operating conditions and cleanliness of type of fuel used determine the service intervals of the filter/water separator element and the secondary fuel filter cartridge.

Note: For more information on the Davco Fuel Pro 382 fuel filter, refer to paragraph 4.3.

4.1 FUEL FILTER/WATER SEPARATOR SERVICING

The fuel filter/water separator is located on the starter side of the engine, below the starter. The water separator must be drained periodically or when the telltale light on the dashboard illuminates (Fig. 3).

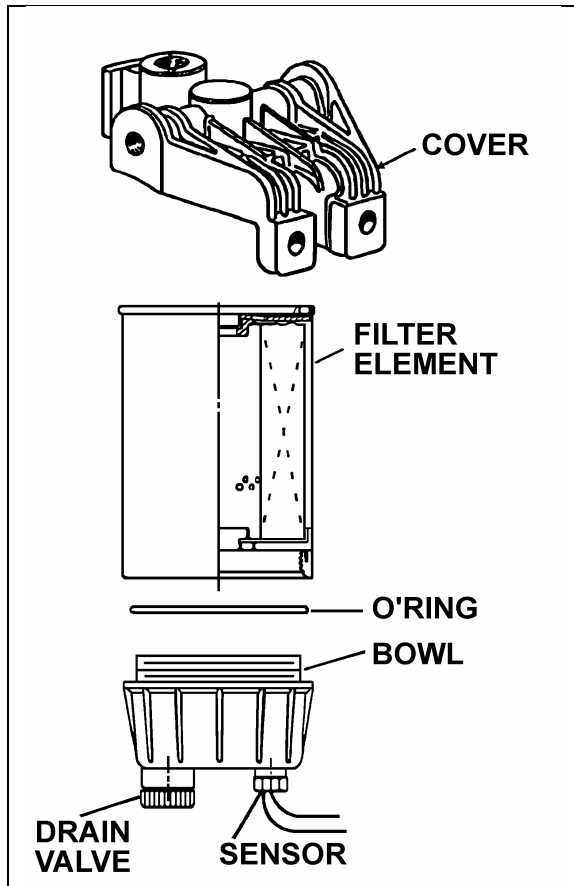


FIGURE 3: FUEL FILTER/WATER SEPARATOR 03025

Replace the water separator element as follows:

1. Drain the fuel filter/water separator as stated previously.
2. With engine "OFF" and engine fuel supply line valves closed; remove the filter element/bowl assembly from cover (for valve location, see "3. FUEL VALVES" in this section).
3. Separate bowl from filter element. Clean bowl and O-ring groove.

Note: Bowl is reusable, do not discard.

4. Lubricate O-ring with clean diesel fuel or motor oil and place it in bowl groove.
5. Screw new filter element onto bowl snugly by hand.

Caution: Do not use tool to tighten. Tighten by hand only.

6. Lubricate filter seal with clean diesel fuel or motor oil.
7. Fill filter element/bowl assembly with clean diesel fuel and attach onto cover. Handtighten an additional 1/3 to 1/2 turn after making full seal contact.
8. Open valves of the engine fuel supply line.
9. Run the engine and check for leaks.

Caution: If the water separator continuously requires draining, it is possible that water or sediment has accumulated in the fuel tank. To correct this situation, open the drain plug under the tank when the fuel gauge indicates tank is 1/4 full in order to drain any contaminant.

4.2 FUEL FILTER SERVICING (PRIMARY AND SECONDARY)

The primary and secondary fuel filters are located on the R.H. side of the engine. The primary filter is located below the starter, and the secondary fuel filter is below the air compressor. They are of a spin-on type and must be replaced every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first. The primary fuel filter is equipped with a positive seal drain-valve to prevent water infiltration in engine fuel system. To drain, loosen positive seal drain-valve below filter and tighten after water has been flushed out.

A method of determining when filters are clogged to the extent that they should be changed is based on the fuel pressure at the cylinder head fuel inlet fitting and the inlet restriction at the fuel pump. In a clean system, the maximum pump-inlet restriction should not exceed 6 inches of mercury (20.3 kPa) and must not exceed 12 inches of mercury (41 kPa) with a dirty system.

At normal operating speeds and with the standard "0.080" restriction fittings, the fuel pressure at the cylinder head inlet is 50-75 psi (345-577 kPa). Change the fuel filters whenever the inlet restriction at the fuel pump reaches 12 inches of mercury (42 kPa) at normal operating speeds. Also, change whenever the fuel pressure at the cylinder head inlet fitting falls to the minimum fuel pressure given above.

Change the filter cartridge(s) as follows:

Section 03: FUEL SYSTEM

Note: Use a suitable band wrench or filter wrench, such as J22775, to remove the filters.

1. Stop engine, shut off the engine fuel supply line valves (for valve location, See "3. FUEL VALVES"). Unscrew and discard filters.
2. Fill new filter replacement cartridge(s) with clean fuel oil, about two thirds (2/3). Apply a thin coat of clean fuel oil on gasket.
3. Install new filters. Tighten until filter is snug against the gasket, with no side movement. Rotate an additional 1/2 turn by hand.
4. Open engine fuel supply line valves.

Caution: Mechanical tightening of the fuel filters is not recommended and may result in seal and/or cartridge damage. Tighten the fuel filters by hand only.

5. Start the engine and check for leaks.

Note: There is a fuel system shut-off valve on the discharge side of the secondary fuel filter. This check valve is designed to prevent fuel loss at time of filter replacement.

4.3 DAVCO FUEL PRO 382

The optional Fuel Pro 382 diesel fuel filter system consists of a permanently mounted fuel processor, a replaceable filter element, a filter element cover and collar and a fluid filter base assembly. This system is installed between the fuel tank and the fuel pump and is designed to be the only fuel filter in the fuel system. The filter serves as a water separator as well as a fuel filter (Fig. 4).

When new, the fuel level as seen through the clear cover in the 382 filter is very low. It rises as dirt collects on the filter from the bottom up. Restriction remains consistently low because fuel always flows through clean, new media. Change filter when fuel level reaches the top of filter element (Refer to figure 5).

Filter renewal:

1. Stop engine;
2. Drain fuel by opening the drain valve;

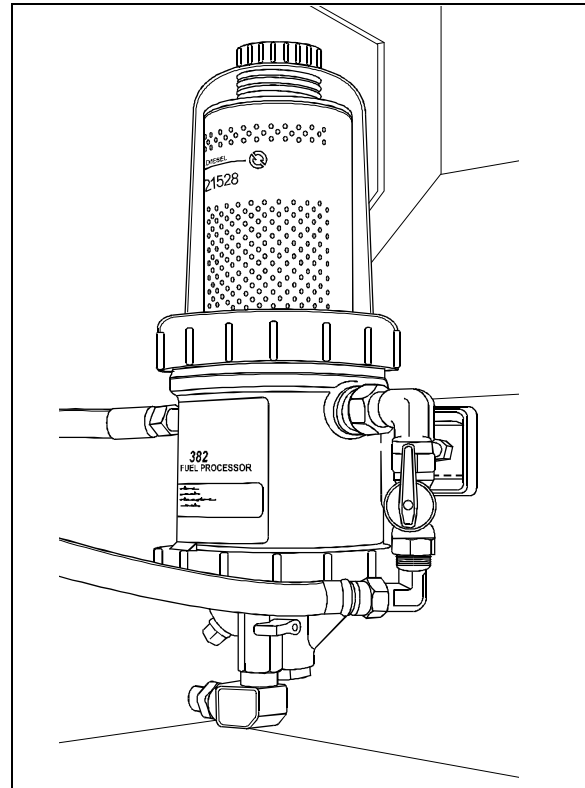


FIGURE 4: DAVCO FUEL PRO 382 INSTALLATION 03032

3. Untighten upper collar, remove cover;
4. Replace filter element;
5. Check O-Rings and components for wear;
6. Replace cover, hand tighten collar;
7. Pour fuel up to bottom of filter element through spin off cap located on top of cover.
8. Start engine, raise rpm for 2-3 minutes, hand tighten collar again.

Note: Fuel Pro 382 also accepts standard secondary spin-on fuel filters.

Environmental Notice: Diesel fuel is an environmentally hazardous product. Dispose in an environmentally friendly manner.

4.4 PREHEATER FUEL FILTER

The preheater fuel filter is located beside the preheater in the dedicated compartment above the rear wheelhousing, on the L.H. side of vehicle. Replace the filter every 50,000 miles (80 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

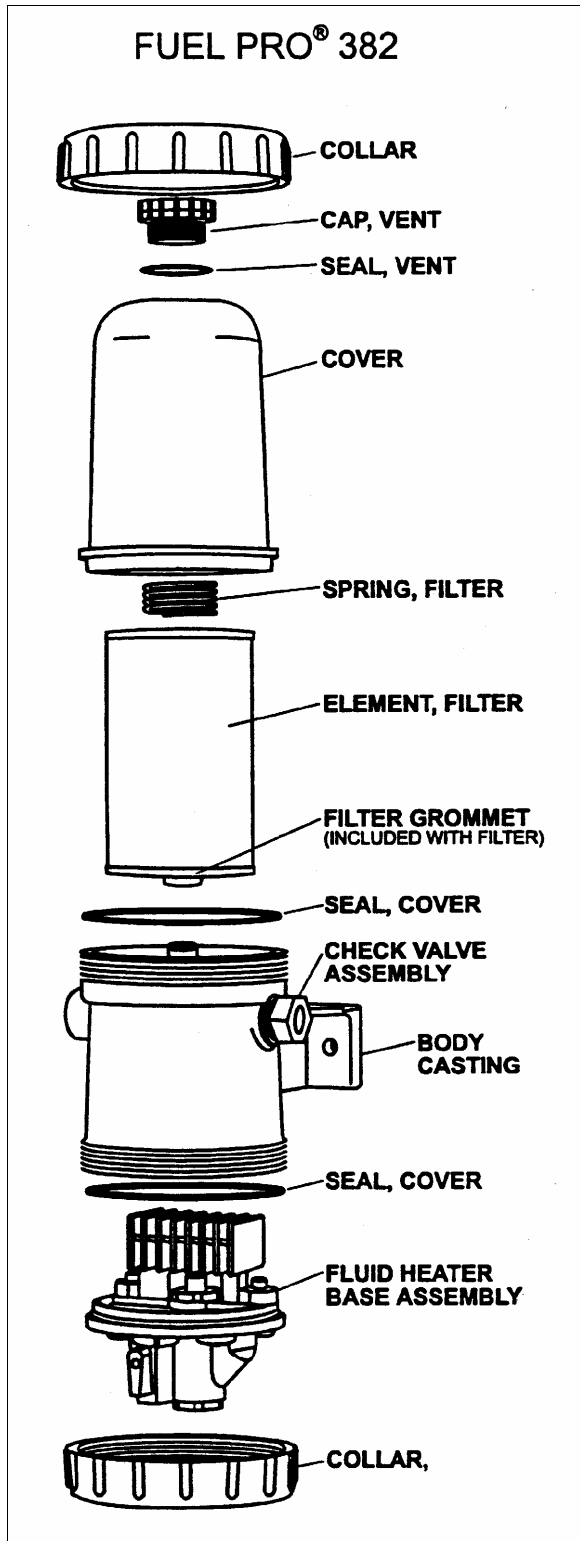


FIGURE 5: DAVCO FUEL PRO 382 EXPLODED VIEW 03034

5. FUEL TANK

All H3 series vehicles are equipped with a high-density cross-link polyethylene fuel tank with a capacity of 235 US gallons (890 liters). The tank is located just forward of the last baggage compartment, between the A/C condenser and evaporator.

Fuel filling access doors on both sides of vehicle provide direct access to filler necks; offering the added advantage of refueling from either side of vehicle.

A pressure relief valve on the fuel tank connection-panel relieves high-pressure buildup and an overflow tube allows offset air in the tank to escape during filling. For 95% of the tank volume, 5% of tank inside space is kept filled with air with no exit opening, allowing for a fuel expansion safety margin. A drain plug, accessible from under the vehicle, is fitted at the bottom of the tank.

5.1 TANK REMOVAL

Warning: Park vehicle safely, apply parking brake, stop engine and set battery master switch (es) to the OFF position before working on the vehicle.

Before working under an air-suspended vehicle, it is strongly recommended to support the body at the recommended jacking points.

Note: Before removal, the fuel tank should be completely drained by unscrewing the drain plug. Ensure that the container used has a capacity equal to the amount of fuel remaining in the tank.

Open the condenser door and remove the fuel tank access panel. The rear baggage compartment fuel tank access panel may also be removed to facilitate access to components.

1. Unscrew clamps retaining L.H. side filler tube to the fuel tank, then disconnect tube and remove it.
2. Unscrew clamps retaining R.H. side filler tube to fuel tank and filler neck. Disconnect tube and remove it.

Section 03: FUEL SYSTEM

3. If applicable, unscrew preheater supply line, preheater return line, auxiliary return line and/or auxiliary return line from fuel tank connection-panel.
4. Unscrew engine supply and return lines from fuel tank connection-panel, identify them for reinstallation.
5. Disconnect electrical wiring from tank on connection plate.

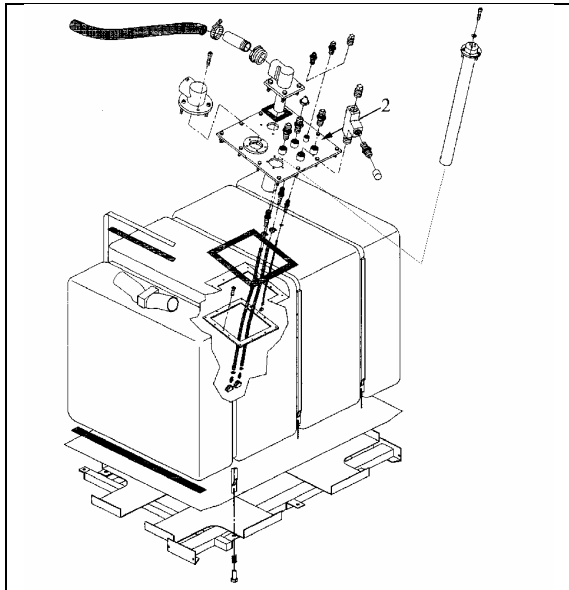


FIGURE 6: FUEL TANK ARRANGEMENT

03048

Warning: Before removing the bolts securing the tank support to the frame, make sure the tank is supported adequately. Failure to do so could result in injury as well as damage to the tank.

6. From under the vehicle, on R.H. side, unscrew the 4 bolts (2 in front, 2 in back) retaining the tank support to the frame.
7. From under the vehicle, on the L.H. side, unscrew the 2 bolts (1 in front, 1 in back) retaining the tank support to the frame.
8. Carefully remove tank from under the vehicle.

9. TANK INSTALLATION

Tank installation is the reverse of removal.

Note: Fastening of rubber flap must always be on top, in line with clamp screw (Fig.6).

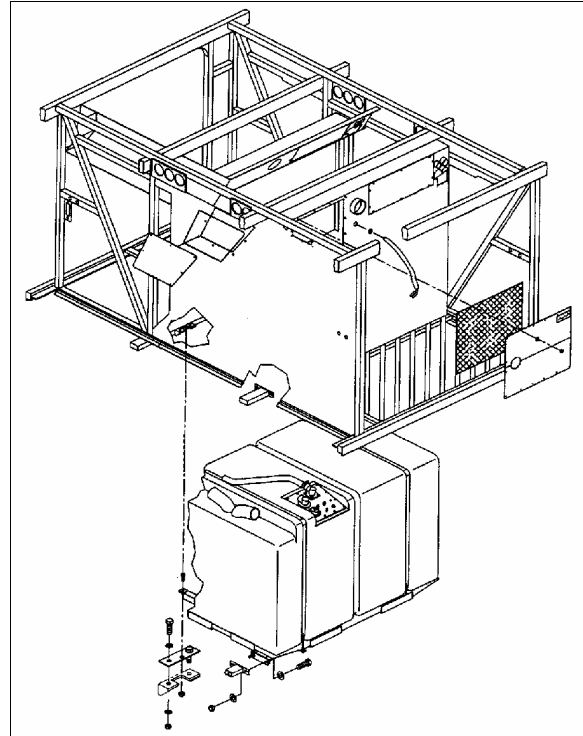


FIGURE 7: FUEL TANK INSTALLATION

03049

Note: Insert check valve assembly in right-side filler hose (Fig. 6), use hose clamp to fix it. Repeat with left side filler hose.

Note: When reinstalling lines, use Loctite 567 type thread sealant on line fittings.

Warning: For proper assembly, check connections and fasteners for tightness.

Note: Under vehicle, locate fuel tank and the four nuts retaining the two fuel-tank-retaining straps.

For each of the four nuts (Fig. 7):

1. Clean nuts and stud threads.
2. Apply a Loctite 242 type thread adhesive on stud threads.

When installing an old fuel tank, screw nuts so coils touch. When installing a new fuel tank, screw nuts so coils touch, then unscrew nuts 3.5 turns.

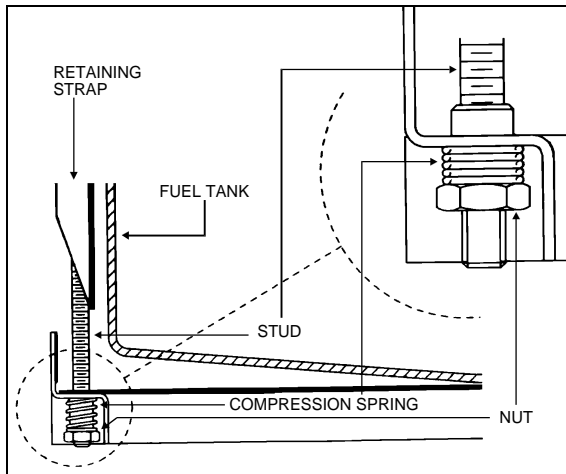


FIGURE 8: FUEL TANK RETENTION

03019

5.2 FUEL TANK VERIFICATION

Inspect fuel tank from under vehicle for leaks or fuel traces. If a leak is detected, repair immediately as per "Polyethylene Fuel Tank Repair" in this section.

Warning: Park vehicle safely, apply parking brake, stop engine and set battery master switch(es) to the OFF position before working on the vehicle.

Before working under an air-suspended vehicle, it is strongly recommended to support the body at the recommended jacking points.

5.3 POLYETHYLENE FUEL TANK REPAIR

Note: Fuel level must be lower than perforation to carry out this procedure.

Warning: Park vehicle safely, apply parking brake, stop engine and set battery master switches to the OFF position before working on the vehicle.

1. Locate perforation on fuel tank.
2. If necessary, remove fuel tank as per instructions in this section.
3. Drill perforation with a 23/64" bit. Make sure drill hole is perfectly round.
4. Insert a screw (Prevost #500196) and a washer (Prevost #5001244) into anchor nut (Prevost #500331).
5. Place assembly in drill hole. tighten screw by 10 complete turns. Refer to Fig. 9.

6. Apply sealant on head plug (Prevost #507300) and seal hole with the head plug.

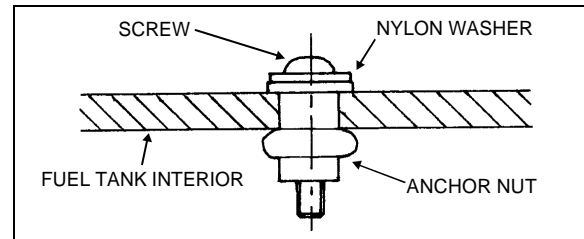


FIGURE 9: FUEL TANK REPAIR

03014

6. PRIMING FUEL SYSTEM

The problem with restarting a diesel engine that has run out of fuel, is that after the fuel is exhausted from the tank, it is pumped from the primary fuel filter or the fuel filter/water separator (if vehicle is so equipped), and sometimes partially removed from the secondary filter. This results in an insufficient fuel supply to sustain engine firing. The primary fuel filter or fuel filter/water separator and secondary filter must be free of air in order for the systems to provide adequate fuel for the injectors. When the engine runs out of fuel, the following operations must be performed before restarting:

Fill fuel tank with the recommended fuel oil. If only partial filling is possible, add a minimum of 10 gallons (38 liters) of fuel.

- If the vehicle is equipped with a Fuel Pro 382 fuel filter/water separation, pour fuel through spin on cap as per "4.3 DAVCO FUEL PRO 382".
- If the vehicle is equipped with the optional priming pump see Figure 10.

Press the priming switch, located under the rear start panel. Start the engine and check for leaks.

Section 03: FUEL SYSTEM

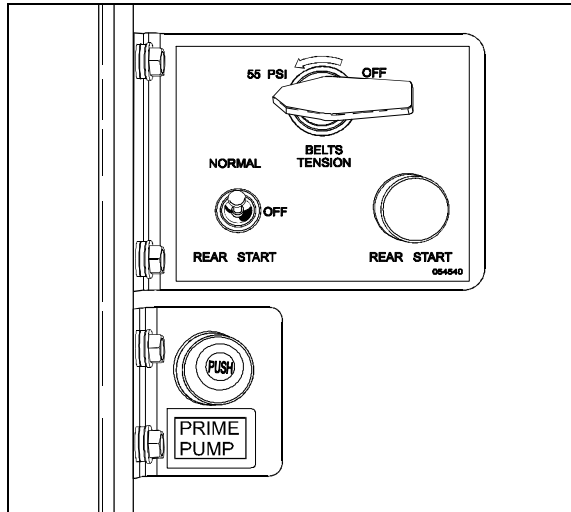


FIGURE 10: PRIME PUMP SWITCH LOCATION 03033

If the vehicle is not equipped with a priming pump:

1. Unscrew the cap on the priming valve located on the secondary filter;
2. Direct fuel under pressure 25 psi (172 kPa) to the priming valve using a quick coupling;
3. Start the engine and check for leaks.

7. FUEL PUMP INSTALLATION

The fuel pump is driven off the rear of the air compressor.

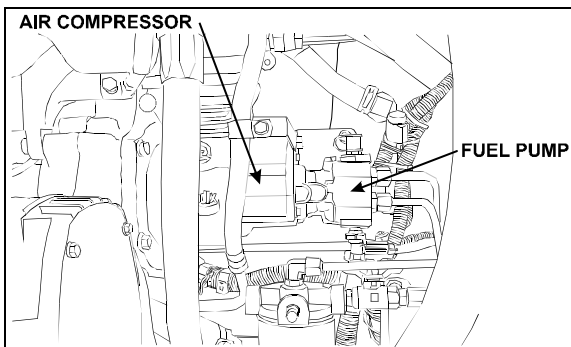


FIGURE 11: FUEL PUMP LOCATION 03026

1. If removed, install inlet and outlet fittings in the cover of the fuel pump.

Note: New fittings have sealant already applied. When reusing fittings, coat the threads lightly with Loctite Pipe Sealant, Detroit Diesel number J 26558-92, or equivalent, before installing. To prevent sealant from entering fuel

system, do not apply to the first two threads of the fitting. Do not use Teflon tape or paste on the fittings.

2. Install drive coupling in drive hub of the fuel pump. Install a new gasket to the mounting flange of the pump.
3. Index the drive coupling with the drive hub on the end of the air compressor crankshaft and align the pump mounting bolt holes with those in the air-compressor rear cover.

Note: When correctly positioned, the outlet fitting on the pump should be in approximately an 8 o'clock position when viewed from the rear, and the drain opening in the pump body facing down.

4. Seat the fuel pump squarely against the air compressor. Pilot the flange on the pump body, in the opening in the rear cover of the compressor. Install three mounting bolts and tighten them to 22-28 lbf-ft (30-38 Nm).
5. Connect the fuel inlet and outlet lines to the fuel pump and tighten.
6. Prime engine fuel system before starting engine to ensure pump seal lubrication and prompt engine starting.

8. FUEL OIL SPECIFICATIONS

The quality of fuel oil used for high-speed diesel engine operation is a very important factor in obtaining satisfactory engine performance, long engine life and acceptable exhaust emission levels. The fuel oil should meet ASTM designation D 975. Grade 1-D is recommended, however grade 2-D is acceptable.

Note: These fuel grades are very similar to grade DF-1 or DF-2 of Federal Specifications VV-F-800. For detailed fuel recommendations, refer to publication "Engine Requirements-Lubricating Oil, Fuel, and Filters" #7SE270 available from Detroit Diesel Distributors.

9. AIR CLEANER (DRY TYPE)

The vehicle is equipped with a dry-type replaceable element air cleaner, located in the engine compartment. Access the air cleaner through the engine R.H. side door. Engine air

enters the air cleaner through an intake duct on the R.H. side of the rear cap, next to the last window. It then flows through a pre-cleaner and finally through the air cleaner. The pre-cleaner removes dust and moisture by means of a discharge tube at the bottom of the element. It is in series with a replaceable impregnated paper filter element (air cleaner).

9.1 PRE-CLEANER SERVICING

The pre-cleaner is designed to be self-cleaning; however, it should be inspected and any accumulated foreign material removed during the periodic replacement of the impregnated paper filter element.

9.2 AIR CLEANER SERVICING

Stop the engine, open the R.H. side engine compartment door, and loosen the wing nut retaining the air cleaner element to the air cleaner. Remove the element by pulling on the handle in the center of the air cleaner element.

Install cleaner element as follows:

1. Inspect the gasket-sealing surface inside the air cleaner. It must be smooth, flat and clean;
2. Install the air cleaner element;
3. Make sure that the element seals securely;
4. Inspect element cover gasket and replace if necessary.

Whenever it becomes necessary to remove the air cleaner assembly (dry type) for maintenance or other repair in this area, great care should be taken when installing air cleaner assembly.

The pre-filter should be installed snugly in the air duct and clamped tightly to the air cleaner inlet to prevent any dust infiltration into the air cleaner.

9.3 GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS

The following maintenance procedures will ensure efficient air cleaner operation:

1. Keep the air cleaner housing tight on the air intake pipe;
2. Make sure the correct filters are used for replacement;

3. Keep the air cleaner properly assembled so the joints are air-tight;
4. Immediately repair any damage to the air cleaner or related parts;
5. Inspect, clean or replace the air cleaner or elements as operating conditions warrant. Whenever an element has been removed from the air cleaner housing the inside surface of the housing must be cleaned with a soft clean cloth;
6. Periodically inspect the entire system. Dust-laden air can pass through an almost invisible crack or opening which may eventually cause damage to an engine;
7. Never operate the engine without an element in the air cleaner assembly;

Caution: Do not ignore the Warning given by the air restriction indicator. This could result in serious engine damage.

8. Store new elements in a closed area free from dust and possible damage.

9.4 AIR CLEANER RESTRICTION INDICATOR

A resettable restriction indicator may be installed on the engine air-intake duct, clearly visible from the rear engine compartment. The indicator monitors the vacuum level between the air filter and the engine. A red marker is displayed when the air filter is clogged and must be replaced. Reset by pressing on the indicator's extremity.

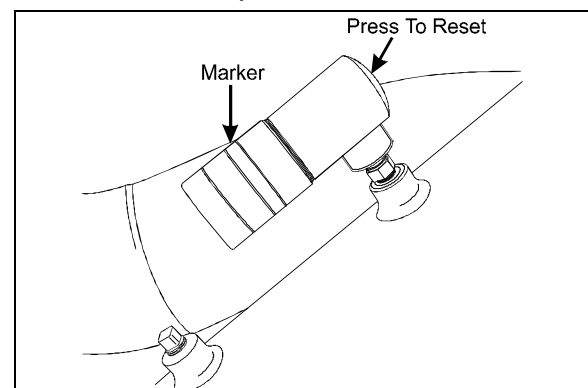


FIGURE 12: RESTRICTION INDICATOR

01052

Section 03: FUEL SYSTEM

10. FUEL COOLER

The fuel cooler serves to cool the surplus diesel fuel after it has exited the cylinder head, on its way back to the fuel tank. It is accessible through the engine radiator door and is located just in front of the coolant radiator (Fig.13).

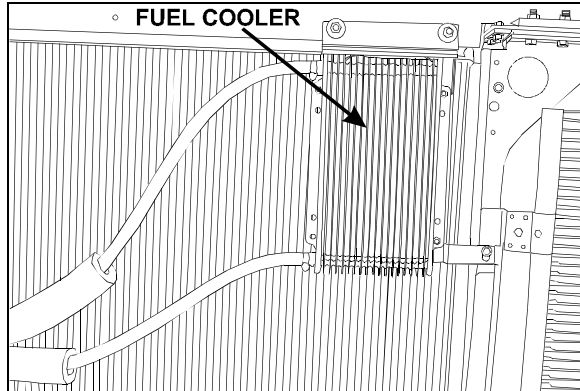


FIGURE 13: FUEL COOLER LOCATION

11. FUEL PEDAL

The EFPA (Electronic Foot Pedal Assembly) connects the accelerator pedal to a potentiometer (a device that sends an electrical signal to the ECM, which varies in voltage, depending on how far down the pedal is depressed). The EFPA is installed in the space normally occupied by a mechanical foot pedal. It has maximum and minimum stops that are built into the unit during manufacturing.

11.1 FUEL PEDAL ADJUSTMENT

The EFPA contains a throttle position sensor that varies the electrical signal sent to the ECM.

The sensor must be adjusted whenever an EFPA is serviced. In addition, the sensor should be adjusted any time codes 21 and 22 are flashed.

With the ignition "ON" and the proper diagnostic tool (DDR) (for information regarding the DDR, see "01 ENGINE" in this manual), check the throttle counts at idle and full throttle positions. Proper pedal output should be 20/30 counts at idle and 200/235 at full throttle. If adjustment is necessary, remove the potentiometer retaining screws and rotate the potentiometer clockwise to increase counts or counterclockwise to decrease. When correct output is confirmed, tighten retaining screws.

11.2 POTENTIOMETER REPLACEMENT

1. Disconnect cable harness connector.

Caution: Note the routing and clamping locations of the cable before disassembly. Proper cable routing and fastening is critical to the operation of this system. Marking the foot pedal assembly to record cable routing is recommended.

2. Loosen the two screws and remove potentiometer. Retain for re-assembly.
3. Discard potentiometer (Fig. 14).
4. Position new potentiometer. Press potentiometer onto the potentiometer shaft, matching cutouts in shaft to drive tangs of potentiometer. Apply hand pressure until potentiometer has bottomed out in housing. Reinstall screws (Fig. 14) and tighten just enough to secure potentiometer lightly. Tighten screws to 10 - 20 lbf-in (1.5 - .2 Nm).
5. Reconnect electronic foot pedal assembly's cable harness to the ECM connector. If potentiometer calibration is necessary (see "FUEL PEDAL ADJUSTMENT" in this section).

Caution: Make sure the cable harness is routed correctly, and securely installed so that it does not become pinched, stretched, or otherwise damaged during vehicle operation.

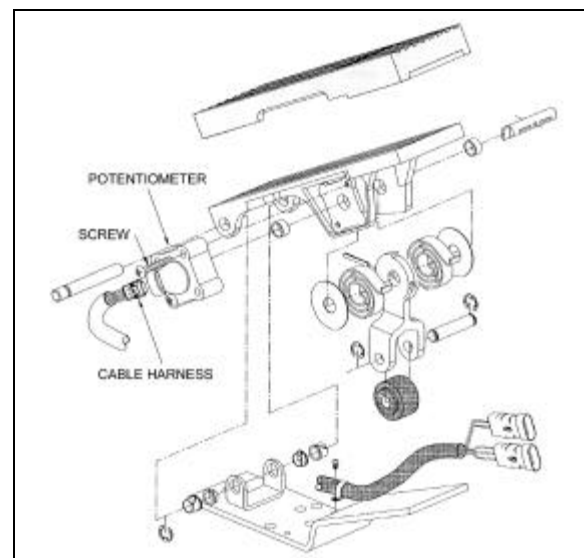


FIGURE 14: ELECTRONIC FOOT PEDAL ASSEMBLY 03035

12. SPECIFICATIONS

Davco FuelPro 382 Fuel Filter / Water Separator Element

Supplier number 23521528

Prévost number 531437

Primary Fuel Filter / Water Separator (optional)

(May be used instead of primary filter (never use with a primary filter).

Make Racor

Type Spin-on

ELEMENT

Supplier number S 3202

Prévost number 531390

BOWL

Supplier number RK30051

Prévost number 531389

DRAIN VALVE AND SEAL

Supplier number RK30058

Prévost number 531397

O-RING

Supplier number RK30076

Prévost number 531398

PROBE/WATER SENSOR

Supplier number RK21069

Prévost number 531391

Primary Fuel Filter

Make AC

Type Spin-on

Filter No. T-915D

Service Part No. 25014274

Prévost number 510137

OR

Service Part No (Type with Water Separator) 23512317

Prévost number 531407

Element torque 1/2 turn after gasket contact

Section 03: FUEL SYSTEM

Secondary Fuel Filter

Make AC
Type Spin-on
Filter No. T-916D
Service Part No. 25014342
Prévost number 510128
Element torque 1/2 turn after gasket contact

Fuel tank

Capacity 235 US gal (890 liters)

Air Cleaner

Make Nelson
Prevost Number 530206
Service Part No 7182 8N
Supplier number (element cartridge)..... 70337N
Prévost number (element cartridge)..... 530197

Air Cleaner Restriction Indicator

Make Donaldson
Model RBX00-2220
Indicates at 20" (508 mm) of water
Prévost number 530161

Preheater Fuel Filter

Make Webasto
Supplier number 603.359
Prévost number 871037

Fuel Cooler

Make Berendsen
Supplier number DB-1240
Prévost number 950109

SECTION 04: EXHAUST SYSTEM

CONTENTS

1. DESCRIPTION.....	04-2
2. MAINTENANCE	04-2
3. MUFFLER REMOVAL / INSTALLATION.....	04-2
4. FLEXIBLE TUBE INSTALLATION.....	04-2

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: FLEXIBLE TUBE INSTALLATION	04-2
FIGURE 2: EXHAUST SYSTEM	04-3

Section 04: EXHAUST SYSTEM

1. DESCRIPTION

The muffler is rubber mounted to the vehicle frame. This feature reduces the transmission of vibrations to the muffler thus resulting in extended life of muffler, brackets and other components.

2. MAINTENANCE

Inspect the exhaust system periodically for restrictions and leaks. Figure 2 presents the major components of the exhaust system. Restrictions such as kinked or crimped pipes result in excessive back pressure which can lead to increased fuel consumption, power loss and possible damage to engine combustion chamber components. Exhaust leaks are commonly the result of loose clamp bolts, corroded pipes or a punctured muffler. In addition to excessive noise, a leaking exhaust system could allow toxic gases to enter the vehicle. Damage to surrounding components from hot gases could result as well. Replace damaged or corroded exhaust components immediately.

Inspect the exhaust system as follows:

- At vehicle inspection intervals;
- Whenever a change is noticed to the sound the exhaust system makes;
- When components close to the exhaust system get unnaturally dirty.

When operating the engine in a closed area such as a service garage, vent exhaust gases to the outside by means of a shop vent hose placed over the exhaust outlet pipe.

Warning: Avoid breathing exhaust gases. Exhaust gases are poisonous and contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless gas that can cause unconsciousness or death. If exhaust gases are suspected of entering the vehicle, the cause(s) must be located and corrected immediately.

3. MUFFLER REMOVAL / INSTALLATION

Warning: Make sure muffler and components are cold before handling.

1. Remove bolts and clamps securing exhaust pipe bellows to muffler;
2. Support muffler from under vehicle;
3. Remove U-clamp retaining the tail pipe to the frame bracket;
4. Remove tail pipe;
5. Remove the fasteners holding the four rubber mounts to the frame brackets and the fasteners securing the rubber mounts to the muffler brackets;

Note: The front retaining bolts are accessible from the L.H. side axle wheel housing;

6. Remove rubber mounts. Lower muffler from under vehicle;
7. Remove attached parts from muffler such as brackets and collar. Inspect and replace if necessary.

For installation, reverse the removal procedure.

4. FLEXIBLE TUBE INSTALLATION

The flexible exhaust tube contains a rigid interior pipe (Fig. 1). To allow appropriate flexibility for assembly, be sure interior pipe is concentric to flexible part. To maintain the pipe centered at time of installation, insert cardboard spacers as shown (Fig. 1). These spacers may be left in place for they will deteriorate over time.

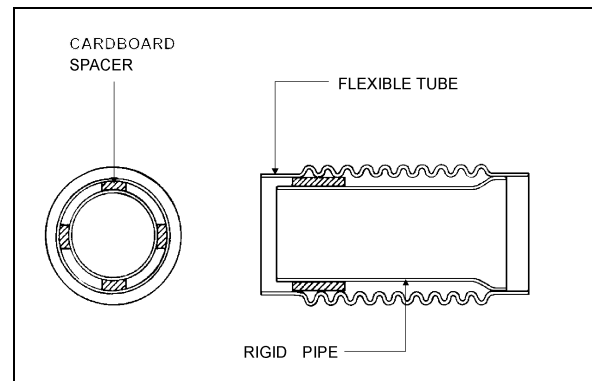


FIGURE 1: FLEXIBLE TUBE INSTALLATION

04003

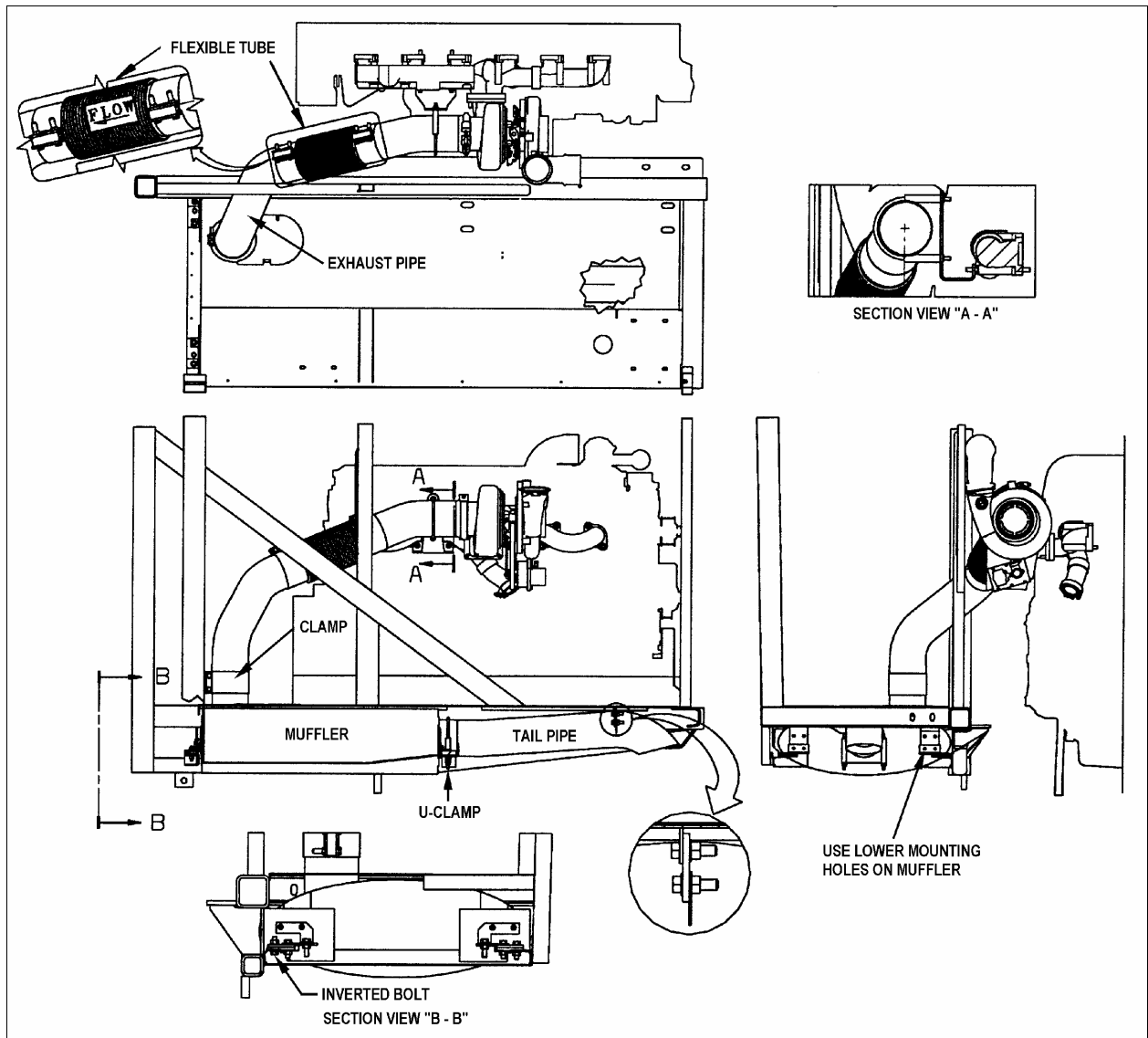


FIGURE 2: EXHAUST SYSTEM

04008

SECTION 05: COOLING SYSTEM

CONTENTS

1. DESCRIPTION	05-3
2. MAINTENANCE	05-4
2.1 VEHICLES WITHOUT COOLANT FILTERS	05-4
2.2 VEHICLES WITH COOLANT FILTERS	05-4
3. HOSES	05-5
3.1 CONSTANT-TORQUE HOSE CLAMPS	05-5
3.1.1 <i>Installation</i>	05-5
3.1.2 <i>Maintenance</i>	05-5
4. COOLANT	05-6
4.1 COOLANT LEVEL VERIFICATION	05-6
4.2 COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR	05-6
4.3 THAWING COOLING SYSTEM	05-6
4.4 COOLANT REQUIREMENTS	05-6
4.5 COOLING SYSTEM RECOMMENDATIONS	05-6
4.6 INHIBITORS	05-7
4.6.1 <i>Inhibitor Test Procedures</i>	05-7
4.7 COOLANT RECOMMENDATIONS	05-7
4.7.1 <i>Vehicles Without Coolant Filters</i>	05-8
4.7.2 <i>Vehicles With Coolant Filters</i>	05-8
5. DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM	05-8
6. FILLING COOLING SYSTEM	05-9
7. FLUSHING	05-10
7.1 COOLING SYSTEM DESCALERS	05-10
7.2 REVERSE FLUSHING	05-10
8. SPIN-ON COOLANT FILTER	05-11
9. RADIATOR	05-11
9.1 MAINTENANCE	05-11
10. VARIABLE SPEED RADIATOR FAN	05-12
10.1 MAINTENANCE	05-12
10.2 INSPECTION	05-12
10.3 THERMOSTAT OPERATION	05-13
11. FAN GEARBOX	05-13
11.1 MAINTENANCE	05-13
11.2 OIL CHANGE	05-13
12. RADIATOR FAN BELT REPLACEMENT	05-14
12.1 BELT TENSION ADJUSTMENT	05-14
13. FAN DRIVE ALIGNMENT	05-14
14. SPECIFICATIONS	05-16

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: COOLING SYSTEM	05-3
FIGURE 2: SURGE TANK - ENGINE COMPART	05-4
FIGURE 3: CONSTANT-TORQUE CLAMP	05-5
FIGURE 4: SURGE TANK SIGHT GLASS	05-6
FIGURE 5: ENGINE COMPARTMENT	05-8
FIGURE 6: ENGINE COOLANT DRAIN COCKS	05-9
FIGURE 7: WATER PUMP DRAIN PLUG	05-9
FIGURE 8: COOLANT FILTER	05-11
FIGURE 9: MECHANICAL LOCKING DEVICE	05-12
FIGURE 10: LOCATION OF THE SCREWS.....	05-12
FIGURE 11: THERMOSTAT AND RELATED PARTS.....	05-13
FIGURE 12: FAN GEARBOX	05-13
FIGURE 13: REAR START PANEL.....	05-14
FIGURE 14: REGULATOR VALVE	05-14
FIGURE 15: BELT TENSIONER	05-14
FIGURE 16: ANGLE SUPPORT.....	05-15
FIGURE 17: PULLEYS ALIGNMENT	05-15
FIGURE 18: PULLEY'S VERTICAL ANGLE	05-15

1. DESCRIPTION

A radiator and thermo-modulated fan are used to effectively dissipate the heat generated by the engine. A centrifugal-type water pump is used to circulate the engine coolant (Fig. 1).

Two full blocking-type thermostats are used in the water outlet passage to control the flow of coolant, providing fast engine warm-up and regulating coolant temperature.

The engine coolant is drawn from the lower portion of the radiator by the water pump and is forced through the transmission cooler before going through the oil cooler and the cylinder block.

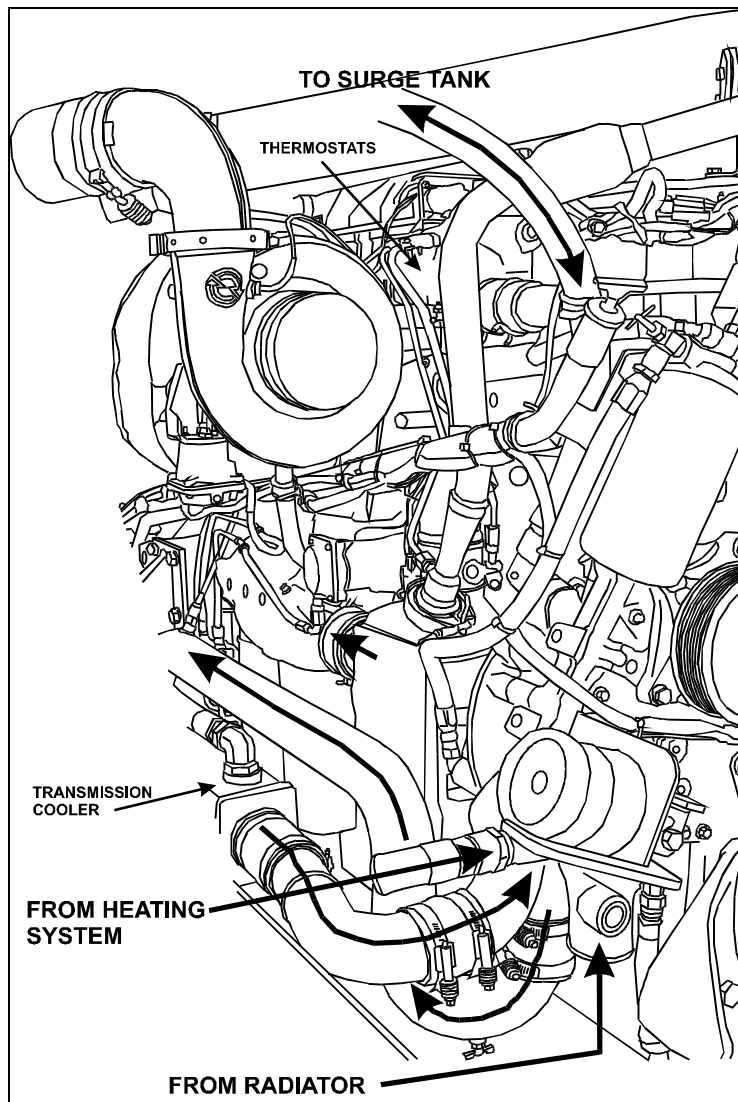


FIGURE 1: COOLING SYSTEM

05087

From the cylinder block, the coolant passes up through the cylinder head and, when the engine is at normal operating temperature, it goes through the thermostat housing and into the upper portion of the radiator. The coolant then passes through a series of tubes where its heat is dissipated by air streams created by the revolving fan and the motion of the vehicle.

Upon starting a cold engine or when the coolant is below normal operating temperature, the closed thermostats direct coolant flow from the thermostat housing through the by-pass tube to the water pump. Coolant is recirculated through the engine to aid engine warm up.

Section 05: COOLING SYSTEM

When the thermostat opening temperature is reached, coolant flow is divided between the radiator inlet and the by-pass tube. When the thermostats are completely open, all of the coolant flow is to the radiator inlet.

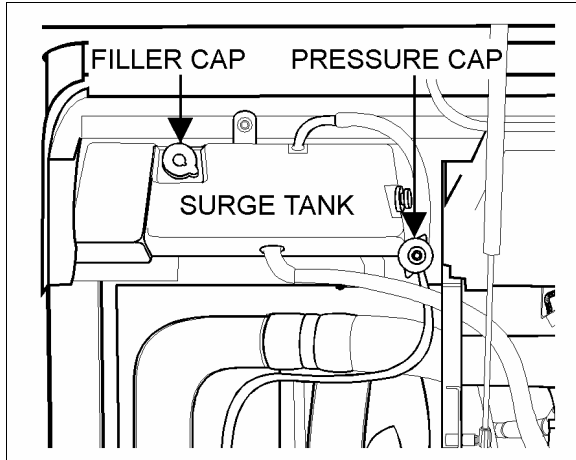


FIGURE 2: SURGE TANK - ENGINE COMPART.

05086

The cooling system is filled through a filler cap on the surge tank (Fig. 2). A pressure cap on top of surge tank is used to maintain pressure within the system. When system exceeds normal pressure rating (14 psi - 96.53 kPa), the cap releases air and if necessary, coolant through the overflow tube (Fig. 2). Two thermostats are located in the housing attached to the right side of the cylinder head (Fig. 1). Furthermore, a water temperature sensor mounted on the cylinder head (radiator side) is also supplied for engine protection purposes.

The engine cooling system also provides hot coolant fluid for the vehicle heating system. Refer to section 22, "HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING" in this manual for information relating to heating system water circulation.

2. MAINTENANCE

A systematic routine inspection of cooling system components is essential to ensure maximum engine and heating system efficiency.

- Check coolant level in the surge tank daily, and correct if required. Test antifreeze strength.
- Maintain the prescribed inhibitor strength levels as required. Coolant and inhibitor concentration must be checked at each oil change, every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first to

ensure inhibitor strength. For vehicles equipped with coolant filters replace precharge element filter with a maintenance element filter as per "COOLANT FILTER" in this section. If the vehicle is not equipped with a filter, add the recommended inhibitor concentration to the antifreeze/water solution.

- Drain, flush, thoroughly clean and refill the system every two years or every 200,000 miles (320 000 km), whichever comes first. For vehicle equipped with coolant filters, change the precharge element filter or the existing maintenance element filter for a new maintenance element filter. If the vehicle is not equipped with filters add the recommended inhibitor concentration to the antifreeze/water solution.

Note: Do not add inhibitors to the antifreeze / water solution if vehicle is equipped with a coolant filter.

Coolant must be discarded in an environmentally safe manner.

2.1 VEHICLES WITHOUT COOLANT FILTERS

Refer to Nalcool 3000 with Stabil-Aid bulletin annexed to the end of this section for preventive maintenance (at each oil change) and initial treatment instructions (each time the cooling system is drained and flushed).

2.2 VEHICLES WITH COOLANT FILTERS

Change the coolant precharge element filter for a maintenance element filter at initial oil change (see "Specifications" at the end of this section) and replace existing maintenance element filter with a new one as per "COOLANT FILTER" in this section. A precharge element filter must be installed each time the cooling system is drained and flushed prior to installing a maintenance element filter.

- Check belts for proper tension; adjust as necessary and replace any frayed or badly worn belts.
- Check radiator cores for leaks and make sure the cores are not clogged with dirt or insects. To avoid damaging the fins, clean cores with a low-pressure air hose. Steam clean if required.

- Inspect the water pump operation. A leaky pump sucks in air, increasing corrosion.
- Repair all leaks promptly. Unrepaired leaks can lead to trouble. Inspect and tighten radiator mounts periodically. Test and replace thermostats regularly.

Note: In order to ensure the integrity of the system, it is recommended that a periodic cooling system pressure check be made. Pressurize the cooling system to 103-138 kPa (15-20 psi) using Radiator and Cooling System Tester, J24460-1. Do not exceed 138 kPa (20 psi).

Any measurable drop in pressure may indicate a leak. Whenever the oil pan is removed, the cooling system should be pressure checked as a means of identifying any incipient coolant leaks. Make sure the cause of the internal leak has been corrected before flushing the contaminated system.

Leaks at the thermostat housing hose connections may be caused by deformation of connections or by rough surfaces on the castings of the hose mounting surfaces. It is recommended that "Dow Corning RTV-102 Compound" or any equivalent product be applied on cast surfaces prior to hose installation.

Caution: Castings should be clean and free of oil and grease before applying compound. No other sealer should be used with RTV-102 compound.

3. HOSES

Rotten, swollen, and worn out hoses or loose connections are frequent causes of cooling system problems.

Serious overheating is often caused by an old hose collapsing or from rotten rubber shedding from hoses and clogging the coolant passages.

Connections should be inspected periodically and hose clamps tightened. Replace any hose found to be cracked or swollen.

When installing a new hose, clean pipe connections and apply a thin layer of a non-hardening sealing compound. Replace worn out clamps or clamps that pinch hoses.

3.1 CONSTANT-TORQUE HOSE CLAMPS

All hose clamps of 1 3/8" ID and over, used on the heating and cooling systems, are of the "Constant-torque" type. These clamps are worm-driven, made of stainless steel, and supplied with a series of Belleville spring washers. They also feature an extended integral liner that covers the band slots to protect soft/silicone hoses from damage, and help maintain consistent sealing pressure.

This type of clamp is designed to automatically adjust its diameter to compensate for the normal expansion/contraction of a hose and metal connection that occurs during vehicle operation and shutdown. The constant-torque clamp virtually eliminates coolant losses due to "Cold flow" leakage and greatly minimizes clamp maintenance.

3.1.1 Installation

A torque wrench should be used for proper installation. The recommended torque is 90 to 100 lbf-in. (10 to 11 Nm). The Belleville spring washer stacks should be nearly collapsed flat and the screw tip should extend 1/4" (6 mm) beyond the housing (Fig. 3).

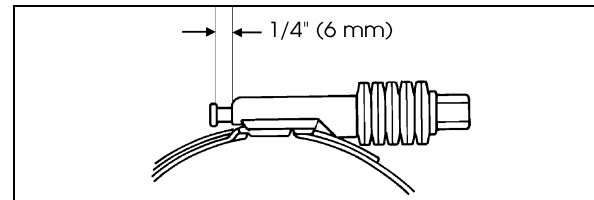


FIGURE 3: CONSTANT-TORQUE CLAMP

05037

Caution: The hose clamps will break if over-torqued. Do not over-tighten, especially during cold weather when hose has contracted.

3.1.2 Maintenance

The constant-torque clamps contain a "Visual torque check" feature. When the tip of the screw is extending 1/4" (6 mm) out of the housing, the clamp is properly installed and maintains a leak-proof connection. Since the constant-torque clamp automatically adjusts to keep a consistent sealing pressure, there is no need to retorquing hose clamps on a regular basis. During vehicle operation and shutdown, the screw tip will adjust according to the temperature and pressure changes. Checking for proper torque should be done at room temperature.

Section 05: COOLING SYSTEM

4. COOLANT

4.1 COOLANT LEVEL VERIFICATION

Coolant level is correct when cold coolant is visible through the surge tank sight glass (Fig. 4). If coolant level is low, fill cooling system.

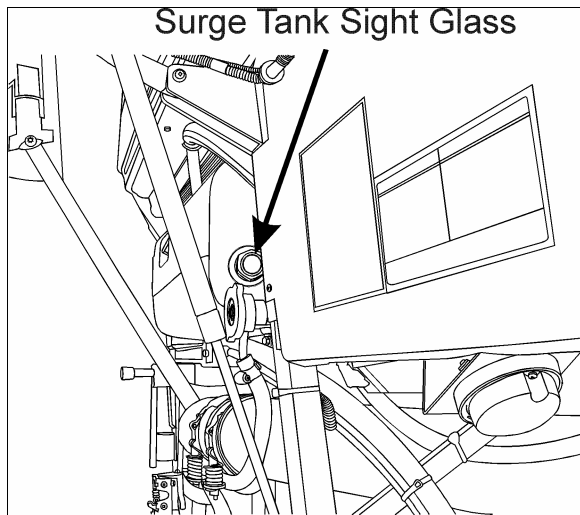


FIGURE 4: SURGE TANK SIGHT GLASS

05066

4.2 COOLANT LEVEL SENSOR

This warning device consists of a fluid level probe mounted on the surge tank. The probe sends a signal to the ECM to indicate coolant level. If the coolant level drops below the probe, the "Check Engine" light flashes and a diagnostic code is registered (see section 01 "ENGINE").

Caution: Do not run engine with the "Check Engine" light flashing.

The level probe is mounted on the R.H. side of the surge tank while the electronic module is mounted inside the rear electric junction box.

4.3 THAWING COOLING SYSTEM

If the cooling system becomes frozen solid, place the coach in a warm area until the ice is completely thawed. Under no circumstances should the engine be operated when the cooling system is frozen, as it will result in engine overheating due to insufficient coolant.

Once thawed, check engine, radiator and related components for damage caused by expansion of frozen coolant fluid.

4.4 COOLANT REQUIREMENTS

The coolant provides a medium for heat transfer and controls the internal temperature of the engine during operation. In an engine having proper coolant flow, some of the combustion heat is conveyed through the cylinder walls and the cylinder head into the coolant. Without adequate coolant, normal heat transfer cannot take place within the engine, and engine temperature rapidly rises. Coolant must therefore be carefully selected and properly maintained.

Select and maintain coolant in order to meet the following basic requirements:

- Provide for adequate heat transfer.
- Provide protection from cavitation damage.
- Provide a corrosion and erosion resistant environment within the cooling system.
- Prevent formation of scale or sludge deposits in the cooling system.
- Be compatible with the cooling system hose and seal materials.
- Provide adequate freeze protection during cold weather operation.

Combining suitable water with reliable inhibitors satisfies the first five requirements. When freeze protection is required, a solution of suitable water and antifreeze containing adequate inhibitors will provide a satisfactory coolant fluid. Ethylene glycol-based antifreeze is recommended for use in Series 60 engines. The cooling system capacity is 24 US gal (91 liters).

Note: In general, antifreeze does not contain adequate inhibitors. For this reason, supplemental coolant additives are required.

For a complete overview of engine coolants used with Detroit Diesel Engines, refer to "Specifications" in the Detroit Diesel Series 60 "Engine Operator's Guide".

4.5 COOLING SYSTEM RECOMMENDATIONS

Always maintain cooling system at the proper coolant level. Check daily.

The cooling system must be pressurized to prevent localized boiling of coolant. The system must be kept clean and leak-free. The filler and pressure caps must be checked periodically for proper operation.

4.6 INHIBITORS

A coolant solution, which has insufficient inhibitors or no inhibitors at all, invites the formation of rust, scale, sludge and mineral deposits within the cooling system. These deposits can cause water pump seal wear and coat the interior of coolant system passages. Heat transfer is reduced as deposits build up, leading to an overheating condition. Continued operation with this condition can lead to serious engine damage: liner scuffing, scoring, piston seizure and cylinder head cracking. These damages can occur quickly or over a longer period of time, depending of location and amount of deposits. Improperly inhibited coolants can become corrosive enough to "eat away" coolant passages and seal ring grooves and cause leaks to develop. Hydrostatic lock can occur if leak is internal and accumulates on top of a piston. The result may be a bent connecting rod. Cavitation erosion may occur in improperly inhibited coolants. Cavitation erosion is caused by the implosion of tiny bubbles against localized surfaces of the system. Such implosion causes pinpoint pressures high enough to erode pump impellers, cylinder liners and cylinder blocks. In extreme cases, their surfaces are so deeply pitted that they appear to be spongy, and holes can develop completely through them.

4.6.1 Inhibitor Test Procedures

Test Kits are commercially available to check engine coolant for nitrite concentration. Nitrite concentration is an indication of Supplemental Coolant Additive (SCA) level. Nitrite must be maintained within recommended levels. Coolant must be tested at each oil change to insure that inhibitor levels are maintained within the ranges shown below:

Detroit Diesel Selected Products System		
	Min. PPM	Max PPM
Boron (B)	1000	1500
Nitrite (NO ₂)	800	2400
Nitrates (NO ₃)	1000	2000
Silicon (Si)	50	250
Phosphorous (P)	300	500
pH	8.5	10.5

Note: Above SCA values with GM6038-M or ASTM 4985. Use Nalco Chemical Company nitrite test kits (CO-318). A factory coolant analysis program is available through Detroit Diesel distributors under part number 23508774.

4.7 COOLANT RECOMMENDATIONS

1. Always use recommended antifreeze, inhibitor and water at proper concentration levels. A 50% coolant/water solution is normally used as factory fill. Antifreeze concentration over 70% is not recommended because of poor heat transfer capability, adverse freeze protection and silicate dropout. Antifreeze concentration below 30% offers little freeze, boilover or corrosion protection.
2. Use only ethylene glycol antifreeze meeting the GM 6038-M or ASTM D 4985 formulation or an equivalent antifreeze with a 0.15% maximum silicate content meeting GM 1899-M performance specifications.
3. Use an antifreeze solution year-round for freeze and boil-over protection. Seasonal changing of coolant from an antifreeze solution to an inhibitor/water solution is recommended.
4. Pre-mix coolant makeup solutions at proper concentrations before adding to the cooling system.
5. Maintain the prescribed inhibitor strength levels as required.
6. Do not mix different base inhibitor packages.
7. Always maintain proper coolant level.

Caution: Always test the solution before adding water or antifreeze.

Section 05: COOLING SYSTEM

8. If cooling system is not at the proper protection level. Mix coolant/water solution to the proper concentration before adding to the cooling system
9. Use only non-chromate inhibitors.
10. Distilled water is recommended.

DO NOT USE THE FOLLOWING:

- Soluble oil;
- Chromate inhibitor;
- Methoxy propanol-base antifreeze;
- Methyl alcohol-base antifreeze;
- Sealer additives or antifreezes containing sealer additives;

Warning: Never remove filler cap while coolant is hot. When coolant is at ambient temperature, release pressure from system by turning the pressure cap counterclockwise $\frac{1}{4}$ turn; then remove filler cap slowly. A sudden release of pressure from the heated cooling system can result in severe burns from the expulsion of hot coolant fluid.

4.7.1 Vehicles Without Coolant Filters

Refer to Nalcool 3000 with Stabil-Aid bulletin annexed to the end of this section for preventive maintenance (at each oil change) and initial treatment instructions (each time the cooling system is drained and flushed).

4.7.2 Vehicles With Coolant Filters

Change the coolant precharge element filter for a maintenance element filter at initial oil change (see Specifications at the end of this section) and replace existing maintenance element filter with a new one as per "COOLANT FILTER" in this section. A precharge element filter must be installed each time the cooling system is drained and flushed before installing a maintenance element filter.

Note: The coolant filter contains inhibitors.

5. DRAINING COOLING SYSTEM

Use the following procedures to drain the cooling system partially or completely.

To drain engine and related components:

1. Stop engine and allow engine to cool. Close both heater line shutoff valves. One valve is located in the engine compartment under the radiator fan gearbox (Fig. 5). Another valve is located behind the L.H. rear fender near the optional coolant heater.

Note: Refer to section 22 under "Preheating System" for information about preheater access and heater line shutoff valve.

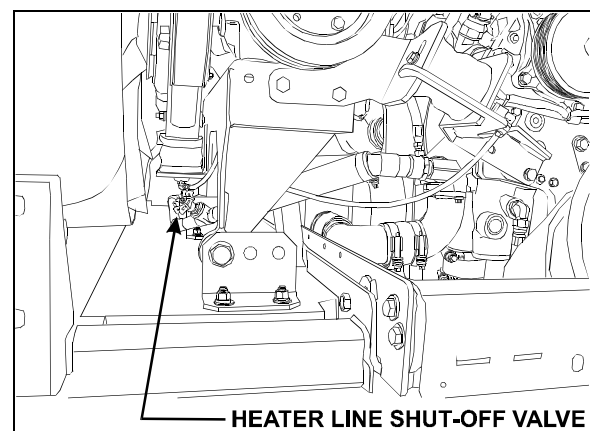


FIGURE 5: ENGINE COMPARTMENT

05078T

Warning: Before proceeding with the following steps, make sure the coolant has cooled down. The sudden release of pressure from a heated cooling system can result in loss of coolant and possible personal injury (scalding) from the hot liquid.

2. Unscrew the surge tank pressure cap counterclockwise, $\frac{1}{4}$ turn to let air enter the system and permit the coolant to drain completely from system.

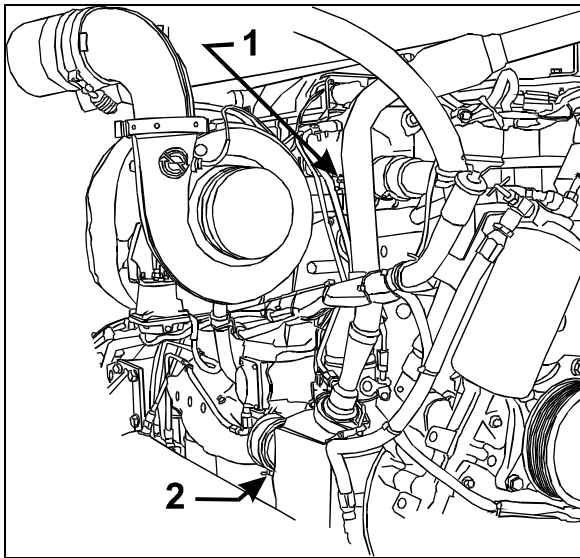


FIGURE 6: ENGINE COOLANT DRAIN COCKS 05088

3. Open the water pump housing inlet line drain PLUG (Fig. 7).

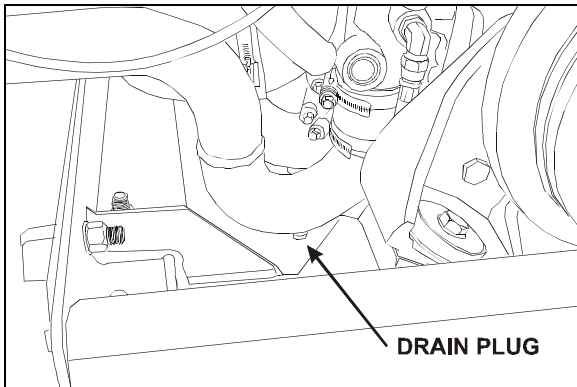


FIGURE 7: WATER PUMP DRAIN PLUG 05072

4. Open drain cock at bottom of thermostat housing to drain the coolant trapped above the thermostats (1, Fig. 6).
5. Open the radiator drain cock (Fig. 5).
6. Open engine drain cock (2, Fig. 7).
7. Remove the transmission oil cooler. Drain, flush and inspect. Refer to Section 7, "TRANSMISSION" for oil cooler maintenance or preventive replacement.

Caution: If freezing weather is anticipated and the engine is not protected with antifreeze, drain the cooling system completely when vehicle is not in use. Trapped water in the cylinder block, radiator or other components may freeze and expand resulting in damages. Leave the drain plugs open until the cooling system can be filled with coolant fluid. Do not run engine with cooling system empty.

To drain the entire system, do the previous steps while maintaining the shutoff valves in the open position; then follow the procedure under "Draining Heating System" in Section 22.

6. FILLING COOLING SYSTEM

If only the engine and related components were drained, maintain the two heater line shutoff valves in their closed position, then proceed as follows:

1. Close all drain cocks. Refer to draining procedure for the location of draining points.
2. Refill cooling system from the surge tank filler cap inlet with a recommended ethylene glycol-based antifreeze and water solution of the required concentration. Add Detroit Diesel selected product cooling system inhibitors (if required).

Note: The coolant level should remain within two inches of the surge tank filler neck.

Note: Make sure the purge line at top of thermostat housing is properly connected and not obstructed. The purge line (thermostat housing dome to radiator top tank) is required to ensure complete engine fill and proper purging of air in the system.

3. Install the filler and pressure caps, then start the engine and run it at fast idle until reaching normal operating temperature. Check for leaks.

Note: If for any reason, the coolant level drops below the surge tank level probe, the Check Engine light will flash.

4. Stop engine and allow cooling.
5. Open the two heater line shutoff valves, check the coolant level in the surge tank, and then add as required.

Section 05: COOLING SYSTEM

Caution: *Never pour cold coolant into a hot engine. The sudden change in temperature may crack the cylinder head or block.*

If the entire system has been drained, redo the previous steps while maintaining the two heater line shutoff valves in the "Open" position. With engine running, activate the driver's and central heating systems to permit coolant circulation. If the vehicle is equipped with a windshield upper section defroster, momentarily pinch the hose located between the recirculating pump suction and the defroster outlet connector to ensure windshield upper section defroster complete filling. Complete the procedure by bleeding the heater cores as explained in Section 22, under "9.4 Bleeding Heating System".

7. FLUSHING

If the cooling system is contaminated, flush the cooling system as follows:

1. Drain the coolant from the engine.
2. Refill with clean water.

Caution: *If the engine is hot, fill slowly to prevent rapid cooling and distortion of the engine castings.*

3. To thoroughly circulate the water, start and run the engine for 15 minutes after the thermostats have opened.
4. Fully drain system.
5. Refill with clean water and operate for 15 minutes after the thermostats have opened.
6. Stop engine and allow to cool.
7. Fully drain system.

Vehicles without coolant filters:

Fill with a 50/50-antifreeze/water solution and add required inhibitors.

Vehicles with coolant filters:

Replace the coolant filter with a precharge element filter; in this case do not mix inhibitors with antifreeze/water solution.

Dispose of spent fluids in an environmentally responsible manner according to regulations in effect in your area.

7.1 COOLING SYSTEM DESCALERS

If the engine overheats and the fan belt tension, coolant level and thermostat operation have been found to be satisfactory, it may be necessary to de-scale and flush the entire cooling system.

Remove scale formation by using a reputable and safe de-scaling solvent. Immediately after using the de-scaling solvent, neutralize with a neutralizing agent. It is important that product directions be thoroughly read and followed.

After using the solvent and neutralizer, fully drain the system, then reverse flush the engine and radiator (see "Reverse Flushing" in this section) before filling the system with coolant solution.

7.2 REVERSE FLUSHING

After the engine and radiator have been thoroughly de-scaled, they should be reverse-flushed. The water pump should be removed and the radiator and engine reverse-flushed separately to prevent dirt and scale deposits from clogging the radiator tubes or being forced through the pump. Reverse flushing is accomplished by hot water, under pressure, being forced through the cooling system in a direction opposite to the normal flow of coolant, loosening and forcing deposits out.

The radiator is reverse flushed as follows:

1. Remove the radiator inlet and outlet hoses and replace existing radiator cap with a new one.
2. Attach a hose to the top of the radiator to lead water away from the engine.
3. Attach a hose at the bottom of the radiator and insert a flushing gun in the hose.
4. Connect the water hose of the gun to the water outlet and the air hose to the compressed air outlet.
5. Turn on the water and when the radiator is full, turn on the air in short blasts, allowing the radiator to fill between blasts.

Note: *Apply air gradually. Do not exert more than 138 kPa (20 psi) air pressure. Too great a pressure may rupture a radiator tube.*

6. Continue flushing until only clean water is expelled from the radiator.

The cylinder block and cylinder head water passages are reverse flushed as follows:

1. Remove the thermostats and the water pump.
2. Attach a hose to the water inlet of oil cooler housing to drain water away from engine.
3. Attach a hose to the water outlet at the top of the cylinder head (thermostat housing) and insert the flushing gun in the hose.
4. Turn on the water until the jackets are filled, and then turn on the air in short blasts. Allow jackets to fill with water between air blasts.
5. Continue flushing until the water from the engine runs clean.

If scale deposits in the radiator cannot be removed by chemical cleaners or reverse flushing as outlined above, it may be necessary to remove the upper tank and rod out the individual radiator tubes with flat steel rods. Circulate the water through the radiator core from the bottom to the top during this operation.

8. SPIN-ON COOLANT FILTER

The optional engine cooling system filter is used to filter out impurities such as scale or sand from the coolant and it also eliminates the process of adding inhibitors to the antifreeze/water solution. The filter is located beside the belt tensioning arm (Fig. 9).

The precharge element filter lasts for 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or one year, whichever comes first. Replace the precharge element filter with a maintenance element filter, which lasts for 200,000 miles (320 000 km) or two years, whichever comes first. Each time the coolant is renewed, a precharge element filter must be installed before installing a maintenance element filter.

Note: If a coolant filter is to be installed on an engine already in service, drain and flush the cooling system before installing the filter.

To replace a filter:

1. Close the two filter shutoff cocks on the filter mounting head and unscrew the old filter from mounting.

Warning: Failure to relieve cooling system pressure may result in personal injury.

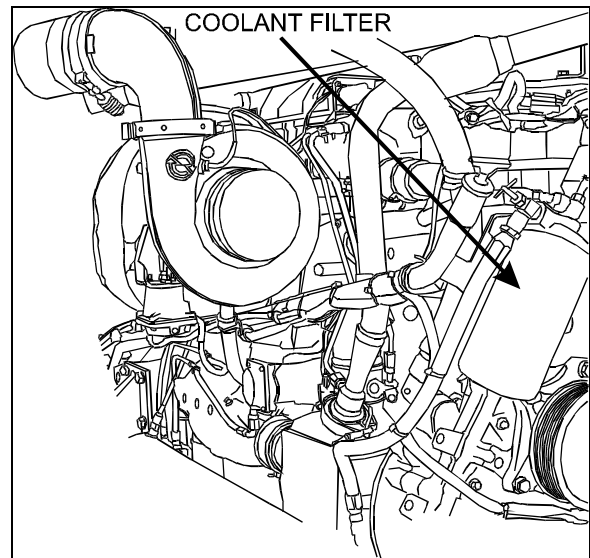


FIGURE 8: COOLANT FILTER

05072

2. Remove and discard the filter.
3. Clean the filter adapter with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Coat surface of gasket with oil, tighten 2/3 to 1 turn after gasket makes contact with head.
5. Open the two filter shutoff cocks.
6. Start engine and check for leaks.

Caution: Do not exceed recommended service intervals.

9. RADIATOR

The radiator is mounted at the L.H. side of engine compartment. It is designed to reduce the temperature of the coolant under all operating conditions. It is essential that the radiator core be kept clean and free from corrosion and scale at all times.

9.1 MAINTENANCE

Inspect the exterior of the radiator core every 25,000 miles (40 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first. Clean with a quality grease solvent, such as a mineral spirits and dry with compressed air. Do not use fuel oil, kerosene, gasoline, or any caustic material. It may be necessary to clean the radiator more frequently if the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or dirty areas. Refer to coolant system flushing and reverse flushing in this section for maintenance of radiator interior.

10. VARIABLE SPEED RADIATOR FAN

The radiator fan has two thermostatically controlled speeds. The ECM controls the speed by comparing data from engine temperature, coolant temperature and air inlet temperature to a set of calibration data. The fan drive clutch is electromagnetic; the ECM sends an electric current to regulate speed by activating one magnetic coil for the first speed and two magnetic coils for the second speed.

The settings are:

- 190°F (87.5°C) Thermostat starts to open
- 192°F (89°C) Fan medium speed, descending, off
- 196°F (91°C) Fan medium speed, rising, on
- 199.5°F (93°C) Fan high speed, descending, off
- 203°F (95°C) Fan high speed, rising, on
- 205°F (96°C) Thermostats fully open

Note: In case of an electrical power failure: remove the bolt from the end of the shaft and screw it into the locking plate. This procedure will prevent engine from overheating by forcing fan rotation (Fig. 9). On certain models, the mechanical locking device consists of two threaded bushings fixed on the pulley and two drilled metal plates fixed on the rotor. Use the two screws located on the face of the clutch to fasten the metal plates and the bushings (Fig.10).

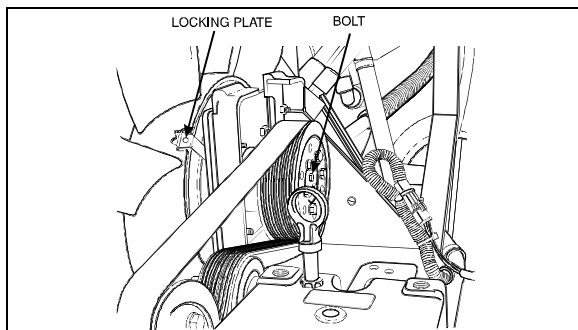


FIGURE 9: MECHANICAL LOCKING DEVICE

05061

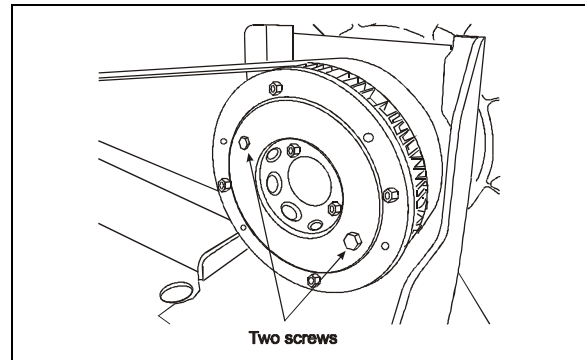


FIGURE 10: LOCATION OF THE SCREWS

10.1 MAINTENANCE

1. Clean the fan and related parts with clean fuel oil and dry them with compressed air. Do not clean with steam or high-pressure jet.
2. Check the fan blades for cracks or other damage. Replace the fan if the blades are cracked or deformed.
3. Remove any rust or rough spots in the grooves of the fan pulley. If the grooves are damaged or severely worn, replace the pulley.
4. Do not add any fluids or lubricants to the fan driving mechanism.
5. Do not restrict fan rotation during engine operation for any reason.
6. Do not operate fan-driving mechanism with a damaged fan assembly. Replace a damaged fan as soon as the fault is noted.
7. Immediately investigate and correct any operator complaint involving driving mechanism or cooling system performance.
8. When questions arise, obtain answers before proceeding. Assistance is available through the authorized Field Sales distributor serving your area.

10.2 INSPECTION

Warning: Set the starter selector switch in engine compartment to the "Off" position to prevent accidental starting of the engine.

- Check security of fasteners securing fan blade assembly to fan driving mechanism.
- Check coupling installation between fan blade assembly and gearbox.
- Visually inspect fan driving mechanism, fan blade assembly, shroud, radiator, and

surrounding area for evidence of contact between rotating and non-rotating parts.

- Check fan transfer belt for fraying, cracking, and proper tension.
- Turn fan through at least 360° of rotation. It should turn smoothly with no resistance.

10.3 THERMOSTAT OPERATION

Coolant temperature is controlled by two blocking-type thermostats located in a housing attached to the cylinder head, on the turbo side of the engine (Fig. 11).

At coolant temperature below approximately 190°F (88°C), the thermostat valves remain closed and block the flow of coolant from the engine to the radiator. During this period, all of the coolant in the system is recirculated through the engine and directed back to the suction side of the water pump via a bypass tube. As the coolant temperature rises above 190°F (88°C) the thermostat valves start to open, restricting the bypass system, and allowing a portion of the coolant to recirculate through the radiator. When the coolant temperature reaches approximately 205-207°F (96-97°C) thermostat valves are fully open, the bypass system is blocked off and the coolant is directed through the radiator.

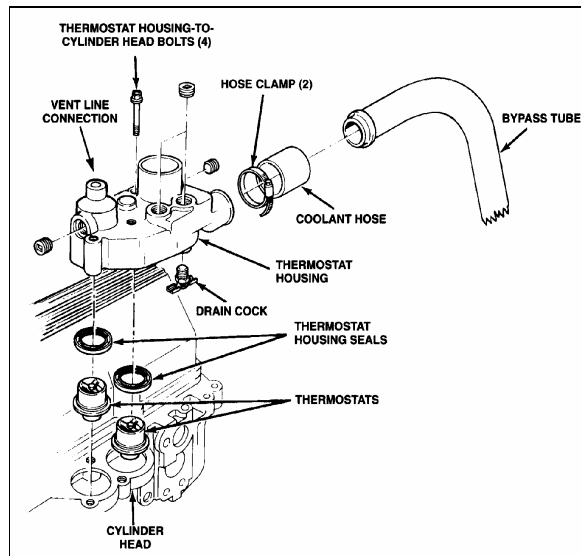


FIGURE 11: THERMOSTAT AND RELATED PARTS 05034

11. FAN GEARBOX

The radiator fan is belt driven from the engine crankshaft pulley through a standard gearbox, which is designed with two output shafts.

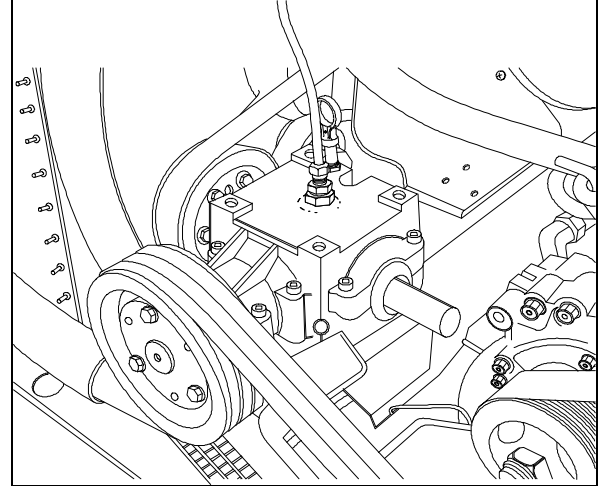


FIGURE 12: FAN GEARBOX

05062T

11.1 MAINTENANCE

Change the gearbox oil at 3,000 miles (4,800 km) and subsequently every 50,000 miles (80,000-km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

11.2 OIL CHANGE

1. Stop engine and make sure that all engine safety precautions have been observed.
2. Remove the drain plug located underneath the gearbox case.
3. Drain gearbox.
4. Replace drain plug.
5. Remove the dipstick located on top of gearbox and wipe with a clean rag (Fig. 12).
6. Insert dipstick in gearbox case, then remove again to check mark.
7. Unfasten tube and its connector from the gearbox case.
8. Adjust level to "Full" mark using Mobil SHC 630 (Prévost #683666) synthetic oil.
9. Reinsert the dipstick to check mark then fasten tube and connector.

Section 05: COOLING SYSTEM

Caution: Vehicles up to V.I.N. #2PCH3341XX1012847 used Mobil SHC 634 (Prévost #682268). Do not mix these two types of oil.

12. RADIATOR FAN BELT REPLACEMENT

Locate the belt tensioner pressure-releasing valve (Fig. 13), then turn handle clockwise in order to release pressure in belt tensioner air bellows, thus releasing tension on belts.

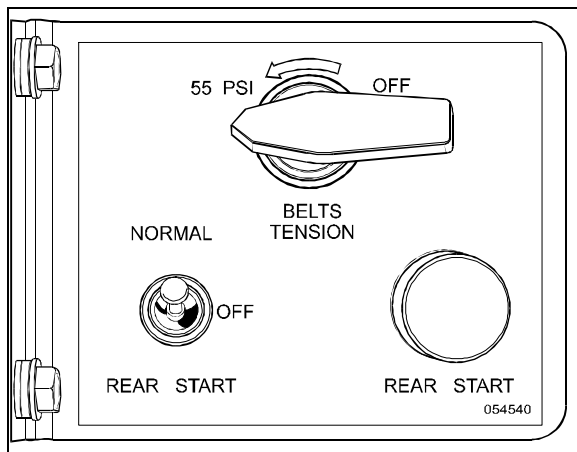


FIGURE 13: REAR START PANEL

01044

Remove existing belts (3 $\frac{3}{4}$ belts & 1 Poly) from fan assembly and replace with new ones.

Turn the pressure-releasing valve counter-clockwise to its initial position to apply tension on the new belts.

Note: For proper operation of the belts, adjust the air bellows tensioner pressure regulating valve (located next to control valve) to 45 psi (310 kPa).

12.1 BELT TENSION ADJUSTMENT

The regulator is located behind the belt tension release valve panel in the engine compartment. Turn the adjustment screw located on top of the regulator valve to change the tension pressure. Check proper pressure using the pressure check valve (Fig. 14).

Use Belt Tension Gauge #68-2404 to measure tension of engine belts. For proper operation of air tensioners, adjust upper tensioning bracket to provide a $\frac{1}{4}$ " (7 mm) gap between stopper and bracket under normal pressure of 45 psi - 310 kPa. Refer to figure 15 for more information.

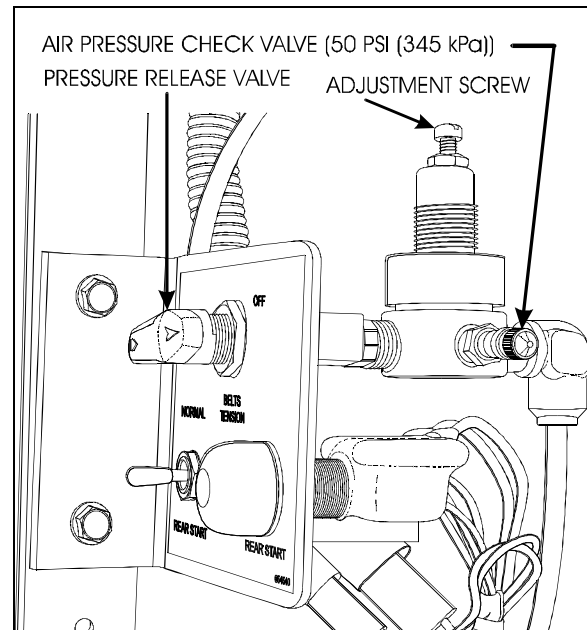


FIGURE 14: REGULATOR VALVE

01058

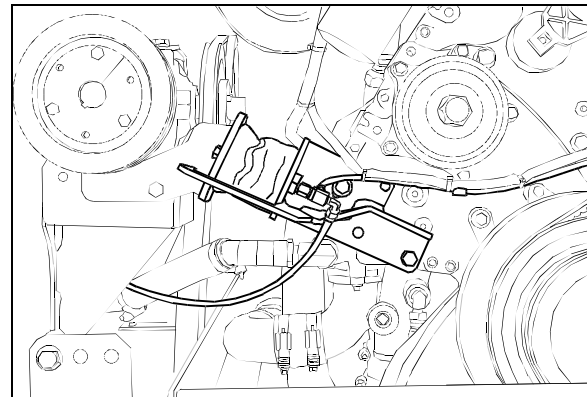
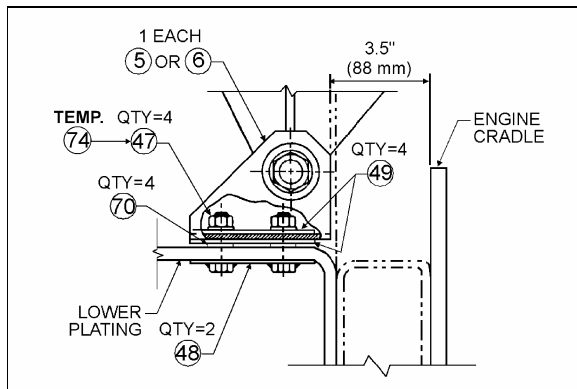


FIGURE 15: BELT TENSIONER

01059

13. FAN DRIVE ALIGNMENT

1. Install both attachment assembly plates (P/N 051779) (48, Fig. 16) through lower plating and secure with four spring nuts (P/N 500666), (70, Fig. 16). Then install one spacer (P/N 050705), (49, Fig. 16) on each spring nut at both anchoring locations (Fig. 16).

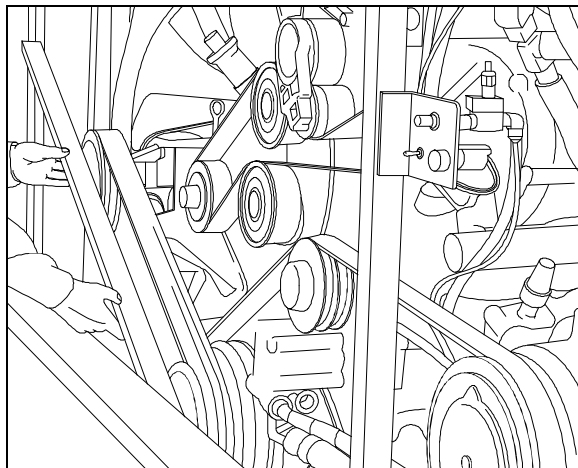

FIGURE 16: ANGLE SUPPORT

05014

2. Center seat assembly in the fan shroud using the horizontal displacement of the fan driving mechanism support. Center with the slots in the floor at anchoring angle support (on some vehicles only). Vertical displacement of the fan clutch is made possible by slots at the base of the fan clutch (on some vehicles only) or by shimming with additional spacers at anchoring locations. Temporarily secure assembly with two nuts (P/N 500709), (74, Fig. 16) at both anchoring locations.

Caution: Tilt fan and check for clearance.

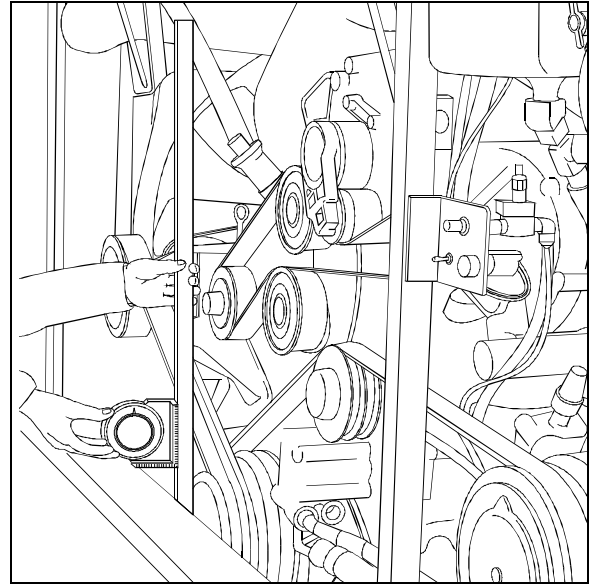
3. Using a straight edge, align the 3"V"pulley on gearbox central shaft pulley with engine pulley, while taking pulleys outer edge thickness under consideration i.e. 3"V"pulley's outer edge is thicker than that of engine pulley's (Fig. 17).


FIGURE 17: PULLEYS ALIGNMENT

05064

4. Using a universal protractor, check 3"V" pulley's vertical angle with that of engine pulleys. If angles do not correspond, raise seat assembly by shimming with additional spacers (#49 - P/N 050705).

Note: Use a straight edge to measure engine pulley's vertical angle (Fig. 18).


FIGURE 18: PULLEY'S VERTICAL ANGLE

05063

5. Check alignments again (steps 3, 4 & 5) then replace temporary anchoring nuts (P/N 500709) (74, Fig. 16) with four nuts (P/N 500714) (47, Fig. 16) and wrench tighten.
6. Align multi "V" pulley with fan pulley. Adjust the depth of the pulley on the gearbox shaft.
7. Set belt tensioner pressure regulating valve to 45 PSI (310 kPa).

Caution: In order for tensioning system to work properly, adjust upper tensioning bracket to provide a 1/4" (7 mm) gap between stopper and bracket under normal pressure of 45 psi - 310 kPa). Otherwise, release tension on system and readjust distance using bolts securing upper tensioning bracket (Fig. 15).

Section 05: COOLING SYSTEM

14. SPECIFICATIONS

Cooling System Capacity (Approximation)

Includes heating system 24 US gal (91 liters)

Thermostat

Number used 2

Start to open 186-193°F (86-89°C)

Fully open 207°F (97°C)

Radiator

Make Valeo

Location Rear L.H. side

H3-41 & H3-45 Coach, VIP-45

Supplier number 1040149

Prevost number 550819

Surge Tank Filler Cap

Make Stant

Model R3

Prevost number 530191

Pressure Cap

Make Stant

Pressure setting 14 psi (96.53 kPa)

Supplier number R12

Prevost number 550606

Fan Clutch

Make Linnig

Type 3 speed

Supplier number LA1.2.013Y

Prevost number 550839

Note: The fan clutch is controlled by DDEC (not by thermoswitch).

Fan Gearbox

Make Superior Gearbox

Ratio 1:1

Supplier number R500-9AAC-B0193

Prevost number 550810

Lubricating Oil MOBIL SHC 630

Prevost number (Oil) 683666

Fan Belt (gearbox-fan)

Make Dayco

Type Poly-V

Qty 1

Section 05: COOLING SYSTEM

H3-45, H3-41 Coach:

Supplier number 10-1900
Prevost number 5060028

H3-45 VIP:

Supplier number 12PK-2100
Prevost number 507627

Fan Belt (gearbox-motor)

Make Dayco
Type V-belt
Qty 3

H3-45 Coach and H3-45 VIP:

Supplier number 3/BX-74
Prevost number 502918

Corrosion Inhibitor and Coolant Stabilizer

Supplier number.....Detroit Diesel 23507857
Supplier number.....Nalco DD3000-15

Coolant Filter

Number used 1
Make Nalco
Type Spin-on

MAINTENANCE ELEMENT FILTER

Supplier number.Detroit Diesel 23507545
Supplier number.....Nalco DDF3000
Prevost number 550630

PRECHARGE ELEMENT FILTER

Supplier number.Detroit Diesel 23507189
Supplier number.....Nalco DDF60
Prevost number 550629

SECTION 06: ELECTRICAL

CONTENTS

1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.....	06-5
1.1 WIRING DIAGRAMS.....	06-5
1.1.1 <i>Wiring Diagram Keys</i>	06-5
1.1.2 <i>Using Wiring Diagrams</i>	06-5
1.1.3 <i>Testing Circuits</i>	06-5
1.2 WIRE SIZES AND COLORS.....	06-6
1.3 SPARE WIRES.....	06-6
1.4 CLEANING CONNECTORS.....	06-6
1.5 CIRCUIT BREAKERS.....	06-6
1.6 RELAYS.....	06-7
2. H3 SERIES VEHICLES ELECTRICAL COMPARTMENTS AND JUNCTION BOXES.....	06-9
2.1 MAINTENANCE.....	06-9
2.2 MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT.....	06-9
2.2.1 <i>Battery Charger or In-Station Lighting Connector</i>	06-10
2.3 FRONT ELECTRICAL AND SERVICE COMPARTMENT.....	06-10
2.4 ENGINE STARTING CONTROL PANEL.....	06-11
2.5 A/C AND HEATING CONTROLS.....	06-11
3. BATTERIES.....	06-11
3.1 MAIN BATTERY RELAYS.....	06-12
3.2 BATTERY REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION.....	06-12
3.3 BATTERY RATING.....	06-13
3.4 BATTERY TESTING.....	06-13
3.4.1 <i>Visual Inspection</i>	06-14
3.4.2 <i>Removing Surface Charge</i>	06-14
3.4.3 <i>Load Test</i>	06-14
3.4.4 <i>Testing Battery Cables</i>	06-14
3.5 BATTERY CHARGING.....	06-15
3.5.1 <i>Battery Charging Guide</i>	06-16
3.5.2 <i>Emergency Jump Starting With Auxiliary (Booster) Battery</i>	06-16
3.6 CLEANING AND INSPECTION.....	06-17
3.7 COMMON CAUSES OF BATTERY FAILURE.....	06-17
3.8 TROUBLESHOOTING.....	06-18
4. ELECTRICAL SYSTEM MONITOR.....	06-18
4.1 TELLTALE LIGHT DEFINITIONS.....	06-18
5. BOSCH ALTERNATOR.....	06-19
5.1 TWIN BOSCH ALTERNATORS INSTALLATION.....	06-19
6. DELCO ALTERNATOR.....	06-21
7. CHARGING SYSTEM TROUBLESHOOTING.....	06-22
7.1 ALTERNATOR OR VOLTAGE REGULATOR.....	06-22
7.2 ALTERNATOR DIAGNOSIS.....	06-23
7.2.1 <i>Diode Checks</i>	06-23
7.2.2 <i>Field Winding Check</i>	06-25
7.2.3 <i>Stator Winding Check</i>	06-25
7.3 DIODE REPLACEMENT.....	06-26
7.3.1 <i>Diode Replacement (in Support)</i>	06-26

Section 06: ELECTRICAL

7.3.2	Diode Replacement (in End Frame).....	06-26
7.4	FIELD REMOVAL.....	06-26
7.5	FIELD INSTALLATION.....	06-26
7.6	STATOR REPLACEMENT.....	06-27
7.6.1	Removal.....	06-27
7.6.2	Soldering Stator Terminal Leads.....	06-27
7.6.3	Installation.....	06-27
7.7	DIODE END COVER INSTALLATION.....	06-27
7.8	ALTERNATOR REMOVAL (DELCO).....	06-28
7.8.1	Disassembly of Alternator.....	06-28
7.8.2	Alternator Cleaning and Inspection.....	06-29
7.8.3	Bearing or Rotor Replacement.....	06-29
7.8.4	Alternator Reassembly.....	06-30
7.8.5	Output check.....	06-30
7.9	ALTERNATOR DRIVE BELT.....	06-30
7.9.1	Adjustment.....	06-30
8.	VOLTAGE REGULATOR (DELCO)	06-31
8.1	TROUBLESHOOTING PROCEDURES.....	06-31
8.1.1	Undercharged Battery.....	06-32
8.1.2	Overcharged Battery.....	06-33
8.2	REGULATOR CHECKS.....	06-33
8.3	ADJUSTING VOLTAGE.....	06-34
9.	BATTERY EQUALIZER.....	06-34
10.	STARTER.....	06-34
11.	ENGINE BLOCK HEATER.....	06-34
11.1	MAINTENANCE.....	06-34
12.	EXTERIOR LIGHTING.....	06-34
12.1	HEADLIGHTS.....	06-35
12.1.1	Headlight Beam Toggle Switch.....	06-35
12.1.2	Maintenance.....	06-35
12.1.3	Headlight Adjustment.....	06-35
12.1.4	Sealed-Beam Unit.....	06-39
12.1.5	Front Turn Signal.....	06-39
12.1.6	Optional Xenon Headlamp.....	06-40
12.2	STOP, TAIL, DIRECTIONAL, BACK-UP, AND HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS.....	06-40
12.2.1	Lamp Removal and Replacement.....	06-41
12.2.2	High-Mounted Stop Light Removal and Replacement.....	06-41
12.3	LICENCE PLATE LIGHT.....	06-41
12.4	CLEARANCE, IDENTIFICATION AND MARKER LIGHTS.....	06-41
12.4.1	Marker Light Removal and Replacement.....	06-41
12.4.2	Clearance and Identification Light Removal and Replacement.....	06-41
12.5	DOCKING AND CORNERING LIGHTS.....	06-41
12.5.1	Lamp Removal and Replacement.....	06-41
12.6	FOG LIGHTS.....	06-42
12.6.1	Bulb Removal and Replacement.....	06-42
13.	INTERIOR LIGHTING EQUIPEMENT.....	06-42
13.1	CONTROL PANEL LIGHTING.....	06-42
13.1.1	Switch Lighting.....	06-42
13.1.2	Telltale Light Replacement.....	06-42

13.1.3	Gauge Light Bulb Replacement	06-42
13.2	STEPWELL LIGHTS	06-43
13.2.1	Coach Entrance	06-43
13.2.2	VIP Entrance and Bus Entrance Door	06-43
13.2.3	Bulb Removal and Replacement	06-43
13.3	LAVATORY NIGHT-LIGHT	06-43
13.3.1	Bulb Removal and Replacement	06-43
13.4	DRIVER'S AREA LIGHTS	06-44
13.4.1	Bulb Removal and Replacement	06-44
13.5	PASSENGER SECTION LIGHTING	06-44
13.5.1	Fluorescent Tube Replacement	06-44
13.5.2	Removal and Replacement of In-Station Fluorescent Tubes	06-45
13.5.3	Removal and Replacement of Reading Lamp Bulb	06-45
13.6	ENGINE COMPARTMENT LIGHTING	06-45
13.7	LAVATORY LIGHT	06-45
14.	LIGHT BULB DATA	06-46
15.	SPECIFICATIONS	06-48

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1:	WIRE IDENTIFICATION	06-6
FIGURE 2:	MAIN BREAKERS	06-6
FIGURE 3:	TYPES OF RELAYS	06-8
FIGURE 4:	ELECTRICAL COMPARTMENTS	06-9
FIGURE 5:	MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT	06-10
FIGURE 6:	FRONT ELECT. & SERVICE COMPARTMENT	06-10
FIGURE 7:	ENGINE STARTING CONTROL PANEL	06-11
FIGURE 8:	CONTROL PANEL IN HVAC COMPARTMENT	06-11
FIGURE 9:	BATTERIES	06-12
FIGURE 10:	TEST INDICATOR	06-13
FIGURE 11:	LOAD TEST	06-14
FIGURE 12:	ALLIGATOR CLAMPS AND BATTERY	06-16
FIGURE 13:	TWIN BOSCH ALTERNATORS INSTALLATION	06-20
FIGURE 14:	ALTERNATORS AND ACCESSORIES MOUNTING TORQUES	06-20
FIGURE 15:	50DN DELCO ALTERNATOR SECTIONAL VIEW	06-21
FIGURE 16:	ALTERNATOR WIRING DIAGRAM (DELCO)	06-22
FIGURE 17:	CONNECTIONS FOR CHECKING ALTERNATOR OUTPUT	06-23
FIGURE 18:	VIEW OF RECTIFIER END FRAME WITH COVER REMOVED	06-24
FIGURE 19:	CHECKING DIODES WITH OHMMETER ON A TYPICAL OIL COOLED ALTERNATOR (END COVER REMOVED)	06-24
FIGURE 20:	CHECKING DIODES WITH OHMMETER ON A TYPICAL OIL COOLED ALTERNATOR (END COVER REMOVED)	06-25
FIGURE 21:	CHECKING STATOR WINDING FOR "OPEN" AND GROUND	06-25
FIGURE 22:	ALTERNATOR (HOSES AND WIRES)	06-28
FIGURE 23:	ALTERNATOR RETAINING BOLTS AND WASHERS	06-28
FIGURE 24:	ALTERNATOR DRIVE BELT	06-30
FIGURE 25:	VOLT REGULATOR	06-31
FIGURE 26:	TYPICAL WIRING DIAGRAM OF A NEGATIVE GROUND SYSTEM	06-31
FIGURE 27:	REGULATOR VOLTAGE TEST	06-32
FIGURE 28:	ADJUSTING REGULATOR VOLTAGE SETTING	06-32
FIGURE 29:	REGULATOR VOLTAGE TEST (UNDERCHARGED BATTERY)	06-32
FIGURE 30:	CHECKING TRANSISTORS TR1	06-34

Section 06: ELECTRICAL

FIGURE 31: CHECKING TRANSISTORS TR2	06-34
FIGURE 32: ELECTRIC HEATER PLUG LOCATION	06-34
FIGURE 33: HEADLIGHT ASSEMBLY	06-35
FIGURE 34: OPENING HEADLIGHT ASSEMBLY	06-35
FIGURE 35: HEADLIGHT ASSEMBLY TOP & REAR VIEW	06-35
FIGURE 36: SUPPORT RAIL INSTALLATION	06-36
FIGURE 37: INSTALLATION OF JIGS	06-36
FIGURE 38: INSTALLATION OF HOOPY 100 ALIGNER	06-36
FIGURE 39: ADJUSTING HOOPY 100 LEVEL	06-36
FIGURE 40: SPIRIT LEVEL	06-36
FIGURE 41: INSTALLING CALIBRATION FIXTURES	06-37
FIGURE 42: ALIGNMENT OF HEADLIGHT AIMING SCREEN	06-38
FIGURE 43: HIGH-INTENSITY ZONE (SHADED AREA) OF A PROPERLY AIMED UPPER BEAM ON THE AIMING SCREEN 7.6 M (25FT) IN FRONT OF VEHICLE	06-38
FIGURE 44: HIGH-INTENSITY ZONE (SHADED AREA) OF A PROPERLY AIMED LOWER BEAM ON THE AIMING SCREEN 7.6 M (25 FT) IN FRONT OF VEHICLE	06-38
FIGURE 45: AIM INSPECTION LIMITS FOR UPPER-BEAM HEADLIGHTS	06-39
FIGURE 46: AIM INSPECTION LIMITS FOR LOWER-BEAM HEADLIGHTS	06-39
FIGURE 47: VARIOUS LIGHTS LOCATION	06-40
FIGURE 48: XENON HEADLAMP LOCATION	06-40
FIGURE 49: SWITCH	06-42
FIGURE 50: COACH ENTRANCE STEPWELL	06-43
FIGURE 51: VIP ENTRANCE STEPWELL	06-43
FIGURE 52: PARCEL RACK	06-45
FIGURE 53: ENGINE COMPARTMENT LIGHT	06-45

1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION

This vehicle uses a dual voltage system to obtain two different voltages (12 and 24 volts) for various electrical controls and accessories. The main power source incorporates four maintenance-free "Delco" model 1150 batteries connected in a parallel-series configuration. All batteries are kept uniformly charged by means of a 100 amp battery equalizer (standard), giving a maximum possible output supply of 100 amps on the 12 volt system. Both the 12 and 24 volt systems are controlled through individual main battery relays. One or two 24 volt self-rectified alternators are belt driven from the engine, and can be reached through the engine compartment door.

1.1 WIRING DIAGRAMS

A master wiring diagram of the electric circuits, covering standard and optional accessories and systems, is located in the technical publications box. Usually, a separate wiring diagram page is provided for each major function or system. In some cases, more than one circuit may appear on one wiring diagram page; when this occurs, each circuit covered in this page is listed in the wiring diagram index. Moreover, a circuit may appear on several pages; in such case, the number(s) at the extremity of the diagram title will indicate the sheet reference number. Refer to the *"Wiring Diagram Index"* to ensure that the correct diagram is being used to trace the circuit in question.

1.1.1 Wiring Diagram Keys

Various symbols are used on the wiring diagrams to depict different types of electrical components. It is essential to become familiar with these symbols in order to understand the diagrams. The major symbols shown on the diagrams are identified under *"Wiring Diagram keys"* (page **K** of wiring diagrams).

1.1.2 Using Wiring Diagrams

Two methods are used to *"work"* with electric wiring diagrams.

Situation: You have identified the defective part (breaker, diode, relay, etc.), and you wish to locate its corresponding circuit.

Problem: Circuit breaker #56 is released (open circuit) and you don't know which circuit is affected.

- a) Refer to wiring diagram index, and look for *"Circuit breaker code"*, pages **F**.
- b) At item CB #56, in the first column, you will find the page on which to find the corresponding diagram, in the second column the breaker ampere rating, and in the third column, the Prévost number. The other columns give you the location and the function of the breaker.
- c) Refer to page 4, keeping in mind the function of the breaker, i.e. emergency exit lights.
- d) When you have located *"emergency exit lights"*, follow the wiring until you come across CB #56 and its circuit.

Situation: You have a problem with a specific system and you want to find the corresponding diagram.

Problem: The last three (3) speakers on the R.H. side of vehicle are inoperative and you must trace the electric circuit.

- a) Refer to wiring diagram index and look for *"Sound system"*.
- b) You will find on page 26 the components as well as the electric wiring, thus providing you with a complete understanding of this circuit.

1.1.3 Testing Circuits

A careful study of the wiring diagrams should be made to determine the source and flow of current through each circuit. When a circuit is thoroughly understood, a point-to-point check can be made with the aid of the applicable wiring diagrams. Any circuit can be tested for continuity or short circuits with a multimeter or a suitable voltmeter.

All electrical connections must always be kept clean and adequately tight. Loose or corroded connections can result in discharged batteries, difficult starting, dim lights and improper functioning of other electric circuits. Inspect all wiring connections at regular intervals. Make sure knurled nuts on all amphenol-type plugs are securely tightened. Knurled nuts on the plastic amphenol-type connectors will click into a detent when properly tightened. Line

Section 06: ELECTRICAL

connectors, who have the side locking tabs, must have the locks latched in place to ensure a proper electrical connection.

1.2 WIRE SIZES AND COLORS

Each wire in the electrical system has a specific size as designated on the wiring diagram. When replacing a wire, the correct size must be used. Never replace a wire with one of a smaller size.

The vehicle electrical system is provided with different voltages. The insulation on each wire is distinctly colored in order to determine visually the wiring voltage and to assist in making connectors. The wires are color coded as follows:

Red	24 volt system
Yellow	12 volt system
Black	grounded wire
Blue	110 V ac system (live)
White	110 V ac system (neutral)
Green	110 V ac system (ground)
Orange	speakers (+)
Brown	speakers (-)
Grey	spare wire

Note: Wires are identified at each 2-4 inch (5-10 cm) intervals by a printed number.

Each wire on a diagram is patterned to assist in tracing and testing circuits. The wire number identifies the voltage rating, the wire identification number and the basic wire gauge as illustrated in figure 1.

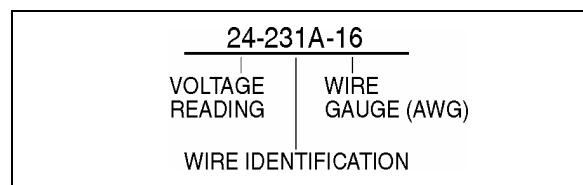


FIGURE 1: WIRE IDENTIFICATION

06048

1.3 SPARE WIRES

When the vehicle leaves the factory, and even in the case of a fully-equipped vehicle, an important number of unconnected spare wires are routed between the junction boxes. Consequently, for any connection of an additional accessory, refer to page D "Spare wires" in master wiring diagram to determine the number, the gauge and location of these wires.

Note: Spare wires are identified by a wire identification number and by the letters "SP", to designate "spare".

1.4 CLEANING CONNECTORS

When the pins and sockets of connectors become dirty, clean them with a good quality solvent containing HFC 134A refrigerant as its active ingredient. HFC 134A has two qualities that recommend it. First, it does not conduct electricity and therefore, will not cause shorting between connector pins and sockets. Second, it evaporates quickly, eliminating the possibility of condensation within the connectors.

Always shake out or gently blow out any excess HFC 134A before assembling a connector to its mating connector or hardware. HFC 134A trapped in the connector can affect the connector seal.

Warning: HFC 134A is toxic. HFC 134A bases compounds should always be used in a well-ventilated area, never in a confined space. Use outdoor whenever possible.

1.5 CIRCUIT BREAKERS

Most electric circuits are protected by circuit breakers of the "Manual Reset" type. The main circuit breakers, as well as those protecting the A/C system, are located in the main power compartment, on R.H. side of the vehicle, figure 2.

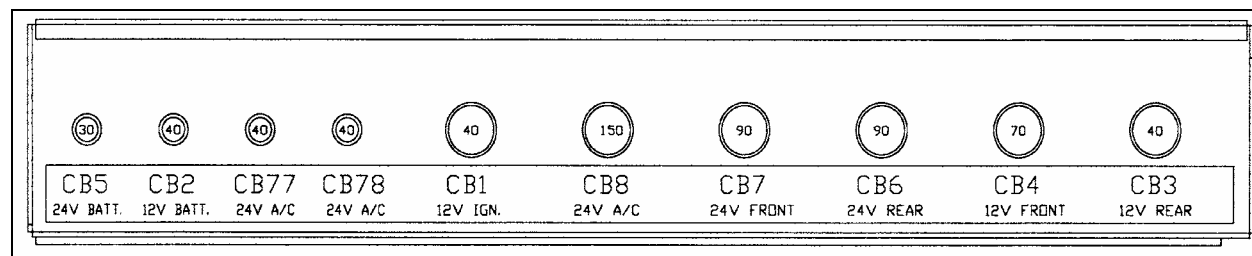


FIGURE 2: MAIN BREAKERS

06473

CIRCUIT BREAKERS			
CB1	Ignition	12 volts	40 amps
CB2	Hot Wire	12 volts	40 amps
CB3	Rear Junction Box	12 volts	40 amps
CB4	Front Junction Box	12 volts	70 amps
CB5	Hot Wire	24 volts	30 amps
CB6	Rear Junction Box & Starter Relay	24 volts	90 amps
CB7	Front Junction Box & Inverter Compartment	24 volts	90 amps
CB8	A/C Junction Box & Evaporator Fan	24 volts	150 amps
CB7 7	Condenser Fan Motor RH	24 volts	40 amps
CB7 8	Condenser Fan Motor LH	24 volts	40 amps

The smaller circuit breakers are either located in front electrical and service compartment or in the main power compartment. This type of circuit breaker deenergizes the circuit without disconnecting any wire. Simply press down the red tab on breaker to open the circuit, repair defective circuit, and afterwards depress black button in center of breaker to close the circuit.

1.6 RELAYS

Relays are used to automatically energize or deenergize a circuit from a remote location. The relay draws a very low current to energize its coil. Once the coil is energized, it develops a magnetic field that pulls a switch arm closed or open, to either energize or deenergize a given component. As the control current required for the coil is very low, the relay allows a remote station to control a high energy circuit without running great lengths of costly high capacity cable, and also eliminates the need for high amperage switches and heavy connectors.

Many systems on this vehicle are provided with control relays, which are all, located in or on the junction boxes, figure 3.

Note: Each relay is identified with “12 V” or “24 V” printed on its casing in order to identify the coil operating voltage.

Caution: The magnetic relays for the starting motor, evaporator and both condenser motors and condenser speed controls should have the 5/16” stud nuts torqued to 50 ± 5 lbf-in ($5,5 \pm 0,5$ Nm).



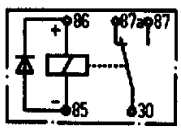
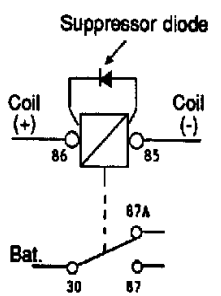
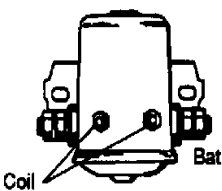
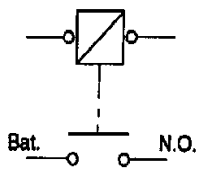
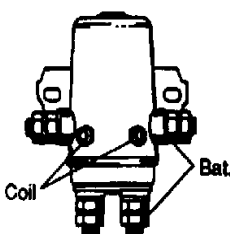
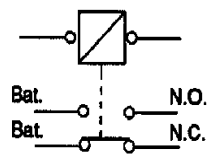
	Configuration on base	Key printed on casing	Key used on wiring diagram	Example
Cubic relay (Steel or plastic casing) Type: S.P.D.T. 				R #5
NOTE: This relay is provided with an internal suppressor diode; never reverse wiring terminals #85 and 86 at base as a direct short circuit will result. The relay coils connected to the alternator "relay terminal" should never be provided with a suppressor diode as the output current at this terminal is not rectified, thus rendering relay inoperative.				
Magnetic relay (Round steel casing) Type: S.P.S.T. 	None	None		R #4
Magnetic relay (Round steel casing) Type: D.P.D.T. 	None	None		R #40
LEGEND Bat. Battery N.O. Normally Open N.C. Normally Closed S.P.D.T. Single Pole Double Throw S.P.S.T. Single Pole Single Throw D.P.D.T. Double Pole Double Throw				

FIGURE 3: TYPES OF RELAYS

06050

2. H3 SERIES VEHICLES ELECTRICAL COMPARTMENTS AND JUNCTION BOXES

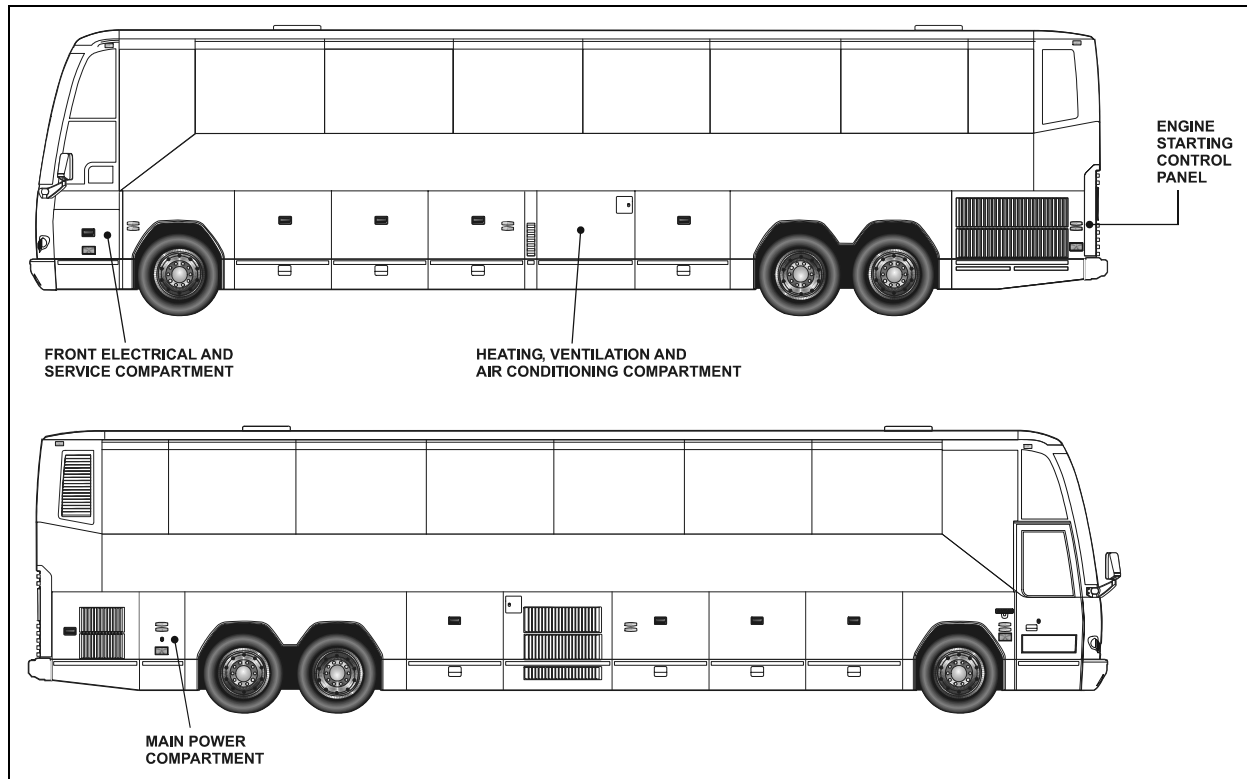


FIGURE 4: ELECTRICAL COMPARTMENTS

06479

2.1 MAINTENANCE

A Cortec VCI-238 corrosion inhibitor has been sprayed in all electrical compartments to protect components from corrosion. The life expectancy of this product is five years, so it is recommended to reapply it every five years. It is also recommended to spray it on new components when added or replaced.

Warning: Use VIC-238 in a well ventilated area. Do not smoke. Avoid prolonged contact with skin and breathing of spray mist. Harmful or fatal if swallowed. Do not induce vomiting. Call physician immediately.

2.2 MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT

The main power compartment is located on rear R.H. side of vehicle aft of the rear wheelhousing. This compartment contains the following components (Fig. 5):

- Four 12 volts batteries;
- Main circuit breakers;
- Voltage regulator (if applicable);
- Battery equalizer;
- Battery Charger (optional);
- Electrical system monitor;
- Alternator Module;
- Main battery relays (safety switch);
- Battery booster block;
- ECU (Electronic Control Unit) for Allison World Transmission;
- Secondary circuit breakers;
- Relays.

Section 06: ELECTRICAL

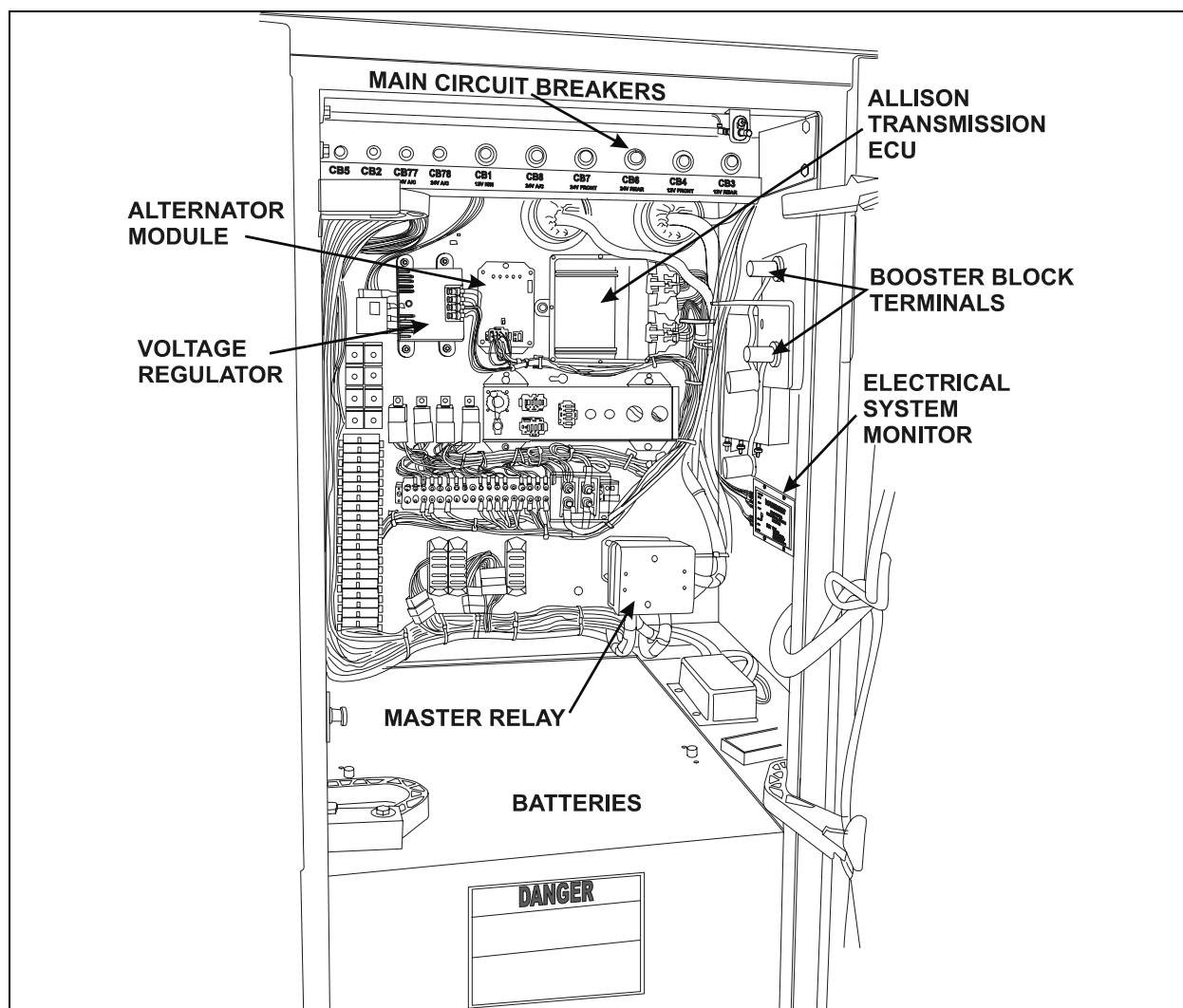


FIGURE 5: MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT

06490

2.2.1 Battery Charger or In-Station Lighting Connector

The vehicle may be equipped with a battery charger or in-station lighting connector. When it is connected to an external 110-120 VAC power source, the in-station lighting circuit can be energized without depleting the batteries. The receptacle is usually located on the main power compartment door or engine compartment R.H. side door.

2.3 FRONT ELECTRICAL AND SERVICE COMPARTMENT

The front electrical and service compartment is located on front L.H. side of vehicle. It contains the front junction panel with the following components (Fig. 6).

- Circuit breakers
- Resistors
- Pulse regulator (upper wiper)
- Electric flasher
- Fuses
- Relays
- Alarm

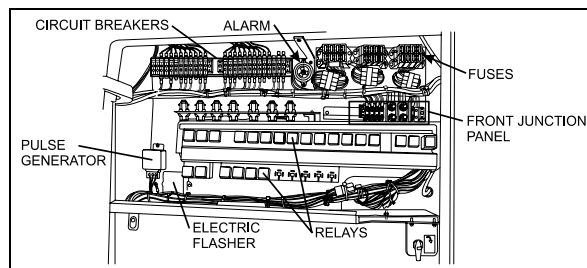


FIGURE 6: FRONT ELECT. & SERVICE COMPARTMENT⁰⁶⁴⁶¹

2.4 ENGINE STARTING CONTROL PANEL

This control panel is located in the R.H. side of engine compartment near the engine oil reserve tank. This control panel includes the engine starter selector switch, as well as the rear start push button switch to start engine from engine compartment.

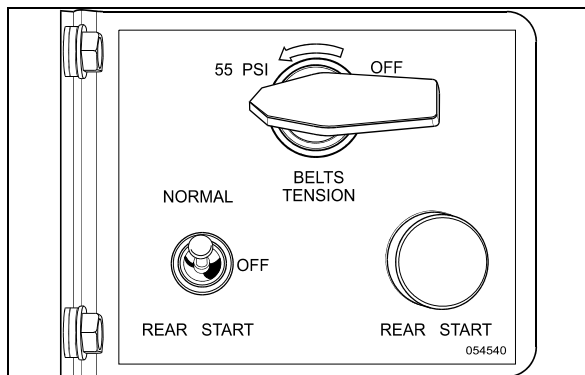


FIGURE 7: ENGINE STARTING CONTROL PANEL 01044

2.5 A/C AND HEATING CONTROLS

The following components are located in the main power compartment (see Fig. 5).

- Electronic transmitter (T7067B)
- Relay R35 – Water booster pump
- Relay R36 – A/C compressor clutch
- Relay R38 – A/C liquid solenoid valve
- Diodes

Each component is well identified to facilitate its location.

The following relays and resistors are located in the Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning Compartment (HVAC). They are mounted on the control panel located on the R.H. side wall when facing the compartment:

- R39 – Condenser fan motor
- R40 – Condenser speed control HI
- R41 – Condenser speed control HI
- R50 – Evaporator fan LOW & HI speed
- R60 – Evaporator fan HI speed
- R63 – Time Delay
- RS36 – Current limit for relay
- RS37 – Current limit for relay

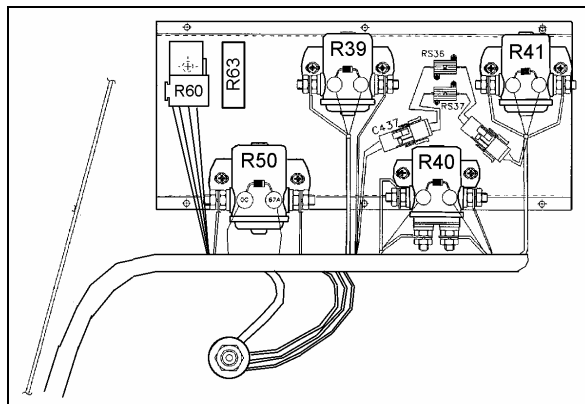


FIGURE 8: CONTROL PANEL IN HVAC COMPARTMENT 06483

Each relay or resistor is identified to facilitate its location (Fig. 8).

Note: It is important when checking the A/C and heating system to keep the condenser compartment door closed in order to avoid faulty readings.

3. BATTERIES

The vehicle is provided with four (4) maintenance-free 12 volt heavy-duty batteries connected in series-parallel (Fig. 9). The top-mounted negative and positive terminals are tightly sealed to prevent leaks. Water never needs to be added to this type of battery. There are no filler caps in the cover. The battery is sealed, except for small vent holes in the cover. The vents must not be restricted as they allow small amounts of gases produced in the battery to escape. The special chemical composition inside the battery reduces gassing to a very small amount at normal charging voltages. Besides reducing gassing, the special chemistry greatly reduces the possibility of overcharge damage.

The vents require keeping the battery in an upright position to prevent electrolyte leakage. Tipping the battery beyond a 45° angle in any direction can allow a small amount of electrolyte to leak out of the vent holes.

Warning: DO NOT tip battery by more than 45° when carrying or installing the battery.

Note: Evidence of electrolyte leakage does not necessarily mean the battery is defective.

Section 06: ELECTRICAL

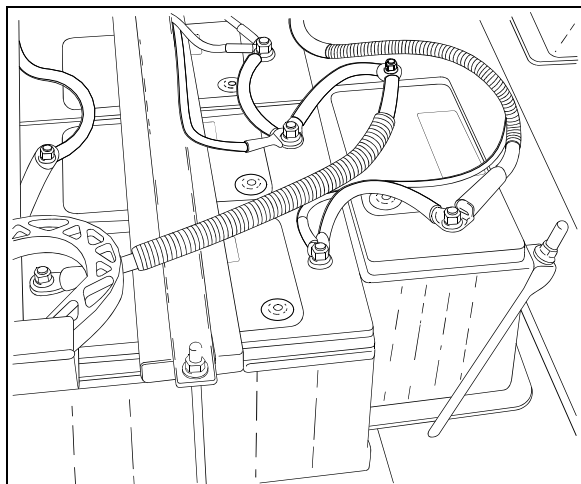


FIGURE 9: BATTERIES

06343

With special cables properly attached to the batteries, the metal surfaces that carry the current are completely sealed from the atmosphere. This prevents terminal oxidation and corrosion that may cause starting and charging problems. If new cables are required, sealed terminal cable replacements should be used to retain the reliability of the original maintenance-free connections.

Warning: All lead-acid batteries generate hydrogen gas, which is highly flammable. If ignited by a spark or flame, the gas may explode violently, causing spraying of acid, fragmentation of the battery, which may result in severe personal injuries. Wear safety glasses and do not smoke when working near batteries. In case of contact with acid, flush immediately with water.

The battery has four (4) major functions:

1. Providing a source of current for starting the engine.
2. Stabilizing the voltage in the electrical system.
3. Supplying current for a limited time, when electrical demands of the equipment exceed the power output of the alternator.
4. Providing a limited source of power for connected accessories, when the engine is not running.

3.1 MAIN BATTERY RELAYS

Main battery relays (12 V. and 24 V.) are provided for this vehicle. The relays are located

in the main power compartment. The 24 volt battery relay is actuated by a master switch located on the dashboard.

When the main battery relays are turned to the OFF position, all electrical supply from the batteries is cut off, with the exception of the following items.

- Battery equalizer check module;
- ECM;
- ECU power (World transmission);
- Preheater electronic timer;
- Preheater and water recirculating pump;
- Sedan entrance door;
- Radio memory
- Cluster memory.

3.2 BATTERY REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

1. Remove the two screws at the bottom of the plastic protective cover. Unscrew the two quarter turn nuts to remove the protective cover.
2. Remove supports. Unscrew terminal nuts of each defective battery.

Note: Main battery relays should be in the "Off" position before disconnecting cables from the batteries.

3. Remove battery cables from the batteries.

Note: When the battery cables have been removed from the batteries, wrap the battery terminals and cable ends with electric tape to prevent accidental grounding. The ground cables should always be disconnected first and replaced last.

4. Remove batteries.

5. Installation is the reverse of removal.

Note: In replacing batteries, only batteries of the same specification should be used. Refer to "Specifications" at the end of this section for further details.

Note: When reinstalling batteries, battery connections must be tightened to 10-15 lbf-ft (13-20 Nm) and the nut on top of sliding tray to 45-55 lbf-in (5-6 Nm). A torque wrench is required to ensure an accurate tightening torque.

Caution: Ensure that connections are not reversed when reinstalling batteries, since damage to electrical system components will result.

Caution: After reinstalling battery terminals, apply protective coating (Nyogel grease). Do not use Cortec VCI-238.

Warning: To prevent possible electric shock or sparking, the main battery relays must be set to the "Off" position before tightening an electrical connection.

Note: A protective silicone free, coating should be applied on all connections that have been disconnected. We recommend the use of Cortec VCI-238 (Prévost #682460) on all electrical connections.

3.3 BATTERY RATING

Each of the 12 volt batteries used on the vehicle has the following rating:

- Reserve capacity: 195 minutes
- Cold cranking (amps): 950 @ 0°F (-18°C)
- Cold cranking (amps): 745 @ -20°F (-29°C)
- Weight (filled): 59 lb (26,7 kg)

The reserve capacity is defined as the number of minutes a new, fully charged battery at 80°F (26,6°C) can be discharged at 25 amperes and maintain a minimum of 1.75 volts per cell (10.5 volts total for one 12 volts battery). This rating can be used as a basis for determining how long a vehicle might run after an alternator failure.

The cold cranking rating is defined as the minimum discharge current a battery will deliver in amperes for 30 seconds at 0 °F (-18 °C) while maintaining a minimum of 1.2 volts per cell (7.2 volts total for one 12 volts battery). This rating can be used as a basis for comparing starting performance.

3.4 BATTERY TESTING

The maintenance-free battery has a strong ability to withstand the damaging effects of overcharge. The test indicator in the cover is used only to determine if the battery can be tested in case of a cranking problem.

The test indicator in the battery cover is to be used with accepted diagnostic procedures only. It must not be used to determine if the battery is

good or bad, charged or discharged. The test indicator is a built-in hydrometer in one cell that provides visual information for battery testing (Fig. 10).

It is important when observing the test indicator, that the battery be relatively level and has a clean indicator top to see the correct indication. Some lighting may be required in poorly lit areas. Under normal operation, two indications can be observed.

Green Dot Visible

Any green appearance is interpreted as a "green dot", and the battery is ready for testing. On rare occasions, following prolonged cranking, the green dot may still be visible when the battery is obviously discharged. Should this occur, charge the battery as described under "Charging Procedure" in "Battery Charging" later in this section.

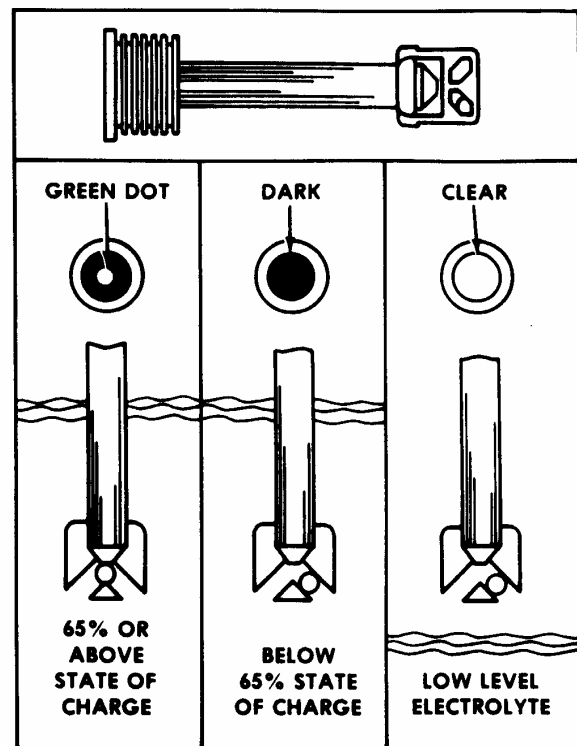


FIGURE 10: TEST INDICATOR

06096

Dark - Green Dot Not Visible

If there is difficulty cranking the engine, the battery should be tested as described in this section. On rare occasions, the test indicator may turn light yellow. In this case, the integral charging system should be checked. Normally, the battery is capable of further service;

Section 06: ELECTRICAL

however, if difficult start has been reported, replace the battery. **DO NOT CHARGE, TEST, OR JUMP-START.**

3.4.1 Visual Inspection

1. Check the outside of the battery for a broken or cracked cover or case that could permit loss of electrolyte. If obvious physical damage is noted, replace the battery.
2. Check for loose terminal posts, cable connections, damaged cables, and for evidence of corrosion. Correct conditions as required before proceeding with tests.

3.4.2 Removing Surface Charge

Disconnect cables from the battery and attach alligator clamps to the contact lead pad on the battery as shown in figure 12. Connect a 300 ampere load across the terminal for 15 seconds to remove surface charge from the battery.

3.4.3 Load Test

This test is one means of checking the battery to determine its ability to function as required in the vehicle.

To make this test, use test equipment that will withstand a heavy electrical load from the battery, such as a carbon pile resistor or other suitable means.

1. Connect a voltmeter, ammeter, and a variable load resistance as illustrated in figure 11.

Caution: Observe polarity of the meters and the battery when making connections, and select the correct meter range.

2. Apply a 290 amperes load to the battery for 15 seconds.
3. With an ammeter reading specified load, read voltage. The voltage should be at least 9.6 volts. Disconnect the load. If the voltmeter indicates 9.6 volts or more, the battery is good. If the voltmeter reading is less than 9.6 volts, replace the battery. This voltage is to be used for battery ambient temperatures of 70°F (21°C) and above. For temperatures below 70°F (21°C), refer to the following "Voltage and Temperature Chart".

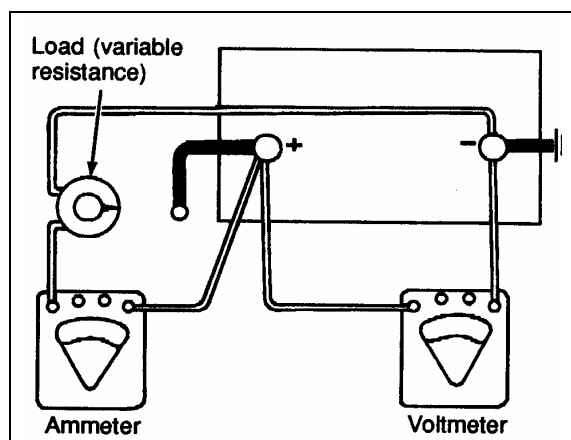


FIGURE 11: LOAD TEST

06064

Note: The accuracy of this test procedure is dependent upon close adherence to the proper load, time and temperature specifications.

Voltage and Temperature Chart

Ambient Temperature	Minimum Voltage
70°F (21°C) and above	9.6
60°F (16°C)	9.5
50°F (10°C)	9.4
40°F (4°C)	9.3
30°F (-1°C)	9.1
20°F (-7°C)	8.9
10°F (-12°C)	8.7
0°F (-18°C)	8.5

3.4.4 Testing Battery Cables

Check all cable ring terminals and connections to determine if they are in good condition. Excessive resistance, generally caused by poor connections, produces an abnormal voltage drop which may lower voltage at the starter to such a low value that normal operation of the starter will not be obtained. An abnormal voltage drop can be detected with a low-reading voltmeter as follows:

Warning: To prevent the engine from starting, the DDEC engine circuits, which are protected by breakers; (CB-19, CB-20 and CB-21) located in the main power compartment must be de-energized. Once these tests are completed, depress black button to close circuit.

1. Check voltage drop between grounded (negative) battery terminal and vehicle frame by placing one prod of the voltmeter on the battery terminal and the other on a good ground (unpainted surface) on the vehicle. With the starter cranking the engine at a temperature of 70°F (21°C), voltage reading should be less than 0.3 volt. If the voltage reading exceeds 0.3 volt, there is excessive resistance in this circuit.
2. Check voltage drop between the positive battery terminal and the starter positive terminal stud while the starter motor is operated. If the reading is more than 2.5 volts, there is excessive resistance in this circuit.

Note: If it is necessary to extend the voltmeter lead for this test, use a #16 (AWG) or larger wire.

3. Check voltage drop between the starter housing and a good ground on the vehicle. The reading should be less than 0.2 volt.

Warning: Any procedure other than the following could cause personal injury or damages to the charging system resulting from battery explosion or electrical burns.

Wear adequate eye protection when working on or near the batteries. Ensure that metal tools or jumper cables do not contact the positive battery terminal (or a metal surface in contact with it) as a short circuit will result. Do not attempt to jump start a vehicle suspected of having a frozen battery because the battery may rupture or explode. Both the booster and discharged batteries must be treated carefully when using jumper cables. Follow exactly the procedure outlined later in this section, being careful not to cause sparks.

3.5 BATTERY CHARGING

Warning: During charging of the batteries, an explosive gas mixture forms in each cell. Part of this gas escapes through the vent holes and may form an explosive atmosphere around the battery itself if ventilation is poor. This explosive gas may remain in or around the battery for several hours after it has been charged. Sparks or flames can ignite this gas causing an internal explosion, which may shatter the battery.

Do not smoke near a battery which is being charged or which has been recently charged.

Do not break live circuits at battery terminals because a spark usually occurs at the point where a live circuit is broken. Care must always be taken when connecting or disconnecting booster leads or cable clamps on chargers. Poor connections are a common cause of electric arcs, which cause explosions.

Caution: The electrical system on this vehicle is negative ground. Installing the batteries with the positive terminals grounded or incorrect use of the booster battery and jumper cables will result in serious damage to the alternator, batteries and battery cables.

The batteries used on this vehicle can be charged either on or off the vehicle; however, when they are removed from the vehicle, it is recommended that an adapter kit, which is available from any "A/C DELCO" dealer, be used in charging sealed-terminal batteries. Use the booster block to charge the batteries when they are left on vehicle and **make sure that the main battery disconnect switch is set to the "On" position.**

The alligator clamps of the tester or charger must be placed between the terminal nuts and the lead pads of the terminal studs (Fig. 12) after the vehicle cables are detached. The alligator clamps should make firm contact with the lead pads.

Note: If this connection cannot be made because of the alligator clamp design, the load value for testing must be reduced from 290 to 260 amperes.

On rare occasions, such as those that occur following prolonged cranking, the green dot in the test indicator may still be visible when the battery is obviously discharged. Should this occur, a boost charge of 20 amperes-hour is recommended. Under normal operating conditions, do not charge the battery if the green dot is visible. The battery should never be charged if the test indicator (hydrometer) is clear or light yellow. If this occurs, replace the battery.

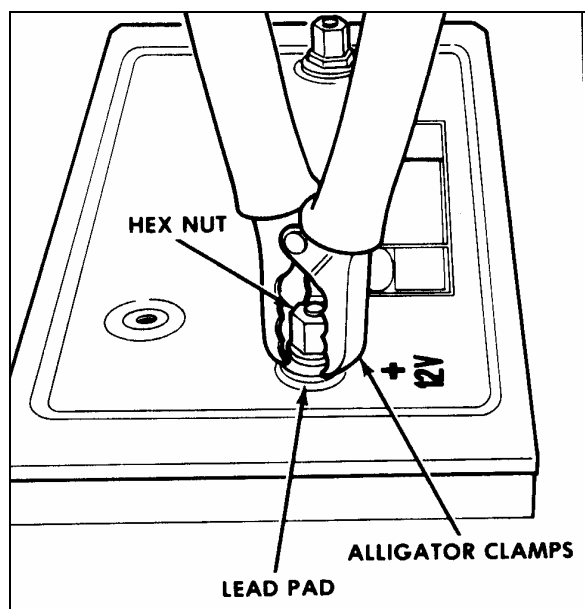


FIGURE 12: ALLIGATOR CLAMPS AND BATTERY 06065

A charge rate between 3 and 50 amperes is generally satisfactory for any maintenance-free battery as long as spewing out of electrolyte does not occur or the battery does not feel excessively hot (over 125°F (52°C)). If spewing out or violent gassing of electrolyte occurs or battery temperature exceeds 125°F (52°C), the charging rate must be reduced or temporarily stopped to allow cooling and to avoid damaging the battery.

Battery temperature can be estimated by touching or feeling the battery case. The battery is sufficiently charged when the green dot in the built-in hydrometer is visible. No further charging is required. Shake or tilt the battery at hourly intervals during charging to mix the electrolyte and see if the green dot appears.

Warning: Always turn off the charger before connecting or disconnecting to a battery.

Note: The charge rate must be doubled when the batteries are charged by the booster block, because of the series-parallel circuit.

Battery charging consists of a charge current in amperes for a period of time in hours. Thus, a 25 ampere charging rate for 2 hours would be a 50 ampere-hour charge to the battery. Most batteries, whose load test values are greater than 200 amperes, will have the green dot visible after at least a 75 ampere-hour charge. In the event that the green dot does not appear, replace the battery.

3.5.1 Battery Charging Guide

Fast Charging Rate

20 amps @ 3-3/4 hours

30 amps @ 2-1/2 hours

40 amps @ 2 hours

50 amps @ 1-1/2 hours

Slow Charging Rate

5 amps @ 15 hours

10 amps @ 7-1/2 hours

The time required for a charge will vary according to the following factors:

Size of Battery

For example, a completely discharged large heavy-duty battery requires more than twice the recharging time of a completely discharged small passenger car battery.

Temperature

For example, a longer time will be needed to charge any battery at 0°F (-18°C) than at 80 °F (27°C). When a fast charger is connected to a cold battery, the current accepted by the battery will be very low at first, and then in time, the battery will accept a higher rate as it warms.

State of Charge

For example, a completely discharged battery requires more than twice as much charge than a half-charged battery. Since the electrolyte is nearly pure water and a poor conductor in a completely discharged battery, the current accepted is very low at first. Later, as the charging current causes the electrolyte acid content to increase, the charging current will likewise increase.

Charger Capacity

For example, a charger which can supply only 5 amperes will require a much longer period of charging than a charger that can supply 30 amperes or more.

3.5.2 Emergency Jump Starting With Auxiliary (Booster) Battery

Warning: Do not jump start vehicles equipped with maintenance-free batteries if the test indicator is light yellow.

Both booster and discharged batteries should be treated carefully when using jumper cables. A vehicle with a discharged battery may be started by using energy from a booster battery or the battery from another vehicle.

Warning: *Jump starting may be dangerous and should be attempted only if the following conditions are met:*

The booster battery or the battery in the other vehicle must be of the same voltage as the battery in the vehicle being started, and must be negative grounded.

If the booster battery is a sealed-type battery without filler openings or caps, its test indicator must be dark or a green dot must be visible. Do not attempt jump starting if the test indicator of the booster battery or the discharged battery has a light or bright center.

Warning: *Follow the procedure exactly as outlined hereafter. Avoid making sparks.*

Wear eye protection and remove rings, watches with metal bands and other metal jewelry.

Apply parking brake and place the transmission shift lever or push-button pads in Neutral (N) position in both vehicles. Turn off lights, heater and other electrical loads. Observe the charge indicator. If the indicator in the discharged battery is illuminated, replace the battery. **Do not** attempt jump starting when indicator is illuminated. If the test indicator is dark and has a green dot in the center, failure to start is not due to a discharged battery and the cranking system should be checked. If charge indicator is dark but the green dot does not appear in center, proceed as follows:

1. Connect one end of one red jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster power source and the other end to the positive (+) post of the booster power block, located in the main power compartment (refer to fig. 5).
2. Connect one end of the remaining negative jumper cable (black) to the negative (-) terminal of the booster power source, and the other end of the black jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the booster power block.
3. Make sure the clips from one cable do not inadvertently touch the clips on the other cable. Do not lean over the battery when

making connections. The ground connection must provide good electrical conductivity and current carrying capacity.

4. Start the engine in the vehicle that is providing the jump start. Let the engine run for a few minutes, then start the engine in the vehicle that has the discharged batteries.
5. When removing the jumper cables, perform the above procedure exactly in reverse order, and replace protective caps on booster block terminals.

Warning: *Any procedure other than the above could result in personal injury, property damage due to battery explosion, or damage to the charging system of the booster vehicle or of the boosted vehicle*

Note: *Jumper cables must withstand 500 cranking amperes. If cable length is 20 feet (6m) or less, use 2/0 (AWG) gauge wires. If cable length is between 20-30 feet (6-9m), use 3/0 (AWG) wires.*

3.6 CLEANING AND INSPECTION

The external condition of the battery and the battery cables should be checked periodically. The top of the battery should be kept clean and the battery hold-down clamp bolts should be kept properly tightened. For best results when cleaning the battery, wash first with a diluted solution of ammonia or soda to neutralize any acid present, then wash out with clean water. The battery hold-down bolts should be kept tight enough to prevent the batteries from moving, but they should not be tightened to the point that excessive strain is placed on the battery hold-down cover (proper tightening torque: 45-55 lbf-in (5-6 Nm).

To insure good contact, the battery cable ring terminals should be tight on the battery posts. If the posts or cable ring terminals are corroded, the cables should be disconnected and the posts and clamps cleaned separately with a soda solution and a wire brush. Install cable ring terminals on battery posts and tighten to a torque of 10-15 lbf-ft (13-20 Nm). Replace protective caps to prevent corrosion and sparks.

3.7 COMMON CAUSES OF BATTERY FAILURE

When a battery fails, the cause of failure may be related to something other than the battery. For this reason, when a battery failure occurs, do not be satisfied with merely recharging or replacing

Section 06: ELECTRICAL

the battery. Locate and correct the cause of the failure to prevent recurrence. Some common external causes of battery failure are as follows:

1. A defect in charging system such as high resistance or a faulty alternator or regulator.
2. A malfunction within the 12 volts system (equalizer).
3. Overloads caused by a defective starter or excessive use of accessories.
4. Dirt and electrolyte on top of the batteries causing a constant drain.
5. Hardened battery plates, due to battery being in a low state of charge over a long period of time.
6. Shorted cells, loss of active material from plates.
7. Driving conditions or requirements under which the vehicle is driven for short periods of time.
8. A constant drain caused by a shorted circuit such as an exposed wire or water infiltration in junction boxes causing ground fault.
9. Extended operation of preheating system with engine not running.
10. Failing to close disconnect switches during the night.

3.8 TROUBLESHOOTING

If a battery is known to be good and then has not performed satisfactorily in service for no apparent reason, the following factors may reveal the cause of trouble:

1. Vehicle accessories and disconnect switches inadvertently left on overnight.
2. Defects in the charging system, such as high wiring resistance, faulty alternator, regulator or battery equalizer.
3. A vehicle electrical load exceeding the alternator (or battery equalizer) capacity, with the addition of electrical devices, such as CB radio equipment, a cellular phone or additional lighting systems.
4. Defects in the electrical system, such as shorted or pinched wires.

5. Extended driving at slow speed while using many accessories.
6. Loose or poor battery cable-to-post connections, previous improper charging of a run-down battery or loose hold-down clamp bolts.
7. High-resistance connections or defects in the cranking system.

4. ELECTRICAL SYSTEM MONITOR

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic device that monitors and detects abnormal alternator, voltage regulator, battery banks or battery equalizers conditions. The monitor is installed on R.H. side wall of the main power compartment (refer to fig. 5). The "Battery balance" and "Battery Hi/Lo" warning lamps connected to this module are mounted in the dashboard (refer to "Operator's Manual" for location). If a malfunction should occur, the monitor sends a signal to the driver through the warning light of the malfunctioning component. If the "Battery Hi/Lo" warning light is illuminated, check the 24 volt voltmeter to determine if the battery voltage is too high or too low.

Note: According to the battery charging condition, it is normal that "Battery Hi/Lo" warning light illuminates upon starting the engine and stays illuminated for a few seconds. This is caused by the normal voltage drop of the battery during starting.

4.1 TELLTALE LIGHT DEFINITIONS

Battery Hi/Lo

Voltmeter drops below 24 V dc

- Check alternator output.
- Check voltage regulator.
- Check battery connections.
- Check battery cells.
- Check battery equalizer connections.

Voltmeter exceeds 30 V dc

- Check alternator output.
- Check voltage regulator.
- Check battery connections.

Battery Balance

Note: Allow at least 15 minutes to balance batteries after any corrective measure has been taken.

1. Batteries out of balance (difference greater than 1.5 volts between the two battery banks).
 - ❖ Check battery equalizer connections.
 - ❖ Check equalizer cables for proper gauge.
 - ❖ Check battery connections.
2. Demand for 12 volt power exceeding rated amperage output of battery equalizers causing batteries to go out of balance.
 - ❖ Reduce 12 volt load or install additional battery equalizer(s).

"Battery" Warning Light

This warning light is not controlled by the electronic monitor, but by the "R" terminal of the alternator using the normally-closed contact of relay R-33. If a voltage drop should occur in the charging system, the "Battery" telltale light will immediately illuminate to warn the driver. The "Battery Hi/Lo" telltale light will illuminate if voltage drops below 24 V dc.

Refer to heading "Diagnosis of Charging System Problems" later in this section, to determine whether the alternator or the voltage regulator is defective. Should the "Battery" telltale light illuminate while the 24 volt voltmeter keeps on giving a normal reading and the "Battery Hi/Lo" telltale light does not illuminate, the relay R-33 or its wiring is probably defective.

Caution: The relay R-33 should never be replaced with a relay provided with a suppressor diode on its coil as the output current (between 12 and 14 volts) at the alternator "R" terminal is not rectified, thus rendering the relay inoperative.

Note: When the "Battery" warning light illuminates, the "A/C & Heating" system shuts off in order to prevent battery discharge.

5. BOSCH ALTERNATOR

One or two 24 volt 140 amp., self regulated, belt driven, air-cooled BOSCH alternators may be used in the 24 volt electrical system (instead of the DELCO 24 volt 270 amp. alternator).

Change the brushes and the voltage regulator as per "Repair and Testing Instructions for T1 Alternator 0120 69 552" every 100,000 miles (160 000 fm) or once every two years, whichever comes first.

Replace bearings as per "Repair and Testing Instructions for T1 Alternator 0120 69 552" every 200,000 miles (320 000 fm) or once every four years, whichever comes first.

Refer to Bosh T1 Alternator Maintenance Manual Annexed at the end of this section.

5.1 TWIN BOSCH ALTERNATORS INSTALLATION

If the alternators needed to be removed, reinstall as follows. Refer to figure 13 for installation and to figure 14 for tightening specifications:

1. Install alternator mounting bracket (1, figure 13) to the gear case. Use the four flanged phosphor alloy bolts on the pulley end of the bracket and the flanged nuts at the transmission end of the bracket;
2. Bolt the alternators to the bracket using the three inch bolt at the top of the upper alternator (2, fig 13) and flanged bolts at the other mounting bosses (3 and 4, figure 13). Tighten the bolts in the sliding sleeves (4, figure 13) last as they will adjust to prevent breaking the alternator mounting bosses upon final tightening. Repeat for the second alternator;
3. On the drive shafts of both alternators, install key, pulley, spring washer and nut. Tighten to 220 Lbf-ft (300 Nm);

Note: Final tightening of the pulleys can be performed once the belt is installed. This will help keep the pulley from turning when tightening.

4. Install the snubber bracket (5, fig. 13) using three flanged bolts. Do not tighten the adjustment bolts on the snubber until after final tightening;
5. Install the compressor belt idler pulley (6, fig. 13) as shown. A stud inserts into one of the mounting holes of the pulley assembly. Fasten this one using a nut and bolts for the other two.

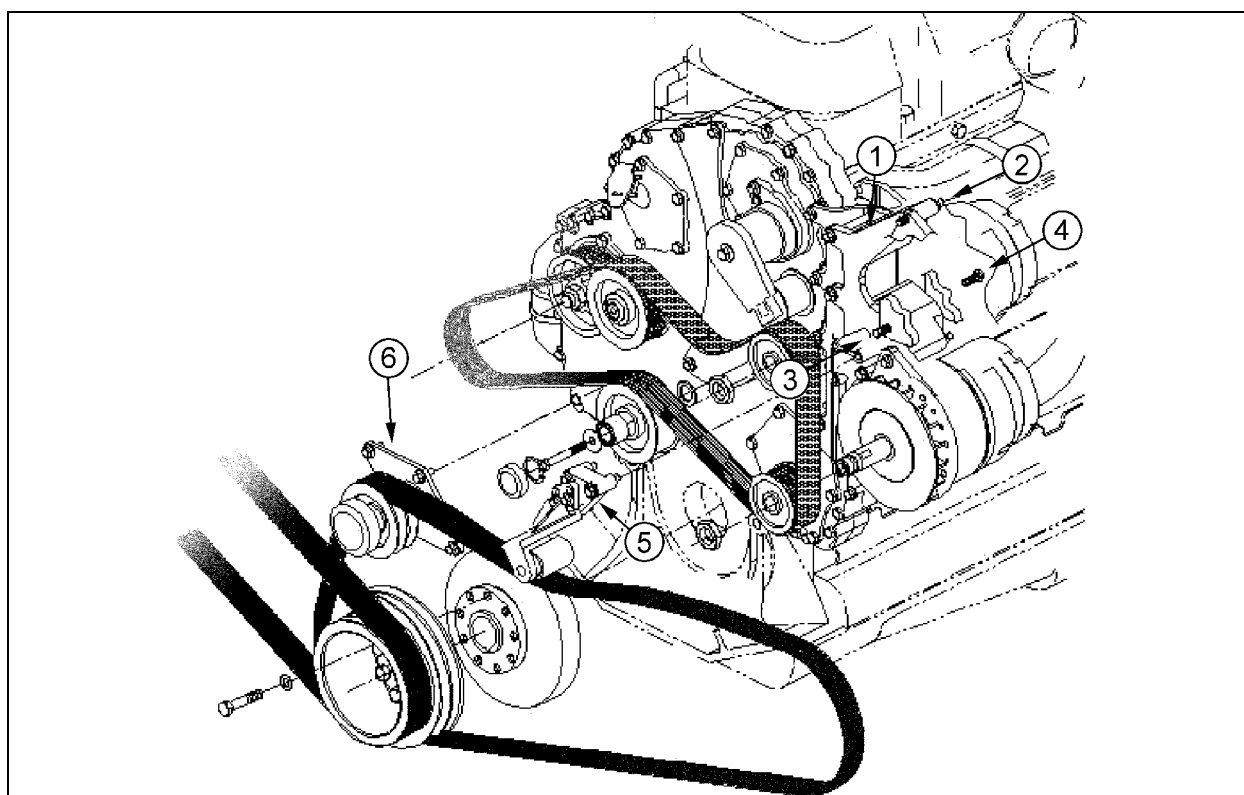


FIGURE 13: TWIN BOSCH ALTERNATORS INSTALLATION

01077

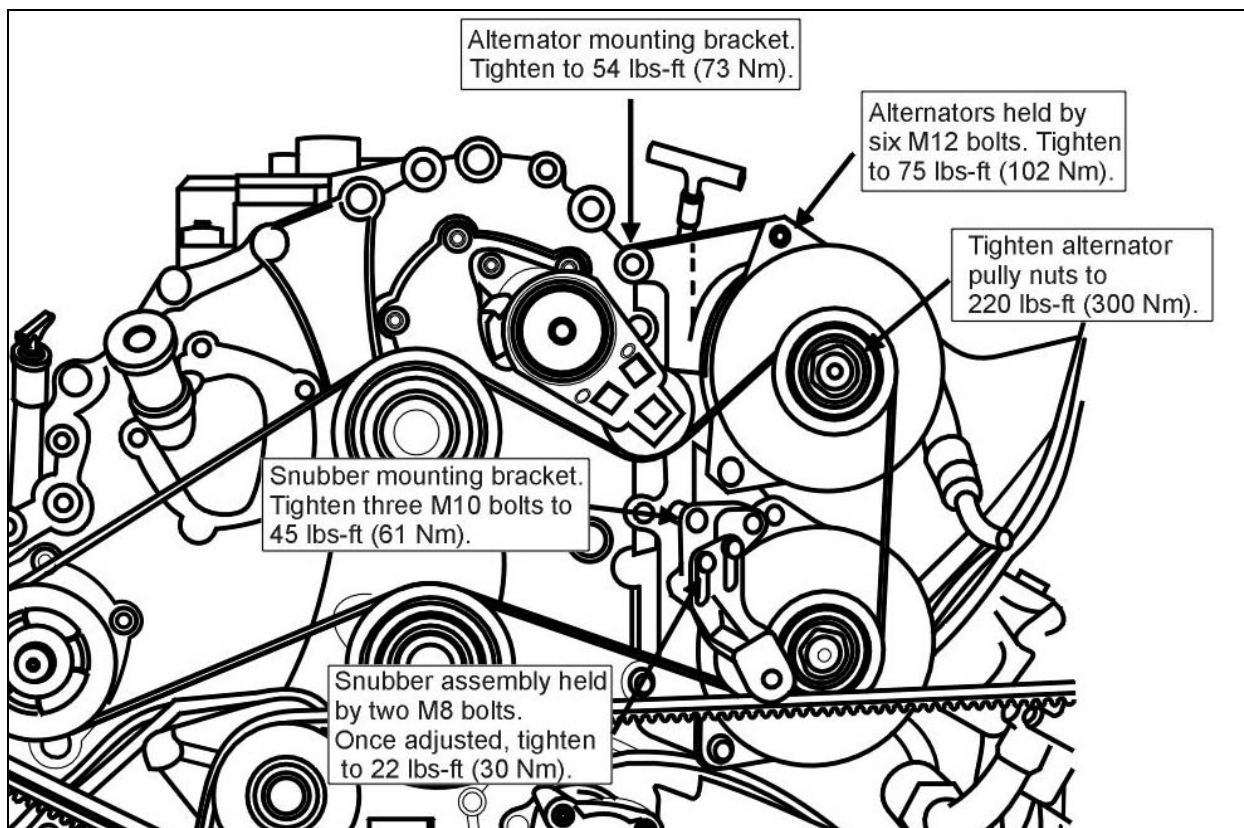


FIGURE 14: ALTERNATORS AND ACCESSORIES MOUNTING TORQUES

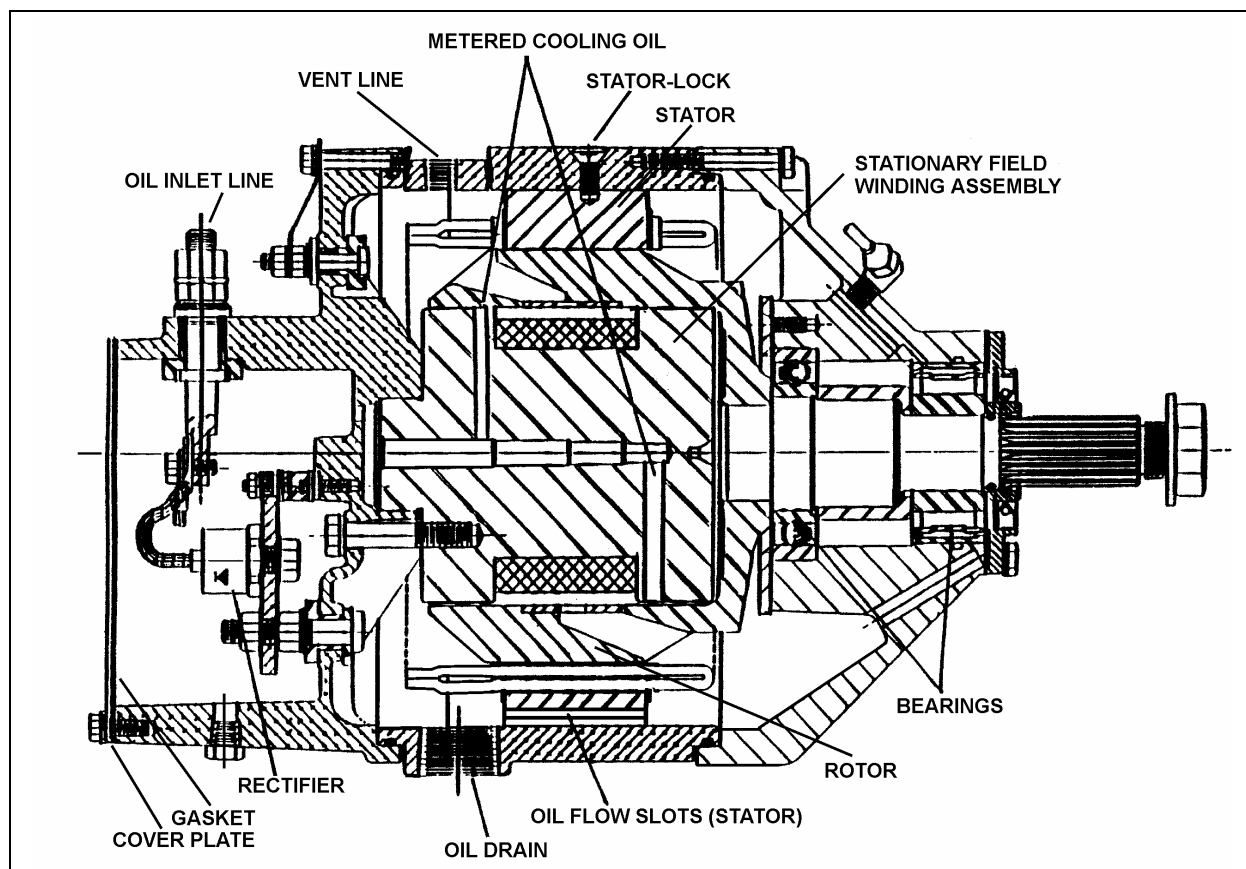


FIGURE 15: 50DN DELCO ALTERNATOR SECTIONAL VIEW

06493

6. DELCO ALTERNATOR

The 24 volt charging system consists of a belt driven, oil-cooled, brushless alternator, a 24 volt voltage regulator, an alternator relay and a 12 volt system that includes a 12 volt, 100 amp equalizer. The components used in this system are described under the applicable headings hereafter.

This oil-cooled alternator is self rectifying. All current carrying members, windings, built-in diodes, and field coils are stationary. The only moving component is the rotor. The alternator is a totally-enclosed unit, cooled and lubricated by engine oil. The oil inlet is on the diode end cover. The oil drains back into the engine crankcase through the drive end frame and drive

adapter housing. This alternator should never be operated with the oil supply line disconnected. A continuous flow of engine oil through the alternator lubricates the bearings and cools the assembly. Four terminals are used on this alternator: the DC output terminal, two field terminals, and a 12 volt relay terminal. The alternator output voltage is regulated by a separate 24 volt regulator that controls the alternator field current (Fig. 15 and 16).

Note: The relay coils connected to the alternator "relay terminal" SHOULD NEVER BE PROVIDED WITH A SUPPRESSOR DIODE as the output current at this terminal is not rectified, thus rendering relay inoperative.

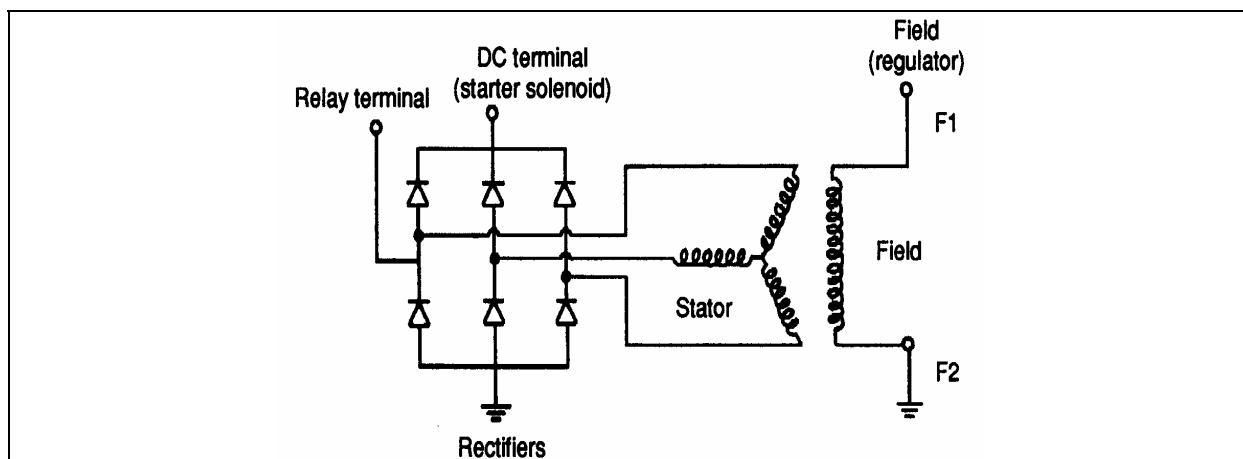


FIGURE 16: ALTERNATOR WIRING DIAGRAM (DELCO)

06067

Caution: The electrical system is **NE GATIVE GROUNDED**. Connecting the batteries or a battery charger with the positive terminal grounded will endanger the alternator diodes and vehicle wiring by a high current flow. Burned wiring harnesses and burned “open” diodes will result. Always ensure that the alternator and battery polarities are matched prior to installation. **THE ALTERNATOR WILL NOT REVERSE TO ACCEPT INVERSE POLARITY.** Also, do not ground or short across any of the alternator or regulator terminals.

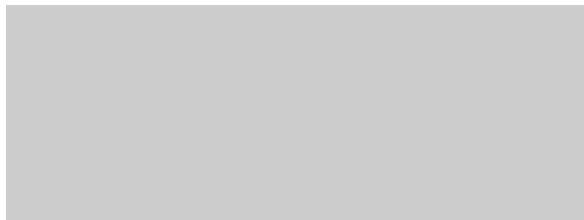
Since there are no brushes, slip rings, or rubbing seals, the alternator requires no periodic maintenance other than the following:

1. Check alternator-to-engine mounting bolts for looseness and tighten to the proper torque.
2. Check all electrical connections for tightness and corrosion. Clean and tighten connections as necessary. Be sure wiring insulation is in good condition and that all wiring is securely clipped to prevent chafing of the insulation.
3. With the engine running, listen for noise and check the alternator for vibration. If the alternator is noisy or vibrates excessively, it should be removed for inspection and repair.
4. Ensure that battery terminals are clean and tight.

7. CHARGING SYSTEM TROUBLESHOOTING

The troubleshooting of the charging system is made easier by the use of a 12 and a 24 volt voltmeter, “Battery”, “Battery balance” and “Battery Hi/Lo” telltale lights mounted in the dashboard (for location refer to the “Operator’s Manual”). The definition of each warning light is explained under the “ELECTRICAL SYSTEM MONITOR”

7.1 ALTERNATOR OR VOLTAGE REGULATOR



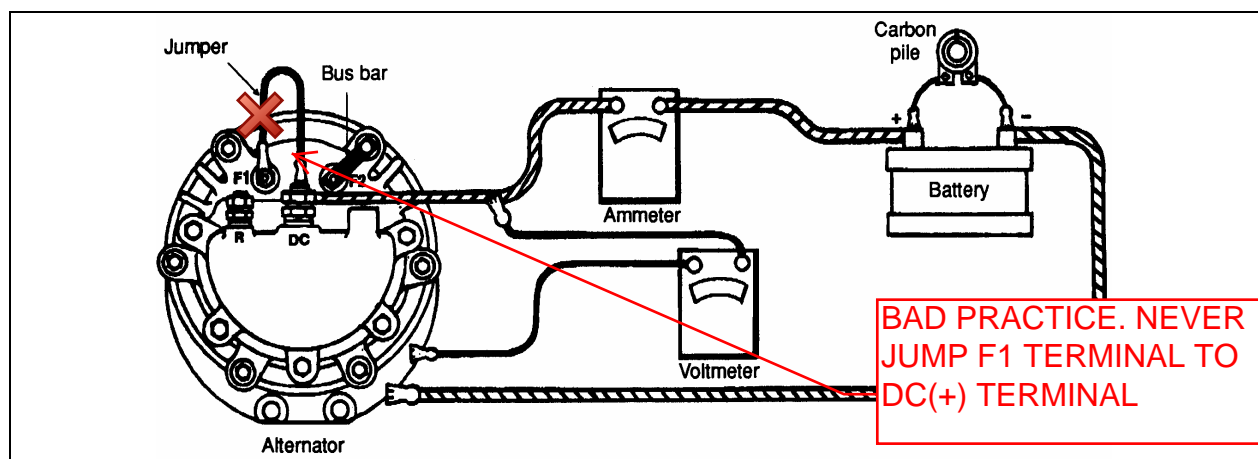


FIGURE 17:

7.2 ALTERNATOR DIAGNOSIS

Caution: Before checking the alternator, set to "OFF" the battery main disconnect switch.

It is not necessary to disassemble completely the alternator to make electrical checks. All electrical checks are made at the diode end of the assembly without having to remove the rotor, drive end frame or bearing. If the electrical components are not defective but bearing replacement is necessary, this can be done at the drive end without having to disassemble the diode end of the unit.

The components in the alternator that require electrical checks are the field winding, the six diodes, and the stator winding.

7.2.1 Diode Checks

Each diode may be checked for shorts and opens as follows:

1. Ensure the battery main disconnect switch is set to the "OFF" position.
2. Remove the pipe plug from underneath the end housing to drain the oil in the rectifier engine oil supply.
3. Remove the cap screws (7) and lock washers that attach the diode end cover to

the end housing. Remove the end cover from the end housing.

Note: Do not operate the alternator unless this unit is completely reassembled.

4. Remove seal from the end housing, detach and remove "DC" and relay terminals, stud, insulating sleeves and O-rings.
5. Disconnect all diode flexible leads; i.e. three from the output terminal stud and three from the diode supports. See figure 18 for more details.

Each diode may be checked for short or open circuits with an ohmmeter.

Note: The ohm meter polarity may be determined by connecting its leads to the voltmeter leads. The voltmeter will read up-scale when the negative leads are connected together and the positive leads are connected together. The polarity of the voltmeter leads may be determined by connecting the leads to the identified terminals on a battery.

Note: Use an ohm meter with a single 1.5 volts cell. Most accurate reading will be determined when the 300 ohms value is calibrated to the center one-third of the scale. DO NOT USE high voltage, such as a 110 volts test lamp to check diodes.

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

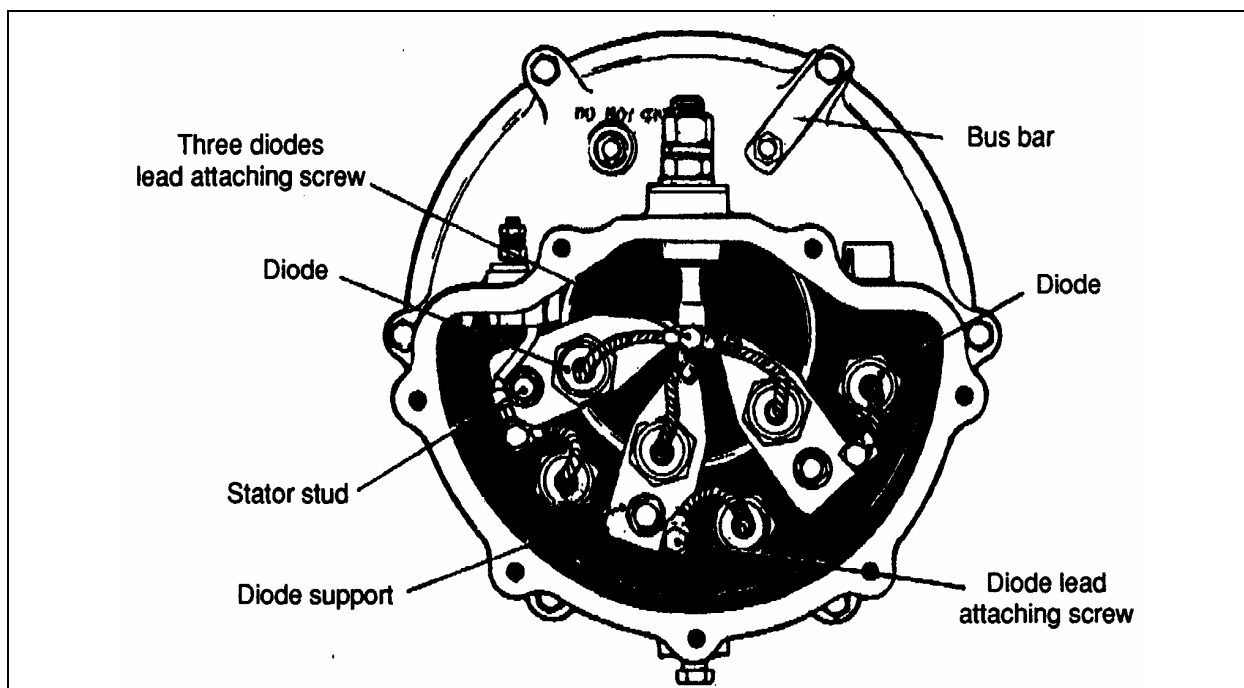


FIGURE 18: VIEW OF RECTIFIER END FRAME WITH COVER REMOVED

06069

To check diodes mounted in the supports for short fields, connect the positive ohmmeter lead to each diode lead and the ohmmeter negative lead to each support as shown in "A", "B", and "C" of figure 19. To check diodes mounted in the end frame for shorts, connect the ohmmeter positive lead to each diode lead and the ohmmeter negative lead to the end frame as shown in parts "D", "E", "F". The ohmmeter readings may vary considerably when checking diodes for shorts, but if the reading is 300 ohms or less, the diode is probably defective and should be replaced. A diode that reads 300 ohms or less will allow excessive reverse current from the battery. Replace defective diodes as explained later in this section.

To check the diodes mounted in the diode supports for open fields, connect the ohmmeter negative lead to each diode lead and the ohmmeter positive lead to each support as shown in parts "A", "B", and "C" of figure 20. To check the diodes mounted in end frame for shorts, connect the ohmmeter negative lead to each diode lead and the ohmmeter positive lead to the end frame as shown in parts "D", "E" and "F". An infinite resistance reading indicates an open diode. Diodes can be replaced by following the procedure outlined under DIODE REPLACEMENT".

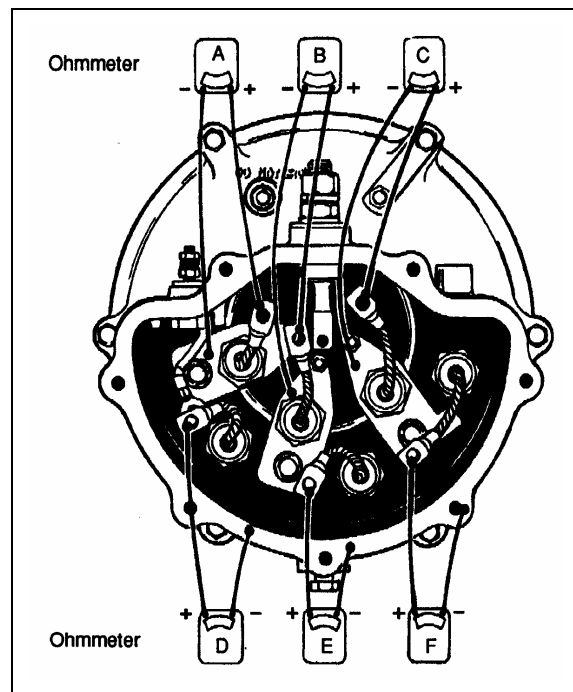


FIGURE 19: CHECKING DIODES WITH OHMMETER ON A TYPICAL OIL COOLED ALTERNATOR (END COVER REMOVED)

06070

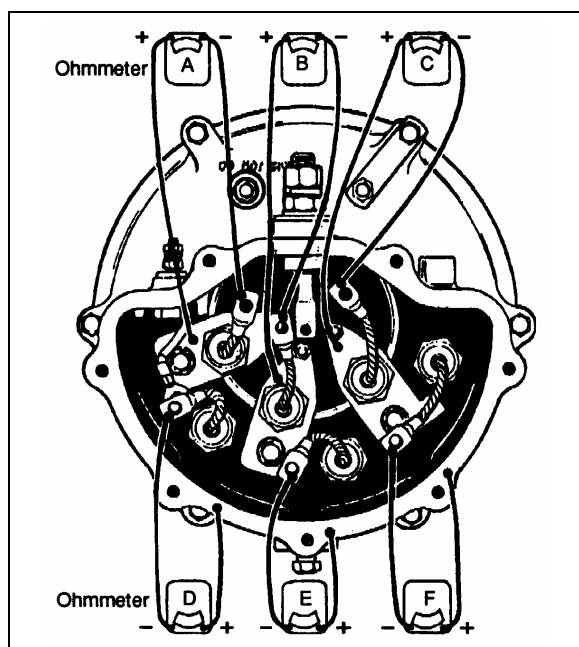


FIGURE 20: CHECKING DIODES WITH OHMMETER ON A TYPICAL OIL COOLED ALTERNATOR (END COVER REMOVED)

06071

When reinstalling diodes, torque to 9-11 lbf-ft (12-15 Nm). Re-stake next to the threads in an arbor press with an 1/8 inch (3,2 mm) round punch. Press the punch with gradual pressure. Do not strike as the shock may damage the diodes.

7.2.2 Field Winding Check

The field winding may be checked for shorts and opens with an ohmmeter. To check the field winding, connect the ohmmeter to field terminal and to ground. A resistance reading above normal indicates an open, and a reading less than normal indicates a short field. The normal resistance value is 3.0 to 3.3 ohms at 80 °F (27°C). An alternate method of checking is to place a battery of specified voltage, and an ammeter in series with the field winding. The current should register 7.2 to 8.3 amperes at 24 volts. Coil resistance is approximately 3.1 ohms. Amperage readings, other than the above, indicate an open, grounded, or shorted field. A defective field coil can be replaced by removing the end frame on which the field terminal is located and then removing the four field coil mounting screws. See FIELD REPLACEMENT for a detailed procedure.

7.2.3 Stator Winding Check

The stator winding may be checked for open and short fields with an ohmmeter as follows:

Open Fields

Connect the ohmmeter leads to two pairs of diode supports as shown in parts "A", "B", and "C" of figure 21. Correct polarity of the leads must be observed. The ohmmeter should indicate a low resistance. If an infinite or a high resistance is measured in either one or both checks, the stator windings are open.

Ground

To check the stator windings for ground, connect an ohmmeter to the diode support and diode end frame as shown in part "C" of figure 21. The ohmmeter should indicate a very high or infinite resistance. If zero, or a very low resistance is measured, the windings are grounded.

Shorts

The stator windings are difficult to check for shorts without finely calibrated laboratory test equipment due to the very low resistance values of the windings. However, if all other alternator checks are satisfactory, yet the unit fails to perform to specifications, shorted stator windings are probable.

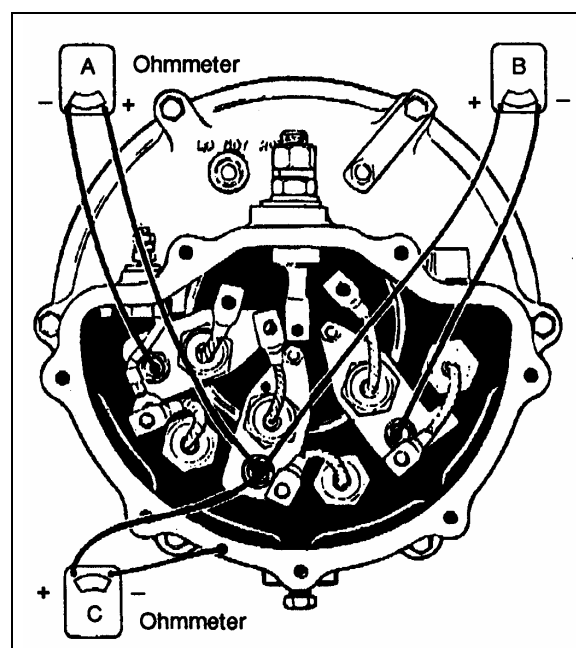


FIGURE 21: CHECKING STATOR WINDING FOR "OPEN" AND GROUND

06072

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

7.3 DIODE REPLACEMENT

The following replacement procedures are based on the assumption that the diode end cover is still off and diode leads were disconnected as explained earlier in this section.

Note: When replacing a diode, make sure it is designed for a negative ground system. The diode can be identified by the symbol stamped on the diode case. The arrow must point toward the diode flexible lead.

To replace the three diodes that are mounted in the supports attached to the stator lead studs, it is necessary to remove the diode and support assembly. The two outer diode and support assemblies are identical and can be installed on either side. The center unit has a different support, with 2 inches (50,8 mm) between the mounting hole centers.

Note: The outer supports are provided with 2¼ inch (57,15 mm) center holes.

7.3.1 Diode Replacement (in Support)

1. Remove nut with lock washer attaching the diode support to the stator lead stud.
2. Remove nut, lock washer, and flat washer attaching support to the small stud in the end frame.
3. Remove the diode and support assembly. Then remove insert from small hole in support or from small stud in the end frame.
4. Remove nut and flat washer from diode mounting stud, then remove diode from the support.
5. Place a new diode in the support and install a flat washer and nut on the diode mounting stud. Hold the diode with a wrench placed over flats on the diode, while tightening nut on the mounting stud to a torque of 160-180 lbf-in (18-20 Nm).
6. Place diode and support assembly over the stator lead stud and the small mounting stud. Place insert over small stud inside the hole in the support. Install flat washer, lock washer, and nut on the small stud, and tighten to a torque of 22-25 lbf-in (2-3 Nm). Install nut with lock washer on stator lead stud and tighten firmly.

7.3.2 Diode Replacement (in End Frame)

To remove diode, use a thin 1 inch open end wrench on flats of the diode case to unscrew diode from the end frame. Thread the new diode into the end frame and tighten to a torque of 160-180 lbf-in (18-20 Nm). If no other parts are to be replaced, refer to "DIODE END COVER INSTALLATION" in this section.

7.4 FIELD REMOVAL

1. Remove three diode and support assemblies from the end frame to provide access to the two lower field to end frame bolts.
2. Remove nut with lock washer and flat washer from three stator lead studs.
3. Remove the six bolts and lock washers attaching the diode end frame to the stator frame.
4. Separate the end frame from the stator frame, and remove the end frame and field assembly from the rotor while pushing the stator lead studs out of the end frame.
5. Remove nut, lock washer, flat washer, and insulating washer which secure the field lead terminal stud in the end frame. Push the stud out of the end frame.
6. Remove field terminal stud insulating bushing and seal from the end frame. Remove insulating sleeve from the field terminal stud.
7. Remove the four bolts and lock washers attaching the field to the end frame.
8. To separate the field from the end frame, install four 3/8-24 x 3 inch bolts in place of the 3/8-24 x 2 inch bolts removed in step 7. Thread bolts in to even heights. Support the end frame in an arbor press. Then, using a suitable press plate to exert pressure on all four bolt heads, press the field out of the end frame.

7.5 FIELD INSTALLATION

1. Position the field assembly on the end frame. Insert four 3/8-24 x 3 inch bolts through the end frame and thread into the field to keep holes aligned.
2. Support the end frame on an arbor press bed so that the diodes will not be damaged,

and press the field into the end frame. Press in until shoulder on field coil bottoms against the end frame.

3. Remove the four guide bolts. Install four 3/8-24 x 2 inch bolts, using new lock washers to attach the field to the end frame. Tighten bolts securely.
4. Place insulating sleeve in inner side of the field terminal stud hole in the end frame, and insert the terminal stud through the sleeve. Place two O-rings and insulating bushing over the terminal stud and push into hole in the end frame. Install insulating washer, flat washer, toothed lock washer, and nut on terminal stud. Tighten firmly.
5. Install each stator lead stud in the end frame as follows: Place insulating washer over the stud and insert the stud through the end frame. Place the insulating bushing over the stud and position in end frame hole. Install flat washer, lock washer, and nut on the stud. Tighten firmly.
6. Install three diode and support assemblies on the end frame as previously directed under "DIODE REPLACEMENT".
7. Install a new seal in notch around end of the stator frame. Insert field into the rotor and position the end frame against the stator frame. Attach end frame to the stator frame with six bolts and lock washers. Tighten bolts firmly.
8. If no other parts require replacement, refer to "DIODE END COVER INSTALLATION" in this section to complete the assembly.

7.6 STATOR REPLACEMENT

If tests performed under "Stator Winding Checks" earlier in this section indicated an open circuit or short in the stator, the stator and frame assembly must be replaced.

7.6.1 Removal

1. Remove diode end frame and field assembly as previously directed in steps 1 through 4 under "Field Removal".
2. Remove the six bolts and lock washers attaching the stator frame to the drive end frame.

3. Separate the stator frame from the drive end frame and remove the stator frame from the end frame and rotor.

7.6.2 Soldering Stator Terminal Leads

1. Using a wire brush, thoroughly clean the wire and terminal.
2. Silver solder the stat or lead to the terminal using a torch.
3. Thoroughly clean the silver solder connection with a wire brush.
4. Using a high grade energized rosin flux, coat the silver soldered connection with a 80-20 tin-lead solder or pure tin solder to prevent deterioration of the silver solder by engine oil.

Note: *The silver solder will provide the required mechanical strength, which will not be affected by temperature. The tin-lead solder will protect the silver solder connection from deterioration by engine oil.*

7.6.3 Installation

1. Position new seal in notch around the drive end of the stator frame.
2. Position the stator and frame assembly over the rotor against the drive end frame. Attach the stator frame to the drive end frame with six bolts and lock washers. Tighten bolts firmly.
3. Install diode end frame and field assembly as directed in steps 5, 6 and 7 under "installation".
4. Install rectifier end cover as directed later.

7.7 DIODE END COVER INSTALLATION

1. Make sure all diodes are properly installed and securely tightened. Leads from diodes threaded into the end frame must be securely attached to the diode supports. The relay terminal lead must also be attached to the left diode support.
2. Connect leads from the three diodes mounted in supports to the output terminal stud. Tighten the attachment screw firmly. Place insulating bushing over relay terminal stud.

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

3. Place a new seal in the diode end frame.
4. With the end cover in place against the end frame, install the cap screws and lock washers. Tighten the cap screws evenly and firmly.
5. Make sure the drain plug is installed in bottom of the end cover and securely tightened.

7.8 ALTERNATOR REMOVAL (DELCO)

1. Place "Starter Selector Switch" in engine compartment to the "OFF" position.
2. Place the battery main disconnect switch to the "OFF" position.
3. Remove alternator drive belt (see "7.9 ALTERNATOR DRIVE BELT").

Note: When reinstalling drive belt, it is important to set the belt tension correctly. (refer to the appropriate heading later in this section).

4. Scratch off protective sealer from electrical connections (relay, field and positive terminals). Refer to figure 22.

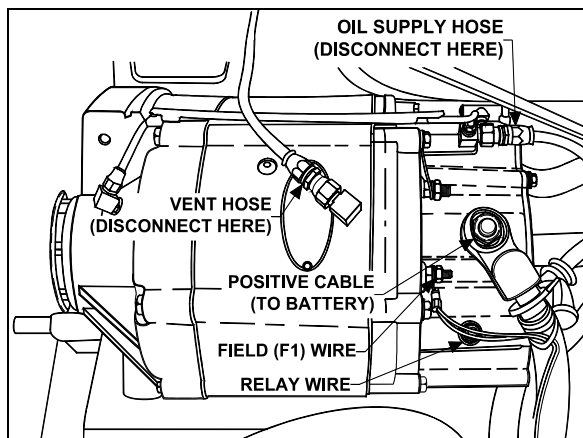


FIGURE 22: ALTERNATOR (HOSES AND WIRES) 06073

Note: After reconnecting electrical wires, it is important to cover terminals with protective sealer (Prévost #680745).

5. Disconnect wire #25 from the relay terminal, wire #107 from the field "F1" terminal and disconnect battery cable from the positive "+" terminal on the diode end cover. Tag wires removed to ease identification at time of installation. Refer to figure 22.
6. Disconnect oil supply line and vent hose from top of alternator (Fig. 22) and tape

lines to prevent entry of foreign matter. Disconnect oil drain hose from bottom of alternator (Fig. 23) and tape line to prevent entry of foreign matter.

7. Remove the four bolts and lock washer retaining alternator (refer to fig. 23).

Warning: Alternator weights approximately 154 lbs (70 kg). Another person is required to take the alternator out of engine compartment.

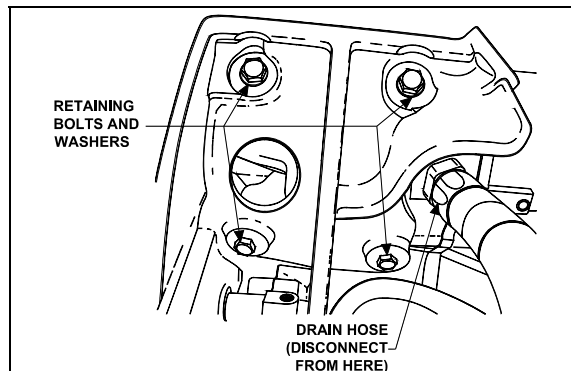


FIGURE 23: ALTERNATOR RETAINING BOLTS AND WASHERS 06350

7.8.1 Disassembly of Alternator

After diode, field and stator winding checks, the alternator can be disassembled to repair a faulty component, such as field or stator, or to proceed with bearing or rotor replacement. Perform the following steps to disassemble the alternator:

1. Remove nuts and washers from "DC" terminal on diode end frame.
2. Separate the diode cover plate from the diode end frame by removing the mounting screws.
3. Remove the washer, nut and lock washer attaching the diode supports to the end frame, the three screws connecting the diode leads to the diode supports, and the three nuts which attach the stator studs to the diode supports.
4. Separate the diode support assemblies from the diode end frame, and the three nuts that connect the studs to the diode end frame.
5. Mark the position of the drive end frame and diode frame with respect to the stator assembly so that the parts can be reassembled in the same position.

6. Detach the diode end frame and field assembly from the stator assembly by removing the attachment screws.
7. Separate the field assembly from the diode end frame by removing the four attachment screws.
8. Separate the rotor assembly and drive end frame from the stator assembly by removing the attaching screws.
9. Remove the shaft nut and washer, and the pulley. Press the rotor shaft out of the drive end frame.
10. Remove the retainer plate and pull the bearings from the drive end frame.

7.8.2 Alternator Cleaning and Inspection

Whenever the alternator is disassembled, it should be cleaned and inspected.

Cleaning

If sludge has accumulated on the stator, a light mineral oil should be used to clean it.

Inspection

When the alternator has been disassembled to the extent that the stator is exposed, the stator should be checked for the following:

- a) Adequate varnish.
- b) Proper spacing of conductors so that "near shorts" do not exist.
- c) Proper phase lead placement.
- d) Strong conductor and cross-over welds.

7.8.3 Bearing or Rotor Replacement

Whenever the rotor and drive end frame are disassembled for any reason, the single-row ball bearing must be replaced with a new one due to the probability of damage during disassembly.

Removal and Disassembly

1. If the pulley was not removed from the rotor shaft at time of alternator removal, remove the nut and flat washer from the shaft and pull the pulley off the shaft.
2. Remove the six bolts and lock washers attaching the drive end frame to the stator

frame. Separate the drive end frame from the stator frame. Remove the drive end frame and support assembly.

3. Support the drive end frame in an arbor press so that the rotor can be pressed down out of the end frame. Using a suitable adapter against the end of the rotor shaft that will pass through the inner race of the double-row ball bearing, press the rotor down out of the end frame and bearings. Since the single-row bearing outer race is held in the end frame by the retainer plate, and the inner race is a press fit onto the rotor shaft, the bearing will probably be damaged when the shaft is pressed out and need to be replaced with a new part.
4. Remove the six screws attaching the bearing retainer plate to the drive end frame. Remove the retainer plate, the single-row bearing and the bearing spacer from the end frame.
5. Support the drive end frame in an arbor press with the double-row bearing down, so that the bearing can be pressed down out of the end frame. Using a suitable driver that will exert a force on the bearing outer race, press the bearing out of the end frame.
6. Remove the rubber bearing clamp from groove in the end frame.

Assembly and Installation

1. Install a new single-row ball bearing into inner side of the drive end frame. Install the bearing retainer plate and attach with six screws. Stake screws in place after tightening.
2. Position the rubber bearing clamp in the groove in bearing bore of the drive end frame. Lubricate the clamp to permit the bearing to be pressed in without dislodging or damaging the clamp.
3. Position the rotor in an arbor press with the shaft end up. Install the drive end frame and single-row bearing assembly over the rotor shaft. Using a driver over the rotor shaft, which will exert a force on the bearing inner race, press the bearing onto the shaft until it bottoms against the rotor.

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

4. Install bearing spacer over the rotor shaft. Position the double-row bearing over the rotor shaft at end frame bore. Using an adapter that will exert a force on both the inner and outer races of the bearing, press the bearing onto the shaft and into the end frame until the inner race bottoms against the bearing spacer.
5. Place a new seal around the drive end of the stator frame.
6. Insert the rotor between the stator and field, and position the drive end frame against the stator frame. Attach the end frame to the stator frame with six bolts and lock washers. Tighten the bolts to a torque of 5 to 5.4 lbf-ft (6-7 Nm).

Caution: When replacing the alternator on the vehicle, ensure that an alternator with the proper drive ratio is used. Installation of an alternator with any other drive ratio will result in severe and costly damage to the alternator and engine.

7.8.4 Alternator Reassembly

Reassembly is the reverse of disassembly.

Note: When tightening the outside nut on the "DC" output terminal, torque the nut to 30-35 lbf-ft (41-47 Nm). The lower nut should be supported while doing so.

When reinstalling diodes, tighten to a torque of 9-11 lbf-ft (12-15 Nm).

7.8.5 Output check

When removed from the engine, the alternator may be checked without circulating oil on a test bench, providing the output is limited to 100 amperes or less. The alternator may be bench tested without circulating oil at outputs exceeding 100 amperes, as long as the period of operation is limited to less than 15 seconds.

Caution: Operating the alternator at outputs greater than 100 amperes without adequate oil circulation for periods exceeding 15 seconds, will cause the alternator to overheat, resulting in damage to the winding and diodes.

If the alternator is to be operated at an output greater than 100 amperes for longer than 15 seconds, circulating oil must be provided. SAE 30 engine oil must be applied to the connection on the diode end cover at a pressure of 35 psi

and at a temperature of 60 °F to 220 °F (16°C to 104°C). This will provide an oil flow of about one gallon per minute.

To check the alternator on a test bench, make electrical connections as shown in figure 20. Make sure the negative battery terminal is connected to the alternator frame.

7.9 ALTERNATOR DRIVE BELT

Removal

1. Insert a 3/4 inch socket drive into one of the tensioning arm opening (Fig. 24).

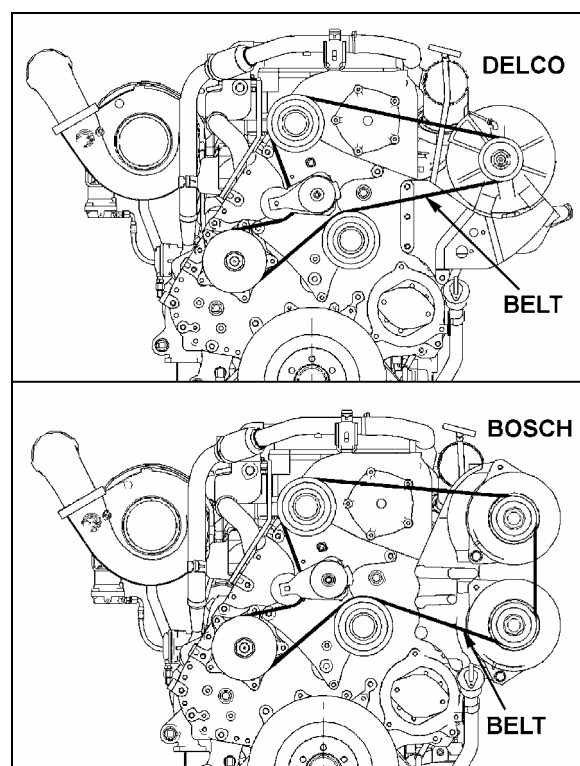


FIGURE 24: ALTERNATOR DRIVE BELT

06342

2. Twist the tensioning arm to slacken belt.
3. Remove belt.

Installation

Installation of the alternator drive belt is the reverse of removal.

7.9.1 Adjustment

Correct belt tension is required to maximize belt life. The tensioning arm maintains proper belt tension, no adjustment is required.

Check for wear and proper tension every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) or twice a year, whichever comes first.

8. VOLTAGE REGULATOR (DELCO)

The 24 volt regulator (Delco) is located in the main power compartment.

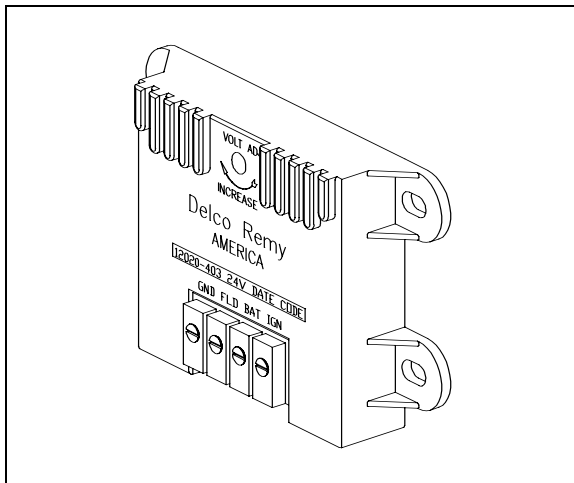


FIGURE 25: VOLT REGULATOR

06408

The transistor regulator illustrated in figure 25 is an assembly mainly consisting of diodes, capacitors, resistors and transistors. These components are mounted on a printed circuit panel board to form a completely static unit containing no moving parts. Regulators of this type have only four terminals which are identified "GND." (ground), "FLD" (field) "BAT" (battery) and "IGN" (ignition).

The regulator components work together to limit the alternator voltage to the preset value by controlling the alternator field current. This is the only function that the regulator performs in the charging system.

The voltage at which the alternator operates is determined by the regulator adjustment. Once adjusted, the alternator voltage remains constant. The regulator is unaffected by length of service, changes in temperature, or changes in alternator output and speed.

A typical wiring diagram of a negative ground system is illustrated in figure 26. This diagram shows only the basic charging system components. It does not show any components such as the control relays. Refer to "Charging system" wiring diagram, in "Wiring diagrams" for the electric circuits and connections.

Voltage regulator maintenance

The voltage regulator is a service-free electronic unit. When it fails, it should be replaced. The following procedure must be used:

- Open the main power compartment door in order to get access to the voltage regulator;
- Unscrew the electrical cable connectors;
- Unscrew the voltage regulator unit;
- Install a new voltage regulator by reversing the procedure.

Caution: Place the battery main disconnect switch to "OFF" position.

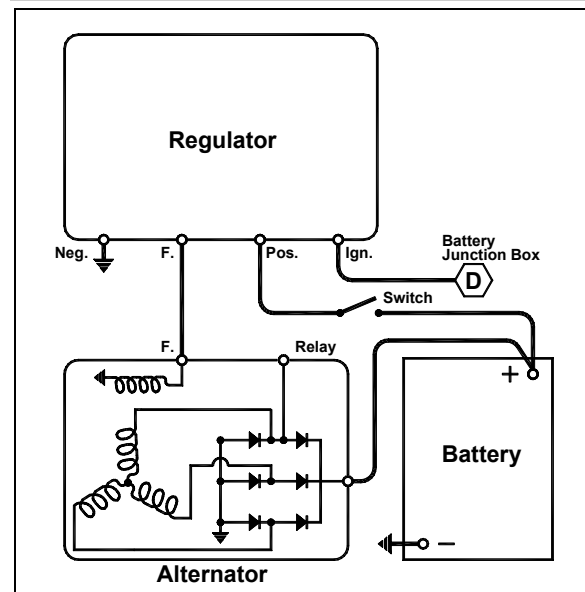


FIGURE 26: TYPICAL WIRING DIAGRAM OF A NEGATIVE GROUND SYSTEM

06415

Note: For information about BOSCH alternator and voltage regulator, refer to technical publication "Repair and Testing Instructions for T1 Alternator 0120 689 552".

8.1 TROUBLESHOOTING PROCEDURES

Trouble in the electrical system will usually be indicated by one of two conditions: an undercharged or an overcharged battery. Either condition can result from an improper voltage regulator setting:

Checking Battery Voltage

The absence of gas production during the continuous appearance of the green dot in the battery's built-in hydrometer indicates that the

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

voltage setting is satisfactory. Check the following conditions:

Checking Voltage Regulator Setting

1. To check the voltage setting, connect a voltmeter across the "POS" and "NEG" terminals on the regulator, and an ammeter to the "C" terminal on the alternator. Refer to figure 27.

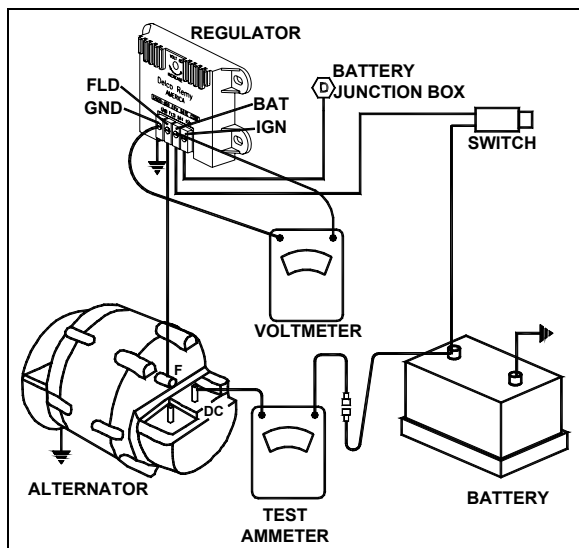


FIGURE 27: REGULATOR VOLTAGE TEST

06416

2. Operate the engine at approximately 1000 rpm (about 2300 alternator rpm), with accessories on, to obtain an alternator output of 20-200 amperes.
3. Note the voltage setting. It should be steady at 27.5 volts.
4. If not, the desired setting can be obtained by removing the plug from the voltage regulator cover and slightly turning the adjusting screw inside the regulator. Turn the adjusting screw clockwise to increase the voltage setting or counterclockwise to decrease it. See figure 28 for details.

Note: If regulator voltage cannot be adjusted to the specified setting, remove the regulator and repair or replace it as necessary.

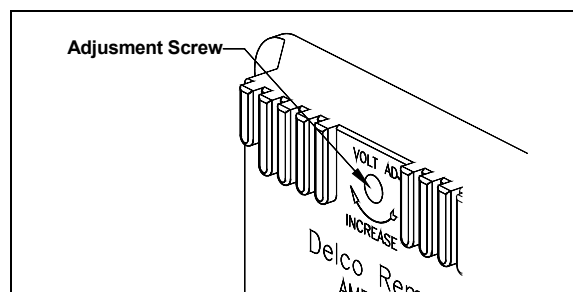


FIGURE 28: ADJUSTING REGULATOR VOLTAGE SETTING

06418

8.1.1 Undercharged Battery

If the voltage setting is steady and reasonably close to the specified value and the battery is undercharged, raise the setting by 0.3 volt, then check for an improved battery condition over a minimum service period of 48 hours. If the voltage cannot be adjusted to the desired value, the alternator should be checked as follows:

1. Stop alternator, turn off all accessories and disconnect battery ground cable.
2. Disconnect all leads from the regulator and from the alternator field. **Do not allow leads to touch ground.**
3. Connect a voltmeter and an ammeter in the circuit at the alternator "DC" terminal.
4. Connect a jumper lead from the alternator "DC" terminal to the alternator field terminal.
5. Connect a carbon pile resistor load across the battery. Turn to the "Off" position.
6. See figure 29 for wiring connections.

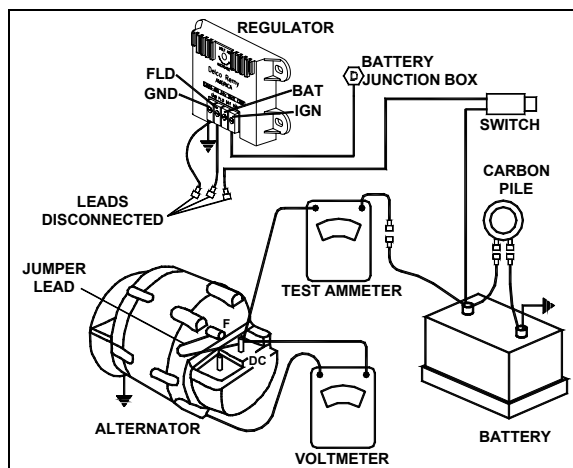


FIGURE 29: REGULATOR VOLTAGE TEST (UNDERCHARGED BATTERY)

06417

7. Reconnect battery ground cable
8. Turn on all vehicle accessories.

9. Operate alternator and adjust carbon pile resistor load as required to check for rated output as given in Delco-Remy Service Bulletin 1G-187 or 1G-188.
10. Check the alternator field winding as follows: Disconnect the lead from the field terminal and connect an ohmmeter from the field terminal to ground. A resistance reading above normal indicates an open field, and a resistance reading less than normal indicates a shorted or grounded field. The normal resistance can be calculated by dividing the voltage by the field current published in Delco-Remy Service Bulletin 1G-186, 1G-187, or 1G-188. The normal resistance value should be at or near midscale on the ohmmeter for accuracy. An alternate method of checking is to connect a battery of specified voltage and an ammeter in series with the field winding, and compare readings with published specifications in Delco-Remy Service Bulletin 1G-186, 1G-187, or 1G-188. An alternator is defective if it does not produce rated output or if field windings are faulty. If the alternator provides rated output, and field windings check satisfactorily, the regulator should be checked as covered under "Regulator Checks".

8.1.2 Overcharged Battery

If the voltage setting as checked above is steady and reasonably close to the specified value, lower the setting by 0.3 volt and check for an improved battery condition over a minimum service period of 48 hours. If the voltage cannot be adjusted to the desired value, proceed as follows: where the alternator field is grounded internally in the alternator as shown in figure 26 a shorted or grounded field or a defective regulator can cause an overcharged battery. The field winding can be checked as covered in paragraph "Undercharged Battery". If the field winding is found to be correct, the alternator is not defective, and the regulator should be checked as covered under "Regulator Checks".

8.2 REGULATOR CHECKS

Separate the cover from the base, and remove the panel assembly from the cover. Carefully note the location of all washers and lock washers.

The component parts are keyed to figure 26. Before making electrical checks, visually inspect the components and make sure all soldered

connections are secure. Various electrical checks with an ohmmeter can be made to determine which components are defective.

The ohmmeter **must** be accurate, and should be a scale-type meter with a 1.5 or 3 volt cell. Most digital ohmmeters cannot be used to check semiconductors. However, some digital ohmmeters are specially designed to test semiconductors and can be used to test components in the regulator. Consult the ohmmeter's manufacturer for specifications concerning the capabilities of the ohmmeter.

It is important that all of the following checks be made. If a defective part is found, replace it before proceeding with the remaining checks. Be sure to make all the checks since more than one component may be defective.

A defective regulator can be repaired according to the following methods:

- A) By changing the printed circuit board in the regulator. Unscrew the retaining screws on the printed circuit and remove it. Install a new printed circuit board. This method is the most commonly used.
- B) By removing any retaining screws involved and unsoldering the connections. When resoldering, limit solder time to a minimum as excessive heat may damage the printed circuit board and component parts. However good soldered connections are essential for satisfactory operation. A resin core 63% tin 37% lead solder with a 360 °F (182°C) melting point is recommended along with a soldering iron rated at 50 watts or less. Use extreme care to avoid overheating. Before checking the printed circuit board, remove transistor TR1, which must be checked separately. Connect the ohmmeter as shown in figure 29, and then reverse the ohmmeter leads to obtain two readings on the same component. Use the middle scale on scale-type meters on which the 300 ohm value should be within, or nearly within, the middle third of scale.

Capacitors C1 and C2 = The ohmmeter should read high and low on each capacitor. If not, replace capacitor.

Diodes D1, D2 and D3 = Each diode should give one high and one low reading. If not, replace diode.

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

Resistor R2 = Turn voltage adjustment screw (identified in figure 28) with ohmmeter connecting each way. Reading should change as slotted screw is turned. If not, replace R2.

Transistor TR1 = See figure 30. Use the low scale. Each of the three checks should read low and high. If not, replace TR1.

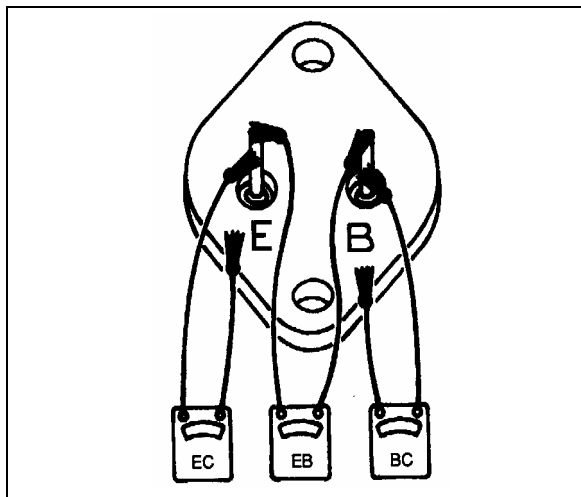


FIGURE 30: CHECKING TRANSISTORS TR1

06081

Transistor TR2 = Change the ohmmeter to use the low scale. EB should read low and high. BC should read low and high. EC should both read high. If not, replace TR2. See figure 31.

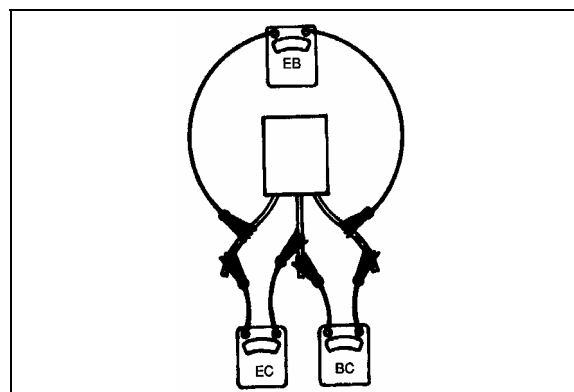


FIGURE 31: CHECKING TRANSISTORS TR2

06082

8.3 ADJUSTING VOLTAGE

After repair, the regulator must be adjusted to the desired voltage setting. Follow the procedure under "Checking Voltage Regulator Setting". Slowly turn the adjusting screw full range and observe the voltmeter to ensure that the voltage is being controlled, then, while still turning, slowly adjust to the desired setting.

9. BATTERY EQUALIZER

VoltMaster Battery equalizer owner's manual (100 amps) is annexed at the end of this section.

Battery equalizer is located in the main power compartment.

10. STARTER

Refer to Mitsubishi Electric Corporation (MELCO) Service bulletin ME003-P annexed at the end of this section for information and maintenance instruction on MELCO 105P70 starter.

11. ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

The vehicle may be equipped with an engine immersion-type electric block heater to assist cold weather starting. The heater male electric plug is located on the engine compartment door (Fig. 32) or on the engine compartment R.H. side door. To use it, connect the female plug of an electrical extension cord to the heater plug. Some converted vehicles may have the heater connected to the coach AC power system. The extension cord must be plugged into a 110-120 V AC power source only. The engine block heater should be used whenever the vehicle is parked for an extended period of time in cold weather and a suitable power source is available.

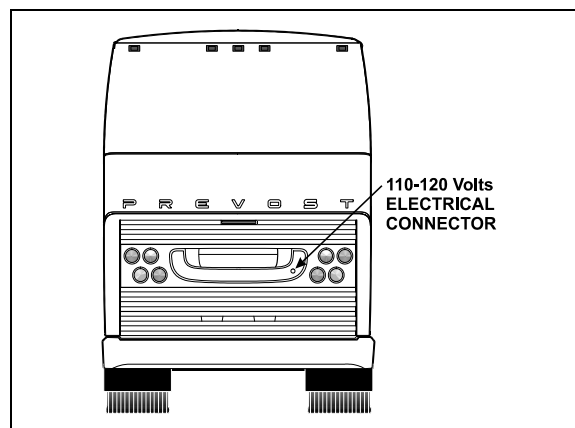


FIGURE 32: ELECTRIC HEATER PLUG LOCATION

06481

11.1 MAINTENANCE

This heater is non-serviceable except for the cord, and if faulty, must be replaced as a unit.

12. EXTERIOR LIGHTING

The circuit for exterior lights, as well as their control switches, relays and circuit breakers are shown on the applicable wiring diagrams. Wiring diagrams are located in the technical publication box.

12.1 HEADLIGHTS

Each headlight assembly consists of two headlamp module 90 mm (3½ inch) equipped with a 12-volt halogen bulb and one 100 mm (4 inch) 12-volt LED turn/signal lamp. Outer lamps have a double function (both low and high beam). Inner lamps are used for high beam or daytime running light. The inner or outer lamp uses the same single filament halogen bulb part number.

Note: If vehicle is equipped with optional Xenon headlamps, refer to paragraph 12.1.6.

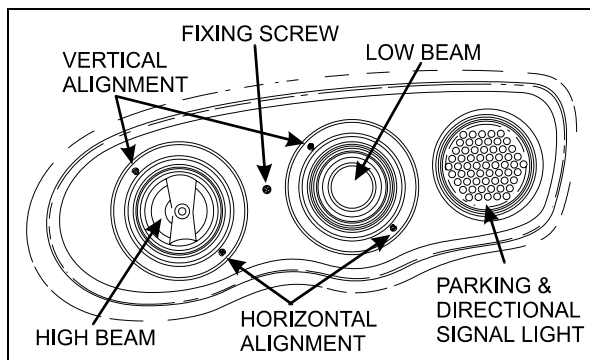


FIGURE 33: HEADLIGHT ASSEMBLY

06481

12.1.1 Headlight Beam Toggle Switch

The multifunction lever located on the steering column is used to select proper lighting. High beams or low beams can be selected by pulling the lever rearward. A high beam indicator on the central dashboard panel is illuminated when the high beam circuit is energized.

Note: Pulling the lever rearward while the lights are off will flash the headlights.

12.1.2 Maintenance

Clean headlights with soap and water and a good glass cleaner whenever dirty. For maximum illumination, headlight connections must be coated with a dielectric grease to prevent oxidation and proper voltage must be maintained. Low battery voltage, loose or dirty contacts in wiring system and poor ground contribute to a decrease in voltage. Check wiring and connections regularly and keep battery properly charged. When a headlight

burns out, a new bulb must be installed. Headlights must be properly aimed to provide maximum allowable road illumination. When using mechanical aiming devices, follow manufacturer's instructions.

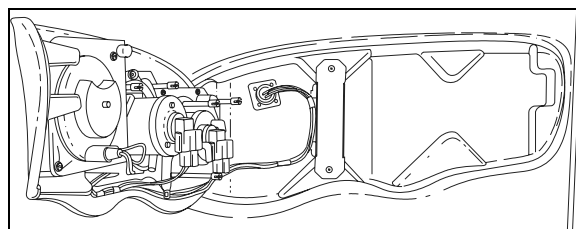


FIGURE 34: OPENING HEADLIGHT ASSEMBLY

06482

Headlight aim should be checked after installing a new bulb. Aiming can be performed without opening headlight assembly. Horizontal and vertical aiming of each module is provided by two adjusting screws that pivot the module in the housing for proper alignment (fig. 33). There is no adjustment for focus since the module is set for proper focus during manufacturing assembly.

Note: Make sure headlight assembly is properly positioned into its housing before securing using fixing screw.

Caution: Use a soft cloth to clean the parking and front turn signal lamp.

12.1.3 Headlight Adjustment

The following is a general procedure for headlight adjustment using a mechanical equipment, such as a "Hoopy 100" Aligner. If your mechanical equipment is different, refer to the manufacturer's instruction manual.

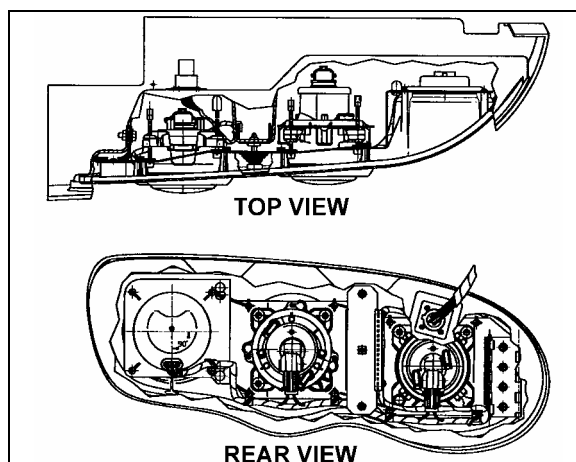


FIGURE 35: HEADLIGHT ASSEMBLY TOP & REAR VIEW

06495

Setting aligner according to slope

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

1. Park vehicle on a level floor.
2. Set the support rail (Prévost #29261) down (Fig. 36). Using shims, adjust its level to stabilize it.

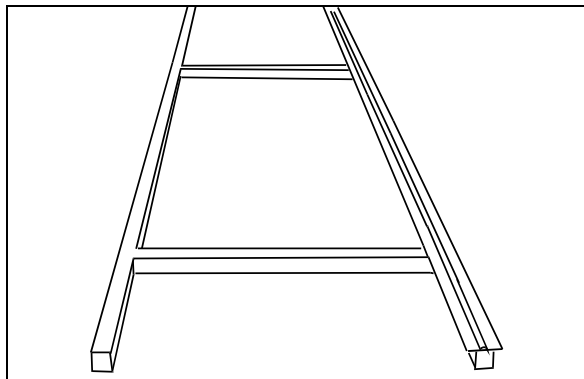


FIGURE 36: SUPPORT RAIL INSTALLATION 06501

3. Install jigs #29263 and #29262 onto the support rail. Position the support rail so that both stops are centered between the two beams (Fig. 37). Mark the position for future reference.

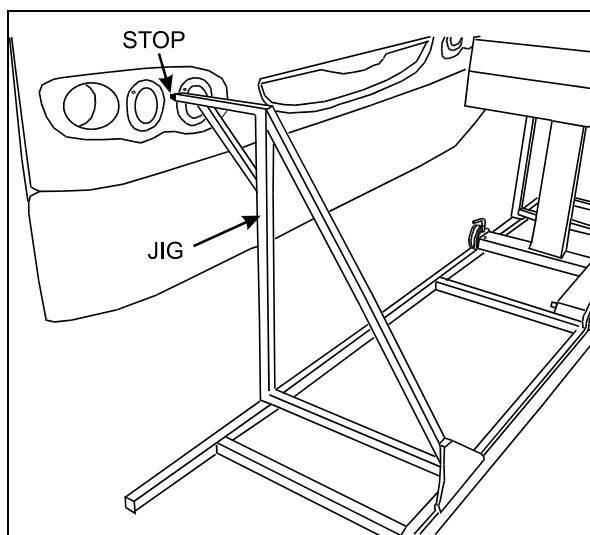


FIGURE 37: INSTALLATION OF JIGS 06499

Note: The stops will position the support rail between 16-24 inches of vehicle.

4. Remove the jigs.
5. Install "Hoopy 100" Aligner onto support rail (Fig. 38).
6. Using an Allen key on the front wheel, level Hoopy 100 aligner until spirit level bubble is centered (Fig. 39 and 40).

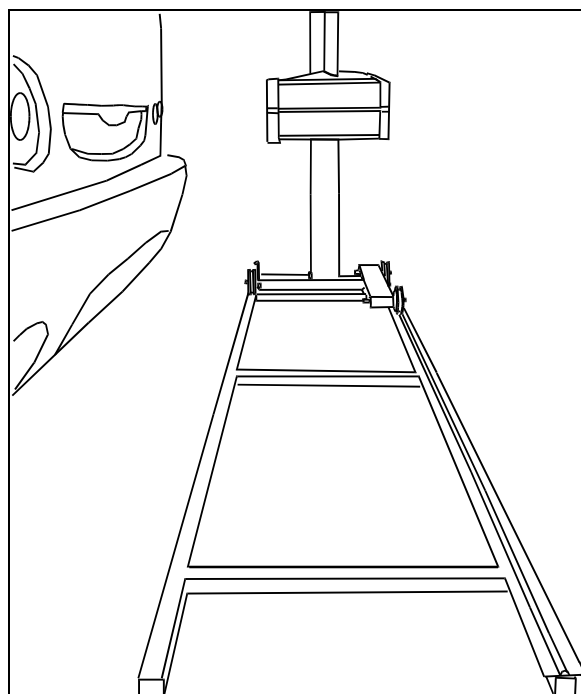


FIGURE 38: INSTALLATION OF HOOPY 100 ALIGNER 06496

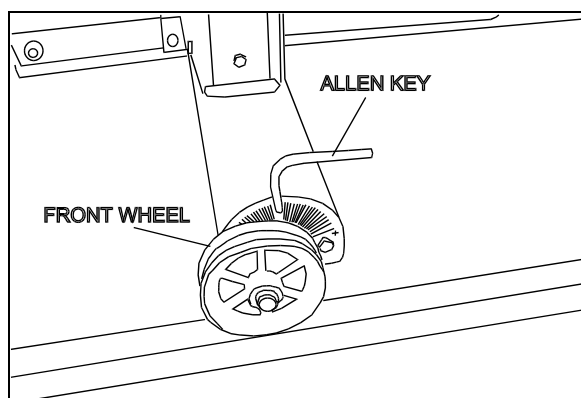


FIGURE 39: ADJUSTING HOOPY 100 LEVEL 06498

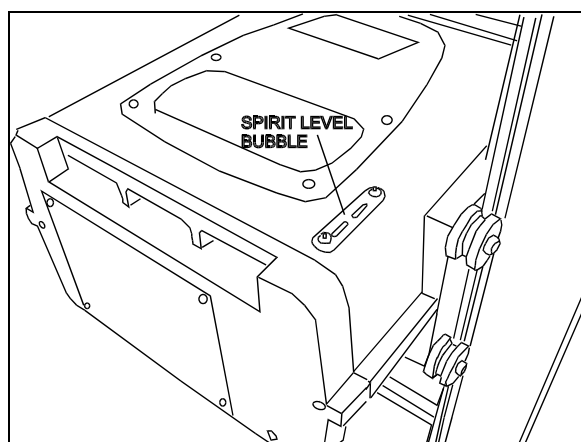


FIGURE 40: SPIRIT LEVEL 06500

7. Install a calibration fixture in the axis of front axle wheel and one in the axis of rear axle wheel (Fig. 41).

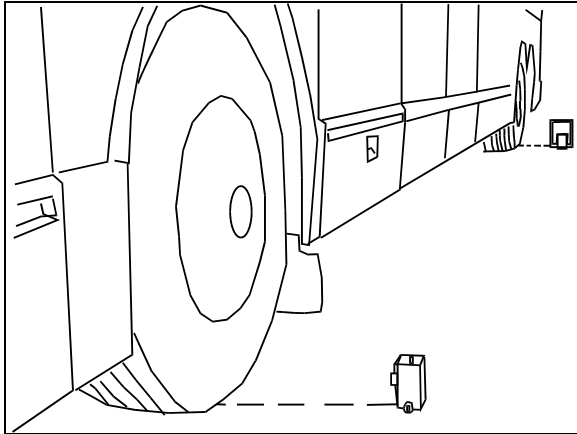


FIGURE 41: INSTALLING CALIBRATION FIXTURES 06497

8. Adjust mirrors so that lines are perfectly aligned.
9. Record reading.

Note: The floor level reading must be added to the aligner reading to ensure a precise alignment.

10. Transfer positive (+) or negative (-) reading of calibration fixtures to the front wheel of Hoopy 100 aligner. Add this reading to Hoopy 100 aligner level reading.

☛ eg – level: 0.2, mirrors: 0.1 = 0.3

☛ eg – level: -0.2, mirrors: 0.1 = 0.1

Note: If vehicle remains stationary during the headlight alignment procedure, it is not necessary to check floor slope each time.

Headlight Alignment

Caution: This mechanical equipment must be calibrated by metrology before initial set-up or after major overhaul. Calibration must be performed annually.

1. Set the support rail (Prévost #29261) down (Fig. 36). Using shims, adjust its level to stabilize it. Use previous reference marks to ensure proper positioning.
2. Make sure that headlight assembly fixing screw is properly fastened (Fig. 33).

Note: Make sure that vehicle is at proper height (suspension) and that air pressure is above 90 psi.

3. Install “Hoopy 100” Aligner onto support rail (Fig. 38). Turn aligner ON.

Caution: Vehicle must be parked at the same location each time. If location is changed for any reason, floor slope alignment and aligner leveling must be redone. Refer to “Setting aligner according to slope”.

Note: If aligner indicates LOW BATT, battery must be charged for 12 hours.

Low beam adjustment

1. Turn ON low beam lights.
2. Press ALIGN TO LAMP and move aligner in front of first beam.

Note: If beam is offset, a LOW CANDLES message will appear. Using vertical and horizontal alignment screws, adjust beam as needed (fig. 33).

3. Adjust aligner height (move aligner sideways if needed) so that XX appears in the aligner sight. Lock aligner side handle.
4. Open Hoopy 100 aligner door.
5. Press AIM LAMP down, press a second time so that LOW ADJUST appears in the sight. Arrows indicate in which direction to adjust the beam using the vertical and horizontal adjustment screws. Perform this adjustment until XX appears in the sight.
6. Aligner will reset after 5 minutes.
7. Repeat for other low beam light.

High beam adjustment

1. Turn ON high beam lights.
2. Press ALIGN TO LAMP and move aligner in front of first beam.
3. Adjust aligner height (move aligner sideways if needed) so that XX appears in the aligner sight. Lock aligner side handle.
4. Open Hoopy 100 aligner door.
5. Press AIM LAMP down, press a second time so that HIGH ADJUST appears in the sight. Arrows indicate in which direction to adjust the beam using the vertical and horizontal adjustment screws. Perform this adjustment until XX appears in the sight.
6. Aligner will reset after 5 minutes.

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

7. Repeat for other high beam light.
8. Store equipment away in a safe place.

If proper mechanical equipment is not available, perform adjustments as described below:

1. Headlight aiming and inspection can be accomplished by visual means. This is done on a screen located at a distance of 25 feet (7.6 m) of the headlights. It should be of adequate size with a matte-white surface well shaded from extraneous light and properly adjusted to the floor area on which the vehicle stands. Provisions should be made for moving the screen or its vertical centerline so that it can be aligned with the vehicle axis. In addition to the vertical centerline, the screen should be provided with four laterally adjustable vertical tapes and two vertically adjustable horizontal tapes.
2. The four movable vertical tapes should be located on the screen at the left and right limits called for in the specification with reference to centerlines ahead of each headlight assembly.
3. The headlight centerlines shall be spaced either side of the fixed centerline on the screen by $\frac{1}{2}$ the lateral distance between the light source centers of the pertinent headlights. The horizontal tapes should be located on the screen at the upper and lower limits called for in the specification with reference to the height of beam centers and the plane on which the vehicle rests, not the floor on which the screen rests (Fig. 42).
4. The nominal vertical aim position on lower beam headlights shall be adjusted based on the headlight mounting height, from the ground to the light source center of the headlight, according to table 1.

TABLE 1 – VERTICAL BEAM AIM GUIDELINES

Headlight (centerline) Mounting Height	Nominal Vertical Aim	Aim Inspection Limits for Vertical Aim
56 to 90 cm (22 to 36 inch)	0 Vertical	10 cm (4 inch) up to 10 cm (4 inch) down
90 to 120 cm (36 to 48 inch)	5 cm (2 inch) down	5 cm (2 inch) up to 15 cm (6 inch) down
120 to 140 cm (48 to 54 inch)	6.4 cm (4 inch) down	4 cm (1.5 inch) up to 16.5 cm (6.5 inch) down

5. High beam headlights are aimed so that the center of the high-intensity zone is located at the horizontal and straight ahead vertically (Fig. 43).
6. Low beam headlights are aimed so that the top edge (the cutoff) of the high-intensity zone is at the vertical location as per Table 1 and the left edge of the high-intensity zone is at the vertical centerline of the headlight (Fig. 44).

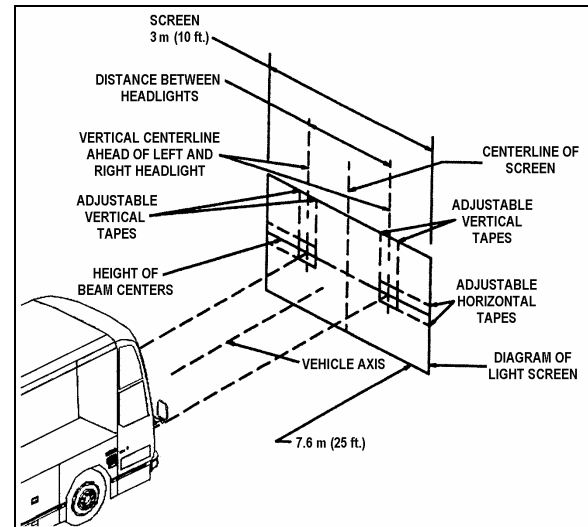


FIGURE 42: A LIGNMENT OF HEADLIGHT AIMING SCREEN

06502

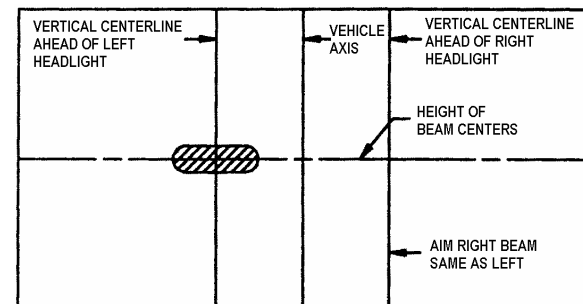


FIGURE 43: HIGH-INTENSITY ZONE (SHADED AREA) OF A PROPERLY AIMED UPPER BEAM ON THE AIMING SCREEN 7.6 M (25FT) IN FRONT OF VEHICLE

06503

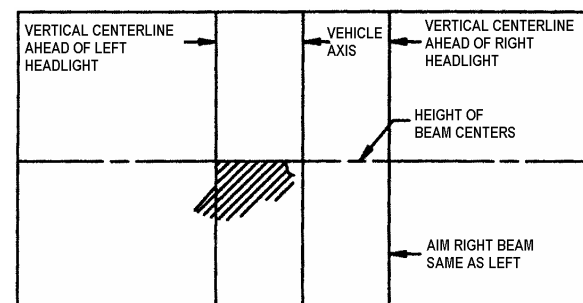


FIGURE 44: HIGH-INTENSITY ZONE (SHADED AREA) OF A PROPERLY AIMED LOWER BEAM ON THE AIMING SCREEN 7.6 M (25 FT) IN FRONT OF VEHICLE

06504

7. The inspection limits for high-beam headlights shall be with the center of the high-intensity zone from 10 cm (4 inch) up to 10 cm (4 inch) down; and, from 10 cm (4 inch) left to 10 cm (4 inch) right on a screen at 7.6 m (25 ft.) (Fig. 45).

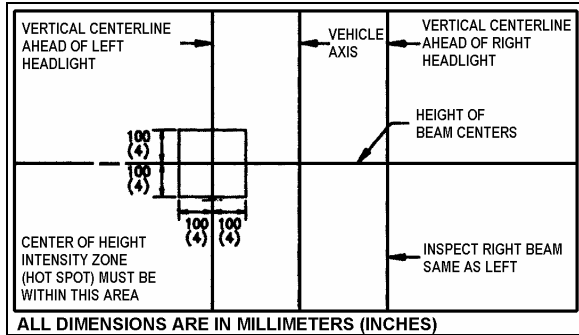


FIGURE 45: AIM INSPECTION LIMITS FOR UPPER-BEAM HEADLIGHTS 06505

8. The inspection limits in the vertical direction for low-beam headlights or the low beam of a dual-beam headlight, shall be as described in Table 1. In the horizontal direction, the left edge of the high-intensity zone shall be located from 10 cm (4 inch) left to 10 cm (4 inch) right of the vertical centerline of the beam. The viewing screen shall be located 7.6 m (25 ft.) in front of the vehicle (Fig. 46).

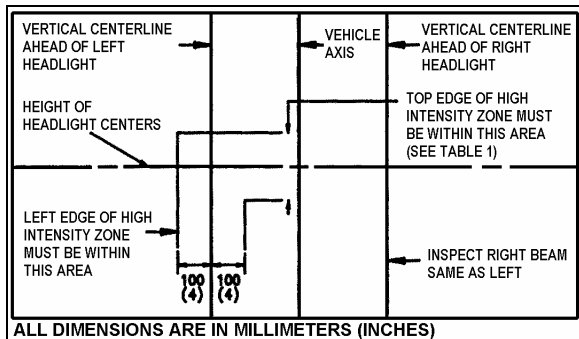


FIGURE 46: AIM INSPECTION LIMITS FOR LOWER-BEAM HEADLIGHTS 06506

12.1.4 Sealed-Beam Unit

Bulb Removal and Replacement

1. Remove the headlight screw fixing the headlight assembly, then pivot headlight assembly out (Fig. 33 and 34).
2. Remove connector from headlight bulb.
3. Remove the bulb by pushing and rotating it out of the socket.

4. Install the new bulb by reversing the previous procedure.

Caution: During this step, avoid contacting the bulb with the fingers not to alter the bulb life.

Note: Do not disrupt headlight adjustment screws.

Module Replacement

1. Remove screw fixing headlight assembly to its housing (Fig. 33) and pivot assembly out.
2. Remove connector from headlight bulb.
3. Unfasten three metal clips attaching headlight unit to support.
4. Install new module and fasten metal clips.
5. Install wiring connector on back of new sealed beam unit.
6. Pivot headlight assembly back into its housing then secure using fixing screw.

Note: Make sure headlight assembly is properly positioned into its housing before securing using fixing screw.

7. Perform alignment procedure.

Note: The headlight aim must be checked and adjusted even if it was properly adjusted before the sealed beam unit was replaced.

12.1.5 Front Turn Signal

The front turn signal is part of the front headlight assembly. The turn signal is a sealed unit (LED) located on each front corner and should be replaced as an assembly. Turn signal is visible from both front and side.

Removal and Replacement

1. Remove screw fixing headlight assembly to its housing (Fig. 33) and pivot assembly out.
2. Partially unfasten back plate fixing screws, then remove signal lamp.
3. Remove socket from signal lamp.
4. Install wiring connector on back of new signal lamp then install signal lamp.
5. Fasten back plate fixing screws then pivot headlight assembly back into its housing then secure using fixing screw.

Note: Make sure headlight assembly is properly positioned into its housing before securing using fixing screw.

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

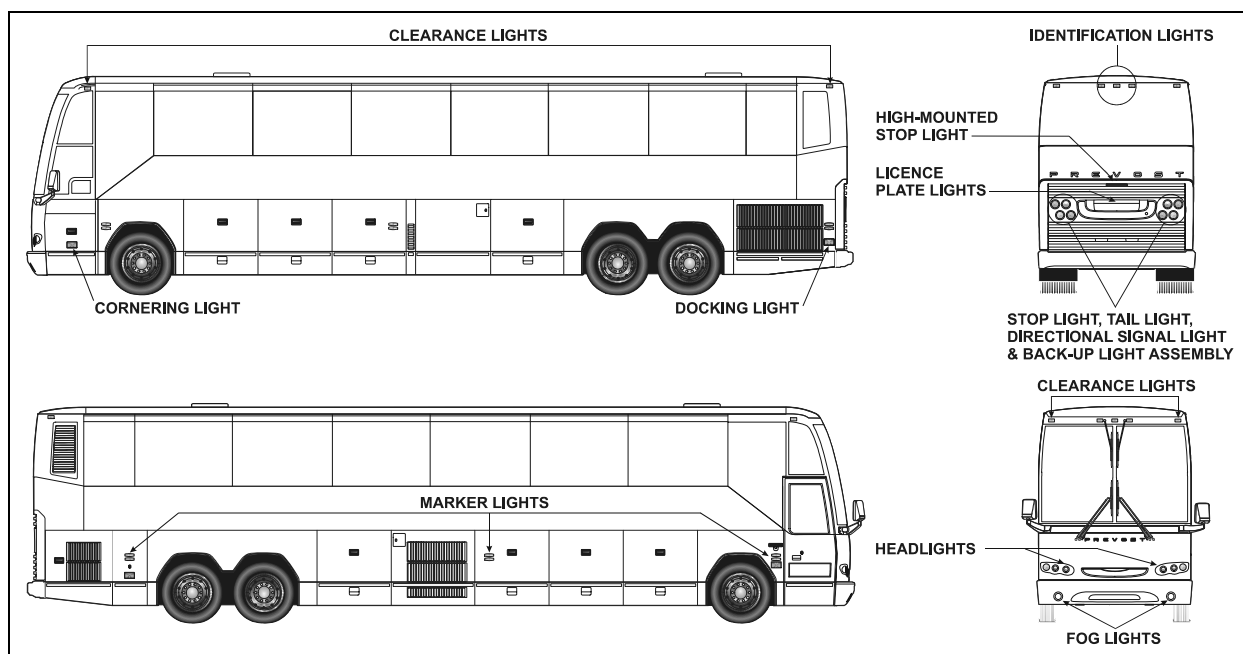


FIGURE 47: VARIOUS LIGHTS LOCATION

06480

12.1.6 Optional Xenon Headlamp

The outer lamps of each headlight assembly may be equipped with the optional Xenon lamps. These lamps improve visibility and provide better lifespan.

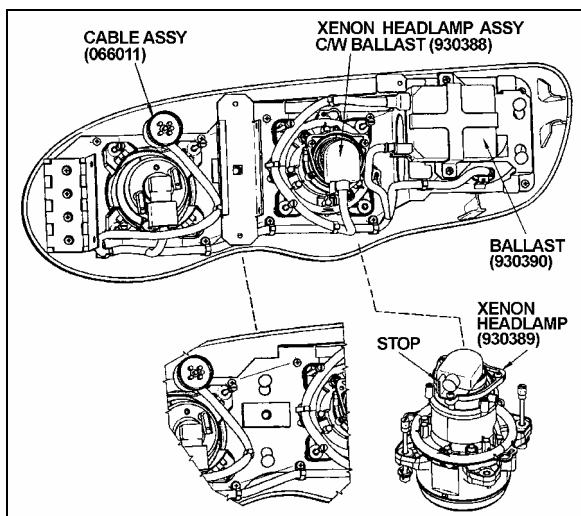


FIGURE 48: XENON HEADLAMP LOCATION

06540

Bulb Removal and Replacement

1. Remove the headlight screw fixing the headlight assembly, then pivot headlight assembly out (Fig. 33 and 48).
2. Remove main cable connector (066011).

3. Remove connector from headlamp bulb by turning counterclockwise.
4. Unscrew the three Phillips head screws, pull the retainer and bulb out.

Caution: To avoid breaking the bulb, make sure the socket is in proper position against the stop.

5. Install the new bulb by reversing the previous procedure.

Caution: During this step, avoid contacting the bulb with the fingers not to alter the bulb life.

Caution: Never connect a voltmeter or V.O.M. to measure bulb voltage as instrument will be destroyed.

Note: Do not disrupt headlight adjustment screws.

12.2 STOP, TAIL, DIRECTIONAL, BACK-UP, AND HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS

A combination stoplight, taillight, directional signal light and back-up light assembly is mounted at the rear, on each side of the vehicle. Furthermore, when braking, a high-mounted stoplight will illuminate simultaneously with the stoplights on the sides for increased safety.

The stop and tail lights are combined in the same 6-LED lamp. The directional signal and license plate lights consist of individual LED lights mounted on the engine rear door, and

each light is serviced individually as a complete unit. The back-up light sealed unit uses a regular tungsten bulb.

The hazard warning flashing system uses the front, side and rear directional lights simultaneously. This system is energized by a switch on the L.H. dashboard.

12.2.1 Lamp Removal and Replacement

1. Open engine compartment rear door.
2. Unscrew the lamp support retaining screws (2), and then from the outside, remove the lamp and its support.
3. From the outside, install the new lamp with its support then fasten the retaining screws.

12.2.2 High-Mounted Stop Light Removal and Replacement

This vehicle is equipped with a high-mounted stop light (LED). This light is a sealed unit and should be replaced as an assembly in accordance with the following procedure:

1. Unscrew both "Phillips" light screws, then remove the light assembly.
2. Position the new light assembly and install the "Phillips" screws.

12.3 LICENCE PLATE LIGHT

Two LED units are mounted above the rear license plate(s) of vehicle. In case of burn out, the LED unit must be changed according to the following procedure.

1. Pry out the rubber seal with a small screwdriver. Pull on the LED unit and disconnect it.
2. Reconnect new LED unit, place rubber seal, and press on it until it is seated in position.

12.4 CLEARANCE, IDENTIFICATION AND MARKER LIGHTS

The vehicle is equipped with marker, identification and clearance lights (LED). The clearance lights are mounted at each corner of the coach near the top and the identification lights are in the upper center of rear and front sections. The rear clearance and identification lights are red and the front ones are amber.

The amber marker lights are mounted along the sides of vehicle.

12.4.1 Marker Light Removal and Replacement

The side marker light is a sealed unit (LED) and should be replaced as an assembly in accordance with the following procedure:

1. Unscrew both "Phillips" light screws, disconnect and remove the light assembly.
2. Connect and position the new light assembly and install the "Phillips" screws.

12.4.2 Clearance and Identification Light Removal and Replacement

The clearance and identification lights are sealed units (LED) and should be replaced as an assembly in accordance with the following procedure:

1. Unscrew both "Phillips" light screws, disconnect and remove the light assembly.
2. Connect and position the new light assembly, then install the "Phillips" screws.

12.5 DOCKING AND CORNERING LIGHTS

This vehicle is provided with two halogen sealed-beam units that serve as cornering lights. They are mounted on the vehicle as follows: one is mounted on the front L.H. side service compartment door, while the other is located between the front wheel and the entrance door on the R.H. side. The main function of these lights is to increase lateral visibility when turning a corner. These lights are energized simultaneously with the directional lights. On the V.I.P. model, a dashboard-mounted rocker switch may be actuated to cancel this system in special situations.

Two additional halogen sealed-beam units are installed on rear electrical compartment door (R.H.) and radiator door. These lights are used as docking lights and both will illuminate automatically when reverse range is selected to facilitate back-up or docking procedure.

On the V.I.P. model, these lights do not operate automatically when the reverse range is selected, but by means of a dashboard-mounted rocker switch. When actuated, the docking as well as the cornering lights illuminate. Furthermore, a "Low docking" switch, also located on dashboard, allows the use of the docking and cornering lights at a lower intensity when the docking switch is actuated.

12.5.1 Lamp Removal and Replacement

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

Both docking and cornering sealed-beam units can be changed in accordance with the following procedure:

1. Remove the two "Phillips" screws attaching the retaining ring.
2. Disconnect the light unit connection.
3. Remove the lamp.
4. Position new lamp.
5. Connect and position the light unit.
6. Finally, install the retaining ring and screw.

12.6 FOG LIGHTS

Optional halogen fog lights can be mounted on this vehicle to give the driver better visibility in foggy weather, or to improve the range of vision just ahead of the coach.

12.6.1 Bulb Removal and Replacement

1. To access the spare wheel compartment, pull on the release handle located in the front electrical and service compartment, near the door lower hinge. The bumper will lower gradually.
2. Unscrew the wing nut and pivot assembly upwards.
3. Unscrew the outer ring. Disconnect the light unit connection and remove the bulb.

Caution: During this step, avoid contacting the bulb with your fingers. This could alter the bulb life.

4. Install the new bulb, reconnect the light unit and replace in its proper position.
5. Reinstall the outer ring, pivot the assembly downwards.
6. Fasten the wing nut and securely close the bumper.

13. INTERIOR LIGHTING EQUIPEMENT

13.1 CONTROL PANEL LIGHTING

The instrument gauges and switches mounted on all control panels are energized whenever the exterior light switch is pushed to the first position. A control dimmer located on the dashboard is used to vary the brightness of the panel gauges, switches and indicator lights.

The gauge lights, panel lights, switch lights and indicator lights have a different bulb arrangement. Thus, the procedure to change a defective bulb can vary according to the application.

13.1.1 Switch Lighting

1. Slightly pull the switch with a defective LED away from the control panel.
2. Disconnect the electric cable from the switch.
3. To install a new switch, reverse the procedure (Fig. 49).

Note: Switches are lighted by the use of LED. When lighting on a switch fails, replace defective switch as a unit.

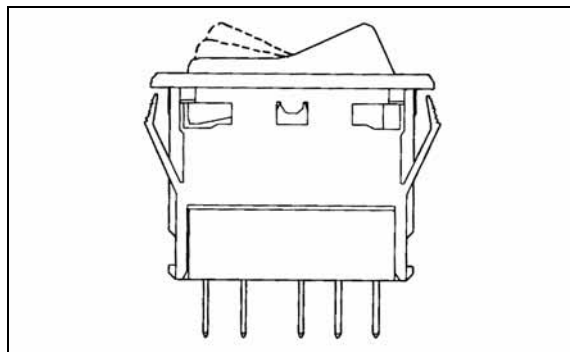


FIGURE 49: SWITCH

13.1.2 Telltale Light Replacement

Telltale module is non-serviceable and must be replaced as a unit.

1. Unscrew and remove the top dashboard panel.
2. Remove the telltale back wire electric connectors.
3. Unscrew and remove the telltale module.
4. To replace the telltale module, reverse the procedure.

13.1.3 Gauge Light Bulb Replacement

1. For any gauge light bulb replacement, the dashboard panel must be removed in order to have access to the rear of gauges.
2. Remove bulb socket from the gauge, turn the defective bulb counterclockwise and pull it out of the gauge.

3. Push a new bulb and socket ASM and turn clockwise to lock in place.
4. Replace the rear dashboard housing.

13.2 STEPWELL LIGHTS

13.2.1 Coach Entrance

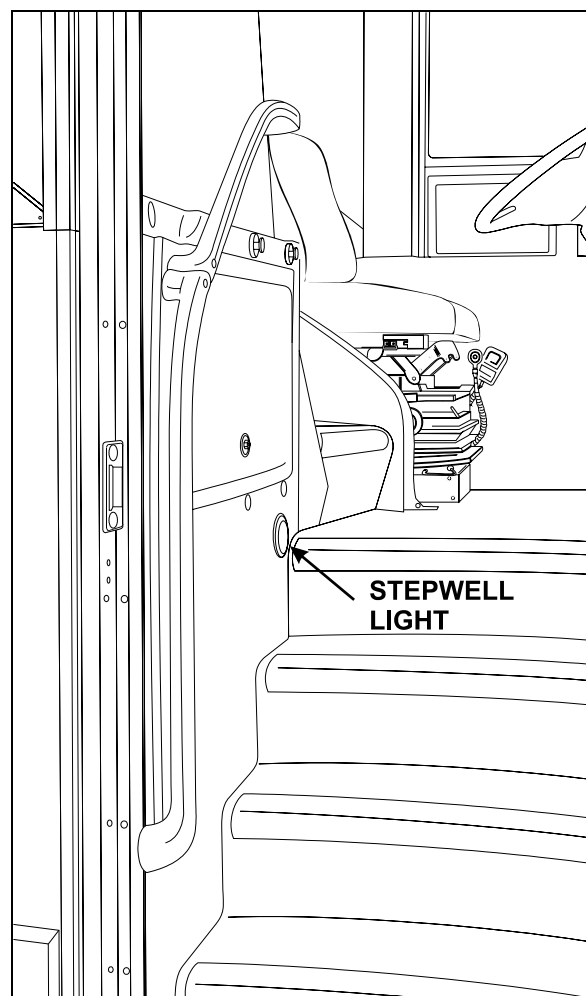


FIGURE 50: COACH ENTRANCE STEPWELL

06492

The three stepwell lights are illuminated when the door opening system is activated (Fig. 50).

Light Removal and Replacement

1. Unsnap the lamp outer ring with a flat head screwdriver and remove it.
2. Unfasten the three fixing screws, remove and disconnect LED light assembly.
3. Connect and install the new LED assembly in position.

4. Fasten the three fixing screws and replace the lamp outer ring by snapping it back in place.

13.2.2 VIP Entrance and Bus Entrance Door

The stepwell light is illuminated when the door opening system is activated (Fig. 51).

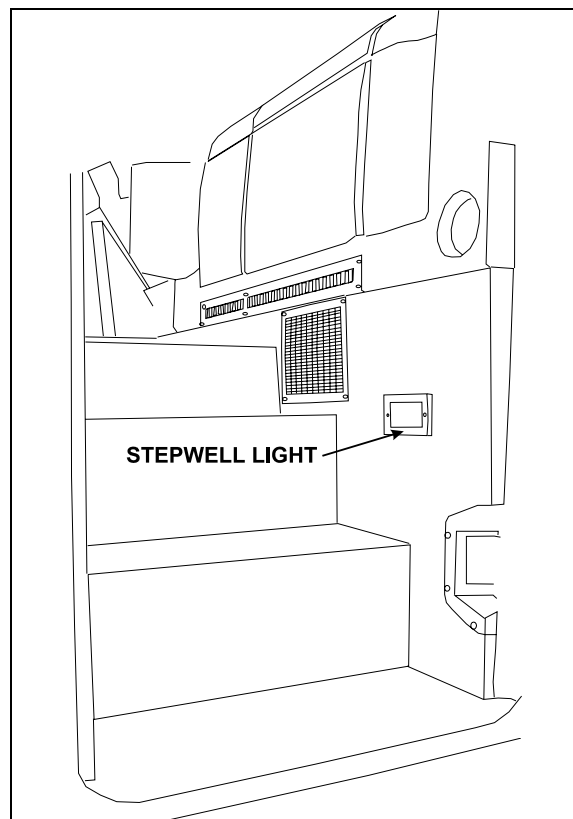


FIGURE 51: VIP ENTRANCE STEPWELL

06507

13.2.3 Bulb Removal and Replacement

Proceed as follows to replace defective bulb:

1. Unscrew the two Phillips-head screws retaining the lens to the wall, and remove it.
2. With the light lens removed, pull bulb from the lamp while applying lateral pressure.
3. Install the new bulb into the lamp.
4. Position the light lens and install it.

13.3 LAVATORY NIGHT-LIGHT

The lavatory night-light is illuminated as soon as the ignition switch is set to the "ON" position.

13.3.1 Bulb Removal and Replacement

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

Proceed as follows to replace defective bulb:

1. Unscrew the two Phillips-head screws retaining the lens to the lavatory wall, and remove it.
2. With the light lens removed, pull bulb from the lamp while applying lateral pressure.
3. Install the new bulb into the lamp.
4. Position the light lens and install it.

13.4 DRIVER'S AREA LIGHTS

One halogen ceiling light is installed over the stepwell and another one over the driver's area. These lights are frequently used for nighttime operation when passengers board or leave coach.

13.4.1 Bulb Removal and Replacement

1. Unsnap the lamp with a flat head screwdriver and remove it.
2. Pull the defective bulb out of the socket.
3. Install the new bulb by pushing it in position.
4. Replace the lamp by snapping it back in place.

Caution: Do not touch halogen bulbs with bare hands as natural oils on skin will shorten bulb life span.

13.5 PASSENGER SECTION LIGHTING

The passenger section of coach is lit by two types of fluorescent tube lamps installed on the parcel racks.

The aisle or indirect lights are located on front of parcel racks, and provide soft, indirect cabin lighting and parcel rack interior lighting. More

powerful lighting for general and in-station applications is provided by fluorescent tubes located under the parcel racks, close to the windows. A dual power system is available for this lighting either from the 24 volt vehicle power supply or from a 110 volt outlet supply. In order to save batteries during extended periods of in-station lighting, no current is drawn from the batteries as soon as the 110 volt circuit is connected.

Moreover, adjustable reading lamps are installed under the parcel racks for passenger accommodation.

13.5.1 Fluorescent Tube Replacement

Indirect Fluorescent Light

1. Open the parcel rack access door, if so equipped, unscrew the two Phillips screws (one each end). Let the hinged cover down.
2. Remove fluorescent tube from light socket.
3. Install a new fluorescent tube.
4. Lift the hinged cover and replace the two retaining screws (Fig. 52).

Parcel Rack Interior Lighting

1. Open the parcel rack access door, if so equipped, unscrew the two Phillips screws (one each end). Pull the hinged cover down.
2. Push on the bulb, turn and then, pull it from the socket.
3. Install a new bulb.
4. Lift the hinged cover and replace the two retaining screws.

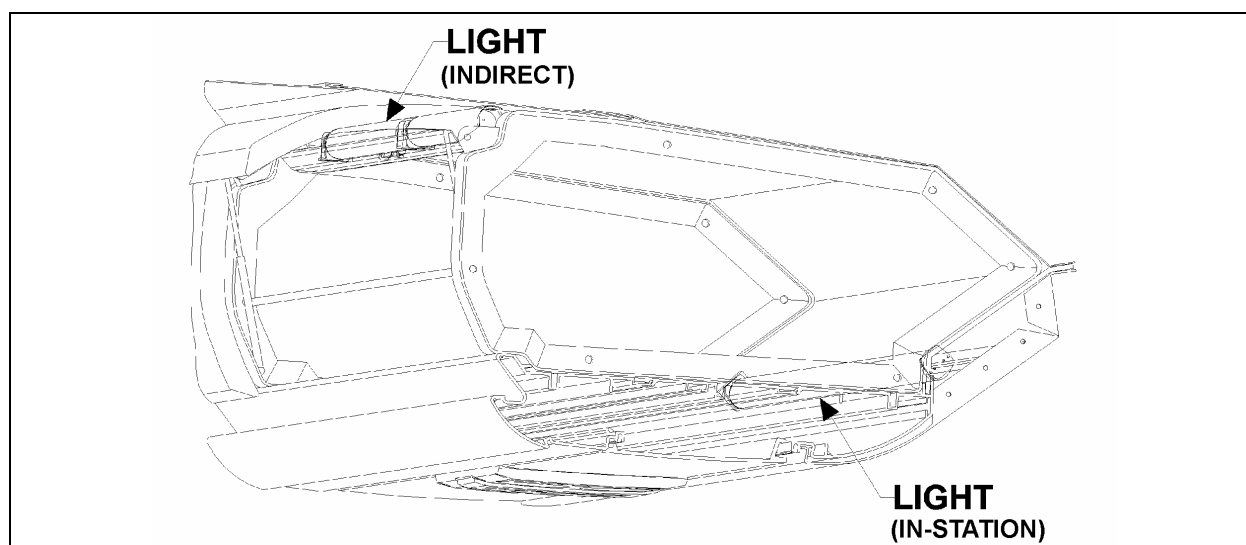


FIGURE 52: PARCEL RACK

06419

13.5.2 Removal and Replacement of In-Station Fluorescent Tubes

1. Start by pulling out the corner of the lens then delicately peeling it out of its seat.

Caution: The lens is fragile. Be very careful when removing and handling.

2. Rotate and pull the fluorescent tube from its sockets.
3. Install a new fluorescent tube, rotating the tube to secure it in the sockets.
4. Replace the screen lens by first inserting one side in the seat, then push the other side in and snap it in place by running it in from one corner to the next.

13.5.3 Removal and Replacement of Reading Lamp Bulb

1. Engage the tool (#830164) over the lamp and turn one quarter turn counterclockwise. Then, remove the tool slowly.
2. Pull the bulb socket off the reading lamp unit.
3. Push and turn bulb counterclockwise, then pull it out of the socket.
4. Install new bulb in the socket, then push and turn clockwise to lock bulb in position.
5. Push the bulb socket in the reading lamp unit.
6. Position the reading lamp with the tool (#830164), turn one quarter turn clockwise.

13.6 ENGINE COMPARTMENT LIGHTING

Two lights illuminate the engine compartment upon opening of the engine door (Fig. 53).

Each light is sealed and can be replaced as follows:

1. Disconnect the light unit connection.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Position new lamp.
4. Connect the light unit.
5. Make sure the retaining ring is installed properly.

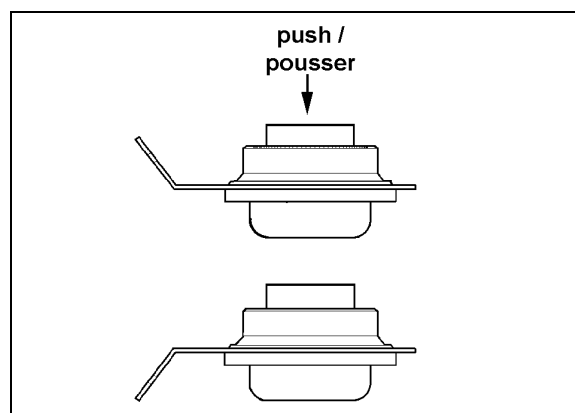


FIGURE 53: ENGINE COMPARTMENT LIGHT

13.7 LAVATORY LIGHT

The lavatory halogen lights are installed on ceiling. A microswitch, mounted in the door

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

exterior frame, is activated by the door lock mechanism upon locking to energize the circuit. This switch is readily serviced by removing the two Phillips-head screws securing the mounting plate to the door exterior frame.

Proceed as follows to replace the bulb:

1. Unsnap the lamp with a flat head screwdriver and remove it.
2. Pull the defective bulb out of the socket.
3. Install the new bulb by pushing it in position.
4. Replace the lamp by snapping it back in place.

Caution: Do not touch halogen bulbs with bare hands as natural oils on skin will shorten bulb life span.

14. LIGHT BULB DATA

When replacing a light bulb, special attention must be paid to the voltage rating (refer to light bulb data hereafter).

Note: Exterior and interior lights can be 12 volts or 24 volts.

Application	Prévost part no.	Trade or SAE number	Watts or Candle Power	Volts	Qty
EXTERIOR LIGHTING					
Hi-beam	930359	H9	65 W	12	2
Low-beam	930360	H9	65 W	12	2
Low-beam Xenon (optional)	930388	D2S	35 W	12	2
Docking & cornering	930319	H9415	37.5 W	12	4
Fog	930361	H3	55 W	12	2
License plate (sealed)	930368	Led	.05 A	12	2
Side marker (red)	930340	Led	.06 A	12	2
Side marker (amber)	930341	Led	.06 A	12	10
Identification (red)	930334	Led	0.10 A	12	3
Identification (amber)	930337	Led	0.10 A	12	3
Clearance (red)	930334	Led	0.10 A	12	4
Clearance (amber)	930337	Led	0.10 A	12	4
Front directional (hazard and marker)	930364	Led	0.75 / 0.10 A	12	2
Rear directional	930365	Led	0.55 A	12	2
Stop	930366	Led	0.3 A	12	4
Back-up	930367	Sealed Unit	2.1 A	12	2
Center stop (high-mounted)	930330	Led	---	12	1
Tail	930366	Led	0.03 A	12	4
Exterior compartment (except engine)	562278	6429 (78207)	10 W	24	A R
Engine compartment	930383	Sealed Unit	2.1 A	12	2

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

Application	Prévost part no.	Trade or SAE number	Watts or Candle Power	Volts	Qty
INTERIOR LIGHTING					
Speedometer	560145	2721 M OSRAM	1 cp	24	2
Tachometer	560145	2721 M	1 cp	24	2
Turbo boost	561167	2721 M	3 W	24	1
Other instruments (1/unit)	560144	2721 MFX OSRAM	1.6 cp	24	A R
Step (VIP)	562278	6429	10 W	24	1
Step (Coaches)	830173	LED	0.7 W	12	3
Lavatory	561009	6423	5 W	24	1
Parcel rack	561553	313	1.6 cp	24	A R
Driver's area	830176	Q20MR16	20 W	12	2
"EMERGENCY EXIT" decal	560601	456	2 cp	24	20
"LAVATORY OCCUPIED"	561166	1820	1.6 cp	24	2
"WATCH YOUR STEP"	561166	1820	1.6 cp	24	2
Aisle	560141	1251	3 cp	24	6
Reading	563073	623	.37 A	24	A R
Fluorescent (In-Station)	830153	F32T8/SP41	32 W	---	A R
Lavatory	830176	Q20MR16	20 W	12	1
Destination sign fluorescent	830080	F30T8CW4	30 W	---	1
Fluorescent (Indirect)	830152	F13T5/CW	13 W	---	---

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

15. SPECIFICATIONS

Battery

Make..... Volvo
Model..... 20359831
Type Maintenance-free
Terminal type Top Stud
Group size 31
Volts 12
Load test amperage 290
Reserve capacity (minutes) 195
Cold cranking (in amps)
-At 0°F (-18°C).....950 (each battery)
Maximum dimensions (inches/mm)
-Length (including flange) 13.0/330,2
-Width 6.7/169,3
-Height (including top posts) 9.3/237,0
-Approximate weight (lbs/kg) 59/26,7

* *Battery tester cable clamps should be between terminal nuts and lead pads of terminals. If not possible, load value should be 210 amperes.*

Torque specifications

Battery cable to post 10-15 ft-lbf (13-20 N·m)
Battery cover 45-50 ft-lbf (5-6 N·m)

Electrical system monitor

Make..... Vanner
Model..... EM-70
Input 24 V dc
System high Greater than 30 V dc
System low Less than 24 V dc
Trip level + 0.75 V dc
Prévost Number 562058

Alternator

Make..... Delco Remy
Model Number..... 1117702
Series 50DN
Type 600

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

Field current at 80°F (27°C)

-Amperes 7.2 – 8.0

-Volts 24

Hot output

-Amperes 270 at 80°F (27°C) ambient

-Volts 28

-Approximate rpm 3000

Ground negative

Prévost number 561723

Alternator

Make BOSCH

Model Number 0120689552

Series T1

Hot output

-Amperes 140 at 25°C (AMBIENT)

-Volts 28

-Approximate rpm 6000

Ground negative

Prevost Number 562752

Regulator

Make Delco-Remy

Model Number

Type Transistor

Voltage adjustment External screw

Prévost number 562775

Battery equalizer

Make Vanner

Model 60-100D

Amperes 100 amps

Prévost Number 562542

Starter

Section 6: ELECTRICAL

Make.....Mitsubishi Electric Corporation (MELCO)

Model Number.....M009T82479

Type105P70

Voltage24

Prévost Number510752

No-load test

-Volts23.5

-Max. current draw125 amperes

-Min. rpm3000 rpm

Starter solenoid

Make.....Mitsubishi Electric Corporation (MELCO)

Model Number.....1115557

Pull In Voltage16 volts max.

SECTION 07: TRANSMISSION

CONTENTS

1. DESCRIPTION.....	07-3
1.1 ALLISON AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	07-3
1.1.1 Retarder (if applicable).....	07-3
1.2 ZF-ASTRONIC TRANSMISSION	07-4
2. WELDING PROCEDURES.....	07-4
3. MAINTENANCE	07-4
3.1 WORLD TRANSMISSION.....	07-4
3.1.1 Cold Check.....	07-5
3.1.2 Hot Check.....	07-5
3.1.3 Readout of the Oil Level Sensor.....	07-6
3.1.4 Keeping Oil Clean.....	07-7
3.1.5 Oil Recommendations.....	07-7
3.1.6 Oil Contamination	07-8
3.1.7 Metal Particles	07-8
3.1.8 Coolant Leakage.....	07-8
3.1.9 Oil and Filter Change	07-9
3.2 ZF ASTRONIC TRANSMISSION.....	07-9
3.2.1 ZF ASTRONIC / SACHS Clutch Installation Procedure	07-9
4. INSTALLATION OF ZF OR ALLISON TRANSMISSION BRACKETS	07-11
5. ALLISON TRANSMISSION REMOVAL	07-11
6. TRANSMISSION OIL COOLER REMOVAL.....	07-12
6.1 TRANSMISSION WITHOUT RETARDER	07-12
6.2 TRANSMISSION WITH RETARDER	07-13
7. CLEANING AND INSPECTION OF THE TRANSMISSION.....	07-13
7.1 ALLISON AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	07-13
7.1.1 Breather.....	07-13
8. ALLISON TRANSMISSION INSTALLATION.....	07-13
9. ALLISON TRANSMISSION PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION.....	07-15
10. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	07-15
10.1 ALLISON AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	07-15
10.1.1 WTEC/Electronic Control Unit	07-15
10.1.2 WTEC/Troubleshooting.....	07-15
10.1.3 Diagnostic Code Memory.....	07-15
10.1.4 Reading Codes.....	07-17
10.1.5 Clearing Codes.....	07-17
11. ZF-ASTRONIC TRANSMISSION SYSTEM FAULTS AND ERROR MESSAGES.....	07-27
11.1 SYSTEM FAULTS (ERROR MESSAGES).....	07-27

12. SPECIFICATIONS	07-34
--------------------------	-------

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: WORLD TRANSMISSION	07-3
FIGURE 2: WORLD TRANSMISSION CONTROL PAD	07-3
FIGURE 3: ZF-ASTRONIC TRANSMISSION	07-4
FIGURE 4: OIL LEVEL DIPSTICK (AUTO. TRANS.)	07-4
FIGURE 5: COLD CHECK	07-5
FIGURE 6: HOT CHECK	07-5
FIGURE 7: DRAIN PLUG AND FILTERS	07-9
FIGURE 8: RELEASE BEARING RETAINING CLIP	07-10
FIGURE 9: ZF OR ALLISON TRANSMISSION BRACKETS	07-11
FIGURE 10: ENGINE CRANKING POSITION	07-12
FIGURE 11: MODINE OIL COOLER	07-12
FIGURE 12: COOLER WITH RETARDER	07-13
FIGURE 13: NUT TOLERANCE	07-14
FIGURE 14: AIR PRESSURE REGULATOR (TYPICAL)	07-15
FIGURE 15: WTEC / ELECTRONIC CONTROL UNIT	07-15

1. DESCRIPTION

H3 Series vehicles may be provided with either an Allison World automatic transmission or a ZF-AsTronic transmission.

1.1 ALLISON AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The B500(R) World Transmission has 6 speeds with two top range (fifth and sixth) overdrives. Total coverage is determined by dividing the highest gear ratio by the lowest gear ratio. Total coverage expresses the transmission gear ratio versatility. Transmissions with larger total coverage number have a wider variety of available ratios.

An electronic control allows the transmission to shift at exactly the right point on the engine's fuel consumption curve for best economy. Early lockup maintains the highest possible mechanical efficiency through the closely-spaced gear steps, culminating in two overdrive ratios. This combination allows progressive shifting techniques, where engine speeds are reduced for higher efficiency and lower fuel consumption.

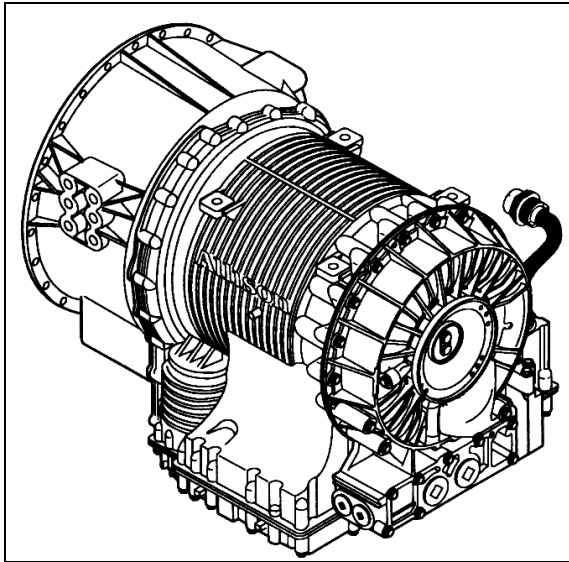


FIGURE 1: WORLD TRANSMISSION

07075

Gear selection and torque converter modes are controlled by a microcomputer-based electronic transmission management system. It is fed information regarding throttle position, operator range selection, engine speed, turbine speed, transmission output speed and various system pressures from special electronic sensors.

With this information, it computes shift points and clutch pressures to meet immediate needs. Using closed loop adaptive logic, the electronic control looks at a number of parameters during the shift, and makes minute adjustments to match the shift to desired profile stored in its memory. It then looks at these adjustments and resets the parameters, which allow the transmission to quickly compensate for variations in load, terrain or environment and to adjust for clutch wear and engine power changes. A Diagnostic Data Reader can be connected to the electronic control unit to provide a self-check of all systems in the transmission. Four-digit trouble codes greatly reduce the time it takes to pinpoint potential problems. (Refer to heading "10. TROUBLESHOOTING" in this section).

1.1.1 Retarder (if applicable)

This optional auxiliary braking device for the automatic transmission is integrated into the basic envelope of the transmission and transmits its braking force directly to the propeller shaft. It requires no additional length and adds only 75 pounds (34 kg) of weight. Operation of the retarder is controlled electronically by the driver's use of the brake and/or by hand control lever.

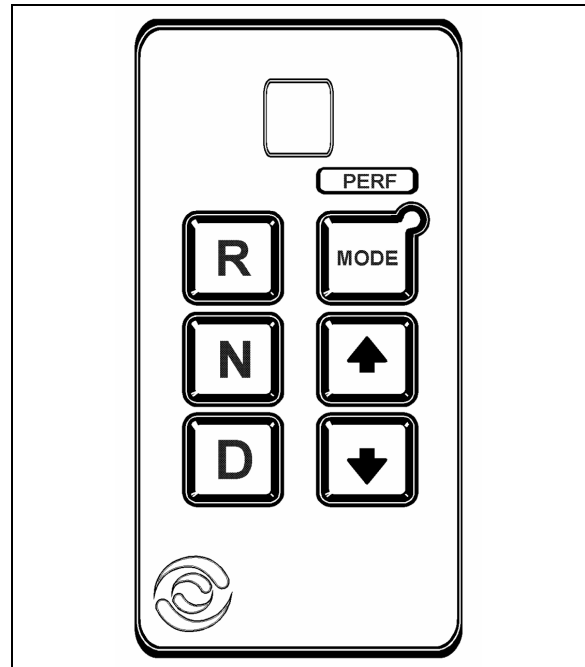


FIGURE 2: WORLD TRANSMISSION CONTROL PAD

07025

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

When activated, fluid enters a cavity and provides resistance to the turning of rotor blades revolving with the output shaft. This effectively slows the vehicle to the point where the service brakes are needed only for final stopping. The retarder is fully modulated and is compatible with ABS.

1.2 ZF-ASTRONIC TRANSMISSION

The AS TRONIC gear shift system is a combination of an electro-pneumatically shifted constant-mesh gearbox and an automated dry clutch.

If the AS TRONIC transmission system is to be used, the vehicle must have an electronic engine control unit as well as CAN communication. Since the clutch is automated (clutch pedal no longer fitted), the driver no longer has to activate the clutch.

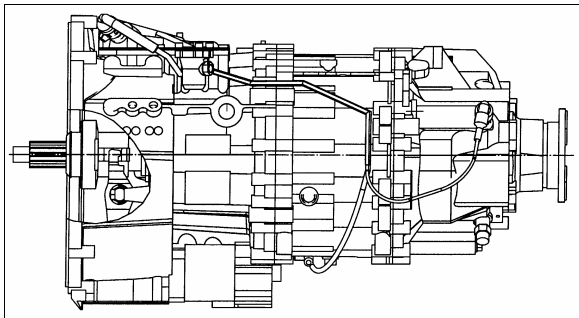


FIGURE 3: ZF-ASTRONIC TRANSMISSION

07078

The actual shift procedure is performed by the electronic transmission control unit. The driver has the option of driving the vehicle in both semi-automatic mode as well as fully automatically. When in semi-automatic mode, manual shifting with the range selector is made easier.

When in fully automatic mode, gears are selected and shifts made by the electronic control unit. The driver can still intervene if he wishes to. All system functions required are shown on the display, e.g. neutral, gear change, clutch overload and diagnosis information.

2. WELDING PROCEDURES

These procedures are intended only for vehicles equipped with transmission electronic controls. When frame or other welding is required on the vehicle, precautions are to be taken to protect the electronic control components. Refer to

section 00: GENERAL INFORMATION, paragraph 3: "Precautions to be observed before welding" for complete procedure.

3. MAINTENANCE

3.1 WORLD TRANSMISSION

To gain access to the dipstick, open the engine compartment rear doors; dipstick is located on the radiator side of the engine (Fig. 4).

To check the transmission oil level, a cold check and a hot check must be performed. A cold check must be made between 60°F (16°C) and 140°F (60°C). The transmission oil temperature gauge indicates the operating temperature; it is located in the MCD dashboard integrated Liquid Crystal Display and can be viewed when selecting the Gauge Mode (refer to "Operator's Manual" for added information).

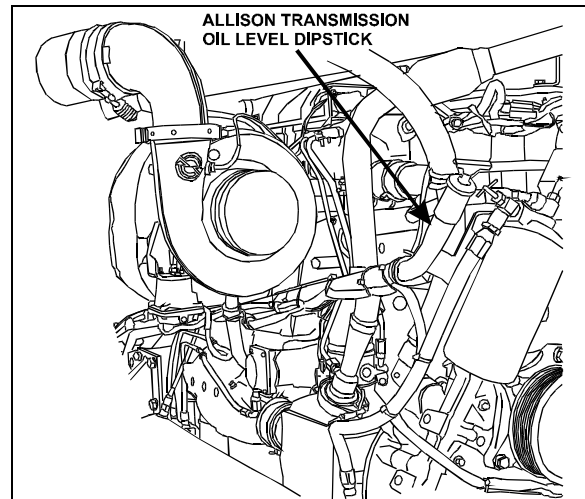


FIGURE 4: OIL LEVEL DIPSTICK (AUTO. TRANS.)

07033

Note: Perform the cold check first to verify the transmission oil level before performing the hot check.

The hot check can be performed when the transmission oil reaches the normal operating temperature of 160°F (71°C) to 200°F (93°C).

Clean all dirt from around the end of the oil filler tube before removing the dipstick. Dirt or foreign matter must not be permitted to enter the oil system since it will cause valves to stick, undue wear of transmission parts, and clogged passages. Check the oil level in accordance with the following procedures and record any abnormal level on your "Maintenance Records".

Warning: When checking the oil level, be sure that the parking brake and/or emergency brakes are set and properly engaged, and the wheels are chocked. Unexpected and possible sudden vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not taken.

Special care must be taken not to touch the engine coolant tubing and/or exhaust pipe, since this could cause severe burns.

Do not wear loose clothing and, stay away from rotating parts during procedure; personal injury could occur.

Always check the oil level reading at least twice when the engine is running. Consistency is important in maintaining the accuracy of the reading. If inconsistent readings persist, check the transmission breather to ensure it is clean and free of debris.

3.1.1 Cold Check

The purpose of the **Cold Check** is to determine if the transmission has enough fluid to be operated safely until a **Hot Check** can be made.

1. If the engine has been shut down for an extended period of time, park the vehicle on a level surface and apply the parking brake.

Caution: The oil level rises as sump temperature increases. DO NOT fill above the "Cold Run" band if the transmission oil is below normal operating temperature.

2. Run the engine for at least one minute. Shift to Drive (D) and operate the engine for 30 seconds at 1000-1500 rpm; then shift to Reverse (R) to clear the hydraulic system of air. Finally shift to Neutral (N) and allow the engine to idle (500 - 800 rpm).
3. While the engine is running, remove the dipstick from the tube and wipe it clean (Figs. 5 & 6).

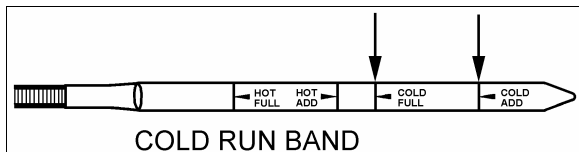


FIGURE 5: COLD CHECK

07050

4. Insert the dipstick into the tube and then remove, checking the oil level reading (Fig. 4). Repeat the check procedure to verify the

reading. If the oil reading is within the "Cold Run" band, the level is satisfactory for operating the transmission until the oil is hot enough to perform a "Hot Run" check.

If the oil reading is not within the "Cold Run" band, add or drain oil as necessary to bring the level within the "Cold Run" band.

5. Perform a **Hot Check** at the first opportunity after the normal operating temperature of 160°F (71°C) to 200°F (93°C) is attained.

Caution: An accurate fluid level check cannot be made unless the engine is idling (500-800 rpm) in Neutral, the transmission fluid is at the proper temperature, and the vehicle is on a level surface.

3.1.2 Hot Check

Caution: The oil must be hot to ensure an accurate check for this procedure. The oil level rises as temperature increases.

1. Operate the transmission in Drive (D) range until normal operating temperature is reached 160°F (71°C) to 200°F (93°C).
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and shift to Neutral (N). Apply the parking brake and allow the engine to idle (500 - 800 rpm).
3. While the engine is running, remove the dipstick from the tube and wipe it clean.
4. Insert the dipstick into the tube and then remove, checking the oil level reading. Repeat the check procedure to verify the reading.

The safe operating level is anywhere within the "Hot Run" band on the dipstick (Fig. 6).

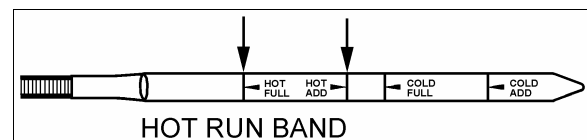


FIGURE 6: HOT CHECK

07049

5. If the oil level is not within the "Hot Run" band, add or drain oil as necessary to bring the oil level within the band.

Note: The Cold Check is more appropriate for verifying the oil level after the first fill-up. In case of conflict, the Hot Check has priority over the

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

Cold Check; *the automatic system of verification via the shift selector has priority over the Hot Check.*

3.1.3 Readout of the Oil Level Sensor

The optional Oil Level Sensor (OLS) is designed to measure transmission oil level only when the following combination of operating conditions exists:

1. Engine must be at idle;
2. **NEUTRAL** must be selected;
3. Zero output speed;
4. Transmission oil must be within a "normal" temperature band (160-250°F; 70-120°C), and;
5. Once the first four (4) conditions are met, there must be a "waiting" period (approx. 2 min., to facilitate consistent oil drainback) before oil level measurement begins.

To enter OLS readout mode (after meeting the conditions noted above), simultaneously press the UPSHIFT and DOWNSHIFT arrows on the shifter. If the five (5) conditions noted above are present, the display will immediately enter the reading mode. If the "waiting" period has not elapsed, the left digit of the display will become a "chasing" digit and the right digit will count down from (8) to (1) until the waiting period is complete.

After attaining the reading mode, the display will flash "OL-OK", "LO-01", "HI-02", etc., where the suffix "01" or "02" indicates the volume of oil (in quarts) either low or high.

At any time in this sequence, simultaneously pressing the UPSHIFT and DOWNSHIFT arrows directs the ECU to enter the transmission diagnostic mode as described under "10. Troubleshooting" in this section.

D, N, or R may also be selected on the shifter at any time - the OLS mode will abort and normal transmission will commence. Shifts are not inhibited.

Oil Level Sensor (OLS) Codes

<u>CODE</u>	<u>CAUSE OF CODE</u>
OL-OK	Oil Level Is Correct
LO-01	One Quart Low
LO-02	Two Quarts Low
HI-01	One Quart High
HI-02	Two Quarts High
OL-50	Engine Speed (RPM) Too Low
OL-59	Engine Speed (RPM) Too High
OL-65	Neutral Must Be Selected
OL-70	Sump Oil Temperature Too Low
OL-79	Sump Oil Temperature Too High
OL-89	Output Shaft Rotation
OL-95	Sensor Failure

3.1.4 Keeping Oil Clean

Oil must be handled in clean containers, fillers, etc., to prevent foreign material from entering the transmission. Place the dipstick on a clean surface area while filling the transmission.

Caution: Containers or fillers that have been used to handle antifreeze or engine coolant must NEVER be used for handling transmission fluid. Antifreeze and coolant solutions contain ethylene glycol that, if introduced into the transmission, can cause the clutch plates to fail.

3.1.5 Oil Recommendations

Hydraulic oils used in the transmission have an important influence on transmission reliability and durability. In order of preference Castrol TranSynd Synthetic Fluid, DEXRON-III and DEXRON-IIIE, MIL-L-2104D, and type C-4 oils (Allison approved SAE 10W or SAE 30) are recommended. Type C-4 oil is the only oil approved for use in off-highway applications. Use type SAE 30 where ambient temperature is consistently above 86°F (30°C). Some DEXRON-II oils are also qualified as type C-4 oils and may be used in off-highway applications. However, a DEXRON-II fluid which is not a qualified type C-4 oil must never be used in off-highway applications. Consult your local Allison dealer or distributor to determine if a DEXRON-II oil is also a qualified type C-4 oil.

Before using type C-4 oils, consult the vehicle manufacturer to ensure that materials used in tubes, hoses, seals, etc., are compatible with type C-4 oils. Also, consult your local Allison dealer or distributor to determine if the oil you have selected is an approved type C-4 oil. Ford Motor Company specification oils M2C33-F, M2C138-CJ and M2C166-H may be used and may be intermixed with DEXRON-II oil.

OIL SPECIFICATIONS AND AMBIENT TEMPERATURE OPERATING CONDITIONS	
Oil type	Ambient temperature
MIL-L-2104D, DEXRON-II, TranSynd TES 295, C-4	120°F (48°C) to -25°F (-32°C)
MIL-L-46167	-25°F (-32°C) to -60°F (-51°C)

The use of an arctic preheat kit is recommended at temperatures below -25°F (-32°C). If a preheat kit is not available, the ECU will restrict full operation until the sump temperature is increased. The chart below shows the temperature ranges in which the transmission will operate. It should be noted that at lower sump temperature, the transmission's operation may be restricted.

Transmission Oil Temperature	"DO NOT SHIFT" Light	Operation
Below -26°F (-32°C)	ON	Neutral only
-24°F (-31°C) to +19°F (-7°C)	OFF	Start with neutral and reverse, normal upshifts
+20°F (-6°C) to 260°F (126°C)	OFF	Full operation in all ranges
Above 260°F (126°C)	ON	Inhibits 5th and 6th ranges

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

3.1.6 Oil Contamination

At each oil change, examine the drained oil for evidence of dirt or water. A nominal amount of condensation will emulsify during operation of the transmission. However, if there is evidence of water; check the cooler (heat exchanger) for other signs of leakage. This, however, may also indicate leakage from the engine oil system.

3.1.7 Metal Particles

Metal particles in the oil (except for minute particles normally trapped in the oil filter) indicate damage has occurred in the transmission. When these particles are found in the sump, the transmission must be disassembled and closely inspected to find the source. Metal contamination will require complete disassembly of the transmission and cleaning of all internal and external circuits, coolers, and all other areas where the particles could lodge.

Caution: If excessive metal contamination has occurred, replacement of the oil cooler and replacement of all bearings within the transmission is recommended.

3.1.8 Coolant Leakage

If engine coolant leaks into the transmission oil system, immediate action must be taken to prevent malfunction and possible serious damage. The transmission must be completely disassembled, inspected, and cleaned. All traces of the coolant contamination must be removed. Friction clutch plates contaminated with ethylene glycol must be replaced.

TABLE 1 : Recommended Fluid and Filter change intervals (Non-Transynd Fluid)		
Initial Break-In		5,000 miles (8 000 km)
Coach	Non-Transynd Fluid	12,000 miles (19300 km) or 6 months, whichever comes first
MTH with retarder	Non-Transynd Fluid	12,000 miles (19300 km) or 6 months, whichever comes first
MTH without retarder	Non-Transynd Fluid	25,000 miles (40200 km) or 12 months, whichever comes first

TABLE 2 : HD/B 500/T 400/T 500 Series

2 inch Control Module (1.75 approximately) – Requires filter kit P/N 29540493
Recommended Fluid and Filter Change Intervals (Transynd™/TES 295 Fluid)

Coaches and MTH with retarder				MTH without retarder			
Initial Break-in				5,000 Miles (8 000 km)			
Fluid	Filters			Fluid	Filters		
	Main	Internal	Lube/Auxiliary		Main	Internal	Lube/Auxiliary
50,000 Miles (80 000 km) 24 Months	50,000 Miles (80 000 km) 24 Months	Overhaul	50,000 Miles (80 000 km) 24 Months	150,000 Miles 240 000 km 48 Months	50,000 Miles (80 000 km) 24 Months	Overhaul	50,000 Miles (80 000 km) 24 Months

3.1.9 Oil and Filter Change

Allison transmissions are now factory fill with TranSynd fluid. Oil change must be performed with the vehicle on a flat and level surface and with parking brake applied. Oil and oil filter change frequency is determined by the severity of service and operating conditions of the transmission and by the filter equipment installed. See "Table 1 and 2" for oil and filter change intervals. More frequent changes may be required when operations are subject to high levels of contamination or overheating.

The procedure for changing the transmission oil and oil filters is as follows:

Drain

1. The transmission should be at an operating temperature of 160°F (71°C) to 200°F (93°C) when the oil is drained. This will ensure quicker and more complete fluid drainage.

Note: Remove transmission protective panel located underneath transmission for easier access.

2. Remove the drain plug from under the transmission (Fig. 7) and allow the oil to drain into a suitable container. Check the condition of the oil as described previously.
3. To replace the integral filters, remove twelve bolts (6 on each cover), two filter covers, two O-rings, two square cut seals and the two filters from the bottom of the control module (Fig. 7).
4. To install filters, pre-lube and install the two O-rings, the two square cut seals followed by the filters (lube the O-ring in filter cartridge only) into the filter compartment. Index each filter/cover assembly to holes in channel plate/sump. Push the cover assembly in by hand to seat the seals.

Caution: Do not use bolts to draw the cover to sump. This can damage the cover, seal, or sump.

5. Install twelve bolts and both covers, and then tighten to 38-45 Ft-lbs (51-61 Nm).
6. Inspect the drain plug and O-ring. Replace if necessary. Reinstall the drain plug and tighten to 18-24 Ft-lbs (25-32 Nm).
7. Reinstall transmission protective panel

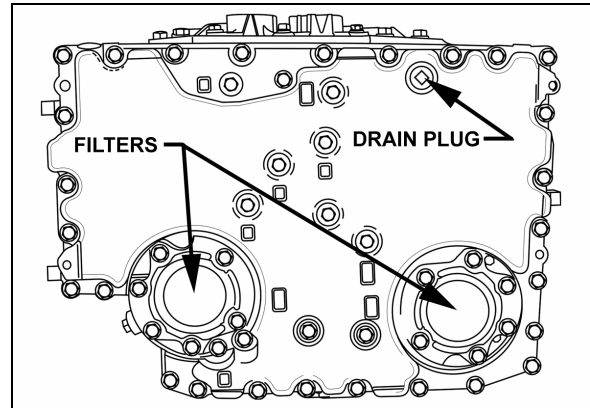


FIGURE 7: DRAIN PLUG AND FILTERS

07052

Refill

Using the oil level dipstick filler tube, refill with 24 US qts (23 liters) [28 US qts (26.5 liters) if equipped with retarder] and check the oil level using the previously described procedure. The refill amount is less than the initial filling because some of the oil remains in the external circuits and transmission cavities.

3.2 ZF AS-TRONIC TRANSMISSION

All information needed for the removal/installation or maintenance of the ZF transmission are included in the documents annexed at the end of this section.

3.2.1 ZF AS-TRONIC / SACHS Clutch Installation Procedure

Important Note:

The clutch hub splines, input shaft, release bearing, clutch fork, and clutch push rod ends all come pre-lubed from the factory.

- Clean the flywheel, clutch disc, and pressure plate surfaces, removing any grease prior to assembly.
- Slide the clutch disk onto the transmission input shaft to check for smooth engagement. Remove clutch disk.
- Apply a very thin coating of Optimol Olista Longtime synthetic grease to the transmission input shaft. Slide the clutch disk along the full length of the input shaft to transfer grease to the clutch hub splines. Remove clutch disc, and remove any excess grease from the exterior of the clutch disc hub. **It is very important that no excess**

grease is left on the exterior of the clutch hub or clutch disk!

- Install two temporary pilot studs (7/16-14, 3" long), placing them on the same diameter, 180° apart. These are used to aid in the alignment of the clutch pressure plate.
- Verify that the pilot bearing is seated properly in the flywheel. Insert a clutch alignment tool (SAE 2" DIA, 10 Spline) through the clutch disc and into the pilot bearing. PLEASE NOTE: the direction matters – the large side of the hub should face the clutch pressure plate. The clutch disc hub should be marked "flywheel side" – this side should face the flywheel.
- Use the clutch alignment tool to keep the clutch disc in the proper position and align the clutch cover with the two studs. Push the cover in place in the direction of the flywheel and start installing the clutch bolts. Use Lock-Tite for each bolt. Install, but do not torque, the 10 bolts. Remove the two pilot studs and in their place install the remaining 2 bolts.
- When the bolts are hand tight, be sure that the clutch cover fits into the flywheel centering ring. Tighten each bolt a little at a time, in a crisscross pattern, until the pressure plate cover contacts the flywheel face. Once the cover has touched the face of the flywheel, torque the clutch bolts to 55 ft-lbs, again in a crisscross fashion.
- Remove the clutch alignment tool. If the installation was successful, it should slide out smoothly.
- Ensure that the release bearing retaining clip (located on the "fingers" of the pressure plate) is closed. Refer to figure 8.
- Remove the Clutch Inspection Cover from the bottom of the transmission.
- The transmission should have been shipped in gear. This will allow the installer to rotate the output shaft in order to align the input shaft with the clutch disc hub. If the transmission is in neutral, a "strap wrench" (with a rubber or leather strap) can be used to align the input shaft. Do not use a wrench of the "chain" variety, as damage to the input shaft may result. When aligned, push the transmission towards the engine. Be sure

that the bell housing contacts the flywheel housing.

Warning!

- Insure that the transmission moves in a straight line. It can very easily go off center relative to the clutch disc and pilot bearing.
- Insure that the bell housing interfaces evenly with the flywheel housing. Even surface contact should be attained before tightening bolts.
- Do not try to correct relative position of the bell housing and flywheel housing by pulling the transmission into place with the bell housing bolts. The transmission bell housing should seat into the flywheel housing freely.
- When the bell housing and flywheel housing surfaces and bolt holes are aligned, install the transmission bolts. Only hardened steel flat washers should be used, **SERRATED LOCK WASHERS ARE NOT ALLOWED**. Torque the transmission bolts to 55 lbf-ft in a crisscross fashion.
- From underneath, push the clutch release bearing forward (in the direction of flywheel) using the release fork. Use force to snap the bearing into the retaining clip located on the "fingers" of the pressure plate. The installer should be able to both hear and feel the bearing seat into place. Refer to figure 8.

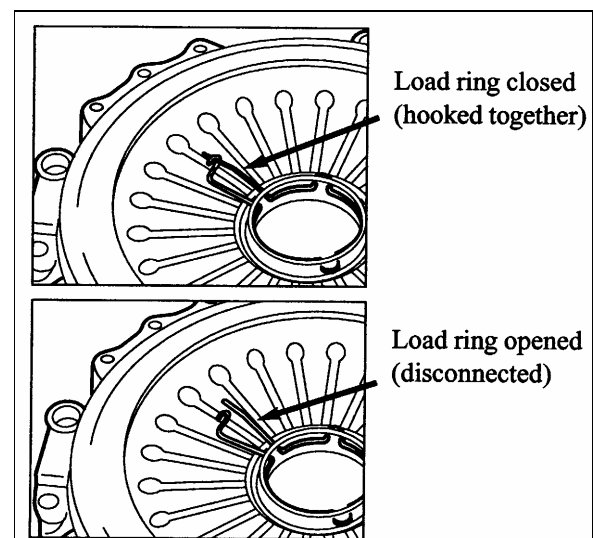


FIGURE 8: RELEASE BEARING RETAINING CLIP 07112

- Install the Clutch Actuator inspection cover.
- The clutch/transmission installation is now complete.

4. INSTALLATION OF ZF OR ALLISON TRANSMISSION BRACKETS

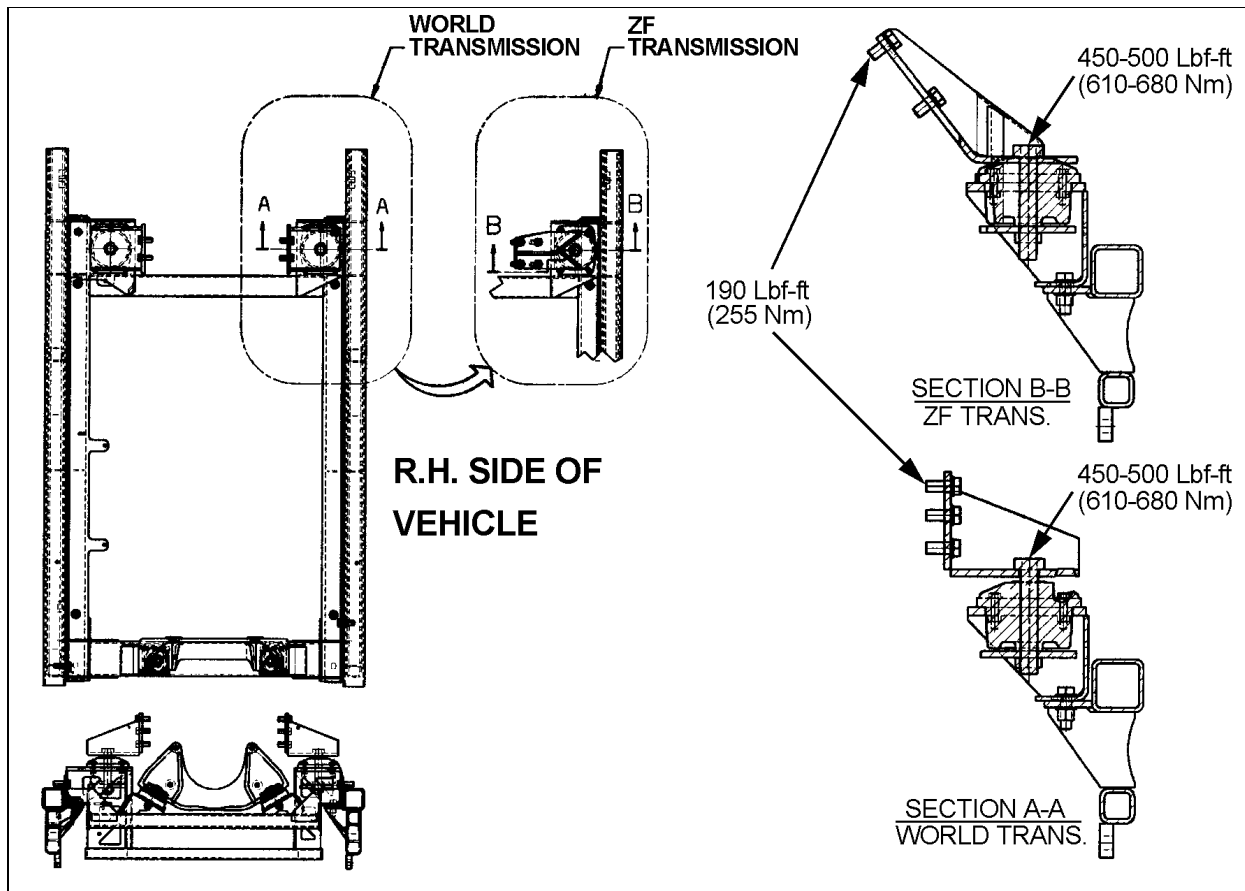


FIGURE 9: ZF OR ALLISON TRANSMISSION BRACKETS

07114

5. ALLISON TRANSMISSION REMOVAL

The following procedure deals with the removal of the Allison transmission without removing the power plant cradle from vehicle. The methods used to support the transmission and engine depend upon conditions and available equipment.

1. Select transmission's "NEUTRAL" position, apply parking brake, then set battery master switch to the "OFF" position.
2. Jack up vehicle, then place safety supports underneath body.

Caution: Only the recommended jacking points must be used as outlined in Section 18, "BODY".

Note: For more clearance between the tag axle and transmission, the tag axle may be unloaded and jacked up or retracted (if applicable).

2. Remove engine splash guards and protective panels surrounding transmission.
 4. Remove cross member from under transmission.
 5. Remove the transmission drain plug and allow oil to drain. Inspect the drain plug washer and replace it if necessary. Reinstall the drain plug and tighten to 33-41 Lbf-ft (45-56 Nm) (see "3.1.9 Oil and Filter Change" in this section).
- Warning:** It is better to drain oil when it is still warm. Avoid contact with oil since it can be very hot and cause personal injury.
6. Remove transmission dipstick and filler tube.
 7. Disconnect propeller shaft from transmission and remove its safety guard. Refer to Section 09, "PROPELLER SHAFT".

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

8. Disconnect the two oil cooler hoses from transmission. Cover hose ends and fittings to prevent fluid contamination.

Warning: A significant amount of oil may drain from oil lines when they are disconnected.

9. Disconnect all sensors on L.H. side of the transmission.
10. Disconnect main wiring harness.
11. Disconnect the air supply line (steel-braided hose) from retarder control valve (if applicable).
12. Remove any locking tie, clamp and bracket that may interfere with the removal of transmission.
13. Support transmission using a suitable transmission jack.
14. Remove the access plug from the flywheel housing on the R.H. side below starter. From access plug, remove the 12 converter-to-flexible plate attaching screws. Cranking the engine to gain access to the attaching screws may be done by turning the crankshaft pulley using a suitable adapter (fig. 10).

Caution: Do not rotate alternator shaft clockwise to avoid removing tension on belt.

15. Remove the 12 screws retaining the torque converter housing to the flywheel housing.

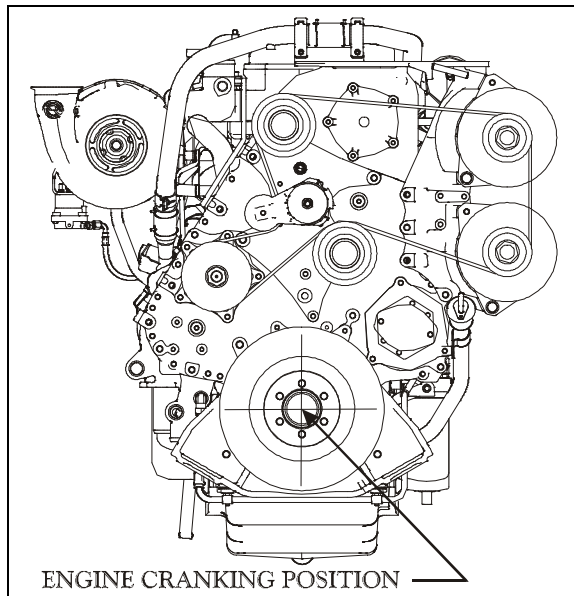


FIGURE 10: ENGINE CRANKING POSITION

01153

Caution: Make sure transmission-to-engine alignment is maintained when removing screws to avoid damaging torque converter housing.

16. Remove the transmission rubber mount above transmission by removing the nut, bolt and washer over the rubber and its support. Remove the bracket from transmission (only if the vehicle is equipped with a retarder).
17. Slowly pull transmission straight out to clear the engine.
18. Remove the transmission.

6. TRANSMISSION OIL COOLER REMOVAL

6.1 TRANSMISSION WITHOUT RETARDER

Stop engine and allow engine to cool. Close both heater line shutoff valves (refer to Section 05 "Cooling").

To drain the cooling system, proceed as per Section 05 "Cooling", paragraph 5: Draining. If the cooling system is contaminated, flush system as per Section 05 "Cooling", paragraph 7: Flushing.

1. Disconnect and remove the engine air intake duct mounted between the air cleaner housing and the turbocharger inlet.

Caution: To avoid damage to turbocharger, cover the turbocharger inlet opening to prevent foreign material from entering.

2. Disconnect the two transmission hoses from oil cooler. Cover hose ends and fittings to prevent fluid contamination.

Warning: A significant amount of oil may drain from oil lines when they are disconnected.

3. Unfasten the constant-torque hose clamps and remove the two hoses.

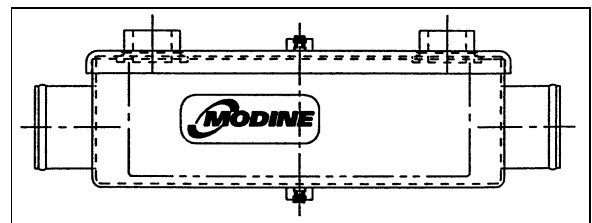


FIGURE 11: MODINE OIL COOLER

07072

4. Unscrew the four holding nuts and remove the U-bolts, remove the oil cooler from engine compartment.
5. Reinstall transmission oil cooler by using reverse procedure.

6.2 TRANSMISSION WITH RETARDER

Stop engine and allow engine to cool. Close both heater line shutoff valves (refer to Section 05 "Cooling").

1. To drain the cooling system, proceed as per Section 05 "Cooling", paragraph 5: Draining. If the cooling system is contaminated, flush system as per Section 05 "Cooling", paragraph 7: Flushing.
2. Disconnect and remove the engine air intake duct mounted between the air cleaner housing and the turbocharger inlet.

Caution: To avoid damage to turbocharger, cover the turbocharger inlet opening to prevent foreign material from entering.

3. Disconnect the transmission hoses from oil cooler. Cover hose ends and fittings to prevent fluid contamination.

Warning: A significant amount of oil may drain from oil lines when they are disconnected.

4. Unfasten the constant-torque hose clamps and remove the two hoses.
5. Unscrew the holding bolts and nuts and remove the oil cooler from engine compartment.

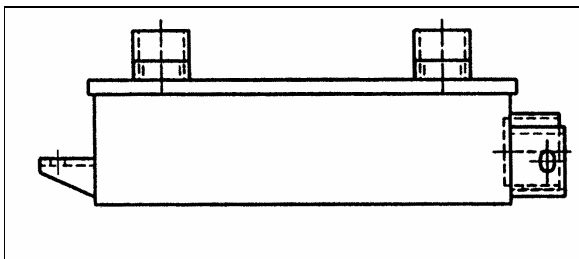


FIGURE 12: COOLER WITH RETARDER

07073

6. Reinstall transmission oil cooler by using reverse procedure.

7. CLEANING AND INSPECTION OF THE TRANSMISSION

7.1 ALLISON AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The exterior of the transmission should be cleaned and inspected at regular intervals. The length of service and severity of operating conditions will determine the frequency of such inspections. Inspect the transmission for:

1. Loose bolts (transmission and mounting components);
2. Oil leaks (correct immediately);
3. Loose, dirty, or improperly adjusted throttle sensor linkage;
4. Damaged or loose oil lines;
5. Worn or frayed electrical harnesses, improper routing;
6. Worn or out of phase drive line U-joint and slip fittings.

Caution: DO NOT pressure wash the transmission electrical connectors. Water and detergent will cause the contacts to corrode or become faulty.

7.1.1 Breather

The breather is located on the engine, flywheel side near the valve cover. It serves to prevent pressure build-up within the transmission and must be cleaned to keep the passage opened. The prevalence of dust and dirt will determine the frequency at which the breather requires cleaning. Use care when cleaning the engine. Spraying steam, water or cleaning solution directly at the breather can force the water or solution into the transmission. Always use care when removing the hose connector from transmission to prevent the entry of foreign matter.

8. ALLISON TRANSMISSION INSTALLATION

Note: For more clearance between the tag axle and transmission, the tag axle may be unloaded and jacked up, or retracted (if applicable).

1. With the access plug removed, align one of the 12 attaching screw holes in the flexible plate with the access opening (starter side).
2. Place the transmission on a transmission jack.

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

3. Install a headless guide bolt into one of the 12 threaded holes for flexible plate attaching screws in the flywheel.
4. Lubricate the flywheel center pilot boss with molybdenum disulfide grease (Molycote G, or equivalent).
5. Raise transmission and position the flywheel pilot boss into the flexible plate adapter. Align the guide bolt previously installed in the flywheel with the flexible plate hole facing the access opening in the flywheel housing.

Warning: Severe damages and/or personal injury can occur if transmission is not adequately supported.

6. Seat the transmission against the engine flywheel housing. NO FORCE IS REQUIRED. If interference is encountered, move the transmission away from engine, then investigate the cause.

Caution: The torque converter housing must be seated against the flywheel housing prior to tightening any screws. DO NOT USE SCREWS TO SEAT THE HOUSING.

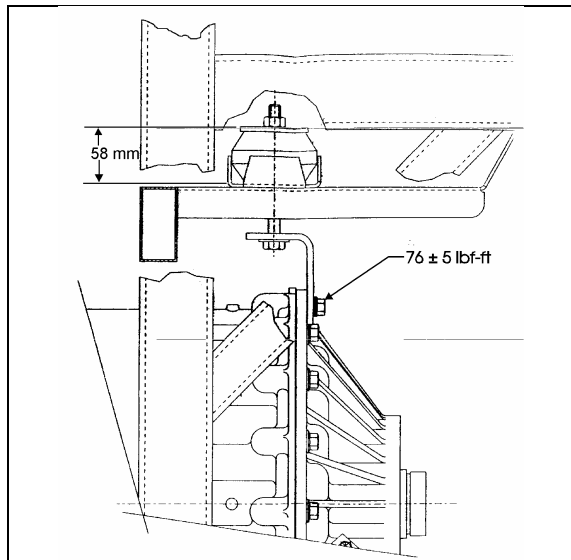


FIGURE 13: NUT TOLERANCE

07014

7. Start all torque converter housing screws, then tighten four of them gradually and in a criss-cross sequence around the housing. Tighten the 12 remaining screws. Recommended torque is between 42-50 Lbf-ft (57-68 Nm).
8. Remove the guide bolt through the access opening in the flywheel housing. Replace it with a self-locking screw, finger-tighten then start the remaining screws; tighten to 17-21 lbf-ft (23-28 Nm). Place a wrench on the crankshaft pulley attaching screw to turn the converter to gain access to the threaded holes.
9. Reinstall the access plug.
10. If the vehicle is equipped with a retarder; install the bracket on the transmission and tighten the bolt to 71-81 Lbf-ft (96-110 Nm). Install the transmission rubber mount between the rubber support and the frame with a bolt, nut and washer. Tighten the nut until the tolerance of 58 ± 2 mm is met (Fig. 13).
11. Remove jack from under transmission.
12. Connect all sensors.
13. Connect the main wiring harness.
14. Connect the air supply line (steel-braided hose) to the retarder control valve (if applicable).
15. Connect the two transmission oil cooler hoses as they were previously.
16. Reinstall clamps and brackets, and replace locking ties previously removed during removal procedure.
17. Install propeller shaft and its safety guard. Refer to Section 09, "PROPELLER SHAFT".
18. Install transmission dipstick and filler tube.
19. Install cross member under transmission.
20. Install engine splash guards.
21. Adjust the retarder pressure to 80 ± 3 psi with the air pressure regulator. For more information refer to Section 12, "BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM", under heading "AIR PRESSURE REGULATOR". The air pressure regulator is located at back of engine compartment, on R.H. side (Fig. 14) or in the R.H. side rear service compartment.
22. Make sure that the drain plug is in place, and then remove the transmission dipstick and pour approximately 24 US quarts (23 L) of automatic transmission fluid through the filler tube. Check and adjust oil level.

Caution: Do not overfill the transmission. Overfilling can cause oil aeration (milky appearance) and overheating. If overfilling occurs, drain oil as required to bring it to the proper level.

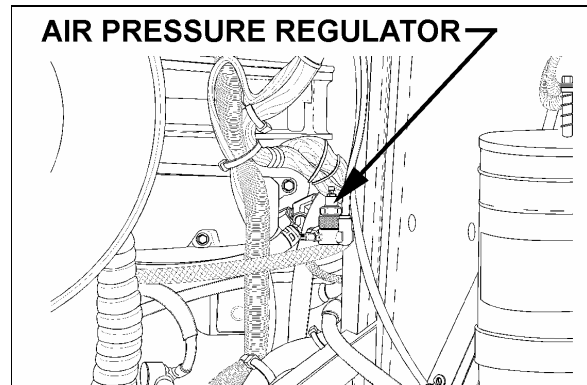


FIGURE 14: AIR PRESSURE REGULATOR (TYPICAL) 07037

9. ALLISON TRANSMISSION PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

Refer to "Allison Transmission, MD Series, Principles of Operation, SA 2454".

10. TROUBLESHOOTING

10.1 ALLISON AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Refer to "Allison Transmission, MD Series, Troubleshooting Manual, SA 2158A".

10.1.1 WTEC/Electronic Control Unit

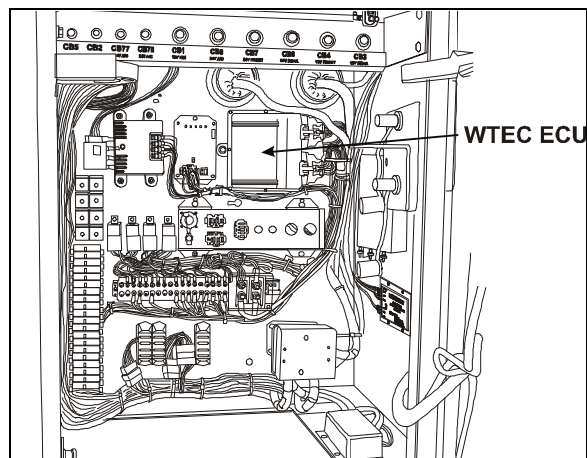


FIGURE 15: WTEC / ELECTRONIC CONTROL UNIT 07075

The "World" automatic transmission has a new Electronic Control Unit (ECU) which involves specific diagnostic incident codes. The ECU transmission unit is located in the coach main power compartment.

WTEC/ECU Replacement

The automatic transmission ECU is a non-serviceable electronic device. When it fails, it must be replaced using the following procedure:

- Open the coach main power compartment in order to get access to the ECU;
- Remove the electrical cable connectors;
- Unscrew the WTEC/ECU unit;
- Replace by reversing the procedure.

Caution: Place the battery master switch to the "OFF" position.

10.1.2 WTEC/Troubleshooting

For complete information about WTEC /Troubleshooting, refer to "Allison Transmission, MD Series, Troubleshooting Manual, SA2978" March 1997, pages D-9 and D-10.

10.1.3 Diagnostic Code Memory

Diagnostic codes are logged in a list in memory (sometimes referred to as the queue), positioning the most recently occurring code first and containing up to five codes. The codes contained in the list have the information recorded as shown in the chart below. Access to the code list position, main code, sub code and active indicator is available through either the shifter display or the Pro-Link Diagnostic Data Reader (DDR). Access to the ignition cycle counter and event counter is obtained through the DDR only.

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

Code List Position	Main Code	Sub Code	Active Indicator	Ignition Cycle Counter	Event Counter
d1	21	12	YES	00	10
d2	41	12	YES	00	04
d3	23	12	NO	08	02
d4	34	12	NO	13	01
d5	56	11	NO	22	02
Displayed on shifter display and DDR			YES= ACTIVE= "MODE ON"	Ignition cycle counter and event counter are not available on shifter display	

Note: All information is available with a diagnostic tool (DDR).

The following paragraphs define the different parts of the code list.

Code List Position

The position (1 through 5) which a code occupies in the code list in memory. Positions are shown as "d1" (Diagnostic Code #1) through "d5."

Main Code

The general condition or area of fault detected by ECU.

Sub Code

The specific area or condition under the main code in which the condition was detected.

Active Indicator

Will be turned "On" when a fault condition is active (shifter will display "MODE ON" or the DDR will display "YES"). Will be set to "Off" when conditions exist to indicate fault condition is gone.

Ignition Cycle Counter

Used to clear diagnostic codes that are inactive from the code list in memory. A counter is incremented each time a normal ECU power down occurs following clearing of the Active Indicator. A code will be cleared from the list when the counter exceeds 25.

Event Counter

Used to count the number of occurrences of a diagnostic code that occurs prior to the incident being cleared from the code list. The most recent code will be in position "d1". If the most recent code is one which is already in the code list, that code will be moved to position "d1", the Active Indicator will be turned "On" (shifter will display "MODE ON" or the DDR will display "YES"), the Ignition Cycle Counter is cleared and "1" is added to the Event Counter.

Clearing the Active Indicator and code Records from the Code List in Memory

If the conditions causing a diagnostic code to be set are cleared, the Active Indicator can be manually cleared by holding the "MODE" button down continuously for 3 seconds until a tone is heard from the shifter.

To clear code records from the list, hold the "MODE" button down continuously for ten seconds until a second tone sounds. All diagnostic records in the list that are not active will then be cleared and the remaining records will be moved up the list.

Code Reading and Code Clearing Procedures

Diagnostic codes can be read and cleared by two methods: by using the Pro-Link 9000 DDR plugged in the receptacle located on L.H. lateral console (Shells)/L.H. side control panel (Coaches) or by using the shifter display. The use of the Pro-Link 9000 DDR is described in the instruction manual supplied with each tool. The method for reading and clearing codes described in this section refers only to entering of the Diagnostic Display Mode by the proper button selection.

The Diagnostic Display Mode may be entered for viewing of codes at any speed. Codes can only be cleared when the output speed = 0 and no output speed sensor failure is active.

The following descriptions explain how to use the shifter to read and clear codes.

10.1.4 Reading Codes

1. Enter the diagnostic display mode by pressing the "▲" and "▼" (upshift and downshift arrows) buttons at the same time on the pushbutton shifter.

Note: If a "DO NOT SHIFT" condition is present at this time, the lever should be in the same position as it was at the time of code detection. If not, this shifter tone will sound continuously.

Note: If an Oil Level Sensor (OLS) is present, the oil level will be displayed first. Diagnostic code display is achieved by depressing the UPSHIFT and DOWNSHIFT arrows or display MODE button a second time.

2. Read the first code in the first of five code positions on the digital display of the shifter. For example, we will read code 25 11 in the first position. The display will change every two seconds as follows:
 - a. Code list position --"d1";
 - b. Main code --"25";
 - c. Sub code --"11"; and
 - d. Display will repeat cycle of a., b. and c, above.
3. Press the "MODE" button momentarily to view the second position (d2) in the same way as 2. above.

4. To view the third, fourth and fifth positions (d3, d4 and d5), momentarily press the "MODE" button as explained above.
5. Pressing the "MODE" button momentarily after the fifth position is displayed will cause the sequence of code positions to start over with the first position.
6. Any code that is active will be indicated by the "MODE ON" indicator (Active Indicator) being turned on while in that code position (while in the normal operation).
7. Any code position in the list which does not have a diagnostic code logged will display "-" for both the main and sub code displays. All positions after a code codes.

10.1.5 Clearing Codes

1. Clearing of the active indicator is automatically done at ECU power down on all but code 69 34.
2. Some codes will clear the active indicator automatically when the condition causing the code is no longer detected by the ECU (see Diagnostic Code List and Description, page 7 - 22).
3. Manual clearing is possible while in the diagnostic display mode and after the condition causing the code is corrected (output speed must be zero).
 - a. To clear all active indicators, hold the "MODE" button down continuously for 3 seconds until the shifter tone sounds for 0.5 seconds.
 - b. Release the "MODE" button to return to normal operating mode. If the condition causing the code was not active at the time, the active indicator will turn off.

Caution: If clearing a code while locked in a Forward or Reverse position (fail-to-range), the transmission will still be in Drive or Reverse when the clearing procedure is completed. Neutral must be selected manually.

Exiting the Diagnostic Display Mode

The diagnostic display mode can be exited by any of the following procedures:

1. Press the "▲" and "▼" (upshift and downshift) buttons at the same time on the pushbutton shifter.

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

2. Press any range button, "D", "N" or "R", on the pushbutton shifter (the shift will be commanded if it is not inhibited by an active code).
3. Do nothing and wait until the calibrated time (approximately 10 minutes) has passed and the system automatically returns to the normal operating mode.
4. Turn off power to the ECU (turn off the vehicle at the ignition switch).
5. After the clearing of a code, the active indicator procedure described above has been performed.

Clearing Records from the Code List in Memory

If the requirements for Manual Clearing the Active Indicator have been satisfied, and the "MODE" button is held down continuously for ten seconds while in the display mode until a tone sounds, then all diagnostic records in the code list that are not active will be cleared and the remaining records will be moved up in the code list.

Abbreviations found in the Code Chart

The following responses are used throughout the following chart to command safe operation when diagnostic codes are set.

1. **DNS (Do Not Shift) Response**
 - a. Turn off lockup clutch and inhibit lockup operation.
 - b. Inhibit all shifts.
 - c. Turn on the *DO NOT SHIFT* light.
 - d. Pulse the tone generator for 8 seconds when the condition is first detected.
 - e. Blank the select digit in the display.
 - f. Ignore any range selection inputs and disable the button feedback tone for the pushbutton shifter.
2. **SOL OFF (Solenoid Off) Response**

All solenoids are commanded off (turning solenoids "A" and "B" off electrically causes them to be on hydraulically).
3. **RPR (Return to Previous Range) Response**

When the ratio or C3 pressure switch tests associated with a shift are not passed, the ECU commands the same range as commanded at the beginning of the shift.

4. **NNC (Neutral No Clutches) Response**

When certain ratio or C3 pressure switch tests are not passed, the ECU commands a neutral condition with no clutches applied.

Diagnostic code list and description

MAIN CODE	SUB CODE	DESCRIPTION	DO NOT SHIFT LIGHT	INHIBITED OPERATION DESCRIPTION
12	12	Oil level, low	No	No upshift above a calibration range
12	23	Oil level, high	No	No upshift above a calibration range
13	12	ECU input voltage, low	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
13	13	ECU input voltage, medium low	No	None: Shift adaptive feature will not function.
13	23	ECU input voltage, high	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
14	12	Oil level sensor, low	No	None
14	23	Oil level sensor, high	No	None
21	12	Throttle position sensor, low	No	Use Throttle default value
21	23	Throttle position sensor, high	No	Use Throttle default value
22	14	Engine speed sensor reasonableness test	No	Use default engine speed
22	15	Turbine speed sensor reasonableness test	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range
22	16	Output speed sensor reasonableness or rapid decel test	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range
23	12	Primary Shifter or RSI Link Fault	No	Hold in last valid direction
23	13	Primary Shifter Mode Function Fault	No	Mode change not permitted
23	14	Secondary Shifter or RSI Link Fault	No	Hold in last valid direction
23	15	Secondary Shifter Mode Function Fault	No	Mode change not permitted
24	12	Sump oil temperature, cold	Yes	DNS
24	23	Sump oil temperature, hot	No	No upshifts above a calibration range
25	00	Output speed reasonableness test, detected at 0 speed, (L)	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (L)
25	11	Output speed reasonableness test, detected at 0 speed, (1st)	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (1st)
25	22	Output speed reasonableness test, detected at 0 speed 2nd	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (2nd)
25	33	Output speed reasonableness test, detected at 0 speed, 3rd	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (3rd)
25	44	Output speed reasonableness test, detected at 0 speed, 4th	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (4th)
25	55	Output speed reasonableness test, detected at 0 speed, 5th	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (5th)

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

MAIN CODE	SUB CODE	DESCRIPTION	DO NOT SHIFT LIGHT	INHIBITED OPERATION DESCRIPTION
25	66	Output speed reasonableness test, detected at 0 speed, 6th	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (6th)
25	77	Output speed reasonableness test, detected at 0 speed, R	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (R)
32	00	C3 pressure switch open, L range	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (L)
32	33	C3 pressure switch open, 3rd range	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (3rd)
32	55	C3 pressure switch open, 5th range	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (5th)
32	77	C3 pressure switch open, R range	Yes	DNS, Lock in current range (R)
33	12	Sump oil temperature sensor, low	No	Use default value of 200° F (93° C)
33	23	Sump oil temperature sensor, high	No	Use default value of 200° F (93° C)
34	12	EEPROM, factory cal. compatibility number wrong	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
34	13	EEPROM, factory calibration block checksum	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
34	14	EEPROM, Power Off Block checksum	Yes	Use previous location, or factory calibration and reset adaptive
34	15	EEPROM, Diagnostic Queue Block Checksum	Yes	Use previous location, or clear diagnostic queue
34	16	EEPROM, Real Time Block Checksum	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
35	00	Power interruption (Code set after power restored)	No	NONE (Hydraulic default during interruption)
35	16	Real Time EEPROM Write Interruption	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
36	00	Hardware/Software not compatible	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
41	12	Open or short to ground, A solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
41	13	Open or short to ground, B solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
41	14	Open or short to ground, C solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
41	15	Open or short to ground, D solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
41	16	Open or short to ground, E solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)

MAIN CODE	SUB CODE	DESCRIPTION	DO NOT SHIFT LIGHT	INHIBITED OPERATION DESCRIPTION
41	21	Open or short to ground, F solenoid circuit	No	Lock-up inhibited
41	22	Open or short to ground, G solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
41	23	Open or short to ground, H solenoid circuit	No	Retarder allowed, differential lock inhibited
41	24	Open or short to ground, J solenoid circuit	No	Low and 1st inhibited
41	25	Open or short to ground, K solenoid circuit	No	K solenoid operation inhibited
41	26	Open or short to ground, N solenoid circuit	No	Low and 1st inhibited
42	12	Short to battery, A solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, Lock in a range
42	13	Short to battery, B solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, Lock in a range
42	14	Short to battery, C solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, Lock in a range
42	15	Short to battery, D solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, Lock in a range
42	16	Short to battery, E solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, Lock in a range
42	21	Short to battery, F solenoid circuit	No	Lock-up inhibited
42	22	Short to battery, G solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, Lock in a range
42	23	Short to battery, H solenoid circuit	No	Retarder allowed, differential lock inhibited
42	24	Short to battery, J solenoid circuit	No	Low and 1st inhibited
42	25	Short to battery, K solenoid circuit	No	K solenoid operation inhibited
42	26	Short to battery, N solenoid circuit	No	Low and 1st inhibited
43	21	Low side driver, F solenoid circuit	No	Lock-up inhibited
43	25	Low side driver, K solenoid circuit	No	K solenoid operation inhibited
43	26	Low side driver, N solenoid circuit	No	Low and 1st inhibited
44	12	Short to ground, A solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
44	13	Short to ground, B solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

MAIN CODE	SUB CODE	DESCRIPTION	DO NOT SHIFT LIGHT	INHIBITED OPERATION DESCRIPTION
44	14	Short to ground, C solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
44	15	Short to ground, D solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
44	16	Short to ground, E solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
44	21	Short to ground, F solenoid circuit	No	Lock-up inhibited
44	22	Short to ground, G solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
44	23	Short to ground, H solenoid circuit	No	Retarder allowed. differential lock inhibited
44	24	Short to ground, J solenoid circuit	No	Low and 1st inhibited
44	25	Short to ground, K solenoid circuit	No	K solenoid operation inhibited
44	26	Short to ground, N solenoid circuit	No	Low and 1st inhibited
45	12	Open circuit, A solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
45	13	Open circuit, B solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
45	14	Open circuit, C solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
45	15	Open circuit, D solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
45	16	Open circuit, E solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
45	21	Open circuit, F solenoid circuit	No	Lock-up inhibited
45	22	Open circuit, G solenoid circuit	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
45	23	Open circuit, H solenoid circuit	No	Retarder allowed differential lock inhibited
45	24	Open circuit, J solenoid circuit	No	Low and 1st inhibited
45	25	Open circuit, K solenoid circuit	No	K solenoid operation inhibited
45	26	Open circuit, N solenoid circuit	No	Low and 1st inhibited
51	10	Offgoing ratio test (during shift), 1 to L	Yes	Low and 1st inhibited
51	12	Offgoing ratio test (during shift), 1 to 2	Yes	DNS, RPR

MAIN CODE	SUB CODE	DESCRIPTION	DO NOT SHIFT LIGHT	INHIBITED OPERATION DESCRIPTION
51	21	Offgoing ratio test (during shift), 2 to 1	Yes	DNS, RPR
51	23	Offgoing ratio test (during shift), 2 to 3	Yes	DNS, RPR
51	43	Offgoing ratio test (during shift), 4 to 3	Yes	DNS, RPR
51	45	Offgoing ratio test (during shift), 4 to 5	Yes	DNS, RPR
51	65	Offgoing ratio test (during shift), 6 to 5	Yes	DNS, RPR
52	01	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), L to 1	Yes	DNS, RPR
52	08	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), L to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC
52	32	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), 3 to 2	Yes	DNS, RPR
52	34	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), 3 to 4	Yes	DNS, RPR
52	54	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), 5 to 4	Yes	DNS, RPR
52	56	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), 5 to 6	Yes	DNS, RPR
52	71	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), R to 1	Yes	DNS, NNC
52	72	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), R to 2	Yes	DNS, NNC
52	78	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), R to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC
52	79	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), R to 2 (R to NNC to 2)	Yes	DNS, NNC
52	99	Offgoing C3PS test (during shift), N3 to N2	Yes	DNS, RPR
53	08	Offgoing speed test (during shift), L to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC
53	18	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 1 to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC
53	28	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 2 to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC
53	29	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 2 to N2	Yes	DNS, RPR
53	38	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 3 to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

MAIN CODE	SUB CODE	DESCRIPTION	DO NOT SHIFT LIGHT	INHIBITED OPERATION DESCRIPTION
53	39	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 3 to N3	Yes	DNS, RPR
53	48	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 4 to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC
53	49	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 4 to N3	Yes	DNS, RPR
53	58	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 5 to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC
53	59	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 5 to N3	Yes	DNS, RPR
53	68	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 6 to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC
53	69	Offgoing speed test (during shift), 6 to N4	Yes	DNS, RPR
53	78	Offgoing speed test (during shift), R to N1	Yes	DNS, NNC
53	99	Offgoing speed test (during shift), N2 to N3 or N3 to N2	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	01	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), L to 1	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	07	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), L to R	Yes	DNS, NNC
54	10	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 1 to L	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	12	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 1 to 2	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	17	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 1 to R	Yes	DNS, NNC
54	21	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 2 to 1	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	23	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 2 to 3	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	27	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 2 to R	Yes	DNS, NNC
54	32	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 3 to 2	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	34	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 3 to 4	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	43	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 4 to 3	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	45	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 4 to 5	Yes	DNS, RPR or SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)

MAIN CODE	SUB CODE	DESCRIPTION	DO NOT SHIFT LIGHT	INHIBITED OPERATION DESCRIPTION
54	54	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 5 to 4	Yes	DNS,RPR
54	56	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 5 to 6	Yes	DNS,RPR
54	65	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 6 to 5	Yes	DNS,RPR
54	70	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), R to L	Yes	DNS,NNC
54	71	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), R to 1	Yes	DNS,NNC
54	72	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), R to 2	Yes	DNS,NNC
54	80	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N1 to L	Yes	DNS,RPR
54	81	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N1 to 1	Yes	DNS,RPR
54	82	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N1 to 2	Yes	DNS,RPR
54	83	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N1 to 3	Yes	DNS,RPR
54	85	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N1 to 5	Yes	DNS,RPR
54	86	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N1 to 6	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	92	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), R to 2 (R to NNC to 2)	Yes	DNS, NNC
54	92	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N1 to 2 (N1 to NNC to 2)	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	92	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N2 to 2	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	93	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N3 to 3	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	95	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N3 to 5	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	96	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), N4 to 6	Yes	DNS, RPR
54	97	Oncoming ratio test (after shift), 2 to R (2 to NNC to R)	Yes	DNS, NNC
55	17	Oncoming C3PS test (after shift), 1 to R	Yes	DNS, NNC
55	27	Oncoming C3PS test (after shift), 2 to R	Yes	DNS, NNC

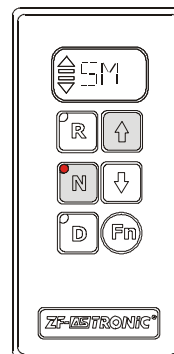
Section 07: TRANSMISSION

MAIN CODE	SUB CODE	DESCRIPTION	DO NOT SHIFT LIGHT	INHIBITED OPERATION DESCRIPTION
55	80	Oncoming C3PS test (after shift), N1 to L	Yes	DNS, RPR
55	87	Oncoming C3PS test (after shift), N1 to R	Yes	DNS, RPR
55	97	Oncoming C3PS test (after shift), 2 to R or NVL to R (2 to NNC to R)	Yes	DNS, NNC
56	00	Range verification test, L	Yes	DNS, 1st, Low, or SOL OFF (Low)
56	11	Range verification test, 1st	Yes	DNS, 6th
56	22	Range verification test, 2nd	Yes	DNS, 6th or 5th
56	33	Range verification test, 3rd	Yes	DNS, 5th or SOL
56	44	Range verification test, 4th	Yes	DNS, 3rd or 5th
56	55	Range verification test, 5th	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (5th) or 3rd
56	66	Range verification test, 6th	Yes	DNS, 5th, 3rd, or SOL OFF (3rd)
56	77	Range verification test, R	Yes	DNS, N2 or N3
57	11	Range verification C3PS test, 1st	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (3rd)
57	22	Range verification C3PS test, 2nd	Yes	DNS, 3rd
57	44	Range verification C3PS test, 4th	Yes	DNS, 5th or SOL OFF (3rd)
57	66	Range verification C3PS test, 6th	Yes	SOL OFF (5th), DNS
57	88	Range verification C3PS test, N1	Yes	DNS, N3
57	99	Range verification C3PS test, N2 or N4	Yes	DNS, N3
61	00	Retarder oil temperature, hot	No	None
62	12	Retarder oil temperature sensor, low	No	None
62	23	Retarder oil temperature sensor, high	No	None
63	00	Special function input	No	Depends on special function
64	12	Retarder modulation request sensor, low	No	Retarder operation inhibited
64	23	Retarder modulation request sensor, high	No	Retarder operation inhibited
65	00	Engine rating too high	Yes	DNS
66	00	Serial communications interface fault	No	Use default throttle values
69	12	ECU, A solenoid driver open	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)
69	13	ECU, B solenoid driver open	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)
69	14	ECU, C solenoid driver open	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)
69	15	ECU, D solenoid driver open	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)

MAIN CODE	SUB CODE	DESCRIPTION	DO NOT SHIFT LIGHT	INHIBITED OPERATION DESCRIPTION
69	16	ECU, E solenoid driver open	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)
69	21	ECU, F solenoid driver open	No	Lock-up inhibited
69	22	ECU, G solenoid driver open	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
69	23	ECU, H solenoid driver open	No	Retarder allowed, differential lock inhibited
69	24	ECU, J solenoid driver open	No	Low and 1 st inhibited
69	25	ECU, K solenoid driver open	No	K solenoid operation inhibited
69	26	ECU, N solenoid driver open	No	Low and 1st inhibited
69	32	ECU, SPI communications link fault	No	Hold in last valid direction
69	33	ECU, Central Operating Processor (COP) time-out	Yes	Reset ECU, Shutdown ECU on 2nd occurrence (power loss: hydraulic defaults)
69	34	ECU, EEPROM write time-out	Yes	DNS, SOL OFF (Hydraulic default)
69	35	ECU, EEPROM checksum	Yes	Induce COP time-out (reset ECU)
69	36	ECU, RAM self test	Yes	Induce COP time-out (reset ECU)
69	41	ECU, I/O ASIC addressing test	Yes	Induce COP time-out (reset ECU)
0	35	Software, minor loop overrun	Yes	Induce COP time-out (reset ECU)
70	35	Software, illegal write to access \$0000	Yes	Induce COP time-out (reset ECU)
70	35	Software, major loop overrun	Yes	Induce COP time-out (reset ECU)

11. ZF-ASTRONIC TRANSMISSION SYSTEM FAULTS AND ERROR MESSAGES

11.1 SYSTEM FAULTS (ERROR MESSAGES)



07107

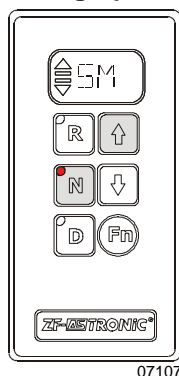
If the “SM” symbol appears in the display, a system error has occurred.

- Stop the vehicle
- Vehicle may no longer be driven

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

Error messages and the reactions resulting from these errors can be deleted with the vehicle at a standstill and the "Ignition OFF". (Wait until the display goes out). If the display does not go out once the ignition has been turned "OFF", set the battery master switch to the **OFF** position. Switch the ignition back on. If the error message is still in place, the transmission has to be repaired. The transmission is inoperative. The vehicle will have to be taken to a service point. The error number(s) must be specified when the service point is contacted.

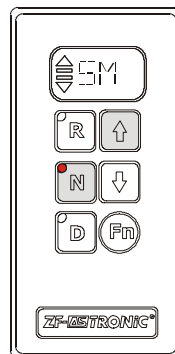
Calling up error numbers



07107

- ☞ Switch on ignition
- ☞ Depress "N" key
- ☞ Hold down "↑" key
- ☞ One or more error numbers appear on the display. These correspond to the errors presently active in the system.

Calling up error numbers from the error memory:



07107

- ☞ Switch on ignition
- ☞ Press "N" key and at the same time depress the foot-operated brake
- ☞ Hold down the foot-operated brake and depress and hold down "↑" key
- ☞ The errors stored in the transmission ECU are shown on the display one after another.

ERROR CODES

Remark to titles in table:

ZF fault number: defined by ZF.

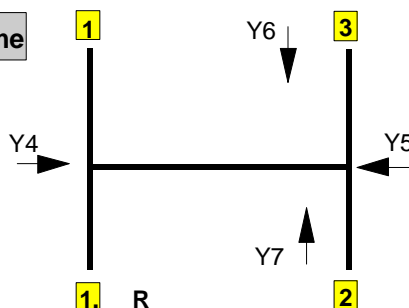
Display SM-Symbol: (0=NO, 1=YES) Display shows "**SM**" (severe failure)

Warning lamp : (0=NO, 1=YES) Telltale panel warning lamp "**check trans**" (less severe failure)

Shift schemes of transmissions:

10/12-Gear Scheme

- Y2 Splitter K2
- Y3 Splitter K1
- Y8 Range (GP) low
- Y9 Range (GP)



ON MESSAGES CENTER DISPLAY (MCD) SAE-J1587 Codes	ON SHIFT SELECTOR DISPLAY	ISO CODES WITH TESTMAN TOOL	DESCRIPTION
8, 7	8	161	Easy Start, Brake doesn't open completely
8, 14	8	162	Easy Start, Not Available
20,6	14	22	Short circuit to ground at output ACC (wakeup control signal for ZMTEC, keep alive signal for voltage doubler, and power signal for speed sensor #2)
20,5	14	54	Interruption at output ACC (wakeup control signal for ZMTEC, keep alive signal for voltage doubler, and power signal for speed sensor #2)
20,3	14	86	Short circuit to positive at output ACC (wakeup control signal for ZMTEC, keep alive signal for voltage doubler, and power signal for speed sensor #2)
21,2	15	127	Error on ECU temperature sensor signal
21,0	15	193	ECU temperature too high
31,3	1F	137	No range change group (GP) sensor signal (Short circuit to positive)
31,6	1F	138	No range change group (GP) sensor signal (Short circuit to ground)
31,5	1F	139	No range change group (GP) sensor signal (Interruption)
31,13	1F	140	Self adjustment error of range change group sensor in position fast
31,7	1F	159	Range-change group sensor signal leaves engaged position during driving
32,3	20	141	No splitter group (GV) sensor signal (Short circuit to positive)
32,6	20	142	No splitter group (GV) sensor signal (Short circuit to ground)
32,5	20	143	No splitter group (GV) sensor signal (Interruption)
32,13	20	144	Splitter group (GV) sensor self adjustment error
32,7	20	160	Splitter sensor signal leaves engaged position during driving
33,14	21	107	Stabilised voltage supply at output AU (clutch sensor supply) too high or too low
33,13	21	117	Error in clutch self-adjustment process
33,2	21	124	Error on clutch travel signal
34,7	22	120	Mechanical failure of small clutch disengagement valve
34,7	22	121	Mechanical failure of large clutch disengagement valve
34,7	22	122	Mechanical failure of small clutch engagement valve
34,7	22	123	Mechanical failure of large clutch engagement valve
34,6	22	18	Short circuit to ground at output stage to small disengagement clutch valve
34,6	22	19	Short circuit to ground at output stage to small engagement clutch valve
34,6	22	20	Short circuit to ground at output stage to large disengagement clutch valve
34,6	22	21	Short circuit to ground at output stage to large engagement clutch valve
34,5	22	50	Interruption at output stage to small disengagement clutch valve

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

ON MESSAGES CENTER DISPLAY (MCD) SAE-J1587 Codes	ON SHIFT SELECTOR DISPLAY	ISO CODES WITH TESTMAN TOOL	DESCRIPTION
34,5	22	51	Interruption at output stage to small engagement clutch valve
34,5	22	52	Interruption at output stage to large disengagement clutch valve
34,5	22	53	Interruption at output stage to large engagement clutch valve
34,3	22	82	Short circuit to positive at output stage to small disengagement clutch valve
34,3	22	83	Short circuit to positive at output stage to small engagement clutch valve
34,3	22	84	Short circuit to positive at output stage to large disengagement clutch valve
34,3	22	85	Short circuit to positive at output stage to large engagement clutch valve
35,5	23	41	Interruption at output stage to Y9 (Valve Range)
35,3	23	73	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y9 (Valve range)
35,6	23	9	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y9 (Valve Range)
36,5	24	40	Interruption at output stage to Y8 (Valve Range)
36,3	24	72	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y8 (Valve range)
36,6	24	8	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y8 (Valve Range)
37,6	25	2	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y2 (Valve Splitter)
37,5	25	34	Interruption at output stage to Y2 (Valve Splitter)
37,3	25	66	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y2 (Valve Splitter)
38,6	26	3	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y3 (Valve Splitter)
38,5	26	35	Interruption at output stage to Y3 (Valve Splitter)
38,3	26	67	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y3 (Valve Splitter)
39,5	27	36	Interruption at output stage to Y4 (Valve Select)
39,6	27	4	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y4 (Valve Select)
39,3	27	68	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y4 (Valve Select)
40,5	28	38	Interruption at output stage to Y6 (Valve Shift)
40,6	28	6	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y6 (Valve Shift)
40,3	28	70	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y6 (Valve Shift)
43,2	2B	175	Error on "Ignition lock" signal (terminal 15)
48,3	30	129	No shift sensor signal (Short circuit to positive)
48,6	30	130	No shift sensor signal (Short circuit to ground)
48,5	30	131	No shift sensor signal (Interruption)
48,13	30	132	Self adjustment error of shift sensor
48,7	30	157	Selector sensor signal leaves position during driving
48,7	30	158	Engage sensor signal leaves engaged position during driving

ON MESSAGES CENTER DISPLAY (MCD) SAE-J1587 Codes	ON SHIFT SELECTOR DISPLAY	ISO CODES WITH TESTMAN TOOL	DESCRIPTION
50,5	32	37	Interruption at output stage to Y5 (Valve Select)
50,6	32	5	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y5 (Valve Select)
50,3	32	69	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y5 (Valve Select)
51,5	33	39	Interruption at output stage to Y7 (Valve Shift)
51,6	33	7	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y7 (Valve Shift)
51,3	33	71	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y7 (Valve Shift)
54,6	36	17	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y1 (inertia brake valve)
54,5	36	49	Interruption at output stage to Y1 (inertia brake valve)
54,3	36	81	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y1 (inertia brake valve)
55,7	37	114	Clutch engaged unintentionally at standstill, gear engaged
55,7	37	118	Clutch does not disengage
55,7	37	119	Clutch does not engage / does not transmit engine torque
56,7	38	145	Range change group (GP) disengagement error
56,7	38	146	Changeover error during range change group (GP) shifting
56,7	38	147	Range change group (GP) does not engage
57,2	39	108	Error in shift lever
57,14	39	110	ZF CAN timeout (can also means shift lever error through ZMP06400.hex)
58,7	3A	154	Main transmission gear does not disengage
58,7	3A	155	Main transmission gear does not engage
58,7	3A	156	Wrong gear shifting
59,7	3B	151	Selector cylinder does not disengage
59,7	3B	152	Change over error during gate selection procedure
59,7	3B	153	Selector cylinder does not engage
60,3	3C	133	No gate select sensor signal (Short circuit to positive)
60,6	3C	134	No gate select sensor signal (Short circuit to ground)
60,5	3C	135	No gate select sensor signal (Interruption)
60,13	3C	136	Gate select sensor self adjustment error
61,7	3D	148	Splitter (GV) does not disengage
61,7	3D	149	Change over error during splitter shifting
61,7	3D	150	Splitter (GV) does not engage
63,14	3F	100	Error on output speed signal 2
106,0	6A	125	Error on pressure reduction valve

Section 07: TRANSMISSION

ON MESSAGES CENTER DISPLAY (MCD) SAE-J1587 Codes	ON SHIFT SELECTOR DISPLAY	ISO CODES WITH TESTMAN TOOL	DESCRIPTION
106,14	6A	126	Error on pressure sensor signal
150,14	96	59	Acknowledge fault of PTO 1
150,14	96	60	Acknowledge fault of PTO 2
150,7	96	61	Disengagement fault of PTO 1
150,7	96	62	Disengagement fault of PTO 2
150,7	96	63	Engagement fault of PTO1
150,7	96	64	Engagement fault of PTO2
151,14	97	102	Plausibility error between transmission input speed and output speed
152,6	98	10	Short circuit to ground at output stage to Y10 (Main valve)
152,5	98	42	Interruption at output stage to Y10 (Main valve)
152,3	98	74	Short circuit to positive at output stage to Y10 (Main valve)
153,14	99	-	Error on ISO 14320 communications line
154,14	9A	101	Error on both output speed signals
161,14	A1	98	Error on transmission input speed signal
177,2	B1	128	Error on oil temperature sensor signal
191,14	BF	194	Both sources of vehicle speed are faulty
191,14	BF	99	Error on output speed signal 1
230,14	E6	166	Permanent idle signal
230,14	E6	168	No idle signal or error on "idle signal switch" signal (EEC2)
230,14	E7	103	Error on "Wheel-based vehicle speed" signal (CCV
231,7	E7	163	Engine does not react on torque intervention
231,14	E7	164	Error on "Drivers demand engine percent torque" (EEC1)
231,14	E7	165	Error on "Accelerator pedal position" (EEC2)
231,14	E7	167	Error on "Percent load at current speed" signal (EEC2)
231,14	E7	171	Error on "Actual engine percent torque" signal (EEC1)
231,14	E7	172	Permanent engine brake request signal
231,14	E7	173	Error on "Brake switch" signal (CCVS)
231,14	E7	177	System-CAN Busoff error
231,11	E7	178	CAN error frames
231,11	E7	179	CAN queue overrun
231,14	E7	180	CAN EEC1 timeout
231,14	E7	181	CAN EEC2 timeout

ON MESSAGES CENTER DISPLAY (MCD) SAE-J1587 Codes	ON SHIFT SELECTOR DISPLAY	ISO CODES WITH TESTMAN TOOL	DESCRIPTION
231,14	E7	182	CAN CCVS timeout
231,14	E7	183	CAN ERC1_ER timeout
231,14	E7	197	Error on "Front axle speed" (WSI)
231,14	E7	198	Error on "Relative wheel speeds" (WSI)
231,14	E7	199	CAN WSI timeout
231,14	E7	26	CAN engine configuration timeout
231,14	E7	27	Error on "engine configuration message" (engine configuration)
231,14	E7	31	Error on "Actual engine retarder - percent torque" signal (ERC1_ER)
231,14	E7	32	Error on "Engine retarder configuration message" (Engine retarder configuration)
231,14	E7	33	CAN "Engine retarder configuration" timeout
231,14	E7	91	CAN EBC1 timeout
231,14	E7	92	Error on "ABS active" signal (EBC1)
231,14	E7	93	Error on "ASR engine control active" signal (EBC1)
231,14	E7	94	Error on "ASR brake control active" signal (EBC1)
231,14	E7	95	Error on "Cruise control active" signal (CCVS)
231,14	E7	96	Error on "Cruise control set speed" (CCVS)
231,14	E7	97	Error on "Engine speed" signal (EEC1)
-	EE	-	Communication error between GS3 and ZMTEC on display line
248,6	F8	25	Short circuit to ground at output SD to display
248,3	F8	89	Short circuit to positive at output SD to display

12. SPECIFICATIONS

ALLISON AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION WITH OR WITHOUT RETARDER

H3 Buses

Gross input power (maximum).....	500 HP (335 kW)
Gross input torque (maximum)	1525 Lbf-ft (2068 Nm)
Rated input speed (minimum-maximum)	1600-2300 rpm

H3-45 VIP

Gross input power (maximum).....	525 HP (392 kW)
Gross input torque (maximum)	1650 Lbf-ft (2237 Nm)
Rated input speed (minimum-maximum)	1600-2300 rpm

Mounting:

Engine.....SAE #1 flywheel housing, flex disk drive

Torque converter:

Type.....One stage, three element, polyphase
Stall torque ratio.....TC 551-1.8
Lockup clutch with torsional damper.....Integral/standard

Gearing:

Type.....Patented, constant mesh, helical, planetary

Ratio:

First.....	3.51:1
Second.....	1.91:1
Third.....	1.43:1
Fourth.....	1.00:1
Fifth.....	0.74:1
Sixth.....	0.64:1
Reverse.....	4.80:1

Ratio coverage:

6 speed.....5.48:1

● **Gear ratios do not include torque converter multiplication.**

Oil System:

Oil type.....TRANSYND, DEXRON-IIe OR DEXRON III
Capacity (excluding external circuits).....Initial fill 47 US qts (45 liters)
Oil change.....24 US qts (23 liters)
Oil change (with retarder).....27.6 US qts (26 liters)

Oil Filters:

Make.....Allison Transmission
Type.....Disposable cartridge
Supplier number.....29503829
Prévostnumber.....57-1687

SECTION 09: PROPELLER SHAFT

CONTENTS

1. PROPELLER SHAFT	09-2
1.1 DESCRIPTION	09-2
2. REMOVAL, DISASSEMBLY, REASSEMBLY AND INSTALLATION	09-2
3. CLEANING, INSPECTION AND LUBRICATION.....	09-3
3.1 CLEANING AND INSPECTION.....	09-3
3.2 LUBRICATION	09-3
4. EXPLANATION OF COMMON DAMAGES.....	09-3
5. TROUBLESHOOTING	09-3
6. SPECIFICATIONS	09-4

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: PROPELLER SHAFT ASSEMBLY	09-2
--	------

Section 09: PROPELLER SHAFT

1. PROPELLER SHAFT

1.1 DESCRIPTION

The propeller shaft transmits power from the transmission to the differential (Fig. 1). Refer to paragraph "6. SPECIFICATIONS" at the end of this section for propeller shaft length. The propeller shaft is "Dana 1810" type with tubular shafts. It is provided with two heavy-duty universal joints (Fig. 1).

The propeller shaft has a full round end yoke at one end and a half round end yoke at the other end. The tube yoke is connected to the differential by the full round end yoke with four needle bearings.

The other extremity (slip yoke assembly) is connected to the transmission by the half round end yoke with two needle bearings.

Furthermore, a slip joint on the propeller shaft compensates for variations in distance between the transmission and the differential, or between the output retarder (optional on the automatic transmission) and differential.

The rise and fall of the drive axle bring about these variations as the vehicle passes over uneven surfaces. The slip joint also eases removal of the transmission or the drive axle.

2. REMOVAL, DISASSEMBLY, REASSEMBLY AND INSTALLATION

Refer to "SPICER UNIVERSAL JOINTS AND DRIVESHAFTS" annexed to this section, under headings "Heavy Duty - removal, disassembly, reassembly and installation".

Where applicable:

- Remove or install propeller shaft safety guard.
- Screw bolts to the specified torque (Fig. 1).

Note: Disregard the procedure on "Lock straps" mentioned in the "Spicer Universal Joints and Driveshafts Manual".

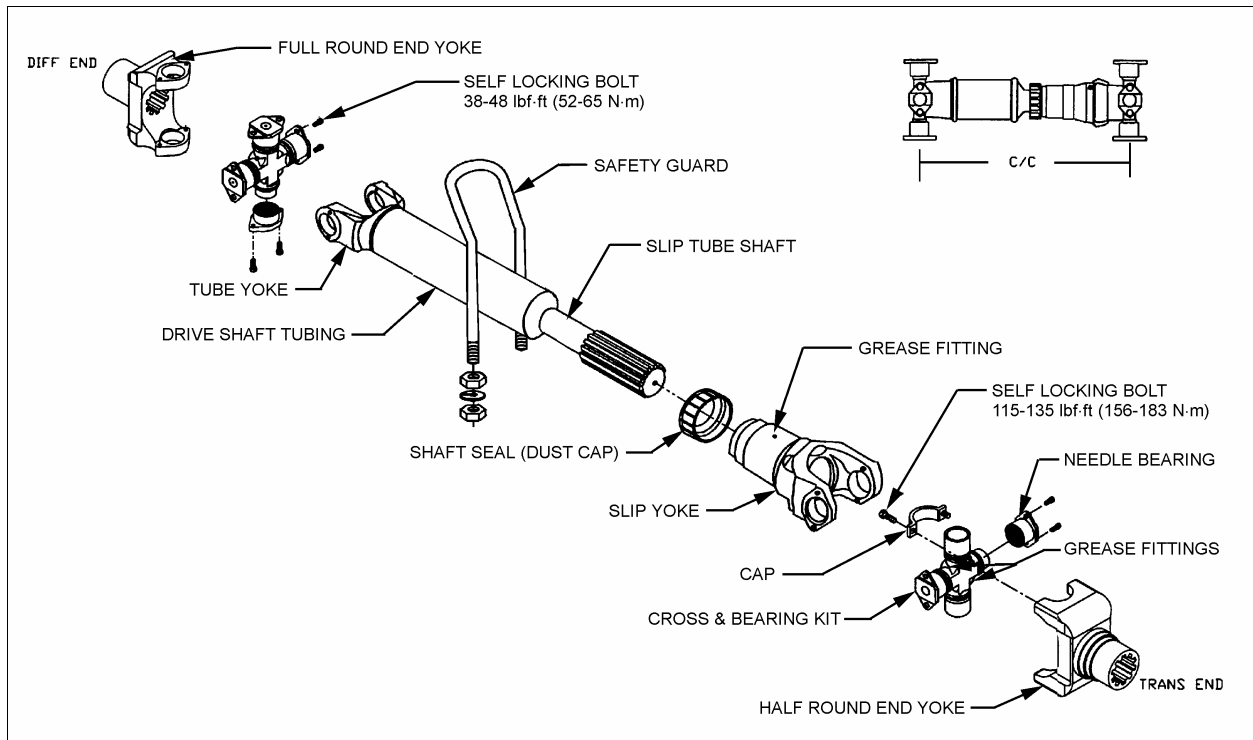


FIGURE 1: PROPELLER SHAFT ASSEMBLY

09003

3. CLEANING, INSPECTION AND LUBRICATION

3.1 CLEANING AND INSPECTION

Thoroughly clean grease from bearings, journal, lubricating grease fittings and other parts. Needle bearing assemblies may be soaked in a cleaning solution to soften hard grease particles. It is extremely important that bearing assemblies be absolutely clean and blown out with compressed air, since small particles of dirt or grit can cause rapid bearing wear. Do not attempt to disassemble needle bearings.

Bearing journal areas should be inspected for roughness or grooving. If light honing does not remove roughness, the entire bearing assembly should be replaced. Excessive wear of the needle bearing is indicated if the needles drop out of the retainer, or if marks are present on the journal bearing surface. In such case, replace bearing assembly. Finally, inspect yokes for cracks, wear or distortion.

Note: Repair kits are available for overhaul of the propeller shaft assembly. Refer to the paragraph "6. Specifications" of this section.

3.2 LUBRICATION

Lubricate propeller shaft universal joints and slip yoke periodically, every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) or twice a year, whichever comes first. Apply grease gun pressure to the lube fitting. Use a good quality lithium-base grease such as: NLGI No.2 (suitable for most temperatures) or NLGI No.1 (suitable for extremely low temperatures). Refer to "Spicer Universal Joints and Driveshafts, Service Manual", under heading, "Inspection and Lubrication". See lubrication procedures for U-joints and lubrication for slip splines.

Note: Do not assume that bearing cavities have been filled with new grease unless it has expelled around all seals.

4. EXPLANATION OF COMMON DAMAGES

1. Cracks: Stress lines due to metal fatigue. Severe and numerous cracks will weaken the metal until it breaks.

2. Galling: Scraping off of metal or metal displacement due to friction between surfaces. This is commonly found on trunnion ends.

3. Spalling (surface fatigue): Breaking off of chips, scales, or flakes of metal due to fatigue rather than wear. It is usually found on splines and U-joint bearings.

4. Pitting: Small pits or craters in metal surfaces due to corrosion. If excessive, pitting can lead to surface wear and eventual failure.

5. Brinelling: Surface wear failure due to the wearing of grooves in metal. It is often caused by improper installation procedures. Do not confuse the polishing of a surface (false brinelling), where no structural damage occurs, with actual brinelling.

6. Structural Overloading: Failure caused by a load greater than the component can stand. A structural overload may cause propeller shaft tubing to twist under strain or it may cause cracks or breaks in U-joints and spline plugs.

5. TROUBLESHOOTING

Refer to "Spicer Service Manual - Universal Joints and Driveshafts" under heading "Troubleshooting".

6. SPECIFICATIONS

PROPELLER SHAFT

H3 VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH AN AUTOMATIC WORLD TRANSMISSION

Make Hayes-Dana Inc.
Series 1810
Supplier number 819325-1900
Prevost number 580069

H3 COACHES EQUIPPED WITH ZF TRANSMISSION

Make Hayes-Dana Inc.
Series 1810
Supplier number 816688-1400
Prevost number 580081

Repair kits

Make Hayes-Dana Inc.
U-joint kit (tube yoke), Supplier number 5-281X
U-joint kit (tube yoke), Prevost number 580043
U-joint kit (slip yoke), Supplier number 5-510X
U-joint kit (slip yoke), Prevost number 580062
Cap and bolt kit, bolt torque 115-135 lbf•ft (156-183 N•m), Supplier number 6.5-70-18X
Cap and bolt kit, bolt torque 115-135 lbf•ft (156-183 N•m), Prevost number 580063
Bolts kit, bolt torque 38-48 lbf•ft (52-65 N•m), Supplier number 6-73-209
Bolts kit, bolt torque 38-48 lbf•ft (52-65 N•m), Prevost number 580071

Note: U-joint kits will come equipped with the serrated bolt and lock patch and will no longer contain a lock strap.

SECTION 10: FRONT AXLE

CONTENTS

1. FRONT AXLE	10-2
1.1 DESCRIPTION	10-2
2. LUBRICATION.....	10-2
3. MAINTENANCE	10-2
3.1 TIE ROD END PLAY ADJUSTMENT.....	10-3
4. REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT	10-3
4.1 REMOVAL	10-3
4.2 REPLACEMENT	10-4
5. SERVICE INSTRUCTIONS FOR STEER AXLE.....	10-4
6. FRONT WHEEL ALIGNMENT	10-4
6.1 MINOR FRONT WHEEL ALIGNMENT	10-4
6.2 MAJOR FRONT WHEEL ALIGNMENT	10-4
6.3 INSPECTION BEFORE ALIGNMENT	10-4
6.4 TURNING ANGLE ADJUSTMENT	10-5
6.4.1 <i>R.H. Turn Adjustment</i>	10-5
6.4.2 <i>L.H. Turn Adjustment</i>	10-5
6.5 HYDRAULIC STOP.....	10-6
6.6 FRONT WHEEL CAMBER	10-6
6.6.1 <i>Camber Check</i>	10-6
6.7 FRONT AXLE CASTER.....	10-6
6.8 FRONT WHEEL TOE-IN	10-7
6.8.1 <i>Inspection and Adjustment</i>	10-7
7. TROUBLESHOOTING	10-8
8. SPECIFICATIONS	10-9

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: FRONT AXLE ASSEMBLY	10-2
FIGURE 2: FRONT AXLE GREASING POINTS	10-2
FIGURE 3: TIE-ROD END PLAY ADJUSTMENT	10-3
FIGURE 4: CAMBER.....	10-6
FIGURE 5: CASTER	10-6
FIGURE 6: TOE-IN MEASUREMENT.....	10-7
FIGURE 7: AIR BELLOWS MOUNTING SUPPORT AND AXLE.....	10-9

1. FRONT AXLE

1.1 DESCRIPTION

This front axle is of the "Reverse Elliot" type manufactured by Dana Spicer Europe. The front axle consists of a girder section axle bed or beam with stub axles. Each stub axle is carried on a taper king pin, with a plain phosphor bronze bushing at the top and at the bottom. The unitized hub bearings used on the NDS range of axles, are non-serviceable items. Bearings are pre-adjusted, lubricated and have seals fitted as part of the manufacturing process. The bearings are greased for life and there is no need or facility for re-lubrication. Brakes are manufactured by KNORR-BREMSE. Steering ball joints with hardened balls and rubbing pads incorporate compression springs which automatically take up any wear.

The tie rod simplifies toe-in adjustment. The maximum turning angle is set through stop screws installed on the inner side of the knuckle.

Steering stabilizer (damper) and steering drag link which are mounted on the front axle are described in Section 14; "Steering" of this manual.

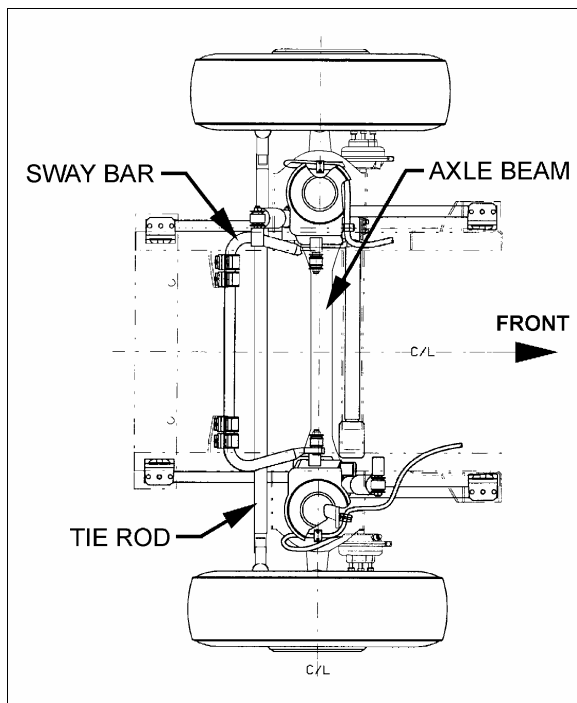


FIGURE 1: FRONT AXLE ASSEMBLY

10025

2. LUBRICATION

Pressure lubricate axle every 6 months or 30,000 miles (48 000 km) whichever comes first (Fig. 2). Tie rod ends and knuckle pins are provided with grease fittings for pressure lubrication. These grease fittings should be serviced every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) or twice a year whichever comes first. Good quality lithium-base roller bearing grease NLGI No.1 and 2 are recommended.

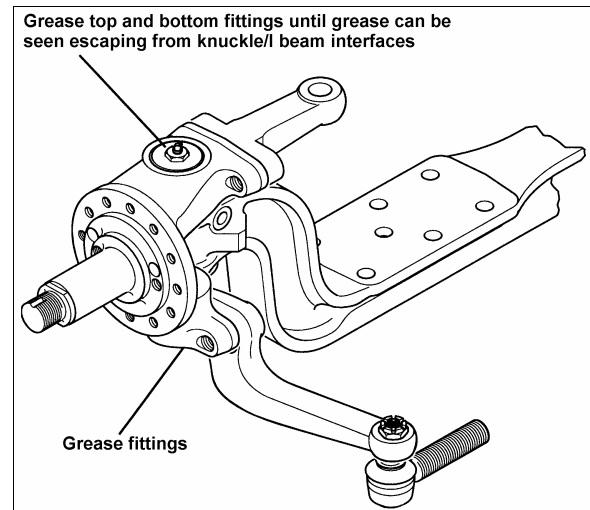


FIGURE 2: FRONT AXLE GREASING POINTS

3. MAINTENANCE

A periodic inspection of the front axle assembly should be made to check that all bolts are tight, and that no damage and distortion have taken place. Suspension support stud nuts, U-bolt nuts, tie rod arms, steering arm nuts and stop screws should be checked and tightened, as required, to the torque specifications given at the end of this section. Also check the condition of the steering knuckle pins and bushings. In case of excessive looseness, the bushings and pins should be replaced.

Any looseness in the steering linkage, under normal steering loads, is sufficient cause to immediately check all pivot points for wear, regardless of accumulated mileage. Steering linkage pivot points should be checked each time the front axle assembly is lubricated. Any looseness can be visually detected while rotating the steering wheel in both directions.

Steering knuckles, knuckle pins and bushings can be overhauled or replaced without removing the axle from the vehicle. However, if extensive overhaul work is necessary, the axle assembly should be removed.

Caution: Should removal of a locking device be required when undergoing repairs, disassembly or adjustments, always replace with a new one.

3.1 TIE ROD END PLAY ADJUSTMENT

If end play exceeds 0.047" (1.2 mm), readjustment is necessary.

Remove protective cap, using a suitable tool ie: a 1" x 1/8" x 9" long flat bar, tighten adjuster piece fully home (SOLID) locating thrust cup onto ball pin.

Still with tool located on adjuster piece, back off carefully (LEAST AMOUNT) until adjuster piece cotter pin is allowed to pass through body, then remove tool.

Reinstall protective cap.

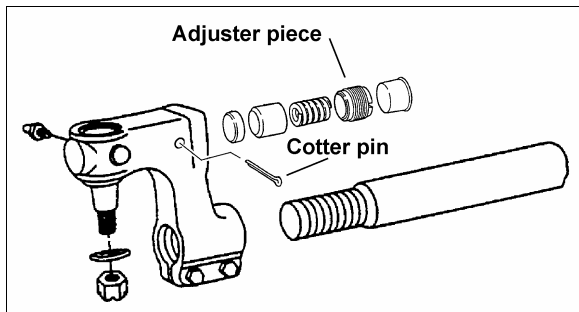


FIGURE 3: TIE-ROD END PLAY ADJUSTMENT 10029

4. REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

The following procedure deals with the removal of the front axle assembly. The method used to support the axle assembly and suspension components during removal and disassembly depends upon local conditions and available equipment.

4.1 REMOVAL

1. Raise the vehicle by its jacking points on the body (see Section 18, "Body" under heading 34; Vehicle Jacking Points) until vehicle body is approximately 20 inches (508 mm) from the floor. Place jack stands under frame. Remove the wheels (if required,

refer to Section 13, "Wheels, Hubs and Tires").

Caution : Use only the recommended jacking points as outlined in section 18 "BODY".

2. Exhaust compressed air from the air supply system by opening the drain valve of each reservoir.
3. Install jacks under axle jacking points to support the axle weight.

Warning : To help prevent injury caused by the axle rolling off the jacks, these should be equipped with U-adapters, or similar precautions must be taken.

4. Disconnect the steering drag link from the steering arm.
5. Remove the ABS sensors from their location in hubs (if applicable).
6. Disconnect the height control valve link from its support on the axle.
7. Disconnect air lines from front brake chambers, and cover line ends and fittings to prevent the entry of foreign matter.

Caution: Position the air lines and electric wires so they will not be damaged while removing the front axle assembly.

8. Proceed with steps a, b and c, while referring to Section 16: "SUSPENSION".
 - a) Disconnect sway bar links from axle brackets.
 - b) Remove shock absorbers.
 - c) Disconnect five radius rods: one transversal and two longitudinal from subframe, and two upper rods from axle.
9. Remove the bolts and nuts fixing the axle to the left-hand and right-hand side air bellows mounting supports.
10. Using the jacks, slowly lower the axle assembly, and carefully pull away from underneath vehicle.

Section 10: FRONT AXLE

4.2 REPLACEMENT

Reverse front axle “Removal” procedure. Ensure cleanliness of air bellows support mounting plates.

Note : Refer to Section 16, “SUSPENSION”, Section 14, “Steering” and to paragraph 8 “Specifications” at the end of this section for applicable checks and recommended tightening torques.

5. SERVICE INSTRUCTIONS FOR STEER AXLE

Refer to “DANA SPICER Maintenance Manual Model NDS and Maintenance Manual NDS Axles” annexed at the end of this section.

6. FRONT WHEEL ALIGNMENT

Correct front wheel alignment must be maintained for steering comfort and satisfactory tire life. Road shocks and vibrations, as well as normal stress and strains on the front-end system can, under normal operating conditions, result in loss of front wheel alignment.

Check the front wheel alignment when the following occurs:

1. Every 200,000 miles (320 000 km) or 24 months (normal maintenance);
2. When the vehicle does not steer correctly; or
3. To correct a tire wear condition.

There are two types of front wheel alignment: **minor alignment** and **major alignment**.

6.1 MINOR FRONT WHEEL ALIGNMENT

Perform a minor front wheel alignment for all normal maintenance conditions.

Perform the minor front wheel alignment in the following sequence :

1. Inspect all the systems that affect the wheel alignment. See paragraph 6.3, “*Inspection Before Alignment*” in this section.
2. Check the hub bearings. See section 13, “*Wheels, hubs and Tires*” under heading 8: Front and Tag Axle Wheel Hubs.

3. Check and adjust the toe-in.

6.2 MAJOR FRONT WHEEL ALIGNMENT

Perform a major front wheel alignment to correct steering and tire wear conditions.

Perform the major front wheel alignment in the following sequence:

1. Inspect all systems affecting the wheel alignment. See paragraph 6.3, “*Inspection Before Alignment*” in this section.
2. Check the hub bearings. See section 13, “*Wheels, hubs and Tires*” under heading 8: Front and Tag Axle Wheel Hubs.

Note: If steering angle stoppers are changed, a special procedure is required for readjusting gearbox steering limiter. See paragraph 6.5 “*HYDRAULIC STOP*” in this section.

3. Check and adjust the turning angle adjustment.
4. Check the camber angle.
5. Check and adjust the caster angle.
6. Check and adjust the toe-in.

6.3 INSPECTION BEFORE ALIGNMENT

Check the following before doing a front wheel alignment:

1. Ensure that the vehicle is at normal riding height. See Section 16, “*Suspension*” under heading 7: “*Suspension Height Adjustment*”.
2. Ensure that front wheels are not the cause of the problem. See Section 13, “*Wheels, Hubs and Tires*”. Inspect the tires for wear patterns indicating suspension damage or misalignment.
 - a. Make sure the tires are inflated to the specified pressure.
 - b. Make sure the front tires are the same size and type.
 - c. Make sure the wheels are balanced.
 - d. Check wheel installation and straightness.

3. Check the wheel bearing adjustment. See Section 13, "Wheels, Hubs and Tires".
4. Check steering linkage for bending and pivot points for looseness.
5. Check knuckle pins for evidence of excessive wear.
6. Check radius rods for bending and rubber bushings for evidence of excessive wear.
7. Make sure all fasteners are tightened to the specified torque. Use a torque wrench for verification. As soon as the fastener starts to move, record the torque. Correct if necessary. Replace any worn or damaged fasteners.
4. Verify the nearest point of contact of the drag link with the tire. Measure the distance between those two points.
5. The distance should be 1 inch (25 mm) or more. If not, the steering stop screws must be readjusted.
6. This must be done for a full right turn.
7. If readjustment is required:
 - a. Remove the swivel stop screw.
 - b. Add to the stop screw the required number of washers to obtain the proper measure, tighten the stop screw afterwards. Two washers of different thickness are available: 1/16 inch and 3/16 inch.

6.4 TURNING ANGLE ADJUSTMENT

The maximum turning angle is set through the two steering stop screws installed on the axle center. The turning angle is factory adjusted to accommodate the chassis design, and therefore, does not require adjustment on new vehicles. However, it should be checked and adjusted any time any component of the steering system is repaired, disassembled or adjusted.

Check if front tires rub against the frame or if the steering gear has been serviced.

Proceed with the following method to check the steering maximum turning angle :

6.4.1 R.H. Turn Adjustment

Caution : *To prevent the steering damper from interfering with the adjustment of turning angles, make sure its fixing bracket is at the correct location on the axle center (refer to section 14 "STEERING").*

1. Turn steering wheel to the right until the boss on the axle center touches the right stop screw.
2. Verify the nearest point of contact of the ball socket body with the air bellows support assembly. Measure the distance between those two points.
3. The distance between these two points should be approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm). If not, the steering stop screws must be readjusted.

6.4.2 L.H. Turn Adjustment

1. Turn steering wheel to the left until the boss on the axle center touches the left stop screw.
2. Verify the nearest point of contact of the ball socket body with the air bellows support assembly. Measure the distance between those two points.
3. The distance between these two points should be approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm). If not, the steering stop screws must be readjusted.
4. Check the stroke of the steering stabilizer cylinder (damper). It should not exceed 12.59 inches (320 mm).
5. The steering stopper screw must be in contact before the steering stabilizer reaches the end of the stroke.
6. This must be done for a full left turn.
7. If readjustment is required:
 - a. Remove the swivel stop screw.
 - b. Add to the stop screw the required number of washers to obtain the proper measure, tighten the stop screw afterwards. Two washers of different thickness are available: 1/16 inch and 3/16 inch.

Note : *If steering angle stoppers are changed, a special procedure is required for readjusting*

Section 10: FRONT AXLE

gearbox steering limiter. See paragraph 6.5 "HYDRAULIC STOP" in this section.

6.5 HYDRAULIC STOP

Note : Before readjusting steering limiter, verify vehicle wheel alignment and ensure that oil level is checked and that air bleeding is done.

Refer to 'ZF-Servocom Repair Manual' annexed at the end of Section 14 "Steering" under heading 'Setting and Functional Test.

6.6 FRONT WHEEL CAMBER

Wheel camber is the number of degrees the top of the wheel tilts outward (positive) or inward (negative) from a vertical angle (Fig. 4).

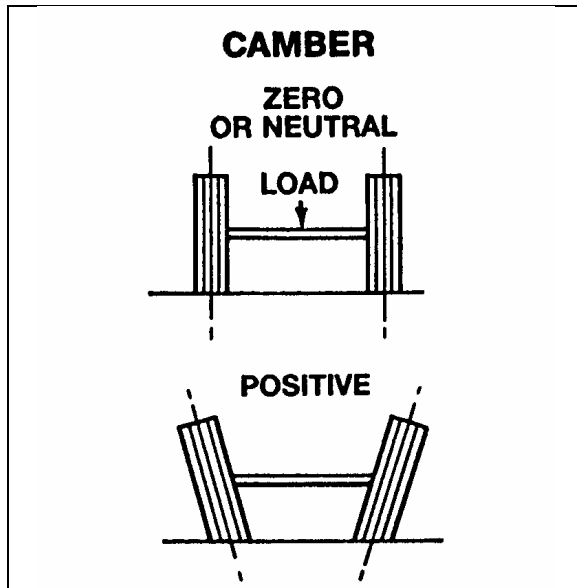


FIGURE 4: CAMBER

10006

The camber angle is not adjustable. Camber variations may be caused by wear at the wheel bearings, steering knuckle pins or by a bent knuckle or sagging axle center. Steering effort is affected by improper camber, and uneven tire wear will result. Excessive positive camber causes an irregular wear of tire at the outer shoulder and excessive negative camber causes wear at the inner shoulder.

6.6.1 Camber Check

For camber specifications, refer to paragraph 8: "SPECIFICATIONS" in this section

Note: Camber angle varies with the axle loading. If the vehicle is not completely empty, please refer to the camber angle curve in the specifications at the end of this section.

1. Use an alignment machine to check the camber angle.
2. If camber reading is not in the specifications, adjust the wheel bearings and repeat the check. If the reading is still not within specifications, verify the steering knuckle pins and axle center.
3. See instructions in "DANA SPICER Maintenance Manual Model NDS and Maintenance Manual NDS Axles" annexed at the end of this section.
4. Check the wheel lateral distortion as instructed in Section 13, "Wheels, Hubs and Tires" under heading, "Checking for Distorted Wheel on Vehicle". If distortion is excessive, straighten or replace wheel(s).

6.7 FRONT AXLE CASTER

For caster specifications, refer to paragraph 8: "SPECIFICATIONS" in this section.

Positive caster is the rearward tilt from the vertical axis of the knuckle pin. Negative caster is the forward tilt from the vertical axis of the knuckle pin (Fig. 5). This vehicle is designed with a positive caster. The purpose of the caster angle is to give a trailing effect. This results in stabilized steering and a tendency for the wheels to return to the straight-ahead position after taking a turn.

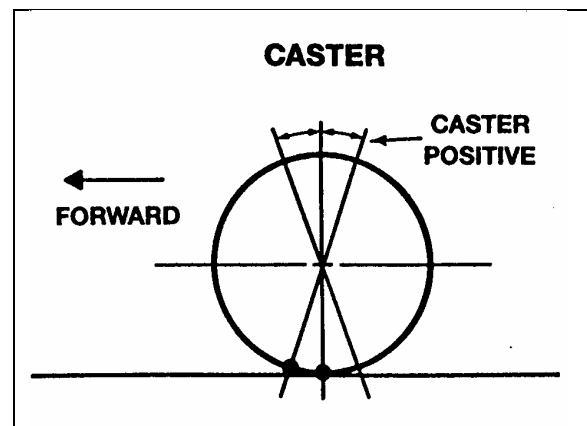


FIGURE 5: CASTER

10007

Excessive caster results in hard steering around corners. A shimmy may also develop when returning to the straight ahead position (pulling out of curves).

Insufficient caster will cause wandering and steering instability. Caster variations may be caused by a bent axle, tilting or distortion of the side suspension supports, damaged radius rod bushings, or unequal tightening of the front and rear suspension support bolts. Incorrect caster must be corrected by replacing the damaged suspension parts. A precision instrument should be used to measure the caster.

Note : *The caster of this vehicle is factory set and is not adjustable. However, if after replacing damaged parts or in case of improper caster due to irregular setting, the front axle caster needs adjustment; it can be adjusted by means of shims (Prévost #110663) on the left-hand side upper radius rod support in order to obtain minor adjustment.*

6.8 FRONT WHEEL TOE-IN

Wheel toe-in is the degree (usually expressed in fractions of an inch) to which the forward part of the vehicle front wheels are closer together than the rear part, measured at wheel centerline height with the wheels in the normal "straight-ahead" position of the steering gear.

Incorrect toe-in results in excessive tire wear caused by side slippage and also steering instability with a tendency to wander. Toe-in may be measured from the center of tire tread or from the inside of the tires. Take measurements at both front and rear of axle (see "A" and "B" in fig. 6).

6.8.1 Inspection and Adjustment

Before checking front wheel toe-in, first check the camber angles and make the necessary corrections.

1. Measure the toe-in.
2. If the toe-in measurement is not within the specified tolerance, carry out the following procedure :
 - a. Loosen the pinch bolt nuts and bolts on each tie rod end.
 - b. Turn the tie rod until the specified toe-in measurement is obtained.
 - c. Tighten the pinch bolt nuts alternately and progressively to 65-75 lbf-ft (88-102 Nm), thus securing all tie rod joints.

When setting toe-in adjustment, the front suspension must be neutralized; that is, all component parts must be in the same relative position when marking the adjustment as they will be when in operation.

To neutralize the suspension, the vehicle must be rolled forward, approximately ten feet.

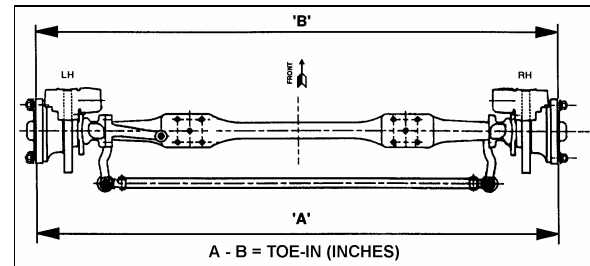


FIGURE 6: TOE-IN MEASUREMENT

10008B

For toe-in specifications, refer to paragraph 8 "Specifications" in this section.

By rolling the vehicle forward, all tolerances in the front suspension are taken up and the suspension is then in its normal operating position. Neutralizing the front suspension is extremely important, especially if the vehicle has been jacked up in order to mark the tires. Otherwise, the front wheels will not return to their normal operating position due to the tires gripping the floor surface when the vehicle jack is lowered.

Note: *"Toe-in" measurements must be taken at the horizontal axis of the wheel centerline.*

Section 10: FRONT AXLE**7. TROUBLESHOOTING**

CONDITION	CAUSE	CORRECTION
Tires wear out quickly or have uneven tire tread wear.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Tires have incorrect air pressure.2. Tires out-of-balance.3. Incorrect tag axle alignment.4. Incorrect toe-in setting.5. Incorrect steering arm geometry.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Put specified air pressure in tires.2. Balance or replace tires.3. Align tag axle.4. Adjust toe-in specified setting.5. Service steering system as necessary.
Vehicle is hard to steer.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Low pressure in the power steering system.2. Steering gear not assembled correctly.3. Steering linkage needs lubrication.4. King pins binding.5. Incorrect steering arm geometry.6. Caster improperly adjusted.7. Tie rod ends hard to move.8. Worn thrust bearing.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Repair power steering system.2. Assemble steering gear correctly.3. Lubricate steering linkage.4. Replace king pins.5. Service steering system as necessary.6. Adjust caster as necessary.7. Replace tie rod ends.8. Replace thrust bearing.
Bent or damaged steering arm, steering top lever or tie rod assembly.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Too much pressure in the power steering system.2. Cut-off pressure of the power steering system improperly adjusted.3. Vehicle not powered on correctly.4. Power steering system not installed correctly.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Replace damaged part(s), adjust power steering system to specified pressure.2. Make sure vehicle is powered on correctly.3. Correctly install the power steering system.4. Correctly install the power steering system.
Worn or damaged steering ball stud.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Drag link fasteners tightened past specified torque.2. Lack of lubrication or incorrect lubricant.3. Power steering stops improperly adjusted.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Replace damaged part(s), tighten drag link fasteners to specified torque.2. Lubricate linkage with specified lubricant.3. Adjust stops to specified dimension.
Worn king pins and knuckle bushings.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Worn or missing seals and gaskets.2. Incorrect lubricant.3. Axle not lubricated at scheduled frequency.4. Incorrect lubrication procedures.5. Lubrication schedule does not match operating conditions.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Replace damaged part(s), replace seals and gaskets.2. Lubricate axle with specified lubricant.3. Lubricate axle at scheduled frequency.4. Use correct lubrication schedule to match operating conditions.5. Change lubrication schedule to match operating conditions.
Vibration or shimmy of front axle during operation.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Caster not adjusted properly.2. Wheels and/or tires out-of balance.3. Worn steering stabilizer cylinder.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Adjust caster.2. Balance or replace wheels and/or tires.3. Replace steering stabilizer cylinder.

8. SPECIFICATIONS

Front Axle

Make DANA SPICER EUROPE
Model NDS
Front Track..... 84.4 inches (2 145 mm)
Rated load capacity 16,500 lbs (7 500 kg)

Torque specifications

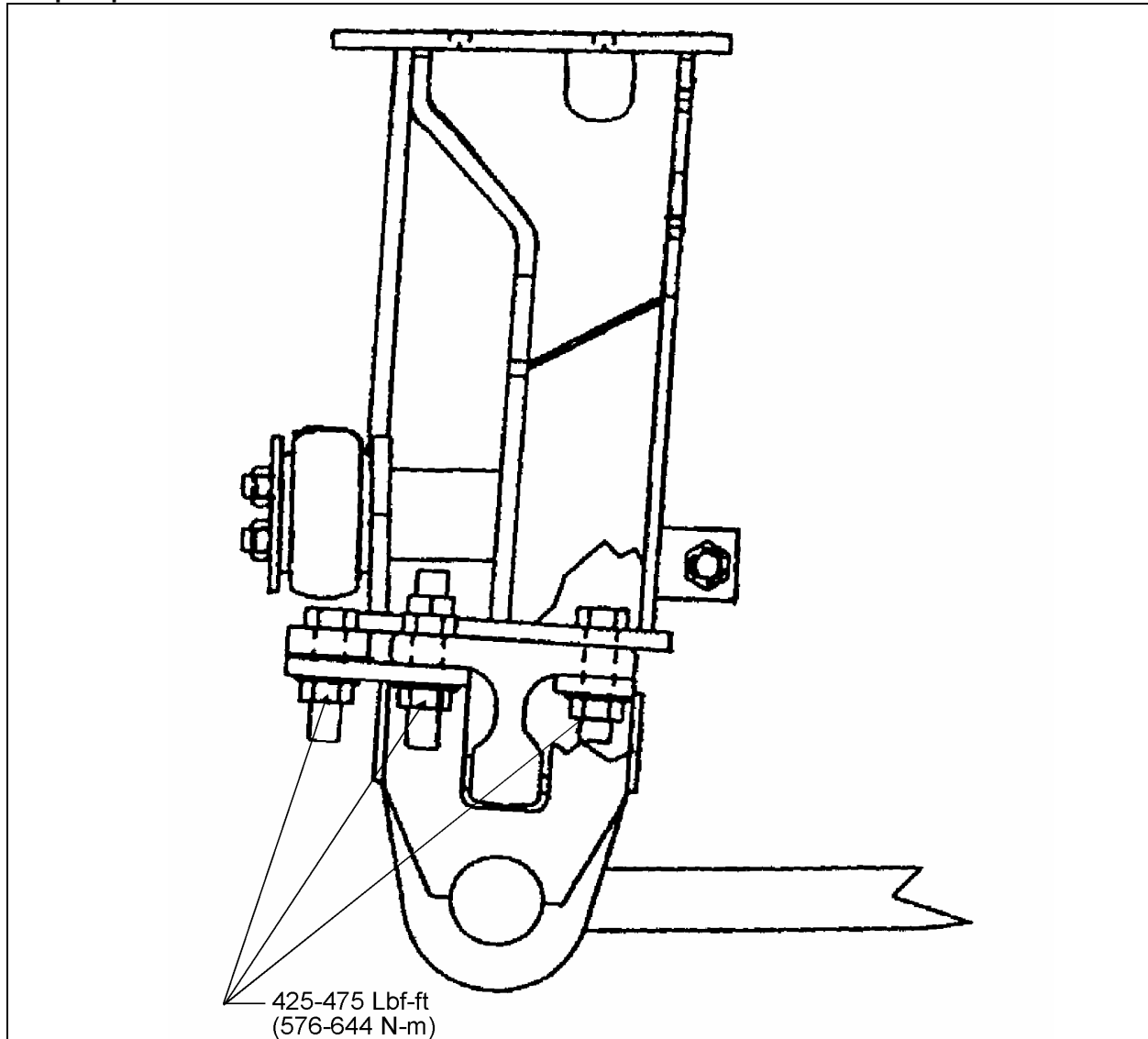


FIGURE 7: AIR BELLOWS MOUNTING SUPPORT AND AXLE

10009

For more torque specifications, see 'Dana Spicer Maintenance Manual NDS Axles and Maintenance Manual Model NDS' annexed at the end of this section.

Section 10: FRONT AXLE

FRONT WHEEL ALIGNMENT SPECIFICATIONS			
Front Wheel Alignment	Minimal	Nominal	Maximal
Camber, (degrees) R.H. and L.H. *	-0.250	0.125	0.375
Caster, (degrees) R.H. and L.H.	2	2.75	3.5
Toe-in (A minus B), (degrees)	0.08	0.13	0.17

● **Note :** *Camber angle changes with loading. The given numbers are for an empty vehicle.*

SECTION 11: REAR AXLES

CONTENTS

1. DRIVE AXLE	11-2
1.1 DESCRIPTION	11-2
1.2 DRIVE AXLE LUBRICATION	11-2
1.3 MAINTENANCE	11-2
1.3.1 <i>Checking and Adjusting the Oil Level</i>	11-3
1.3.2 <i>Draining and Replacing the Oil</i>	11-3
1.3.3 <i>Speed Sensors (Anti-Lock Brake system, ABS)</i>	11-3
1.4 REMOVAL AND REINSTALLATION	11-3
1.5 DISASSEMBLY AND REASSEMBLY	11-4
1.6 GEAR SET IDENTIFICATION	11-4
1.7 ADJUSTMENTS	11-4
1.8 FASTENER TORQUE CHART	11-4
1.9 TIRE MATCHING	11-4
1.10 DRIVE AXLE ALIGNMENT	11-4
1.10.1 <i>Procedure</i>	11-5
1.11 AXLE SHAFT SEALING METHOD	11-7
2. TAG AXLE	11-7
2.1 GREASE LUBRICATED WHEEL BEARINGS	11-7
2.2 REMOVAL AND REINSTALLATION	11-8
2.3 TAG AXLE ALIGNMENT	11-8
3. SPECIFICATIONS	11-9

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: DRIVE AXLE	11-2
FIGURE 2: DIFFERENTIAL ASSEMBLY	11-2
FIGURE 3: DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING BOWL	11-2
FIGURE 4: JACKING POINTS ON FRAME	11-3
FIGURE 5: JACKING POINTS ON DRIVE AXLE	11-4
FIGURE 6: FRONT & DRIVE AXLE ALIGNMENT	11-6
FIGURE 7: TAG AXLE ALIGNMENT	11-6
FIGURE 8: AXLE SHAFT INSTALLATION	11-7
FIGURE 9: JACKING POINTS ON TAG AXLE	11-8

Section 11: REAR AXLES

1. DRIVE AXLE

1.1 DESCRIPTION

The Meritor drive axle is equipped with a single reduction standard carrier mounted in front of the axle housing. The carrier consists of a hypoid drive pinion, a ring gear set and gears in the differential assembly.

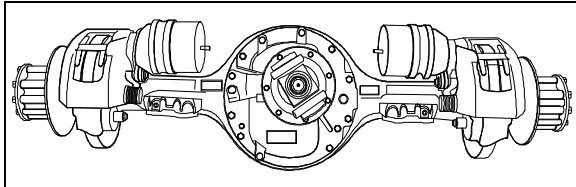


FIGURE 1: DRIVE AXLE

11019

A straight roller bearing (spigot) is mounted on the head of the drive pinion. All other bearings in the carrier are tapered roller bearings. When the carrier operates, there is a normal differential action between the wheels all the time.

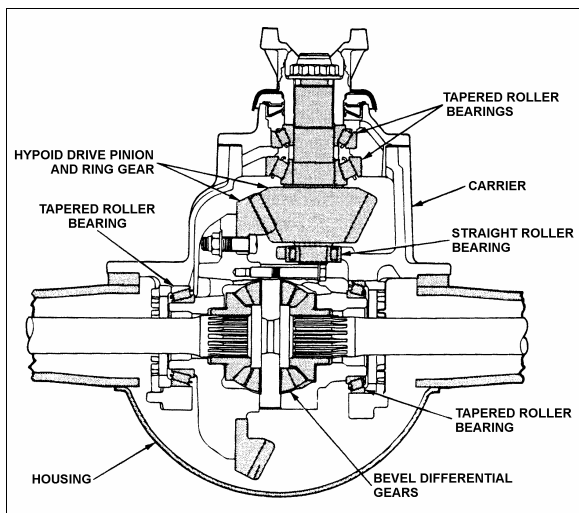


FIGURE 2: DIFFERENTIAL ASSEMBLY

11024

Several speed ratios are available for the drive axle. These ratios depend upon the motor and transmission. Also, special applications may suggest slightly different gear ratios.

1.2 DRIVE AXLE LUBRICATION

Additional lubrication information is covered in the Meritor *"Maintenance Manual No. 5"* annexed to this section. During initial stage of normal operation, tiny metal particles originating from moving parts can be found on mating surfaces. These particles are carried by the

lubricant through the assembly and act as lapping compound, which accelerates wear of all parts. To ensure maximum life of the differential and prevent premature failure, the original "factory fill" lubricant should be drained. Change break-in oil before 3,000 miles (4 800 km) of initial operation (drain the unit while it is still warm from operation), in accordance with the lubrication and servicing schedule.

Change differential oil and clean the breathers, magnetic fill and drain plugs, every 100,000 miles (160 000 km) or once every two years, whichever comes first.

Use Multigrade gear oil MIL-L-2105-D. Use the 75W90-gear oil for northern climates and the 80W140 for southern climates. In extreme conditions, or for better performance, fill with synthetic gear oil. Check oil level and add (if necessary) every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) or twice a year, whichever comes first (Fig. 3).

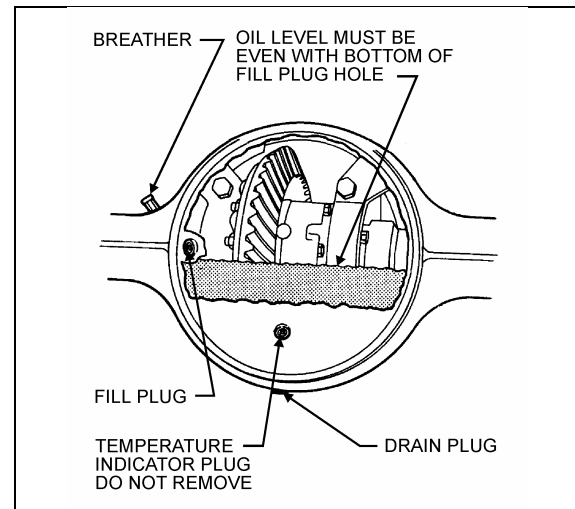


FIGURE 3: DIFFERENTIAL HOUSING BOWL

11007

1.3 MAINTENANCE

Proper vehicle operation begins with preventive maintenance, such as good differential use. The most common types of drive axle carrier failures are spinout, shock, fatigue, overheating and lubrication. Avoid neglecting these points since they would be the first steps to improper maintenance, expensive repairs, and excessive downtime.

Inspect the pinion oil seal, axle shaft flange and carrier housing gaskets for evidence of lubricant leakage. Tighten the bolts and nuts, or replace

the gaskets and seals to correct leaks. Maintenance of the axle mountings consists primarily in a regular and systematic inspection of the air suspension units and radius rods, as directed in Section 16, "Suspension".

1.3.1 Checking and Adjusting the Oil Level

Warning: Before servicing, park safely over a repair pit; apply parking brake, stop engine and set battery master switch to the "OFF" position.

1. Make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Caution: Check the oil level when the axle is at room temperature. When hot, the oil temperature may be 190°F (88°C) or more and can cause burns. Also, a correct reading is not obtained when the axle is warm or hot.

2. Make sure the axle is "cold" or at room temperature.
3. Clean the area around the fill plug. Remove the fill plug from the differential axle housing bowl (Fig. 3).
4. The oil level must be even with the bottom of the hole of the fill plug.
 - a. If oil flows from the hole when the plug is loosened, the oil level is high. Drain the oil to the correct level.
 - b. If the oil level is below the bottom of the hole of the fill plug, add the specified oil.
5. Install and tighten the fill plug to 35-50 lbf-ft (48-67 Nm).

1.3.2 Draining and Replacing the Oil

Warning: Before servicing, park safely over a repair pit; apply parking brake, stop engine and set battery master switch to the "OFF" position.

1. Make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface. Put a large container under the axle's drain plug.

Note: Drain the oil when the axle is warm.

2. Remove the drain plug from the bottom of the axle. Drain and discard the oil in an environment friendly manner.

3. Install and tighten the drain plug to 35-50 lbf-ft (48-67 Nm).
4. Clean the area around the fill plug. Remove the fill plug from the differential housing bowl.
5. Add the specified oil until the oil level is even with the bottom of the hole of the fill plug. Allow the oil to flow through the axle and check the oil level again (lube capacity 41 pints [13,3 liters]).

Caution: The differential overheats when the oil temperature rises above 250°F (120°C).

6. Install and tighten the fill plug to 35-50 lbf-ft (48-67 Nm).

1.3.3 Speed Sensors (Anti-Lock Brake system, ABS)

For removing and installing the drive axle speed sensors (for anti-lock brake systems, ABS), refer to Section 12: "Brake and Air System" and to Rockwell WABCO Maintenance Manual: "Anti-Lock Brake Systems For Trucks, Tractors and Buses", annexed at the end of section 12.

1.4 REMOVAL AND REINSTALLATION

The following procedure deals with the removal of the drive axle assembly and its attachments as a unit. The method used to support the axle during removal and disassembly depends upon local conditions and available equipment.

1. Raise vehicle by its jacking points on the body (fig. 4 or see Section 18, "Body" under heading "Vehicle Jacking Points"). Place jack stands under frame. Remove drive axle wheels (if required, refer to Section 13, "Wheels, Hubs And Tires".

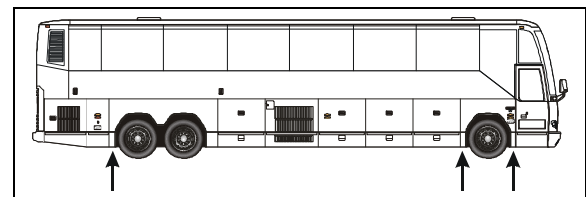


FIGURE 4: JACKING POINTS ON FRAME

18524

2. Exhaust compressed air from the air supply system by opening the drain cock on each air reservoir.

Section 11: REAR AXLES

3. Disconnect the propeller shaft as directed in Section 9, "Propeller Shaft", in this manual.
4. On both sides of the vehicle, unscrew fasteners retaining front wheel housing plastic guards, and remove them from vehicle.
5. Disconnect both height control valve links from air spring mounting plate brackets then move the arm down to exhaust the air suspension.
6. Remove cable ties securing the ABS cables (if vehicle is so equipped) to service brake chamber hoses. Disconnect the ABS cable plugs from the drive axle wheel hubs.

Note: When removing drive axle, if unfastening cable ties is necessary for ease of operation, remember to replace them afterwards.

7. Disconnect the brake chamber hoses.

Note: Position the hoses so they will not be damaged when removing the axle.

8. Install jacks under the axle jacking points to support the axle weight (refer to figure 5).

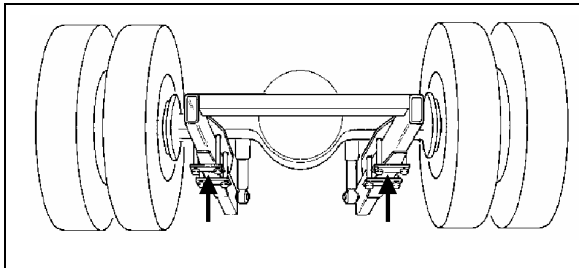


FIGURE 5: JACKING POINTS ON DRIVE AXLE H3B762

9. Remove the four shock absorbers as outlined in Section 16, "Suspension" under heading "Shock Absorber Removal".
10. Remove the sway bar.
11. Remove the lower and upper longitudinal radius rod supports from vehicle sub-frame as outlined in Section 16, "Suspension", under heading "Radius Rod Removal".
12. Remove the transversal radius rod support from the vehicle sub-frame.
13. Remove the two retaining nuts from each of the four air bellows lower mounting supports.

14. Use the jacks to lower axle. Carefully pull away the jacks axle assembly from underneath vehicle.

15. Reverse removal procedure to reinstall drive axle.

Note: Refer to Section 16, "Suspension" for suspension components' proper tightening torques.

Note: Refer to section 13 "Wheels, Hubs And Tires" for correct wheel bearing adjustment procedure.

1.5 DISASSEMBLY AND REASSEMBLY

Disassembly and re-assembly procedures are covered under applicable headings in Meritor's "MAINTENANCE MANUAL, NO. 5", annexed to this section.

1.6 GEAR SET IDENTIFICATION

Gear set identification is covered under applicable heading in Meritor's "MAINTENANCE MANUAL NO. 5", annexed to this section.

1.7 ADJUSTMENTS

Adjustments are covered under applicable headings in Meritor's "MAINTENANCE MANUAL NO. 5", annexed to this section.

1.8 FASTENER TORQUE CHART

A differential fastener torque chart is provided in Meritor's "MAINTENANCE MANUAL NO. 5", annexed to this section.

1.9 TIRE MATCHING

Drive axle tire matching is covered under the applicable heading in Section 13, "Wheels, Hubs And Tires" in this manual.

1.10 DRIVE AXLE ALIGNMENT

Note: For drive axle alignment specifications, refer to paragraph 3: "Specifications" in this section.

The drive axle alignment consists in aligning the axle according to the frame. The axle must be perpendicular to the frame. The alignment is achieved with the use of shims inserted between the lower longitudinal radius rod supports and the frame.

Drive axle alignment is factory set and is not subject to any change, except if the vehicle has been damaged by an accident or if there are requirements for replacement.

If the axle has been removed for repairs or servicing and if all the parts are reinstalled exactly in the same place, the axle alignment is not necessary. However, if the suspension supports have been replaced or altered, proceed with the following instructions to verify or adjust the drive axle alignment.

Note: When drive axle alignment is modified, tag axle alignment must be re-verified.

1.10.1 Procedure

1. Park vehicle on a level surface, then chock front vehicle wheels.

2. Using two jacking points (which are at least 30 inches [76 cm] apart) on drive axle, raise the vehicle sufficiently so that wheels can turn freely at about ½ inch from ground. Secure in this position with safety stands, and release parking brake.
3. Install wheel mount sensors on front and drive axles (fig. 6). Adjust front axle according to appropriate specifications chart below.

Note: See reference numbers on wheel mount sensors (fig. 6).

Note: Select axle specifications in the appropriate chart.

FRONT AXLE VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH I-BEAM AXLE ONLY			
Alignment / value	Minimum value	Nominal value	Maximum value
Right camber (degrees)	-0.250	0.125	0.375
Left camber (degrees)	-0.250	0.125	0.375
Right caster (degrees)	2	2.75	3.5
Left caster (degrees)	2	2.75	3.5
Total toe (degrees)	.08	0.13	0.17

DRIVE AXLE ALIGNMENT

- With the system installed as for front axle alignment (fig.6), adjust drive axle according to specifications' chart below.

DRIVE AXLE ALL VEHICLES			
Alignment / value	Minimum value	Nominal value	Maximum value
Thrust angle (deg.)	-0.04	0	0.04

TAG AXLE ALIGNMENT

- Remove and reinstall all wheel mount sensors on the drive and tag axles (fig. 7);

Note: For an accurate alignment, the tag axle must be aligned with the drive axle.

Section 11: REAR AXLES

Note: Reinstall wheel mount sensors as shown in figure 7. For example, the sensor from the right side of the front axle is mounted on the left side of the tag axle. For corresponding wheel mount sensor reference numbers, refer to figure 6.

- Adjust tag axle according to specifications' chart below in reference with drive axle.

TAG AXLE ALL VEHICLES			
Alignment / value	Minimum value	Nominal value	Maximum value
Parallelism (deg.)	-0.02	0	0.02

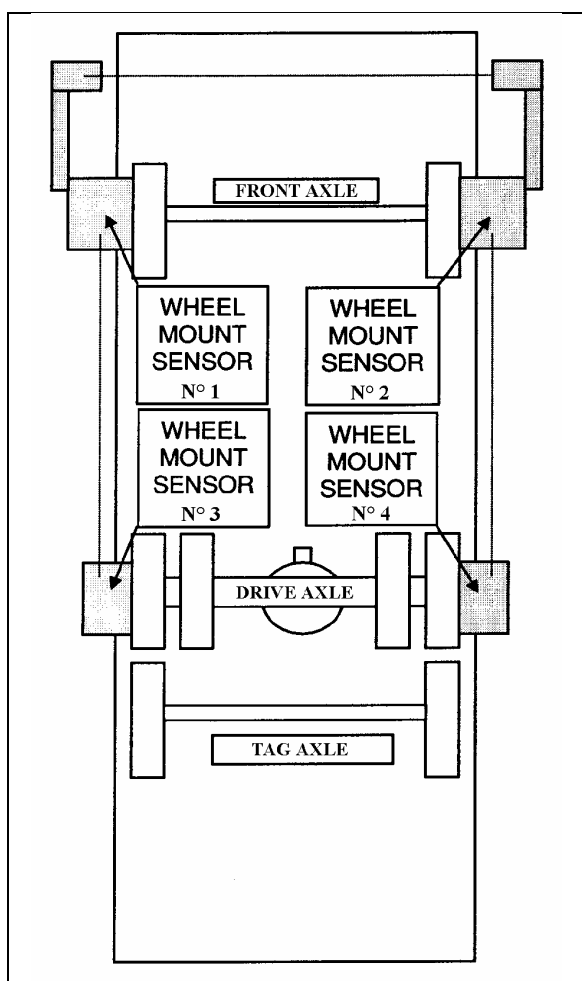


FIGURE 6: FRONT & DRIVE AXLE ALIGNMENT 11025

Note: Refer to Section 16, "Suspension", for proper torque tightening of the longitudinal radius rod support nuts.

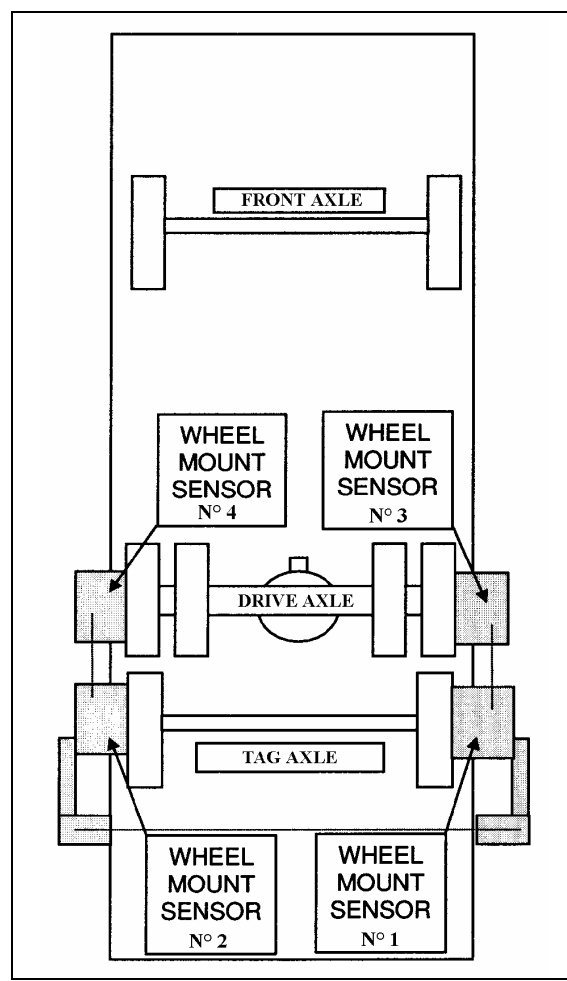


FIGURE 7: TAG AXLE ALIGNMENT 11026

Note (2): When the drive alignment is changed, the tag alignment must also be adjusted.

1.11 AXLE SHAFT SEALING METHOD

The following method is to be used to ensure that axle shaft installation is fluid-tight:

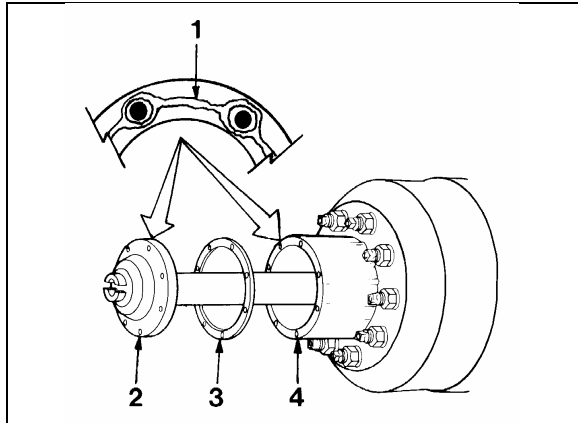


FIGURE 8: AXLE SHAFT INSTALLATION

11003

- 1..... Silicone sealant*
 2..... Axle shaft
 3..... Gasket
 4..... Wheel hub

1. Clean the mounting surfaces of both the axle shaft flange and wheel hub where silicone sealant will be applied. Remove all old silicone sealant, oil, grease, dirt and moisture. Dry both surfaces.
2. Apply a continuous thin bead of silicone sealant* (Prévost P/N 680053) on the mounting surfaces and around the edge of all fastener holes of both the axle shaft flange and wheel hub.

* GENERAL ELECTRIC Silicone Rubber Adhesive Sealant RTV 103 Black.

Warning: Carefully read cautions and instructions on the tube of silicone sealant and its packing.

3. Assemble components immediately to permit the silicone sealant to compress evenly between parts.
 - a. Place a new gasket, then install the axle shaft into the wheel hub and differential carrier. The gasket and flange of the axle shaft must fit flat against the wheel hub.
 - b. Install the tapered dowels at each stud and into the flange of the axle shaft.

Use a punch or drift and hammer if needed.

- c. Install the lock washers and nuts on the studs. Tighten nuts to the correct torque value.

Note: Torque values are for fasteners that have a light application of oil on the threads (refer to Meritor Maintenance Manual).

9/16-18 plain nut: 110 – 165 lbf-ft (149 – 224 Nm)

5/8-18 plain nut: 150 - 230 lbf-ft (203 - 312 Nm)

2. TAG AXLE

The tag axle is located behind the drive axle. It carries a single wheel and tire on each side. One optional system allows unloading of the tag axle air springs without raising the axle, while the other system enables unloading and raising of the tag axle (refer to the "OPERATOR'S MANUAL" for location of controls). Both these systems have been designed for the following purposes:

1. Shortening of wheelbase, thus allowing tighter turning in tight maneuvering areas such as parking lots or when making a sharp turn.
2. Transferring extra weight and additional traction to the drive wheels on slippery surfaces.

Caution: Never exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) with tag axle up or unloaded and resume normal driving as soon as possible.

The tag axle service brakes operate only when the axle is in normal driving (loaded) position.

2.1 GREASE LUBRICATED WHEEL BEARINGS

The unitized hub bearings used on the NDS range of axles, are non-serviceable items. Bearings are pre-adjusted, lubricated and have seals fitted as part of the manufacturing process. The bearings are greased for life and there is no need or facility for re-lubrication

Front and tag axle hub bearings need to be checked every 30,000 miles (48 000 km).

Section 11: REAR AXLES

Note: For more information on front and tag axle wheel hub, refer to "DANA SPICER Maintenance Manual Model NDS and Maintenance Manual NDS Axles" annexed at the end of Section 10.

2.2 REMOVAL AND REINSTALLATION

The following procedure deals with the removal of the tag axle assembly along with the suspension components. The method used to support the axle and suspension components during removal and disassembly depends upon local conditions and available equipment.

1. Raise vehicle by its jacking points on the body (fig. 4 or see Section 18, "Body" under heading: "Vehicle Jacking Points"). Place jack under frame. Remove drive axle wheels (if required, refer to Section 13, "Wheels, Hubs And Tires").
2. Exhaust compressed air from the air supply system by opening the drain cock on each air reservoir and deplete air bags by moving leveling valve arm down.
3. Install jacks under tag axle jacking points to support the axle weight (refer to figure 9).

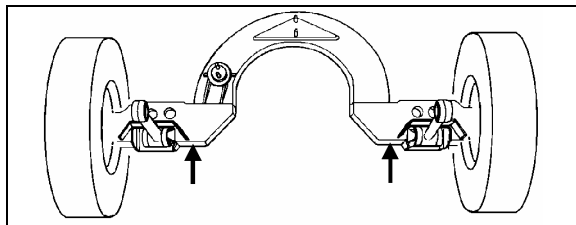


FIGURE 9: JACKING POINTS ON TAG AXLE

11023

4. Applies only to vehicles equipped with retractable tag axles: Disconnect tag axle lifting chain collars from lower longitudinal radius rods.
5. Remove the propeller shaft as directed in Section 9, "Propeller Shaft", in this manual.
6. Disconnect the tag axle brake chamber hoses.

Caution: Position the hoses so they will not be damaged when removing axle.

7. Disconnect hose from the air spring upper mounting plate.

8. Remove the two shock absorbers as outlined in Section 16, "Suspension", under "Shock Absorber Removal".
9. Disconnect the lower longitudinal radius rods as outlined in Section 16, "Suspension", under "Radius Rod Removal".
10. Disconnect the transversal radius rod.
11. Disconnect the upper longitudinal radius rod.
12. Remove the air bellows retaining nuts from each of the two upper mounting plates.
13. Use the jacks to move the axle forward to clear the axle off the transmission. Lower the axle.

Caution: On vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission (with or without the output retarder), move tag assembly very carefully. Pay special attention to the U-shaped section, as the transmission end components may be easily damaged through a false maneuver.

14. Reverse removal procedure to reinstall tag axle.

Note: Refer to Section 16, "Suspension", for proper torque tightening of suspension components.

Note: Refer to section 13 "Wheels, Hubs And Tires" for correct wheel bearing adjustment procedure.

2.3 TAG AXLE ALIGNMENT

The tag axle alignment consists in aligning the tag axle parallel to the drive axle position. Before aligning the tag axle, proceed with the drive axle alignment (paragraph 1.10). Tag axle alignment is achieved with the use of shims inserted between the lower longitudinal radius rod supports and axle. Tag axle alignment is factory set and is not subject to any change, except if vehicle has been damaged by an accident or if there are requirements for parts replacement.

Caution: If this setting is altered significantly, it will cause excessive tire wear.

Note: It may be necessary to adjust the axle TOE as well as its alignment. In this case, insert shims (7 min. - P/N 121203 or 15 min. - P/N 121240) in between mounting plate and spindle, as required.

necessary. However, if the suspension supports have been replaced or have changed position, proceed with the following instructions to verify or adjust the tag axle alignment.

If axle has been removed for repair or servicing and if all parts are reinstalled exactly in their previous locations, axle alignment is not

3. SPECIFICATIONS

Drive Axle

Make Meritor
 Drive track 76.7 inches (1 949 mm)
 Gear type Hypoid
 Axle type Full floating
 Lube capacity 41 pints (19,3 liters)

Drive axle ratio

World Transmission

4.88:1 Standard

4.56:1 Optional

Note: The drive axle alignment consists in aligning the axle with reference to the frame. The axle must be perpendicular to the frame.

Tag Axle

Make Prévost
 Rear track 83.6 inches (2 124 mm)
 Axle type Dana Spicer Europe TS8U Hub Unit

Note: The tag axle alignment consists in aligning the tag axle parallel to the drive axle.

SECTION 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

CONTENTS

1. AIR SYSTEM	12-5
2. BRAKES	12-5
3. AIR RESERVOIRS	12-5
3.1 MAINTENANCE	12-6
3.1.1 <i>Wet (Main) Air Tank</i>	12-6
3.1.2 <i>Primary Air Tank</i>	12-6
3.1.3 <i>Accessory Air Tank</i>	12-6
3.1.4 <i>Emergency/Parking Brake Override Air Tank</i>	12-6
3.1.5 <i>Secondary Air Tank</i>	12-6
3.1.6 <i>Kneeling Air Tank</i>	12-6
3.2 PING TANK	12-6
4. AIR SYSTEM EMERGENCY FILL VALVES.....	12-7
5. ACCESSORY AIR FILTER.....	12-7
5.1 FILTER ELEMENT REPLACEMENT	12-7
5.2 CLEANING	12-7
6. AIR GAUGES (PRIMARY, SECONDARY AND ACCESSORY).....	12-7
7. AIR FILTER/DRYER	12-8
7.1 AIR FILTER/DRYER PURGE TANK	12-8
8. AIR LINES.....	12-8
8.1 COPPER PIPING	12-8
8.2 FLEXIBLE HOSES.....	12-8
8.3 NYLON TUBING	12-9
8.4 AIR LINE OPERATING TEST	12-9
8.5 AIR LINE LEAKAGE TEST.....	12-9
8.6 MAINTENANCE	12-9
9. PRESSURE REGULATING VALVES.....	12-9
9.1 MAINTENANCE	12-9
9.2 PRESSURE SETTING PROCEDURE	12-10
10. AIR COMPRESSOR (BA-921)	12-10
10.1 COMPRESSOR REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION.....	12-10
11. EMERGENCY / PARKING BRAKE CONTROL VALVE (PP-1).....	12-11
12. EMERGENCY / PARKING BRAKE OVERRIDE CONTROL VALVE (RD-3).....	12-11
13. FLIP-FLOP CONTROL VALVE (TW-1)	12-11
14. DUAL BRAKE APPLICATION VALVE (E-10P)	12-11
14.1 BRAKE PEDAL ADJUSTMENT	12-12

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

14.1.1	Maintenance	12-12
15.	STOPLIGHT SWITCHES.....	12-12
16.	PARKING BRAKE ALARM SWITCH.....	12-12
17.	BRAKE RELAY VALVE (R-12 & R-12DC).....	12-12
18.	QUICK RELEASE VALVES (QR-1)	12-13
19.	SPRING BRAKE VALVE (SR-1).....	12-13
20.	PRESSURE PROTECTION VALVE (PR-2)	12-13
21.	LOW PRESSURE INDICATORS (LP-3)	12-14
22.	SHUTTLE-TYPE DOUBLE CHECK VALVE (DC-4).....	12-14
23.	EMERGENCY DOOR OPENING VALVES	12-14
23.1	INTERIOR VALVE MAINTENANCE	12-14
24.	AIR HORN VALVE.....	12-14
25.	AIR SYSTEM TROUBLESHOOTING	12-14
26.	BRAKE OPERATION	12-15
27.	AIR BRAKES.....	12-15
27.1	DISC BRAKE PADS	12-15
27.2	CALIPER MAINTENANCE	12-16
27.3	ROADSIDE INSPECTION FOR KNORR -BREMSE AIR DISC BRAKES	12-17
27.4	PAD REMOVAL	12-18
27.5	CHECKING PAD WEAR	12-18
27.6	IMPORTANT PAD AND ROTOR MEASUREMENTS	12-18
27.7	CHECKING CALIPER GUIDANCE AND SEAL CONDITION	12-18
27.8	CHECKING THE TAPPET BOOTS	12-19
27.9	PAD INSTALLATION	12-19
27.10	ADJUSTING THE RUNNING CLEARANCE	12-20
27.11	BRAKE TOOLS	12-20
27.12	TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS.....	12-20
28.	SAFE SERVICE PROCEDURES	12-20
29.	AIR BRAKE TROUBLESHOOTING	12-21
30.	BRAKE AIR CHAMBER.....	12-24
30.1	MAINTENANCE	12-24
30.2	EMERGENCY/PARKING BRAKE MANUAL RELEASE	12-25
30.3	BRAKE CHAMBER REMOVAL	12-25
30.4	BRAKE CHAMBER INSTALLATION	12-25
30.5	BRAKE CHAMBER DISASSEMBLY.....	12-25

31. ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)	12-26
31.1 TROUBLESHOOTING AND TESTING	12-26
31.2 ABS COMPONENTS	12-28
31.2.1 <i>Electronic Control Unit (ECU)</i>	12-28
31.2.2 <i>ABS Modulator Valve</i>	12-28
31.2.3 <i>Sensors</i>	12-28
31.2.4 <i>Spring clip</i>	12-29
32. FITTING TIGHTENING TORQUES	12-29
33. SPECIFICATIONS	12-30

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: AIR RESERVOIRS LOCATION	12-5
FIGURE 2: REAR VALVE LOCATION	12-6
FIGURE 3: FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT	12-6
FIGURE 4: ACCESSORY AIR FILTER	12-7
FIGURE 5: HALDEX AIR FILTER DRYER	12-8
FIGURE 6: AIR PRESSURE REGULATING VALVE	12-9
FIGURE 7: AIR PRESSURE REGULATOR	12-10
FIGURE 8: AIR COMPRESSOR INSTALLATION	12-10
FIGURE 9: PP-1	12-11
FIGURE 10: RD-3	12-11
FIGURE 11: TW-1	12-11
FIGURE 12: BRAKE PEDAL ADJUSTMENT	12-12
FIGURE 13: DELCO SWITCH	12-12
FIGURE 14: BENDIX SWITCH	12-12
FIGURE 15: R-12	12-13
FIGURE 16: QR-1	12-13
FIGURE 17: SR-1	12-13
FIGURE 18: PR-2	12-13
FIGURE 19: LP-3	12-14
FIGURE 20: DC-4	12-14
FIGURE 21: THREE WAY VALVE	12-14
FIGURE 22: BRAKE PAD CHECK	12-16
FIGURE 23: CLEARANCE INSPECTION	12-16
FIGURE 24: RUNNING CLEARANCE	12-16
FIGURE 25: ADJUSTER PINION	12-17
FIGURE 26: BOX WRENCH ON ADJUSTER PINION	12-17
FIGURE 27: CALIPER AXIAL MOVEMENT	12-17
FIGURE 28: RADIAL MOVEMENT INSPECTION	12-17
FIGURE 29: BRAKE PAD CHECK	12-18
FIGURE 30: PAD REMOVAL	12-18
FIGURE 31: PAD WEAR	12-18
FIGURE 32: ROTOR AND PAD WEAR LIMITS	12-18
FIGURE 33: CALIPER GUIDANCE	12-19
FIGURE 34: RUBBER BOOTS	12-19
FIGURE 35: PAD INSTALLATION	12-19
FIGURE 36: RUNNING CLEARANCE	12-20
FIGURE 37: TORQUE SPECIFICATION	12-20
FIGURE 38: TORQUE SPECIFICATION	12-20

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

FIGURE 39: AIR-OPERATED BRAKING SYSTEM H3.....	12-22
FIGURE 40: I-BEAM FRONT AXLE BRAKE AIR CHAMBER	12-24
FIGURE 41: TAG AXLE OR DRIVE AXLE BRAKE AIR CHAMBER	12-24
FIGURE 42: ABS 4S/4M CONFIGURATION	12-27
FIGURE 43: FIRST L.H. BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT	12-28
FIGURE 44: ABS MODULATOR VALVE	12-28
FIGURE 45: ABS SENSOR LOCATION.....	12-29
FIGURE 46: SPRING CLIP	12-29
FIGURE 47: HOSE FITTINGS	12-29
FIGURE 48: HOSE FITTING	12-30
FIGURE 49: HOSE FITTING	12-30

1. AIR SYSTEM

The basic air system consists of an air compressor, reservoirs, valves, filters and interconnecting lines and hoses. It provides a means for breaking, operating controls and accessories, and suspension (refer to Section 16, "Suspension", for complete information on suspension description and maintenance). An air system schematic diagram is annexed in the technical publications box provided with the vehicle for better understanding of the system.

2. BRAKES

This vehicle uses both the service brake and emergency/parking brake. The service brake air system is divided into two independent circuits to isolate front brakes from rear brakes, thus providing safe breaking in the event that one circuit fails. Front axle brakes operate from the secondary air system, while brakes on both the drive axle and tag axle operate from the primary air system.

Note: The tag axle service brake operates only when the axle is in normal ride position (loaded and down).

Furthermore, the brake application or release, which is speed up by pneumatic relay valves (R-12 & R-12DC), will start with the rear axles and will be followed by the front axle, thus providing uniform braking on a slippery road. The vehicle is also equipped with an Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS), which is detailed later in this section.

The drive and tag axles are provided with spring-loaded emergency/parking brakes, which are applied automatically whenever the control valve supply pressure drops below 40 psi (275 kPa). The optional emergency/parking brake overrule system allows the driver to release spring brakes, and to move the vehicle to a safe parking place, such as in the case of a self-application of these brakes due to a drop in air pressure.

3. AIR RESERVOIRS

The air coming from the air dryer is first forwarded to the wet air tank, then to the primary (for the primary brake system), secondary (for the secondary brake system), and accessory (for the pneumatic accessories) air tanks (Fig. 1).

Two additional air reservoirs may be installed on the vehicle: the kneeling air tank and emergency/ parking brake overrule air tank.

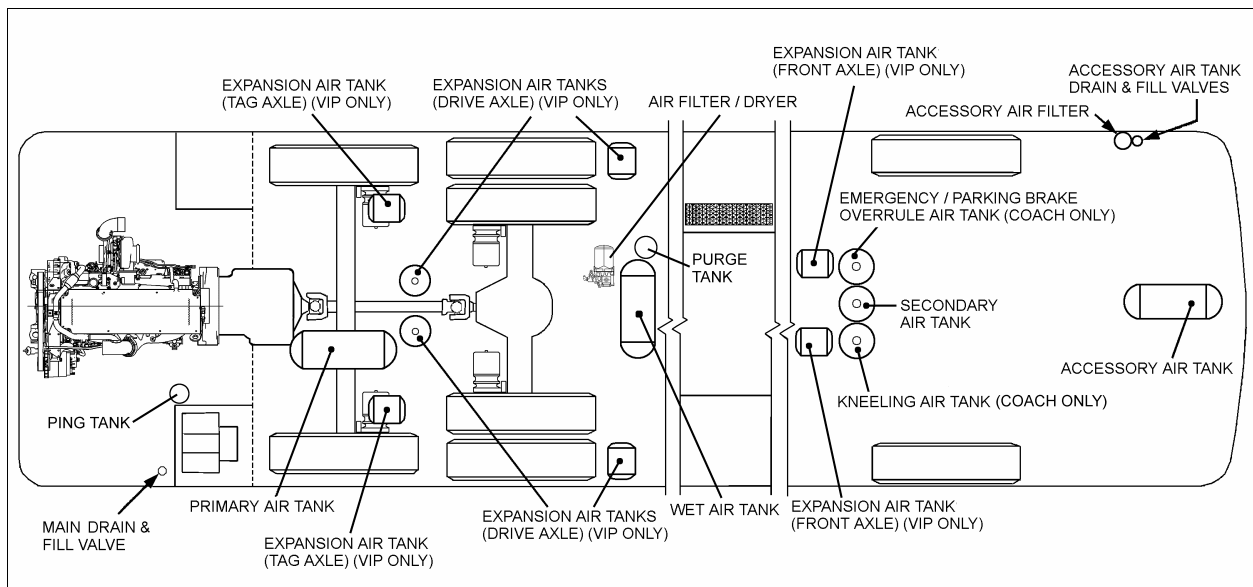


FIGURE 1: AIR RESERVOIRS LOCATION

12196

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

3.1 MAINTENANCE

Ensure that both the accessories and the wet (main) air tanks are purged during pre-starting inspection. In addition, it is good practice to purge these reservoirs at the end of every working day. The remaining reservoirs must be purged at every 12,000 miles (or 20 000 km) or once every year, whichever comes first.

3.1.1 Wet (Main) Air Tank

This reservoir, located in front and above the drive axle in the rear wheelhousing, is provided with a bottom drain valve. A recommended purge using the bottom drain valve should be done every 12,000 miles (20 000 km), or once a year, whichever comes first. Purge daily using the drain valve located in the engine compartment R.H. side (Fig. 2).

3.1.2 Primary Air Tank

This reservoir is located above the tag axle, and is provided with a bottom drain valve (Fig. 1). It is recommended to purge the primary air tank every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

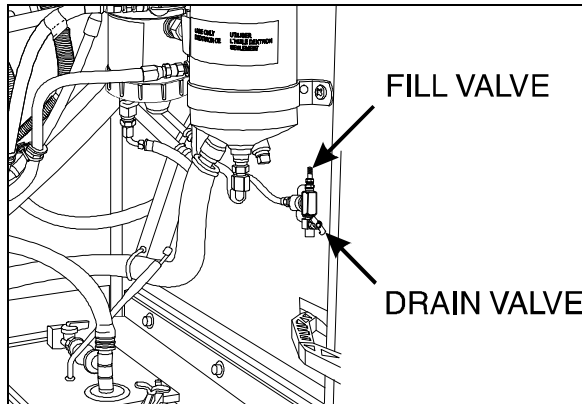


FIGURE 2: REAR VALVE LOCATION

12148

3.1.3 Accessory Air Tank

The accessory air tank is installed at the ceiling of spare wheel compartment and is provided with a bottom drain valve (Fig. 1). Purge daily using the remote drain valve located in the front service compartment (Fig. 3). Purge the reservoir by its drain valve every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

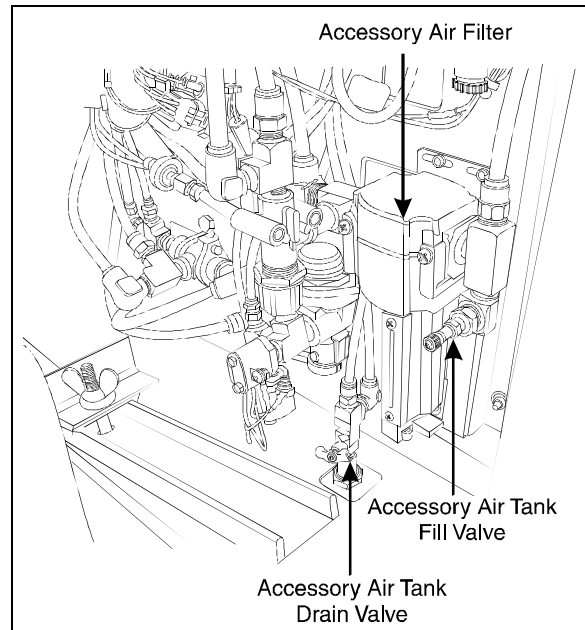


FIGURE 3: FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT

12130

3.1.4 Emergency/Parking Brake Override Air Tank

Installed on vehicles equipped with this option, this reservoir is located in the front wheelhousing (Fig. 1). It is provided with a bottom drain valve.

Purge this reservoir every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

3.1.5 Secondary Air Tank

Located in the front wheelhousing, this tank is set between the optional Emergency/Parking Brake override air tank and the Kneeling air tank (Fig. 1). It is provided with a bottom drain valve.

Purge this reservoir every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

3.1.6 Kneeling Air Tank

The kneeling air tank is installed on vehicles equipped with the Kneeling or Hi/Low-Buoy options. It is located in the front wheelhousing (Fig. 1), and is provided with a bottom drain valve. Purge this reservoir every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

3.2 PING TANK

The ping tank is located in the engine compartment and is accessible through the engine compartment R.H. side door. It is used to

dissipate heat and to reduce noise produced by the air compressor cycling on and off.

4. AIR SYSTEM EMERGENCY FILL VALVES

All vehicles come equipped with two emergency fill valves that enable system pressurization by an external source such as an air compressor. The rear valve is located in the engine compartment and is accessible from engine compartment R.H. side door (Fig 2.).

Caution: Maximum allowable air pressure is 140 psi (965 kPa). Air filled through these two points will pass through the standard air filtering system provided by Prevost. Do not fill system by any other point on the system.

The front valve is located in the front electrical and service compartment close to R.H. side of doorframe (Fig. 3).

These two air system emergency fill valves are fitted with the same valve stems as standard tires, and can be filled by any standard external air supply line.

The rear air system emergency fill valve will supply air for all systems (brakes, suspension and accessories) while the front fill valve will supply air to accessories only.

5. ACCESSORY AIR FILTER

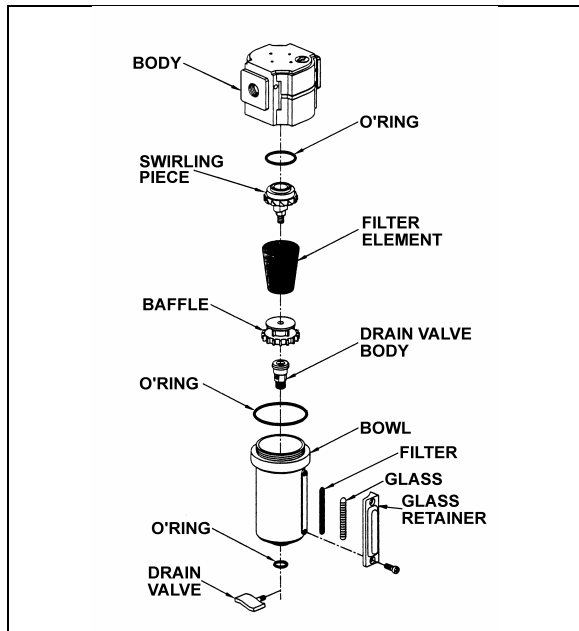


FIGURE 4: ACCESSORY AIR FILTER

12088

This filter is located inside the front electrical and service compartment (Fig. 3). Its main function consists in filtering the air supplied to the accessory air system, when connected to an external supply line. Ensure filter is purged whenever supplying the system with an external air line and at least every 12,500 miles (20 000 km).

To purge, open drain valve (Fig. 4) let the moisture come out, then close the drain valve.

5.1 FILTER ELEMENT REPLACEMENT

Replace filter element whichever of the following occurs first: every 100,000 miles (160 000 km), every two years, or whenever differential pressure exceeds 15 psi (105 kPa) between filter inlet and outlet ports. Check condition of all three O-rings for damage. Replace when necessary (Fig. 4).

5.2 CLEANING

Clean filter body and bowl with a warm water and soap solution. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Blow dry with compressed air making sure the air stream is moisture free and clean. Pay particular attention to the internal passages. Inspect all parts for damage and replace if necessary.

6. AIR GAUGES (PRIMARY, SECONDARY AND ACCESSORY)

The air pressure gauges, located on the dashboard (see "Operator's Manual" or "Owner's Manual"), are connected to the DC-4 double check valve, located on the pneumatic accessories panel in the front service compartment.

The latter is connected to the air lines running from the primary and secondary air tanks, as shown on the pneumatic system diagram provided in the technical publication box. The vehicle should never be set in motion until the buzzer alarm and warning lights turn off, i.e. when air pressure registers at least 66 psi (455 kPa). Moreover, if pressure drops below 66 psi (455 kPa), the "Low air pressure" warning lights will turn on, and the "Low air pressure" buzzer will sound. Stop the vehicle immediately, determine and correct the cause(s) of pressure loss. Check the gauges regularly with an

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

accurate test gauge. Replace the gauge with a new unit if there is a difference of 4 psi (27 kPa) or more in the reading.

7. AIR FILTER/DRYER

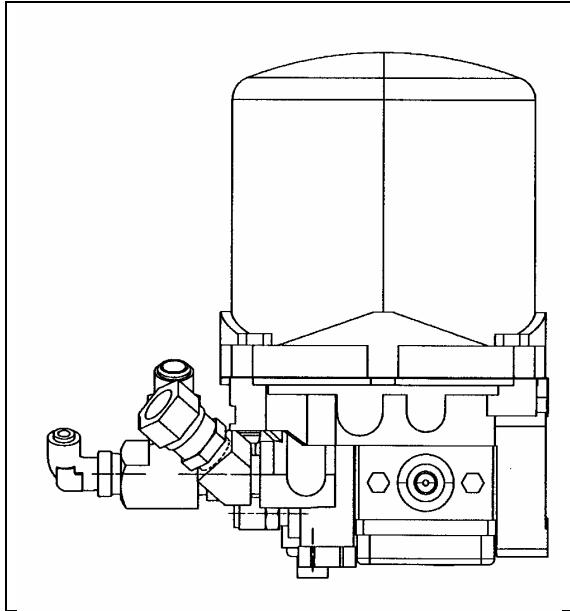


FIGURE 5: HALDEX AIR FILTER DRYER

12194

The air filter/dryer is located in front of rear wheelhousing above drive axle (Fig. 1 & 5). Its purpose is to remove moisture that could damage the air system before the air enters the system reservoir. The air filter/dryer also filters the air to remove dirt, compressor oil, and other contaminants that can damage the system. Change cartridge every 100,000 miles (160 000 km) or once every two years, whichever comes first. The air dryer may be purged for maintenance purposes using the remote drain valve located in the engine compartment and accessible through the engine compartment R.H. side door. The valve is positioned close to the door hinge (Fig. 2). The air filter/dryer has a built-in governor to maintain the system between 108 and 123 psig.

Maintenance and repair information is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section.

7.1 AIR FILTER/DRYER PURGE TANK

A tank is supplied to purge the air filter/dryer to remove moisture and contaminants.

8. AIR LINES

Copper piping, nylon-reinforced tubing, and flexible hoses are used to connect the units in the pneumatic system, including air brake system, suspension system and accessory systems such as the entrance door, air horns, etc. Furthermore, the nylon tubing is color coded to ease identification. Refer to the following table for the complete color identification code. Service instructions for each type of air line are also provided under the applicable headings.

Color	Circuit
Red	Secondary
Green	Primary and Delivery
Yellow	Parking Brake
Blue	Suspension
Black	Accessory
Brown	Trailer Brake

8.1 COPPER PIPING

A heat dissipation copper piping assembly is used to dissipate the heat coming from the compressor before it enters the air filter/dryer. Connections should be checked for leakage at least every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) or twice a year, whichever comes first. Tighten or replace when necessary. When replacing copper piping, the parts must be free of burrs, copper cuttings, and dirt. Blow out piping with compressed air. Any such particles will destroy sealing seats in air control units. Also, new piping must be the same size as the old one.

8.2 FLEXIBLE HOSES

A flexible hose is used normally where it is impractical to use copper or nylon tubing due to constant flexing during operation, such as brake chamber hoses or belt tensioner air cylinder hoses. Hose connections should be tested for leakage at least every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) or twice a year, whichever comes first and tightened or replaced if necessary. Any hose, which is chafed, worn or kinked, should be replaced.

Teflon-braided stainless steel hoses used in the engine compartment must be replaced only with similar hoses.

8.3 NYLON TUBING

Nylon tubing is used for air lines in areas where usage of this material is suitable. Nylon tubing is flexible, durable, and weather resistant. When replacing an air line, use nylon tubing only where it has been used previously.

Nylon air lines must never be routed in areas where temperature could exceed 200°F (93°C).

Caution: Nylon air lines should be used to replace existing nylon lines only, and must comply with the color identification code to ease pneumatic system troubleshooting.

8.4 AIR LINE OPERATING TEST

If any trouble symptom such as slow brake application or slow brake release indicates a restricted or clogged air line, disconnect the suspected tube or hose at both ends and blow through it to clear the passage.

Inspect tubing and hose for partial restriction that may be caused by dents or kinks. If such a condition is found, the tubing or hose should be replaced.

8.5 AIR LINE LEAKAGE TEST

With air system fully charged and the brakes applied, coat all tubing and hose connections with a soapy solution to check for air leakage. No leakage is permitted. Leakage can sometimes be corrected by tightening the connection. If this fails to correct the leakage, new fittings, nylon tubing, copper tubing, teflon-braided stainless steel and flexible hoses must be installed as applicable.

8.6 MAINTENANCE

Inspect all lines for cuts, swelling, kinks or other damage or deterioration. Check for lines being pinched by other components. Retaining clips and ties must be in place.

Any support or bracket should be in good condition and mounted firmly in position. Hose spring guards should be in usable condition and not distorted. Particular attention should be given to long lines. Any supporting component (clips, ties, grommets, etc.) must be secured to prevent against unnecessary vibration and eventual loosening of connection. Any detected leak should be repaired. Be sure nylon lines are not near areas of intense heat. Check for any missing grommets or loose material where

chafing or cutting may occur. Replace with new material as required. In general, lines should be securely located in position and free from any binding condition, which would hinder air flow.

9. PRESSURE REGULATING VALVES

There is one pressure regulator for the belt tensioners, and an optional one installed on vehicles equipped with the world transmission output retarder.

The belt tensioner pressure regulating valve is located in the engine compartment at the back of the engine starting control panel. It is used to limit the air pressure in belt tensioners to 45 ± 2 psi (310 ± 15 kPa) (Fig. 7).

The optional regulator is located in the engine compartment and is accessible through the engine R.H. side door. It is used for transmission retarder and should be adjusted to 80 ± 3 psi (550 ± 20 kPa).

	Air Pressure (psi)	Air Pressure (kPa)
Belt Tensioner	45 ± 2	310 ± 15
Retarder	80 ± 3	550 ± 20

9.1 MAINTENANCE

Every 100,000 miles (160 000 km) or once every two years, whichever comes first, disassemble the pressure regulating valve and wash all metal parts in a cleaning solvent (Fig. 6). Examine the diaphragm; if cracked, worn or damaged, replace with a new one. If the valve is excessively grooved or pitted, it should be replaced. Replace any other part that appears worn or damaged. After reassembly, adjust to the specified pressure setting and check for air leakage.

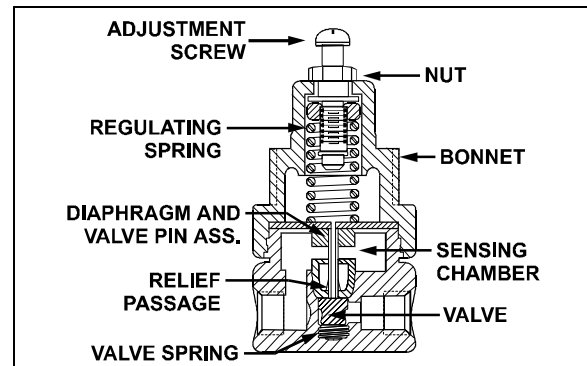


FIGURE 6: AIR PRESSURE REGULATING VALVE 12141A

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

9.2 PRESSURE SETTING PROCEDURE

Remove the dust cap from the pressure check port (Fig. 7). Attach a pressure gauge at this port and check the pressure reading. If the pressure reading is incorrect, adjust as follows:

1. Loosen the locking nut, turn the adjustment screw counterclockwise to decrease pressure by approximately 10 psi (70 kPa) below the required pressure.
2. Turn the adjustment screw clockwise to increase the pressure slowly until the required pressure setting is reached. Tighten the locking nut.
3. Remove pressure gauge and replace dust cap on the pressure check port.

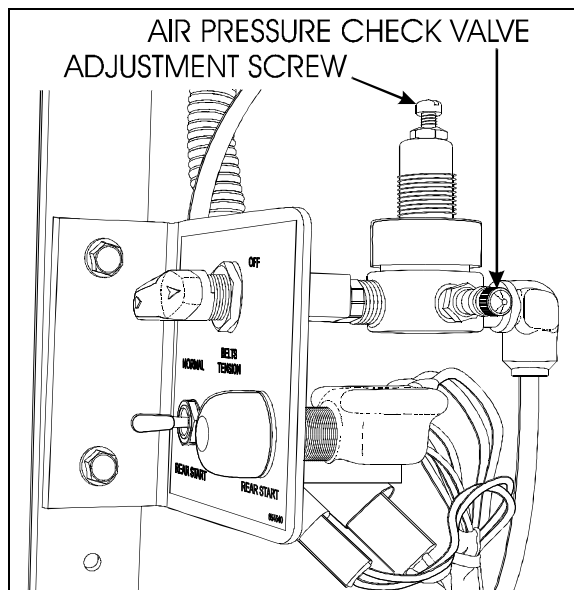


FIGURE 7: AIR PRESSURE REGULATOR

12143

10. AIR COMPRESSOR (BA-921)

The air compressor is located on starter side of the engine, on the rear of the engine gear case (Fig. 8). Its function is to provide and maintain air under pressure to operate devices in brake and air systems.

This air compressor also drives the engine fuel pump, which is bolted to the rear end of the compressor. The compressor crankshaft is designed to accept a drive coupling which is placed between the compressor and fuel pump.

The compressor is driven by the bull gear, and is water cooled. Engine coolant is fed to the compressor through a flexible hose tapped into

the block water jacket and connected to the rear of the compressor. Coolant returns from the top of the compressor (fuel pump side) through a flexible hose to the engine pump.

The air is taken from the air intake manifold and entered in the top of the compressor. The compressed air is pushed into the discharge line located on side of the compressor, which sends air to the air dryer. Lubricating oil is supplied to the compressor by a line from the cylinder block oil gallery connected to the air compressor. Lubricating oil returns to the engine crankcase through the air compressor drive assembly.

Maintenance and repair information on the Bendix BA-921 air compressor is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-01-676.

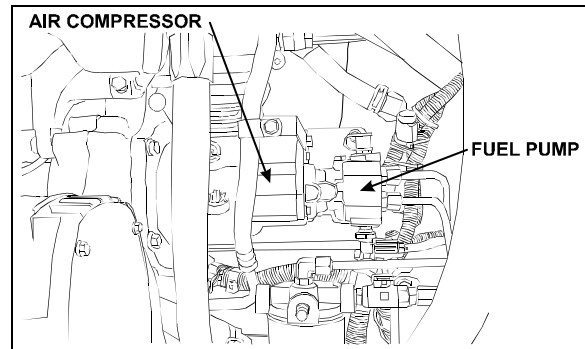


FIGURE 8: AIR COMPRESSOR INSTALLATION

03053

10.1 COMPRESSOR REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

1. Exhaust compressed air from air system by opening the drain valve of each air tank.
2. Drain the engine cooling system. See Section 5: "Cooling System".
3. Identify and disconnect all air, coolant and oil lines from the compressor assembly.
4. Access the compressor by the engine R.H. side compartment. Remove the four compressor mounting bolts and the two fuel pump support bracket bolts.
5. Slide air compressor rearward to disengage the hub from coupling. Remove the air compressor.

Reverse removal procedure for installation.

11. EMERGENCY / PARKING BRAKE CONTROL VALVE (PP-1)

A push-pull control valve mounted on the L.H. lateral console is provided for parking brake application or release. The spring brakes are self-actuated whenever the control valve supply pressure drops below 40 psi (275 kPa). In the UP position, brakes are ON. In the DOWN position, brakes are RELEASED. A protective case around the knob prevents accidentally releasing the brakes.

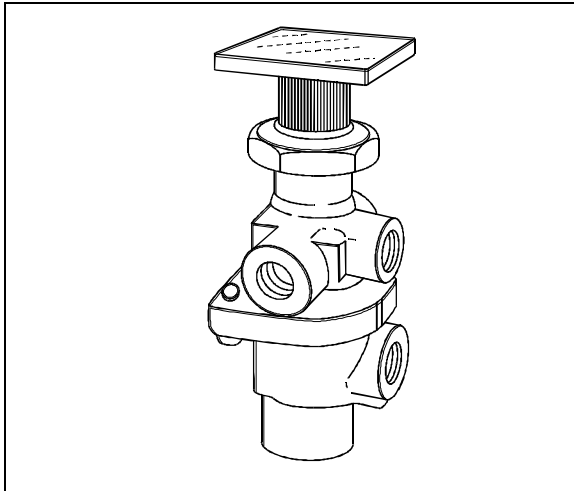


FIGURE 9: PP-1

Maintenance and repair information on this valve is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-03-3611.

Remove the valve the following way:

1. Drain the air system.
2. Access this valve by tearing out the finishing panel, which holds the controls in place (Fig. 9).
3. Disconnect the air tubes.
4. Remove the retaining screws.
5. Service or replace the valve.
6. Installation is the reverse of removal.

12. EMERGENCY / PARKING BRAKE OVERRULE CONTROL VALVE (RD-3)

A RD-3 control valve is used with the optional parking brake overrule system. In the case of self-application of spring brakes due to a pressure drop, the brakes can be released by

holding down this control valve. Maintenance and repair information on this valve is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-03-3611.

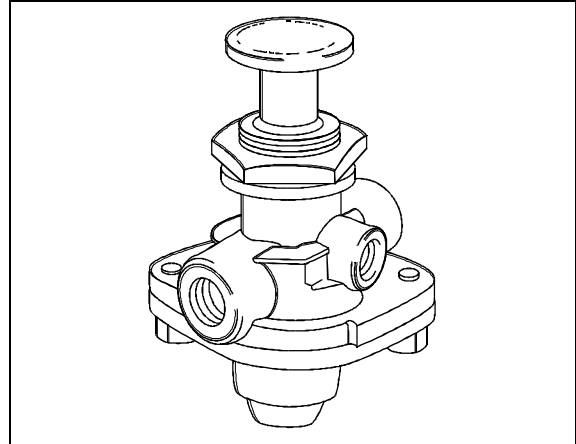


FIGURE 10: RD-3

13. FLIP-FLOP CONTROL VALVE (TW-1)

A flip-flop control valve mounted on the L.H. lateral console is provided to unload tag axle air springs (and to lift tag axle if vehicle is so equipped). Another one controls the low-buoy system (coaches only). It is a manually operated "on-off" valve. Maintenance and repair information on this valve is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-03-3602.

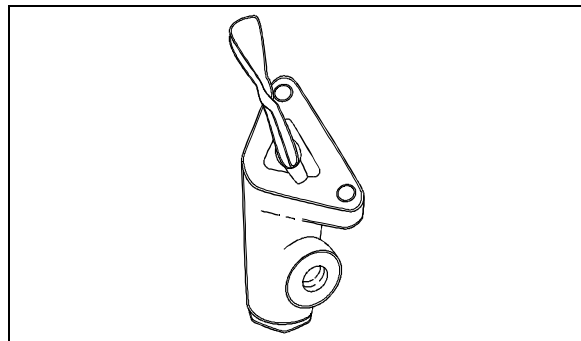


FIGURE 11: TW-1

14. DUAL BRAKE APPLICATION VALVE (E-10P)

The E-10P dual brake valve is a floor mounted, foot-operated type brake valve with two separate supply and delivery circuits. This valve is located in the front service compartment (Fig. 12).

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

14.1 BRAKE PEDAL ADJUSTMENT

After brake pedal replacement or repair, adjust the pedal to its proper position according to the following procedure:

1. Replace the linkage, loosen threaded rod lock nuts and screw or unscrew the threaded adjustment rod in order to obtain a 45° brake pedal inclination (Fig. 12).
2. Tighten threaded rod lock nuts.

14.1.1 Maintenance

Maintenance and repair information on the E-10P dual brake application valve is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-03-830.

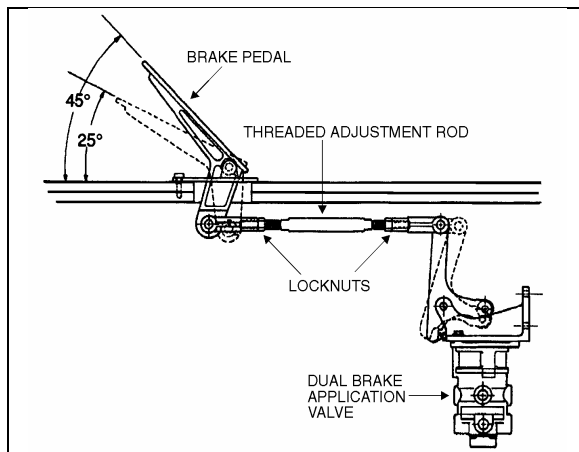


FIGURE 12: BRAKE PEDAL ADJUSTMENT

12040

15. STOPLIGHT SWITCHES

Two Electro-pneumatic stoplight switches are mounted on the dual brake application valve (E-10P). The upper one is used for the primary air circuit while the lower one is used for the secondary air circuit. Both switches are connected in parallel and have the same purpose, i.e. completing the electrical circuit and lighting the stoplights when a brake application is made. The upper switch (AC Delco) is designed to close its contact between 2 psi and 4 psi (14 kPa to 28 kPa) (Fig. 13), while the lower one (Bendix, SL-5) closes its contact at 4 psi (28 kPa) (Fig. 14). The switches are not serviceable items; if found defective, the complete unit must be replaced.

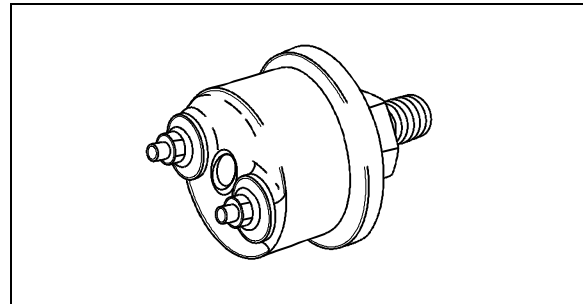


FIGURE 13: DELCO SWITCH

12139

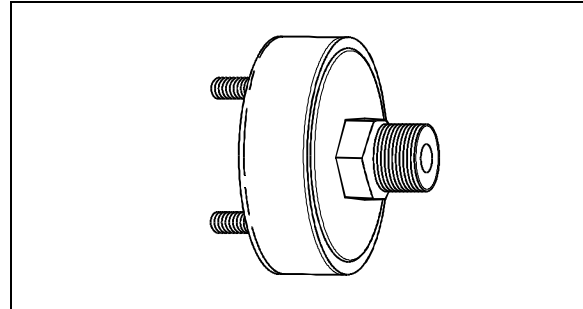


FIGURE 14: BENDIX SWITCH

12140

16. PARKING BRAKE ALARM SWITCH

Refer to the appropriate annexed booklet (Bendix, SL-5 Stop Light Switch; reference no. SD-06-2501).

The parking brake alarm uses the same switch as the stoplights. It is mounted on the spring brake valve and operates in conjunction with a NC relay to sound a warning alarm by completing the electrical circuit when the ignition key is turned OFF with parking brake released.

17. BRAKE RELAY VALVE (R-12 & R-12DC)

The primary air system includes three brake relay valves being supplied by the dual brake valve, and which function is to speed up the application and release of the service brakes.

One R-12DC valve supplies the drive axle service brake air line, while the other two valves supply independently both the tag axle right and left service brake air line and act as interlock valves. These valves are accessible from under the vehicle at the level of the tag axle. Maintenance and repair information on these valves is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-03-1064 and SD-03-1068.

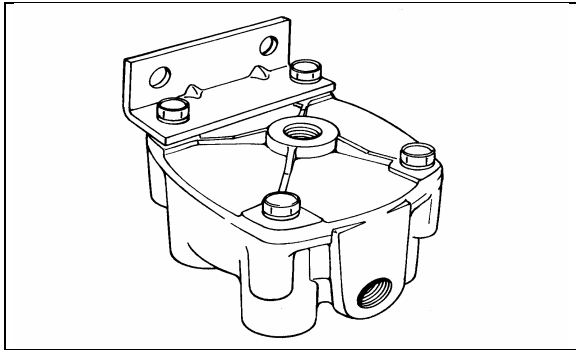


FIGURE 15: R-12

12074

18. QUICK RELEASE VALVES (QR-1)

One quick release valve is installed on this vehicle and is located on the front axle service brakes air line. It is also used on Low Buoy rear release system. It permits rapid exhaust of air pressure from brakes, thus decreasing the brake release time.

Maintenance and repair information on these valves is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-03-901.

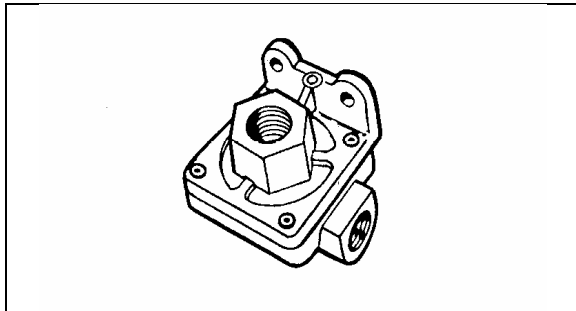


FIGURE 16: QR-1

12075

19. SPRING BRAKE VALVE (SR-1)

The spring brake valve is located at ceiling of front bumper compartment. The function of the SR-1 is to modulate the spring brakes during the application of the foot brake valve in the event of loss of service brake pressure. Maintenance and repair information on the spring brake valve is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-03-4508.

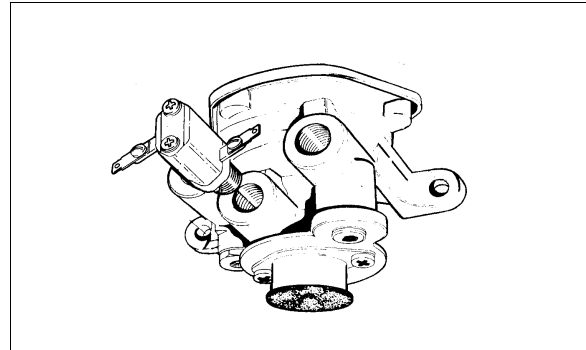


FIGURE 17: SR-1

12076

20. PRESSURE PROTECTION VALVE (PR-2)

Maintenance and repair information on the pressure protection valve is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-03-2010.

The air system includes two pressure protection valves (Fig. 18). One valve is installed on the manifold block, and insures at all times a minimum pressure of 75 psi (517 kPa) in the suspension air system in the event that a pressure drop occurs in either the suspension air system or accessory air system. This valve is located in the front service compartment besides the air filter.

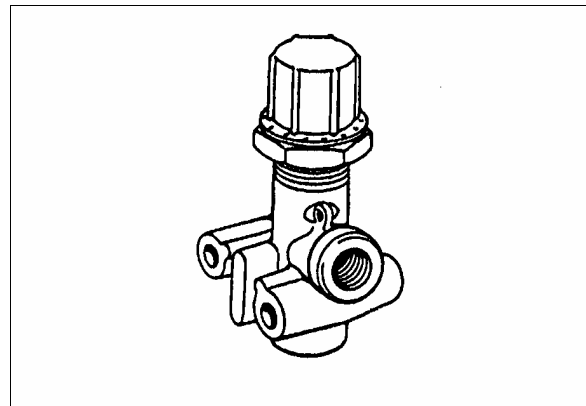


FIGURE 18: PR-2

12077

The other valve is installed on the accessory air tank, and insures a minimum pressure of 75 psi (517 kPa) in the accessory air system in the event that a pressure drop occurs in either the suspension air system or braking air system (refer to Fig. 1 for accessory air tank location).

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

21. LOW PRESSURE INDICATORS (LP-3)

Maintenance and repair information on the low pressure indicators is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-06-1600.

The air system includes two low pressure switches. One is located on the pneumatic accessories panel in the front service compartment. The remaining pressure switch is mounted on the spring brake valve, and monitors the parking brake pilot lamp. Its pressure setting is 30 psi (205 kPa).

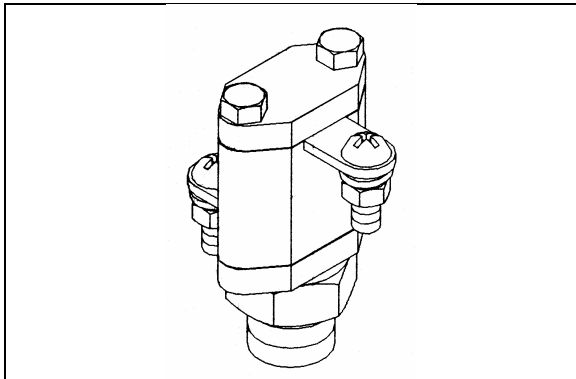


FIGURE 19: LP-3

12078

22. SHUTTLE-TYPE DOUBLE CHECK VALVE (DC-4)

Maintenance and repair information on the shuttle-type double check valve is supplied in the applicable booklet annexed to this section under reference number SD-03-2202.

The double check valve is located on the pneumatic accessories panel in the front service compartment. In the event of a pressure drop in either the primary or secondary system, this unit will protect the emergency /parking brake control valve and the intact portion of the air system from pressure loss.

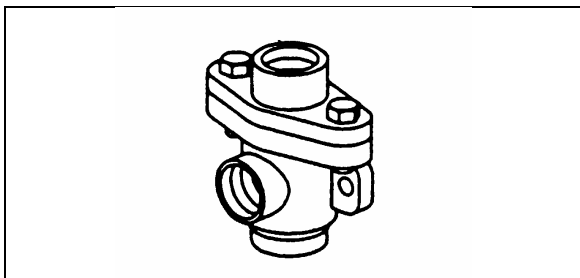


FIGURE 20: DC-4

12134

23. EMERGENCY DOOR OPENING VALVES

Two emergency door opening three-way valves are installed on coaches. One is in the front service compartment, readily accessible. The other one is on the R.H. side lateral console, close to the entrance door. When used, the valve releases pressure in the door locking cylinder, thus allowing the door to be manually opened.

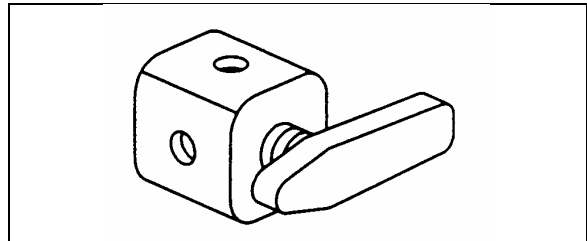


FIGURE 21: THREE WAY VALVE

12186

23.1 INTERIOR VALVE MAINTENANCE

When needed, this valve can be changed according to the following procedure:

1. Unscrew the front R.H. decorative panel in order to access the valve.
2. Unscrew and remove the valve handle.
3. Unscrew and remove the valve retaining ring.
4. Push the valve inside the console.
5. Disconnect the air tubes.
6. Reverse the procedure to install a new valve.

24. AIR HORN VALVE

The air horn solenoid valve is located in the front service compartment. The air horn activating button is on the center of the steering wheel. Refer to section 23 "ACCESSORIES" for more information.

25. AIR SYSTEM TROUBLESHOOTING

The following list has been designed to help in troubleshooting some of the most common problems in the air system and main causes. For air brakes troubleshooting, refer to "Air Brakes Troubleshooting" in this section. For more troubleshooting information, refer to the manufacturer's brochures annexed to this section.

Air pressure doesn't rise to, or doesn't maintain, a normal setting:

- Defective air gauge (registering incorrectly).
- Excessive leaking in air system.
- Reservoir drain cock open.
- Air filter/dryer built-in governor poorly adjusted or defective.
- Defective compressor.
- Worn compressor or excessive wear on piston and/or ring.

Air pressure rises to normal setting too slowly:

- Excessive leaking in air system.
- Clogged engine air cleaner.
- Worn compressor or excessive wear on piston and/or ring.
- Engine speed too low.

Air pressure rises above a normal setting:

- Defective air gauge (registering incorrectly).
- Air filter/dryer built-in governor poorly adjusted or defective.

Air pressure drops quickly when engine is stopped:

- Leaks in compressor discharge valve.
- Leaks in air lines.
- Leaks in air system valves.

26. BRAKE OPERATION

The vehicle braking system uses both service and parking air-operated brakes. The air system is divided into two independent circuits to isolate the front axle brakes and the rear axle brakes (drive and tag), thus providing safe brake operation in the event that one circuit of the system fails. The primary circuit is connected to the drive and tag axle brakes, while the secondary circuit is connected to the front axle brakes. The tag axle service brakes operate only when the axle is in the normal driving (loaded) position. The spring-type emergency brakes are mounted on the drive and tag axles, and will apply automatically if primary system pressure falls below 40 psi (276 kPa). The optional parking brake override system can cancel the parking brakes, enabling

the driver to move the vehicle to a safe parking place. To operate this system, push down and hold the control knob located on the R.H. side of the driver's seat (see *"Operator's Manual"* for more details).

Furthermore, brake application or release, which is sped up by a pneumatic relay valve (R-12 & R-12DC), will start with the rear axles and be followed by the front axle, thus providing uniform braking on a slippery surface. The vehicle is also equipped with an Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), detailed later in this section.

Brake and air system maintenance consists of periodic inspections. Check all parts for damage and brake adjustment (refer to subsequent headings in this section for more details). Ensure all fasteners are tight (refer to *"Specifications"* for recommended tightening torques).

27. AIR BRAKES

Knorr-Bremse SB7000 disc brakes are used on all axles. The front and drive axle discs are actuated by 24 inch² effective area air brake chambers (22 inch² for front solid beam axle), while on tag axle, the brake chambers have a 14 inch² effective area for service brake and a 16 inch² effective area for emergency/parking brakes. The *Knorr-Bremse SB7000* brakes are supplied with automatic clearance (slack) adjusters as standard equipment for easier adjustment. For more information on disc brake components and maintenance, refer to the manufacturer's brochure at the end of this section.

27.1 DISC BRAKE PADS

Brake pads have to be checked on a regular basis depending on the vehicle operation. The remaining thickness of the pads should never be less than 3/32 in (2 mm). To check pad condition without removing the wheel, verify the position of guide bushing (6) relatively to guide sleeve (4) (see Fig. 23). When guide sleeve is in alignment with guide bushing, brake pad thickness has to be checked more precisely with the wheel removed. When replacing brake pads, all four pads on an axle have to be changed at the same time. There is no inner or outer pad, since all pads are the same. Once removed, worn pads should be replaced in their original position.

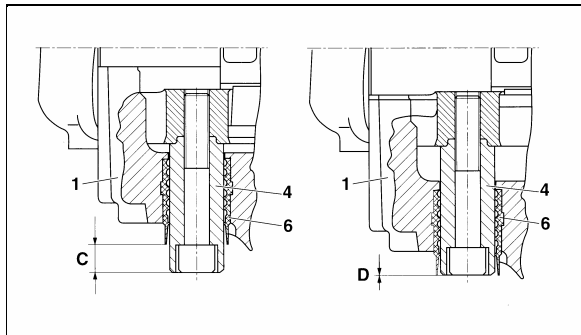


FIGURE 22: BRAKE PAD CHECK

12117

27.2 CALIPER MAINTENANCE

Use the following procedure for brake calipers servicing. The procedure must be followed in proper sequence to ensure that only needed repairs or replacements are performed on calipers. Problems such as hot brakes or cracked rotors may be effects of sticking calipers, too-small clearance between rotor and pad or possible trapped air pressure in the brake chamber. If any of these symptoms occur, perform this procedure before replacing the rotor to ensure the cause of the problem is properly solved.

1. Check for presence of residual pressure:

To check if there is any residual air pressure in the brake chamber, make four or five brake applications, then try to turn the wheel manually. If the wheel does not turn, use a wrench to crack the air line and listen for trapped air in the brake chamber then try to turn the wheel manually again. If you find trapped air in the brake booster, ensure that all pneumatic components in the braking system are functioning properly.

Note: A residual pressure of 2-3 PSI in the system is sufficient to prevent the brakes from releasing. Also the stop light switch can operate with as little as 1 PSI, therefore an illuminated brake light does not mean brakes are dragging.

2. Pad to rotor clearance inspection:

Remove clip and washer (26 & 45, Fig. 23), push down retainer bar (11), pull out pin (44) and remove retainer bar. Push caliper toward actuator (center of vehicle) for maximum clearance.

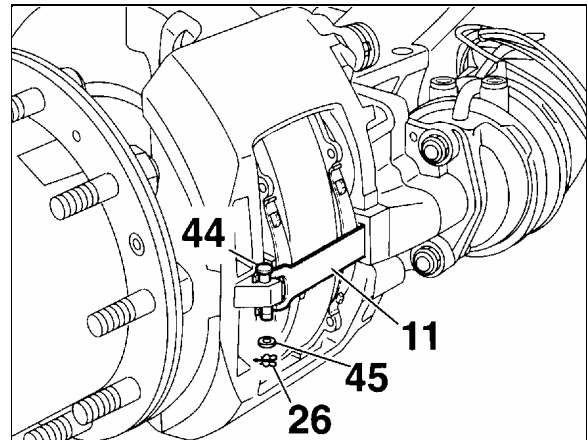


FIGURE 23: CLEARANCE INSPECTION

12119

3. Measure pad to rotor clearance:

Place a long feeler gauge (long enough to measure across entire tappet surface) between the tappet and the backing plate of the pad, measure clearance at both tappets. Clearance should range between 0.020 and 0.035 inch (0.5 mm and 0.9 mm), with a maximum difference between tappet measurements on same brake of 0.008 inch (0.2 mm).

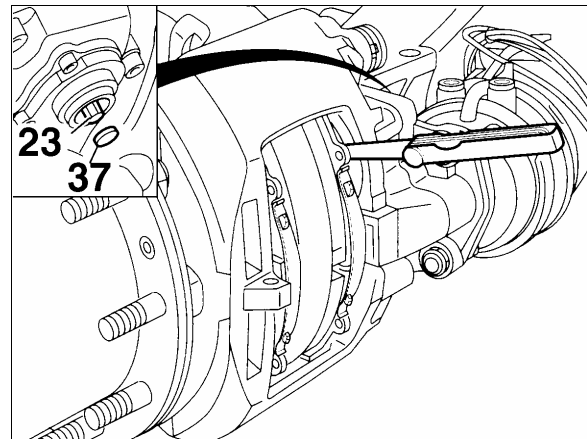


FIGURE 24: RUNNING CLEARANCE

12116

4. Checking the adjuster

Warning: Use only a standard box wrench on the adjuster hexagonal pinion. Do not over-torque the pinion as overtightening will damage the pinion.

- Remove cap (37, Fig. 25).
- Using a box wrench (8 mm), turn the adjuster pinion (23, Fig. 25) counterclockwise about 2-3 clicks to increase running clearance. By operating the braking system about 5-10 times (30 PSI or 2 bar), the

wrench should turn clockwise in small increments if the adjuster is functioning correctly (Figs. 25 and 26).

Note: With increasing number of applications, the incremental adjustment will decrease.

c) In case of malfunction, i. e. the pinion or box wrench:

- i) Does not turn.
- ii) Turns only with the first application.
- iii) Turns forwards then backwards with every application.

In any of the above cases, the automatic adjuster has failed and the caliper must be replaced. In such cases the brakes can be adjusted manually to run a short distance.

d) Take the box wrench off. Replace the cap and check for proper sealing.

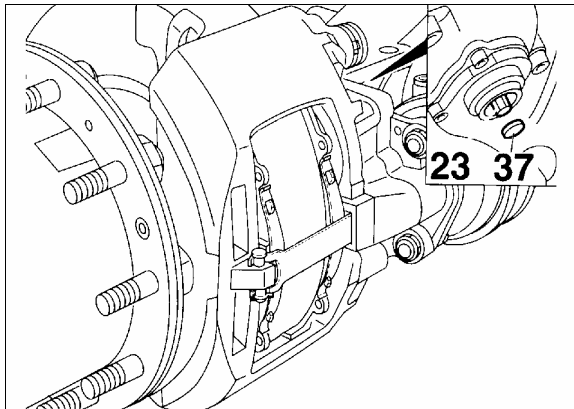


FIGURE 25: ADJUSTER PINION

12120

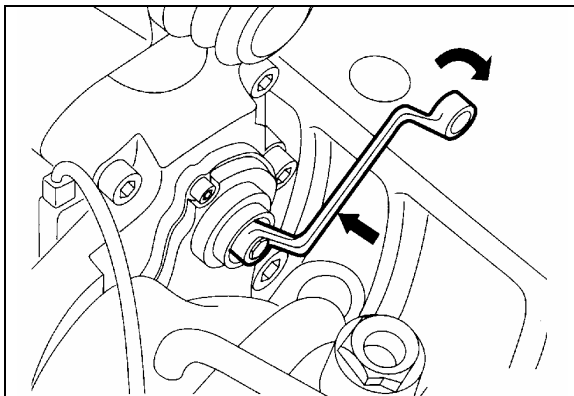


FIGURE 26: BOX WRENCH ON ADJUSTER PINION

12118

27.3 ROADSIDE INSPECTION FOR KNORR -BREMSE AIR DISC BRAKES

The coach is equipped with air disc brakes and therefore, cannot be inspected using the requirements for chamber stroke or visible lining clearance or lining thickness as specified for drum brakes. The roadside inspector should use the following instructions to determine that the air disc brakes are within proper adjustment and have sufficient pad wear thickness.

The Knorr-Bremse air disc brake is designed to move freely, with minimal force, in the axial direction on the two sliding pins as identified in figure 27. The movement in the axial direction should not exceed 2 mm (5/64").

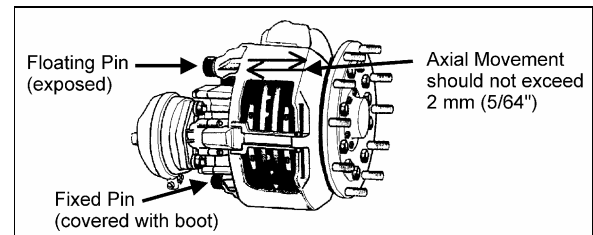


FIGURE 27: CALIPER AXIAL MOVEMENT

12132

The caliper flotation consists of two pins. One pin (fixed pin) floats and should have minimal movement in the radial direction. The other pin is floating in a rubber bushing. The maximum radial movement should not exceed 2.0 mm (0.080"). To check the radial movement, insert a pry tool between the caliper and carrier near the middle and then measure the relative movement as shown in figure 28.

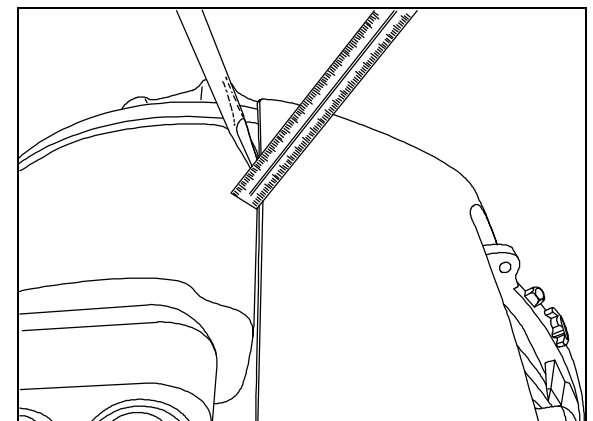


FIGURE 28: RADIAL MOVEMENT INSPECTION

12187

The pad thickness can be seen but would require removal of the tire and rim. An indicator of the pad wear condition is available by inspecting the floating pin location in relation to the rubber bushing as shown in figure 29. When

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

pads are in new thickness condition, the pin will be exposed (C) 19 mm ($\frac{3}{4}$ "). When the pads are worn to replacement conditions, the pin will be nearly flush to the bushing (D) or within 1 mm ($\frac{3}{64}$ ") of the edge of the rubber bushing.

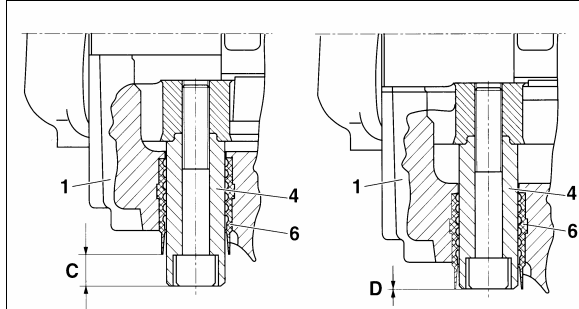


FIGURE 29: BRAKE PAD CHECK

12117

27.4 PAD REMOVAL

Turn adjuster pinion (23) counterclockwise to increase pad to rotor clearance (a clicking noise will be heard). Push caliper toward actuator and remove pads (12).

Caution: Do not apply brakes while pads are removed as this could cause over stroke damage to the adjusting mechanism.

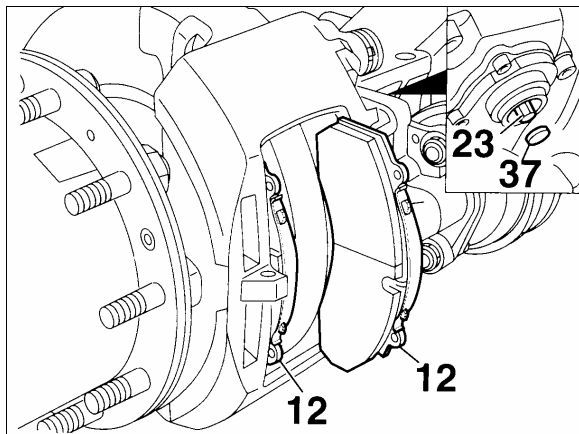


FIGURE 30: PAD REMOVAL

12111

27.5 CHECKING PAD WEAR

Minimum friction material thickness is 2 mm (A, Fig. 31)

New friction material has a thickness of 21 mm (B, Fig. 31)

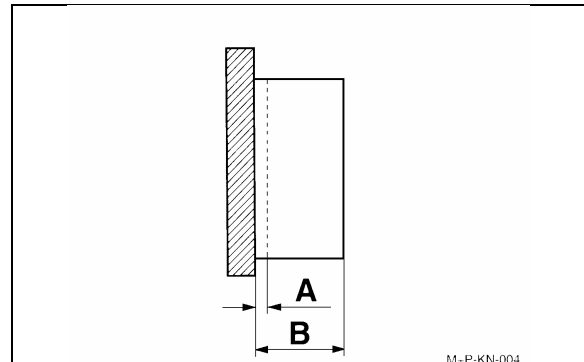


FIGURE 31: PAD WEAR

M-P-KN-004

12112

27.6 IMPORTANT PAD AND ROTOR MEASUREMENTS

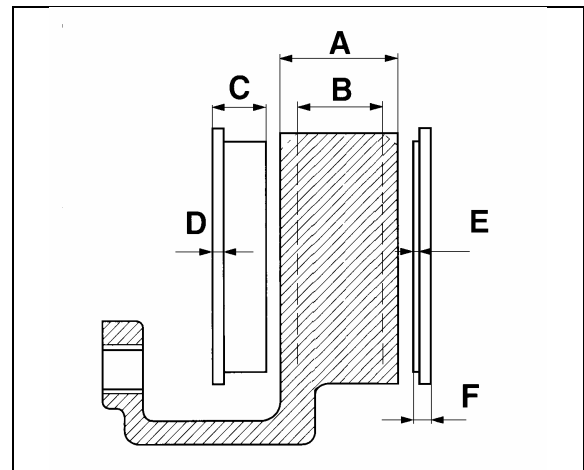


FIGURE 32: ROTOR AND PAD WEAR LIMITS

12113

A = Rotor thickness (new): 45 mm;

B = Rotor thickness (worn): 37 mm. Requires replacement;

C = Overall thickness of pad (new): 30 mm;

D = Backplate: 9 mm;

E = Minimum thickness of pad material: 2 mm;

F = Minimum allowed thickness of overall backplate and friction material: 11 mm.
Replacement necessary.

27.7 CHECKING CALIPER GUIDANCE AND SEAL CONDITION

Perform sliding test. You must be able to slide the caliper easily at any time. Sliding test should be performed at least every three months or more often depending on the type of operation.

Sliding Test (Refer to Fig. 33):

- a) Using hand pressure only, the caliper (1) must slide freely with its guide pin arrangements (4-7) across a distance of 1 3/16 inch (30 mm) when the pads are removed. The sleeve (5) is sealed using the boot (9) and the cap (10).
- b) The rubber components (9 and 10) should show no damage. The positioning must be checked. If necessary the caliper has to be repaired using the guide kit (part #611168) or with the seal and guide kit (part #611199). When repairing a caliper with the above kits, make sure all parts in the kit are used. Use special green grease (Prévost #683344) to reassemble the slide pin into the bushing, white or yellow grease (Prévost #683345) may be used for all other lubrication needs.
- c) Depending on caliper manufacturing date, black paint may be present on the unsealed pin (short pin). Paint on the slide pin can prevent the caliper from sliding properly especially when the pad starts to wear. If paint is present on the pin, separate the pin from the bushing, clean and reinstall the pin according to procedure.

Note: Do not attempt to use thinner or alcohol to clean the pin without removing it as it may damage the rubber bushing.

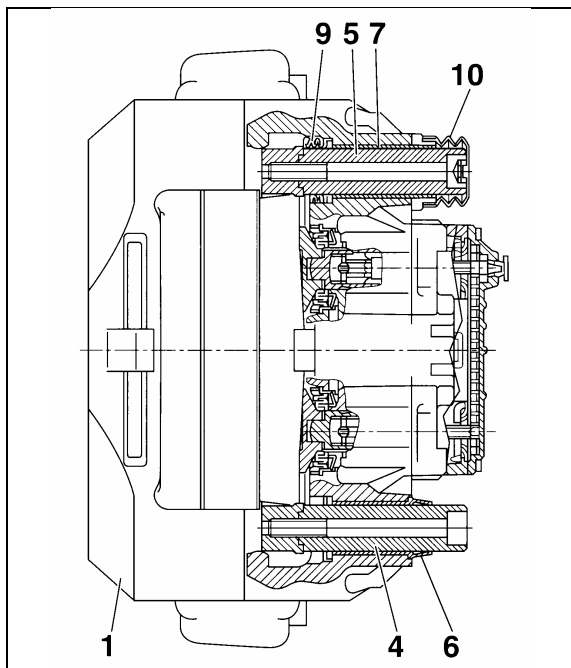


FIGURE 33: CALIPER GUIDANCE

12114

27.8 CHECKING THE TAPPET BOOTS

- a) The rubber boots (13, Fig. 34) should show no damage, check the attachment.

Caution: Any ingress of water and dirt will lead to corrosion and may affect the function of the actuation mechanism and adjuster unit.

- b) If boots are damaged but show no corrosion, the boots and tappets should be replaced (Prévost #611177).

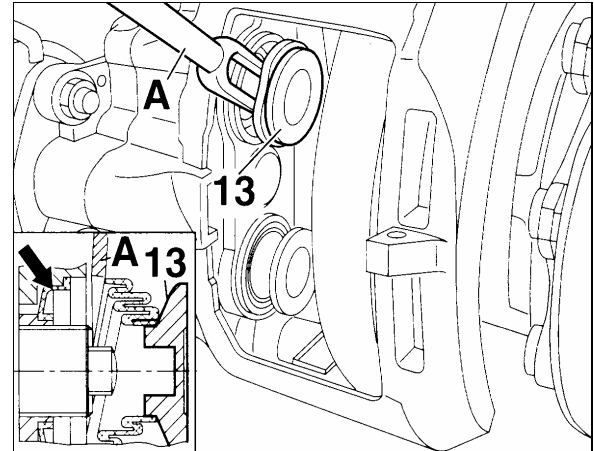


FIGURE 34: RUBBER BOOTS

12115

27.9 PAD INSTALLATION

Turn adjuster pinion (23, Fig. 35) counterclockwise until tappets are fully retracted and clean pad seat area. Slide caliper to full outboard position and install outside pad. Slide caliper to full inboard position and install inside pad.

Warning: It is recommended to change all pads on an axle at the same time.

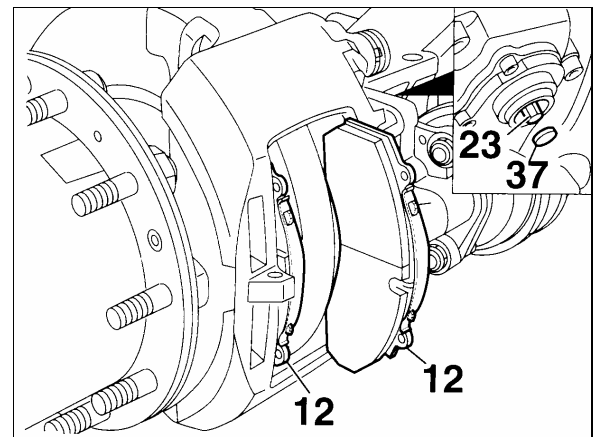


FIGURE 35: PAD INSTALLATION

12111

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

27.10 ADJUSTING THE RUNNING CLEARANCE

- a) Insert a feeler gauge 0.028 inch (0.7 mm thickness) between tappet and pad back-plate (Fig. 36). Turn adjuster pinion clockwise until 0.028 inch (0.7 mm) clearance is achieved. Replace cap (37) (Prévost # 641313).
- b) To ensure a constant running clearance between the rotor and pads, the brake is equipped with an automatic adjuster unit. When the pads and rotor wear, the running clearance between the pads and rotor increases. The adjuster (23, Fig. 36) and turning device turn the threaded tubes by the amount necessary to compensate the wear.

Total running clearance should be between 0.020 and 0.035 inch (0.5 and 0.9 mm). Smaller clearances may lead to overheating problems.

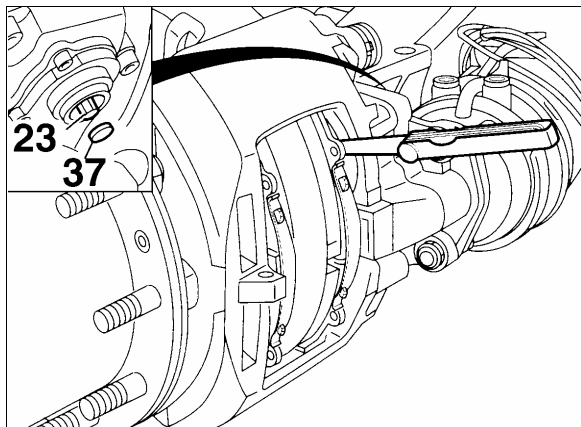


FIGURE 36: RUNNING CLEARANCE

12116

27.11 BRAKE TOOLS

Four brake tools are available from Prévost to facilitate disc brake maintenance:

- a) #641321, Tappet with boot (item 13).
- b) #641322, Caliper inner boot (item 9).
- c) #641323, Caliper bushing (item 7).
- d) #641435, Fork for boot tappet (item 13).

Maintenance tip

Using the following procedure, pad wear can be determined without removing the wheel.

27.12 TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

For proper caliper maintenance, refer to the following figures.

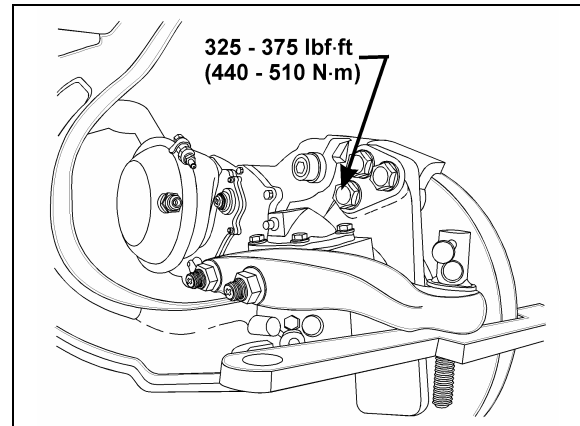


FIGURE 37: TORQUE SPECIFICATION

12145

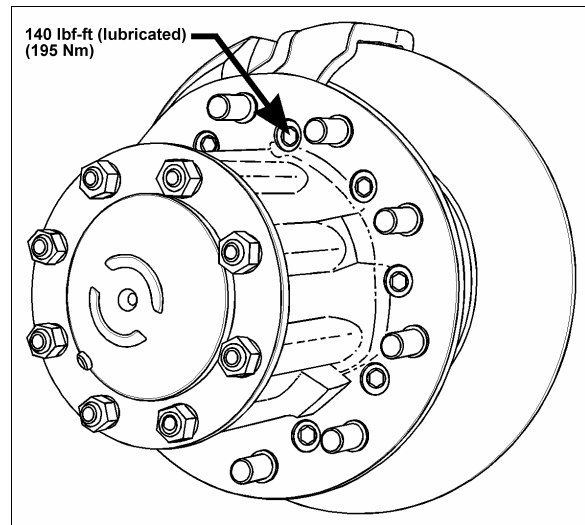


FIGURE 38: TORQUE SPECIFICATION

12149

28. SAFE SERVICE PROCEDURES

Most recently manufactured brake linings no longer contain asbestos fibers. Instead of asbestos, these linings contain a variety of ingredients, including glass fibers, mineral wool, aramid fibers, ceramic fibers, and carbon fibers. At present, OSHA (Occupational Safety and Health Administration) does not specifically regulate these non-asbestos fibers, except as nuisance dust. Medical experts do not agree about the potential long-term risks from working with and inhaling non-asbestos fibers. Nonetheless some experts think that long-term exposure to some non-asbestos fibers could cause diseases of the lung, including pneumo-

coniosis, fibrosis, and cancer. Therefore, lining suppliers recommend that workers use caution to avoid creating and breathing dust when working on brakes that contain non-asbestos fibers.

Warning:

Whenever possible, work on brakes in a separate area away from other operations.

Always wear a respirator approved by NIOSH (National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health) or MSHA (Mine Safety and Health Administration) during all brake service procedures. Wear the respirator from removal of the wheels through assembly.

NEVER use compressed air or dry brushing to clean brake parts or assemblies. OSHA recommends that you use cylinders that enclose the brake. These cylinders have vacuums with high efficiency (HEPA (Health and Environment Protection Agency)) filters and workmans' arm sleeves. But, if such equipment is not available, carefully clean parts and assemblies in the open air.

Clean brake parts and assemblies in the open air. During disassembly, carefully place all parts on the floor to avoid getting dust into the air. Use an industrial vacuum cleaner with a HEPA filter system to clean dust from the brake drums, backing plates and other brake parts. After using the vacuum, remove any remaining dust with a rag soaked in water and wrung until nearly dry.

If you must grind or machine brake linings, take additional precautions because contact with fiber dust is higher during these operations. In addition to wearing an approved respirator, do such work in an area with exhaust ventilation.

When cleaning the work area, NEVER use compressed air or dry sweeping to clean the work area. Use an industrial vacuum with a HEPA filter and rags soaked in water and wrung until nearly dry. Dispose of used rags with care to avoid getting dust into the air. Use an approved respirator when emptying vacuum cleaners and handling used rags.

Wash your hands before eating, drinking or smoking. Do not wear your work clothes home. Vacuum your work clothes after use and then launder them separately, without shaking, to prevent fiber dust from getting into the air.

Material safety data sheets on this product, as required by OSHA, are available from Knorr-Bremse.

29. AIR BRAKE TROUBLESHOOTING

The following tests and check lists have been designed to identify the cause(s) of a sluggish performance and/or leaks in the system. These tests require very little time to perform, and give you a general idea of the system condition. Each test is provided with a corresponding check list which will guide you to the most common causes of problems.

Before performing any test, check all air lines for kinks or dents, and hoses for signs of wear, drying out or overheating.

Warning: *When working on or around brake system and its related components, the following precautions should be observed:*

Always block vehicle wheels. Stop engine when working under a vehicle. Keep hands away from chamber push rods and slack adjusters as they may apply when system pressure drops.

Never connect or disconnect a hose or line containing air pressure. It may whip as air escapes. Never remove a component or pipe plug unless you are sure all system pressure has been depleted.

Never exceed recommended air pressure and always wear safety glasses when working with air pressure. Never look into air jets or direct them at anyone.

Never attempt to disassemble a component until you have read and understood the recommended procedures. Some components contain powerful springs and injury can result if not properly disassembled. Use only proper tools and observe all precautions pertaining to the use of those tools.

Always clean connecting piping and/or fittings, and coat pipe threads with Teflon pipe sealant before installing any air brake system component.

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

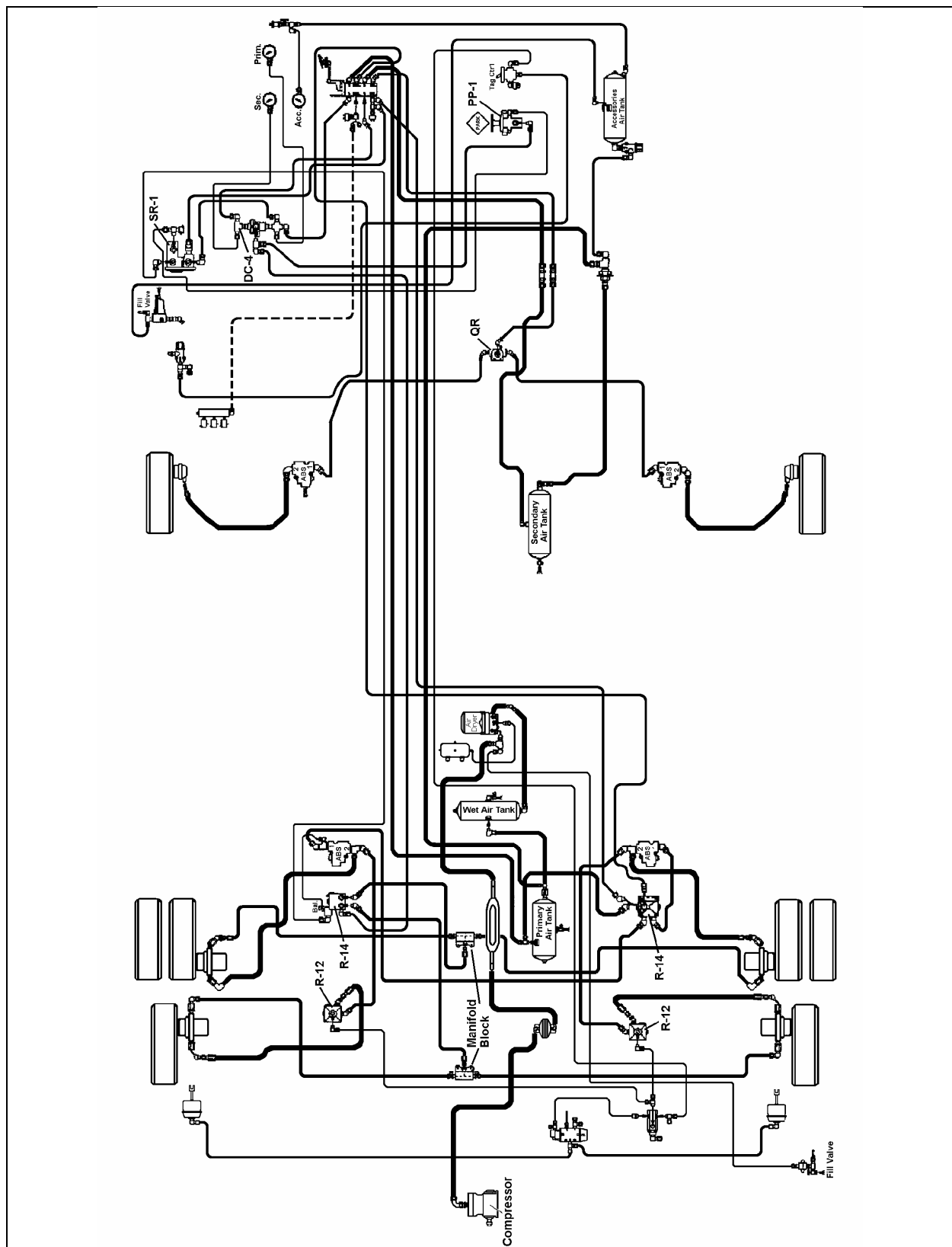


FIGURE 39: AIR-OPERATED BRAKING SYSTEM H3

12197

Pressure Build-Up / Low Pressure Warning / Cutoff Point / Air Filter/Dryer Built-in Governor Cutout

CONDITION: Vehicle leveled, parking brake applied.

1. Completely drain wet, primary and secondary air reservoirs only.
2. Start engine and run at fast idle. Low pressure warning lights should be "On".
3. Start checking pressure at 50 psi (344 kPa).
4. Low pressure warning lights and buzzer should go off at or above 60 psi (415 kPa).
5. At 85 psi (586 kPa), run engine at full rpm, then check that build up time to 100 psi (690 kPa) is 30 seconds or less.
6. Air filter/dryer built-in governor cut-out. Cuts out at the correct pressure of 123 psi \pm 3 (847 \pm 21 kPa).
7. Air filter/dryer built-in governor cut-in. Cuts in around 110 psi (758 kPa).

For common corrections, refer to the following check list:

High or Low Warning Cutoff Point

- Perform a telltale light and gauge test. Replace entire cluster if found defective.

High or Low Air Filter/Dryer Built-in Governor Cutout Point

- Perform a telltale light and gauge test. Replace entire cluster if found defective.

OR

- Repair or replace air filter/dryer as necessary after checking that compressor unloader mechanism operates correctly.

More than 30 seconds to build-up pressure from 85 to 100 psi (585 - 690 kPa) at full engine RPM

- Perform a telltale light and gauge test. Replace entire cluster if found defective.
- Check compressor strainer or inlet line. If restricted, clean or replace element or faulty line.

- Check compressor head or discharge line for carbonization or restriction. Clean or replace as necessary.
- If discharge valves leak, pull head and correct or replace cylinder head.
- If drive is slipping, replace gear.
- If inlet valves are stuck, open or leaking severely, replace unloader kit, inlet valves and/or seats as necessary.
- If drain cock is found open, close it.
- Listen for air leaks and repair.
- Redo list to check all items repaired or replaced.

Air Supply Reservoir Leakage

CONDITION: Full pressure, engine stopped, parking brake applied

1. Allow at least 1 minute for pressure to stabilize.
2. Stop engine, then check air pressure gauge for 2 minutes. Note any pressure drop.
3. Pressure should not drop by more than 3 psi (20 kPa) per minute.

For common corrections, refer to the following check list:

Excessive air loss:

- With the primary air system at normal operating pressure (95 - 125 psi (655 - 860 kPa)), coat all air line connections and pneumatic components with a water and soap solution. Bubbles will indicate an air leak, and none should be permissible. Repair or replace defective parts.
- Listen for leaks and correct as required.
- Redo test to check all items repaired or replaced.

Brake System Air Leakage

CONDITION: Full pressure, engine stopped, parking brake released.

1. Apply service (foot) brakes, allow at least 1 minute for pressure to stabilize.
2. Hold down foot valve for 2 minutes while observing air pressure gauge on the dash-board.

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

3. Pressure drop should not be more than 4 psi (27 kPa) per minute.

For common corrections, refer to the following check list.

Excessive leakage on brake service side:

- With the primary air system at normal operating pressure (95 - 125 psi (655 - 860 kPa)) and foot brake applied, coat all air line connections and brake pneumatic components with a water and soap solution. Bubbles will indicate an air leak, and none should be permissible. Repair or replace defective parts.
- Listen for leaks and correct as required.
- Redo test to check all items repaired or replaced.

30. BRAKE AIR CHAMBER

This vehicle uses “Knorr-Bremse” brake chambers on all axles. The tag and drive axle chambers consist of two separate air chambers, each having its own diaphragm and push rod. They are used as a service brake chamber, an emergency brake in case of air pressure loss and a spring-applied parking brake. Refer to figures 40 and 41.

The front axle brake air chambers are used only for service brake duty (Fig. 40).

30.1 MAINTENANCE

Every 6,250 Miles (10 000 km) or twice a year, whichever comes first depending on type of operation:

1. Insert a box wrench (8 mm) onto the adjuster pinion.
2. Apply brakes 5 – 10 times and observe that the pads move out promptly without binding and that box wrench turns clockwise in small increments.
3. Check tightness of mounting nuts. Check that cotter pins are in place.
4. Check all hoses and lines. They should be secure and in good condition.

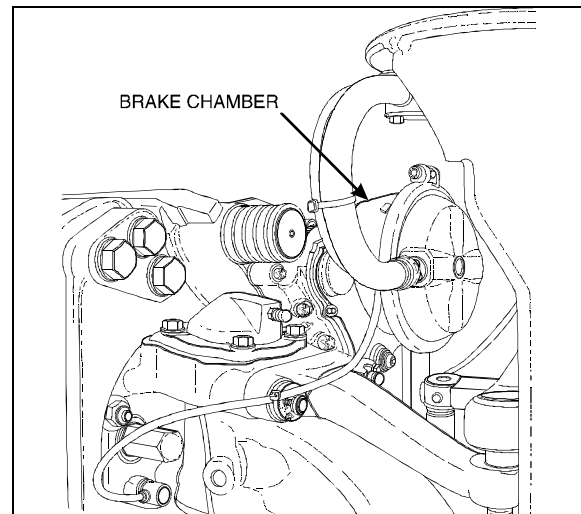


FIGURE 40: I-BEAM FRONT AXLE BRAKE AIR CHAMBER
12158

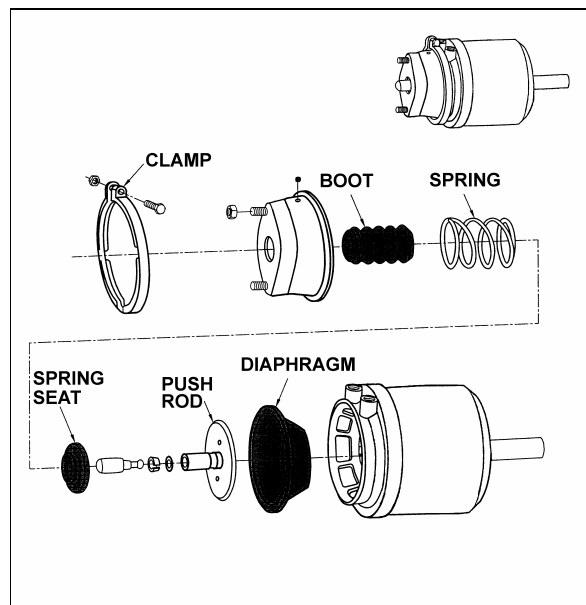


FIGURE 41: TAG AXLE OR DRIVE AXLE BRAKE AIR CHAMBER
12126

Every 100,000 Miles (160 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first depending on type of operation

1. Disassemble and clean all parts.
2. Install new diaphragm or any other part if worn or deteriorated.

Note: When the diaphragm, spring, or both are replaced, they should be replaced in the corresponding chamber on the same axle.

3. Perform an airtightness test:

- a) Make and hold a full brake application.
- b) Coat clamping ring(s) with a soapy solution. If leakage is detected, tighten clamping ring only enough to stop leakage. **Do not overtighten** as this can distort sealing surface or clamping ring. Coat area around push rod hole (loosen boot if necessary). No leakage is permitted. If leakage is detected, the diaphragm must be replaced.

30.2 EMERGENCY/PARKING BRAKE MANUAL RELEASE

Warning: *Never stand in the axis line of the spring brake chambers, especially when caging the spring.*

Drive Axle

1. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving.
2. Remove the release stud tool from its storage place on drive axle brake air chamber.
3. Remove the access plug from the end of the spring chamber, then insert the release stud through the opening. Turn the release stud 1/4 turn (clockwise) to anchor it into the spring plate. Install the flat washer and nut, then turn the nut clockwise to cage the spring. Repeat on the opposite side.

Warning: *Make sure the release stud is properly anchored in spring plate receptacle prior to caging the spring.*

4. To manually reset the emergency/parking brake, turn the nut counterclockwise. Reinstall access plugs on the spring chambers, and release stud tools in their storage places.

Tag Axle

1. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving.
2. Turn the release bolt counterclockwise to cage the power spring (approx. 2.5 inches (6 cm)). Repeat on the opposite side.
3. To manually reset the emergency/parking brake, turn the bolt clockwise.

30.3 BRAKE CHAMBER REMOVAL

Warning: *To prevent personal injuries, brakes should be inoperative prior to working on any of their components.*

Warning: *To prevent personal injuries, brake chambers should be made inoperative by releasing spring tension prior to disposal.*

1. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving.
2. Safely support vehicle at the recommended body jacking points.
3. To gain access to a given brake air chamber, the corresponding wheel can be removed (refer to Section 13: "Wheels, Hubs and Tires").
4. Exhaust compressed air from system by opening the drain valve of each reservoir.
5. For the drive and tag axles brake chambers, manually release spring brakes (refer to "Emergency/Parking Brake, Manual Release" procedure in this section).
6. Disconnect air line(s) from brake chamber.
7. Remove the cotter pin connecting brake chamber and slack adjuster (drive axle).
8. Unbolt and remove the brake chamber from vehicle.

30.4 BRAKE CHAMBER INSTALLATION

Reverse removal procedure, then check brake adjustment.

Caution: *Always clean air lines and fittings, and coat pipe threads with teflon pipe sealant before reconnecting air lines.*

30.5 BRAKE CHAMBER DISASSEMBLY

Warning: *Spring brake chambers, on drive and tag axles contain an extremely high compressive force spring, which can possibly cause serious injury if special precautions are not taken when working around this area.*

To avoid such injury, the following recommendations must be applied:

1. *Prévost recommends the installation of a new spring brake chamber if it is found to be defective.*

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

2. Spring brake chamber maintenance and/or repair must be performed by trained and qualified personnel only.

3. Before manually releasing spring brakes, visually check spring brake for cracks and/or corrosion.

4. Make sure the release stud is properly anchored in spring plate receptacle prior to caging the spring.

5. Never stand in the axis line of the spring brake chambers, especially when caging the spring.

Warning: To prevent personal injury, brakes should be inoperative before working on any components.

1. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving.
2. Safely support vehicle at the recommended body jacking points.

Note: To gain access to a given brake air chamber, the corresponding wheel can be removed (refer to Section 13: "Wheels, Hubs and Tires").

3. Exhaust compressed air from air system by opening the drain valve of each reservoir.
4. For the drive and tag axles brake chambers, manually release spring brakes (refer to "Emergency/Parking Brake Manual Release" procedure in this section).
5. Remove clamp ring, remove and discard the existing diaphragm. Install the new diaphragm squarely on body.
6. Reverse the procedure for assembly. Tap clamp ring to ensure proper seating. Check for proper operation before placing vehicle in service.

31. ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)

This device has been designed to ensure stability and permit steering control of vehicle during hard braking, and to minimize its stopping distance whatever the road conditions are. On slippery roads and generally in emergency situations, over-braking frequently

induces wheel lock. The anti-lock braking system provides maximum braking performance while maintaining adequate steering control on slippery roads.

The ABS continuously monitors wheel behavior during braking. Sensors on each wheel of front and drive axles (tag axle is slave to drive axle) transmit data to a four channel electronic processor which senses when any wheel is about to lock. Modulator valves quickly adjust the brake pressure (up to 5 times per second) to prevent wheel locking. Each wheel is therefore controlled according to the grip available between its tire and the road.

With this device, the vehicle is brought to a halt in the shortest possible time, while remaining stable and under the driver's control.

Since the braking system has dual circuits, the ABS is also provided with a secondary system should a fault develop in the ABS. Anti-lock systems are a parallel system which does not hinder brake functioning in case of failure. Braking system functions in normal, non anti-lock controlled operation during ABS system failure.

The ABS system consists of two diagonally related circuits, only the half of the system which has sustained damage or other fault is switched off (i.e. wheels return to normal non-ABS braking). The other diagonal half remains under full ABS control.

Note: ABS is active on service brake, transmission retarder, Jake brake, but is inactive on emergency/parking brake.

Note: The ABS system is inoperative at speeds under 4 mph (7 Km/h). Illumination of ABS telltale indicator at these speeds is normal.

Caution: Disconnect the ECU or pull the ABS fuse before towing vehicle.

31.1 TROUBLESHOOTING AND TESTING

For troubleshooting and testing of the vehicle's anti-lock braking system, refer to Meritor Wabco Maintenance Manual MM-0112: "Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) for Trucks, Tractors and Buses", at the end of this section. Use dashboard Message Center Display (MCD) Diagnostic Mode for troubleshooting and repair.



Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

31.2 ABS COMPONENTS

The main components of the ABS system are listed hereafter. Refer to each component for its specific function in the system and for proper maintenance.

31.2.1 Electronic Control Unit (ECU)

This control unit is located in the first baggage compartment, on the driver's side of the vehicle (refer to figure 43 for location) or in the front electrical and service compartment. According to the data transmitted by the sensors (number of pulses/sec is proportional to the speed of each wheel), the electronic control unit determines which wheel is accelerating or decelerating. It then establishes a reference speed (average speed) from each wheel data, and compares the speed of each wheel with this reference speed to determine which wheel is accelerating or decelerating.

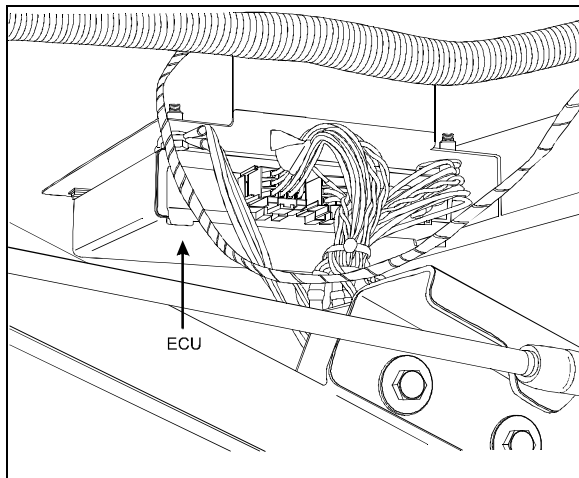


FIGURE 43: FIRST L.H. BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT 12198

As soon as wheel deceleration or wheel slip threshold values are exceeded, the electronic control unit signals a solenoid control valve to limit the excessive brake pressure produced by the driver in the appropriate brake chamber.

Maintenance

No specific maintenance is required. The ECU is not serviceable. When found to be defective, replace.

Caution: In order to protect the ABS electronic control unit from voltage surges, always disconnect before performing any welding procedure on vehicle.

31.2.2 ABS Modulator Valve

This ABS system is equipped with four modulator valves, located between the brake chamber and the relay valve or quick release valve (Fig. 44). Note that there is only one solenoid valve controlling the drive and tag axle wheels on the same side (tag axle is slave to drive axle).

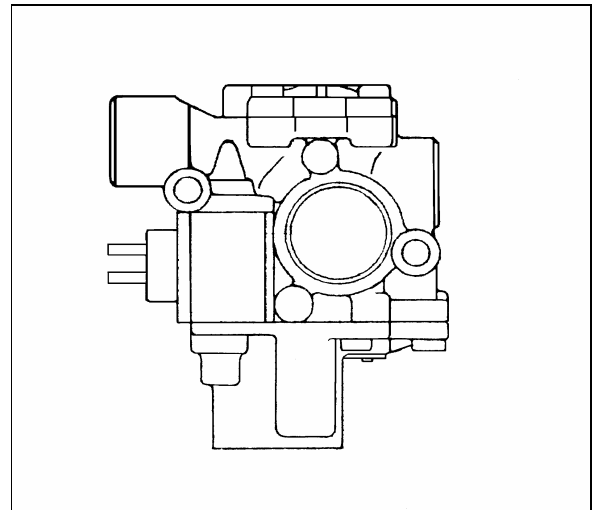


FIGURE 44: ABS MODULATOR VALVE

12084

This is an "On/Off" type valve, i.e., at brake application, the valve exhausts air from the brake chamber when the electronic unit senses that the corresponding wheel speed is decreasing in relation to the other wheels.

Maintenance

No specific maintenance is required for the solenoid control valve.

31.2.3 Sensors

The sensors are mounted on the front and drive axle wheel hubs (Fig. 45). The inductive sensors consist essentially of a permanent magnet with a round pole pin and a coil. The rotation of the toothed wheel alters the magnetic flux picked up by the coil, producing an alternating voltage, the frequency of which is proportional to wheel speed. When wheel speed decreases, magnetic flux decreases proportionately. Consequently, the electronic control unit will command the solenoid control valve to decrease the pressure at the corresponding brake chamber.

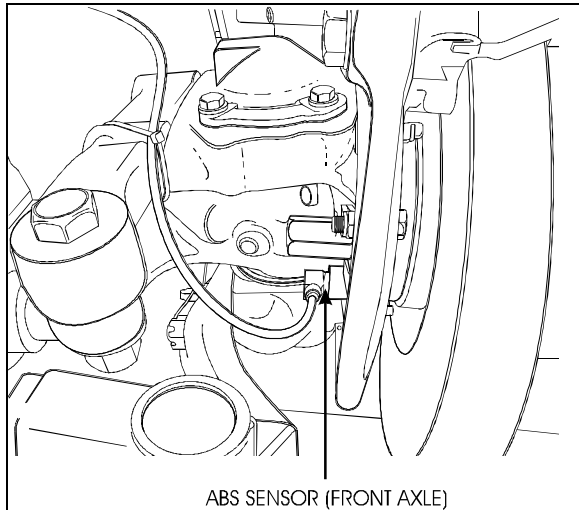


FIGURE 45: ABS SENSOR LOCATION

12153

Maintenance

No specific maintenance is required for sensors, except if the sensors have to be removed for axle servicing. In such a case, sensors should be lubricated with special grease (Prévost #680460) before reinstallation. Refer to paragraph "Sensor Installation" for details.

Note: The resistance value, when sensors are checked as a unit, must be equal to 1,75 k ohms. To check the sensors for proper output voltage after the sensors and toothed wheels have been assembled to the axle, connect a suitable AC voltmeter across the output terminals. With the hubs rotating at 30 rpm, the output voltages should read from 50 to 1999 mV to be acceptable.

Sensor Installation

The following procedure deals with sensor installation on the axle wheel hubs. Read procedure carefully before reinstalling a sensor, as its installation must comply with operational tolerances and specifications.

1. Apply recommended lubricant (Prévost #680460) to spring clip and sensor.

Caution: Use only this type of grease on the sensors.

2. Insert spring clip in the holder on hub. Make sure the spring clip tabs are on the inboard side of the vehicle. Push in until the clip stops.

3. Push the sensor completely inside the spring clip until it is in contact with the tooth wheel. Ensure mounting is rigid, as it is an important criterion for adequate sensor operation.

Note: This installation should be of the "press fit" type.

31.2.4 Spring clip

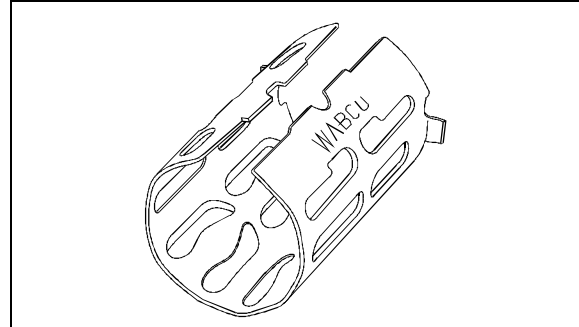


FIGURE 46: SPRING CLIP

12161

The spring clip retains the sensor in its mounting bracket close to the toothed pulse wheel. The gap between the sensor end and teeth is set automatically by pushing the sensor in the clip hard up against the tooth wheel, and the latter knocks back the sensor to its adjusted position (Fig. 46).

Maintenance

The spring clip requires no specific maintenance.

32. FITTING TIGHTENING TORQUES

45° Flare and Inverted Flare: Tighten assembly with a wrench until a solid feeling is encountered. From that point, tighten 1/6 turn (Fig. 47).

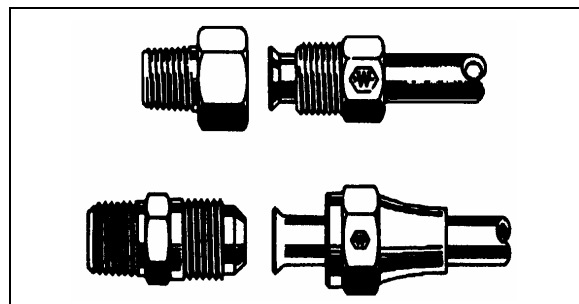


FIGURE 47: HOSE FITTINGS

12053

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

Compression: Tighten nut by hand (Fig. 48). From that point, tighten using a wrench the number of turns indicated in the chart hereafter.

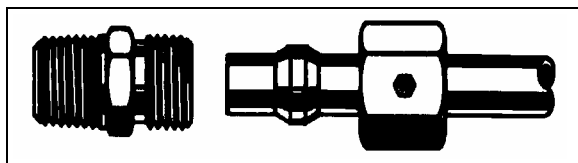


FIGURE 48: HOSE FITTING

12054

Fitting size	Pipe diameter (inches)	Number of additional turns required following manual tightening
2	1/8	1 ¼
3	3/16	1 ¼
4	1/4	1 ¼
5	5/16	1 ¾
6	3/8	2 ¼
8	1/2	2 ¼
10	5/8	2 ¼
12	3/4	2 ¼
16	1	2 ¼

NTA-Type Plastic Tubing: Hand tighten nut (Fig. 49). From that point, tighten using a wrench the number of turns indicated in the following chart.

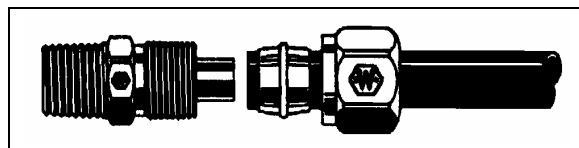


FIGURE 49: HOSE FITTING

12055

Tubing diameter (inch)	Number of additional turns required following manual tightening
1/4	3
3/8 to 1/2	4
5/8 to 3/4	3 ½

33. SPECIFICATIONS

Air Compressor

Make Bendix Westinghouse
 Model BA-921
 16(coach)-Supplier number..... 801287
 Prévost number 641990

BA-921 Service Kits

ST-4 Safety Valve

Supplier number 800534
 Prévost number 641989

Series 60 Seal Kit

Supplier number 5012371
 Prévost number 641988

Compressor Seal Kit

Supplier number 5008559
 Prévost number 641987

Cylinder Head Gasket Kit

Supplier number 5008558
 Prévost number 641986

Air Dryer

Make Haldex
 Model AT-87192
 Prévost number 70303498
 Desiccant cartridge Prévost number 3097369

Flip-Flop Control Valve

Make Bendix Westinghouse
 Model TW-1
 Type On-Off
 Supplier number 229635
 Prévost number 640136

Emergency/Parking Brake Control Valve

Make Bendix Westinghouse
 Model PP-1
 Automatic release pressure 40 psi (275 kPa) nominal
 Supplier number 287325
 Prévost number 641128

Emergency/Parking Brake Override Control Valve

Make Bendix Westinghouse
 Model RD-3
 Supplier number 281481
 Prévost number 640472

Dual Brake Application Valve

Make Bendix Westinghouse
 Model E-10P
 Supplier number 5006280
 Prévost number 641856

Stoplight Switches

Make Bendix Westinghouse
 Model SL-5
 Contact close (ascending pressure) 4 psi and more (28 kPa)
 Supplier number 286404
 Prévost number 641462

Brake Relay Valves

Make Bendix Westinghouse
 Model R-12 & R-12DC
 Supplier number 102852
 Prévost number 641088

Quick Release Valve

Make Bendix Westinghouse
 Model QR-1
 Supplier number 5001496
 Prévost number 641429

Spring Brake Valve

Make Bendix Westinghouse
 Model SR-1

Section 12: BRAKE AND AIR SYSTEM

Supplier number 286364
Prévost number 640870

Pressure Protection Valve

Make Bendix Westinghouse
Model PR-2
Nominal closing pressure 75 psi (517 kPa)
Supplier number 277226
Prévost number 640439

Shuttle-Type Double Check Valve

Make Bendix Westinghouse
Model DC-4
Supplier number 277988
Prévost number 641015

Low Pressure Indicators

Make Bendix Westinghouse
Model LP-3
Contact close 66 psi (455 kPa)
Supplier number 277227
Prévost number 640975
Make Bendix Westinghouse
Model LP-3
Contact close 30 psi (207 kPa)
Supplier number 276599
Prévost number 641174

Air Pressure Regulator

Make Norgren
Adjustable output range 0-80/85 psi (0-552/586 kPa)
Recommended pressure setting 75 psi (517 kPa)
Supplier number R06-2G7 RNKA
Prévost number 641472

Air Filter Element

Make Norgren
Type With manual drain
Supplier number F74G-345-004
Prévost number 641338

Front Axle Brake Chambers

Make Knorr-Bremse
Type 22
Supplier number (R.H.) BS-3457 II 34671
Prévost number (R.H.) 641414
Supplier number (L.H.) BS-3457 II 34670
Prévost number (L.H.) 641413

Drive Axle Brake Chambers

Make Knorr-Bremse
Type 24 as service -24 as emergency
Supplier number II/35699/BS-9524
Prévost number 641432

Tag Axle Brake Chambers

Make Knorr-Bremse
Type 14 as service – 16 as emergency
Supplier number II/18224/V1-BS9396
Prévost number 641308

Brake Lining (All Axles)

Make Knorr-Bremse
Supplier number II 33976
Prévost number 611049

ABS ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (if applicable)

ABS Modulator Valve

Make Meritor Wabco
Voltage 24 V
Supplier number 472 195 006 0
Prévost number 641097

Sensor, Front Axle

Supplier number 441 032-572-0
Prévost number 641288

Sensor, Drive Axle (In Carrier)

Supplier number SA13280X9150
Prévost number 641341

Sensor, Drive Axle (In Wheel End)

Supplier number 441 032-576-0
Prévost number 641095

SECTION 13: WHEELS, HUBS & TIRES

CONTENTS

1. WHEELS.....	13-3
2. WHEEL MAINTENANCE	13-3
2.1 INSPECTION	13-3
2.2 SINGLE WHEEL REMOVAL.....	13-4
2.3 SINGLE WHEEL INSTALLATION	13-4
3. DUAL WHEELS.....	13-4
3.1 OUTER WHEEL REMOVAL	13-4
3.2 INNER WHEEL.....	13-4
3.3 INNER WHEEL INSTALLATION	13-4
3.4 OUTER WHEEL INSTALLATION	13-4
3.5 INSPECTION	13-4
4. ALUMINUM WHEEL ANTI-CORROSION PROTECTION	13-5
5. WHEEL STRAIGHTNESS TEST.....	13-5
6. WHEEL STUDS.....	13-6
6.1 DRIVE AXLE STUDS	13-6
6.2 FRONT AND TAG AXLE STUDS	13-6
7. HUB MOUNTED WHEELS	13-6
7.1 CARE OF WHEELS	13-7
8. FRONT AND TAG AXLE WHEEL HUBS.....	13-7
8.1 HUB BEARING INSPECTION	13-7
9. DRIVE AXLE WHEEL HUBS	13-7
9.1 BEARING ADJUSTMENT.....	13-7
9.2 DISASSEMBLY AND REPAIR	13-8
10. SPARE WHEEL (IF APPLICABLE)	13-8
10.1 PULLING OUT SPARE WHEEL	13-9
10.2 CHANGING A FLAT	13-9
10.3 SPARE WHEEL MAINTENANCE	13-9
11. TIRE MAINTENANCE	13-10
11.1 INFLATION PRESSURE	13-10
11.2 TIRE MATCHING	13-11
11.3 WHEEL BALANCING	13-11
11.4 TIRE ROTATION.....	13-11
12. SPECIFICATIONS	13-12

Section 13: WHEELS, HUBS & TIRES

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: ALUM/STEEL WHEEL ARRANGEMENT.....	13-3
FIGURE 2: TIGHTENING SEQUENCE	13-3
FIGURE 3: DIAL GAUGE INSTALLATION	13-5
FIGURE 4: STUD-MOUNTED WHEELS.....	13-6
FIGURE 5: HUB-MOUNTED WHEELS	13-6
FIGURE 6: SPARE WHEEL COMPARTMENT	13-9
FIGURE 7: FORWARD R.H. SIDE COMPARTMENT	13-9
FIGURE 8: TIRE INFLATION	13-11
FIGURE 9: TIRE LIFE / INFLATION PRESSURE	13-11

1. WHEELS

When the vehicle is provided with stud-mounted wheels, wheel studs and nuts on the left side of the vehicle have left-hand threads whereas those on the right side have right-hand threads. If equipped with hub-mounted wheels, all studs and nuts have right-hand threads. Either steel wheels or optional aluminum-polished wheels may be installed on the vehicle. Both are mounted with radial tubeless tires.

Except for customer special request, all wheel dimensions are 22.50 X 9.0 inches (571.5 X 228.6 mm) for 315/80 R 22.5 "L" tires.

Note: Wheel dimensions 22.50 X 10.5 (571.5 X 266.7 mm) for 365/70 R 22.5 tires are standard on VIP front and tag axle.

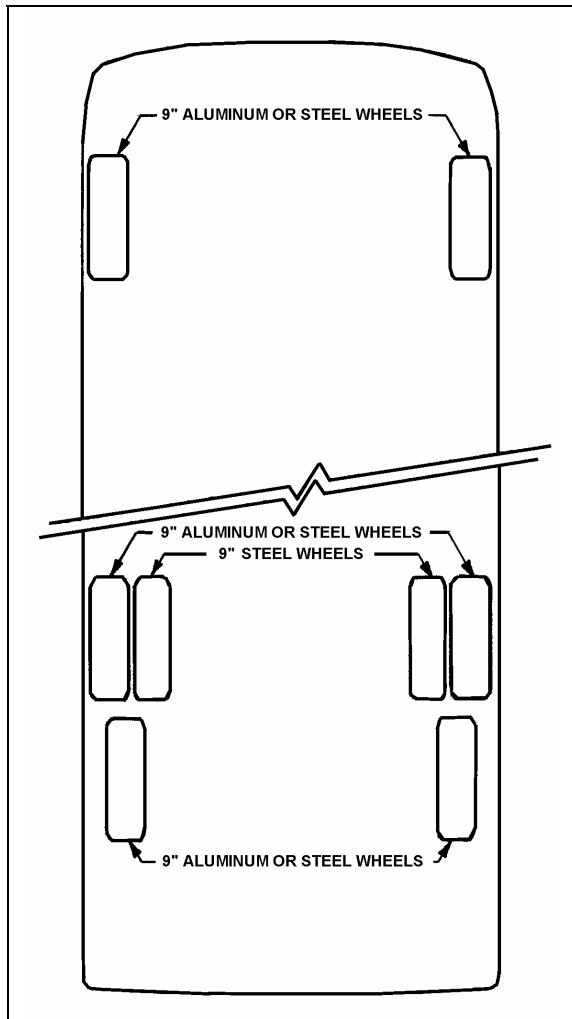


FIGURE 1: ALUM/STEEL WHEEL ARRANGEMENT 13001

2. WHEEL MAINTENANCE

Wheel maintenance consists of periodic inspections. Check all parts for damage and make sure that wheel nuts are tightened to the proper torque. In the case of a new vehicle, or after a wheel installation, stud nuts should be tightened every 100 miles (160-km) for the first 500 miles (800-km) to allow setting in of clamping surfaces.

Wheel studs and nuts must be kept free from grease and oil. No lubricant whatsoever should be used. Cleanliness of the wheel and its rotor mating surfaces is important for proper wheel mounting.

However, for hub mounted wheels, it is recommended to add some rust protection lubricant on the pilot diameter of the hub (to facilitate future removal).

It is also important that wheel stud nuts be tightened alternately on opposite sides of the wheel. Refer to Figure 2 for the suggested tightening sequence.

2.1 INSPECTION

Tighten stud nuts progressively as shown in Figure 2. The final tightening should be done with a torque wrench. Tighten stud nuts to 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm) for aluminum as well as steel wheels.

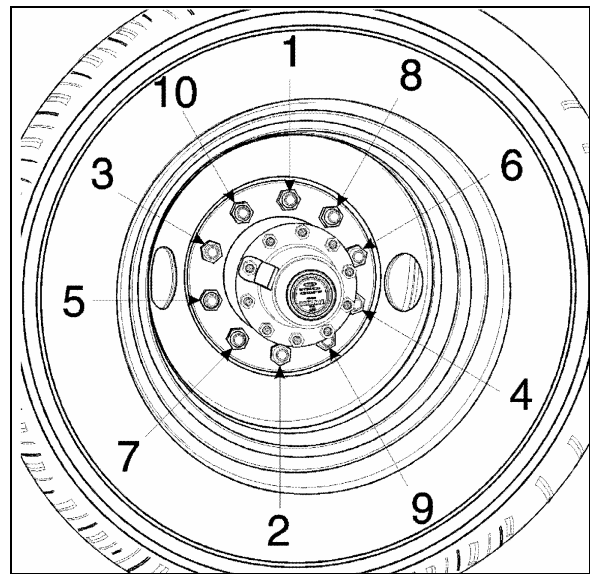


FIGURE 2: TIGHTENING SEQUENCE

13018

Section 13: WHEELS, HUBS & TIRES

2.2 SINGLE WHEEL REMOVAL

1. Stop engine and apply parking brake.
2. Loosen wheel nuts about one turn (do not remove the nuts). This is not necessary if equipped with hydraulic powered gun.

Note: For stud-mounted wheels, turn nuts counterclockwise for R.H. side and clockwise for the L.H. side of vehicle. For hub-mounted wheels, turn nuts counterclockwise on both sides of the vehicle.

3. Raise the vehicle by its jacking points on the body. See Section 18, "Body", under heading "Vehicle Jacking Points";
4. Unscrew wheel hex stud nuts and remove the wheel;

Caution: Always mark position of the wheel on the axle prior to removal in order to replace wheel at the same location, thus avoiding a new wheel balancing.

2.3 SINGLE WHEEL INSTALLATION

1. Mount the wheel over studs, being careful not to damage stud threads;
2. Screw in the hex stud nuts (refer to Figure 2 for sequence) so that wheel will position itself concentrically with hub. This is important, otherwise wheel may be eccentric with hub and will not run straight. In this initial step, slightly tighten the nuts to correctly position the wheel;
3. Tighten stud nuts progressively as shown in Figure 2. The final tightening should be done with a torque wrench. Tighten stud nuts to 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm) for aluminum as well as steel wheel.

Caution: Insufficient mounting-torque can result in damage to parts. Excessive mounting torque can cause studs to break and the wheel to crack in stud hole area.

3. DUAL WHEELS

3.1 OUTER WHEEL REMOVAL

Same as described in "Single Wheel Removal" procedure described previously.

3.2 INNER WHEEL

1. Remove outer wheel;
2. Unscrew inner cap nuts
3. Remove inner wheel.

3.3 INNER WHEEL INSTALLATION

1. Mount the wheel over studs, being careful not to damage stud threads;
2. Screw in the inner cap nuts (Fig. 4), so that wheel will position itself concentrically with hub. Refer to Figure 2 for sequence;
3. Tighten inner cap nuts progressively according to sequence shown in Figure 2. Final tightening should be done with a torque wrench. Tighten inner cap nuts to 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm) for aluminum as well as steel wheel.

Caution: Insufficient mounting-torque can result in damage to parts. Excessive mounting torque can cause studs to break and the wheel to crack in stud hole area.

3.4 OUTER WHEEL INSTALLATION

With inner wheel installed, tighten the hex stud nuts (Fig. 4) using the single wheel installation procedure described previously.

Note: On dual wheel assemblies, position the wheels with the tire valves 180° apart in order to have access to both the inner and outer valves.

3.5 INSPECTION

1. Loosen a hex stud nut three turns (Fig. 4);
2. Tighten the inner cap nut to 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm);
3. Tighten the hex stud nut to 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm).

Repeat for each of the 10 "hex stud nut - inner cap nut assemblies" according to the tightening sequence in Figure 2.

Caution: Do not attempt to tighten an inner cap nut without having previously loosened the hex stud nut.

Caution: The actual length of thread engagement present in an assembled wheel can not always be determined by visual inspection of measurement of a tightened assembly. The

relationship of the wheel cap nut seat to the end of the stud may vary. If there is any doubt that enough thread engagement is present, the number of engaged threads may be counted. Tighten all nuts in the regular manner, then loosen one to hand-tightness. The number of turns to disengage a 1-1/8-inch nut should be at least five full turns. At least seven full turns should be required to disengage a 3/4-inch nut or a M22 nut. Ideally, when torqued to the proper load, the stud should be flush with the face of the nut. **The face of the nut may be recessed in nuts that are taller for improved wrenching. With most of the nuts in present use, a few unengaged threads at the outer end will cause no problem provided at least 5-7 full turns are required to disengage the nut depending on thread size.**

4. ALUMINUM WHEEL ANTI-CORROSION PROTECTION

Clean wheels often by means of a high pressure water jet. Cleaning may be accelerated with mild soap. Do not use concentrated alkaline cleaning products.

When tire is removed, clean and inspect wheel thoroughly. Remove dirt and corrosion on rim by means of a wire brush. Do not use a wire brush on the outer surface of the wheel.

The following measures should be taken to maintain original appearance of the aluminum wheels:

1. Remove any tar from wheel surface with a good quality tar remover.
2. Spray Alcoa Cleaner (Prévost #683529) evenly on cool outer surface of wheel. Let work 15-20 minutes (keep wet by spraying more Cleaner if necessary).
3. Rinse thoroughly with clean water and let air dry. Heavy oxidation may require a repeat application of cleaner.
4. Apply Alcoa Polish (Prévost #683528) sparingly to a small area using a clean, soft cloth. Work polish into surface as you would a rubbing compound.
5. Buff, turning cloth frequently, until surface is clean and shiny. Let air dry. Use power

buffer to improve ease of use and gloss uniformity.

6. On completely dry, clean and polished surface, generously apply Alcoa sealant (Prévost #683527). Rinse thoroughly with water while surface is still wet in appearance (have water source ready as the dry time is very short, usually less than 2 minutes).
7. For best results, finish by wiping the surface with a clean rag to remove excess water, then allow surface to dry.

Clean aluminum wheels as required to maintain original look.

Warning: Wheel surfaces may have sharp or cutting edges that may cause injury to the hands. To prevent contact with sharp edges, it is strongly recommended to wear rubber gloves when washing or polishing wheels.

5. WHEEL STRAIGHTNESS TEST

1. Slightly raise axle to be checked and place a safety support underneath;
2. Check wheel lateral runout. Install a dial gauge as shown in Figure 3, then rotate the wheel by hand one full turn. As the wheel turns, note any variation on the dial gauge;

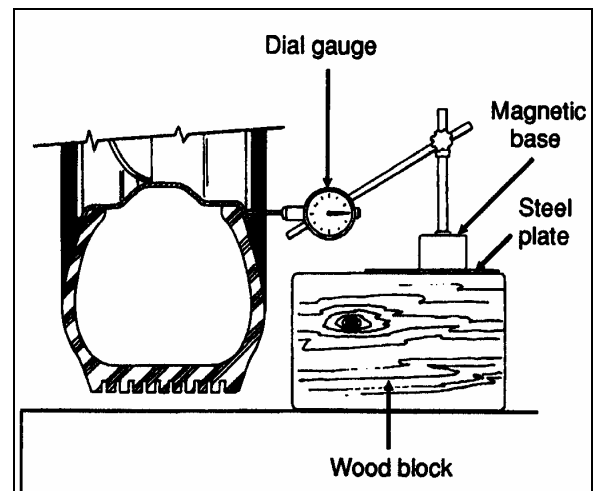


FIGURE 3: DIAL GAUGE INSTALLATION

13008

Caution: Damage to the dial gauge could occur if it strikes a wheel balancing weight.

3. If the variation in lateral runout exceeds 0.0625 inch (1,6 mm), the wheel must be replaced.

Section 13: WHEELS, HUBS & TIRES

If doubt exists whether wheel or hub is distorted, hub may be checked as follows:

- Replace the existing wheel with a wheel known to be correct;
- Check wheel lateral runout as outlined in step 2;
- If, within specifications, the hub is correct but the suspected wheel must be replaced.

Warning: NEVER STRAIGHTEN ALUMINUM WHEELS. Never heat aluminum wheels to repair damages incurred after hitting a curb or resulting from other causes. The special alloy in wheels has been heat treated, and any uncontrolled heating could alter wheel structure. Furthermore, never weld aluminum-forged wheels for any reason whatsoever.

6. WHEEL STUDS

Stripped threads may be the result of excessive torquing or may have been damaged during wheel installation when placing the wheel over the studs. A stud having damaged threads must be replaced. Broken studs are a direct result of operating with loose stud nuts or improperly seated wheels. When a broken stud is replaced, the adjacent studs, on each side of the broken one must also be replaced since they could have been subjected to excessive strain and may be fatigued.

When installing wheel studs to hubs, check nuts retaining the wheel stud to wheel hub and replace if they are deformed, damaged or severely corroded. Install nut (and washer where applicable) to new stud. Torque to 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm).

Note: For stud-mounted wheels, turn nuts counterclockwise on R.H. side of vehicle and clockwise on L.H. side. For hub-mounted wheels, turn nuts counterclockwise on both sides of vehicle.

6.1 DRIVE AXLE STUDS

Stud-mounted wheels are mounted on the drive axle with $\frac{3}{4}$ "-16 studs with an inner cap nut, and a 1-1/8"-16 nut. Hub-mounted wheels are mounted with M22 x 1.5 studs and an M22 flange nut.

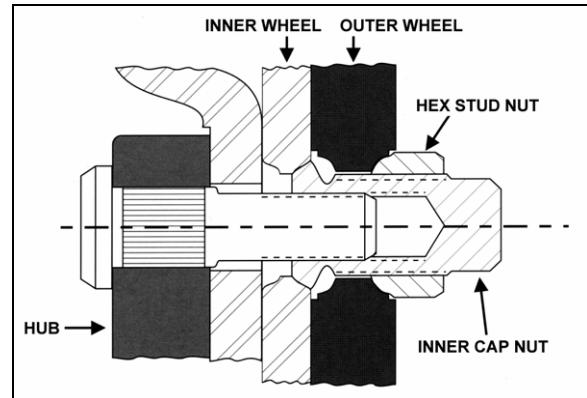


FIGURE 4: STUD-MOUNTED WHEELS

13007

6.2 FRONT AND TAG AXLE STUDS

Wheel can be mounted on tag axle with studs (1-1/8"-16 thread) or hub mounted (M22 x 1.5 thread).

Note: Wheel studs and nuts must be kept free from grease and oil. No lubricant whatsoever should be used.

7. HUB MOUNTED WHEELS

Wheel surfaces in contact with hubs, nuts or other wheels should be kept free of all rust, grease and paint (except for initial "E" coat protection, applied to stop rusting and to facilitate wheel removal). The reason for this is to assure that all faces are clamped together without buildup of any coating. The threads of the wheel studs and the wheel nuts should be clean and undamaged.

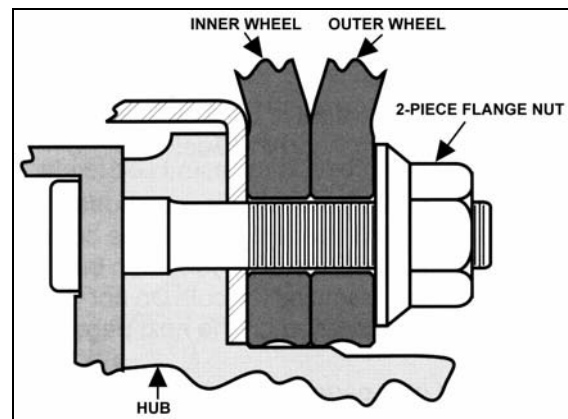


FIGURE 5: HUB-MOUNTED WHEELS

13025

Note: When painting wheels, make sure to mask all surfaces identified above.

Using a calibrated torque wrench, tighten wheel nuts to 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm) of torque. Do not use power tools or long bars for tightening. Tighten wheel nuts alternately as shown in figure 2.

Note: *Tightening should not be done immediately after prolonged braking or when wheel ends are hot.*

Check wheel nut torque at every 100 miles (160 km) for 500 miles (800 km) after fitting wheels. Let cool before checking. If any relaxation of the initial 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm) of torque has occurred, retighten. Relaxation of initial torque may occur because of the "bedding down" of the hub and wheel surfaces.

Note: *Torque relaxation occurs when wheel ends are hot but should revert to original setting when cool. Retightening when hot will produce a higher torque reading than recommended.*

7.1 CARE OF WHEELS

Check for cracks in wheels, especially around the fixing holes, studs, nuts and washers. If in doubt, renew.

Do not simply retighten very loose wheel fixings or wheels that are continually becoming loose. Find out why they are loose and whether any damage has been caused.

Use trained personnel and keep records of all attention to wheels and fixings, including which parts were renewed and when.

8. FRONT AND TAG AXLE WHEEL HUBS

The unitized hub bearings used on the NDS range of axles, are non-serviceable items. Bearings are pre-adjusted, lubricated and have seals fitted as part of the manufacturing process. The bearings are greased for life and there is no need or facility for re-lubrication

8.1 HUB BEARING INSPECTION

An inspection should be made at intervals of 30,000 miles (48 000 km).

- Apply parking brake, raise wheels off the ground and support axle on stands. When the wheels are raised, they should revolve quite freely without roughness.
- Place magnetic base of a dial indicator on brake caliper and position dial indicator stem

against a convenient marked spot on face of hub flange.

- With dial indicator in position pull hard but steadily on hub flange and oscillate at same time until a steady reading is achieved.
- Without releasing the pressure, turn bearing so that dial indicator stem contacts marked spot and note reading on indicator.
- Push bearing flange hard and oscillate as before until a steady reading is achieved.
- Without releasing the pressure, turn bearing so that indicator stem again contacts the marked spot and note new reading on indicator.
- The difference between readings is the amount of mounted end play in bearing unit.
- The mounted end play figure should not exceed 0.050 mm for a new bearing.

Note: *If original bearing unit is re-fitted, and end-float is measured at 1 mm, with hub not fully tightened to correct torque, then the retaining clip within the unit is damaged and a new unit must be fitted.*

Note: *For more information on front and tag axle wheel hub, refer to "DANA SPICER Maintenance Manual Model NDS and Maintenance Manual NDS Axles" annexed at the end of Section 10.*

Note: *For vehicles equipped with Independent Front Suspension, refer to Section 16 "Suspension".*

9. DRIVE AXLE WHEEL HUBS

Drive wheels use a single oil-seal assembly. They are lubricated from the oil supply in the differential housing. Bearings are tapered rollers, adjustable to compensate wear. Maintain differential oil level with general-purpose gear lubricant (refer to Section 24 "Lubrication" for proper oil grade selection) to ensure adequate oil supply to wheel bearings at all times.

9.1 BEARING ADJUSTMENT

To adjust drive wheel bearings:

1. Raise vehicle until both dual wheels can be turned freely (approximately 6 inches from the ground). Position jack stands under drive axle, then lower vehicle approximately 2

Section 13: WHEELS, HUBS & TIRES

inches in order to avoid entire weight of the axle being supported by the suspension air bellows and the shock absorber pins.

2. Remove axle shaft as indicated in "Meritor - Maintenance Manual No. 5" under heading "Single Reduction Differential Carriers" annexed to "Section 11" of this manual. Remove gaskets. Unscrew lock nut and remove adjusting nut lock ring.
3. To adjust, tighten adjusting nut until the wheel binds. Rotate the wheel while tightening so that all surfaces are in proper contact. Back off adjusting nut approximately, $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{1}{3}$ turn to assure 0.001/0.007" (0.0254/0.1778 mm) endplay and to ensure that wheel turns freely. Replace the lock ring, and adjust nut dowel pin in one of the holes. The ring may be turned over if necessary to allow more accurate bearing adjustment.
4. Tighten lock nut and check bearing adjustment. Replace the axle shaft using a new gasket.

9.2 DISASSEMBLY AND REPAIR

1. Jack vehicle as per "Bearing Adjustment" and remove axle shaft as indicated in "Meritor - Maintenance Manual No. 5" entitled "Single Reduction Differential Carriers" annexed to Section 11 of this manual.
2. Remove wheels and tires.

Caution: Always mark position of the wheel on the axle before removal, to replace wheel at the same location, thus avoiding a new wheel balancing.

3. Remove lock nut, lock ring and adjusting nut from axle housing to prevent the outer bearing from falling out. Remove outer bearing cone and roller assembly.
4. Remove screws attaching inner oil seal retainer to hub, and remove inner oil seal assembly. Remove inner bearing cone and roller assembly. Bearing cups can be separated from the hub using a hammer and a long brass drift.
5. Thoroughly clean all parts. Bearing cone and roller assemblies can be cleaned in a suitable cleaning solvent using a stiff brush to remove old lubricant.

6. In case that excessive wear, deterioration, cracking or pitting is present on the bearing cups, rollers or cones, the bearings should be replaced. Seals should be replaced each time they are removed from the hub. To install new oil seal, use a suitable adapter and drive the seal into the retainer bore until it bottoms.
7. When installing wheel on spindle, center the wheel hub with spindle to avoid damaging the seal with the end of the spindle. Push wheel straight over the spindle until inside diameter of seal press fits on wiper ring. Fill hub cavity with general-purpose gear lubricant (refer to Section 24 "Lubrication" for proper oil grade selection). Lubricate, then install outer bearing cone. Adjust bearing and lock. Assemble axle flange to axle using a new gasket. Apply sealant in stud area. After both wheels have been assembled according to above procedure, fill the differential with the recommended lubricant to the proper factory recommended level.

Note: During regular inspection, do not forget to check lubricant level in differential. Clean thoroughly or replace vent as required.

10. SPARE WHEEL (IF APPLICABLE)

Tire failure is a rare event if tires are properly cared for. In case of a flat tire, move vehicle a safe distance away from traffic and apply parking brake. Remember to use the hazard flashers and according to the Highway Code regulations, set up the triangular reflectors (see "Emergency Warning Reflectors" in the Operator's Manual) at an adequate distance, to warn incoming motorists.

The spare wheel is stored in a dedicated compartment behind the front bumper. To access, pull the release handle located in the front electrical and service compartment. Although the bumper is heavy, sprung hinges permit one person operation.

When closing bumper compartment, make sure bumper is securely installed.

Note: Converted vehicles contain no spare wheel. Access to compartment is also obtained by pulling the release handle located in the front service compartment.

Warning: This compartment has not been designed for storage. Never leave loose objects in this area since they may interfere with steering linkage mechanism. Make sure bumper is safely locked in place after closing the compartment.

10.1 PULLING OUT SPARE WHEEL

To pull out spare wheel, open reclining bumper according to the previous instructions. Loosen and turn the holding chain buckle to release the wheel and dolly assembly. Open the front service compartment, unscrew the wing nut retaining the support and rail extension assembly, and then pull out. Fasten by matching its two holes to the corresponding mounting pins located in front center of spare wheel compartment. Pull out wheel using the strap, and then remove tire covering. Separate wheel from dolly by unscrewing the two mounting wing nuts.

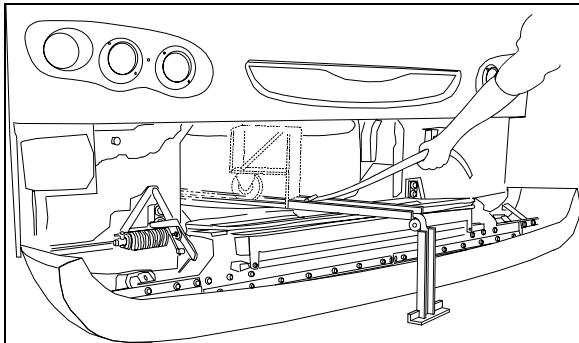


FIGURE 6: SPARE WHEEL COMPARTMENT 13024

Note: Reinstall support and rail extension assemblies then secure wheel with holding chain before moving vehicle.

Note: The jack and wheelnut wrench are stored at right in forward R.H. baggage compartment.

The jack/tools kit stowed in the forward R.H. baggage compartment contains a:

1. 30 ton bottle jack;
2. Wheel nut wrench and lever;
3. Triangular reflectors kit.

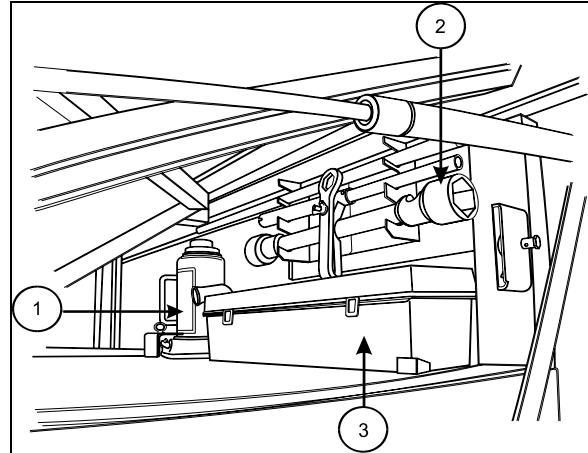


FIGURE 7: FORWARD R.H. SIDE COMPARTMENT 13015

Note: Check the inflation pressure of the spare tire periodically to keep it ready for use. Inflate spare tire to the pressure of the tire, which has the highest pressure on the vehicle. When installing, deflate to correct pressure if necessary.

10.2 CHANGING A FLAT

In case of flat tire, refer to appropriate procedure under "Wheel Maintenance" heading in this section.

Note: For hydraulic jack placement, refer to Section 18 "Body", under heading "Vehicle Jacking Points".

Warning: Place jack on stable and level ground; if necessary, place a board under the jack. Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.

Warning: To prevent personal injury and/or equipment damage, use only the recommended jacking points. Passengers must not remain inside vehicle while wheel is being replaced.

Caution: Adjust tire pressure according to the appropriate cold tire inflation-pressure.

Note: Store damaged wheel in spare tire compartment. Repair and balance the flat tire as soon as possible.

10.3 SPARE WHEEL MAINTENANCE

Maintenance of the spare wheel and tire consists in ensuring that tire inflation pressure is the same as the tire on the coach that has the highest inflation pressure (refer to

Section 13: WHEELS, HUBS & TIRES

“Specifications” in this section for the recommended tire inflation pressure). Inspect rim to ensure that there is no important corrosion. In addition, check if spare wheel covering is in good condition and check that spare tire is securely fastened in compartment.

11. TIRE MAINTENANCE

The most critical factor in tire maintenance is proper inflation (Fig. 8). No tire is impervious to loss of air pressure. To avoid the hazards of under inflation, always maintain tires at their recommended inflation pressure. Improper inflation decreases tire life.

An under inflated tire builds up heat that can cause sudden tire destruction, resulting in improper vehicle handling and possible loss of vehicle control. At least once a week, before driving (when tires are cold), check inflation pressure on all the tires, including the spare tire. This is especially important in cases when different drivers operate the vehicle.

Warning: Failure to maintain correct tire inflation pressure may result in sudden tire destruction, improper vehicle handling, and will cause rapid and irregular tire wear. Inflation pressure should be checked weekly and always before long distance trips.

11.1 INFLATION PRESSURE

The condition and pressure of the tires can greatly affect both useful tire life and road safety.

At regular intervals, verify the tire pressures. Use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking inflation pressures. Never exceed the maximum inflation pressure specified on each tire.

Note: Inflation pressure should be checked when tires are cold. Cold tire inflation pressure can be measured when a vehicle has not been driven for at least 3 hours or less than 1 mile (1.6 km). Driving, even for a short distance, causes tires to heat up and air pressure to increase. Check inflation pressure on all tires (including the spare tire) using an accurate tire gauge.

Note: The recommended tire inflation pressures are given in the applicable documents supplied with the vehicle. In addition, cold tire inflation pressures are listed on the Department of Transport's certification plate, affixed on the panel behind the driver's seat. For special tire selection, a “PRÉVOST COACH SPECIAL SPECIFICATION” chart is supplied with the vehicle and is affixed on the left wall near the driver's seat. Remember, tire inflation pressure must be adjusted according to vehicle loading - see table in “Coach Final Record”

Caution: Never bleed air from hot tires as tires will then be under inflated. Use an accurate tire gauge to check pressures (Do not kick tires as an inflation check. This is an unreliable method).

Caution: These tire pressures are established in accordance with the maximum allowable load on each axle. A lower pressure is recommended if the axle load is less than the above specifications. Weigh vehicle fully loaded and pressurize according to tire manufacturer's recommendations. For other tire and wheel specifications, see Prévost tire pressure tabulation in “Coach Final Record”.

Warning: Incorrect tire pressures cause increased tire wear and adversely affect road holding of the vehicle, which may lead to loss of vehicle control.

Warning: Recommended tire inflation pressures and maximum allowable loads apply to speeds up to 65 mph (105 km/hr). Do not drive vehicle at a higher speed than 65 mph (105 km/h) or above the posted speed limit.

Warning: All tires on the same axle should always be inflated to the same pressure. There should not be a difference in pressure between right and left tires on the same axle. A 5-psi (35-kPa) underinflation in one front tire can not only reduce vehicle maneuverability, but will create steering hazards which can lead to an accident.

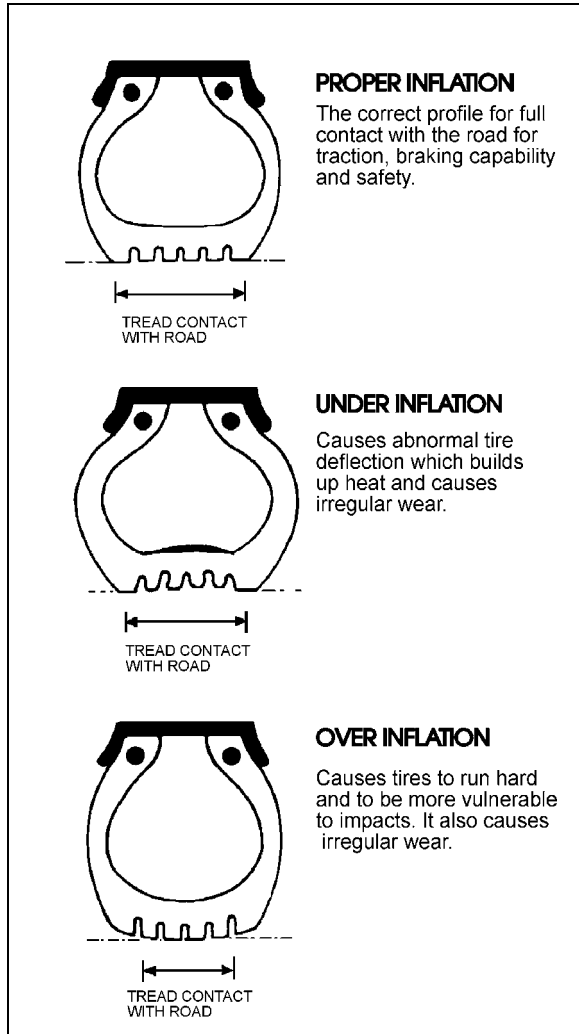


FIGURE 8: TIRE INFLATION

13009

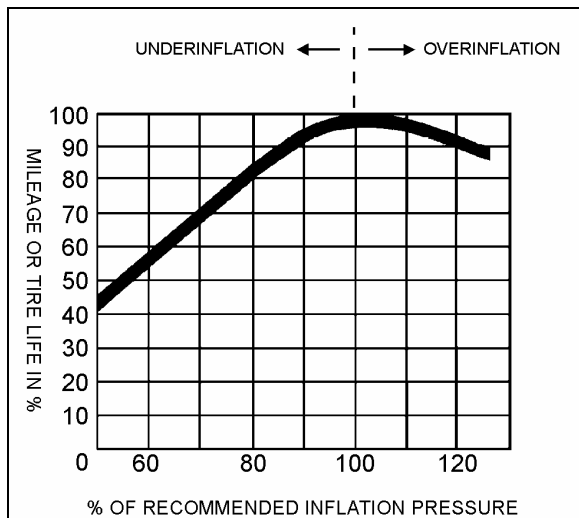


FIGURE 9: TIRE LIFE / INFLATION PRESSURE

13010

11.2 TIRE MATCHING

Unmatched tires on drive axle will cause tire wear and scuffing, as well as possible damage to the drive unit. Consequently, we recommend that tires be matched within 1/8" (3 mm) of the same rolling radius.

Note: It is recommended that all tires on coach be of the same type.

11.3 WHEEL BALANCING

Before balancing, wheels must be clean and free from all foreign matter. The tires should be in good condition and properly mounted. An unbalanced wheel can be due to a bent wheel or improper mounting. Before removing the wheel from the vehicle, check for swaying movement and if necessary, check the wheel lateral runout as outlined under heading "Wheel Straightness Check".

Warning: When balancing wheel and tire assemblies, it is strongly recommended to closely follow instructions covering the operation of wheel balancer.

Caution: A maximum of 16-oz (450 g) of balancing weight is recommended. If more weight is necessary, check and correct the cause.

11.4 TIRE ROTATION

Radial tires should be rotated only when necessary. If the tires are wearing evenly, there is no need to rotate. If irregular wear becomes apparent or if the wear rate on the tires is perceptively different (from axle to axle), then tires should be rotated in such a manner as to alleviate the condition.

Note: There is no restriction on criss-cross rotation.

Section 13: WHEELS, HUBS & TIRES

12. SPECIFICATIONS

STEEL WHEELS (including inner drive axle)

Wheel size..... 9.0" X 22.5"

Wheel nut torque..... 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm)

Tire size..... 315/80 R 22.5 load range "L"

ALUMINUM WHEELS (except inner drive axle wheel on coaches)

Wheel size..... 9" X 22.5"

Wheel nut torque..... 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm)

Tire size..... 315/80 R 22.5 load range "L"

OPTIONAL WHEELS ON VIP (Front & Tag axle)

Wheel size..... 10.5" X 22.5"

Wheel nut torque..... 450 - 500 lbf-ft (610 - 680 Nm)

Tire size..... 365/70 R 22.5

RECOMMENDED TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE AT MAXIMUM LOAD (cold)

Note: Vehicle is delivered with the specific inflation pressure certification plate according to the tire selection.

Warning: Special tire selection may lower maximum allowable speed limit, even below posted speed limit. For maximum safety, check with tire manufacturer.

Caution: In the case of a converted vehicle, weigh fully loaded and pressurize according to tire manufacturer's recommendations.

Warning: Recommended tire inflation pressures and maximum allowable loads apply to speeds up to 65 mph (105 km/hr). Do not drive vehicle at a higher speed than 65 mph (105 km/h) or above the posted speed limit.

ALUMINUM WHEEL CLEANING AND MAINTENANCE PRODUCTS

Aluminum Wheel Cleaner (22 Oz bottle)Prévost #683529

Aluminum Wheel Polish (16 Oz bottle)Prévost #683528

Aluminum Wheel Sealer (13 Oz bottle)Prévost #683527

SECTION 14: STEERING

CONTENTS

1. STEERING SYSTEM	14-3
1.1 DESCRIPTION	14-3
2. POWER STEERING GEAR.....	14-4
2.1 DESCRIPTION	14-4
2.2 POWER STEERING GEAR REMOVAL	14-5
2.3 POWER STEERING GEAR INSTALLATION	14-5
3. BLEEDING POWER STEERING HYDRAULIC SYSTEM.....	14-5
4. HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST	14-5
5. TROUBLESHOOTING	14-5
6. POWER STEERING HYDRAULIC PUMP	14-5
6.1 DESCRIPTION	14-5
6.2 REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION	14-5
6.3 MAINTENANCE	14-6
7. STEERING WHEEL	14-6
7.1 REMOVAL.....	14-6
7.2 INSTALLATION.....	14-6
8. STEERING COLUMN.....	14-6
8.1 REMOVAL.....	14-6
9. TURNING ANGLE ADJUSTMENT	14-6
10. STEERING LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT	14-7
11. PITMAN ARM	14-7
11.1 REMOVAL.....	14-7
11.2 INSTALLATION.....	14-8
11.3 ADJUSTMENT.....	14-8
12. MAINTENANCE.....	14-8
12.1 POWER STEERING RESERVOIR AND FILTER	14-9
12.1.1 Oil Level Check Procedure.....	14-9
12.1.2 Filter Replacement.....	14-9
12.2 STEERING STABILIZER CYLINDER (DAMPER).....	14-10
12.3 DRAG LINK	14-10
12.4 POWER STEERING HYDRAULIC PUMP	14-10
13. DRIVING TIPS.....	14-10
14. TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS.....	14-11
15. SPECIFICATIONS	14-12

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: STEERING SYSTEM AXLE SETUP.....	14-3
FIGURE 2: POWER STEERING GEAR	14-4
FIGURE 3: FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT	14-4
FIGURE 4: STEERING COLUMN.....	14-6
FIGURE 5: PITMAN ARM ADJUSTMENT	14-7
FIGURE 6: FIXING NUT PUNCH MARK.....	14-8
FIGURE 7: HYDRAULIC FLUID RESERVOIR LOCATION	14-9
FIGURE 8: POWER STEERING FLUID RESERVOIR	14-9
FIGURE 9: STEERING STABILIZER (DAMPER)	14-10
FIGURE 10: DRAG LINK COMPONENTS	14-11
FIGURE 11: TIE ROD END.....	14-11
FIGURE 12: FRONT AXLE COMPONENTS.....	14-11

1. STEERING SYSTEM

1.1 DESCRIPTION

The steering system consists of the steering wheel and column assembly, a vane-type hydraulic pump, reservoir, filter, interconnecting system lines and hoses, integral power steering gear, linkage and steering damper (Fig. 1). The steering linkage includes the pitman arm, drag link, steering arm, tie rod arms and tie rod.

Hydraulic components are added to transmit, increase and regulate steering control forces.

These elements are:

1. Steering stabilizer (damper);
2. A vane type hydraulic pump; and
3. Hydraulic reservoir and hoses.

The steering stabilizer reduces road shocks and vibrations in the system. The steering gearbox is self powered and provides movement with power assistance to the left wheel.

Steering stability and tire wear are influenced by wheels, hubs, tires, air suspension, brakes, front suspension and front end alignment which are all covered in their respective sections in this manual.

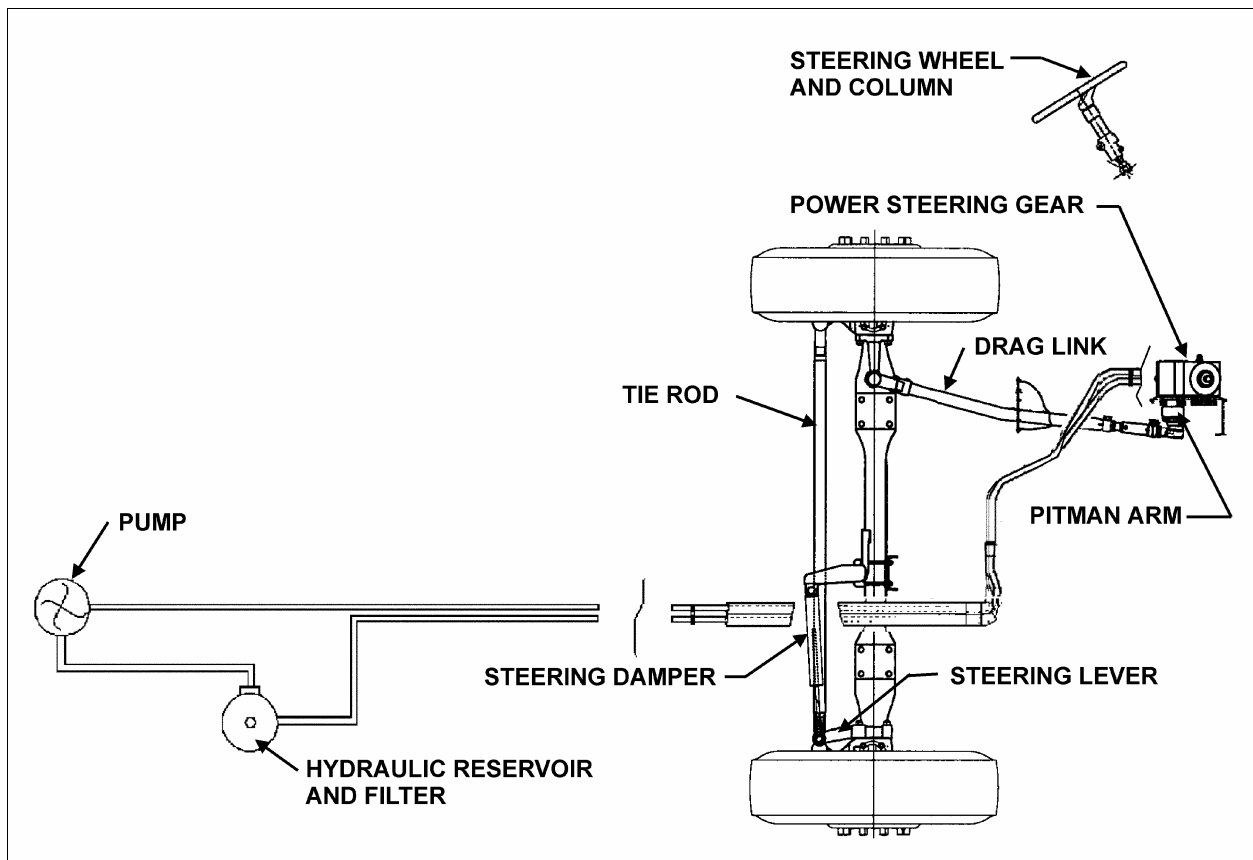


FIGURE 1: STEERING SYSTEM AXLE SETUP

14041

2. POWER STEERING GEAR

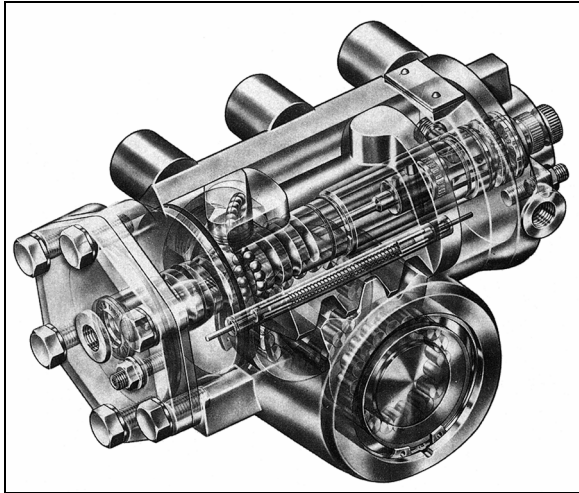


FIGURE 2: POWER STEERING GEAR

14035

2.1 DESCRIPTION

The power steering gear is located in the lower part of front service compartment (Figs. 2 & 3). The housing of the ZF-Servocom contains a control valve, working cylinder and a complete mechanical steering gear. The pressure oil for the steering is delivered by a motor-driven oil pump which is supplied with oil from an oil tank.

The housing is designed as a cylinder for the piston, which converts the rotation of the steering shaft and the worm into an axial movement and transfers this to the steering worm sector shaft. The serration of the sector shaft is straight-cut with a high surface quality in such a way that it is only possible to set a unique setting without play on installation in the straight-ahead driving area by means of the two eccentrically designed lateral housing covers.

The piston and worm are connected via a ball chain. When the worm is turned, the balls are collected by a circulating pipe at one end of the chain and fed in again at the other end, thus producing an endless ball chain.

The control valve consists of the valve slide in a needle bearing in the worm, with six control grooves on the circumference and the control sleeve on the worm, which also has six control grooves. The valve slide, designed with steering shaft connection, turns together with the worm as the steering wheel is turned.

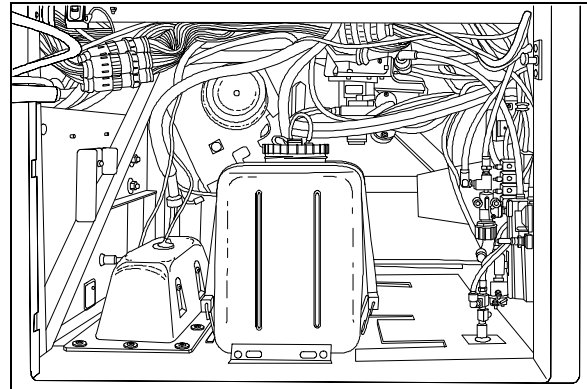


FIGURE 3: FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT

14050

A torsion bar, which is pinned with the valve slide and the worm, keeps the control valve in the neutral position as long as no opposing force is applied to the steering wheel. The steering housing contains a pressure relief valve, which limits the discharge pressure of the oil pump to the maximum value required. A replenishing valve can also be used, through which oil is sucked from the return if steering is not hydraulically boosted.

Compared with constant ratio, steering versions with variable ratio are more directly designed in the center area than outside the center area. The resulting smaller steering corrections benefit steering behavior in straight-ahead driving. At the same time, the indirect transmission means that there is a higher hydraulic torque available at the steering arm in parking movement. If the hydraulic assistance fails, the operating forces on the steering wheel are correspondingly lower in this area. This is achieved through a piston/steering worm sector shaft serration with differing modulus and angle of pressure.

Upon transfer of a torque from the steering shaft to the worm, or vice versa, the torsion bar is deformed in the elastic area so that there is torsion between the valve slide and the control sleeve. When the steering wheel is released, the torsion bar ensures that the valve is returned to the neutral position.

Refer to the "ZF-SERVOCOM Repair Manual" and "ZF-SERVOCOM Operating, Servicing /Maintenance and Inspection Instructions" annexed to this section for the functional aspects and maintenance procedure of the steering gear.

Note: Also available is the ZF-Servocomtronic, which provides variable assistance in function of speed.

2.2 POWER STEERING GEAR REMOVAL

Warning: The steering gearbox weighs approximately 100 lbs (45 kg) dry. Exercise caution when maneuvering.

1. Put a container into place, then disconnect both the inlet and outlet hoses from the power steering gear. Cover fittings to prevent fluid contamination.
2. Mark both the pitman arm and sector shaft with a line, then remove pitman arm. Refer to "11.1 Pitman Arm Removal" procedure.
3. Mark both the steering shaft universal joint yoke and steering gear input shaft with a line, then disconnect universal joint.
4. Unscrew and remove the power steering gear.

2.3 POWER STEERING GEAR INSTALLATION

Reverse "Power Steering Gear Removal" procedure paying particular attention to the following:

1. Tighten fasteners as recommended under paragraph 14: "TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS".
2. Bleed air from the system as per step 3, next.

3. BLEEDING POWER STEERING HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

To bleed the power steering hydraulic system, refer to the "ZF-SERVOCOM REPAIR MANUAL" annexed to this section, under heading "SETTING AND FUNCTIONAL TEST".

4. HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST

Perform a pressure test as outlined in the "ZF-SERVOCOM REPAIR MANUAL" annexed to this section under heading "SETTING AND FUNCTIONAL TEST".

5. TROUBLESHOOTING

Perform troubleshooting of the steering gear as outlined in the "ZF-SERVOCOM REPAIR MANUAL", the "ZF-SERVOCOM Operating, Servicing/Maintenance and Inspection Instructions" and the "TRW - POWER STEERING PUMP SERVICE MANUAL" and the "TRW - CHART YOUR WAY TO EASY STEERING" guide annexed to this section.

Note: For vehicles equipped with ZF-SERVOCOMTRONIC unit, refer to the supplement to the repair manual ZF-SERVOCOM.

6. POWER STEERING HYDRAULIC PUMP

6.1 DESCRIPTION

The power steering pump is a vane type, gear driven, hydraulic unit which supplies hydraulic pressure for the operation of the steering gear. The pump is mounted on the engine, on the crankshaft pulley's R.H. side.

6.2 REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

The pump is accessible through the engine compartment rear door.

To remove the pump, proceed as follows:

1. Put an empty container directly below pump, then disconnect both the inlet and outlet hoses from the pump. Block fitting cavities to prevent fluid contamination.
2. Remove the two (2) mounting screws, then slowly pry out the pump.
3. Remove and discard gasket.

Caution: Inspect the drive coupling thoroughly, and replace if necessary (the drive coupling is a fiber component located between the engine and the pump).

For pump installation, reverse the removal procedure paying particular attention to the following:

Caution: Ensure that drive coupling is correctly positioned before reinstalling the pump.

Section 14: STEERING

1. Install a new gasket (Prévost P/N 510488).
2. Bleed air from the system as per step 3, "*Bleeding Power Steering Hydraulic System*".

6.3 MAINTENANCE

Refer to the "*ZF-SERVOCOM REPAIR MANUAL*" and the "*TRW - POWER STEERING PUMP SERVICE MANUAL*" annexed to this section.

7. STEERING WHEEL

7.1 REMOVAL

1. Set the battery master switch located in the R.H. side rear service compartment, or in the engine compartment to the "OFF" position.
2. Using a tool, such as a small flat head screwdriver, pry off the air horn cap.
3. Loosen the small screw in center of cap and the other retaining the black wire, then disconnect the white terminal. Remove horn cap.
4. Loosen and remove the steering wheel nut.
5. Using a suitable puller, remove the steering wheel.

7.2 INSTALLATION

To install, reverse the removal procedure. Torque steering wheel nut to 35-45 lbf-ft (47-60 Nm).

8. STEERING COLUMN

8.1 REMOVAL

To disassemble the steering column from system, refer to Figure 4. The steering column has no lubrication points. The lower steering column U-joint is easily accessible through the front service compartment. The upper steering column U-joint and the steering slip joint are accessible from the front driver's area. To access these joints, proceed as follows:

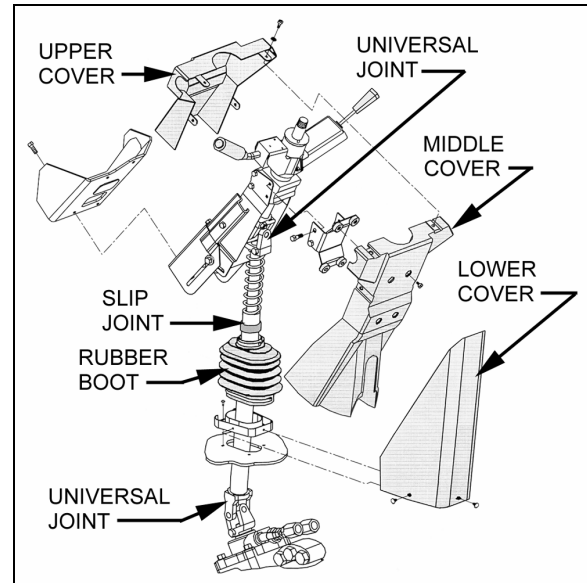


FIGURE 4: STEERING COLUMN

14040

1. From the front driver's compartment area, remove the three plastic fasteners on steering column lower cover. Remove the lower cover (Fig. 4).
2. Unscrew the four retaining screws on steering column middle cover.
3. Unscrew the four retaining screws fixing steering column upper cover to middle cover. Remove the steering column middle and upper covers.
4. Position the steering wheel in order to gain access to the joints.

9. TURNING ANGLE ADJUSTMENT

The maximum turning angle is set through two (2) steering stop screws installed on the axle center. Steering stop screws are factory adjusted to accommodate the chassis design, and therefore, do not require adjustment on new vehicles. However, these should be checked and adjusted if necessary, any time a steering system component is repaired, disassembled or adjusted. Refer to section 10 "*FRONT AXLE*" under heading "*6.4 TURNING ANGLE ADJUSTMENT*".

Caution: To prevent the steering damper from interfering with the adjustment of turning angles, make sure its fixing bracket is at correct location on the axle (refer to "12.2 Steering Stabilizer Cylinder (Damper)").

Hydraulic Stop

Caution: Reduce or shut off the power steering hydraulic pressure before the boss on the axle touches the stop screw. If not, the components of the front axle will be damaged (refer to "ZF-SERVOCOM REPAIR MANUAL" and "ZF-SERVOCOM Operating, Servicing/Maintenance and Inspection Instructions" annexed to this section, under heading "SETTING THE STEERING LIMITER").

Caution: Never maintain the relief pressure for more than 5 seconds, since damage to the power steering pump may occur.

10. STEERING LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT

The steering linkage includes the pitman arm, drag link, steering arm, tie rod arms and tie rod.

Perform lubrication according to "DANA SPICER NDS Axles Lubrication and Maintenance" annexed to section 10 "FRONT AXLE".

Drag link ends are provided with grease fittings. Under normal conditions, these should be serviced every 6,250 miles (10 000 km). Refer to section 24 "LUBRICATION".

Steering linkage pivot points should be checked each time they are lubricated. Looseness can be visually detected while rotating the steering wheel in both directions. Replace defective parts.

Caution: Front wheel alignment should be checked and adjusted if necessary, any time a component of the steering system is repaired, disassembled or adjusted. Refer to section 10 "FRONT AXLE" under heading 6. "FRONT WHEEL ALIGNMENT".

11. PITMAN ARM

11.1 REMOVAL

1. Remove cotter pin, nut and washers from drag link ball stud at pitman arm.
2. Disconnect drag link from pitman arm, using jaw style pullers (pressure screw type).

Warning: Always wear approved eye protection when operating pullers.

Caution: Do not drive (hammer in) pitman arm on or off pitman shaft as this can damage the steering gear.

Caution: Heating of components to aid in disassembly is not allowed because it has a detrimental effect on axle components and steering linkages.

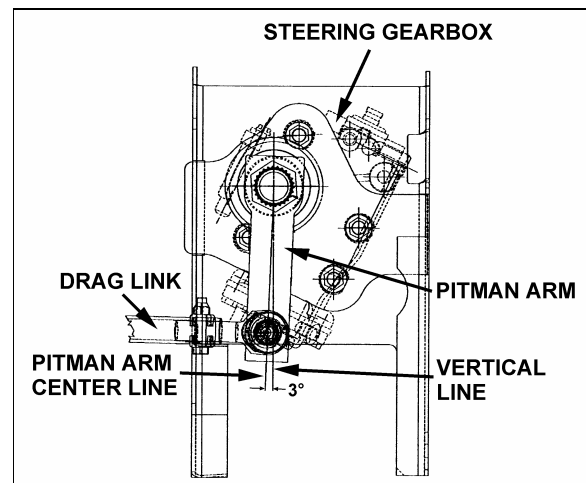


FIGURE 5: PITMAN ARM ADJUSTMENT

14052

3. Using a cold chisel, undo punch mark that locks fixing nut to the pitman arm.
4. Remove pitman arm fixing nut.
5. Check the radial position of the pitman arm in relation to the sector shaft prior to removal of pitman arm.
6. Add reference marks to the arm and shaft if necessary to ensure correct alignment at reassembly.
7. You must use a puller to remove pitman arm.

Section 14: STEERING

11.2 INSTALLATION

1. Position pitman arm on sector gear shaft with reference marks aligned.
2. Install fixing nut (Prévost #661050). Tighten nut to 400-450 lbf-ft (545-610 Nm).

Note: Use a new nut if the previously removed nut was punched.

3. Lock nut with sector shaft using a punch mark into the groove (refer to figure 6).

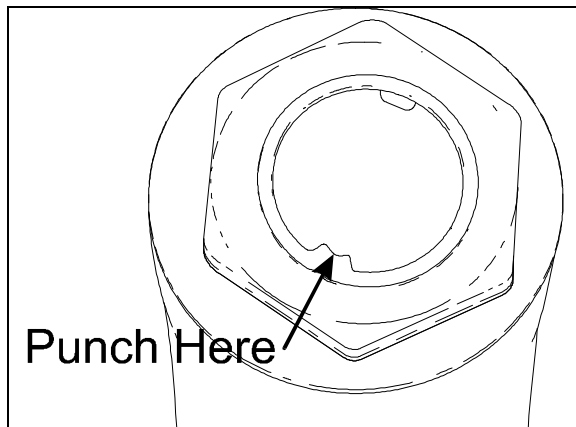


FIGURE 6: FIXING NUT PUNCH MARK

16098

4. Connect drag link to pitman arm while ensuring that rubber stabilizer is in place on the rod end. Install washers. Tighten nut to 160-215 lbf-ft (220-290 Nm). Afterwards, install a new cotter pin.

Caution: Input shaft marks must be aligned before adjusting pitman arm.

11.3 ADJUSTMENT

1. Disconnect the drag link from pitman arm. Center steering wheel by dividing the total number of steering wheel turns in two. Scribe a reference mark on steering gearbox at the center previously determined.
2. Using a protractor, check the angle of the pitman arm (refer to Fig. 5 for details).
3. The pitman arm should be adjusted to an angle of 3° in relation with the vertical axis (towards rear of vehicle). If not, unscrew and remove fixing nut. Remove the pitman arm according to the procedure outlined under previous heading "Pitman arm removal". Adjust to the proper angle.

4. When adjustment is achieved, replace fixing nut and torque to 400-450 lbf-ft (545-610 Nm).

12. MAINTENANCE

The power steering system requires little maintenance. However, the system should be kept clean to ensure maximum operating performance and troublefree service. Periodic inspections should also be made to check for leakage and all parts for damage or distortion. Insure all fasteners are tight (see "14. SPECIFICATIONS" for recommended tightening torques).

When the slightest evidence of dirt, sludge or water is discovered in the system, disconnect fluid lines at the power steering gear to drain the system. Drain and refill the system with "Dexron-II" or "Dexron-III" automatic transmission oil.

Air in the hydraulic system will cause spongy action and noisy operation. When a hose has been disconnected or when fluid has been lost for any reason, the system must be bled. Bleed system as outlined under heading 3: "BLEEDING POWER STEERING HYDRAULIC SYSTEM".

Warning: Do not operate the pump without fluid in the power steering fluid reservoir.

If the steering linkage between the steering gear and the two front wheels is not properly adjusted, or if it is bent, twisted or worn, the steering of the vehicle will be seriously impaired. Whenever a steering linkage part is repaired, replaced or adjusted, steering geometry and front wheel alignment must be checked and necessary corrections made. Refer to section 10 "FRONT AXLE" under heading 6: "FRONT WHEEL ALIGNMENT".

At regular lubrication intervals, the steering linkage should be thoroughly inspected for worn or loose components.

After the vehicle has been operated continually and high mileage figures have been reached, overhaul of the various steering units will be required. General overhaul procedure normally requires removal of the entire assembly, cleaning and inspection of all parts and final assembly. Careful inspection of all parts during overhaul is very important and must not be neglected.

Lubrication fittings must all be cleaned before applying lubricant. Moreover, always be sure the equipment used in applying lubricant is clean. Every precaution should be taken to prevent entry of dirt, grit, lint or other foreign matter into lubricant containers. Replace fittings that have become broken or damaged. Lubrication intervals, as well as the recommended lubricants for the steering components, are given in the "LUBRICATION AND SERVICING SCHEDULE" in Section 24 of this manual. The intervals given in the schedule are recommended for normal service. More frequent intervals may be required under severe operating conditions.

12.1 POWER STEERING RESERVOIR AND FILTER

The power steering reservoir is located on R.H. side of engine compartment, on front wall and accessible through the engine compartment R.H. side door. (Fig. 7).

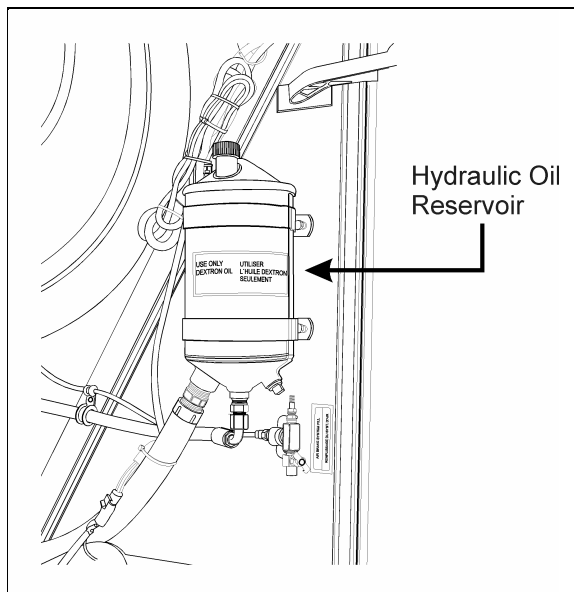


FIGURE 7: HYDRAULIC FLUID RESERVOIR LOCATION
14043

At regular intervals, fluid level should be checked in the reservoir and filter assembly. Furthermore, the oil filter cartridge element in the power steering reservoir should be replaced every 50,000 miles (80 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

12.1.1 Oil Level Check Procedure

1. Stop engine. Open engine compartment R.H. side door.
2. Unscrew and remove the dipstick located on top of reservoir and wipe with a clean rag.
3. Insert dipstick in reservoir. Remove it again to check fluid level (Fig. 8).
4. Adjust level to "FULL" mark using proper dipstick side depending on fluid temperature, use "Dexron-IIe or Dexron-III" automatic transmission oil.
5. Reinsert and tighten the dipstick.

12.1.2 Filter Replacement

1. Unscrew and remove the cover nut located on top of the power steering reservoir.
2. Remove the reservoir cover and the gasket.
3. Remove the retaining spring and finally the filter cartridge element.

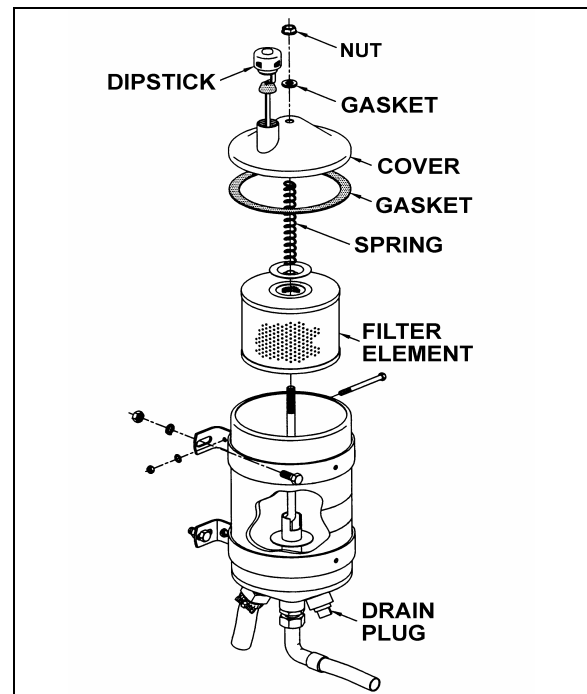


FIGURE 8: POWER STEERING FLUID RESERVOIR 14018A

Section 14: STEERING

12.2 STEERING STABILIZER CYLINDER (DAMPER)

The steering damper is located on R.H. side, at back of front axle (Fig.9).

The cylinder is nonadjustable and non-repairable. Check for oil leaks or lack of resistance. Disconnect the cylinder from axle, then carefully attempt to extend and collapse it manually.

The rod end (ball joint) is provided with a grease fitting. Under normal conditions, it should be serviced every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) or twice a year, whichever comes first. Good quality lithium-base grease NLGI No. 1 and 2 are recommended (refer to section 24 "LUBRICATION"). Check the ball joint for wear, and replace if necessary.

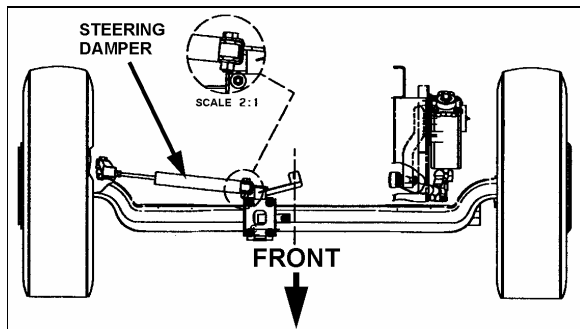


FIGURE 9: STEERING STABILIZER (DAMPER)

14053

12.3 DRAG LINK

Lubricate the fittings every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) or twice a year, whichever comes first. Good quality lithium-base grease NLGI No. 1 and 2 are recommended (refer to section 24 "LUBRICATION").

12.4 POWER STEERING HYDRAULIC PUMP

For maintenance of the power steering hydraulic pump, refer to the "TRW - POWER STEERING PUMP SERVICE MANUAL" annexed to this section.

13. DRIVING TIPS

In order to maximize power steering pump service life, do not attempt to turn the steering wheel when the vehicle is stationary, and especially when service brakes are applied (wheel locking will oppose the effect of steering geometry which tends to make the front wheels rotate in opposite directions).

Persisting in turning, or maintaining the steering wheel with an extra effort, could make the hydraulic system work at the relief pressure, and consequently, cause the hydraulic fluid to become overheated.

Caution: Never maintain the hydraulic system at the relief pressure for longer than 5/10 seconds to avoid damaging the power steering pump.

Note: Unequal or low tire pressure, oversize tires, and vehicle overloading are some of the causes that may increase steering effort.

14. TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

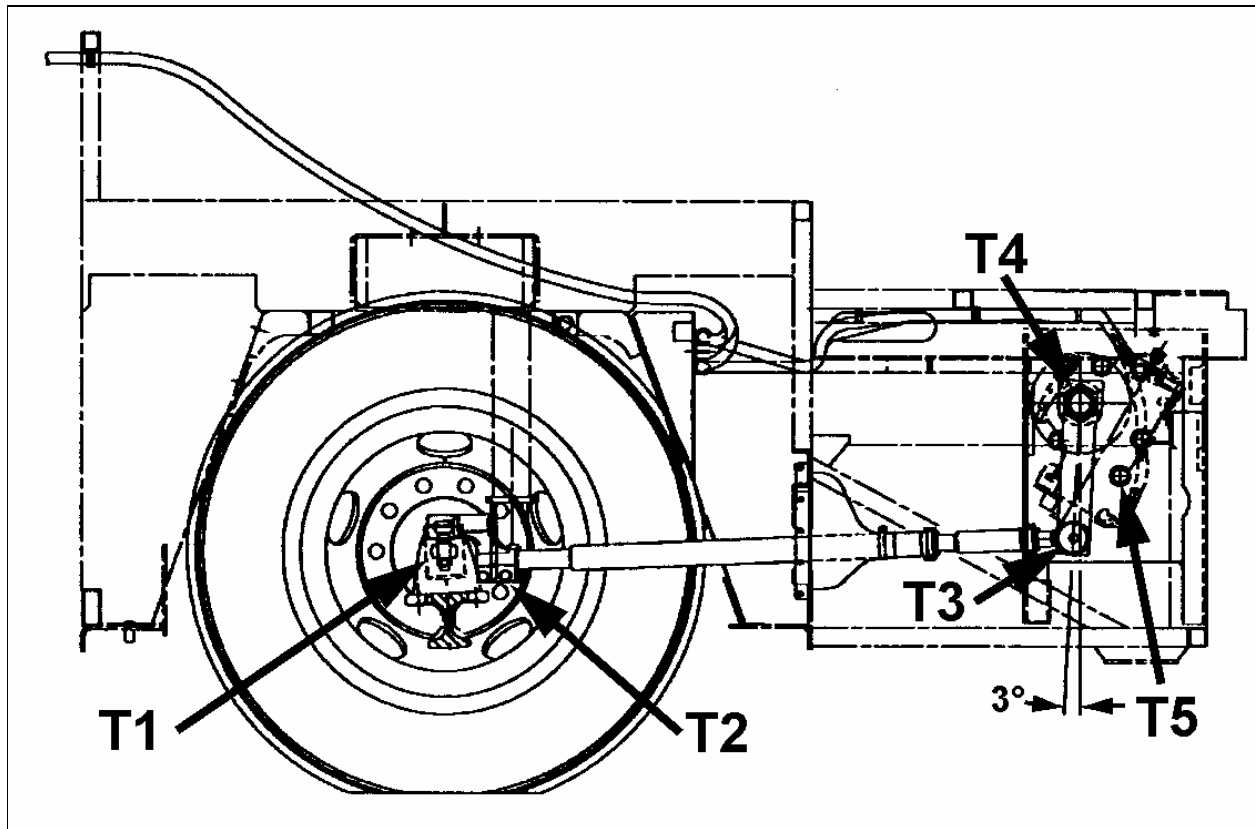


FIGURE 10: DRAG LINK COMPONENTS

14054

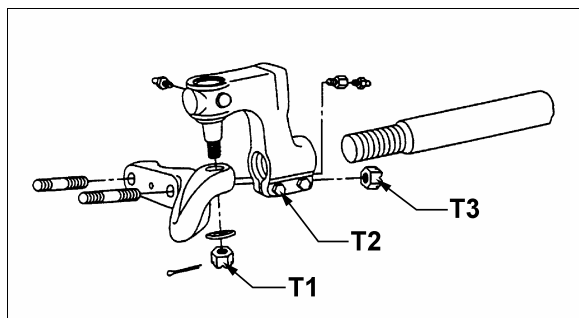


FIGURE 11: TIE ROD END

14036

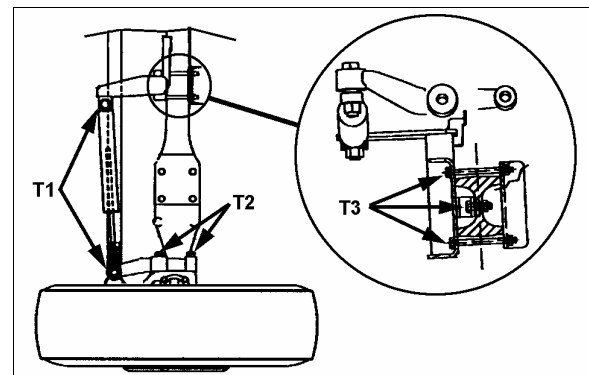


FIGURE 12: FRONT AXLE COMPONENTS

14055

Section 14: STEERING

DRY TORQUES			
Description	Reference	Lbf-ft	Nm
Drag Link End Stud Nut (on steering arm)	Fig. 10, T1	160-300	220-410
Drag Link End Pinch Bolt Nuts	Fig. 10, T2	50-65	70-90
Drag Link End Stud Nut (on pitman arm)	Fig. 10, T3	160-215	220-290
Pitman Arm Fixing Nut	Fig. 10, T4	400-450	545-610
Tie Rod End Screw Pin Nut	Fig. 11, T1	100-175	135-240
Tie Rod End Pinch bolt Nuts	Fig. 11, T2	65-75	90-100
Lower Lever Stud Nuts	Fig.11, T3	190-275	260-375
Steering Stabilizer (damper) Fixing Nuts	Fig. 12, T1	100-120	135-165
Steering Top Lever Nuts	Fig. 12, T2	150-200	205-275
Steering Damper Mounting Support Nuts	Fig. 12, T3	65-70	90-95

TORQUE (LUBRICATED WITH LOCTITE #242 BLUE)			
Description	Reference	Lbf-ft	Nm
Steering Gear Fixing Bolts (4)	Fig. 10, T5	265-310	360-420

15. SPECIFICATIONS**Power Steering Gear**

Make ZF-SERVOCOMTRONIC
Model 8098
Supplier number 8098-988-571
Prevost number 661044
F.E.W 16,600 lbs (7 545 kg)
Pressure rating 2,175 psi (150 Bar)
Gear ratio (center) 22.2 : 1
Gear ratio (extremities) 26.2 : 1
Minimum pump flow for 1.5 hwt/sec..... 4.22 gpm (16 lpm)

Power Steering Gear

MakeZF-SERVOCOM
 Model 8098
 Supplier number 8098-988-570
 Prevost number 661045
 F.E.W 16,600 lbs (7 545 kg)
 Pressure rating 2,175 psi (150 Bar)
 Gear ratio (center) 22.2 : 1
 Gear ratio (extremities) 26.2 : 1
 Minimum pump flow for 1.5 hwt/sec 4.22 gpm (16 lpm)

Power Steering Pump

MakeTRW
 Type PS Series
 Relief valve setting 2,175 psi (14 990 kPa)
 Controlled flow rate 4.23 gpm (16 lpm)
 Inlet port 1 1/4 NPT
 Outlet port 3/4-16 straight thread SAE O' ring boss conn.
 Supplier number PS251615L10200
 Prevost number 661009
 Gasket - Supplier number 23516100
 Gasket - Prevost number 510488

Power Steering Reservoir

Make Nelson Muffler
 Oil capacity 4 US qts (3.7 liters)
 Supplier number 91410A
 Prevost number 660982
 Make Nelson Muffler
 Element filter - Supplier number 83804 E
 Element filter - Prevost number 660987

Steering Stabilizer Cylinder (Damper)

MakeArvin
 Extended length 32.73±0.12"
 Collapsed length 20.26±0.12"
 Stroke 12.47±0.12"
 Supplier number 651535
 Prevost number 660979
 Dust cap - Prevost number 660980

SECTION 16: SUSPENSION

CONTENTS

1. DESCRIPTION	16-3
2. AIR SPRINGS	16-4
2.1 INSPECTION	16-4
2.2 REMOVAL	16-4
2.3 INSTALLATION	16-5
3. SHOCK ABSORBERS	16-5
3.1 INSPECTION	16-5
3.2 REMOVAL	16-6
3.3 INSTALLATION	16-6
4. RADIUS RODS	16-7
4.1 INSPECTION	16-7
4.2 REMOVAL	16-7
4.3 BUSHING REMOVAL	16-7
4.4 BUSHING INSTALLATION	16-7
4.5 INSTALLATION	16-8
5. SWAY BAR	16-8
5.1 REMOVAL	16-9
5.2 INSTALLATION	16-9
6. SUSPENSION AIR SYSTEM	16-9
6.1 INSPECTION	16-9
6.2 AIR LINE TEST	16-9
6.3 AIR TANK MAINTENANCE	16-9
7. SUSPENSION HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT	16-9
8. HEIGHT CONTROL VALVES	16-10
8.1 MAINTENANCE	16-11
8.1.1 <i>Removal and installation</i>	16-11
8.1.2 <i>Air leakage test</i>	16-11
9. FRONT KNEELING SYSTEM	16-11
9.1 PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION	16-12
9.2 MAINTENANCE	16-12
9.3 BELLOWS CONTROL SOLENOID VALVES	16-12
9.3.1 <i>Removal and installation</i>	16-12
10. HIGH-BUOY SYSTEM	16-12
10.1 PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION	16-12
10.2 MAINTENANCE	16-12
10.3 HIGH-BUOY – PRESSURE REGULATOR	16-13
10.3.1 <i>Adjustment</i>	16-13
10.3.2 <i>Disassembly</i>	16-13
10.3.3 <i>Cleaning</i>	16-13

Section 16: SUSPENSION

10.3.4 Reassembly.....	16-13
11. LOW-BUOY SYSTEM	16-14
11.1 PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION	16-14
11.2 MAINTENANCE	16-14
12. TROUBLESHOOTING.....	16-14
13. PARTS SPECIFICATIONS	16-14
14. TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS.....	16-16

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: FRONT SUSPENSION COMPONENTS.....	16-3
FIGURE 2: DETAILS OF FRONT SUSPENSION	16-3
FIGURE 3: REAR SUSPENSION COMPONENTS.....	16-3
FIGURE 4: DETAILS OF REAR SUSPENSION	16-4
FIGURE 5: TAG AXLE SUSPENSION	16-4
FIGURE 6: AIR SPRING.....	16-4
FIGURE 7: SHOCK ABSORBER.....	16-6
FIGURE 8: TYPICAL SHOCK ABSORBER SETUP.....	16-6
FIGURE 9: TYPICAL RADIUS ROD SETUP	16-7
FIGURE 10: RADIUS ROD BUSHING REMOVAL	16-7
FIGURE 11: RADIUS ROD BUSHING INSTALLATION	16-8
FIGURE 12: RADIUS ROD INSTALLATION	16-8
FIGURE 13: FRONT & DRIVE AXLE SWAY BAR.....	16-8
FIGURE 14: TYPICAL AIR SPRING CLEARANCE	16-10
FIGURE 15: HEIGHT CONTROL VALVE	16-10
FIGURE 16: AIR PRESSURE REGULATOR	16-13

1. DESCRIPTION

The vehicle is provided with an air suspension system. The system consists of air springs, height control valves, radius rods, sway bars, tripod and shock absorbers (Fig. 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5). The system operation is fully automatic and maintains a constant vehicle height regardless of load, or load distribution.

The vehicle can also be equipped with systems such as:

- Front Kneeling (w/ Front High-Buoy);
- Front Kneeling (w/ Full High-Buoy);
- Front Kneeling (w/ Front High-Buoy) and Low-Buoy Combination;
- Front Kneeling (w/ Full High-Buoy) and Low-Buoy Combination;

For a description of each of these systems, refer to the appropriate heading in this section.

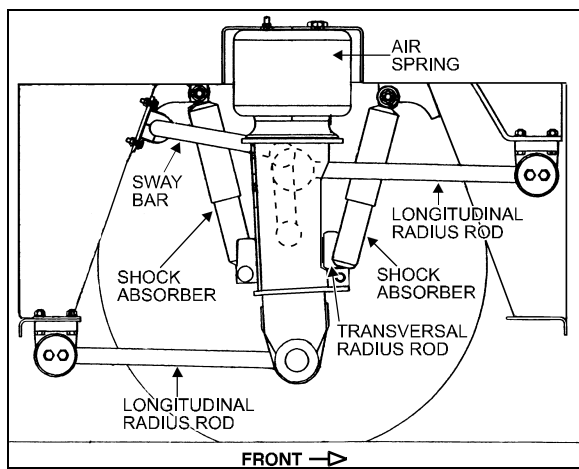


FIGURE 1: FRONT SUSPENSION COMPONENTS 16002

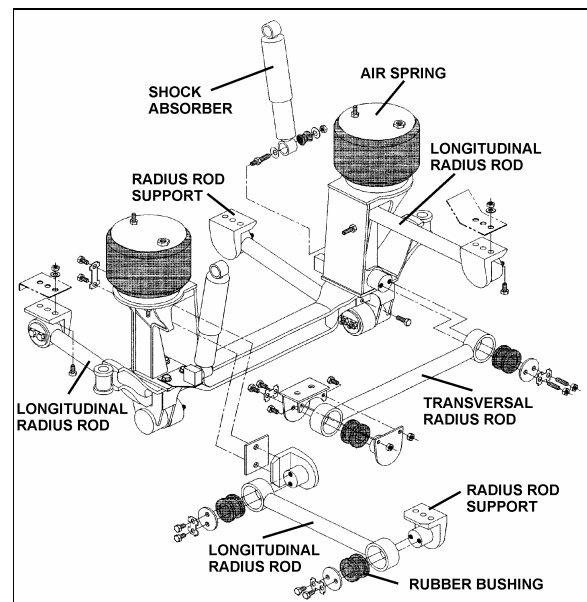


FIGURE 2: DETAILS OF FRONT SUSPENSION 16105

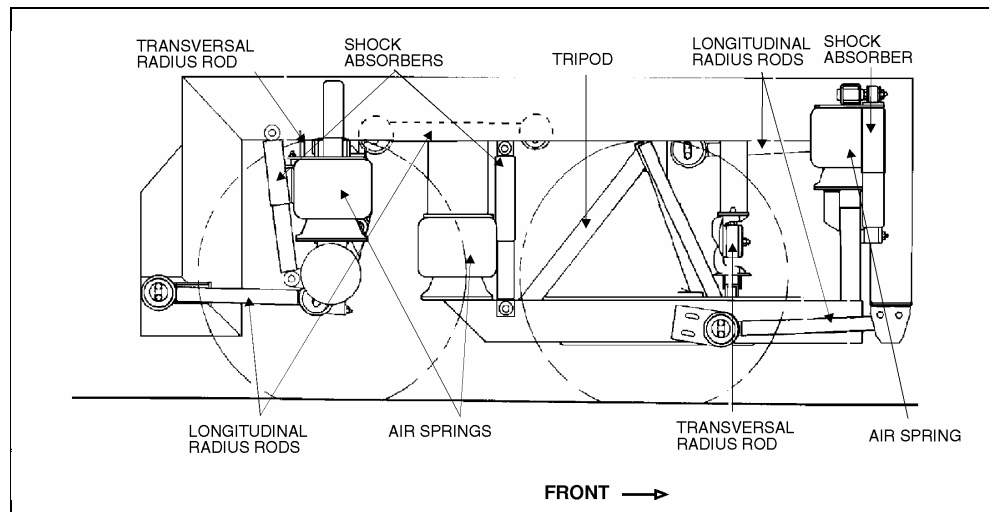


FIGURE 3: REAR SUSPENSION COMPONENTS 16003

Section 16: SUSPENSION

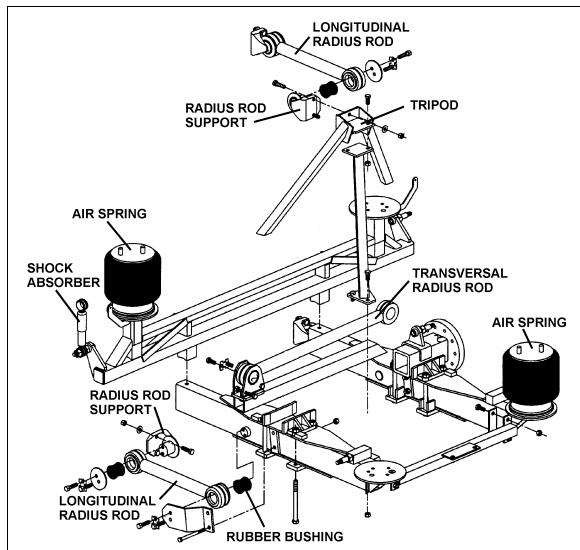


FIGURE 4: DETAILS OF REAR SUSPENSION

16106

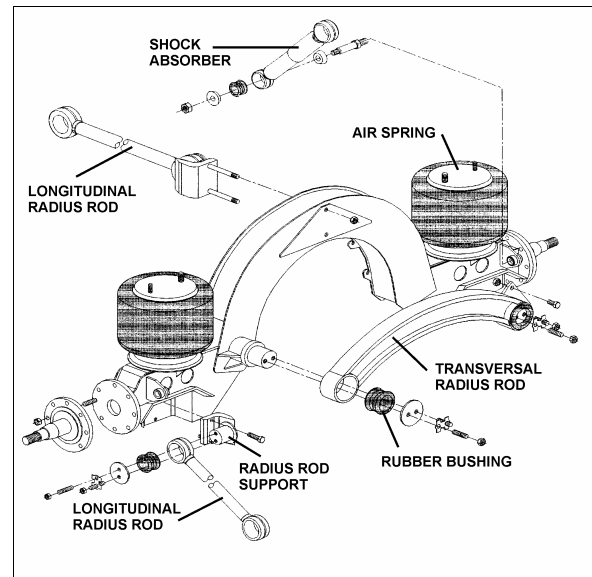


FIGURE 5: TAG AXLE SUSPENSION

16107

2. AIR SPRINGS

The air springs are made from a special compound rubber molded to the proper contour and dimensions. The entire vertical load of the vehicle is supported by these springs. Each of the three axles is provided with air springs that are attached to the subframe and to the axles (Fig. 6).

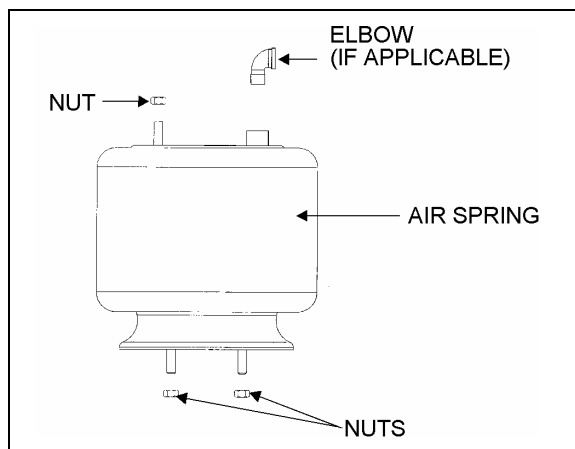


FIGURE 6: AIR SPRING

16052

2.1 INSPECTION

1. Check operation of bellows.
2. Visually inspect bellows for evidence of cracks, punctures, deterioration, or chafing. Replace the bellows if any damage is evident.

3. With the primary air system at normal operating pressure (95 - 125 psi (655 - 860 kPa)), coat all suspension air line connections and bellows mounting areas with a water and soap solution. Bubbles will indicate an air leak, and none is permissible. Repair or replace defective parts.

Note: If air spring is removed from vehicle, bellows can be lightly inflated and submerged in water to detect any leakage. If any leakage is detected, replace bellows.

Warning: To prevent personal injury, do not apply more than 10 psi (69 kPa) air pressure with the air spring unmounted.

2.2 REMOVAL

Note: Suspension air springs (front, drive, and tag axles) can be removed without removing the entire axle assembly.

1. Safely support vehicle at the recommended body jacking points.

To gain access to a given air spring, the corresponding wheel can be removed as follows:

- a) Jack vehicle until the tire clears the ground, and place safety supports underneath body.

Caution: Only the recommended jacking points must be used as outlined in Section 18, "Body".

- b) Support the axle with a suitable hydraulic floor jack at the recommended jacking point.
 - c) Remove wheel.
2. Exhaust compressed air from accessory air tank by opening drain cock under reservoir.
 3. Disconnect the height control valve link and pull down the overtravel lever to ensure all air is exhausted from air springs.

Note: While performing this step, do not change the height control valve overtravel lever adjustment.

4. Disconnect air line from air spring, remove elbow (if applicable), and cover both the line end and fitting to prevent the entry of foreign matter.
5. Remove the air spring upper nut, and then the two lower nuts. Remove air spring.

2.3 INSTALLATION

1. Compress air spring as necessary, then aligning studs with their holes, position air spring between both the lower and upper supports. Thread the lower nuts and the small upper nut a few turns.

Note: To facilitate air spring installation, compress it manually then put a piece of tape over the air line threaded fitting. This prevents air from getting back into the bag and keeps it compressed, thus enabling to place the bag in between the mounting plates and greatly easing installation.

2. Tighten and torque the lower stud nuts, and then the upper one to 20 – 25 lbf-ft (27 – 34 Nm).
3. Thread the remaining upper nut (large nut) and tighten to 20 – 25 lbf-ft (27 – 34 Nm).
4. Install elbow (if applicable), then connect air line.
5. Connect the height control valve link.
6. Build up air pressure in system.

Note: To accelerate this operation, air reservoirs can be filled from an exterior air supply connected to the accessory tank fill valve or to the emergency fill valve.

7. Check operation of bellows and with the primary air system at normal operating pressure (95 – 125 psi (655 – 860 kPa)), coat the air line connections and air spring mounting areas with a water and soap solution. Bubbles will indicate an air leak, and none is permissible. Repair or replace defective parts.
8. Reinstall wheel.
9. Remove the hydraulic floor jack from under the axle, then lower vehicle to ground.

3. SHOCK ABSORBERS

Double-action, telescoping-type shock absorbers ensure a smooth ride and enhance vehicle stability on the road. All shock absorbers are eye-type mountings. The front and tag axles are each provided with two shock absorbers while the drive axle is provided with four of them (Fig. 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5).

Shock absorbers are non-adjustable and non-repairable. Maintenance requirements involve replacement of the rubber mounting bushings, and tightening of all shock absorber pins at the proper torque of 500 - 550 lbf-ft (680 - 750 Nm) when shock absorber replacement occurs. If a shock absorber becomes inoperative, complete unit must be replaced.

Caution: When a shock absorber is found defective, always replace with a new set on affected axle, except if there has been a recent replacement of one unit. The following method will help in determining if both shock absorbers on the same axle have to be replaced.

3.1 INSPECTION

Loosen lower mounting of both shocks, and then carefully attempt to raise and lower the bottom portion of each shock. Note the rate of effort for distance of travel. Replace both shocks if a definite differential rate is found.

The shock must be bench checked in an upright, vertical position. If checked in any other position, air will enter the cylinder tube and make the shock absorber appear defective.

Section 16: SUSPENSION

Proceed as follows to check shock absorbers:

1. With the shock absorber in a vertical position (top end up), clamp the bottom mount in a vise.

Caution: Do not clamp the reservoir tube or the dust tube.

2. Rotate the dust tube. Notice any binding condition (may be compared with new unit). Binding condition indicates a scored rod. Units with scored rods should be replaced.
3. Fully extend shocks and check for leaks in the seal cover area. Shock fluid is a very thin hydraulic fluid that has a characteristic odor and dark brown tint. A slight trace of shock fluid around the seal cover area is not a cause for replacement. The shock seal is designed to permit a very slight seepage to lubricate the rod. Units that leak should be replaced.
4. Visually check shock for dents that could cause the shock to bind. Also, check for a bent rod.
5. Extend and collapse shock several times to determine that it has control (resistance) in both rebound and compression.
6. Visually inspect the shock mountings and vehicle mounting for:
 - a. Broken mounts;
 - b. Extreme bushing wear;
 - c. Shifted bushing or sleeve;
 - d. Deep cracks in bushing material (shallow surface cracks are normal);
 - e. Loose shock absorber pins;
 - f. Presence of convex washers, and their position relative to the rubber bushing.

3.2 REMOVAL

1. Remove nuts and washers from shock absorbers on upper and lower mounting pins, taking care to identify the inner and outer washers to ease reinstallation. Refer to figure 7 for details.
2. Remove the shock absorber assembly from pins.
3. Remove the two inner bushings from the shock absorber and discard them.

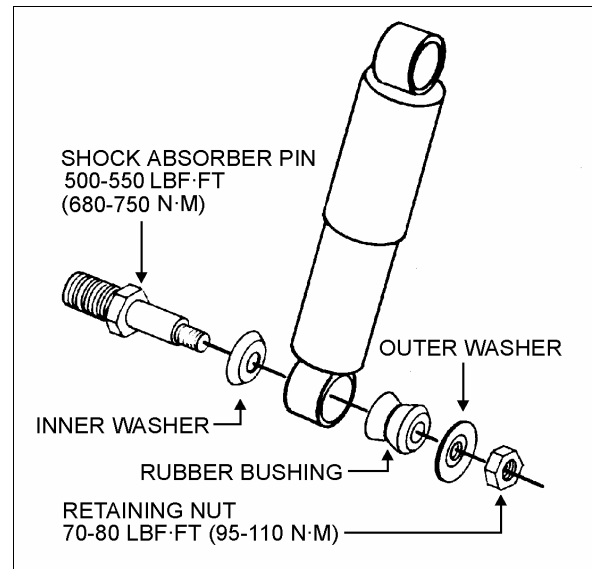


FIGURE 7: SHOCK ABSORBER

16008

3.3 INSTALLATION

1. Ensure that the shock absorber mounting pins are tight and that the threads are not stripped.
2. Install new rubber mounting bushings on shock absorbers (upper and lower).
3. Place the inner washers (with washer convex side facing the shock absorber rubber bushing) on each shock absorber pin (Fig. 8).

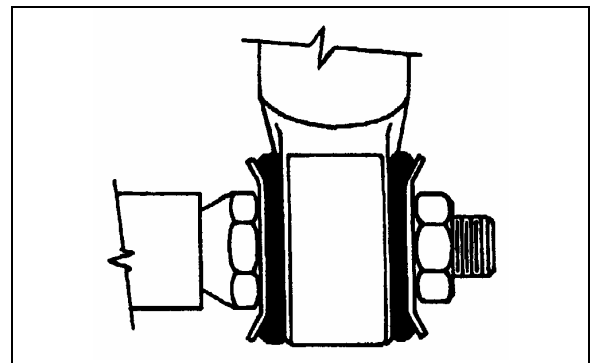


FIGURE 8: TYPICAL SHOCK ABSORBER SETUP

16009

4. Install the shock absorber eyes over the mounting pins, then the outer washers (with washer convex side facing the shock absorber rubber bushing) on each shock extremity.

Note: If shock absorber pins are removed, they must be reinstalled using "loctite" (see "PARTS SPECIFICATIONS" in this section).

- Place the lower and upper mounting pin stud nuts and torque to 70 - 80 lbf-ft (95 - 110 Nm).

4. RADIUS RODS

Radius rods are used to secure the axles in the proper transversal and longitudinal positions. Four radius rods are provided on the front axle suspension (three longitudinal and one transversal), four on the drive axle suspension (three longitudinal and one transversal) and also four on the tag axle with a layout similar to the drive axle. Refer to figures 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 for details. These rods transmit both braking and driving forces from the axles to the vehicle body.

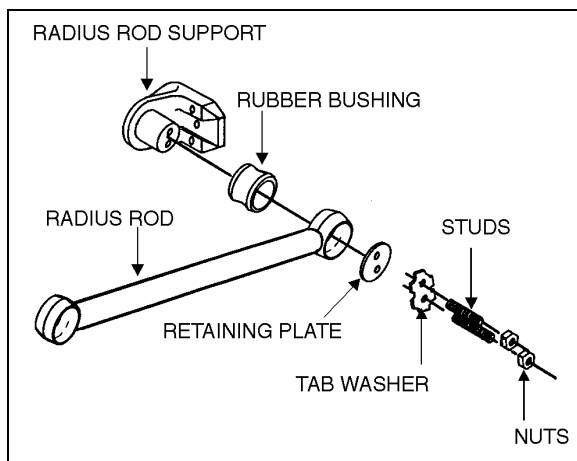


FIGURE 9: TYPICAL RADIUS ROD SETUP

16010

4.1 INSPECTION

The following instructions apply to all radius rods used on this vehicle:

- Clean all parts thoroughly.
- Inspect radius rods for distortion and cracks. We recommend the "Magnaflux" process to detect cracks in the radius rod. Any damaged part should be replaced with a new one.

Note: New bushings should be used when rods are replaced.

- The radius rod bushings should be checked periodically for signs of shearing, deterioration, or damage. Any defective part should be replaced with a new one.

4.2 REMOVAL

- Flatten the tab washer which secures the two retaining nuts (or bolts), then unscrew the nuts (or bolts) at each extremity of the radius rod (Fig. 9).
- Remove the tab washer and the retaining plates and radius rod ends from anchor pins, and then remove the radius rod.

4.3 BUSHING REMOVAL

- Safely support the radius rod as shown in figure 10.

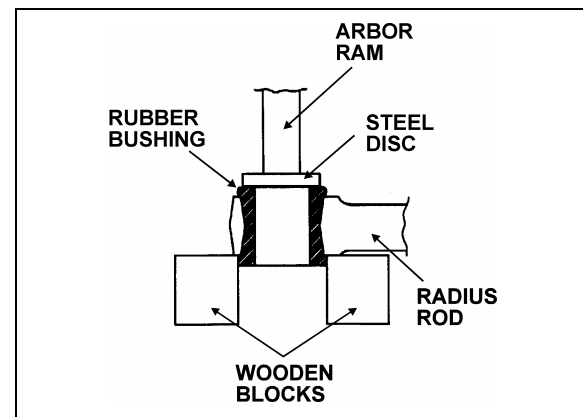


FIGURE 10: RADIUS ROD BUSHING REMOVAL

16011

- Place a flat steel disc, slightly smaller than the outside diameter of the bushing (Fig. 10).
- Using an arbor press or a suitable driving tool, press or drive the old bushing out of the rod and discard the bushing.

4.4 BUSHING INSTALLATION

- Lightly spray the inner and outer surfaces of radius rod bushing with water.

Caution: No lubricant whatsoever is to be used on the rubber bushing.

- Safely support the radius rod, and place new bushing on top of the radius rod end (Fig. 11).
- Place a block of wood on top of bushing and press on it manually.
- If necessary, use an arbor press or a suitable driving tool. Press or drive the bushing into the radius rod end until it extends equally on both sides of the rod.

Section 16: SUSPENSION

- It is also possible to proceed differently. Place radius rod bushing on a plane surface. Spray a light coat of water on the inner and outer surfaces of radius rod bushing.
- Take radius rod, align the bushing. Tap radius rod on bushing until latter is positioned correctly.

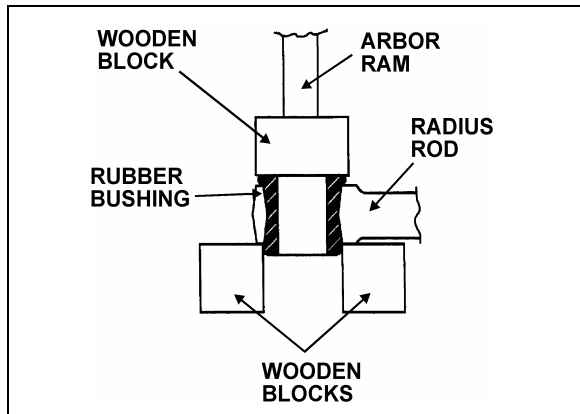


FIGURE 11: RADIUS ROD BUSHING INSTALLATION 16012

4.5 INSTALLATION

- Lightly spray the radius rod support with water. Place the radius rod end over the radius rod support (Fig. 12).
- Position the retaining plate. Install the tab washer and nuts (or bolts).

Caution: Always use new tab washers at installation.

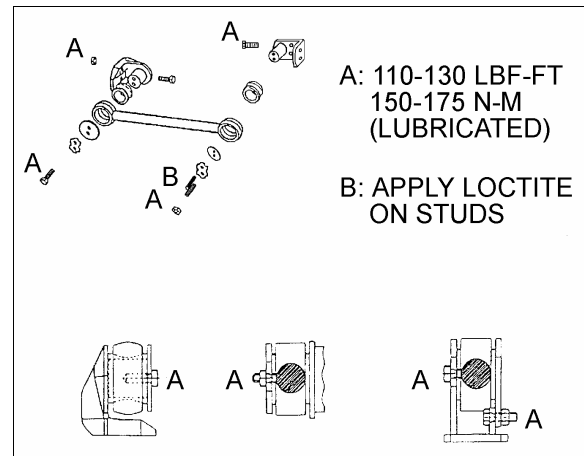


FIGURE 12: RADIUS ROD INSTALLATION 16028

- Tighten the nuts (or bolts) lightly, and repeat at the other end.
- Refer to heading "*SUSPENSION HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT*" later in this section, and set the vehicle to normal ride height.
- With the vehicle at normal ride height, apply oil on threads and tighten all radius rod anchor pin nuts or bolts to 110 – 130 lbf-ft (150 – 175 Nm).

Caution: It is extremely important upon reconnection of the rods that the proper clearance height between the axle and body be maintained. Otherwise, the rubber bushings in radius rod ends will become preloaded, thus reducing their life span.

5. SWAY BAR

A sway bar is provided on the front and drive axles to increase vehicle stability. It controls lateral motion (swaying movement) of vehicle (Fig. 13).

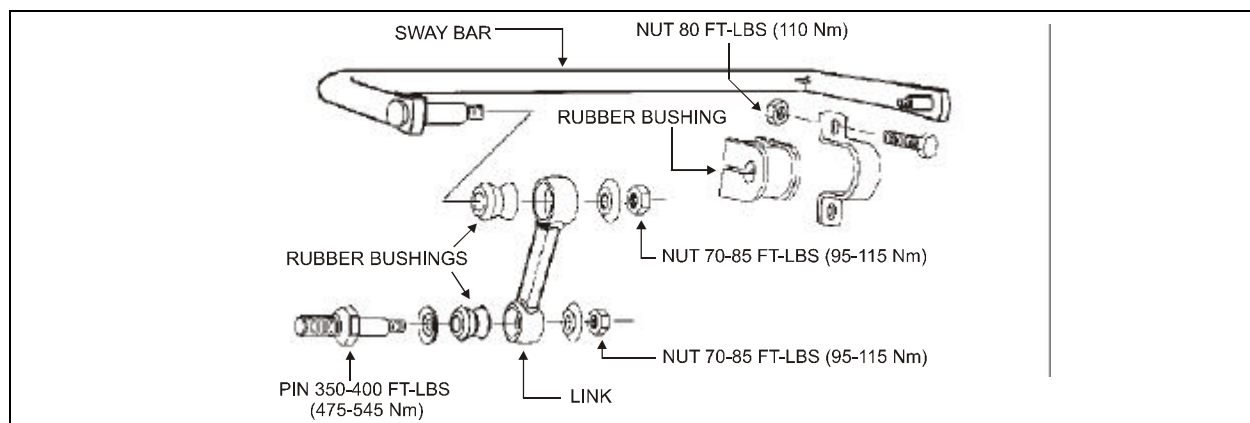


FIGURE 13: FRONT & DRIVE AXLE SWAY BAR 16144

5.1 REMOVAL

1. Disconnect the two links from sway bar.
2. Safely support the sway bar. Unbolt the four bushing collars from subframe.
3. Remove sway bar.

Note: Sway bar bushings are slotted to ease their removal.

5.2 INSTALLATION

1. Loosely install the sway bar.
2. Tighten the eight bushing collar nuts to 70 - 80 lbf-ft (95 - 110 Nm) (Fig. 13).
3. Tighten sway bar link upper nuts to 100 - 120 lbf-ft (136 - 163 Nm) and lower nuts to 70 - 80 lbf-ft (95 - 110 Nm) (Fig. 13).

6. SUSPENSION AIR SYSTEM

The suspension air system has its own air reservoir (accessory tank) which is located in the reclining bumper compartment. Pressurized air from the main tank (wet tank) flows through a pressure protection valve (PR-2), to the accessory air tank and through an air filter which is located in front service compartment.

The pressure protection valve (PR-2) is mounted to the supply port of the tank. This valve controls the pressure at which compressed air is delivered to the accessory air tank. The valve remains closed until a preset pressure is reached (approximately 70 psi (485 kPa)). It then opens and passes air out the delivery port.

The main use for this valve is to protect the main air system by ensuring at all times a sufficient air pressure in the main system (i.e. air delivered to the accessories will be shut off in case of a decrease in pressure). Maintenance and repair information on the pressure protection valve is supplied in the applicable booklet, annexed to Section 12, "Brakes and Air System" under reference number SD-03-2010.

Warning: Depressurize parts prior to removal.

6.1 INSPECTION

The following inspection should be performed at established service inspection periods.

Performing these procedures will allow substandard performance to be discovered before the condition becomes bad enough to cause operator complaints and failure on a run.

1. Visually inspect the suspension air lines for evidence of chafing on metal parts or other damage.
2. Visually inspect the air springs for cracks, abrasion or other damage.
3. Replace any parts found to be damaged.

6.2 AIR LINE TEST

With the main air system at normal operating pressure, coat all suspension air line connections and air spring mountings with a solution of soap and water. Air leakage will produce soap bubbles. Any leak found must be corrected as no air leakage is permissible.

6.3 AIR TANK MAINTENANCE

Refer to Section 12, "Brakes and Air System" under "MAINTENANCE" for complete instructions on air tank maintenance.

7. SUSPENSION HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

The flow of pressurized air from the accessory air tank to the air springs is controlled by three height control valves. These valves are mounted to the subframe and connected to the axles through an arm and link connection. This connection allows the valves to apportion air pressure in the springs to the vehicle load, maintaining normal ride height.

Immediate response height control valves increase or decrease the air pressure in the suspension system as required. One height control valve is located at center of front axle, and regulates air to front axle air springs in order to maintain the vehicle at the required height. Two are located at the drive axle, one on each inner side of rear wheelhouse. Refer to figure 15.

The appropriate vehicle body height is obtained by measuring the clearance of all the air springs installed on the front and drive axles. The clearance should be $12 \pm \frac{1}{4}$ " (305 ± 6 mm) for the air springs installed on the front axle and $11\frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{1}{4}$ " (292 ± 6 mm) for those installed on the drive axle. Refer to figure 14 to identify the

Section 16: SUSPENSION

correct location where the measure has to be taken. At this point, it should not be necessary to make an adjustment under normal service conditions. However, if an adjustment is required, change the position of the overtravel lever in relation to the overtravel control body. The lever should be moved up to raise the height of vehicle and down to lower it. Check that main air pressure is at normal operating pressure and raise the vehicle to the specified height.

Caution: Because of the "deadband", always adjust on "fill cycle". If it is necessary to lower vehicle height, release sufficient air to be well below height, and adjust to height through fill cycle.

To adjust suspension height, proceed as follows:

1. With the vehicle at normal operating air pressure, check the air spring clearance as illustrated in figure 14. This clearance should be $12 \pm \frac{1}{4}$ " (305 ± 6 mm) for the front axle air springs and $11\frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{1}{4}$ " (292 ± 6 mm) for those on the drive axle.

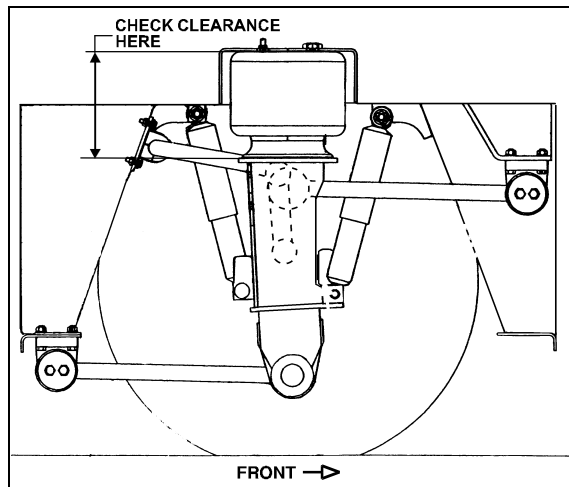


FIGURE 14: TYPICAL AIR SPRING CLEARANCE 16108

Note: The measure should be taken from under the upper air spring support on subframe to top of the lower air spring support on axle (refer to fig. 14 for more details). If adjustment is required, begin with the drive axle.

2. Loosen the adjusting nuts on the connecting rod of height control valve to raise or lower the overtravel lever until the desired clearance is reached.

3. If there is not enough play on adjusting nuts, it is possible to make further adjustments by loosening the clamp on the rubber coupling and bringing it up or down.

Note: Allow suspension to stabilize before taking reading.

4. When the desired height is obtained, tighten adjusting nuts and clamp.

8. HEIGHT CONTROL VALVES

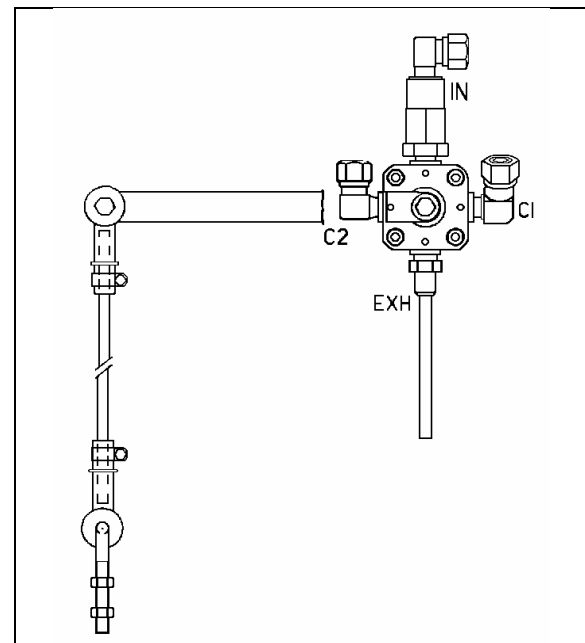


FIGURE 15: HEIGHT CONTROL VALVE

16093

The height control valves automatically add air to, or release air from air springs to maintain constant suspension height regardless of load, or load distribution. Each valve adjusts independently according to the following conditions:

Loading position

As the load increases and lowers the vehicle body, the overtravel lever commands the height control valve to add air to air springs.

Neutral position

When vehicle body reaches the normal ride height, the height control valve overtravel lever reaches the "neutral" position and keeps both the supply and exhaust ports closed to ensure normal ride height is maintained. This condition remains static until the vehicle load is altered.

Unloading position

As the load decreases and raises the vehicle body, the overtravel lever commands the height control valve to release air from air springs.

8.1 MAINTENANCE

The height control valve requires no periodic maintenance. Height control valve linkage operates on rubber bushings and no lubrication should be attempted at this point.

8.1.1 Removal and installation

Before disconnecting any height control valve air lines, securely support the vehicle by its jacking points on the body, and place safety support underneath body. Refer to "*VEHICLE JACKING POINTS*" in Section 18, "*Body*".

1. Exhaust air from air system by opening the drain cock on accessory air reservoir.
2. Disconnect overtravel lever from link and pull down lever to exhaust remaining air from air springs.
3. Disconnect air supply and delivery lines from the height control valve. Cover ends of the lines with tape.
4. Remove the two nuts retaining the height control valve to the mounting bracket, then remove valve assembly.

Reverse removal procedure to replace height control valve. After installation, check for leakage using a soap and water solution.

8.1.2 Air leakage test

Note: *The following procedure applies when valve assembly has been removed from vehicle.*

1. Clean the exterior of valve assembly.
2. Connect air pressure line to air inlet port, then allow air pressure build-up (70- 100 psi (480 - 690 kPa)).
3. Dip the valve assembly in a container of water, and watch for air bubbles when the overtravel lever is in the center position. No air should escape from any point of the valve assembly.
4. If bubbles appear from the air spring port, this is an indication that the air inlet valve assembly is defective and must be replaced.

5. Remove air pressure line from air inlet fitting and connect it to the air spring port. If bubbles appear at the air inlet check valve port, this is an indication that check valve unit is defective and must be replaced.
6. If bubbles appear at the exhaust port, this is an indication that the exhaust valve assembly is defective and must be replaced.
7. If bubbles appear around edge of valve cover plate, the cover plate gasket must be replaced.
8. If no leaks are found, remove valve assembly from water, then with air pressure still connected to the air spring port, actuate overtravel lever to remove any excess water which may have entered exhaust valve chamber. Remove air line, connect it to the air inlet port, and repeat operation to remove water from the air inlet valve chamber.

9. FRONT KNEELING SYSTEM

The kneeling system is used to lower front of vehicle. This allows passengers to board the vehicle with greater ease. The kneeling action is achieved by exhausting air from the front air springs (bellows). This system bypasses the height control valve to provide a fast up and down movement of the front suspension. Only seven seconds are required to lower vehicle from normal level to the lowered position, and approximately the same time to raise the vehicle back to normal level. The quick response is achieved by an auxiliary air tank installed beside the secondary air reservoir (for exact position, refer to Section 12, "*Brake and Air System*").

This tank provides sufficient air supply to the kneeling system for some successive operations.

The system is provided with two safety features; first, a speed switch will enable the kneeling system to work only below 5 mph (8 km/h). Secondly, the parking brake is automatically applied, and a limit switch will keep it applied as long as the vehicle has not returned to a certain height where the driver will be able to manually remove the parking brake.

Section 16: SUSPENSION

The purpose of the hi-buoy function in this system is to raise the front end of the vehicle to allow an extra ground clearance for particular situations. In driving condition, the height control valve is in operation and only the hi-buoy can be operated.

9.1 PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Refer to the air system schematic diagram annexed at the end of Section 12, *"Brake and Air System"*.

DOWN (FRONT KNEELING):

Both the bellows control and bellows exhaust solenoid valves are energized, so the air control valves release air from front air springs. The height control valve is bypassed to ensure no air is forwarded to air springs while lowering the front suspension.

UP (FRONT HIGH-BUOY):

Only the bellows control solenoid valve is energized, so the air coming from the kneeling air tank is routed through air control valves, and up to front air springs.

The height control valve is bypassed until the kneeling proximity switch signals the kneeling module to cut off the bellows control solenoid valve, about 1" (25 mm) below normal ride height. The final height adjustment is achieved by the height control valve.

9.2 MAINTENANCE

Since the kneeling action is issued from both the air system and electrical system, refer to Section: 12, *"Brake and Air System"* and Section 06, *"Electrical System"*.

For diagnosis and understanding of the system, refer to wiring diagrams, and to the appropriate air system schematic diagram annexed to Section 12, *"Brake and Air System"*.

9.3 BELLOWS CONTROL SOLENOID VALVES

9.3.1 Removal and installation

1. On the rear side of steering compartment, locate both the bellows control and bellows exhaust solenoid valves.

2. Identify hoses and wires to ease reinstallation. Disconnect solenoid wires and the three flexible black hoses from solenoid valves.
3. Unscrew and remove the control solenoid valve and exhaust solenoid valve assembly. Place on a clean working place.

Reverse removal procedure to reinstall.

Caution: Any cable tie that has been cut during removal procedure should be replaced with a new one.

10. HIGH-BUOY SYSTEM

The purpose of the rear high-buoy system is to raise the entire vehicle body about 4" (100 mm) in order to increase ground clearance to board a ferryboat, to jump a curb, etc. This system can be put into service during normal vehicle operation.

10.1 PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

The rear high-buoy system is added over the front kneeling (with front high-buoy). The front end uses the same valves as the front kneeling (with front high-buoy). A solenoid valve is added to send air to the double shuttle valves for the rear end. It uses the same dash switch as the kneeling (with front high-buoy).

UP:

The air coming from the control valve, flows through double shuttle valves, to supply air springs. The double shuttle valves prevent height control valves from releasing air from air springs.

DOWN:

The control valve, on the dashboard, cuts off air supply, so the double shuttle valves allow height control valves to accomplish their function. Height control valves release air from air springs until suspension returns to its normal position.

10.2 MAINTENANCE

Refer to the air system schematic diagram "OPT. FRONT KNEELING WITH REAR HIGH-BUOY COMBINATION" annexed at the end of this Section.

10.3 HIGH-BUOY – PRESSURE REGULATOR

The pressure regulator is located on ceiling of the spare wheel and tire compartment and is accessible through the reclining bumper. This valve should be adjusted to 90 psi (621 kPa).

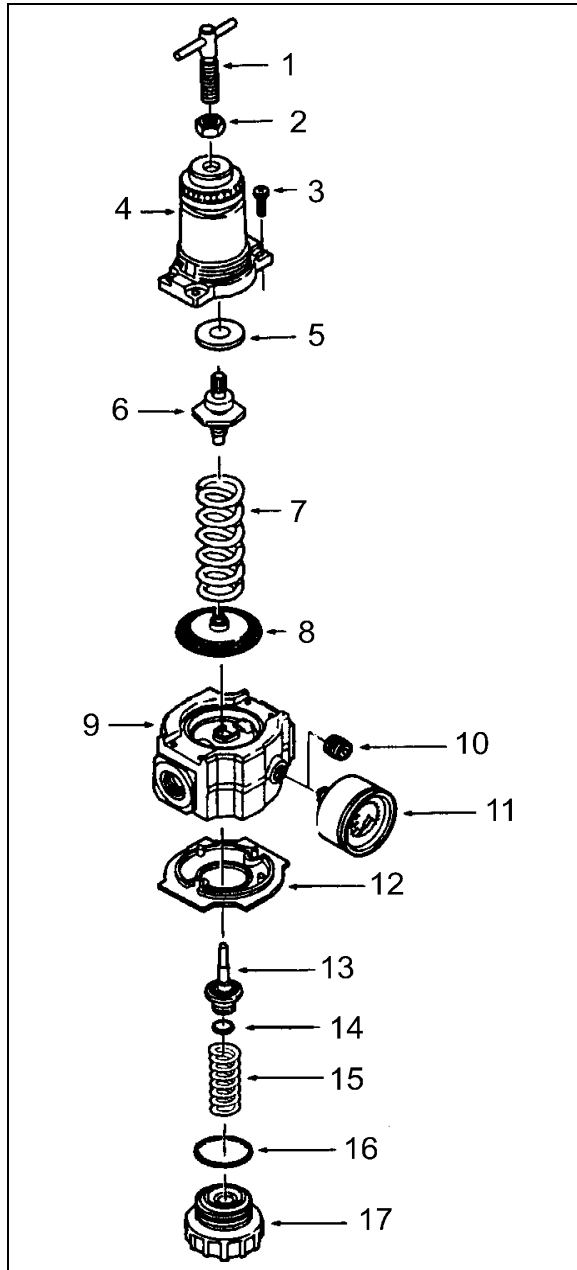


FIGURE 16: AIR PRESSURE REGULATOR

16035

10.3.1 Adjustment

1. Before turning on system air pressure, release jam nut (2, Fig. 16) then turn

regulator adjustment handle counterclockwise until all load is removed from the regulating spring.

2. Turn on system pressure.
3. Turn regulator adjustment handle clockwise until the desired outlet pressure is reached.
4. To avoid minor readjustment after making a change in pressure setting, always approach the desired pressure from a lower pressure. When reducing from a higher to a lower setting, first reduce the pressure at a lower pressure, and then increase it to the desired level of pressure.
5. Tighten jam nut (2, Fig. 16) to lock pressure setting.

10.3.2 Disassembly

1. Shut off inlet pressure and reduce pressure in inlet and outlet lines to zero. Turn regulator adjustment handle (1, Fig. 16) counterclockwise until all load is removed from regulating spring. Regulator can be disassembled without removal from air line.
2. Disassemble regulator in accordance with the item numbers on the exploded view.

10.3.3 Cleaning

1. Clean parts with warm water and soap. Dry parts and blow out internal passages in body using clean, dry compressed air.
2. Inspect parts. Replace those found to be damaged.

10.3.4 Reassembly

1. Lubricate O-ring (14 and 16, Fig. 16), valve stem (13, Fig. 13), tip of adjusting screw (1, Fig. 13), and the outer circumference and both sides of the thrust washer (8, Fig. 16) with a light coat of good quality O-ring grease.
2. Assemble the regulator as shown on the exploded view.

Torque Table	
Item	Torque in Lbf-inch (Nm)
3 (Screw)	25-35 (2.8-3.9)
17 (Bottom plug)	20-25 (2.3-2.8)

Section 16: SUSPENSION

11. LOW-BUOY SYSTEM

The purpose of the low-buoy system is to lower the whole suspension by about 4" (100 mm) in order to reduce the overall height for low clearances. This system can be put into service during normal vehicle operation.

11.1 PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

On H3-41 and H3-45 coaches, the rear low-buoy is added over the front kneeling system. The control valve on the left console panel sends an electric signal from its pressure switch to control the front suspension as if kneeling. It also removes air from a relay valve that exhausts air supply to all leveling valves and the quick release in the rear section. Air from the rear suspension can then be depleted through the check valve-quick release assembly.

DOWN:

The control valve, on the L.H. control panel, cuts off air supply, so air is released from air springs. A relay valve prevents height control valves from supplying air springs.

UP:

The control valve, on the L.H. control panel, supplies air to close the passage between both the delivery and supply ports. A relay valve opens and provides air springs until the suspension reaches the normal ride height.

11.2 MAINTENANCE

Refer to the air system schematic diagram "OPT. FRONT KNEELING WITH REAR LOW-BUOY COMBINATION" annexed at the end of this Section.

12. TROUBLESHOOTING

Condition	Cause	Correction
Bellows deflate over time	1. Defective check valve assembly. 2. Defective exhaust valve assembly. 3. Leak in air line and/or bellows. 4. Defective valve cover, rubber O-rings or gasket.	1. Replace check valve assembly. 2. Replace exhaust valve assembly. 3. Replace air line or bellows. 4. Replace valve cover, O-rings or gasket.
Bellows raise to full height and fail to exhaust air pressure	1. A clogged exhaust screen in height control valve assembly. 2. A combination clogged exhaust screen and defective air inlet valve assembly.	1. Remove and clean screen. 2. Clean exhaust screen and replace air inlet valve assembly.
Erratic valve action	1. Dirt or foreign matter in the air valve lever chamber. 2. Defectives valves.	1. Remove valve cover and blow out dirt. Install cover using new gasket. 2. Overhaul height control valve assembly
Vehicle body fails to level to satisfactory ride height	1. Improper height control valve overtravel lever adjustment	1. Adjust lever as directed.

13. PARTS SPECIFICATIONS

Front and tag axle air springs

MakeGoodyear Tire and Rubber
Model 1200

Type.....Mae West
Nominal diameter.....12" (304 mm)
Supplier number..... 1R12-319
Prévost number..... 630125

Drive axle air springs

MakeGoodyear Tire and Rubber
 Model 1100
 Type Double Flare
 Nominal diameter 11" (279 mm)
 Supplier number 1R11-089
 Prévost number630105

Front axle shock absorbers

MakeSachs
 ColorBlack
 Type N45X225HA
 Ext. Diam. 75 mm
 Collapsed length..... 15.51" (394 mm)
 Extended length..... 24.37" (619 mm)
 Supplier number 481700000207
 Prévost number630252

Drive and tag axle shock absorbers

MakeSachs
 ColorBlack
 Type N45X225HA
 Ext. Diam. 75 mm
 Collapsed length..... 15.51" (394 mm)
 Extended length..... 24.37" (619 mm)
 Supplier number 481700000209
 Prévost number630253

Height control valve (VIP, front only)

MakeBarksdale
 Quantity used 1
 Supplier number52321POAQ3-Q62
 Prévost number630157

Height control valve (coach, all axles & VIP, rear only)

MakeBarksdale
 Quantity 2 or 3

Supplier number..... 52321POAQ3-Q26
 Prévost number..... 630156

Bellows control and exhaust solenoid valve assembly

Make..... Norgren

Solenoid valve manifold

Supplier number..... D0043B
 Prévost number..... 641130

Coil

Voltage 24 V DC
 Current draw 29 amperes
 Supplier number..... 54932-27
 Prévost number..... 641144

Valve (3 way, 2 positions)

Type.....N/C
 Supplier number..... 411-C-456235W
 Prévost number..... 641357
 Type..... N/O
 Supplier number..... 411-D-456236X
 Prévost number..... 641356

Radius rod bushing

Make.....Prévost
 Prévost number..... 630021

Loctite

Make..... Loctite
 Prévost number..... 680039

Sway bar bushing (Front Axle)

Make.....Prévost
 Prévost number..... 131355

Sway bar bushing (Drive Axle)

Make.....Prévost
 Prévost number..... 130953

Section 16: SUSPENSION

Sway bar link bushings

Supplier number415015-001

Prévost number506678

Shock absorber bushings

Make Monroe

Supplier number45380

Prévost number630062

High-Buoy Pressure regulator

MakeNorgren

Recommended pressure setting 90 psi (621 kPa)

Supplier number R74G-4AT-RMN

Prévost number641352

14. TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

- 1- SHOCK ABSORBER PIN..... 500-550 Lbf-ft (680-750 Nm)
- 2- SHOCK ABSORBER PIN NUT..... 70-80 Lbf-ft (95-110 Nm)
- 3- RADIUS ROD STUD 20-40 Lbf-ft (27-54 Nm)
- 4- RADIUS ROD RETAINING NUT OR BOLT 110-130 Lbf-ft lubricated (150-175 Nm lubricated)
- 5- RADIUS ROD SUPPORT NUT 110-130 Lbf-ft lubricated (150-175 Nm lubricated)
- 6- AXLE ATTACHMENT NUT 425-475 Lbf-ft (580-645 Nm)
- 7- AIR SPRING STUD NUT 20-25 Lbf-ft (27-34 Nm)
- 8- SWAY BAR LINK PIN STUD..... 350-400 Lbf-ft (475-545 Nm)
- 9- SWAY BAR LINK LOWER NUT 70-80 Lbf-ft (95-110 Nm)
- 10- SWAY BAR LINK UPPER NUT 215-225 Lbf-ft (290-305 Nm)
- 11- SWAY BAR BUSHING COLLAR BOLT..... 70-80 Lbf-ft (95-110 Nm)

Note: During assembly, use “Loctite 242” (Prévost No 680038) with item 1, 3 and 8. After assembly, apply “anti-seize compound” (Prévost No 680064) on all threads nuts.

SECTION 16: VIP EQUIPPED WITH INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION (IFS)

CONTENTS

1. INTRODUCTION	16(VIP)-4
2. STEERING LINKAGE.....	16(VIP)-4
2.1 POWER STEERING HYDRAULIC PUMP.....	16(VIP)-7
2.2 STEERING LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT.....	16(VIP)-7
2.3 PITMAN ARM REMOVAL	16(VIP)-7
2.4 PITMAN ARM INSTALLATION	16(VIP)-7
2.5 DRAG LINK.....	16(VIP)-7
2.5.1 <i>Adjustment</i>	16(VIP)-8
2.6 BELL CRANK AND IDLER ARM.....	16(VIP)-8
2.6.1 <i>Bell Crank and Idler Arm Removal</i>	16(VIP)-8
2.6.2 <i>Bell crank or Idler Arm Ball Joint Disassembly</i>	16(VIP)-8
2.6.3 <i>Bell Crank or Idler Arm Ball Joint Reassembly</i>	16(VIP)-8
2.7 RELAY ROD.....	16(VIP)-10
2.7.1 <i>Replacement</i>	16(VIP)-10
2.8 TIE RODS	16(VIP)-10
2.8.1 <i>Removal</i>	16(VIP)-10
2.8.2 <i>Installation</i>	16(VIP)-10
2.9 STEERING ARMS.....	16(VIP)-11
2.9.1 <i>Removal</i>	16(VIP)-11
2.9.2 <i>Installation</i>	16(VIP)-11
2.10 LUBRICATION FITTINGS	16(VIP)-11
3. BALL JOINTS	16(VIP)-13
4. LOWER AND UPPER A-ARM BALL JOINT	16(VIP)-13
4.1 INSPECTION	16(VIP)-13
4.2 STRIPPING DOWN.....	16(VIP)-13
4.3 ASSEMBLY	16(VIP)-13
5. LOWER A- ARM CENTRAL BALL JOINT.....	16(VIP)-14
5.1 INSPECTION	16(VIP)-14
5.2 STRIPPING DOWN.....	16(VIP)-14
5.3 ASSEMBLY	16(VIP)-14
6. UPPER A-ARM CENTRAL BALL JOINT.....	16(VIP)-15
6.1 VISUAL INSPECTION	16(VIP)-15
6.2 PLAY MEASUREMENT	16(VIP)-15
7. FRONT END ALIGNMENT	16(VIP)-15
7.1 ALIGNMENT TERMINOLOGY	16(VIP)-16
7.2 FRONT END INSPECTION	16(VIP)-16
7.3 FRONT WHEEL CAMBER.....	16(VIP)-17
7.4 FRONT WHEEL TOE-IN.....	16(VIP)-17
7.4.1 <i>Toe-In Check</i>	16(VIP)-17
7.4.2 <i>Toe-In Adjustment</i>	16(VIP)-17
7.5 FRONT AXLE CASTER.....	16(VIP)-17
7.6 MAJOR DAMAGE	16(VIP)-17
8. FRONT AIR SPRINGS.....	16(VIP)-19

Section 16: VIP EQUIPPED WITH INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION (IFS)

8.1	INSPECTION	16(VIP)-19
8.2	REMOVAL	16(VIP)-19
8.3	INSTALLATION	16(VIP)-19
9.	SHOCK ABSORBERS.....	16(VIP)-20
9.1	SHOCK ABSORBER REMOVAL.....	16(VIP)-21
9.2	SHOCK ABSORBER INSTALLATION.....	16(VIP)-21
10.	SWAY BAR	16(VIP)-21
10.1	REMOVAL	16(VIP)-21
10.2	INSTALLATION	16(VIP)-21
11.	INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION ADJUSTMENT	16(VIP)-23
12.	SUSPENSION HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT	16(VIP)-23
13.	HEIGHT CONTROL VALVE.....	16(VIP)-24
13.1	LOADING POSITION	16(VIP)-24
13.2	NEUTRAL POSITION	16(VIP)-24
13.3	UNLOADING POSITION	16(VIP)-24
13.4	MAINTENANCE.....	16(VIP)-24
13.5	REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION	16(VIP)-24
14.	"LEVEL-LOW" LEVELING SYSTEM.....	16(VIP)-25
14.1	PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION	16(VIP)-25
14.2	MAINTENANCE.....	16(VIP)-25
15.	AIR SYSTEM	16(VIP)-25
15.1	AIR TANK MAINTENANCE	16(VIP)-26
15.1.1	<i>Wet Air Tank</i>	<i>16(VIP)-26</i>
15.1.2	<i>Primary Air Tank</i>	<i>16(VIP)-26</i>
15.1.3	<i>Secondary Air Tank.....</i>	<i>16(VIP)-26</i>
15.1.4	<i>Accessory Air Tank</i>	<i>16(VIP)-27</i>
15.1.5	<i>Expansion Air Tank</i>	<i>16(VIP)-27</i>
15.2	EMERGENCY FILL VALVES.....	16(VIP)-27
16.	HUB UNIT AND SWIVEL ASSEMBLY	16(VIP)-27
17.	TORQUE TABLE	16(VIP)-28
18.	SPECIFICATIONS	16(VIP)-29

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: SUSPENSION AND STEERING LINKAGE.....	16(VIP)-16-4
FIGURE 2: LOCATION OF CLAMPS	16(VIP)-16-5
FIGURE 3: CLAMP POSITIONING.....	16(VIP)-16-6
FIGURE 4: CLAMP POSITIONING.....	16(VIP)-16-6
FIGURE 5: CLAMP POSITIONING.....	16(VIP)-16-6
FIGURE 6: CLAMP POSITIONING.....	16(VIP)-16-6
FIGURE 7: CLAMP POSITIONING.....	16(VIP)-16-6
FIGURE 8: PITMAN ARM ALIGNMENT	16(VIP)-16-7
FIGURE 9: FIXING NUT PUNCH MARK	16(VIP)-16-7
FIGURE 10: BELL CRANK AND IDLER ARM.....	16(VIP)-16-9
FIGURE 11: BELL CRANK	16(VIP)-16-9
FIGURE 12: BELL CRANK	16(VIP)-16-9
FIGURE 13: LUBRICATION FITTINGS' LOCATION DIAGRAM	16(VIP)-16-12
FIGURE 14: BALL JOINTS LOCATION.....	16(VIP)-16-13
FIGURE 15: A-ARM BALL JOINT.....	16(VIP)-16-13
FIGURE 16: LOWER A-ARM BALL JOINTS.....	16(VIP)-16-14
FIGURE 17: UPPER A-ARM BALL JOINTS.....	16(VIP)-16-14
FIGURE 18: LOWER A-ARM CENTRAL BALL JOINT	16(VIP)-16-15
FIGURE 19: UPPER A-ARM CENTRAL BALL JOINT	16(VIP)-16-15
FIGURE 20: STEERING LINKAGE MEASURE	16(VIP)-16-16
FIGURE 21: FRONT END ALIGNMENT DIAGRAM	16(VIP)-16-18
FIGURE 22: AIR SPRINGS	16(VIP)-16-19
FIGURE 23: AIR SPRING AND SHOCK ABSORBER	16(VIP)-16-20
FIGURE 24: SHOCK ABSORBER	16(VIP)-16-21
FIGURE 25: SWAY BAR (FRONT SUSPENSION).....	16(VIP)-16-22
FIGURE 26: SWAY BAR (REAR SUSPENSION).....	16(VIP)-16-22
FIGURE 27: HEIGHT CONTROL VALVE LOCATION.....	16(VIP)-16-23
FIGURE 28: TYPICAL AIR SPRING CLEARANCE	16(VIP)-16-24
FIGURE 29: FRONT HEIGHT CONTROL VALVE	16(VIP)-16-24
FIGURE 30: LOCATION OF AIR TANKS.....	16(VIP)-16-26
FIGURE 31: REAR VALVE LOCATION	16(VIP)-16-26
FIGURE 32: FRONT VALVE LOCATION.....	16(VIP)-16-27

Section 16: VIP EQUIPPED WITH INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION (IFS)

1. INTRODUCTION

This supplement contains service procedures and specifications that apply to the PREVOST VIP coach shell vehicles equipped with an independent front suspension.

This text contains information unique to the independent suspension system. In the case you cannot find information on a subject in this supplement section, the information given in the regular sections of the Maintenance Manual will apply.

2. STEERING LINKAGE

Turning motion of the steering wheel is transferred by the steering gear and steering linkage to the steering arms at the right and left front wheels. The steering linkage consists of tie rods connected to the bell crank and the steering arm at the left side of the coach, and to the idler arm and steering arm at the right side of the coach. The bell crank and idler arm are

connected by a relay rod. A drag link connected to the bell crank and the pitman arm, which is mounted to the steering gear, transfers the turning motion of the steering wheel to the steering arms. The hydraulic power cylinder provides an added source of assistance and being connected to the R.H. wheel, makes it such that the total steering forces are produced with minimal stress on mechanical linkages (Fig. 1).

Lower and upper A-arms are widely spaced. They are mounted on ball joints. Torque rods prevent rotation of the uprights around the lower and upper ball joints.

If the steering linkage is bent, twisted or worn, steering action of the coach will be seriously affected. Any time steering linkage components are replaced or adjusted, steering geometry and front wheel alignment must be checked as explained in this section of supplement.

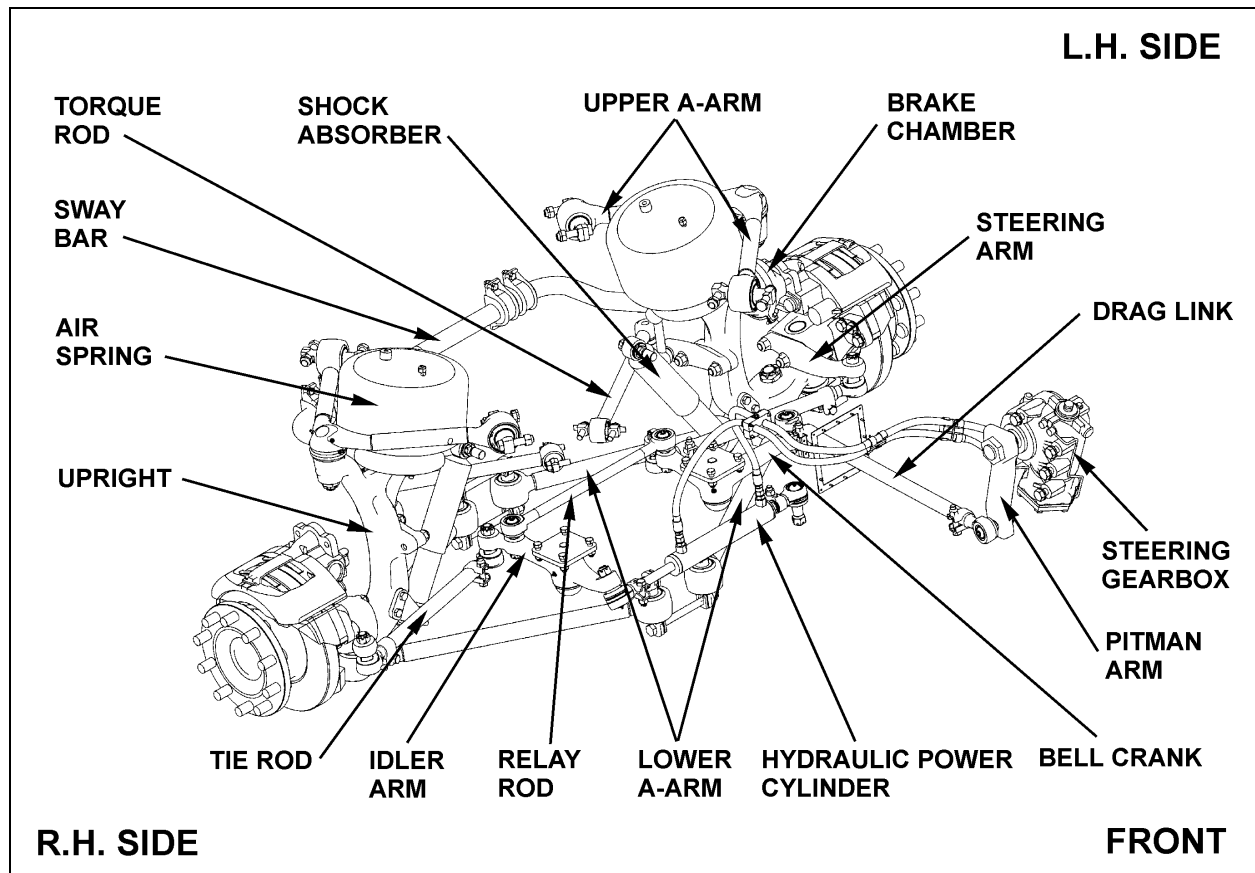


FIGURE 1: SUSPENSION AND STEERING LINKAGE

16036

Turning Angle

The maximum turning angle is set mechanically through the two steering stop screws installed on the swivel assembly. The turning angle ($56^{\circ} + 0^{\circ} - 1^{\circ}$) mechanical stop is factory adjusted to accommodate the chassis design, and therefore, does not require adjustment on new vehicles.

However, turning angle should be checked and adjusted hydraulically, if necessary, any time a component of the steering system is repaired, disassembled or adjusted.

Before checking the turning angle, be sure the front end is properly aligned as described under paragraph "4. Front End Alignment" in this supplement.

To check steering maximum turning angle, proceed with the following method:

1. Check if front tires rub against the frame or if the steering gear has been serviced.

Caution: If clamps are not correctly installed, they can interfere with other parts.

2. For a full left and right turn, check clamps' position and for interfering parts. Refer to figures 2 to 6 for location and positioning of clamps. If readjustment is required, make the proper adjustment.

Note: Prior to steering limiter adjustment, verify vehicle wheel alignment, and ensure that oil level is adequate and that air bleeding is done.

3. If necessary readjust steering limiter. Refer to "ZF-SERVOCOM Repair Manual" annexed to XL2 Maintenance Manual, Section 14, "Steering", under heading: "Setting and Functional Test".

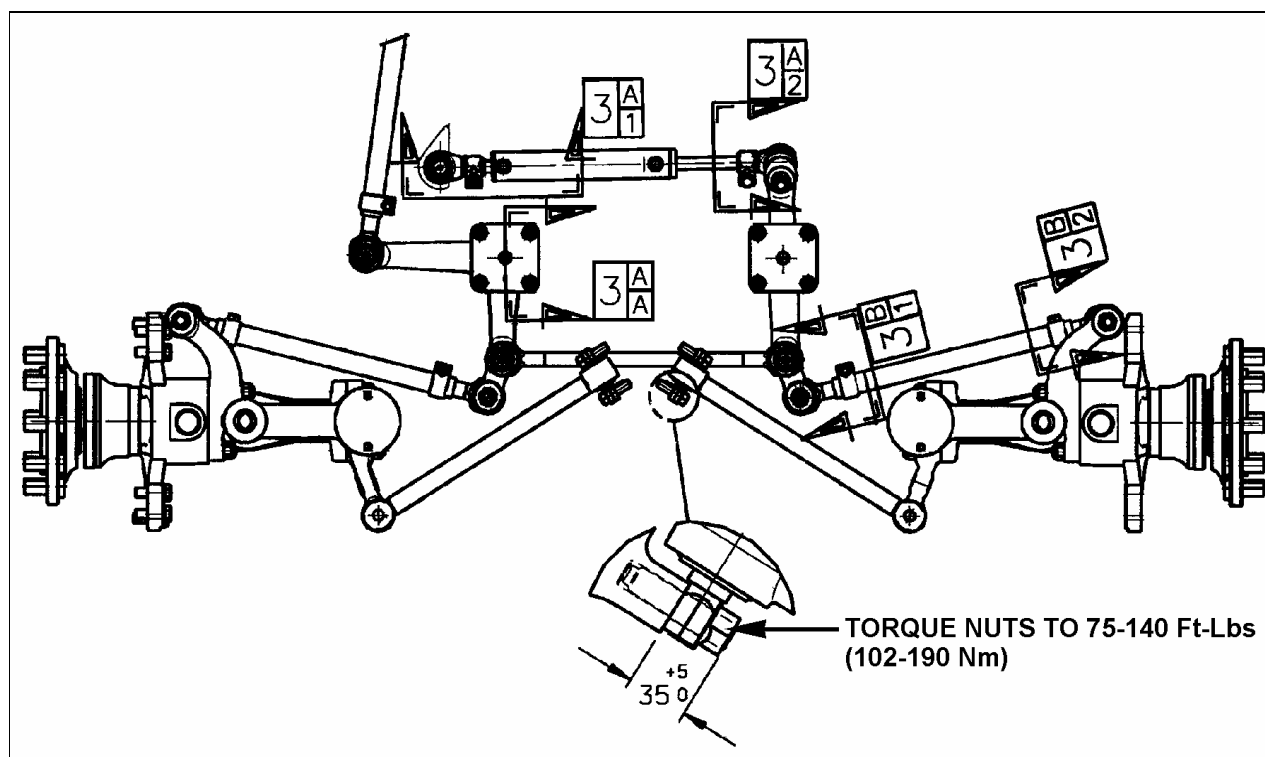


FIGURE 2: LOCATION OF CLAMPS

16037

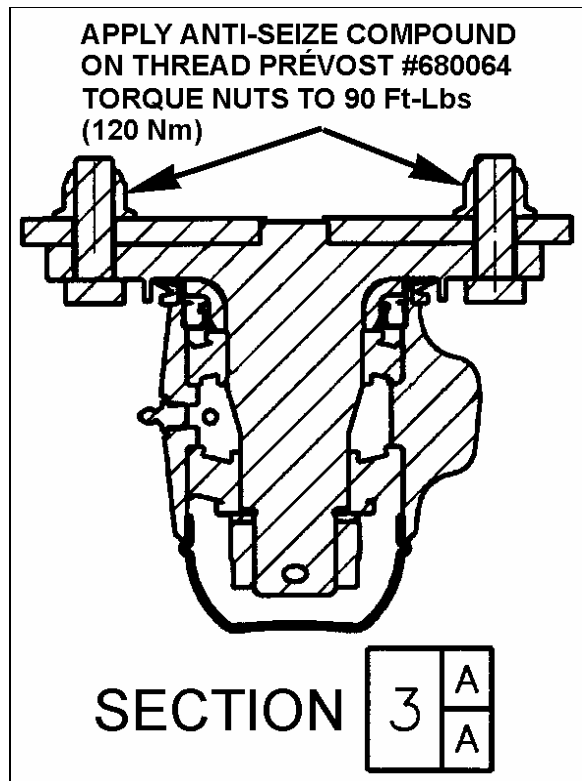


FIGURE 3: CLAMP POSITIONING

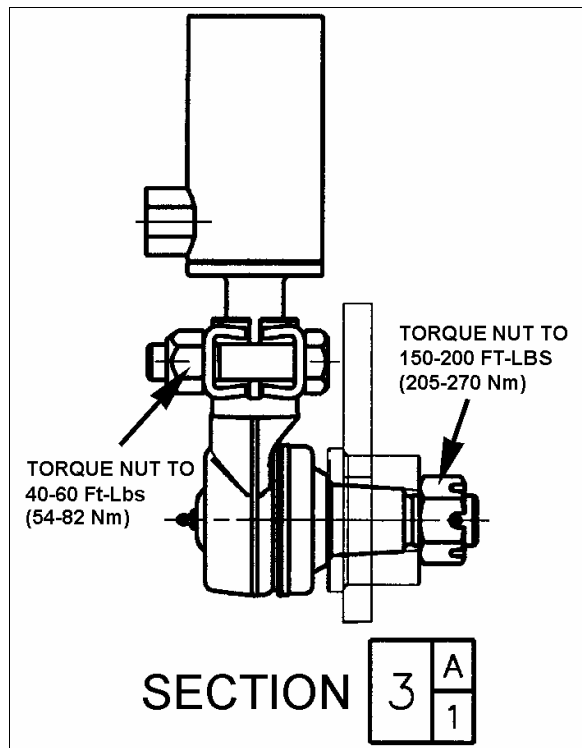


FIGURE 4: CLAMP POSITIONING

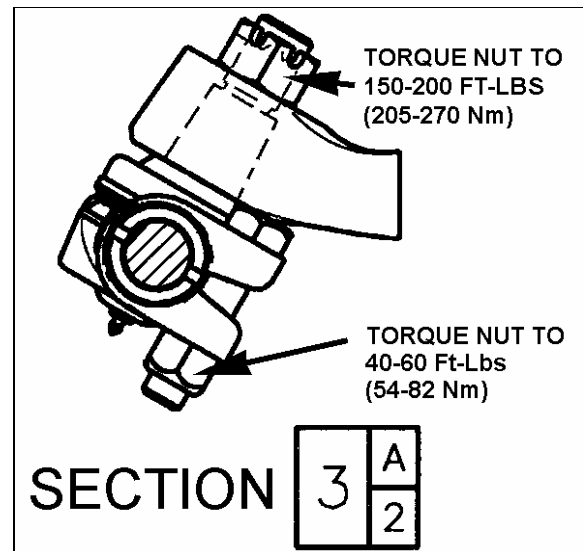


FIGURE 5: CLAMP POSITIONING

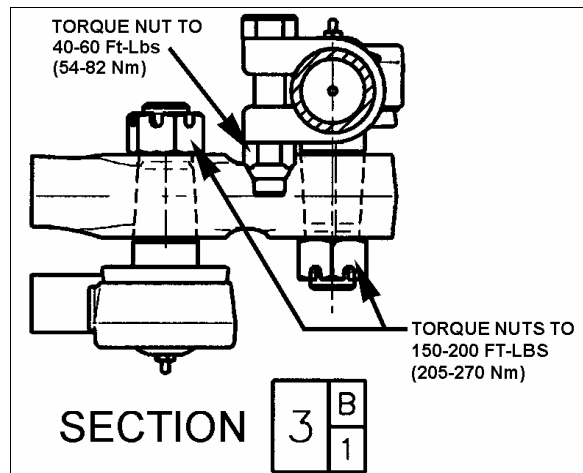


FIGURE 6: CLAMP POSITIONING

16038

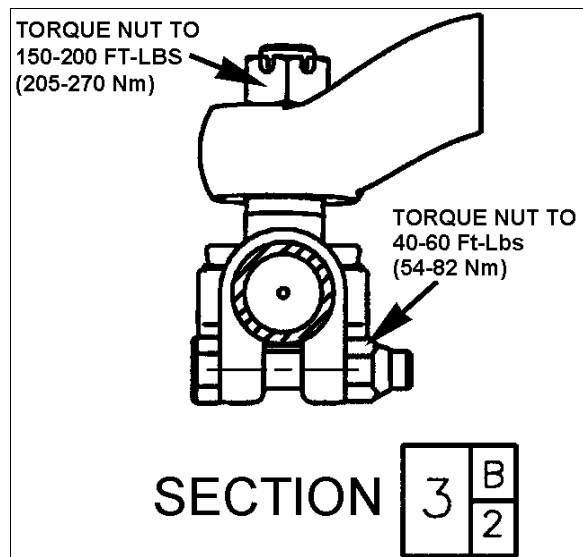


FIGURE 7: CLAMP POSITIONING

16039

2.1 POWER STEERING HYDRAULIC PUMP

Refer to the "TRW Power Steering Pump Service Manual" annexed at the end of Section 14.

2.2 STEERING LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT

Note: Whenever a steering linkage component has been removed and replaced, check steering geometry and front end alignment as directed in this Supplement. Check to insure that all stud nuts and mounting bolts and nuts have been tightened to proper torques listed under "16. Torque Table" at the end of this supplement.

1. First, align the input shaft marks.
2. Afterwards, the pitman arm should be adjusted with reference mark aligned or to an angle of 2° in relation with the vertical axis (Fig. 8).
3. Locate centerline of vehicle then install relay rod in boss at steering bell crank and idler arm. Align center of relay rod with centerline of vehicle.
4. Install drag link to pitman arm and adjust opposite end of drag link to fit mounting stud hole in bell crank.
5. Install tie rods then adjust toe-in as per "Front End Alignment" in this Supplement.

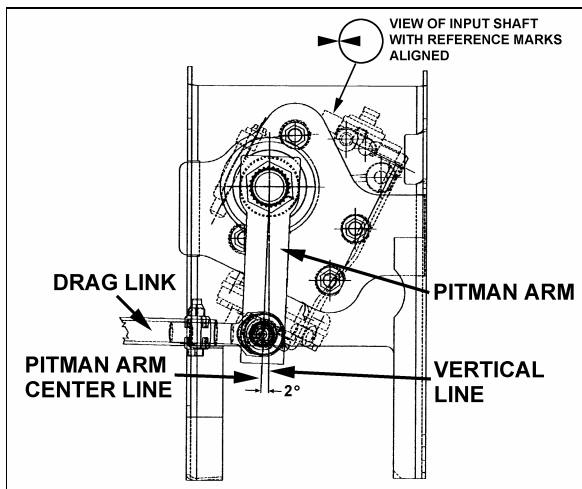


FIGURE 8: PITMAN ARM ALIGNMENT

14056

2.3 PITMAN ARM REMOVAL

1. Remove cotter pin, nut and washer from drag link ball stud at pitman arm.
2. Disconnect drag link from pitman arm, using jaw style pullers (pressure screw type).

Warning: Always wear approved eye protection when operating pullers.

Caution: Do not drive pitman arm on or off pitman shaft as this can damage the steering gear.

Caution: Heating of components to aid in disassembly is not allowed because it has a detrimental effect on axle components and steering linkages.

3. Remove pitman arm fixing nut.
4. Check the radial position of the pitman arm in relation to the sector shaft prior to removal of pitman arm.
5. Add reference marks to the arm and shaft if necessary to ensure correct alignment at reassembly.
6. Use a puller to remove pitman arm.

2.4 PITMAN ARM INSTALLATION

1. Position pitman arm on sector gear shaft with reference marks aligned.
2. Install fixing nut. Tighten nut to 400-450 Lbf-ft (545-612 Nm).

Note: Use a new nut if the previously removed nut was punched.

Caution: Lock nut with sector shaft using a punch mark into the groove (Refer to figure 9).

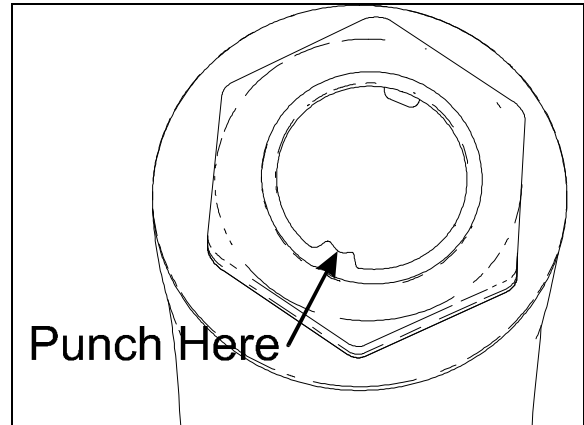


FIGURE 9: FIXING NUT PUNCH MARK

16098

3. Connect drag link to pitman arm. Install washers. Tighten nut to 160-215 Lbf-ft (218-292 Nm). Advance nut to next alignment cotter pin slot and install a new cotter pin.

2.5 DRAG LINK

Drag link assembly consists of three parts; a drag link and two end assemblies. Both end assemblies are identical and they are retained on the drag link with a clamp bolt and nut.

Section 16: VIP EQUIPPED WITH INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION (IFS)

Stud nuts at the pitman arm and bell crank ends of the drag link must be kept tight or hole at ball stud end of drag link and hole in pitman arm may become enlarged as a result of excessive looseness. Subsequent tightening of stud nuts may draw studs too far into holes and dust cover parts may become damaged which can result in component failure.

Drag link end sockets are equipped with lubrication fittings and should be lubricated as directed in "Lubrication Fittings" in this supplement.

2.5.1 Adjustment

It should not be necessary to alter the length of the drag link except when a new link is installed or when removable end assembly has been replaced. If drag link adjustment is necessary, proceed as follows:

1. Position front wheels in straight ahead position.
2. Center steering gear as previously explained in paragraph "2.1 Steering Linkage Adjustment".
3. Remove cotter pin and stud from drag link at bell crank. Locate centerline of vehicle and center of relay rod. With center of relay rod aligned with centerline of vehicle, loosen clamp bolt at socket end (bell crank end) of drag link and adjust length of socket end assembly to fit in boss of bell crank.

Note: Do not change position of pitman arm.

4. Install stud nut and torque to 160 Lbf-ft (220 Nm). Align nut with cotter pin slot (tighten) and install a new cotter pin.
5. Torque mounting clamp bolt nut to 40-60 Lbf-ft (54-82 Nm), then test the adjustment. Front wheels should turn from right to left extremities without noticeable binding at drag link ends.

2.6 BELL CRANK AND IDLER ARM

Bell crank and idler arm are equipped with one lubrication fitting and should be lubricated as directed in paragraph "2.9 Lubrication Fittings" at the end of this Supplement.

2.6.1 Bell Crank and Idler Arm Removal

Note: Use a piece of wire to anchor loosen end of relay rod and tie rod in order to prevent placing an excessive load on opposite socket end.

Bell crank: Disconnect drag link, tie rod and relay rod from bell crank by removing cotter pins, stud nuts and washers from ball studs. Separate socket assemblies from the bell crank.

Idler arm: Remove cotter pins, nuts and washers from ball studs connecting relay rod and tie rod to idler arm. Separate socket assemblies from idler arm.

Remove nuts and washers from bolt attaching bell crank or idler arm mounting bracket to vehicle understructure. Remove bell crank or idler arm mounting bracket.

2.6.2 Bell crank or Idler Arm Ball Joint Disassembly

1. Remove adjacent link assemblies from bell crank or idler arm as previously described.
2. Remove the cap (Fig. 10).
3. Remove the cotter pin, nut and tongue washer. Remove bearings, grease seal, bearing bushing and the bell crank or idler arm from its mounting bracket stud (Fig. 10).

2.6.3 Bell Crank or Idler Arm Ball Joint Reassembly

Note: For bearing installation use tool Prévost # 110684.

1. Install bearing bushing on bell crank or idler arm mounting bracket stud.
2. Install bearing and grease seal in bell crank or idler arm eye (Fig. 10).

Note: Install grease seal according to figure 8. Grease must be able to exit the bell crank or idler arm mechanism. For grease seal installation use tool Prévost # 110683.

3. Install bell crank or idler arm on its mounting bracket stud (Fig. 10).
4. Install bearing and nut.

Note: Apply grease on bearing before installation.

5. Firmly tighten nut (Fig. 11).

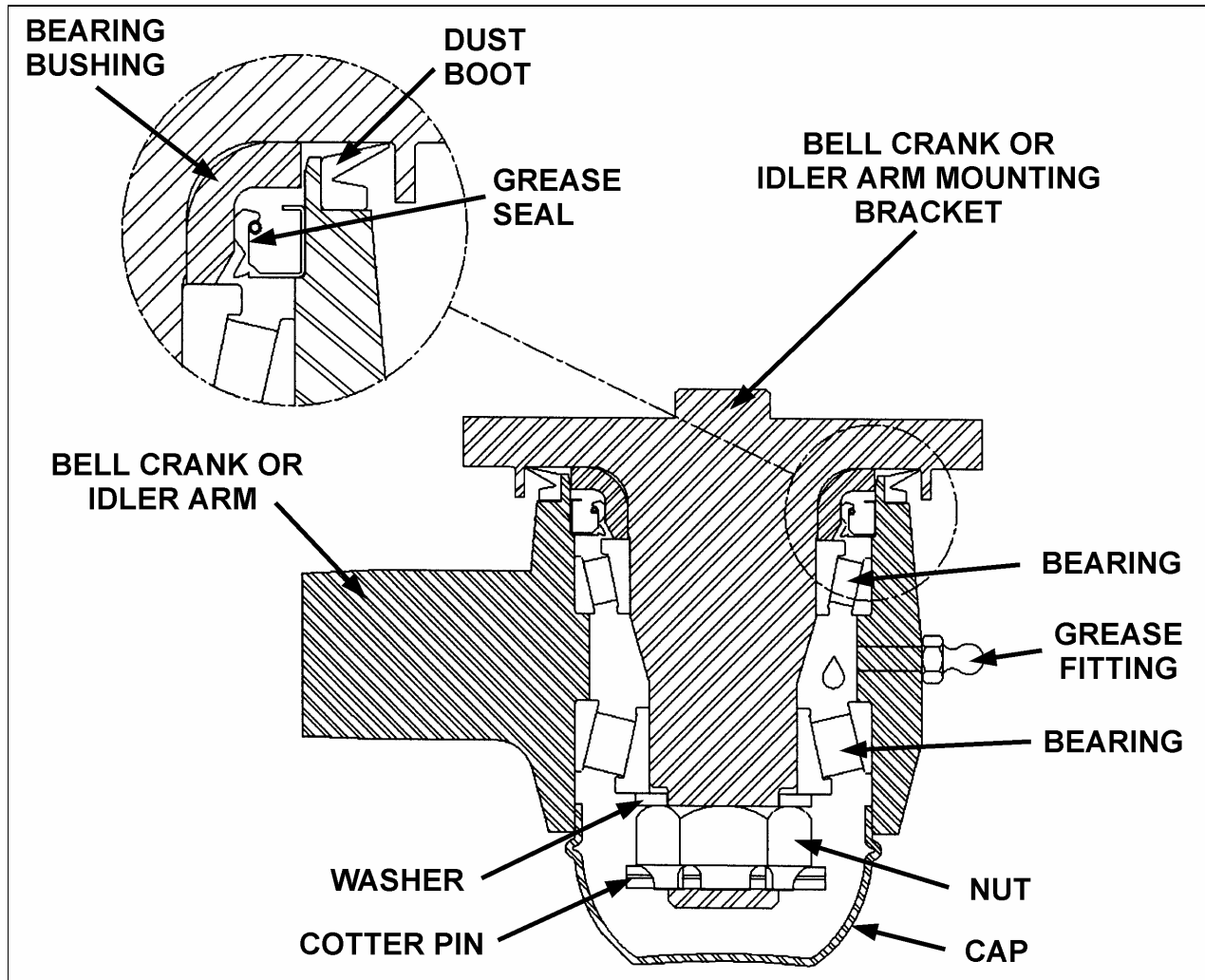


FIGURE 10: BELL CRANK AND IDLER ARM 16109

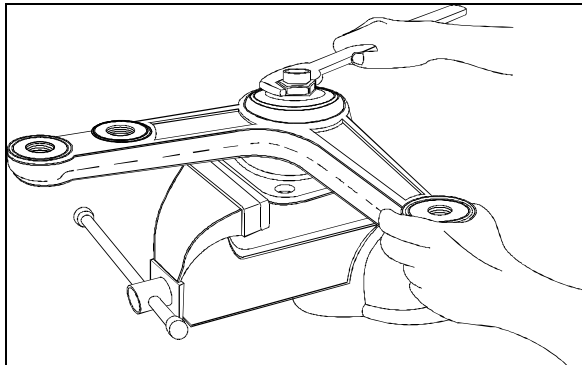


FIGURE 11: BELL CRANK 16044

6. Unscrew nut until bell crank or idler arm starts to turn by the application of 1 to 3 pounds load (Fig. 12).

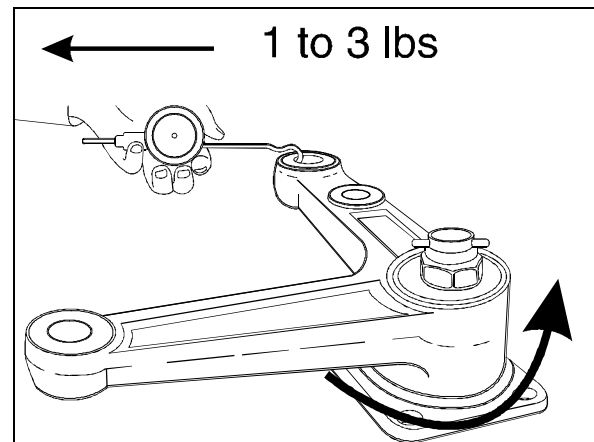


FIGURE 12: BELL CRANK 16045

7. Check for loose bearings by applying an up and down load on bell crank or idler lever (Fig. 12). The lever is not supposed to move in the vertical axis direction.
8. Align nut with cotter pin slot (tighten) and install a new cotter pin.

Section 16: VIP EQUIPPED WITH INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION (IFS)

Note: Bend cotter pin around the nut (Fig. 10). Do not bend the cotter pin in the direction of the cap, because it may interfere with the cap.

9. Install the cap.
10. **Bell crank:** Install drag link, tie rod and relay rod as directed herein under each specific subject.
11. **Idler arm:** Install tie rod and relay rod as directed herein under each specific subject.
12. Adjust turning angle as previously directed under paragraph "**Turning Angle**" and check front end alignment as specified in paragraph "6. Front End Alignment" of this supplement.

2.7 RELAY ROD

Relay rod ends are equipped with lubrication fittings and should be lubricated as directed in paragraph "2.9 Lubrication Fittings" in this supplement.

Note: The relay rod is crimped in place and it is not possible to remove the ball joints.

2.7.1 Replacement

1. Remove cotter pins from bell crank and idler arm end of relay rod. Loosen nuts flush with end of studs.
2. Use a puller or place a sledge hammer behind the adjacent part to absorb shocks. Strike the studs with a brass hammer to loosen end assemblies.
3. Remove stud nuts and washers then remove studs.
4. Position relay rod studs into bell crank and idler arm then tap stud ends with a brass hammer to seat tapered surfaces.
5. Install washers and stud nuts. Tighten nuts to 160 Lbf-ft (220 Nm) torque. Align cotter pin slot (tighten) and install a new cotter pin.

2.8 TIE RODS

Tie rod ends are connected to the bell crank and left steering arm, and to the idler arm and right steering arm. Each tie rod assembly consists of three parts; a tube and two socket end assemblies. The tie rod ends are threaded into the tube and secured with clamp bolts. Right and left hand threads are provided to ease toe-in adjustment. Tie rod assemblies are inter-

changeable from the right to the left side of the coach.

Tie rod end sockets require no maintenance other than periodic lubrication and inspection to see that ball studs are tight. Replace socket ends when there is excessive up and down motion, lost motion or end play at ball end of stud.

1. Periodically check bolt nut for tightness.
2. Inspect tie rod for bent condition and inspect tube for damaged threads. If tie rod is bent or threads are damaged, replace the assembly.
3. Lubricate tie rod end fittings as directed in paragraph "2.9 Lubrication Fittings" at the end of this section.

2.8.1 Removal

1. Remove cotter pins and stud nuts which attach tie rod socket ends to bell crank and left steering arm (or idler arm) and right steering arm.
2. Remove tie rod ball stud by tapping on steering arm and bell crank or idler arm with hammer, while using a sledge hammer to absorb shocks.

Note: If tie rod end assemblies are damaged in any way, they must be replaced.

2.8.2 Installation

1. Install socket end assemblies on tie rod. Be sure both ends are threaded an equal distance into the tube.
2. Make sure threads on stud and in stud nut are clean and not damaged.
3. Position ball studs (socket ends of tie rod) in holes in steering arm and bell crank or idler arm. Install a ball stud nut on each stud and tighten firmly.
4. Torque stud nuts to 160 Lbf-ft (220 Nm). Align cotter pin slot (tighten) and install a new cotter pin.

Note: Adjust toe-in as directed in paragraph "6.4.2 Toe-In Adjustment" of this supplement.

5. Make sure tie rod ends are properly aligned with ball studs, then torque tie rod end clamp bolts to 40-60 Lbf-ft (54-82 Nm).

Note: If tie rod is not properly aligned with stud, binding will result.

2.9 STEERING ARMS

The left and right wheel steering arms are secured to a swivel at one end and to a tie rod at the other end.

2.9.1 Removal

1. Remove wheel as directed in Section 13, "Wheel, Hubs And Tires" of the maintenance manual.
2. Remove cotter pin, washer and nut from stud securing tie rod to steering arm. Remove ball stud from steering arm by tapping on arm with a hammer, placing a sledge hammer underneath steering arm to absorb shocks.
3. Remove cotter pin and nut securing steering arm to swivel assembly. Remove steering arm from swivel.

2.9.2 Installation

1. Insert steering arm in swivel.
2. Torque steering arm to swivel nut to 190 Lbf-ft (260 Nm). Align cotter pin slot (tighten) and install a new cotter pin.
3. Position tie rod ball stud in steering arm and tap with a brass hammer to seat ball stud in steering arm. Install washer and nut on stud. Torque nut to 160-215 Lbf-ft (217-291 Nm). Tighten nut to nearest cotter pin slot and install a new cotter pin.
4. Install wheel as directed in Section 13, "Wheel, Hubs And Tires" under paragraph "3.2 Installation" of the maintenance manual.

2.10 LUBRICATION FITTINGS

All lubrication fittings must be clean before applying lubricant. Also, always be sure equipment used in applying lubricant is clean. Every precaution should be taken to prevent entry of dirt, grit, lint or other foreign matter into lubricant containers. Replace fitting when they become broken or damaged.

Intervals of application given in the following paragraphs are recommended for normal service. More frequent intervals may be applied under severe operating conditions. In selecting proper lubricants, supplier reputation must be considered. The supplier must be responsible for product quality. The diagram (Fig. 13) shows approximate location of steering lubrication fittings.

1. **Drag Link Ends:** Lubricate at two fittings, one at each end of link, every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) with good quality lithium-base grease NLGI No. 2 (Shell Retinax LX or equivalent).
2. **Relay Rod Ends:** Lubricate at two fittings, one at each end of rod, every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) with good quality lithium-base grease NLGI No. 2 (Shell Retinax LX or equivalent).
3. **Tie Rod Ends:** Lubricate at four fittings, one at each end of both tie rods, every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) with good quality lithium-base grease NLGI No. 2 (Shell Retinax LX or equivalent).
4. **Swivel Assembly:** Refer to DANA SPICER MAINTENANCE MANUAL NDS AXLES Lubrication and Maintenance" annexed at the end of section 10.
5. **Idler Arm and Crank bell:** Lubricate at two fittings, one on the idler arm and the other on the crank bell, every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) with good quality lithium-base grease NLGI No. 2 (Shell Retinax LX or equivalent). Apply grease gun pressure to the fitting until lubricant appears at the top seal.
6. **Upper V-Link Outer Ball Joint:** Lubricate at fitting until you see some grease on the relief valve nearby, every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) with good quality lithium-base grease NLGI No. 2 (Shell Retinax LX or equivalent).

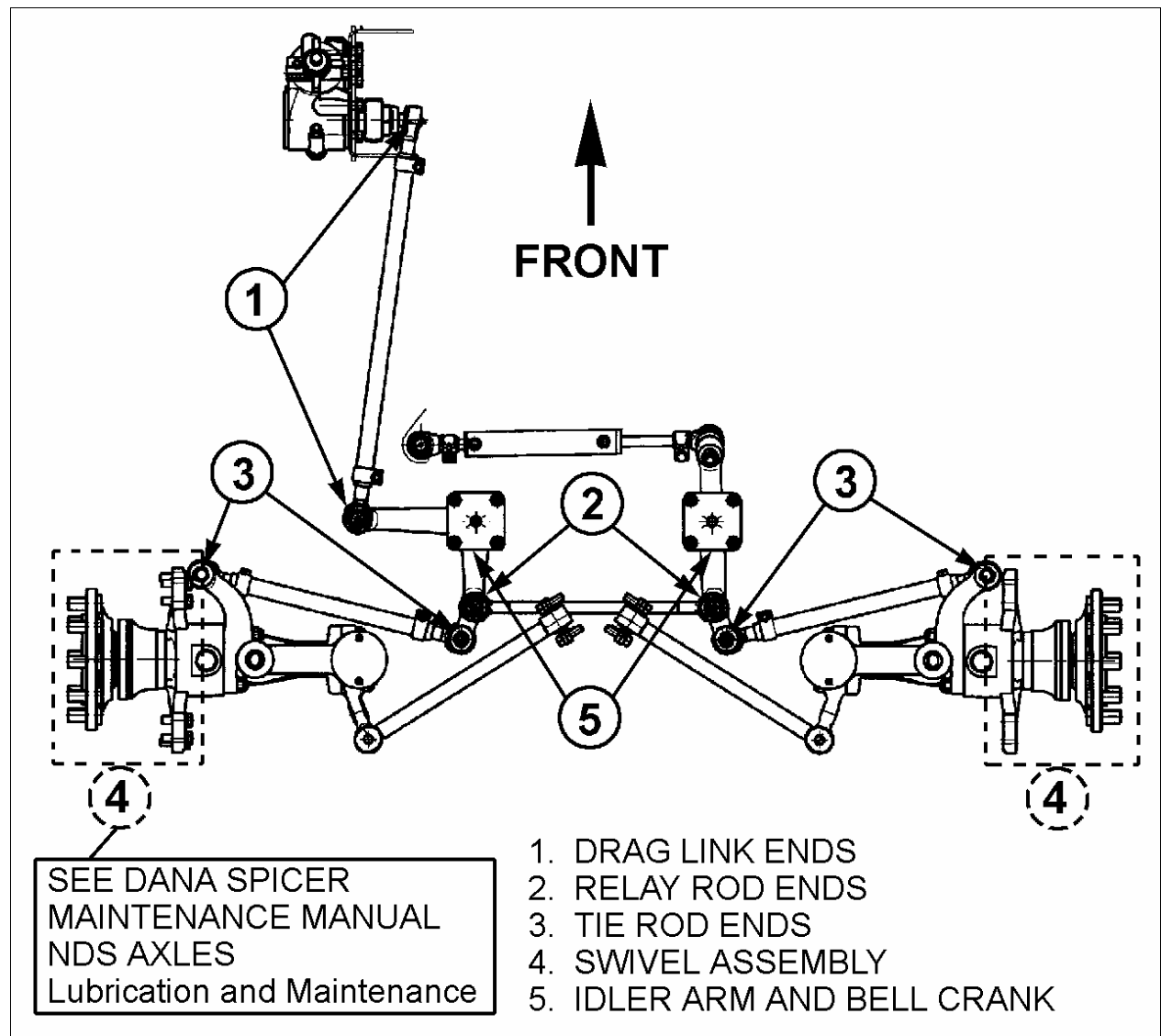


FIGURE 13: LUBRICATION FITTINGS' LOCATION DIAGRAM

16046

3. BALL JOINTS

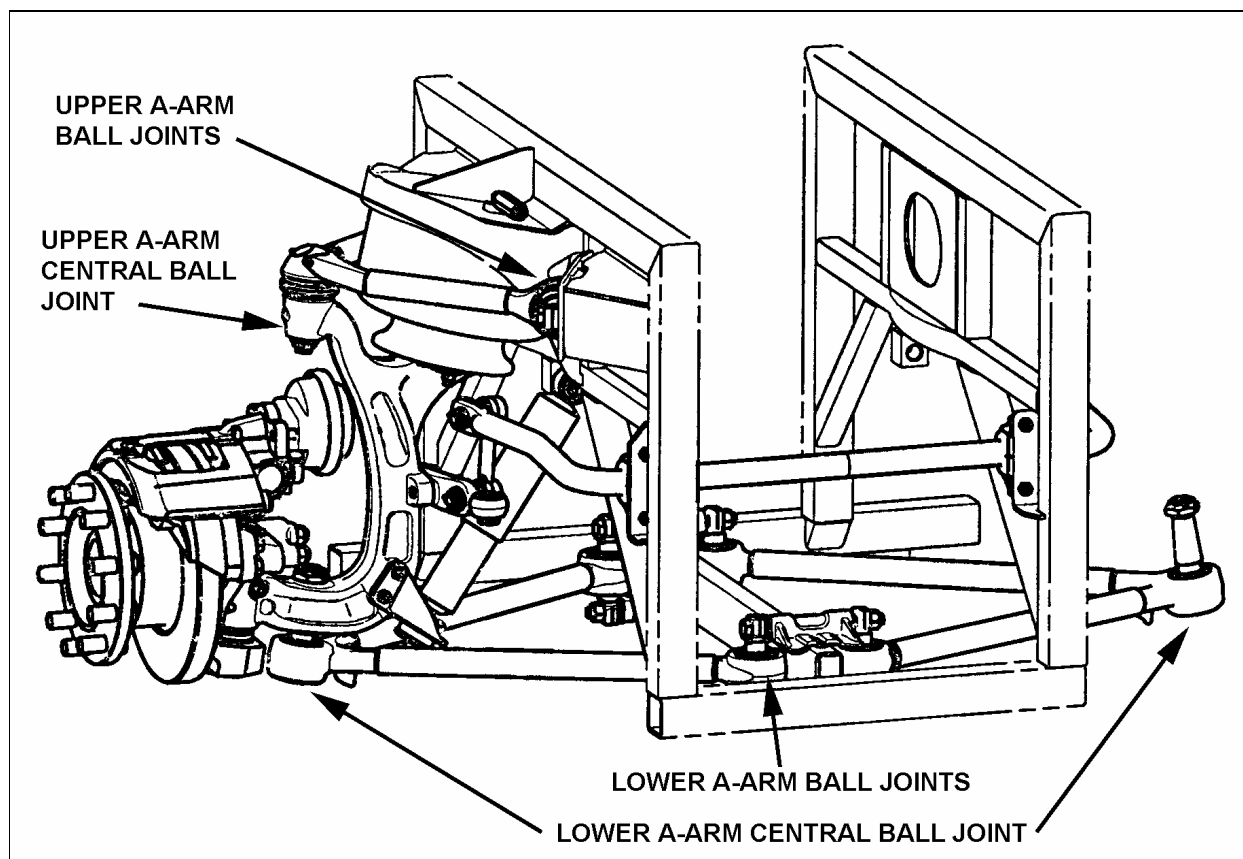


FIGURE 14: BALL JOINTS LOCATION

4. LOWER AND UPPER A-ARM BALL JOINT

The assembly work may be done only by a recognized specialized workshop. Ensure that old and new parts do not get mixed up with each other. It is for this reason that all the old parts are to be scrapped immediately after a joint has been stripped down. A complete repair set must be used for each joint repaired, i.e. use of only part of a repair set is not permissible.

4.1 INSPECTION

Take off the load from the ball joint by lifting the front of the vehicle. Apply a load on the joint in all of the degrees of freedom in an axial, radial, etc. sense with a suitable lever tool. After the load is taken off, the joint has to spring back into its starting position. Free play is not acceptable.

Separation of rubber from ball pin or external joint shell is in accordance with "normal wear characteristics".

When the following characteristics are noted, the joint is to be changed:

-Free play;

-Radial cracking of the external sheet-metal race.

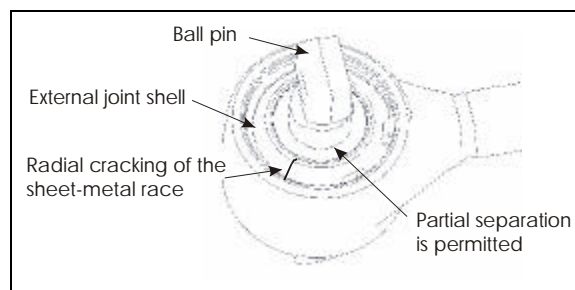


FIGURE 15: A-ARM BALL JOINT

4.2 STRIPPING DOWN

Strip down the defective joint through removal of retaining ring, annular spacer and ball pin/bushing assembly and thereafter clean out housing bore and locking circlips groove.

4.3 ASSEMBLY

Execute assembly of the new joint parts in the following sequence:

Section 16: VIP EQUIPPED WITH INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION (IFS)

1. Complete moistening of the contact surface between housing bore and ball pin through application of the grease.

Note: Apply grease, only in the case of repair kit (Prévost # 611114)).

2. Insert ball pin/bushing assembly. In case of the two-bolt type, ensure that the bolt bores are in the correct position in relation to the axis of the tube.
3. Place joint in receiving fixture and mount annular assembly tool on the housing. Then locate annular spacer and retaining ring in the housing using axial load with the aid of assembly matrix. If the ends of the annular spacer are not in contact with each other, the thus formed opening must be located at 180° to the opening of the retaining ring. Pay attention during assembly to ensure that the retaining ring eyelets are located at each side of the housing shaft axis (retaining ring eyelet lug points to tube), and that retaining ring is properly engaged in the groove of the housing.
4. When repairing defective ball pin assemblies, the necked down-bolt must regularly be replaced with a new one.

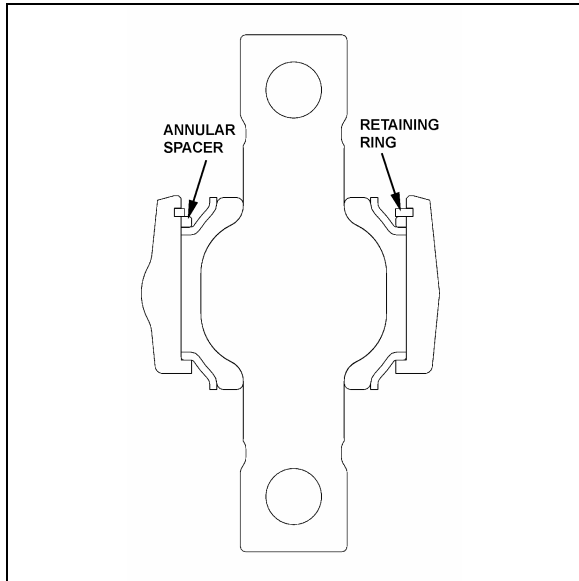


FIGURE 16: LOWER A-ARM BALL JOINTS

16047

5. LOWER A- ARM CENTRAL BALL JOINT

5.1 INSPECTION

Take off the load from the ball joint by lifting the front of the vehicle. Apply a load on the joint in all of the degrees of freedom in an axial, radial,

etc. sense with a suitable lever tool. After the load is taken off, the joint has to spring back into its starting position. Free play is not acceptable.

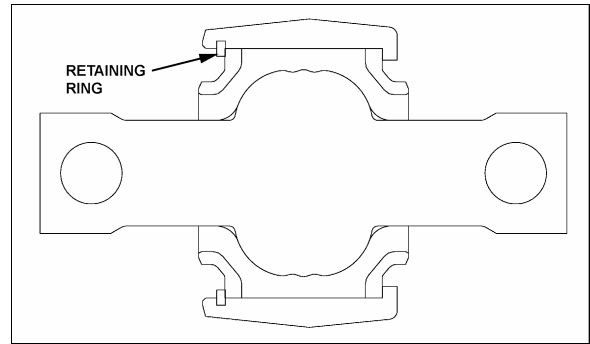


FIGURE 17: UPPER A-ARM BALL JOINTS

Separation of rubber from ball pin or external joint bushing shell is in accordance with "normal wear characteristics".

When the following characteristics are noted, the joint is to be changed:

- Free play;
- Radial cracking of the external bushing shell.

5.2 STRIPPING DOWN

Strip down the defective joint through removal of retaining ring, annular spacer and ball pin/bushing, assembly and thereafter clean out housing bore and locking circlips groove

5.3 ASSEMBLY

Assemble the new component parts of the joint in the following sequence:

1. Complete moistening of the contact surface between housing bore and ball pin through application of the grease.
2. Place joint in receiving fixture and mount annular assembly tool on the housing. Then locate annular spacer and retaining ring in the housing using axial load with the aid of assembly matrix. If the ends of the annular spacer are not in contact with each other, the thus formed opening must be located at 180° to the opening of the retaining ring. Pay attention during assembly to ensure that the retaining ring eyelets are located at each side of the housing shaft axis (retaining ring eyelet lug points to tube), and that retaining ring is properly engaged in the groove of the housing.
3. Faultlessly apply grease by mechanical means to bracket-outer core and ball-inner

cone. Insert bracket outer cone in fixture with distance ring and then use press tool to apply pressure to press mount with ball-inner cone.

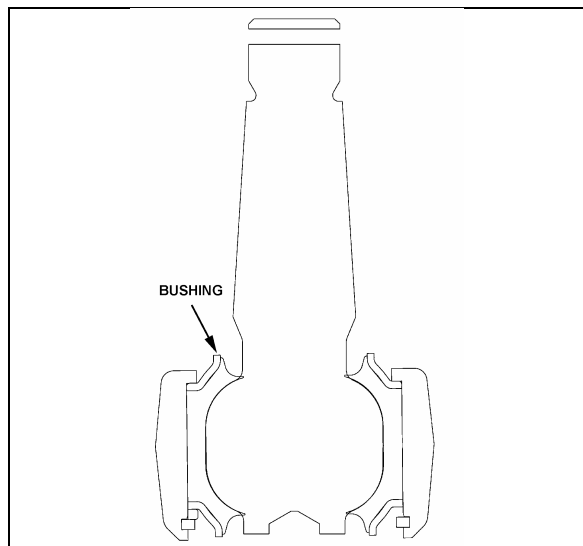


FIGURE 18: LOWER A-ARM CENTRAL BALL JOINT

6. UPPER A-ARM CENTRAL BALL JOINT

6.1 VISUAL INSPECTION

Check the condition of the sealing boot, in particular:

Check if the retainer ring, which secures the sealing boot at the conical section of the ball stud, is still present.

Check if grease is present on the external surface of the sealing boots. Escaped fluid and accumulations of grease on the sealing boot may be the result of the sealing boot's rupturing. In this case, the ball joint must be systematically replaced.

6.2 PLAY MEASUREMENT

1. Raise the vehicle and support through axle jacking points.
2. Using a caliper, measure dimension A on figure 19.
3. With a lever tool, exert sufficient force under the upper A-arm as to separate the upper A-arm from the upright in order to have the ball joint to its maximum extent. Measure dimension A again. If the difference between the two dimensions is greater than 0.060" (1.5mm), then the ball joint should be replaced.

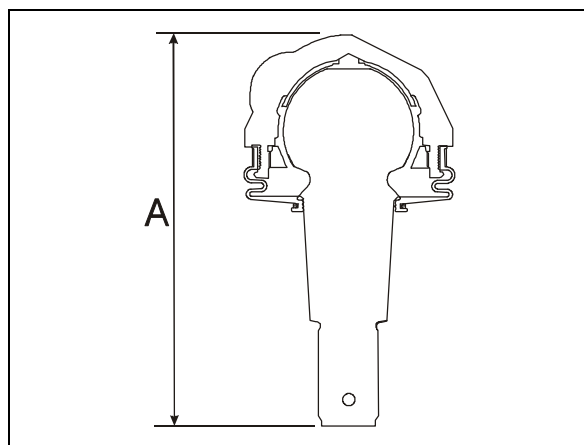


FIGURE 19: UPPER A-ARM CENTRAL BALL JOINT 16116

7. FRONT END ALIGNMENT

Proper front end alignment must be maintained to insure ease of steering and provide satisfactory tire life. When making front end alignment inspections, the vehicle must be level and empty with the full weight of the vehicle on the wheels.

Front end alignment inspections fall into two groups: regular service inspections performed at periodic intervals, and inspections to determine the extent of damage after a collision or severe service.

Regular service inspections concern toe-in, camber and caster.

Any variation from the specified alignment will indicate either a need for adjustment or a more thorough inspection to determine if parts replacement is required.

Warning: During alignment, both camber and caster among other angles are adjusted. When adjusting these we install or remove shims from the lower "A" arms of the ISS suspension. After performing alignment, make sure that the following is done:

- a) Installing a new lock nut after all shims are finalized.
- b) Torque replaced nuts as per figure 23.
- c) Installing a longer bolt if less the 2 threads are remaining after the nut.
- d) Using a Torque mark on the nut for future visual inspection.

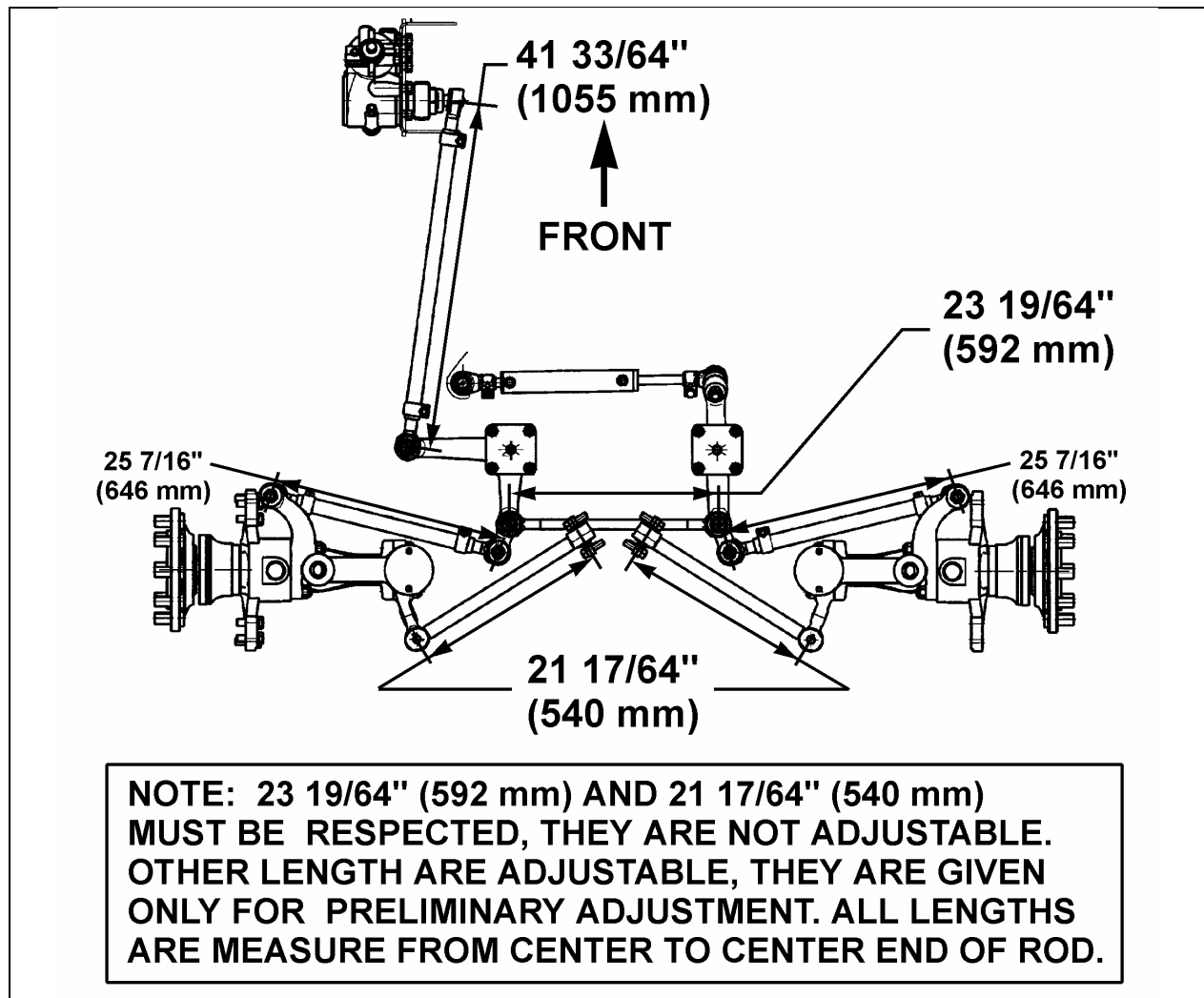


FIGURE 20: STEERING LINKAGE MEASURE

16050

7.1 ALIGNMENT TERMINOLOGY

Wheel Camber

The amount the wheels are inclined from the vertical plane (A, Fig. 21).

Wheel Toe-In

The distance the front wheels are closer together at the front than at the rear of the tires (D minus E, Fig. 21).

King Pin Inclination

The inclination of the king pin from vertical toward the center of the vehicle at the top and outward at the bottom (B, Fig. 21).

Front Axle Caster

The inclination of the king pin from vertical in the fore and aft direction (C, Fig. 21).

7.2 FRONT END INSPECTION

Before checking front end alignment, make the following inspection:

1. Check that the vehicle is at normal ride height (see paragraph "11. Suspension Height Adjustment").
2. Check the tires for proper inflation.
3. Check wheel installation and run-out.
4. Check wheel bearing adjustment.
5. Check tie rods and drag link ends for looseness.
6. Check king pins for looseness.
7. Check if the length of the torque rod is 21 17/64" (540 mm) (Fig. 20). Check if the length of the relay rod is 23 19/64" (592 mm).

7.3 FRONT WHEEL CAMBER

Positive camber is the outward inclination of the wheels at the top, negative or reverse camber is the inward inclination of the wheels at the top. Camber variations may be caused by wear at the wheel bearings, wheel spindle bushings, or bent suspension parts.

Check camber, with an accurate gauge. If camber is incorrect, check suspension parts for wear and replace worn parts. If wear is not perceptible, suspension parts may be bent or lower suspension arm may be improperly shimmed.

Check king pin inclination. If king pin inclination is incorrect, readjust the camber and check king pin inclination again.

Note: *Camber is more important than king pin inclination, so adjust camber and verify king pin inclination.*

Shim the lower suspension arm to adjust camber. If the king pin inclination is incorrect, the wheel king pin assembly may be bent and therefore should be replaced.

Excessive positive camber results in irregular wear of the tires at the outer shoulders. Negative or reverse camber causes wear at the inner shoulders.

Note: *Shim only the lower suspension arm to adjust the front wheel camber.*

Caution: *Once the perfect shim combination is achieved, always install new "stover" nuts because the self locking effect is lost after tightening and loosening of the nut. It is recommended to punch marks to detect loosening of the nuts during future visual inspections.*

7.4 FRONT WHEEL TOE-IN

Toe-in is measured from the center of the tire treads. Measurements at the front and rear of the tires must be made at the same height from the floor. Incorrect toe-in results in excessive tire wear and steering instability with a tendency to wander.

7.4.1 Toe-In Check

1. Check the camber adjustment and adjust if necessary.
2. Hoist the front of the vehicle and spin the wheels marking the centerline of the tire treads.

3. Place the wheels in the straight ahead position and lower the vehicle to rest on the floor.
4. Roll the vehicle ahead several feet. This removes any slack caused by looseness in the wheel bearings or steering connections.
5. Check the distance between the tire centerlines at the front and rear of the front tires. These two measurements must be made at the same height above the floor. The front measurement must be $3/32 \pm 1/32$ of an inch less than the rear measurement.

7.4.2 Toe-In Adjustment

1. Loosen the tie rod clamp bolts.
2. Using a pipe wrench, turn the tie rod tubes to obtain the toe-in measurement specified in step 5 under paragraph "6.4.1 Toe-in Check" of this Supplement.
3. Tighten the tie rod clamp bolts and recheck toe-in.
4. Check that the angular relationship of the pitman arm to the steering gear is as shown in figure 8.

Note: *Use only tie rods to adjust toe-in.*

7.5 FRONT AXLE CASTER

Positive caster is the inclination of the top of the king pins toward the rear of the vehicle. Negative or reverse caster is the inclination of the king pins toward the front of the vehicle. This vehicle is designed with positive caster. The purpose of caster is to provide steering stability by keeping the wheels in a straight ahead position.

Caster variations may be caused by bent upper suspension arm, lower suspension arm, or king pin housing. Caster should be adjusted with shims. Precision instruments should be used to measure caster. Shim bell crank and idler arm to adjust caster.

Variations from the specified caster will affect steering stability, cause wandering, wheel shimmy, and reduce returnability when pulling out of curves.

7.6 MAJOR DAMAGE

If the suspension has sustained major damage, it may be necessary to shim the bell crank and the idler arm to avoid the bump steer or roll steer. Moreover refer to paragraph "7. Front End Alignment".

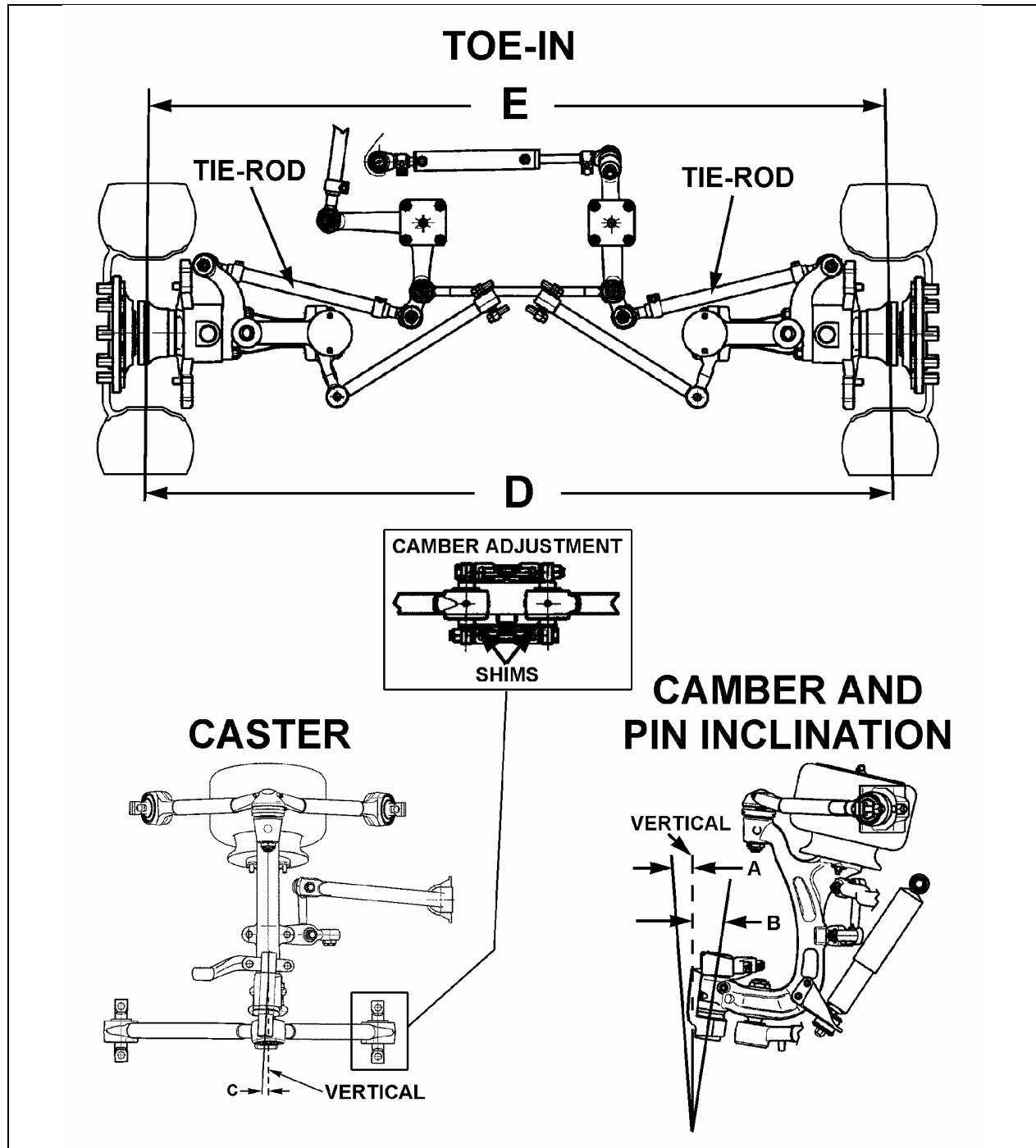


FIGURE 21: FRONT END ALIGNMENT DIAGRAM

16051

ALIGNMENT SPECS (See Figure 21)							
		Minimal		Nominal		Maximal	
Load		Non-converted	Converted	Non-converted	Converted	Non-converted	Converted
A	WHEEL CAMBER	0.2	-0.150	0.35	0.0	0.55	0.200
B	KING PIN INCLINATION	8° (not adjustable)					
C	CASTER	2.55		2.8		3.05	
D-E	TOE-IN	0.08		0.13		0.17	

8. FRONT AIR SPRINGS

Two "rolling lobe" type air springs are used with the independent front suspension, one at each wheel. These air springs are special and use the complete piston as an extra reservoir to lower the spring stiffness. Front air springs are attached to the subframe and to uprights.

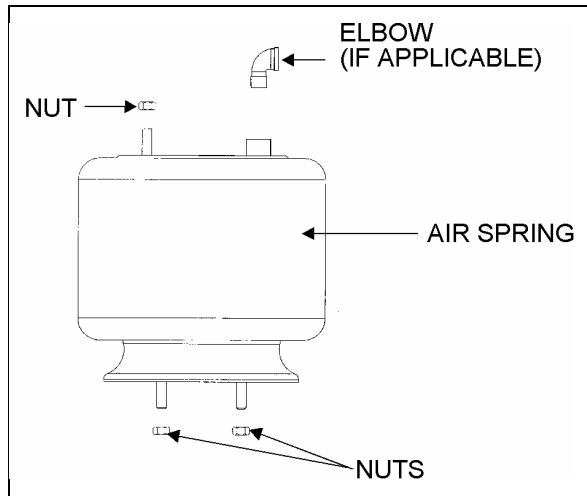


FIGURE 22: AIR SPRINGS

16052

8.1 INSPECTION

1. Check operation of bellows.
2. Visually inspect bellows for evidence of cracks, punctures, deterioration, or chafing. Replace the bellows if damage is evident.
3. With the primary air system at normal operating pressure (95 - 125 psi (655 - 860 kPa)), coat all suspension air line connections and bellow mounting areas with a water and soap solution. Bubbles will indicate an air leak, and none is permissible. Repair or replace defective parts.

Note: If air spring is removed from vehicle, bellows can be lightly inflated and submerged in water to detect any leakage. If leakage is detected, replace bellows.

Warning: To prevent personal injury, do not apply more than 10 psi (69 kPa) air pressure to the unmounted air spring.

8.2 REMOVAL

Note: Front air springs can be removed without removing the entire suspension assembly.

1. Safely support vehicle at the recommended body jacking points and jack up body understructure.
2. To gain access to a given air spring, the corresponding wheel can be removed.

Caution: Only the recommended jacking points must be used as outlined in Section 18, "Body" in the maintenance manual.

3. Support the assembly with a suitable jack.
4. Exhaust compressed air from accessory air tank by opening drain cock under reservoir.
5. Disconnect the height control valve link and pull down the overtravel lever to ensure all air is exhausted from air springs.

Note: While performing this step, do not change the height control valve overtravel lever adjustment.

6. Disconnect air line from air spring, remove elbow (if applicable), and cover both the line end and fitting to prevent the entry of foreign matter.
7. Remove the air spring upper nut, and then the two lower nuts. Remove air spring and remove the back up plate from the top of the air spring.

8.3 INSTALLATION

Note: To facilitate air spring installation, compress it manually then put a piece of tape over the air line threaded fitting. This prevents air from getting back into the bag and keeps it compressed, thus enabling to place the bag in between the mounting plates and greatly easing installation.

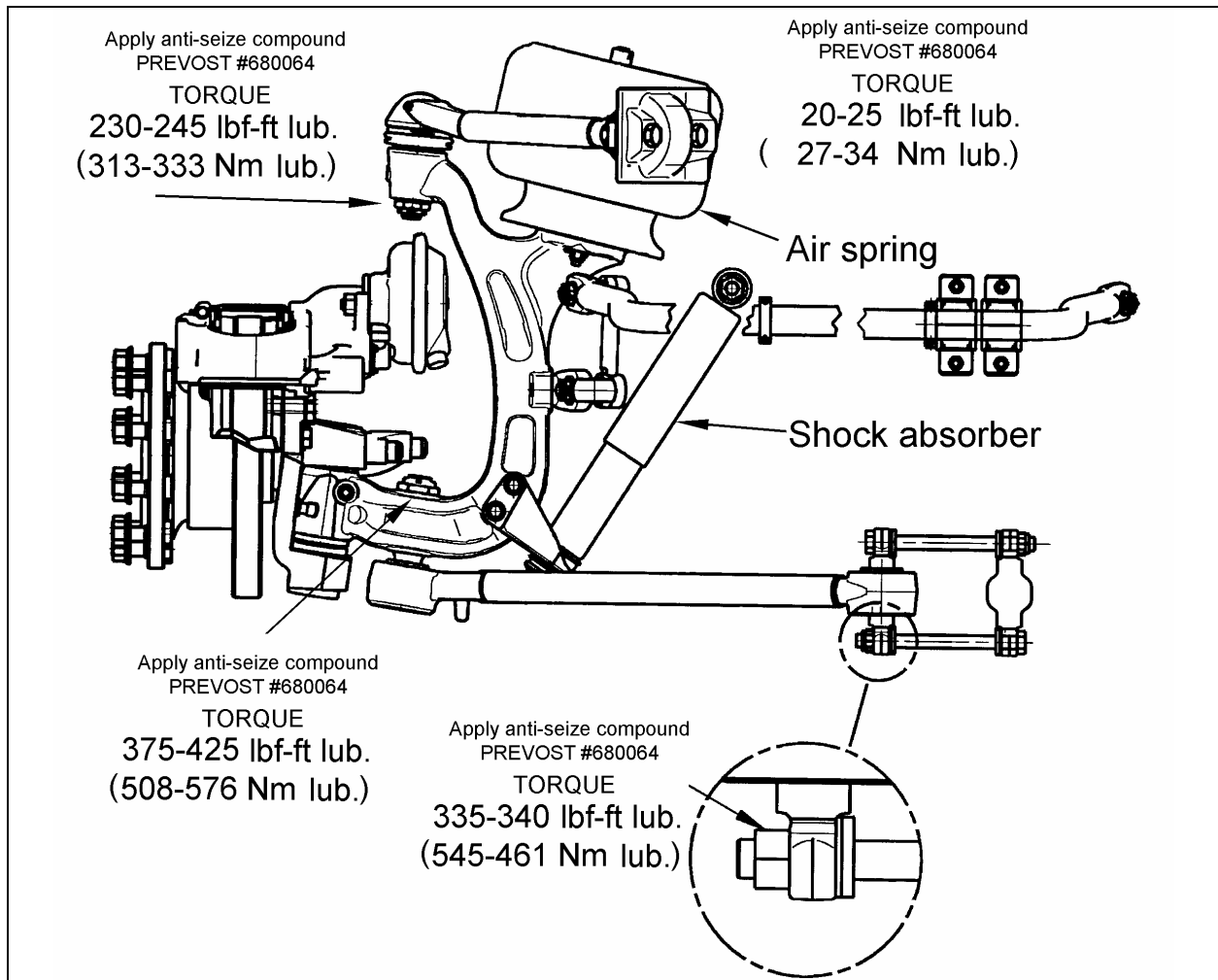


FIGURE 23: AIR SPRING AND SHOCK ABSORBER

16145

1. Compress air spring as necessary, then aligning studs with their holes, position air spring between both the lower and upper supports. Thread the lower nuts and the small upper nut a few turns.
2. Tighten and torque the lower stud nuts, and then the upper nut to 20-25 Lbf-ft (27-34 Nm).
3. Install elbow (if applicable), then connect air line.
4. Connect the height control valve link.
5. Build up air pressure in system.

Note: To accelerate this operation, air reservoirs can be filled from an exterior air supply connected to the accessory tank fill valve or to the emergency fill valve.

6. Check operation of bellows, and with the primary air system at normal operating pressure [95 - 125 psi (655 - 860 kPa)], coat

the air line connections and air spring mounting areas with a water and soap solution. Bubbles will indicate an air leak, and none is permissible. Repair or replace defective parts.

7. Remove the hydraulic floor jack from underneath shock absorber bracket.

9. SHOCK ABSORBERS

The two front shock absorbers are double-acting and telescopic type. Shock absorbers ensure a smooth ride and enhance vehicle stability on the road. Front shock absorbers have eye-type mountings on the upper side and bayonet type on lower side. Shock absorbers are non-adjustable and non-repairable.

Caution: When a shock absorber is found defective, always replace with a new set on affected axle, except if there has been a recent replacement of one unit. The following method will help in determining if both shock absorbers on the same axle have to be replaced.

9.1 SHOCK ABSORBER REMOVAL

1. Remove the nut, washer and rubber joint from shock absorber mounting stud. Discard the rubber joints.
2. Remove the nut and washer from shock absorber mounting pin (upper side), taking care to identify the inner and outer washers to ease reinstallation. Refer to figure 24 for details.
3. Remove the shock absorber from the vehicle.
4. Remove inner: washers, rubber joint and bushings from the shock absorber. Discard bushings and rubber joint.

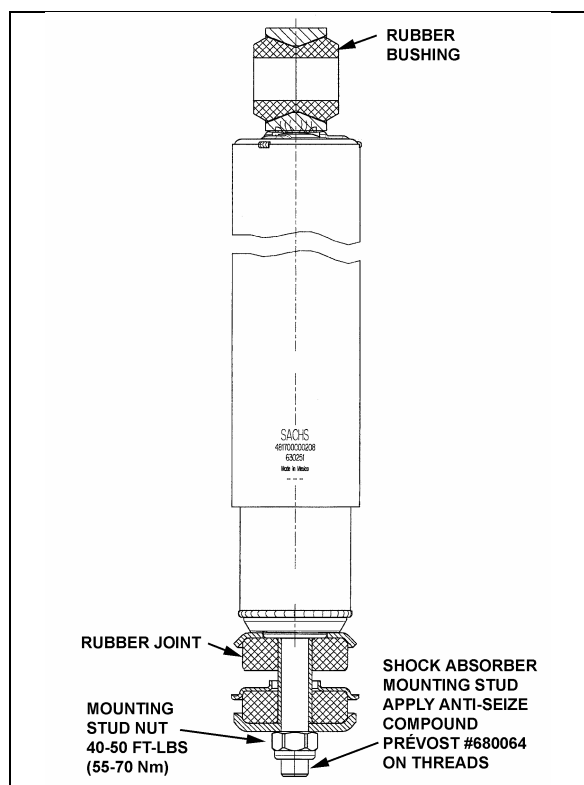


FIGURE 24: SHOCK ABSORBER

16054

9.2 SHOCK ABSORBER INSTALLATION

1. Check that the shock absorber mounting pin torque is proper [350-400 Lbf-ft (475-545 Nm)]. Ensure that the stud is clean and not stripped (upper side).

2. Install new rubber (mounting) bushing on shock absorber (upper side).
3. Place the inner washer on shock absorber pin (Fig. 24).
4. Install washer and rubber joint on shock absorber mounting stud (lower side).
5. Install the shock absorber as shown in figure 18 with the mounting stud protruding through the hole in the mounting bracket and the shock absorber eyes over the mounting pins. Install the outer washer.
6. Place a rubber joint and washer on the shock absorber mounting stud. Place the lower shock absorber mounting stud nut and torque to 40-50 Lbf-ft (54-68 Nm).
7. Place the upper mounting pin stud nut and torque to 70-85 Lbf-ft (95-116 Nm).

10. SWAY BAR

A sway bar is provided on the front and drive axles to increase vehicle stability. It controls lateral motion (swaying movement) of vehicle.

10.1 REMOVAL

1. Disconnect the two links from sway bar.
2. Safely support the sway bar. Unbolt bushing collars from subframe.
3. Remove sway bar.

Note: Sway bar bushings are slit to ease their removal.

10.2 INSTALLATION

1. Loosely install the sway bar.
2. Torque bushing collar nuts to 60 Lbf-ft (82 Nm).
3. Torque sway bar link upper nuts to 120-140 Lbf-ft (163-190 Nm) on front suspension and to 100-120 Lbf-ft (136-163 Nm) on rear suspension.
4. Torque sway bar link lower nuts to 120-140 Lbf-ft (163-190 Nm) on front suspension and to 70-80 Lbf-ft (95-110 Nm) on rear suspension.

Section 16: VIP EQUIPPED WITH INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION (IFS)

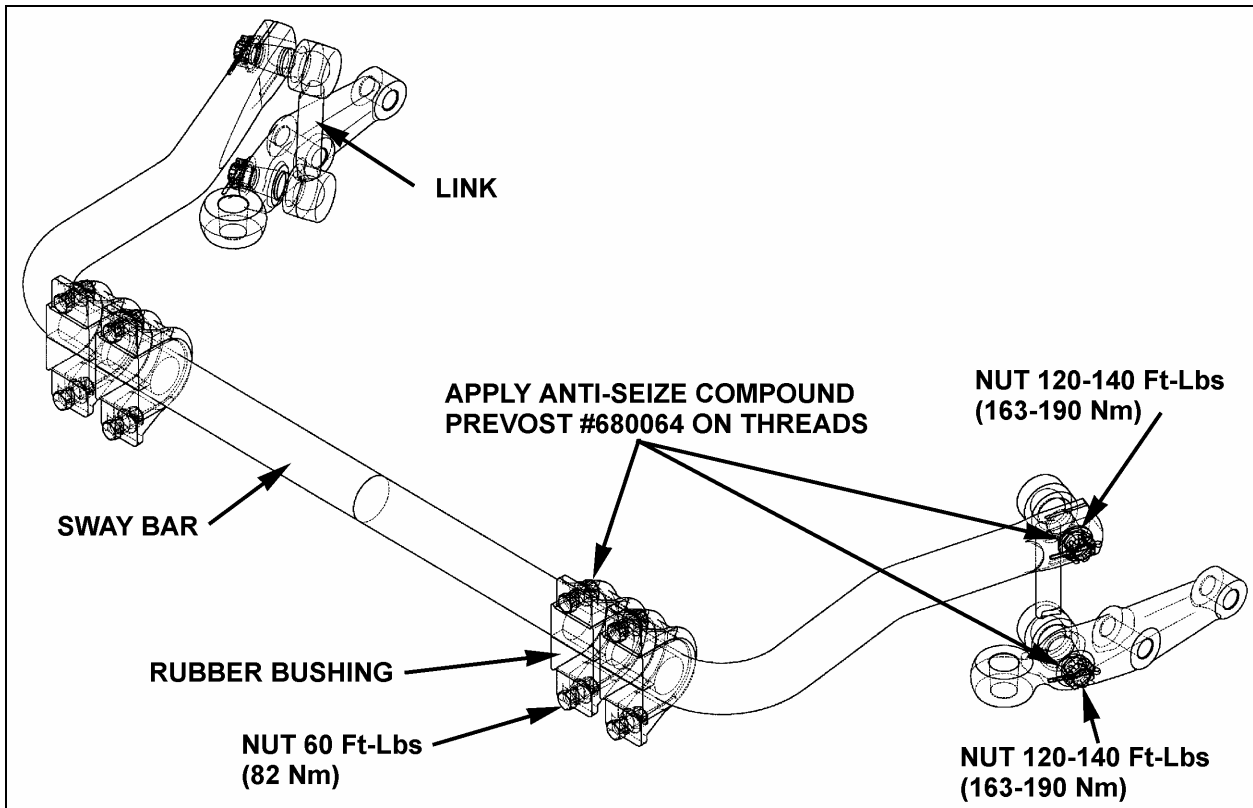


FIGURE 25: SWAY BAR (FRONT SUSPENSION)

16055

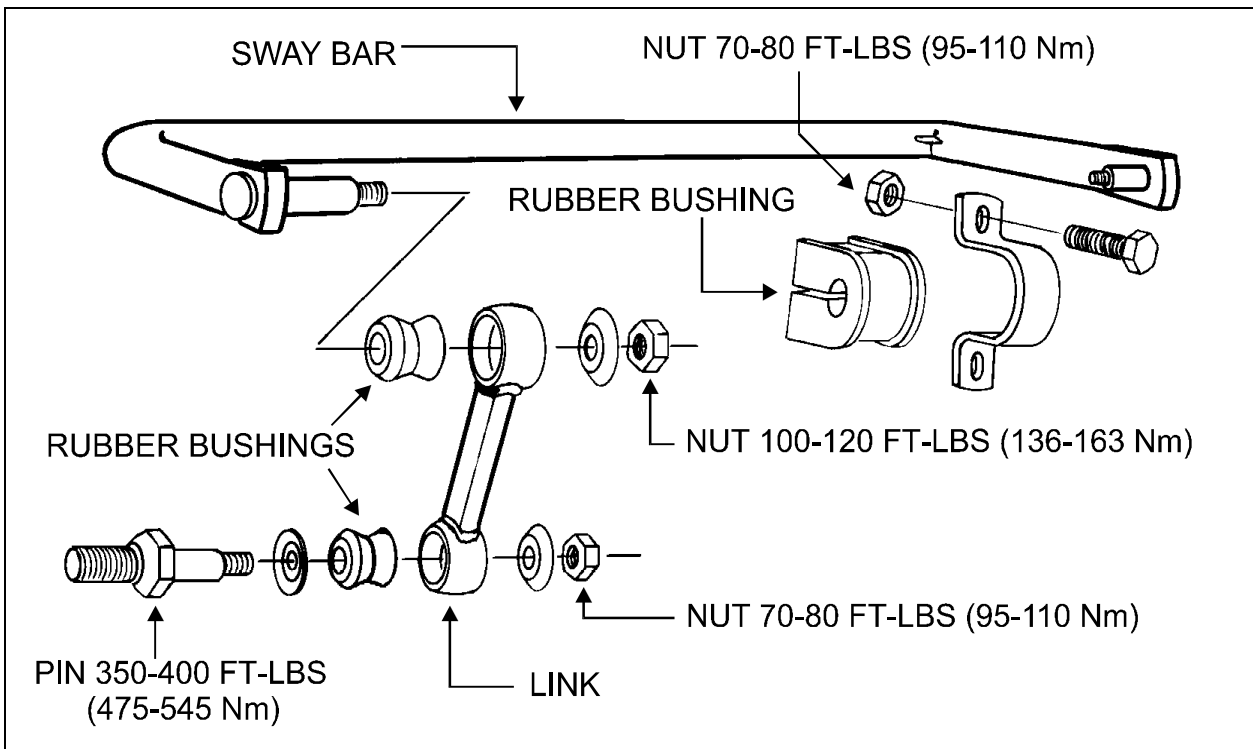


FIGURE 26: SWAY BAR (REAR SUSPENSION)

16014

11. INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION ADJUSTMENT

VIP coach shells are equipped with "LEVEL-LOW" leveling system. The purpose of the "LEVEL-LOW" is to adjust suspension in three separate points (front, rear right and rear left air springs) in order to level vehicle body. Three height control valves, automatically control air pressure in the three separate points (air springs) and maintains a constant vehicle height regardless of load, or load distribution. The control solenoid valve supplies air to the five way three-position air control valve, which bypasses the height control valve, and opens a passage to allow the air control and exhaust valve to release/supply air from air springs. To improve road comfort, an expansion air tank is installed in series with each air spring.

In addition to the above suspension components the system also includes: sway bar, upper and lower suspensions, bars and shock absorbers (Fig. 1).

Note: Only for preliminary adjustment, refer to figure 20. Torque rod length must be fixed to 21 17/64" (540 mm) and relay rod to 23 19/64" (592 mm).

Caution: Parts must be replaced by ones with the same part numbers or with equivalent parts, if replacement becomes necessary. Do not use parts of lesser quality or substitute design. Torque values must be used as specified during reassembly to assure proper retention of these parts.

12. SUSPENSION HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

The flow of pressurized air from the accessory air tank to the air springs is controlled by three height control valves. The two rear valves are mounted to the subframe and connected to the rear axles through an arm and link connection. The front valve is mounted to the subframe and connected to the front air tank support (Fig. 27). These connections allow the valves to apportion air pressure in the springs to the vehicle load, maintaining normal ride height.

Immediate response height control valves increase or decrease the air pressure in the suspension system as required. One height control valve is located **at center of front sway bar**, and regulates air to front suspension air springs in order to maintain the vehicle at the required height. Two are located at the drive axle, one on each inner side of rear wheelhousing.

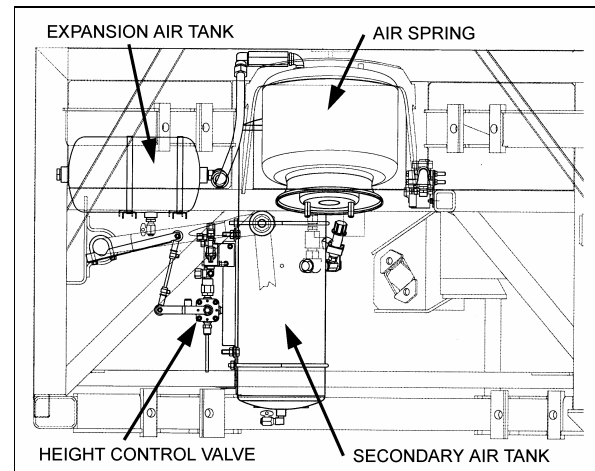


FIGURE 27: HEIGHT CONTROL VALVE LOCATION 16057

The appropriate vehicle body height is obtained by measuring the clearance of all the air springs installed on the vehicle. The two front air springs clearance should be $11 \pm \frac{1}{4}$ " (279 ± 6 mm). Refer to figure 28 to identify the correct area to take measurement. The rear air springs clearance should be $11 \frac{1}{2} \pm \frac{1}{4}$ " (292 ± 6 mm) (refer to Maintenance Manual, Section 16, under "Suspension Height Adjustment" for rear height control valves' adjustment). At this point, it should not be necessary to make an adjustment under normal service conditions. However, if an adjustment is required, change the position of the overtravel lever in relation to the overtravel control body. The lever should be moved up to raise vehicle height, and down to lower it. Check that main air pressure is at normal operating pressure and raise the vehicle to the specified height.

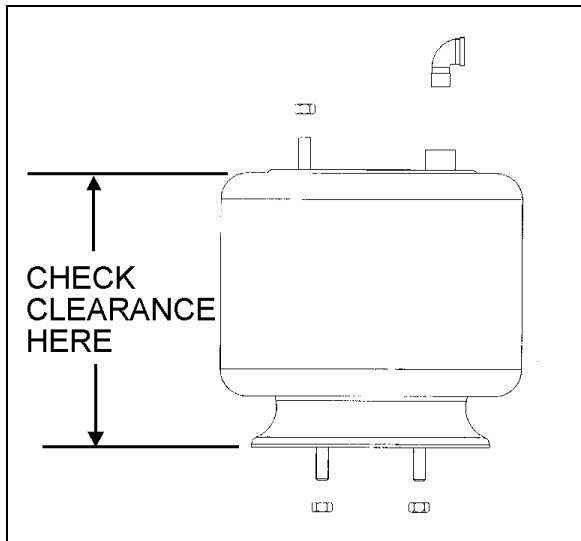


FIGURE 28: TYPICAL AIR SPRING CLEARANCE 16058

Caution: Always adjust on "fill cycle". If it is necessary to lower vehicle height, release sufficient air to be well below height, and adjust to height or fill cycle.

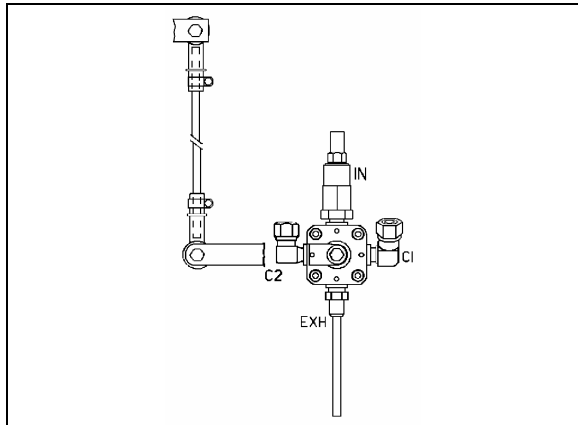


FIGURE 29: FRONT HEIGHT CONTROL VALVE 16100

The normal ride height is obtained by adjusting air spring clearance of both front and rear suspension as follows:

Front air spring clearance

1. With the vehicle at normal operating air pressure (100 - 125 psi (689 - 860 kPa)), measure air spring clearance. This clearance should be $11 \pm \frac{1}{4}$ " (279 \pm 6 mm).

Note: The measurement should be taken from underneath the upper air spring support on subframe to top of the lower air spring support on axle (refer to figure 28 for more details). If adjustment is required, begin with the drive axle.

2. Loosen the clamp on the height control valve rubber coupling and bring it up or down (Fig. 29).

Note: Allow suspension to stabilize before taking reading.

When the desired height is obtained, tighten clamp.

Rear air springs clearance

Refer to H3 Maintenance Manual, Section 16, under "Suspension Height Adjustment".

13. HEIGHT CONTROL VALVE

The height control valves automatically add air to, or release air from air springs to maintain constant suspension height regardless of load, or load distribution. Each valve adjusts independently according to the following conditions:

13.1 LOADING POSITION

As the load increases and lowers the vehicle body, the overtravel lever commands the height control valve to add air to air springs.

13.2 NEUTRAL POSITION

When vehicle body reaches the normal ride height, the height control valve overtravel lever reaches the "neutral" position and keeps both the supply and exhaust ports closed to ensure normal ride height is maintained. This condition remains static until the vehicle load is altered.

13.3 UNLOADING POSITION

As the load decreases and raises the vehicle body, the overtravel lever commands the height control valve to release air from air springs.

13.4 MAINTENANCE

The height control valve requires no periodic maintenance. Height control valve linkage operates on rubber bushings and no lubrication should be attempted at this location. Inspect the valve for loose joints, air leaks and worn bushings.

13.5 REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

Before disconnecting a height control valve air line, securely support the vehicle by its jacking points on the body, and place safety supports underneath body. Refer to paragraph "16. Vehicle Jacking Points" in Section 18, "Body".

1. Exhaust air from air system by opening all air tank drain cocks. Remove height control valves.
2. Disconnect overtravel lever from link and pull down lever to exhaust remaining air from air springs.
3. Disconnect air supply and delivery lines from the height control valve. Cover line ends with tape to prevent entry of foreign matter.
4. Remove the nuts retaining the height control valve to the mounting bracket, then remove valve assembly.

Reverse removal procedure to replace height control valve. After installation, check for leakage using a soap and water solution.

14. "LEVEL-LOW" LEVELING SYSTEM

The purpose of the "level-low" leveling system is to adjust suspension in three separate points (front, rear right and rear left) in order to level vehicle body. This system can be put into service when the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position, and must be used only when the parking brake is applied. The "level-low" warning light on the dashboard indicates that the selector switch is not in the "OFF" position. Level low system controls are located on L.H. side control panel.

14.1 PRINCIPLES OF OPERATION

DOWN:

The (front/rear right/rear left) control solenoid valve supplies air to the (front/rear right/rear left) five-way three-position air control valve, which bypasses the (front/rear right/rear left) height control valve, and opens a passage to allow the air control and exhaust valve to release air from (front/rear right/rear left) air springs.

UP:

The (front/rear right/rear left) control solenoid valve supplies air to the (front/rear right/rear left) five-way three-position air control valve, which bypasses the (front/rear right/rear left) height control valve, and opens a passage to allow the air control and exhaust valve to supply air to (front/rear right/rear left) air springs.

DRIVE:

When the ignition key is turned to the "ON" position with selector knob in the "DRIVE" position, the drive control solenoid valve supplies air to all five-way three-position air control valves, each one opening a passage to allow height control valves to accomplish their function.

When the ignition key is turned to the "OFF" position and selector knob to the "DRIVE" position, the air is entrapped between air springs and five-way three-position air control valves to ensure the adjusted level will be kept.

Warning: *Never move vehicle with selector knob in any other position than the "DRIVE" position.*

14.2 MAINTENANCE

Since the kneeling action is issued from both the air system and electrical system, refer to Section: 12, "Brake and Air System" and Section 06, "Electrical System".

For diagnosis and understanding of the system, refer to wiring diagrams, and to the appropriate air system schematic diagram annexed to Section 12, "Brake and Air System".

15. AIR SYSTEM

The basic air system consists of an air compressor, tanks, valves, filters and interconnecting lines and hoses (refer to Section 12, "Brake and Air System" for complete information). It provides a means for braking, operating controls and accessories, and suspension. An air system schematic diagram is annexed at the end of this supplement for better understanding of the system.

The air coming from the air dryer is first directed to the wet air tank, then to the primary (for the primary brake system), secondary (for the secondary brake system), and accessory (for the pneumatic accessories) air tanks (Fig. 30).

In addition, an expansion air tank is installed in series with each air spring.

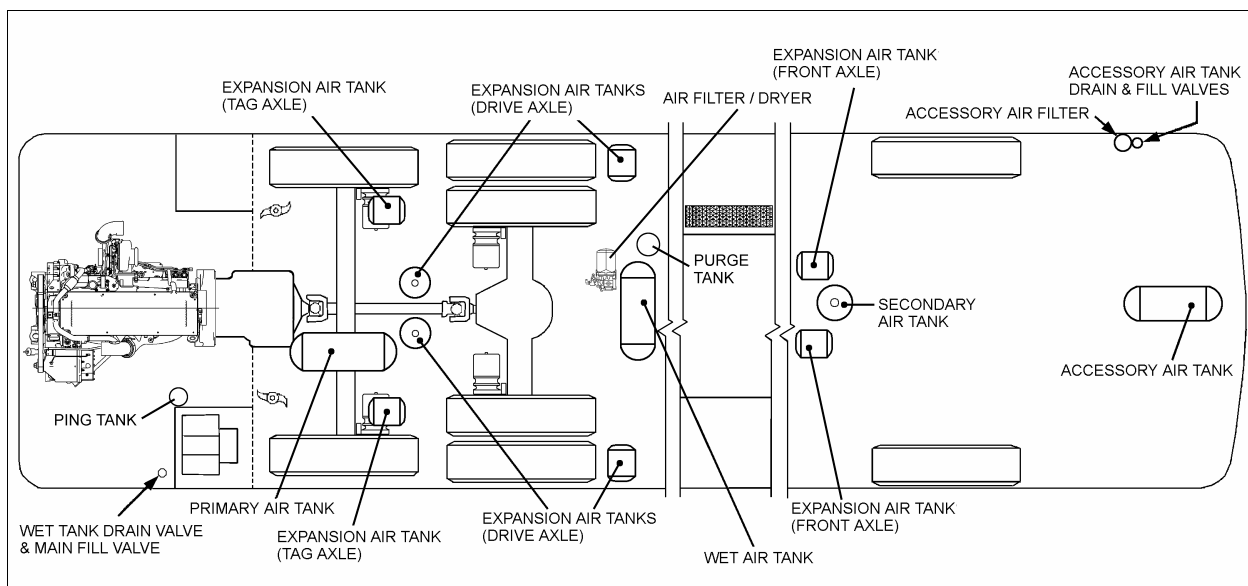


FIGURE 30: LOCATION OF AIR TANKS

12195

15.1 AIR TANK MAINTENANCE

Ensure that the accessory air tank is purged during pre-starting inspection. A good practice is to purge this tank at the end of every driving day by the remote air tank drain valve located in the steering compartment (Fig. 32).

Moreover, purge all tanks by their bottom drain valves at specified intervals.

15.1.1 Wet Air Tank

This tank is installed in front of and above drive axle in the rear wheelhousing and is provided with a bottom drain valve. It is recommended to **purge** the wet air tank by its bottom drain valve every 12,500 miles (20 000 km), or once a year, whichever comes first.

A remote valve located in engine compartment and accessible through engine R.H. side door is used to **purge daily** (Fig. 31).

15.1.2 Primary Air Tank

The primary air tank is located above tag axle.

This tank is also provided with a bottom drain valve (Fig. 30). It is recommended to purge the tank by its bottom drain valve every 12,500 miles (20 000 km), or once a year, whichever comes first.

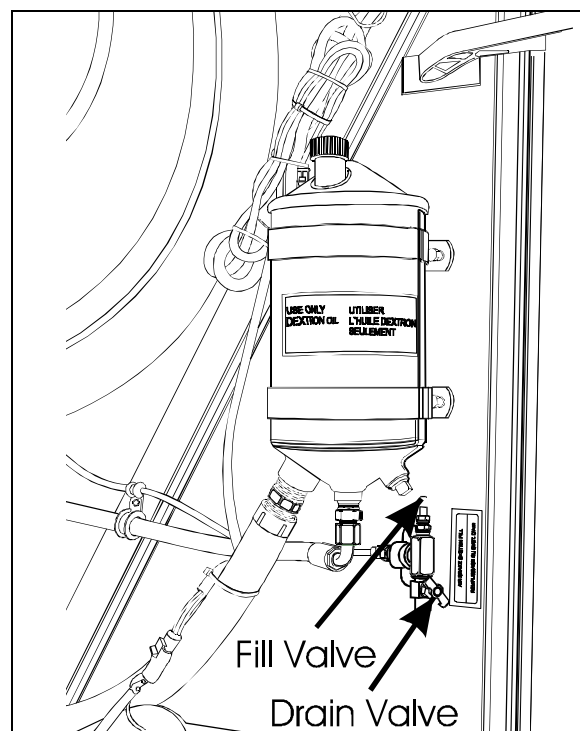


FIGURE 31: REAR VALVE LOCATION

12162

15.1.3 Secondary Air Tank

This tank is located in front wheelhousing. The tank is installed vertically and is provided with a bottom drain valve (Fig. 30).

It is recommended to purge the tank by its bottom drain valve, every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

15.1.4 Accessory Air Tank

The accessory air tank is installed at the ceiling of spare wheel compartment. The tank is provided with a bottom drain valve (Fig. 30).

It is recommended to purge the tank by its bottom drain valve, every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

A remote drain valve is located in front service compartment (Fig. 32) underneath the accessory air filter. Refer to Section 12, paragraph "4. Accessory Air Filter" of the maintenance manual for daily purge procedure.

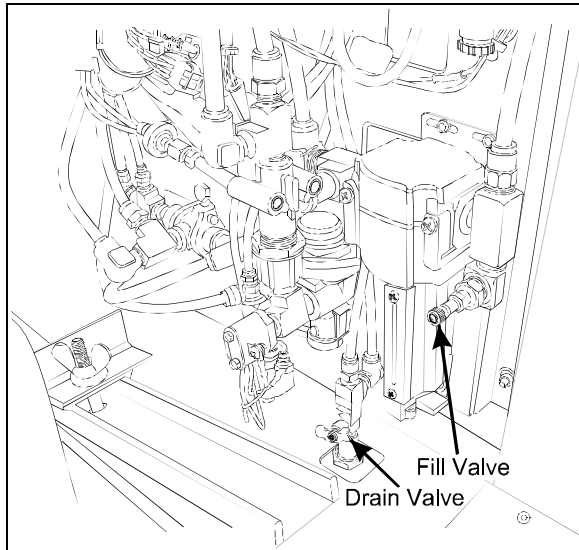


FIGURE 32: FRONT VALVE LOCATION

12144

15.1.5 Expansion Air Tank

Two expansion tanks are located in front wheelhousing. These air tanks are located behind secondary air tank. Also, six expansion tanks are located near rear air springs (Fig. 30). Expansion tanks are connected in series with air springs. Expansion tanks are used to lower the stiffness of the air spring. They are provided with a bottom drain valve.

It is recommended to purge them, with all other tanks, every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

15.2 EMERGENCY FILL VALVES

The vehicle is equipped with two air system emergency fill valves to supplement the air system when air pressure is low and engine cannot be operated.

The **rear valve** is located in engine compartment and accessible from engine R.H. side door (Fig. 31).

Caution: No other point should be used to supply air system. The maximum allowable air pressure is 125 psi (860 kPa).

The front valve is located in the front service compartment close to accessory air filter (Fig. 32).

These two air valves are fitted with the same valve stems as standard tires, and can be filled by any standard external air supply line.

The rear valve will supply air for all systems (brakes, suspension and accessories) while the front valve will supply air for accessories only.

Caution: Air filled through these two points will pass through the standard air filtering system provided by Prévost. Do not fill air through any other points.

16. HUB UNIT AND SWIVEL ASSEMBLY

Refer to "DANA SPICER Service Manual General Information, Maintenance Manual Model NDS and Maintenance Manual NDS Axles" annexed to section 10 "Front Axle".

Section 16: VIP EQUIPPED WITH INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION (IFS)**17. TORQUE TABLE**

DESCRIPTION	QTY	REFERENCE	TORQUE (DRY) Lbf-ft / Nm	
<i>Pitman Arm to Steering Gear Fixing Nut</i>	1	8	400-450	545-610
<i>Drag Link to Pitman Arm Stud Nut*</i>	1	---	160-215	220-290
<i>Drag Link to Bell crank Stud Nut*</i>	1	---	160-215	220-290
<i>Drag Link Socket End Clamp Bolt Nut</i>	2	---	40-60	55-80
<i>Relay Rod to Bell crank Stud Nut*</i>	1	---	160-215	220-290
<i>Relay Rod to Idler Arm Stud Nut*</i>	1	5	160-215	220-290
<i>Tie Rod to Bell crank Stud Nut*</i>	1	---	160-215	220-290
<i>Tie Rod to Idler Arm Stud Nut*</i>	1	5	160-215	220-290
<i>Tie Rod to Steering Arm Stud Nut*</i>	2	3	160-215	220-290
<i>Tie Rod End Clamp Bolt Nut</i>	4	3	40-60	55-80
<i>Steering Arm to Swivel Nut*</i>	4	---	190	260
<i>Torque Rod Stud Nut</i>	2	4	160-215	220-290
<i>Idler Arm and Bell Crank Cap Screws</i>	8	9	8	11
<i>Torque Rod Mounting Bracket Nut</i>	4	6	75-140	100-190
<i>Torque Rod Clamp Nut</i>	4	4	53-59	72-80
<i>Jacking Point Bracket Nut</i>	8	19	70-80	95-110
<i>Bushing Collar Nut</i>	8	20	72-88	98-120
<i>Sway Bar Link Upper Nuts (Rear Suspension)</i>	2	20	100-120	135-160
<i>Sway Bar Link Lower Nuts (Rear Suspension)</i>	2	20	70-80	95-110

DESCRIPTION	QTY	REFERENCE	TORQUE (Lubricated) (Anti-Seize #680064) Lbf-ft / Nm	
<i>Idler Arm and Bell Crank Mounting Bracket Nut</i>	8	5	90-120	120-160
<i>Shock Absorber Mounting Stud Nut</i>	2	19	40-50	55-70
<i>Shock Absorber Pin Nut</i>	2	19	70-85	95-115
<i>Air Spring Nut</i>	3	18	20-25	27-34
<i>Sway Bar Link Upper and Lower Nuts (Front Suspension)</i>	2	20	120-140	160-190
<i>Upper A-Arm Stud Nut*</i>	2	18	230-245	315-335
<i>Lower A-Arm Bracket Nut</i>	8	18	375-425	510-580

DESCRIPTION	QTY	REFERENCE	TORQUE (Lubricated) (Loctite #242 Blue) Lbf-ft / Nm	
<i>Shock Absorber Pin</i>	2	19	350-400	475-545
<i>Steering Gear to Mounting Bracket Bolt</i>	5	8	355	485

- Tighten nut to specified torque, then advance to next aligning cotter pin slot and install a new cotter pin.

18. SPECIFICATIONS

Front Axle Air Springs

Make.....Goodyear Tire and Rubber
Diameter 14.5 inches
Air Inlet 1/2"- 14 NPTF
Supplier number..... 1R14-167
Prévost number 630239

Shock Absorbers

Collapsed length 350 mm
Extended Length..... 560 mm
Supplier number..... 481700000208
Prévost number 630251

Height Control Valve

Make.....Barksdale
Supplier number..... 52321POAQ3-Q26 and 52321POAQ3-Q62
Prévost number 630156 and 630157

Steering Gear Box

Make.....ZF-Servocom
Supplier number..... 8098-988-570
Prévost number 661045

Steering Gear Box (Optional)

Make.....ZF-Servocomtronic
Supplier number..... 8098-988-571
Prévost number 661044

Power Steering Hydraulic Pump

Make.....TRW
Supplier number..... PS251616L10200
Prévost number 661070

Power Steering Hydraulic Cylinder

Make.....Hyco
Supplier number..... 007-0300-0
Prévost number 661076

Shim (Camber Adjustment)

Thickness..... 3.175 mm
Prévost number 160993
Thickness..... 6.35 mm
Prévost number 160992

Sway bar bushing (Drive Axle)

Make.....Prévost
Prévost number 130953

SECTION 18: BODY

CONTENTS

1. VEHICLE EXTERIOR	18-6
2. STRUCTURE	18-9
2.1 WELDING.....	18-9
3. EXTERIOR MAINTENANCE	18-9
3.1 CORROSION PREVENTION	18-9
3.2 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE.....	18-10
3.3 RUST INHIBITOR APPLICATION	18-10
4. FIBERGLASS REPAIR.....	18-15
4.1 REPAIR USING FIBERGLASS CLOTH.....	18-15
4.2 REPAIR USING FIBERGLASS PASTE	18-15
4.3 TYPICAL FIBERGLASS REPAIR PROCEDURE	18-16
5. PAINTING	18-17
5.1 NEW PAINT CARE	18-17
5.2 PAINT TOUCHUP	18-17
5.3 PAINTING.....	18-17
5.3.1 <i>Safety</i>	18-17
5.3.2 <i>Surface Preparation and Paint Application</i>	18-18
5.4 FRONT AND REAR BUMPERS	18-18
5.4.1 <i>Paint touchup and surface preparation for vehicles equipped with urethane bumpers</i>	18-18
6. FRONT AND REAR BUMPERS.....	18-19
6.1 FRONT BUMPER REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION	18-19
6.1.1 <i>Molded Front Bumper Removal</i>	18-19
6.1.2 <i>Front Bumper Assembly Removal including spare wheel compartment door</i>	18-19
6.2 FRONT BUMPER LICENSE PLATE SUPPORT INSTALLATION	18-19
6.3 REAR BUMPER REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION.....	18-20
7. COACH ENTRANCE DOOR	18-20
7.1 OPERATION	18-20
7.2 EMERGENCY EXIT VALVES.....	18-21
7.2.1 <i>Without Air and/or Without Electricity</i>	18-21
7.2.2 <i>With Air but Without Electricity</i>	18-21
7.3 DOOR CYCLE SPEED ADJUSTMENT	18-21
7.4 HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL ADJUSTMENT.....	18-22
7.5 DEPTH ADJUSTMENT	18-23
7.6 ROD END ADJUSTMENT	18-23
7.7 LUBRICATION	18-23
7.8 TROUBLESHOOTING	18-24
8. ENTRANCE DOOR (V.I.P)	18-25
8.1 KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM	18-25
8.2 DOOR ADJUSTMENT	18-25
8.2.1 <i>Horizontal and Vertical Adjustments</i>	18-25
8.3 DEPTH ADJUSTMENT	18-25
8.4 DOOR LOWER SECTION.....	18-26
8.5 REFLECTOR STRIPE INSTALLATION.....	18-26
8.6 DOOR SEAL REPLACEMENT	18-26
8.7 DOOR LUBRICATION	18-27
8.8 DOOR LATCH MECHANISM.....	18-27

Section 18: BODY

9. DRIVER'S POWER WINDOW	18-27
9.1 WINDOW OR REGULATOR REMOVAL.....	18-27
9.2 WINDOW OR REGULATOR INSTALLATION.....	18-27
10. ROOF ESCAPE HATCH	18-28
10.1 REPAIR.....	18-29
10.2 SEALING.....	18-29
10.3 ESCAPE HATCH PANEL ASSEMBLY.....	18-29
10.4 ESCAPE HATCH FRAME	18-29
11. REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF "TARABUS" FLOOR COVERING	18-30
11.1 FRONT STEPS REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE	18-32
11.2 WELDING OF JOINT BETWEEN WHITE SAFETY STRIP AND "TARABUS" FLOOR COVERING	18-35
11.3 REPAIR OF A WELDED JOINT.....	18-38
12. PASSENGER SEATS.....	18-38
12.1 ROTATING SEATS.....	18-38
12.2 REMOVING FIXED SEATS	18-38
12.3 UPHOLSTERY MAINTENANCE	18-39
12.3.1 Routine Cleaning.....	18-39
12.3.2 Dry Cleaning	18-39
12.3.3 Cleaning With Covers in Place	18-39
13. COACH SIDE WINDOWS	18-40
13.1 EMERGENCY EXIT WINDOWS.....	18-40
13.2 EMERGENCY EXIT RELEASE BAR.....	18-40
13.2.1 Emergency Exit Window Adjustment.....	18-41
13.3 FIXED WINDOW REPLACEMENT.....	18-41
13.4 EMERGENCY EXIT WINDOW REPLACEMENT	18-41
13.5 TRAPEZOIDAL WINDOW REPLACE-MENT	18-42
13.6 SMALL REAR WINDOWS REPLACEMENT	18-42
13.7 ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOWS	18-42
13.7.1 Glass Window Replacement.....	18-42
14. ELECTRIC AWNING WINDOW	18-44
14.1 OPERATION	18-44
14.2 WINDOW REMOVAL	18-44
14.3 ACTUATOR REPLACEMENT	18-46
14.4 MOTOR REPLACEMENT.....	18-46
15. WINDSHIELD.....	18-47
15.1 REMOVAL	18-48
15.2 WINDSHIELD INSTALLATION ONLY	18-48
15.3 INSTALLATION OF RUBBER EXTRUSION AND WINDSHIELD	18-49
16. BODY PANELS AND DOORS	18-49
17. BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOORS.....	18-50
17.1 PANTOGRAPH ADJUSTMENT	18-50
17.2 DOOR ADJUSTMENT	18-51
18. DOOR HANDLES	18-53
19. ENGINE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-53
19.1 ENGINE DOOR ADJUSTMENT.....	18-54

19.2	MINOR TOP EDGE DEPTH ADJUSTMENT	18-54
19.3	MINOR LOWER EDGE DEPTH ADJUSTMENT:	18-54
20.	ENGINE AIR INTAKE GRILL	18-54
21.	RADIATOR DOOR ADJUSTMENT	18-54
22.	CONDENSER DOOR ADJUSTMENT	18-56
23.	FUEL FILLER DOOR	18-57
24.	FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT	18-57
24.1	LATCH MECHANISM ADJUSTMENT	18-58
25.	ENGINE COMPARTMENT R.H. SIDE DOOR	18-58
25.1	LATCH MECHANISM ADJUSTMENT	18-59
26.	EVAPORATOR DOOR ADJUSTMENT	18-59
26.1	LATCH MECHANISM ADJUSTMENT	18-59
27.	MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT	18-60
27.1	LATCH MECHANISM ADJUSTMENT	18-60
28.	FENDERS	18-60
28.1	REAR FENDER REMOVAL	18-61
28.2	FRONT FENDER REMOVAL	18-61
29.	REAR CAP	18-61
30.	FRONT CAP	18-61
31.	SIDE PANEL INSTALLATION PROCEDURE FOR COACHES AND VIP	18-61
32.	REAR VIEW MIRRORS (RAMCO)	18-64
32.1	ADJUSTMENT	18-64
32.2	DISASSEMBLY	18-64
32.3	ASSEMBLY	18-64
32.4	REPLACEMENT OF MIRROR GLASS	18-64
32.5	HEATED / REMOTE CONTROLLED REAR VIEW MIRRORS	18-64
32.5.1	<i>Mirror Control</i>	18-64
32.5.2	<i>Disassembly</i>	18-65
32.5.3	<i>Assembly</i>	18-65
32.5.4	<i>Convex & Flat Mirror Removal</i>	18-65
33.	VEHICLE JACKING POINTS	18-65
34.	TOWING THE VEHICLE	18-66
34.1	LIFTING AND TOWING	18-66
34.2	TOWING WITHOUT LIFTING	18-66
35.	SPECIFICATIONS	18-67

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: H3-45 EXTERIOR VIEW	18-6
FIGURE 2: H3-41 EXTERIOR VIEW	18-7
FIGURE 3: VIP CONVERTED VEHICLE EXTERIOR (TYPICAL)	18-8
FIGURE 4: FIBERGLASS REPAIR	18-16
FIGURE 5: FIBERGLASS REPAIR	18-16
FIGURE 6: FIBERGLASS REPAIR	18-16
FIGURE 7: FIBERGLASS REPAIR	18-16
FIGURE 8: FIBERGLASS REPAIR	18-17
FIGURE 9: BUMPER FASTENING MECHANISM	18-19
FIGURE 10: FRONT BUMPER ASSEMBLY	18-19
FIGURE 11: LICENSE PLATE SUPPORTS	18-20
FIGURE 12: REAR BUMPER ASSEMBLY	18-20
FIGURE 13: DOOR OPERATING SWITCH	18-21
FIGURE 14: EMERGENCY EXIT VALVE	18-21
FIGURE 15: DOOR CYLINDER AND DAMPER	18-21
FIGURE 16: COACH ENTRANCE DOOR	18-22
FIGURE 17: DAMPER	18-22
FIGURE 18: UPPER DOOR HINGE (COACH)	18-23
FIGURE 19: DOOR LATCH (COACH)	18-23
FIGURE 20: ENTRANCE DOOR (VIP)	18-25
FIGURE 21: ENTRANCE DOOR (VIP, TYPICAL)	18-27
FIGURE 22: DRIVER'S WINDOW	18-28
FIGURE 23: ESCAPE HATCH	18-29
FIGURE 24: ESCAPE HATCH	18-29
FIGURE 25: TARABUS FLOOR COVERING ADHESIVE APPLICATION	18-31
FIGURE 26: APPLICATION OF SIKA 221 GRAY	18-31
FIGURE 27: ARMREST	18-39
FIGURE 28: SEAT PEDESTAL ASSEMBLY	18-39
FIGURE 29: H3-45 COACH	18-40
FIGURE 30: H3-41 COACH	18-40
FIGURE 31: EMERGENCY EXIT WINDOW	18-41
FIGURE 32: FIXED WINDOW	18-41
FIGURE 33: EMERGENCY WINDOW	18-42
FIGURE 34: ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOWS	18-42
FIGURE 35: ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOW	18-43
FIGURE 36: ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOW	18-43
FIGURE 37: ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOW	18-43
FIGURE 38: ELECTRIC AWNING WINDOW EXPLODED VIEW (FRAME)	18-45
FIGURE 39: ELECTRIC AWNING WINDOW EXPLODED VIEW (SASH)	18-46
FIGURE 40: WINDSHIELD	18-48
FIGURE 41: WINDSHIELD INSTALLATION TOP VIEW	18-48
FIGURE 42: WINDSHIELD INSTALLATION USING ROPE	18-48
FIGURE 43: WINDSHIELD INSTALLATION SIDE VIEW	18-49
FIGURE 44: APPLICATION OF SIKA 221 BLACK	18-49
FIGURE 45: BODY PANEL SPACING	18-50
FIGURE 46: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-50
FIGURE 47: PANTOGRAPH ADJUSTMENT	18-51
FIGURE 48: PANTOGRAPH DOOR ADJUSTMENT	18-51
FIGURE 49: PANTOGRAPH DOOR ADJUSTMENT	18-51
FIGURE 50: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-52
FIGURE 51: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-52
FIGURE 52: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-52

FIGURE 53: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-52
FIGURE 54: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-53
FIGURE 55: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-53
FIGURE 56: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-53
FIGURE 57: ENGINE COMPARTMENT DOOR	18-53
FIGURE 58: DOOR STOP	18-54
FIGURE 59: REFERENCE LINE.....	18-55
FIGURE 60: PANTOGRAPH ARM ADJUSTMENT	18-55
FIGURE 61: DOOR LATERAL ADJUSTMENT	18-55
FIGURE 62: PROPER DOOR POSITIONING	18-55
FIGURE 63: DOOR DEPTH ADJUSTMENT	18-56
FIGURE 64: DEPTH ADJUSTMENT	18-56
FIGURE 65: DOOR LATCHES ADJUSTMENT	18-56
FIGURE 66: CONDENSER DOOR	18-57
FIGURE 67: FUEL FILLER DOOR.....	18-57
FIGURE 68: DOOR HINGE	18-58
FIGURE 69: FRONT SERVICE DOOR.....	18-58
FIGURE 70: DOOR HINGE	18-59
FIGURE 71: ENGINE COMPARTMENT R.H. DOOR	18-59
FIGURE 72: EVAPORATOR DOOR.....	18-60
FIGURE 73: MAIN POWER COMP. DOOR	18-60
FIGURE 74: REAR-VIEW MIRROR (RAMCO)	18-64
FIGURE 75: JACKING POINTS ON STRUCTURE.....	18-65
FIGURE 76: JACKING POINTS ON FRONT AXLE.....	18-65
FIGURE 77: JACKING POINTS ON IND. SUSPENSION.....	18-65
FIGURE 78: JACKING POINTS ON DRIVE AXLE	18-65
FIGURE 79: JACKING POINTS ON TAG AXLE.....	18-66

Section 18: BODY

1. VEHICLE EXTERIOR

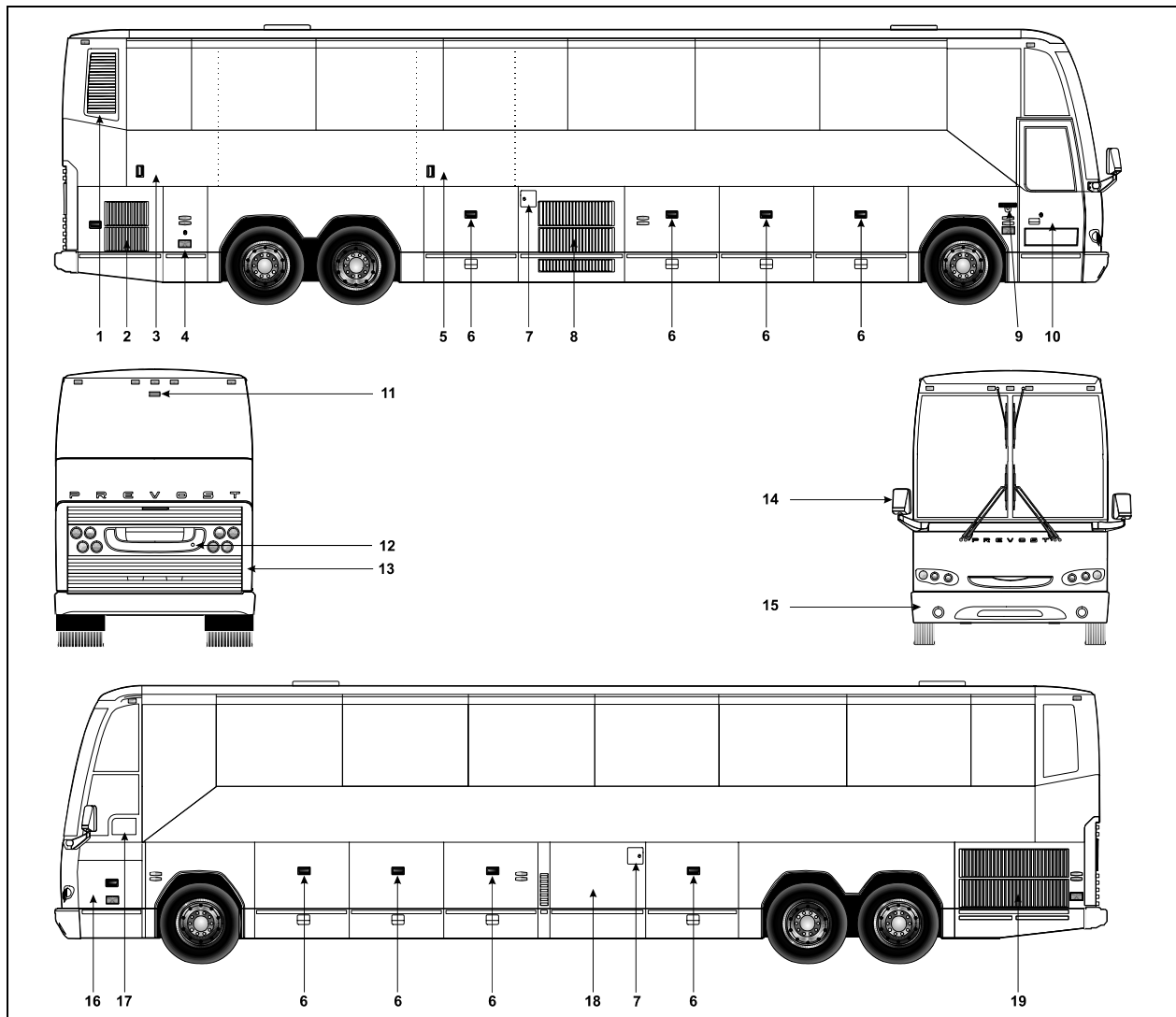


FIGURE 1: H3-45 EXTERIOR VIEW

18482

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Engine air intake | 12. 110 - 120 volt connector |
| 2. Engine compartment R.H. side door | 13. Engine compartment rear door |
| 3. Wheelchair lift door (option Stewart & Stevenson) | 14. Rear-view mirrors |
| 4. Main power compartment | 15. Reclining bumper compartment |
| 5. Wheelchair lift door (option Ricon) | 16. Front electrical & service compartment |
| 6. Baggage compartment | 17. Driver's power window |
| 7. Fuel filler door | 18. Heating, ventilating and air conditioning compartment (HVAC) |
| 8. A/C condenser door | 19. Engine radiator door |
| 9. Entrance door operating switch | |
| 10. Entrance door | |
| 11. Back-up camera (option) | |

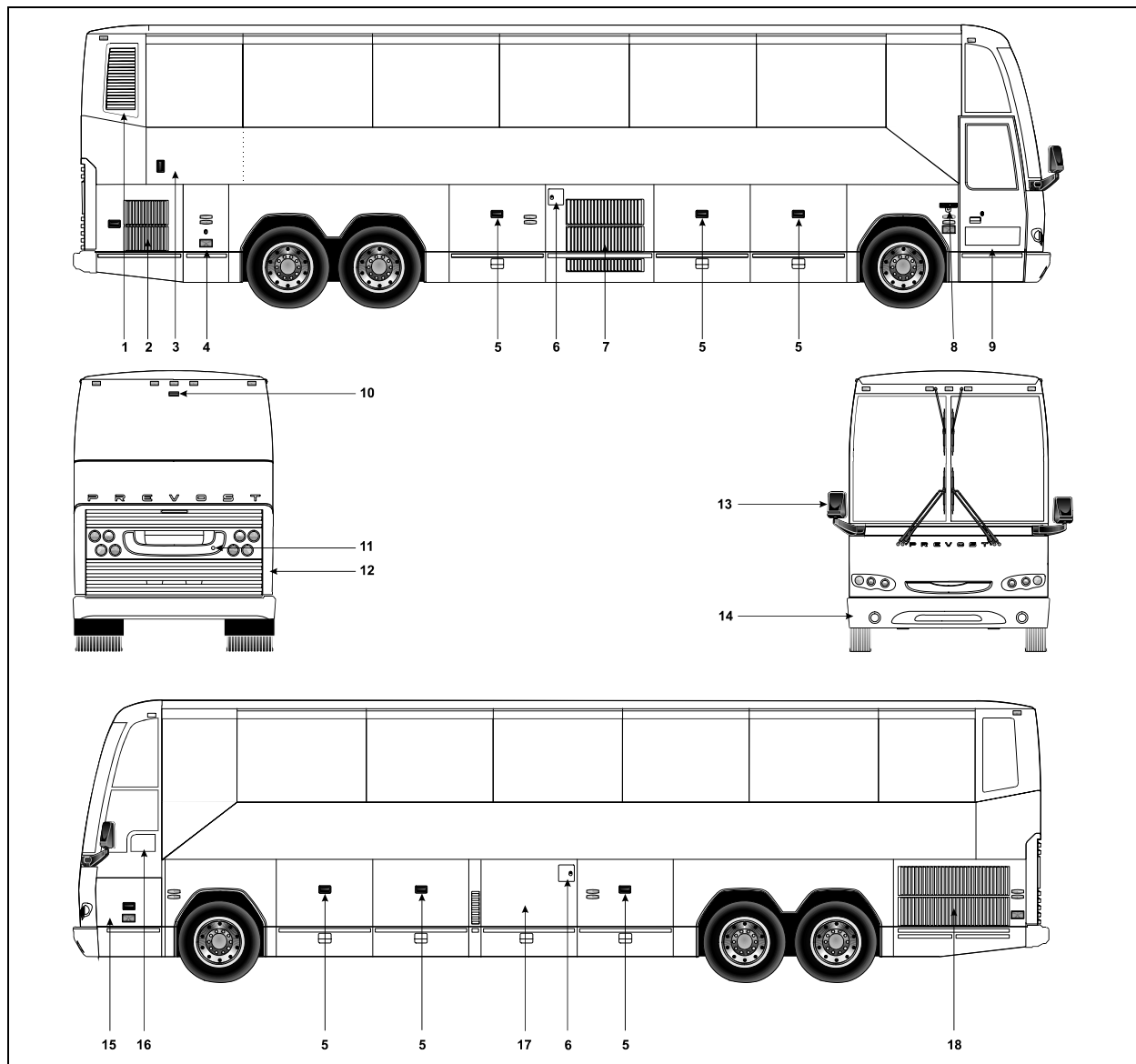


FIGURE 2: H3-41 EXTERIOR VIEW

18483

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Engine air intake | 11. 110 - 120 volt connector |
| 2. Engine compartment R.H. side door | 12. Engine compartment rear door |
| 3. Wheelchair lift door (option Stewart & Stevenson) | 13. Rear-view mirrors |
| 4. Main power compartment | 14. Reclining bumper compartment |
| 5. Baggage compartment | 15. Front electrical & service compartment |
| 6. Fuel filler door | 16. Driver's power window |
| 7. A/C condenser door | 17. Heating, ventilating and air conditioning compartment (HVAC) |
| 8. Entrance door operating switch | 18. Engine radiator door |
| 9. Entrance door | |
| 10. Back-up camera (option) | |

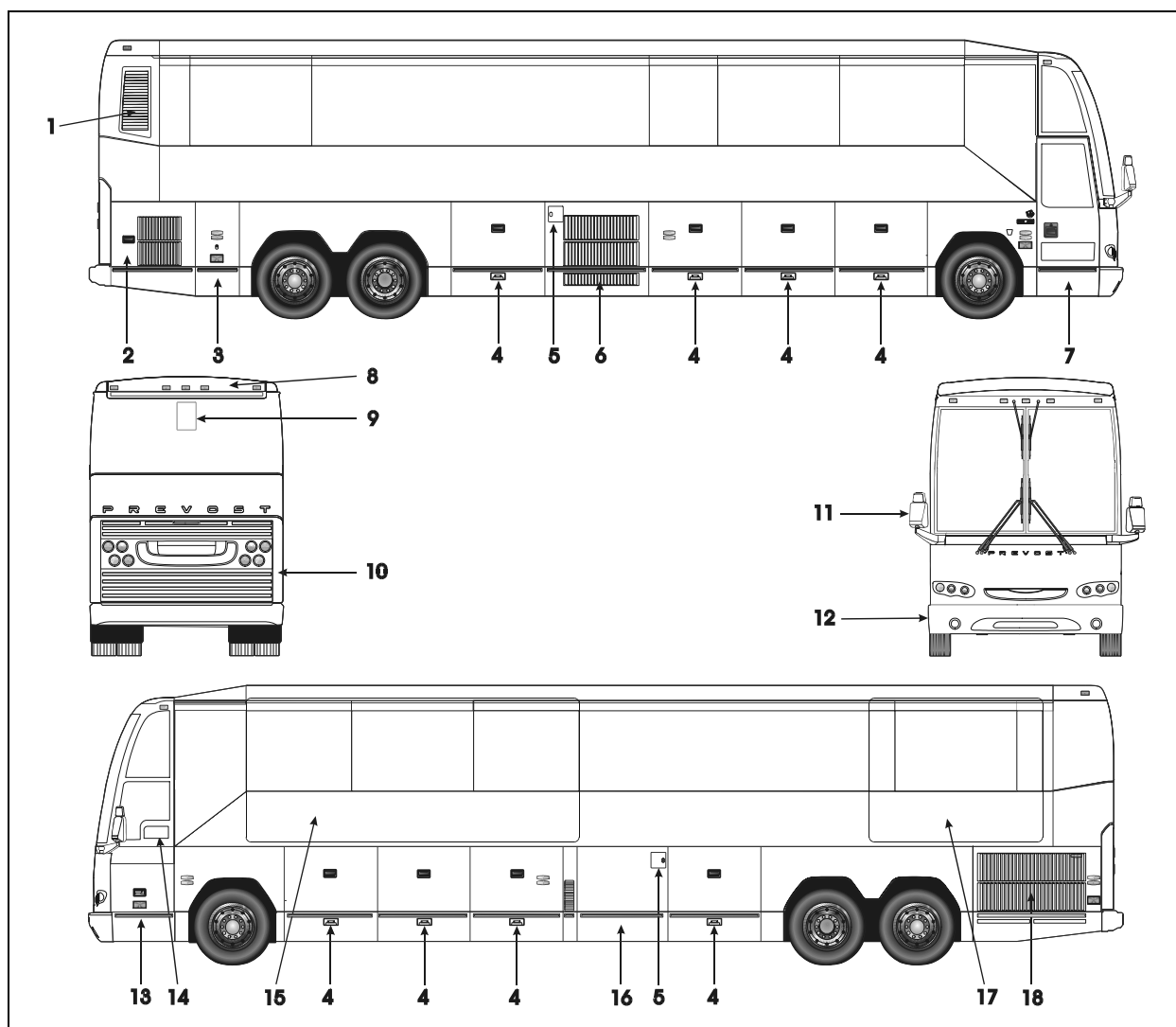


FIGURE 3: VIP CONVERTED VEHICLE EXTERIOR (TYPICAL)

18484

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Engine air intake | 11. Rear-view mirrors |
| 2. Engine compartment R.H. side door | 12. Reclining bumper compartment |
| 3. Main power compartment | 13. Front electrical and service compartment |
| 4. Baggage compartment | 14. Driver's power window |
| 5. Fuel filler door | 15. Front Slide-out (Optional) |
| 6. A/C condenser compartment or baggage compartment | 16. Heating, ventilating and air conditioning compartment (HVAC) or baggage compartment and access to Slide-out electrical panel |
| 7. Entrance door | 17. Rear Slide-out (Optional) |
| 8. Rear spoiler | 18. Engine radiator door |
| 9. Retractable back up camera (optional) | |
| 10. Engine rear door | |

2. STRUCTURE

The body of the H3-41, H3-45 and VIP vehicles is an integral structure made of 14, 16 and 18 gauge welded and braced high tensile steel and stainless steel members. The roof arches are made with cold rolled, electrically welded (CREW) steel tubes, 1 ½" x 2" x 14 gauge. The inside is filled with urethane foam and the exterior is primed. The front subframe is made of open sections of high-strength steel alloy. These open sections permit a better application of primer and undercoating, and does not trap moisture. The rear subframe is made of closed sections of high tensile steel sealed at both ends.

2.1 WELDING

Since welding is a procedure that may be carried out either as specific instructions from Prévost or by an independent decision of the owner, the following information pertaining to welding should be read before beginning any welding procedure. The prohibitions and requirements outlined below must be followed during welding procedure:

1. Welding must be done only by a qualified and experienced person.
2. Adequate ground contacts and shields must be positioned as required to protect components from damage due to heat, contact by weld splatter, arcing, or other potentially damaging events associated with welding.
3. The following precautions are to be taken to protect the electronic control components. Refer to Section 00, paragraph 3, "PRECAUTIONS TO BE OBSERVED BEFORE WELDING" in this manual.
4. Always wear the appropriate safety equipment.

Weld in clean and well ventilated area, and always have an appropriate fire extinguisher within your reach

3. EXTERIOR MAINTENANCE

Regular washing to remove dust and dirt is recommended. See "Operator's Manual" for more details on washing and cleaning your vehicle.

3.1 CORROSION PREVENTION

Preventive maintenance is a key factor in avoiding corrosion and must be considered as part of the regular service intervals. The entire underbody of the vehicle is sprayed with a heavy application of asphalt base undercoating.

The operating environment the vehicle is subjected to will largely influence the amount of dirt and corrosion that will accumulate over a given period. Corrosion is one of the most costly factors of part failure and shortened part life. It is, however, an item that can be controlled when it is conscientiously looked after and the proper steps are taken in a timely manner.

Certain areas of the coach are more vulnerable to corrosion than others, and it is these areas that should be addressed. For example, the rear baggage compartment bulkhead in the rear wheelhousing area contains many key components and should be examined regularly for corrosion. Other areas include the front wheelhousing area and the engine compartment.

Road splash will affect understructure, condenser coil and engine compartment. These areas must be thoroughly cleaned to remove dirt accumulations from flanges, channels and ledges. These places accumulate dirt and salt and hold it in direct contact with steel and aluminum surfaces. Use an understructure high pressure spray as part of a regular wash. Damaged undercoating or paint should be promptly repaired before corrosion can start.

Frequency of wash periods depends on operating conditions. During periods of exposure to salt, daily washing as described above is recommended. If underbody parts show evidence of rust or corrosion, treat as follows:

1. Remove dirt, grease and oil by solvent washing.
2. Remove corrosion as well as all loose coating by cleaning with a wire brush or sandblasting.

Caution: Sandblasting can be used for cleaning bulkheads, brackets and other structural members. It should not be used for exterior side paneling. Extreme care should be taken not to sandblast excessively.

3. Apply correct primer, paint and undercoating after removing all corrosion to prevent further damage.

3.2 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE

Note: TECTYL 185 GW rust inhibitor may have been applied on your vehicle underbody as an option, if this is the case, follow this procedure thoroughly. For future application of product, refer to paragraph 3.3 in this section.

DESCRIPTION	INTERVALS		MAINTENANCE	CORRECTIVE ACTION	REFERENCE
	MONTHS	KM MILES			
BODY, EXTERNAL WINDOW FRAME	6	40 000 25 000	VISUALLY INSPECT SEALING BEADS CONDITION	REPAIR OR REPLACE SEALING BEADS IF NECESSARY	
VEHICLE UNDERBODY	12	100 000 60 000	USE A LOW PRESSURE SPRAY TO CLEAN UNDERSTRUCTURE AND VISUALLY INSPECT FOR CALCIUM DEPOSIT, CORROSION OR ANY DIRT ACCUMULATED ONTO EXPOSED SURFACES. VISUALLY INSPECT SEALING BEADS CONDITION. VISUALLY INSPECT IF UNDERFLOOR IS PEELING. VISUALLY INSPECT WHEELHOUSING COATING. MAKE SURE DISCHARGE TUBES ARE FREE FROM OBSTRUCTIONS	APPLY UNDERCOATING LOCALLY AS NECESSARY. APPLY UNDERCOATING LOCALLY AS NECESSARY REMOVE ANY OBSTRUCTION OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE TUBE	
SUSPENSION AND UNDERSTRUCTURE	12	100 000 60 000	VERIFY THE CONDITION OF ALL SUSPENSION AND UNDERSTRUCTURE FASTENERS AND CLAMPS	TIGHTEN OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE OR MISSING FASTENERS	
FLOOR COVERING	3	20 000 12 500	VISUALLY INSPECT IF FLOOR COVERING IS SHOWING SIGNS OF DETERIORATION SUCH AS CUTS, BURNS, ETC. ALSO, VISUALLY INSPECT SEALANT ALONGSIDE TRACKS. INSPECT WALL PANELS FROM BOTTOM TO WINDOWS	REPAIR OR REPLACE DEFECTIVE COVERING. MAKE SURE PROPER SEALANT IS USED.	
FLOOR CLEANING			CLEAN FLOOR COVERING AS NECESSARY		

WARNING: Failure to follow this preventive maintenance schedule will result in warranty void.

3.3 RUST INHIBITOR APPLICATION

Material: Tectyl 185 GW



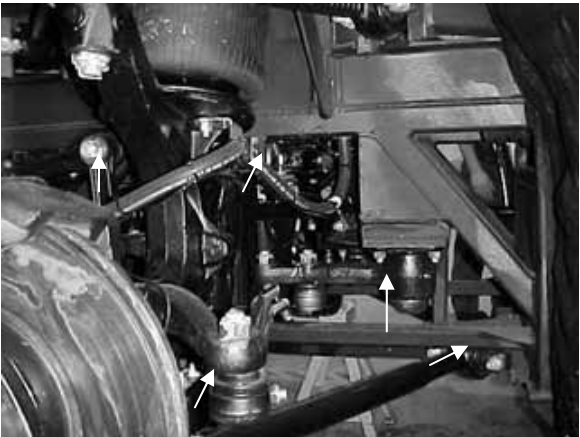
R1KG21

Safety Rules: Use safety glasses

Supplied air hood

Solvent-resistant rubber gloves

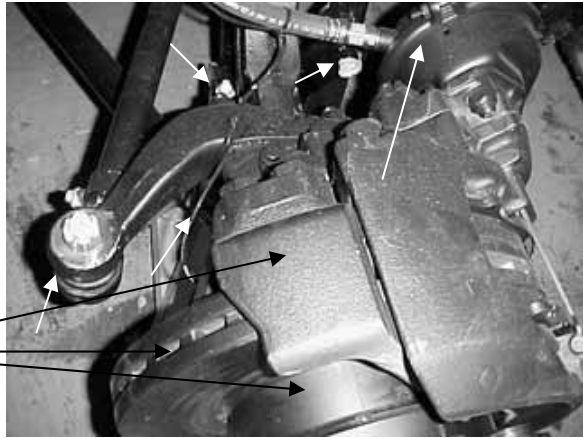
1.0 Wash both wheelhousing mechanical parts before masking.	A water-hose nozzle is recommended. Water may be hot to reduce washing time especially during winter. If parts are soiled with oil, clean using R1KG21. Avoid rubber
---	--

	parts.
2.0 Dry all water sprayed parts. Surface temperature and dew point must be respected before applying rust inhibitor.	Air pressure system may be used, refer to annex 1 for surface temperature and dew point.
3.0 Front wheelhousing a) Mask all rubber joints. Braking system must also be protected (refer to arrows). Commercial aluminum foil may be used for masking.	
3.1 Front wheelhousing Front view	
3.2 Front wheelhousing	

Section 18: BODY

3.3 Front wheelhousing

(Entire braking system)



4.0 Rear wheelhousing

a) Mask all rubber joints. Braking system must also be protected (refer to arrows). Commercial aluminum foil may be used for masking

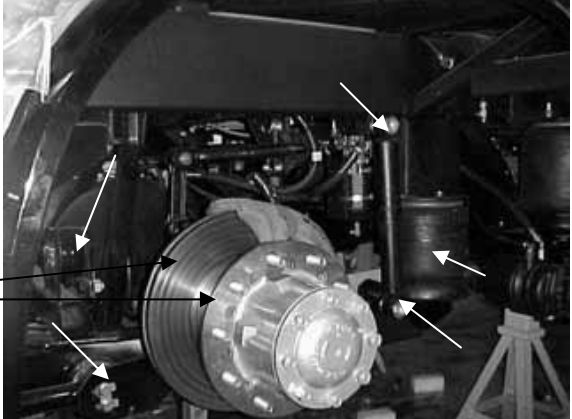
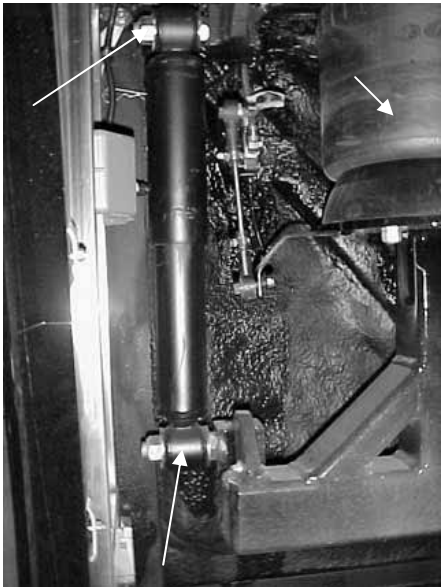
(Entire braking system)



4.1 Rear wheelhousing

(Entire braking system)



<p>4.2 Rear wheelhousing</p> <p>(Entire braking system)</p>	
<p>4.3 Rear wheelhousing</p>	
<p>5.0 Close off wheelhousing using masking paper.</p>	<p>Prevent rust inhibitor from coming in contact with paint. To close off wheelhousing, a polythene sheet may be used.</p>
<p>6.0 Apply TECTYL 185 GW black rust inhibitor onto wheelhousing mechanical parts.</p>	<p>A spray gun and pumping system are required to apply the rust inhibitor. If the application is done inside a paint room, select high speed ventilation. Minimum required thickness is 10 mils wet or 5 mils dry.</p>
<p>7.0 Remove all masking material 30 minutes after application.</p>	

ANNEX 1

1. Check and confirm that dew point and surface temperature are in accordance with to the following criteria:

Surface temperature > 10°C

Surface temperature > or = to dew point + 3°C

Note: Use the following table to determine dew point.

2. Check and confirm that TECTYL temperature is between 10°C and 35°C.

DEW POINT

	Relative Humidity (%)									
	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Temp (c)										
0	---	-16	-11	-8	-5	-3	-1	0	1	3
1	---	-15	-10	-7	-5	-3	-1	1	2	4
2	---	-14	-10	-6	-4	-1	0	2	3	5
3	---	-13	-9	-5	-3	-1	1	2	4	6
4	---	-13	-8	-5	-2	0	2	4	5	7
5	---	-11	-7	-4	-1	1	3	5	6	8
6	---	-11	-8	-3	0	2	4	6	7	9
7	-18	-10	-6	-2	0	2	5	6	8	10
8	-17	-9	-5	-1	1	4	6	7	9	11
9	-16	-9	-4	-1	2	4	6	9	10	12
10	-16	-8	-3	0	3	5	7	10	11	13
11	-15	-7	-3	1	4	6	9	10	12	14
12	-14	-6	-1	2	5	7	10	11	13	15
13	-14	-6	-1	2	6	8	10	12	14	16
14	-13	-5	0	4	6	9	11	14	15	17
15	-12	-4	1	4	7	10	12	14	16	18
16	-11	-4	1	5	9	11	13	15	17	19
17	-10	-3	2	6	9	12	14	16	18	20
18	-10	-2	3	7	10	13	15	17	19	21
19	-9	-1	4	8	11	14	16	18	20	22
20	-9	0		5	9	12	15	17	19	21 23
21	-8	0		5	10	13	16	18	20	22 24
22	-7	1		6	11	14	16	19	21	23 25
23	-6	2		7	11	15	17	20	22	24 26
24	-6	2		8	12	16	19	21	23	25 27
25	-5	3		9	13	16	20	22	24	26 28
26	-4	4		10	14	17	20	23	25	27 29
27	-4	5		11	15	19	21	24	26	28 30
28	-3	6		11	16	19	22	25	27	29 31
29	-2	6		12	17	20	23	26	28	30 32
30	-1	7		13	17	21	24	27	29	31 33
31	-1	8		14	19	22	25	27	30	32 34
32	0	9		15	20	23	26	29	31	33 35

4. FIBERGLASS REPAIR

All repairs to fiberglass parts consist of filling the damaged area with fiberglass cloth and resin or strand fiberglass and resin. The repair is allowed to harden, and then finishing operations may be performed. Use of the various materials is determined by the type of repair to be made. Large holes, torn sections and separate joints require the adhesive qualities of the resin and the reinforcing qualities of the fiberglass.

Small dents, scratches or pits can be repaired using resin and strand fiberglass and filler mixed into paste. Instructions for either mix are explained under their respective headings in this section. For best results when making repairs, temperature should be between 70 and 75 °F (21-24 °C). Some people experience a skin reaction to resins. In such cases, wipe resin off with denatured alcohol or a good thinner. Use of protective hand cream is recommended.

Warning: Always wear a respirator and goggles when grinding or sanding.

Extreme care must be taken if the sander is electrically operated, as dust from some resins is combustible when subjected to sparks or open flames. The proper tool for sanding resin is a low speed, air driven disc sander with a water attachment or a dry sander having a vacuum bag. Either will eliminate flying glass and resin dust.

The following additional tools and materials will assist in making repairs: hacksaw blade, assorted files, emery paper or cloth (150 or finer), scissors or tin snips, wax paper or cellophane sheets, a 3" (75 mm) paint roller, paint brush, putty knife, acetone and one or more heat lamps.

4.1 REPAIR USING FIBERGLASS CLOTH

Where necessary, sand paint away around damaged area and scrape away undercoating, if any, and wipe clean with solvent. Grind or file the damaged area to form a "V" at the broken or cracked portion. Sides of "V" should have a shallow pitch for maximum bonding area.

Note: Roughening the surface improves adhesion of resin.

If part is warped from original shape, use clamping equipment to straighten the surface. Preheat area to be repaired with one or two heat

lamps placed 18 to 24 inches (450-610 mm) from repair.

Caution: Temperature should not exceed 140 °F (60 °C) during 30 minutes in order to avoid distortion.

Cut fiberglass cloth with scissors or tin snips, 1 to 3 inches (25-75 mm) larger than area to be repaired. Build area to desired height.

Mix resin and hardener following instructions on their containers. Saturate layers of fiberglass with mixture and place laminates over damaged area. Smooth out wrinkles and make sure general contour of area is maintained. Bubbles and wrinkles can be eliminated with a roller.

Caution: The pot life of the mix is approximately 15 minutes. Any accidental contamination to the skin, clothing, tools, etc. must be removed within this period. Use acetone to remove uncured resin.

Heat resin material again by placing heat lamps 18 to 24 inches (450-610 mm) from repaired area. Allow 12 to 15 minutes for repair to cure. After repair is cured, grind, file or sand to contour. Files other than body files may be more suitable. Featheredge and finish sanding.

If small pits or irregularities appear after making repair, correct by using a liberal amount of chopped strand or filler mixed with resin to form a paste. Refer to heading "Repair with Fiberglass Paste" in this section.

4.2 REPAIR USING FIBERGLASS PASTE

Fiberglass paste is used for repairing small dents, scratches, and pits. Paste is made by mixing resin, hardener and fiberglass strand or filler to the consistency of putty. Where necessary, sand paint away around damaged area. On underside of coach, scrape away undercoating from damaged area, and wipe clean with solvent.

Preheat the area to be repaired using heat lamps. Mix desired quantities of resin and hardener according to manufacturer's instructions. Add powdered fiberglass strand into mixture to thicken it into a putty state.

Note: If repair is made on a vertical surface, adding powdered filler material to mixture will reduce tendency of hot resin to flow or run.

Apply the material with a putty knife or similar object, building material up to the desired contour. For deep filling and on vertical surfaces, several layers of material may be used.

A hacksaw blade, held flat to adjacent contour and then moved in a sawing action across the repair when the resin is in a gel state, will remove excess resin from repair. Finish repair with the same procedure as when using fiberglass cloth.

4.3 TYPICAL FIBERGLASS REPAIR PROCEDURE

Remove all loose particles or damaged material using a power sander or rasp. Clean area, overlapping hole approximately 1" to 1-½" (25-40 mm) all around. Remove all dirt, grease and paint from area to ensure good bonding surface. Feather the cleaned area all around (Fig. 4).

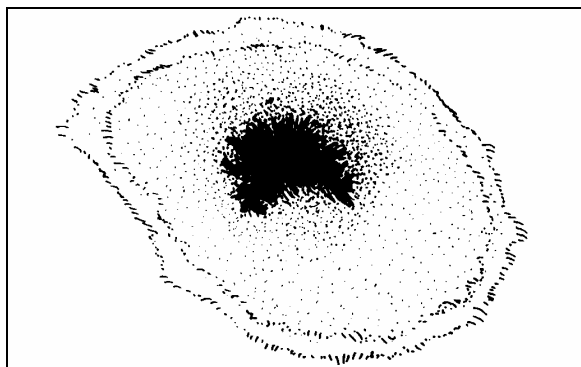


FIGURE 4: FIBERGLASS REPAIR

18089

Cut a piece of fiberglass mat slightly larger than area being repaired. Impregnate mat with general purpose polyester resin catalyzed normally. Use a clean paint brush to apply the polyester resin. Apply impregnated mat over hole and press onto surface with brush to obtain good adherence. Another coat of general purpose polyester resin can be applied at this time (Fig. 5).

Note: Remove all air between surfaces being joined. Allow area to harden and sand surface to remove any wax.

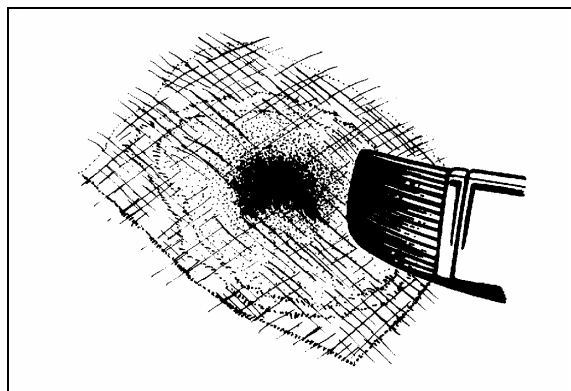


FIGURE 5: FIBERGLASS REPAIR

18090

Apply another mat, followed by a cloth patch, and another mat. All layers must be thoroughly impregnated with polyester resin, brushed well and free of air. Apply more layers of mat and cloth as required until the desired strength and thickness is obtained, minimum two 1-½ oz (43 g) mats and one 9 oz (255 g) cloth (Fig. 6).

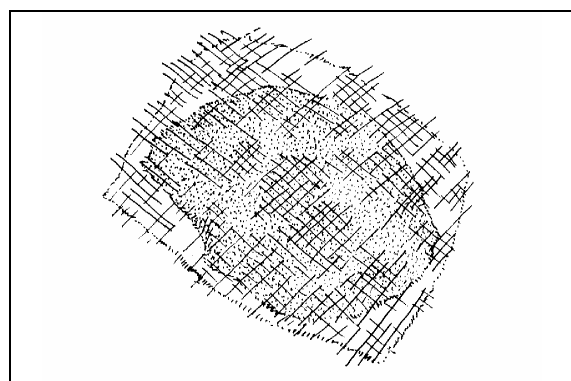


FIGURE 6: FIBERGLASS REPAIR

18091

Allow area to harden and contour the area with coarse sandpaper #100 (Fig. 7).

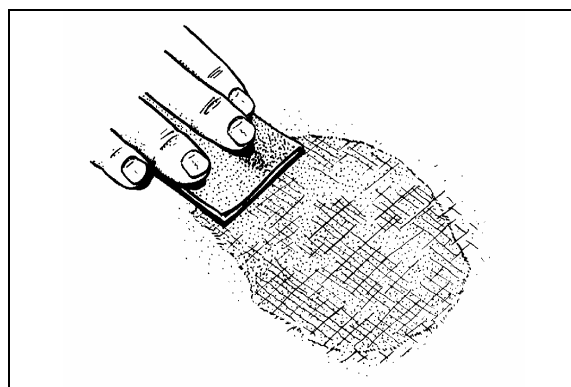


FIGURE 7: FIBERGLASS REPAIR

18092

Cover the area with a layer of resin putty and allow drying for approximately 15 to 20 minutes (Fig. 8).

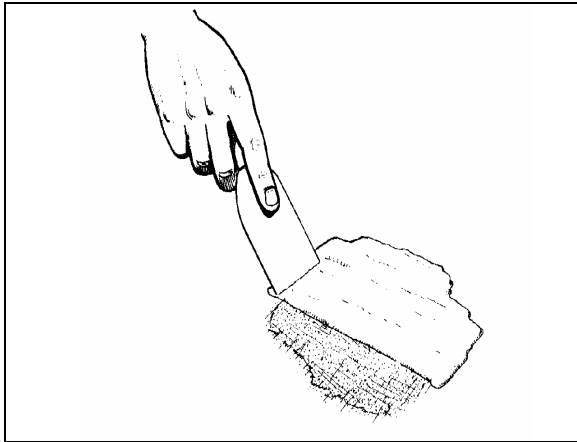


FIGURE 8: FIBERGLASS REPAIR

18093

Smooth off surface with coarse sandpaper #100 to desired shape. Further smooth surface with fine sandpaper #120 until repaired surface matches surrounding area paneling. Prime and paint the area to match surrounding paintwork.

5. PAINTING

5.1 NEW PAINT CARE

Our paint supplier recommends that you follow these simple precautions the first months of your new vehicle's life.

Caution: Apply these recommendations after repainting vehicle.

During the first 30 days:

- Do not use a commercial bus wash. Stiff brushes or sponges could mar the finish and damage the surface. Wash the vehicle by hand only and with cool water and a very mild bus wash solution. Be careful to use only a soft cloth or sponge;
- Wash vehicle in the shade, never in direct sunlight;
- Do not "dry wipe" vehicle –always use clean water. Dry wiping could scratch the finish;
- Avoid extreme heat and cold. Park vehicle in the shade whenever possible;
- Do not park under trees which drop sap or near factories with heavy smoke fallout. Tree sap and industrial fallout may mar or spot a freshly painted surface;
- Trees are also likely to attract birds. Bird droppings are highly acidic and will damage a freshly painted surface. Bird droppings,

tree sap and industrial fallout should be washed off as soon as possible;

- Do not spill oil, gasoline, antifreeze, transmission fluid or windshield solvent on new finish. IMMEDIATELY rinse off any such spill with clean water, DO NOT WIPE;
- Do not drive on gravel roads. Paint finish easily chips during the first 30 days;
- Do not scrape ice or snow from the surface. A snow scraper can act like a paint scraper if the finish is new. Brush off loose material with a soft snow brush.

During the first 90 days:

- Do not wax or polish the vehicle. This will allow the finish to dry and harden completely.

5.2 PAINT TOUCHUP

When paint touchup or partial repainting is necessary, refer to the vehicle's paint scheme for color codes and paint brand.

Prévost recommends using the original paint brand to ease color matching.

In the event you sand through to the gelcoat surface you should prime the area with Standox "Non Stop Fill Primer (ST-11000)".

If you sand through to metal surface, first prime with Standox "Etch Primer (ST-11858)" then with Standox "Non Stop Fill Primer (ST-11000)".

Caution: Be sure to heed all paint manufacturer's recommendations, especially concerning paint dilution and application.

5.3 PAINTING

The standard paint used on the exterior of the vehicle is Standox Basislack. It is a high gloss polyurethane enamel finish designed for exposure to extreme conditions. Other types of paint may be called for as options by owner but are not dealt with in this section.

5.3.1 Safety

Care should be exercised in storing, handling, mixing, and applying paint and chemicals listed in this manual. The topcoat, primer, solvent, catalysts, accelerators, and cleaners are highly volatile and/or toxic if not properly used. Observe all safety instructions marked on the different packagings, as well as the following:

Section 18: BODY

1. Do not smoke in the paint room or in adjacent area exposed to residue fumes.
2. Wear respirators approved by the governing safety and health regulations.
3. Maintain adequate ventilation at all times.
4. Dispose of any leftover paint mix properly.
5. Wear rubber gloves, rubber apron, and face shield during all phases of paint and chemical handling.

5.3.2 Surface Preparation and Paint Application

	Aluminum and / or Stainless Steel	Fiberglass	Comments
Surface Preparation	Sand using P-150 grit sandpaper. It is recommended to sandblast rivets and panel edges with OLIMAG 35-70 blast media.	Sand using P-180 or P-240 sandpaper.	Do not use paint remover over aluminum or fiberglass.
Cleaning	STANDOX silicone remover ST-11654 (68-2989)		
Priming	STANDOX Reactive Etch Primer ST-13908 * Wait 30 minutes then apply STANDOX Non-Stop Füllprimer ST-11000 (68-2973)	STANDOX Non-Stop Füllprimer ST-11000 (68-2973)	Refer to product Technical Data sheet for proper mixing
Basecoat	Refer to paint scheme or coach record for proper color code and paint brand. We recommend using the same paint brand to ease color matching.		Refer to product Technical Data sheet for proper mixing
Clearcoat	STANDOX 2K MS Rapid Clear ST-11760 (68-2979) Allow 16 hours for drying		Refer to product Technical Data sheet for proper mixing

If assistance or technical information on STANDOX products is needed, please dial: 1 (800) 551-9296

5.4 FRONT AND REAR BUMPERS

5.4.1 Paint touchup and surface preparation for vehicles equipped with urethane bumpers

	COMMENTS	VIP	COACHES
Cleaning	Clean using red wool and Standoflex 11100 (ST-11425) thinner	YES	YES
	Clean again twice using Standoflex 11100 (ST-11425) thinner	YES	YES
Priming	Apply Non-Stop primer (ST-13320) with flexible agent dilution 2:1 10% in 2 or 3 coats, 15 min. flash/off between coats	YES	YES
Sanding	Sand Non-Stop primer using P-320 grit sandpaper	YES	YES
	Use a tack cloth	YES	YES
Basecoat	Apply basecoat. Wait 30 minutes.	YES	YES
Varnish dilution	Dilution without flexible agent	YES	YES
Varnishing	Apply varnish	YES	YES

If assistance or technical information on STANDOX products is needed, please dial: 1 (800) 551-9296

6. FRONT AND REAR BUMPERS

6.1 FRONT BUMPER REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

The front bumper is hinged to give access to the spare wheel compartment. Bumper must first be tilted down before its removal. Two people are required to remove and install the front bumper.

Warning: Front bumper weighs approximately 180 lbs. (80 kg). Use proper lifting equipment to support the bumper during the removal and installation operations to avoid personal injury.

Pull on the release handle located in the front electrical and service compartment to access the spare wheel compartment.

The bumper assembly will lower gradually.

6.1.1 Molded Front Bumper Removal

Loosen 12 attaching bolts from inside the bumper, 6 near the top and 6 in the middle (Fig. 9). Let the bumper rest face down on the lifting equipment platform.

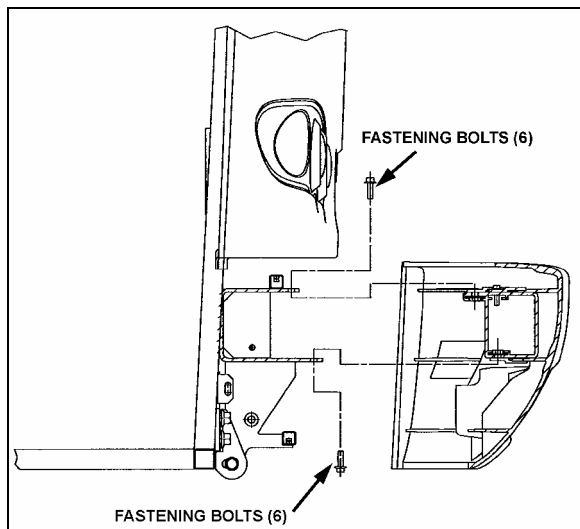


FIGURE 9: BUMPER FASTENING MECHANISM

18498

To install molded front bumper, reverse the procedure.

6.1.2 Front Bumper Assembly Removal including spare wheel compartment door

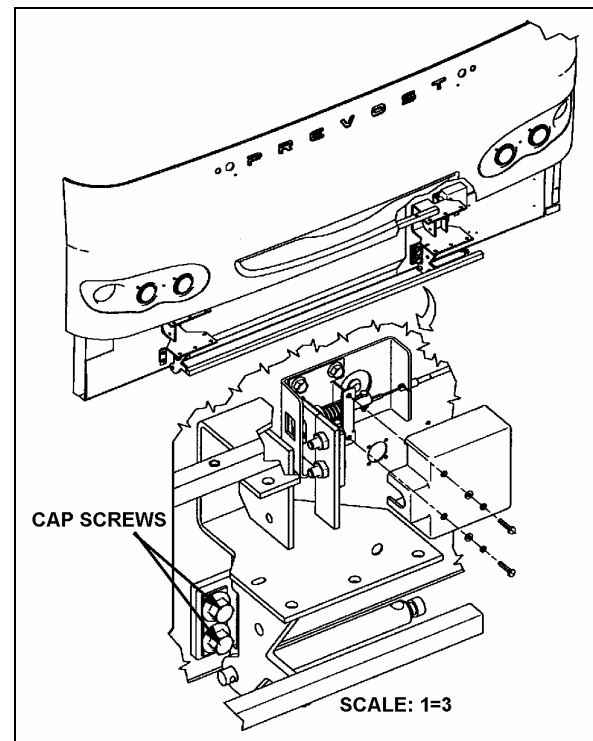


FIGURE 10: FRONT BUMPER ASSEMBLY

18499

1. Ask assistant to relieve spring tension with assistant proper tool, and relieve spring tension on one locking pin and remove it. Slowly release spring tension and remove the second locking pin. The spring is free. Repeat procedure for the other spring.

Note: A special tool kit is available from Prévost Car Inc: Kit # 410671 including tool #410708.

2. Remove 4 cap screws holding bumper to vehicle and remove bumper (Fig. 10).
3. To install bumper, reverse the removal procedure.

6.2 FRONT BUMPER LICENSE PLATE SUPPORT INSTALLATION

License plate supports are stored in the first baggage compartment.

Install supports using dedicated holes as per figure 11.

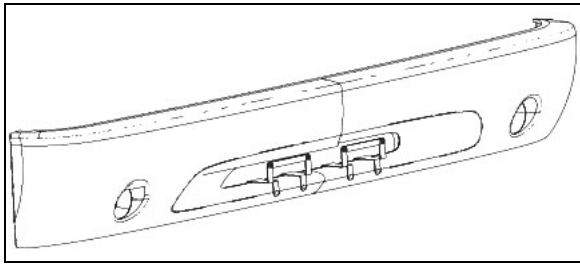


FIGURE 11: LICENSE PLATE SUPPORTS

18500

6.3 REAR BUMPER REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

Warning: Rear bumper weighs approximately 180 lbs. (80 kg). Use proper lifting equipment to support the bumper during the removal and installation operations to avoid personal injury.

1. Remove 6 nuts (3 on each side) holding bumper assembly to vehicle and remove bumper (Fig. 12).
2. Let the bumper rest face down on the lifting equipment platform.
3. To install bumper, reverse the procedure.

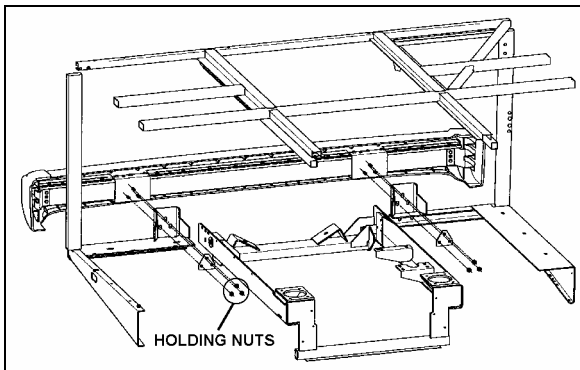


FIGURE 12: REAR BUMPER ASSEMBLY

18501

7. COACH ENTRANCE DOOR

An air operated “sedan type” entrance door, with an air door cylinder and damper assembly are installed under the right hand dash. The opening and closing door speed cycle is adjustable by a damper mounted in parallel with the door cylinder on the door hinge (Fig. 15). Door activation is controlled by a relay panel, located near the defroster and wiper motors. The accessory air reservoir supplies air to this system.

The door is held in the closed position during coach operation by two air cylinder locking

mechanisms (Fig. 16). Air cylinders with return spring in the cylinder body are used. Air cylinders are controlled by an electrically operated solenoid valve energized by a rocker switch located under the right hand dashboard.

To open the door, initial movement of the rocker switch de-energizes the air lock solenoid valve, venting the door locking cylinders. The return locking spring pulls the door lock away from the latch, unlocking the door. Door movement starts only when pressure in the central air door lock is below 10 psi. The “air cylinder open solenoid valve” opens and allows air to flow to the door cylinder, “the air cylinder close solenoid valve” exhausts air from the rod side of the cylinder.

To close the door, initial movement of the switch energizes the “air cylinder close solenoid valve” and air flows to the cylinder by its rod side port. The “air cylinder open solenoid valve” exhausts air from cylinder. When entrance door latch is grounded with the door frame, the air lock solenoid valve is de-energized and loads the door lock cylinders. The cylinder moves the door lock in a position which engages a latch on the entrance door, holding the door positively closed.

Emergency exit valves, which open the air valve circuit, should be used only in emergencies, or when the door control system does not function properly.

Refer to the air system schematic diagram annexed at the end of section 12, “Brakes” and to page 22 of the wiring diagram.

7.1 OPERATION

The air-operated door is controlled from inside the coach by two push-button switches located on the R.H. dashboard.

Opening and closing of the door from outside the coach is accomplished by a momentary toggle switch located behind the coach model nameplate (Fig. 13).

To close the door, the switch must be pushed towards the rear of the coach and held in position until the door has completed its movement.

To open the door, the switch must be pushed towards the front of the coach and held in position. When the door reaches the fully

opened position, the system will keep pressure in the cylinder locking the door in that position. The door can be stopped in any position by releasing the switch. The door is not locked in position when not fully opened or closed.

If the door has been locked with the key, a lever on the door can be moved to unlock.

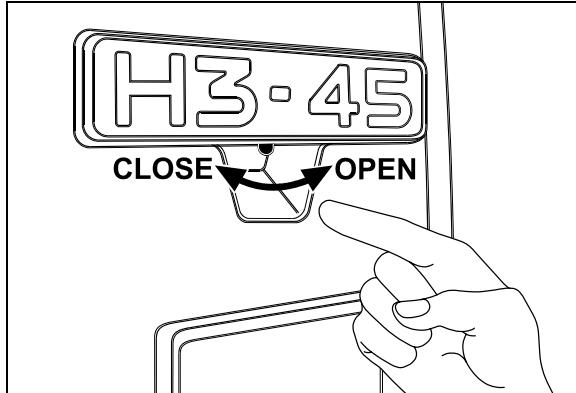


FIGURE 13: DOOR OPERATING SWITCH 18316

7.2 EMERGENCY EXIT VALVES

From inside the vehicle, an emergency exit valve located near the door on the dash panel, releases the pressure from the lock cylinders. From the exterior, an emergency exit valve located in the front service compartment, also releases the air from the lock cylinders.

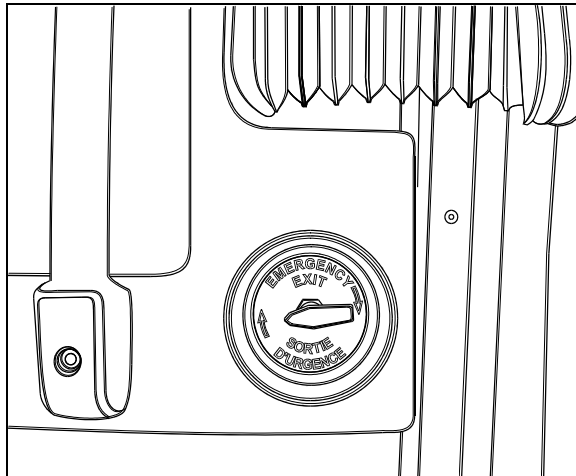


FIGURE 14: EMERGENCY EXIT VALVE 18321

7.2.1 Without Air and/or Without Electricity

If the air pressure drops while coach has or hasn't any electricity, the spring loaded cylinders will unlatch the door. In such a case, unlock the

door by moving the lever on the door or by using the key, then open the door manually.

7.2.2 With Air but Without Electricity

From inside the vehicle, turn the emergency exit valve to the "UNLOCK" position. Move the lever. From the exterior, turn the emergency exit valve to the "UNLOCK" position. Open the door. Close it, lock with the key and reset the outside emergency exit valve to the "NORMAL" position.

7.3 DOOR CYCLE SPEED ADJUSTMENT

To do any adjustment, remove the two panels located next to the door hinge, as well as the door's upper hinge control.

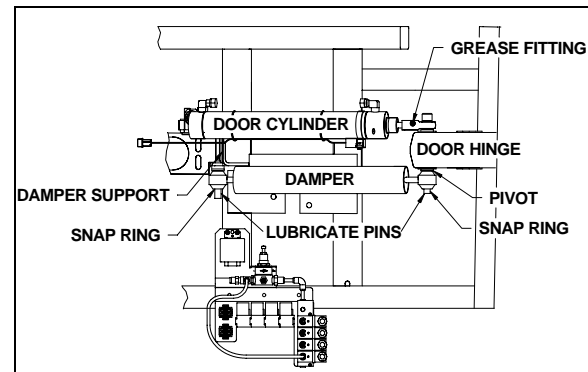


FIGURE 15: DOOR CYLINDER AND DAMPER 18161

Caution: It is important to make sure that damper does not reach end of stroke when door is completely closed or opened. The door cylinder must stop the door on opening. Screw or unscrew rod end to adjust if necessary.

To adjust opening and closing cycle speed on damper (Fig. 15):

1. Remove the damper from the vehicle and hold it vertically with the lower eye or pin attachment in a vice. Use clamp plates to prevent damage.
2. Fully close the damper while turning the dust cap or piston rod slowly CCW until it is felt that the cams of the adjusting nut engage in the recesses of the foot valve assembly (Fig. 17).

Section 18: BODY

Note: In figure 17, if there is an indentation (B) in the dust cap (C) and the cover shows two holes (A), the damper is fitted with a bump rubber (D). If so, fully extend the damper and insert a round bar or screwdriver through the holes. Push the bump rubber down and remove. Remove the split plastic collar (E) (if fitted) from the piston rod.

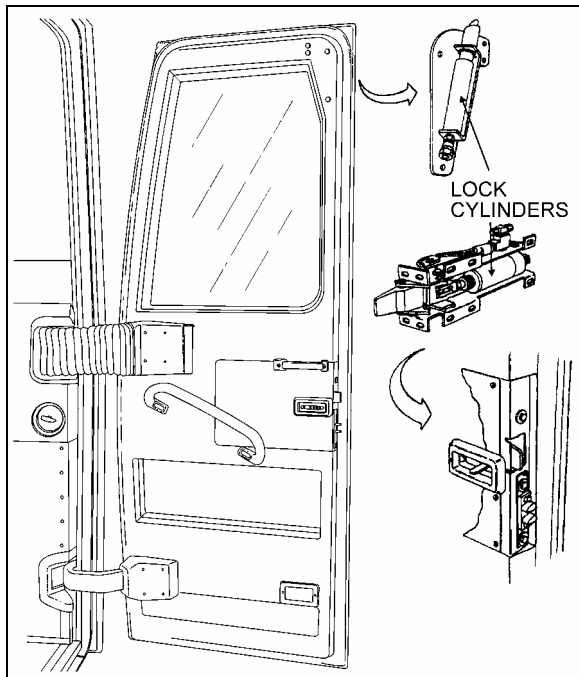


FIGURE 16: COACH ENTRANCE DOOR

18439

3. The damper may have already been adjusted. Therefore check whether the damper is adjusted or not by keeping it closed and gently turning further CCW, counting at the same time the half-turns until a stop is felt. Stop turning and do not force.
4. While keeping the damper closed, make two CW half-turns. In case of prior adjustment, add the number of half-turns previously counted. The total range is about five half-turns.
5. Pull the damper out vertically without turning for at least 3/8" (1cm) to disengage the adjusting mechanism. The dust cap or piston rod may now be turned freely.

Note: Where a bump rubber was installed, refit same inside the dust cap and by fully closing the damper, the rubber will seat again at top of the dust cap. Refit the split plastic collar E (Fig. 17)

6. The damper can now be refitted in the vehicle.
7. Reinstall panels and entrance door hinge cover.

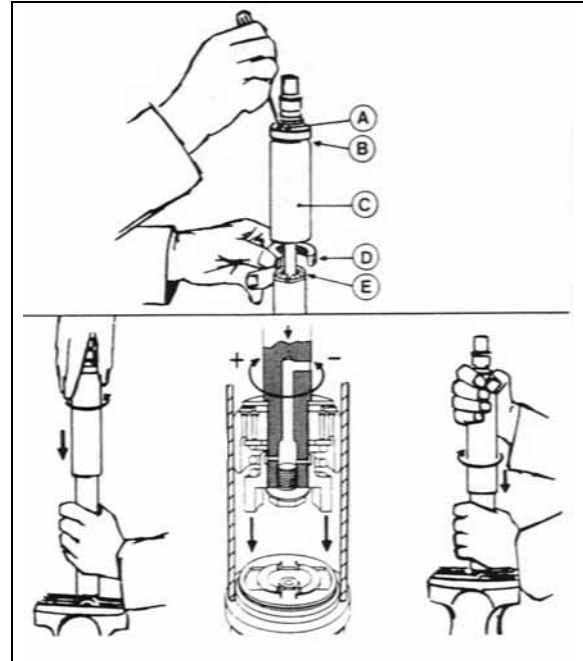


FIGURE 17: DAMPER

7.4 HORIZONTAL AND VERTICAL ADJUSTMENT

Before attempting to correct any door operating problem by adjusting any part of the air cylinder assembly, first perform the following mechanical checks and procedure.

Check around the perimeter of the door for binding. If any binding is found, adjust as follows:

1. Remove the screws and the plastic molding covering each of the hinges.
- Note:** Ask an assistant to help you to perform the following adjustments.
2. Remove the Allen button head screw and the washer retaining the rod end with bearing to the upper hinge. See figure 18.
3. Support the door with a wooden block and a hydraulic jack.
4. Loosen the horizontal bolts retaining the door to the hinges. Adjust the door horizontally and vertically with the jack.

Tighten the bolts to 30-36 Lbf-ft (40-50 Nm).
Remove the jack and the wooden block.

Caution: Make sure the entrance door does not interfere with the exterior panel.

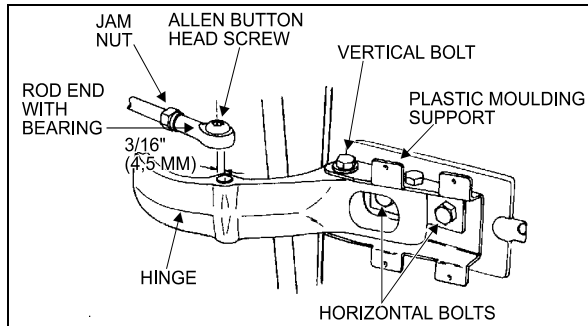


FIGURE 18: UPPER DOOR HINGE (COACH)

18058

5. Pull and fasten the rod end to the hinge with the washer and the button screw.
6. Screw the plastic moldings covering the hinges.

7.5 DEPTH ADJUSTMENT

1. Turn the emergency exit valve to the "UNLOCK" position.
2. Remove the screws and the plastic molding covering each of the hinges.

Note: Ask an assistant to help you to perform the following adjustments.

3. Remove the Allen button head screw and the washer retaining the ball and socket rod to the upper hinge. See figure 18.
4. Loosen the vertical bolts on the hinges for the front section, and for the rear section, move the central door catch on the door frame.
5. To adjust the male dovetail on L.H. side of the door, remove the two screws and loosen the two bolts. Slide the male dovetail toward the interior and loosely tighten the two bolts. Close the door slowly but firmly, then slowly open it and tighten the two bolts. Attach dovetail to the door with screws. See figure 19.

Note: The frame dovetail is not adjustable.

6. Pull and fasten the rod end to the hinge with the washer and the button screw.

7. Using the screws, attach the plastic moldings covering the hinges.
8. Reset the emergency exit valve to the normal position.

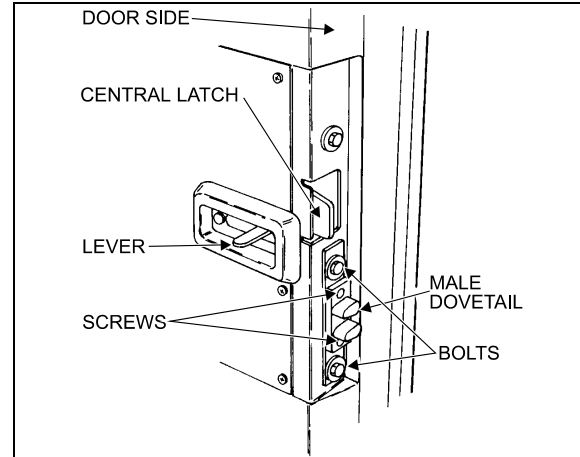


FIGURE 19: DOOR LATCH (COACH)

18059

7.6 ROD END ADJUSTMENT

1. Turn the emergency exit valve to the "UNLOCK" position.
2. Remove the screws and the plastic moldings covering the upper and lower hinges.
3. Remove the Allen button head screw and the washer retaining the ball and socket rod to the upper hinge. See figure 18.
4. Loosen the jam nut locking the door cylinder rod end. Close the door firmly, adjust the rod end center hole in order to be 3/16" (4,5 mm) eccentric toward the left with the hinge hole center. Tighten the jam nut.
5. Pull and fasten the rod end to the hinge with the washer and the button screw.
6. Using the screws, attach the plastic moldings covering the hinges.
7. Reset the emergency exit valve to the normal position.

7.7 LUBRICATION

Part	Lubricant	Frequency
------	-----------	-----------

Section 18: BODY

Part	Lubricant	Frequency
Latches Upper door catch Door cylinder rod end with bearing grease fitting (Fig. 15)	Low temperature grease	Every six months

Part	Lubricant	Frequency
Door locking mechanism	White grease	Every six months
Key hole Damper pins (Fig. 15) Hinges	Low viscosity oil	Every six months

7.8 TROUBLESHOOTING

SYMPTOM	PROBABLE CAUSE	REMEDY
DOOR WILL NOT OPEN FROM EXTERIOR SWITCH.	Manual door locks engaged.	Release manual door locks.
	Upper and lower solenoid locks do not disengage.	Check voltage at solenoid locks when door is open. If the voltage is 24 volts then replace solenoid #641217. Else, check circuit power.
	Relay module do not receive current.	Reset breaker "ON" or check batteries power supply.
	Opening solenoid door does not receive current.	Check voltage at opening solenoid door. If the voltage is 24 volts then replace it. Else replace control relay.
	Switch malfunction.	Replace switch.
DOOR WILL NOT CLOSE FROM EXTERIOR SWITCH.	Switch malfunction.	Replace switch.
	Solenoid failure.	Check voltage at solenoid. If the voltage is 24 volts then replace solenoid. Else replace control relay.
DOOR WILL NOT OPEN FROM INTERIOR SWITCH.	Manual door locks engaged.	Release manual door locks (open position) from vehicle exterior.
	Upper and lower solenoid locks do not disengage.	Check voltage at solenoid locks when door is open. If the voltage is 24 volts then replace solenoid #641217. Else, check circuit power and replace control relay.
	Module relay does not receive electric current.	Reset breaker "ON" or check batteries power supply.
	Door opening solenoid does not receive current.	Check voltage at door opening solenoid. If the voltage is 24 volts then replace it. Else replace control relay.
	Switch malfunction.	Replace switch.
	Upper lock stays engaged.	Lubricate upper lock assembly. Check wear and replace parts if necessary.
DOOR WILL NOT CLOSE FROM INTERIOR SWITCH.	Switch malfunction.	Replace switch.
	Door closing solenoid does not receive electric current.	Check voltage at door closing solenoid. If the voltage is 24 volts then replace it. Else replace control relay.
DOOR WILL NOT OPEN AFTER DRAINING AIR FROM SYSTEM BY EMERGENCY VALVE(S).	Manual door locks engaged.	Release manual door locks (open position) from vehicle exterior.
	Damper cylinder blocks the door.	Adjust or replace damper cylinder.
	The upper lock blocks the door	Adjust lower lock. Lubricate upper latch bolt. Adjust upper latch height.
DOOR LOCKS STAY ENGAGED WHEN DOOR IS OPEN.	Power supply is cut at solenoid.	Place switch in open position.
	Solenoid lock does not disengage.	Check voltage at solenoid locks when door is OPEN. If the voltage is 24 volts then replace solenoid #641217. Else, check circuit power and replace control relay.

SYMPTOM	PROBABLE CAUSE	REMEDY
DOOR DO NOT LOCK WHEN DOOR IS CLOSED.	Emergency valve is open.	Close emergency valve.
	Lock solenoid stays electrified.	Check latch bolt ground on door frame. If needed clean locks for better contact. Check ground circuit.
	Lock solenoid works in reverse.	Reverse air hoses at solenoid locks.
	Relay does not function.	Replace relay.

8. ENTRANCE DOOR (V.I.P)

There are three ways of unlocking the entrance door from the inside of vehicle. The two first consist in actuating the rocker switch on the dashboard, but this last operation will also unlock the baggage compartments. Finally, you can unlock the door by sliding its lock lever to the left. If the orange tab on the door lock lever is visible, the door is unlocked.

You may lock/unlock the entrance door from the outside with the lock key provided with the vehicle. Turn key CCW to lock and CW to unlock the entrance door.

8.1 KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM

With this system, you can lock or unlock the entrance door as well as the baggage and service compartment doors. The keyboard is located below the entrance door handle. The module is pre-programmed by the manufacturer and this code can not be deleted. Moreover, you can program your own entry code. Refer to the "VIP Owner's Manual" for instructions on how to program your own entry code.

When you use the keyless entry system, the keyboard and stepwell lights illuminate. Do not push the buttons with a key, pencil or any other hard object as it could damage the buttons.

Although each button is provided with two digits separated by a vertical line, there is only one contact per button. Always press the center of the button (between the two digits, on the vertical line).

If you let more than five seconds pass between each button press, the system shuts down, and you have to enter your code again. If the keyless entry system does not work properly, use the key to lock or unlock entrance or compartment doors. To know more about the keyless system, refer to the "VIP Owner's Manual".

Note: You must unlock the entrance door before you unlock with the appropriate key any baggage or service compartment doors.

8.2 DOOR ADJUSTMENT

Check around the perimeter of the door for binding. If any binding is found, adjust as follows:

8.2.1 Horizontal and Vertical Adjustments

1. Remove the screws and the plastic molding covering each of the hinges.

Note: Ask an assistant to help you to perform the following adjustments.

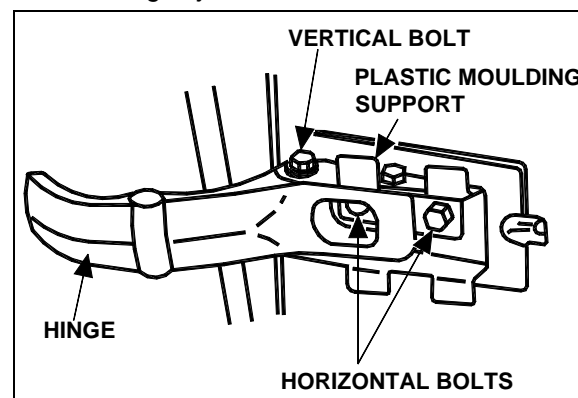


FIGURE 20: ENTRANCE DOOR (VIP)

18058VIP

2. Support the door with a wooden block and a hydraulic jack.
3. Loosen the horizontal bolts retaining the door to the hinges. Adjust the door horizontally and vertically with the jack. Tighten the bolts to 30-36 Ft-lbs (40-50 Nm). Remove the jack and the wooden block.
4. Check door fit.
5. Using the screws, fasten the plastic trim to cover the hinges.

8.3 DEPTH ADJUSTMENT

To adjust door depth on the hinged side:

1. Remove the screws and the trim covering each of the hinges.

Note: Ask an assistant to help you to perform the following adjustments.

2. Slightly loosen, but not completely the vertical bolts on both door hinges.
3. Ask your assistant to press the door from the exterior, until it will adjust with the vehicle structure. Then, tighten the vertical bolts.
4. Repeat step 3 until depth is corrected to satisfaction.
5. Using the screws, install the trim hiding the hinges.

To adjust door depth on lock side:

Depth adjustment is done by moving the two door strikers.

1. Slightly loosen the door strikers.
2. Ask your assistant to press the door from the exterior, until it will adjust with the vehicle structure. Then tighten the striker pin.
3. Repeat until the door depth is corrected to satisfaction.

8.4 DOOR LOWER SECTION

When a plastic door lower section replacement is needed, proceed the following way:

1. Remove the reflective stripe at the top edge of the door's lower section. Unscrew the retaining screws located under the reflective stripe.
2. Remove the lower section.
3. With a sharp edge knife, scrape as much tape as possible and compound left on the fiberglass door surface. Note where adhesive tape and sealing compound was applied.
4. Sand the surface of the door where new adhesive tape will be applied with 240 grit sandpaper.

Note: Tape adheres best to smooth surfaces such as glass or gelcoat finishes. Be careful surface is as smooth as possible before applying tape.

5. Clean contact surfaces with alcohol.
6. Clean the fiberglass door and the new plastic lower section with a "tack cloth". Make only one pass on the surface and

never come back on a previously cleaned surface.

Caution: Wear rubber gloves and do not smoke when cleaning.

7. Prepare the door lower section with Sika #205 and a clean rag. Make only one pass on the surface and never come back on a previously cleaned surface.

Note: Never use Sika #205 directly from the container to avoid contamination of the product.

8. Wait at least 5 minutes before proceeding the next step to allow complete evaporation of the product.
9. Put new adhesive tape where it was previously applied. Pass a 1" (25mm) roller on it to get a good adhesion on the fiberglass.
10. Apply Sika #252 (Prévost #682462) compound where it was previously applied.
11. Remove protective paper from the adhesive tape and install the door lower section. Apply pressure with a roller where the lower door section touches the fiberglass door.
12. Replace the retaining screws.

8.5 REFLECTOR STRIPE INSTALLATION

1. Clean contact surfaces with alcohol.
2. Prepare surface of reflector stripe and door lower section with Sika #205.
3. Put two rows of adhesive tape on the lower door section.
4. Apply Sika #252 (Prévost #682462) compound between parallel tape stripes.
5. Remove protective paper from the adhesive tape and press the reflective stripe in place.

8.6 DOOR SEAL REPLACEMENT

1. Inspect the seal; if cracked or torn, it must be replaced:
2. Remove the old seal and with a sharp edge knife, scrape tape left on the fiberglass door surface.
3. Sand the surface of the door where a new seal will be applied with 240 grit sandpaper.
4. Clean the surface with alcohol.

Caution: Wear rubber gloves and do not smoke when cleaning.

5. Peel of protective paper from the seal. Position the seal in order to leave ¼" (6 mm) from the upper molded edge of the door and 3/16" (4,5 mm) from the sides and lower molded edges of the door.
6. Progress slowly all around the door.
7. Cut the seal and glue both ends with LOCTITE 414 glue.
8. To assure bonding, press a small roller on top of the new seal.

8.7 DOOR LUBRICATION

Part	Lubricant	Frequency
Latches Upper door catch	Low temperature grease	Every six months
Door locking mechanism	White grease	Every six months
Key hole Hinges	Low viscosity oil	Every six months

8.8 DOOR LATCH MECHANISM

Generally, when the latch mechanism malfunctions, a number of causes may be responsible for this situation. No single procedure will correct this situation. It is best to remove the protective cover and to look for binding, used or bent parts. Operate the latch mechanism and try to find where any binding occurs. Replacing a part or slightly bending a rod should be enough. Remember, having a global understanding of the mechanical activity will generally lead you to the cause of the problem, and ultimately to an easy repair.

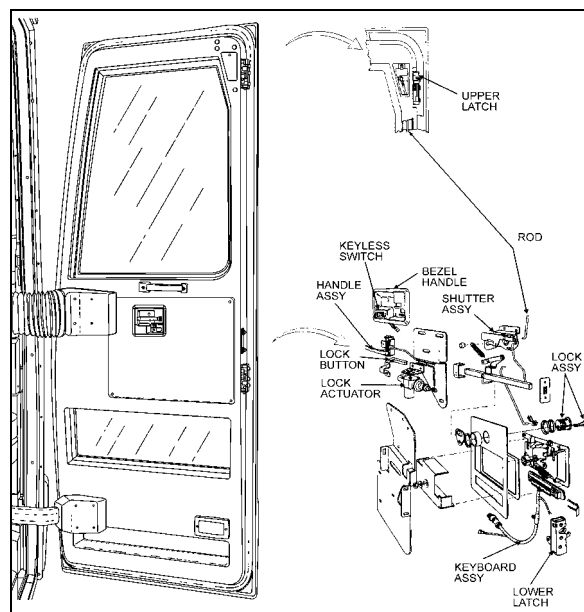


FIGURE 21: ENTRANCE DOOR (VIP, TYPICAL)

18440

9. DRIVER'S POWER WINDOW

To replace window or motor, the whole assembly must be removed. The following instructions refer to figure 22.

9.1 WINDOW OR REGULATOR REMOVAL

1. Remove the L.H. console and instrument support plate behind it.
2. Remove the screws holding the window to the lifting mechanism. Remove the holding plate.
3. Lower the window support assembly while holding the window in the closed position to detach the regulator assembly from the window.
4. Remove the four bolts holding the motor and regulator assembly in place.
5. Detach the plastic water protection shield (30).
6. Remove the assembly by slipping it under the vehicle structural members.
7. Lower the window completely to detach from the opening.

9.2 WINDOW OR REGULATOR INSTALLATION

1. Detach the notched strip from the regulator's sprockets with a screwdriver and reinsert it

two notches back so the sliding window support will go further down the post than normal.

2. Power the regulator so the support goes down to it's lowest position.
3. Cut the excess notched strip.
4. Remove the screws holding the plate (3). Remove the plastic water protection shield (30).
5. Using alcohol, a sharp knife or 240 grit sandpaper, clean off the butyl tape from the shield and frame. Install new tape on shield.
6. Insert the shield over the new mechanism.
7. Screw the plate loosely (3) in place. Use three washers on each bolt to ease final adjustments.
8. Install new window in opening
9. Install the regulator assembly and fasten loosely using the bolts recovered from disassembly. Do not install third (right most) bolt (15) yet.
10. Expose the other sticky side of the butyl tape and stick shield in place.
11. Connect the regulator motor.
12. Raise the window support to so it mates with the slightly lowered window.
13. Fasten window to regulator assembly loosely using the anchor plate and recovered bolts.
14. Raise window to closed position and tighten anchor plate bolts.
15. Lower window completely, then raise it to mid-open position. Tighten plate (3) bolts (9).
16. Raise window to nearly closed position and check if it is level with the top of the window opening.
17. If the window is level, tighten the two left bolts (15) and screw in the third right bolt (15).
18. If window glass is not straight, tilt up or down regulator assembly before tightening bolts.

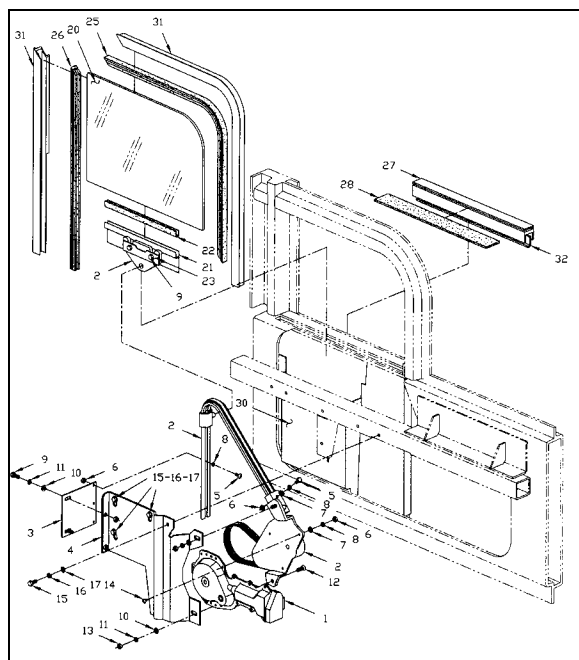


FIGURE 22: DRIVER'S WINDOW

18322

10. ROOF ESCAPE HATCH

The vehicle can be equipped with one or two escape hatches. The escape hatch is designed to provide years of reliable service with a minimum of maintenance. All components are rust proof, and moving parts are Teflon coated to eliminate need for lubrication. Should water infiltrate the vehicle from the escape hatch, refer to the heading "Sealing" in this section for procedures on how to seal this area.

Caution: Use of lubricants, paints, or other coatings such as graffiti deterring sprays are not recommended.

Suggested maintenance includes periodic inspection of fasteners for evidence of loosening due to tampering, and regular cleaning with mild soap and water.

Although there are other cleaning solutions available, some contain solvents and other chemicals that can attack the high strength materials used in the production of the escape hatch.

Caution: Ensure that cleaning solutions are compatible with the materials used on the escape hatch.

Graffiti removing cleaners often contain acetone, ether, lacquer thinner, or other solvents known to destroy the high strength properties of many plastics. Use of these cleaners must be avoided.

Graffiti-resisting coatings often leave a sticky residue that interferes with smooth up/down movement of the hatch mechanism. Some of these coatings also contain solvents that will reduce the strength of certain components.

Caution: Use of these coatings is at considerable risk and should be avoided.

10.1 REPAIR

All components used in the production of the escape hatch are available as service parts, except for one hinge that represents a possible hazard when improperly reattached to a hidden tapping plate, itself often damaged whenever the hinge is damaged. The tapping plate is permanently laminated between the inner and outer cover assemblies, and it cannot be inspected or replaced. It is therefore necessary to replace the entire assembly following damage to the hinge. See figures 23 and 24.

Caution: Hinge assembly is critical and hinge should never be removed from cover assembly. Fasteners used in this assembly are special and have critical torque requirements and tamper-resistant heads to discourage tampering.

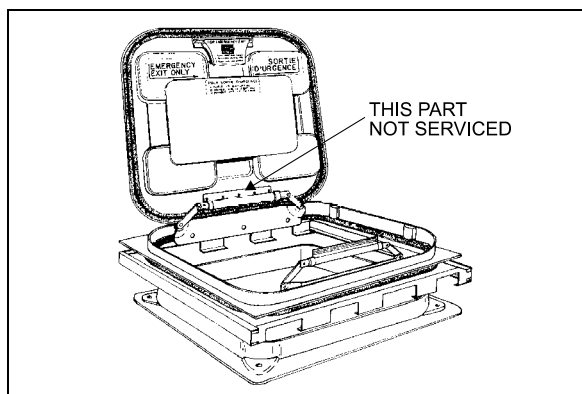


FIGURE 23: ESCAPE HATCH

18104

10.2 SEALING

1. Open and tilt up the escape hatch cover.
2. Join the 2 ends of the rubber seal.

Caution: Seal joint should be toward rear of vehicle.

3. Apply rubber adhesive CA-40 (Prévost # 681285) in the gap between the seal ends.
4. Apply Sikaflex 221 sealant (Prévost # 680532) along the outline of the escape hatch on the roof of vehicle.

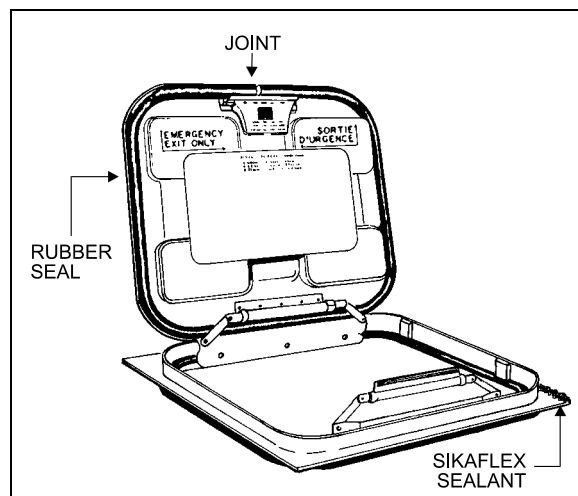


FIGURE 24: ESCAPE HATCH

18105

10.3 ESCAPE HATCH PANEL ASSEMBLY

The frame of the escape hatch is riveted to the roof of the vehicle. The escape hatch panel assembly can be replaced as a unit and a new panel assembly installed in the existing frame. To remove the panel assembly, remove the 4 bolts fastening the 2 hinges to the escape hatch frame and retain the 4 flat washers. Reinstall the panel assembly by fastening the 2 hinges with the 4 bolts and flat washers removed earlier.

Caution: When installing, roof escape hatch's hinge must be toward the front of vehicle, to prevent the hatch from being ripped out if accidentally opened while vehicle is running.

10.4 ESCAPE HATCH FRAME

When necessary, the escape hatch frame can be removed and replaced in the following way:

1. Support the frame from inside the vehicle.
2. Remove rivets.
3. Cut the rubber seal with a sharp edge knife and remove the hatch frame.
4. On vehicle top, using the knife, remove as much as possible the remaining rubber seal.
5. Drill holes (if needed) in the new metal frame.
6. Clean both vehicle top and new hatch frame with SIK 205.
7. Apply rubber adhesive SIK 221 under the hatch frame surface.

Section 18: BODY

8. Install the frame in place and fix it with rivets.
9. Remove excess adhesive and clean all around.

11. REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT OF “TARABUS” FLOOR COVERING

“Tarabus” covering installed in H3 coaches may be replaced or repaired. The purpose of this paragraph is to explain the steps to be followed to ensure the best results and adherence.

MATERIAL

Part No	Description	Qty
680028	Adhesive, Tarabus Floor Covering (White)	A/R
684655	Adhesive, Contact (3M)	3.8L
684654	Adhesive, Contact (3M)	18.9L
680532	Sikaflex 221 Gray	A/R

Note : Material can be obtained through regular channels.

1. Remove number of passenger seats required to perform repair.
2. Cut and remove damaged section of floor covering.

Note: It would be preferable to cut under two rows of seats so that repair is not as noticeable.

3. Clean plywood using a scraper.

Note: Make sure that no staples are sticking out beyond surface. Adjacent plywood sheets must be leveled.

4. Fill up holes and imperfections using MAPI PRP 110 then sand.
5. Remove dirt and adhesive residue.

Caution: Do not leave floor covering folded down except temporarily during installation.

6. Apply floor covering adhesive (680028) onto plywood using a serrated spreader with 1/8-inch serration. If required, apply contact adhesive (3M) (684654 or 684655) onto aluminum molding and also onto section of floor covering, which will be in contact with molding (refer to figure 25).

Note: Allow adhesive to dry (3 to 5 minutes).

7. Compress floor covering using a roller so as to remove any trapped air bubble.
8. Apply Sikaflex 221 gray sealant (680532) alongside passenger seat fixing tracks (refer to figure 26).

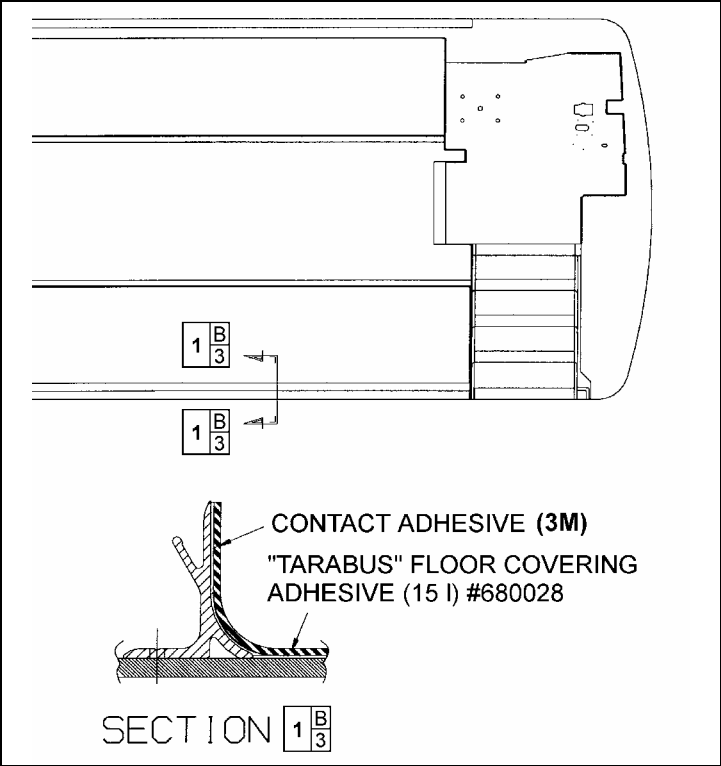


FIGURE 25: TARABUS FLOOR COVERING ADHESIVE APPLICATION

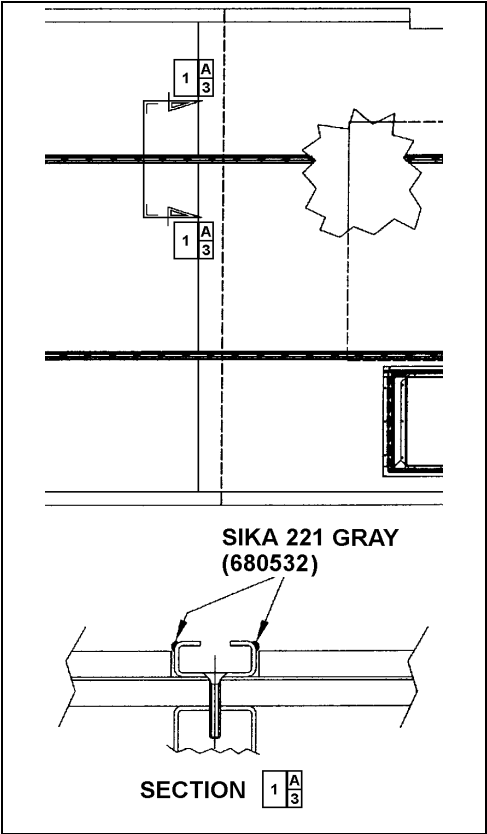


FIGURE 26: APPLICATION OF SIKA 221 GRAY

11.1 FRONT STEPS REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

MATERIAL


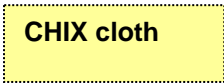
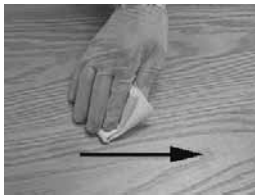

Part No	Description	Qty
682989	Anti-silicone	A/R
683097	Sika 205 (1 liter)	A/R
685101	Sika Remover 208	A/R
683916	Sika 215 (1 liter)	A/R
684654	Adhesive, Contact (3M)	3.8L
684655	Adhesive, Contact (3M)	18.9L
684517	Sealant, gray	A/R

1. Cut and remove damaged step(s).
2. Remove dirt and adhesive residue.

Note: In wintertime, condensation and cold temperature may greatly influence bonding parameters. Working area must be at a temperature sufficient to prevent reaching condensation point. Mechanically preheat working area (heat lamp or heat gun) or wait until vehicle reaches room temperature.

PREPARATION OF “TARABUS” FLOOR COVERING

1. Sand under step using “Scotchbrite”.
2. Clean using anti-silicone (refer to Section A).

Section A Alcohol or Anti-silicone		
	1. Apply 	
		2. Dry immediately 
3. Allow drying		
Mandatory	Minimum time : Wait for product to evaporate	
	After 2 hours: Start cleaning operation again	
Before applying any other product	If surface seems dusty, greasy or with finger marks, start cleaning operation again.	

3. Apply Sika Primer 215 (refer to Section D).

Section D Sika Primer 215



- 1. Shake bottle to mix product**
- 2. Apply a thin layer**

CHIX cloth

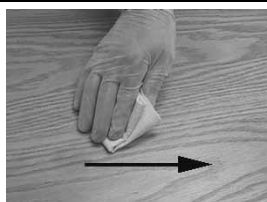
3. Allow drying

Mandatory	215	Minimum time : 20 minutes
		After 2 hours : Remove dust using damp cloth (pure water)
Before applying any other product		If surface seems dusty, dust using damp cloth.
		If surface seems greasy or with finger marks, reactivate with Aktivator.

PREPARATION OF FIBERGLASS

1. Clean using anti-silicone (refer to Section A).
2. Apply Sika 205 (refer to Section B).

Section B Sika 205



- 1. Apply**

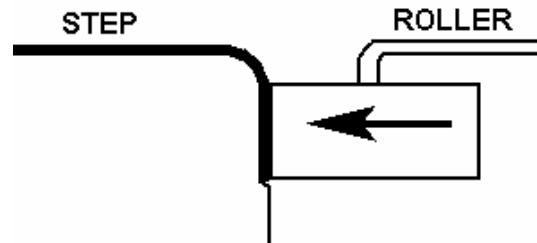
CHIX cloth

2. Allow drying

Mandatory	Minimum time	- For a smooth surface (aluminum, stainless, steel, fiberglass (gelcoat side), etc.):	2 minutes
		- For a porous surface (fiberglass (non gelcoat side), etc.)	10 minutes
	After 2 hours : Reactivate surface with Sika 205		
Before applying any other product		If surface seems dusty, greasy or with finger marks, start operation again.	

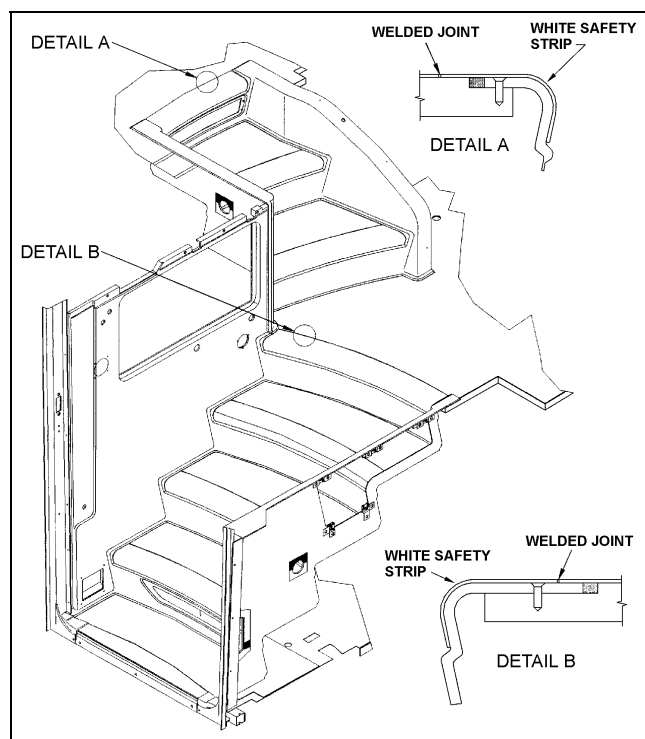
H3 VEHICLE FRONT STEPS GLUING

1. Remove adhesive tape from underneath step.
2. Apply a thin and even layer of contact adhesive (3M) (684655 or 684654) onto fiberglass and step surfaces. Allow drying for 3 to 5 minutes.
3. Install step beginning with the back and finishing with step nosing. Compress step covering using a roller paying particular attention to corners, edges and front of step.
4. Apply a bead of sealant (684517) around the perimeter of steps. Smooth out the joints.



GLUING OF WHITE SAFETY STRIP BETWEEN STEP AND “TARABUS” FLOOR COVERING

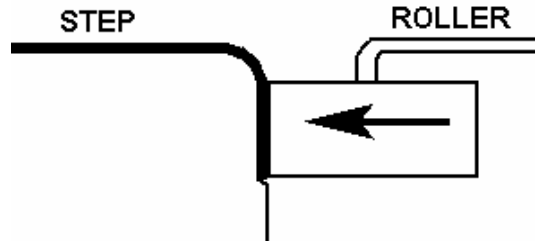
1. Sand fiberglass using “Scotchbrite”.
2. Clean using tack cloth.
3. Clean twice using anti-silicone (refer to Section A).
4. Protect surfaces around the step with masking tape.



5. Apply contact adhesive (3M) (684655 or 684654) onto both surfaces to glue (fiberglass and back of white safety strip). Drying time: 4 to 5 minutes.

Note: There should be no floor covering adhesive (680028) onto plywood before applying contact adhesive, otherwise the two surfaces won't stick.

6. Position white safety strip with reference to “Tarabus” step covering finishing with step nosing. Compress step covering using a roller paying particular attention to corners, edges and front of step.

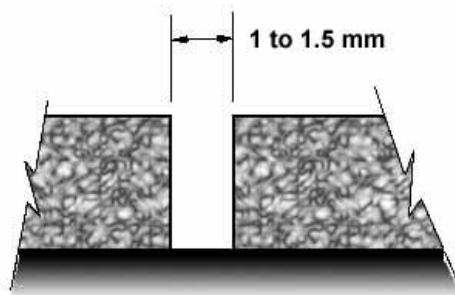


Note: Keep a gap of 1 to 1.5 mm between “Tarabus” covering and white safety strip.

7. Remove masking tape.

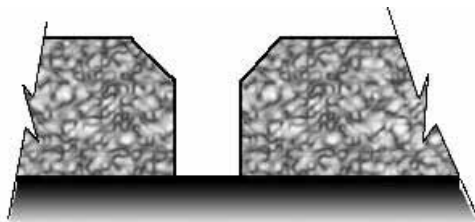
11.2 WELDING OF JOINT BETWEEN WHITE SAFETY STRIP AND “TARABUS” FLOOR COVERING

1. Pre-heat welding torch;
Set welding torch to position #4.5 (temperature of 500 °C),
Heating time: 5 minutes.
2. Before welding, visually ensure that a 1 to 1.5 mm gap exists between white safety strip and “Tarabus” floor covering. Use a knife if this is not the case.



Note: There should be no excess of adhesive on top of surfaces, clean if required using “All-Sol”.

3. Chamfer the joint.



Note: The chamfer width must always be less than the filler bead diameter (between 2.5 and 3 mm).

4. Use chamfer knife. **Be careful not to overcut or to cut to the side to prevent damaging “Tarabus” covering.**



5. Add (about 6 inches) some length to the required length of filler bead to make the joint then cut.
6. Take position with welding torch. The proper position is with a slight slope to the rear.



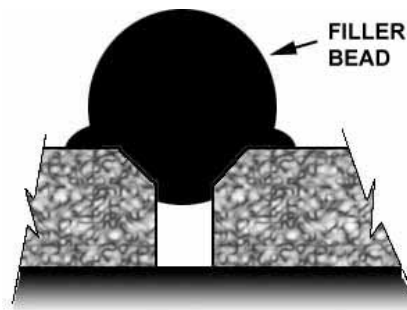
7. Once the welding torch is ready, insert the filler bead into the nozzle and immediately start welding. Move in a regular manner while pressing slightly with torch.



8. The heel of the fast nozzle must not lean against "Tarabus" covering (always parallel to the surface).

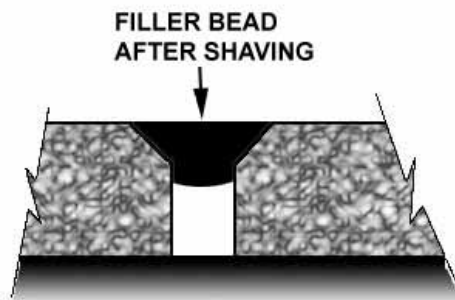


9. Allow cooling down of filler bead (about 5 minutes).



10. Shave filler bead to make it level to the floor. Use supplied knife designed for that purpose.

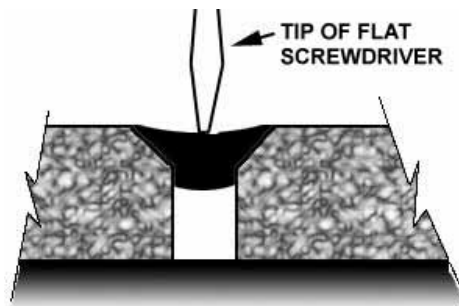
Note: To facilitate the cut, you can spray some soapy water onto the joint.



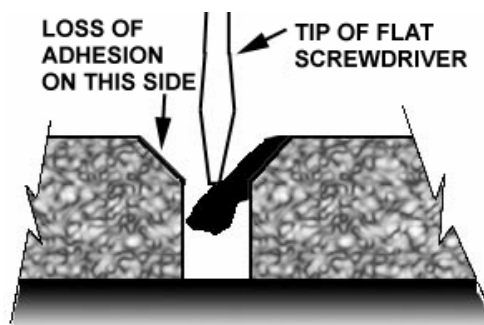
Caution: The procedure for turning the torch off must absolutely be followed. If this step is not taken, the element may burn.

11. Set temperature potentiometer to "0" position. Fan will evacuate residual heat. Leave the torch in operation as it is for 3 minutes.

12. Perform adhesion test using the tip of a flat screwdriver; apply a slight pressure on the joint.



13. If welding was not performed properly, there will a loss of adhesion on one side. If this is the case, repair the joint.



11.3 REPAIR OF A WELDED JOINT

Note: In wintertime, condensation and cold temperature may greatly influenced bonding parameters. Working area must be at a temperature sufficient to prevent reaching condensation point. Mechanically preheat working area (heat lamp or heat gun) or wait until vehicle reaches room temperature.

1. Using a knife, remove portion of joint to be repaired.

Note: Loss of adhesion may be local. If this is the case, repair may also be local.

2. Chamfer the joint again as indicated in paragraph 3, Section: WELDING OF JOINT BETWEEN WHITE SAFETY STRIP AND "TARABUS" FLOOR COVERING.
3. Re-weld the joint as indicated in paragraphs 6, 7 and 8. Use your thumb to hold the filler bead end.

Warning: Nozzle is hot.



4. Always add an extra inch of filler bead at the beginning and at the end of repair.
5. Perform steps indicated in paragraphs 9, 10 and 11.

12. PASSENGER SEATS

H3-41 and H3-45 coaches can be equipped with any of 2 basic seat models and installed in a variety of seating arrangements:

1. The "Tourismo 2" seat is the base model and is available in heights of 40" (102 cm) and 42" (107 cm). Seating arrangement includes 2 card tables which can be folded and removed, and pivoting seats ahead of each card table. Each pair of seats is built on a welded steel frame fastened to the side wall and on a track-mounted pedestal. Standard seating capacity is 48 in H3-41 and 56 in H3-45.
2. The "V.I.P." seat model is an optional seat. "V.I.P." seats are mounted on one row of paired seats built on a common frame on one side of the vehicle, and a row of single seats on the other side of the vehicle with an off-center aisle. Each "V.I.P." seat has its own set of armrests.

Each seat has a easily removable bottom cushion. Upholstery is clipped on the cushion

frame for cleaning or replacement. To remove the fabric, simply unclip from the frame. The "Tourismo 2" seats have 3 armrests. The aisle and center armrests can be folded up and down manually, while the window armrest is fixed.

12.1 ROTATING SEATS

1. Remove 1 wing nut holding each seat bottom cushion from under the seat frame.
2. Lift front part of cushions and remove cushions.
3. Remove 4 wing screws fastening seat assembly to seat frame.
4. Pull seat toward aisle and rotate.
5. Align mounting holes and reinstall 4 wing screws.
6. Reinstall seat bottom cushions with wing nuts.

12.2 REMOVING FIXED SEATS

Note: Seats on one row are not interchangeable with seats of the other row.

To remove fixed seats, proceed as follows:

1. Remove 1 nut holding each seat bottom cushion from under the front part of the seat frame.
2. Lift front part of cushions and remove cushions.
3. Remove 4 finishing screws holding plastic cover between side wall and seat frame.
4. Remove 2 cap screws, nuts, and washers holding seat frame to side wall and retain the 2 holding brackets. See figures 27 and 28.

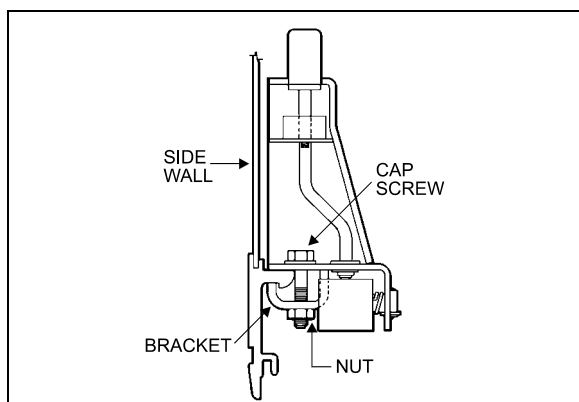


FIGURE 27: ARMREST

18106

5. Remove 2 nuts and washers holding seat frame to pedestal rods.

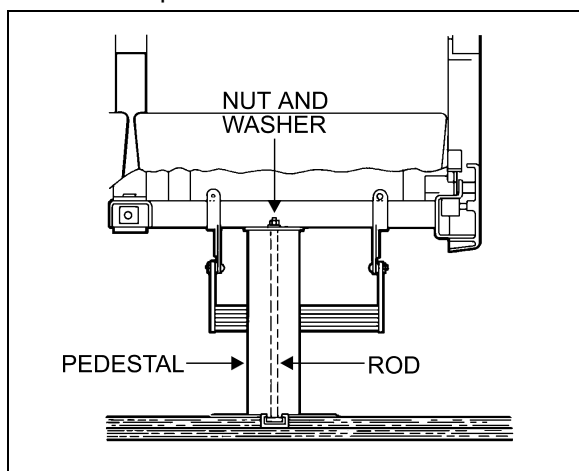


FIGURE 28: SEAT PEDESTAL ASSEMBLY

18107

Note: Bottom end of rod is coated with Locktite and threaded in a steel block which slides in the floor track. Removal of rod is possible if loosened from block. Otherwise, slide rod and block assembly to the front end of track after removing all seats located in front.

6. Remove seat assembly.

7. Reverse the above procedure to install seat assembly.

Note: On newer vehicles, the rod consists of a carriage bolt inserted in a square plate sliding in the floor track. Removal is possible only by the front or rear end of track.

12.3 UPHOLSTERY MAINTENANCE

Coach seats are lightweight, with foam-padded backs and cushions. For both appearance and wearability, best results are obtained if upholstery is cleaned at regular intervals before dirt, dust and grit have been ground into the fabric. Seat fabric is made of 50% wool, 33% cotton, 9% nylon, and 8% acrylic.

12.3.1 Routine Cleaning

All that is required to remove the dirt is a gentle beating with the hand or the back of a brush. This will bring the dirt to the surface where it is easily removed with a vacuum or brush in the direction of the pile which can easily be recognized by running a hand lightly over the pile. If the fabric become excessively dirty, particles of grit will cause gradual wear, reducing the life span of the fabric.

12.3.2 Dry Cleaning

If covers are to be removed for cleaning, dry cleaning is recommended since washing might cause some shrinkage, preventing the covers from being reapplied to the seats without damage. Other than spot cleaning the covers while they are in place, dry cleaning is not recommended, since the resulting fumes could be hazardous in the confines of the coach and the solvent could be detrimental to the foam padding of the seats.

12.3.3 Cleaning With Covers in Place

The most effective and economical method to clean the fabric seat covers is by washing with either an approved foam upholstery cleaner or with a mild household detergent.

Thoroughly vacuum the upholstery. Remove any spots or stains before the seats are washed to avoid a cleaning ring.

Dilute household detergent or liquid foam cleaner according to directions on the container. Pour a small quantity into a flat pan and work into a thick foam with a sponge or brush.

Section 18: BODY

Apply only the foam to the fabric with a sponge or brush. Clean a small area of the fabric at a time with the foam. DO NOT SOAK. Rub vigorously.

Sponge the suds from the fabric with a clean sponge or cloth moistened with water. Rinse the sponge or cloth often and change the water when it becomes dirty.

Allow the upholstery to dry completely before the coach goes back into service. To speed up drying, excess moisture can be blown off the fabric with compressed air.

Caution: Oil in the air line will soil the fabric. Blow the line clear and test air discharge against a plain white piece of paper. It is also effective to press the edge of a flat hardwood stick down on the cushion and slowly draw it across the fabric.

Even very soiled areas can be returned to their original appearance by a thorough cleaning, but a regular schedule of cleaning that keeps the upholstery reasonably clean at all times will greatly enhance the life span of upholstery.

13. COACH SIDE WINDOWS

Seven passenger side windows are provided on each side on H3-41, while the H3-45 has eight. They are made of fixed, single or double-glazed, heat absorbing AS-3 glass. Windows are mounted in painted aluminum extrusions, which hold the glass in place from the top rail of the coach. The extrusion also serves as a hinge to allow the window to swing open when needed. The single-glazed windows are made of tinted tempered safety glass, while the double-glazed windows are made of tinted tempered safety glass outside and clear tempered glass inside.

The two trapezoidal windows are also mounted on an aluminum extrusion (except for H3-45 VIP, where they're mounted with adhesives. Refer to "Adhesive Mounted Windows" in this section, for more information on this type of installation). The trapezoidal windows are made of fixed, double glazed, heat absorbing AS-3 tempered safety glass inside and tempered glass outside.

13.1 EMERGENCY EXIT WINDOWS

Three of the windows on each side serve as emergency exits on the H3-41, while there are three of them on curb side of the H3-45, and four on driver's side. See figures 29 and 30.

Except for the window upper edge, the three other glass edges are unprotected, which causes the workers to be exceptionally careful when manipulating or installing such windows.

In addition, when it becomes necessary to lay down the unprotected edges of the glass window, never use a steel or concrete floor support. It is recommended to use a wooden support, even better, a padded surface.

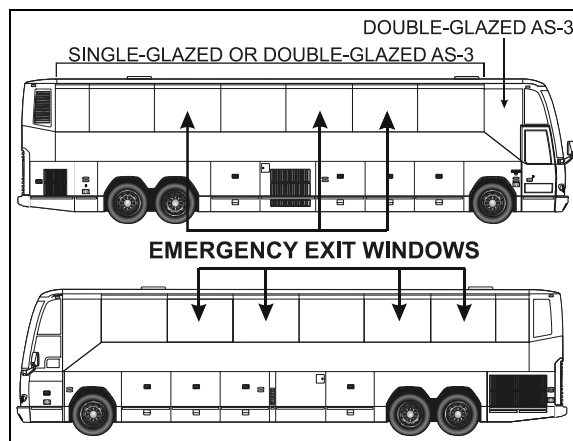


FIGURE 29: H3-45 COACH

18519

An emergency exit window can be opened by pulling the lower part of the release bar to disengage the safety latches, and then by pushing out the window frame (Fig. 31).

Emergency operating instruction decals are affixed under each emergency exit window. To close the window, pull back the window and push down the release bar.

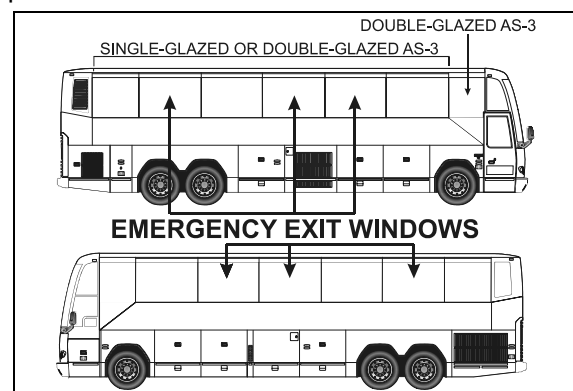


FIGURE 30: H3-41 COACH

18520

13.2 EMERGENCY EXIT RELEASE BAR

The emergency exit release bar system is generally maintenance free.

It has been designed to answer the twenty pound resistance criteria for opening the

emergency window. If this handle should be replaced:

1. Remove the screws and bolts securing it to the emergency exit window;
2. To install a new release bar, reverse the procedure.

Note: Check the legal twenty pound maximum resistance to be sure to comply with regulations.

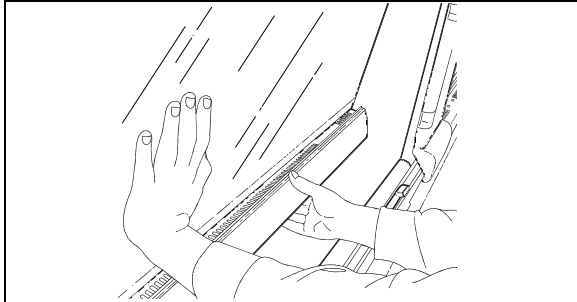


FIGURE 31: EMERGENCY EXIT WINDOW

18391

13.2.1 Emergency Exit Window Adjustment

Emergency exit windows should be checked periodically for easy opening and closing. Pulling the lower part of the release bar with both hands placed near the safety latches should disengage both locks on the window simultaneously. The tension required to release the window should not exceed twenty pounds (9 kg) of force.

The release bar mechanism itself has been designed such as no adjustments are necessary.

If too much effort is required to disengage the locks when pulling the release bar or if the window doesn't close tightly or rattles, check for interference by foreign objects or nearby parts into mechanism, such as the microswitch, rubber seal, wires, etc. Correct situation immediately.

Note: Tangs on the lock must be in a horizontal position.

13.3 FIXED WINDOW REPLACEMENT

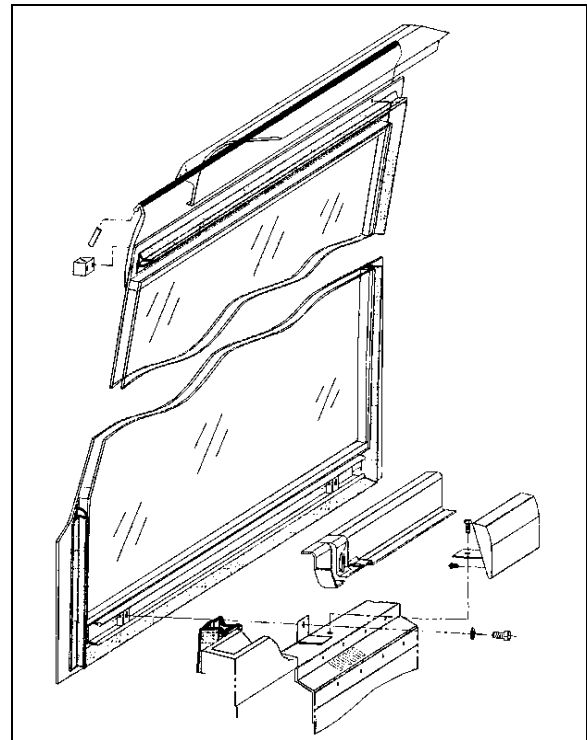


FIGURE 32: FIXED WINDOW

18434

When it becomes necessary to replace the glass of a fixed-type window, follow this procedure:

1. Unscrew the decorative plate and the bottom window bar in order to get access to the window retaining devices.
2. Remove the window bottom retaining bolts.
3. Push the glass window out ninety degrees (90°).

Warning: The window may fall out.

4. The window is free and can be unhooked.
5. Reverse procedure to install a new one.

Note: For all window replacement, it is extremely important to center the top side between the window dividing posts with great precision in order to be able to attach the bottom of window and the structural posts.

13.4 EMERGENCY EXIT WINDOW REPLACEMENT

1. Lift the bar release system and follow the same procedure mentioned above for fixed windows.

2. Remove the stop blocks from the top exterior of the window.
3. Reverse the procedure to install a new emergency exit window.

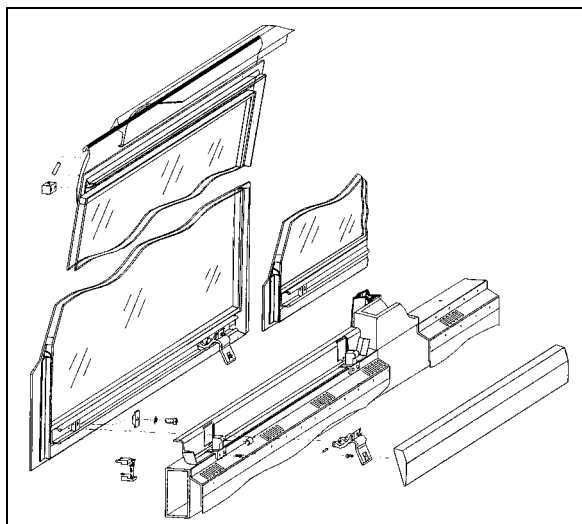


FIGURE 33: EMERGENCY WINDOW

18435

13.5 TRAPEZOIDAL WINDOW REPLACEMENT

Apply procedure for fixed window replacement described in this section but with these variations:

- The angle at which the window will detach is considerably smaller (about 45°);
- These windows are also glued to the structure at certain areas on their perimeter. Note where adhesives are used and apply gluing techniques at these areas to complete replacement of these windows.

13.6 SMALL REAR WINDOWS REPLACEMENT

These small windows are located at the vehicle's rear end, just forward of the lavatory.

Apply procedure for fixed window replacement described in this section but with these variations:

- The angle at which the window will detach is considerably smaller (about 45°);
- These windows are also glued to the structure at certain areas on their perimeter. Note where adhesives are used and apply gluing techniques at these areas to complete replacement of these windows.

Both the trapezoidal windows and the small rear window are fixed in place with adhesives. They are not serviceable, in the event that they may need replacement.

13.7 ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOWS

These windows are located in the vehicle's front and rear caps (Fig. 34).

The adhesive-mounted windows are fixed, double-glazed, heat absorbing AS-2 or AS-3 glass mounted in their opening with polyurethane windshield adhesive. The double-glazed windows are tempered safety glass outside and inside.

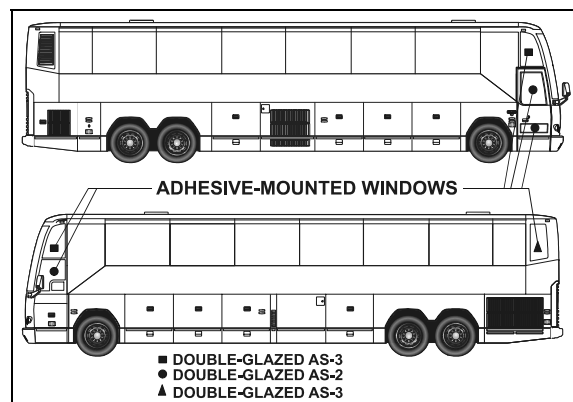


FIGURE 34: ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOWS

18494

13.7.1 Glass Window Replacement

Items Needed:

- Scraper with new blade;
- Masking tape;
- Tremshield tape (Prévost #681089);
- Chix cloths (Prévost #682384);
- Isopropyl alcohol or enamel reducer or NAPA 6383 surface cleaner;
- Sika 205 cleaner;
- Sika 255 F.C. adhesive;
- Disposable vinyl gloves;

Warning: Wear disposable vinyl gloves during this procedure. Do not smoke. Dispose of unused toxic material properly. Heed all warnings on product containers.

1. Remove old window glass and scrape off remaining material up to 1/16" to 1/8" (2 to 3 mm) thick.

Note: Hardened adhesive will not remove easily. A new blade works best to remove all adhesive residue using care not to damage the fiber structure.

- Place the new window glass in the opening and center it to leave an even gap top and bottom, and from side to side.

Note: Use small shims to raise the glass in proper position. Shims can be cut from the tremshield tape (Fig. 35).

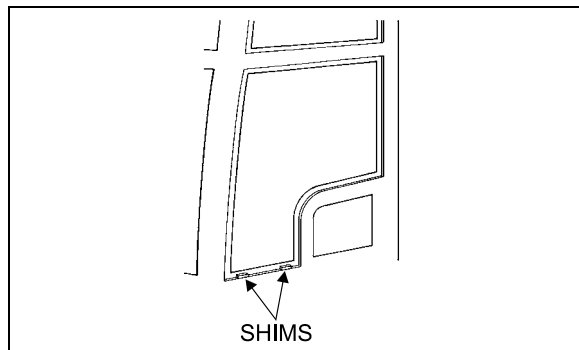


FIGURE 35: ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOW

18079

- Hold the window glass centered and have an assistant mark the inside contour of the opening on the glass with a china pencil. Remove glass and place it on a table with the pencil mark facing up.
- Place masking tape on the inside surface of the glass to just cover the china pencil mark, leaving the outer surface exposed for the adhesive. This will make cleanup much easier. For ease of removal, do not overlap the tape at corners.

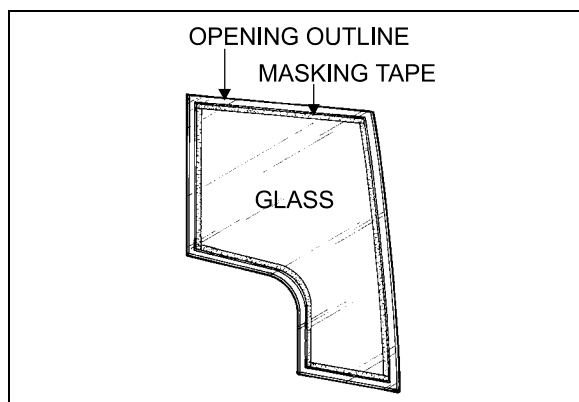


FIGURE 36: ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOW

18080

- Clean all around the window opening and the window glass edge with Sikaflex 205 (shake well before applying). Let dry 5-6 minutes minimum but no more than 8 hours.

Caution: There must be absolutely no silicone on glass or channel or Sikaflex 255 FC will not stick.

- Put masking tape on the inner and outer contour of the window opening on the structure, approximately 1/16" (1,5 mm) from the edges of the contour.
- Install Tremshield tape around the sealing surface of the window opening.

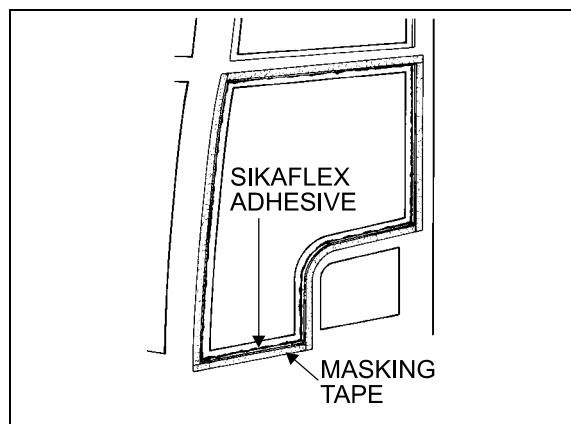


FIGURE 37: ADHESIVE-MOUNTED WINDOW

18081

- Apply a generous bead of Sikaflex-255 FC polyurethane adhesive on the sealing surface around the window opening from outside the vehicle.

Note: To ease applying of Sikaflex 255 FC, it may be heated to 86° F (30°C).

Note: Bead should touch the side surface of the window opening.

- Place shims correctly, and position window glass in the opening. Press firmly and evenly. Excess adhesive should flow out from behind glass.

Note: Add adhesive in areas where overflow is minimal or if air bubbles are present.

- Smooth the adhesive joint using your finger (wear vinyl gloves). Remove excess material around both sides of the window as soon as possible before adhesive dries.

Note: Remove most of the adhesive from the scraper or trowel with a rag, and then dip tool in heavy hydrotreated naphta (vanishing oil) after each use for cleaning.

Caution: Never use solvents to clean excess adhesive.

11. Remove masking tape at once, clamp window glass suitably and let dry overnight or at least 8 hours.
12. Spraying pure water on the joint will accelerate the drying process.

14. ELECTRIC AWNING WINDOW

The electric awning windows are connected directly on the batteries 24 V DC terminal block. As a result, they can be operated regardless of the state open or close of the master switch. However, the circuit is protected with fuse F41 (10A) located in the front service compartment.

14.1 OPERATION

Opening sequence: switch SW1B or SW2B is closed. Window latch solenoid SOL1-A and SOL1-B are turned on along with M1 window motor. Once the latch is open, proximity switch PROX1 is de-activated, turning sol1-A and SOL1-B off.

Closing sequence: switch SW1A or SW2A is closed, turning on relay R1 which turns on M1 in reverse polarity, closing the window. Once the window is closed, PROX1 is activated, turning on sol1-A and SOL1-B in reverse polarity latching the window closed.

14.2 WINDOW REMOVAL

Replacement awning window does not include a new motor. If in working order, transfer the motor of the replaced window to the replacement window. If not, the motor can be bought

separately. When replacing the window, keep the components in working order as spare parts.

1. Open the window and push downwards on the track release handle to release the track from the window frame.
2. Take out the screw at the lower end of the track to let free the swiveling arm roller.
3. Unplug connector C1 in the upper right corner. Dismount the gas spring from the window.
4. Loosen the set screws #5 (figure 39)(rotate the arm to get to the second set screw) and disengage the swiveling arm from the motor shaft extension.
5. Push the glass window out ninety degrees (90°).

Caution: *The window may fall out.*

6. The window is free and can be unhooked.
7. Reverse procedure to install a new one.

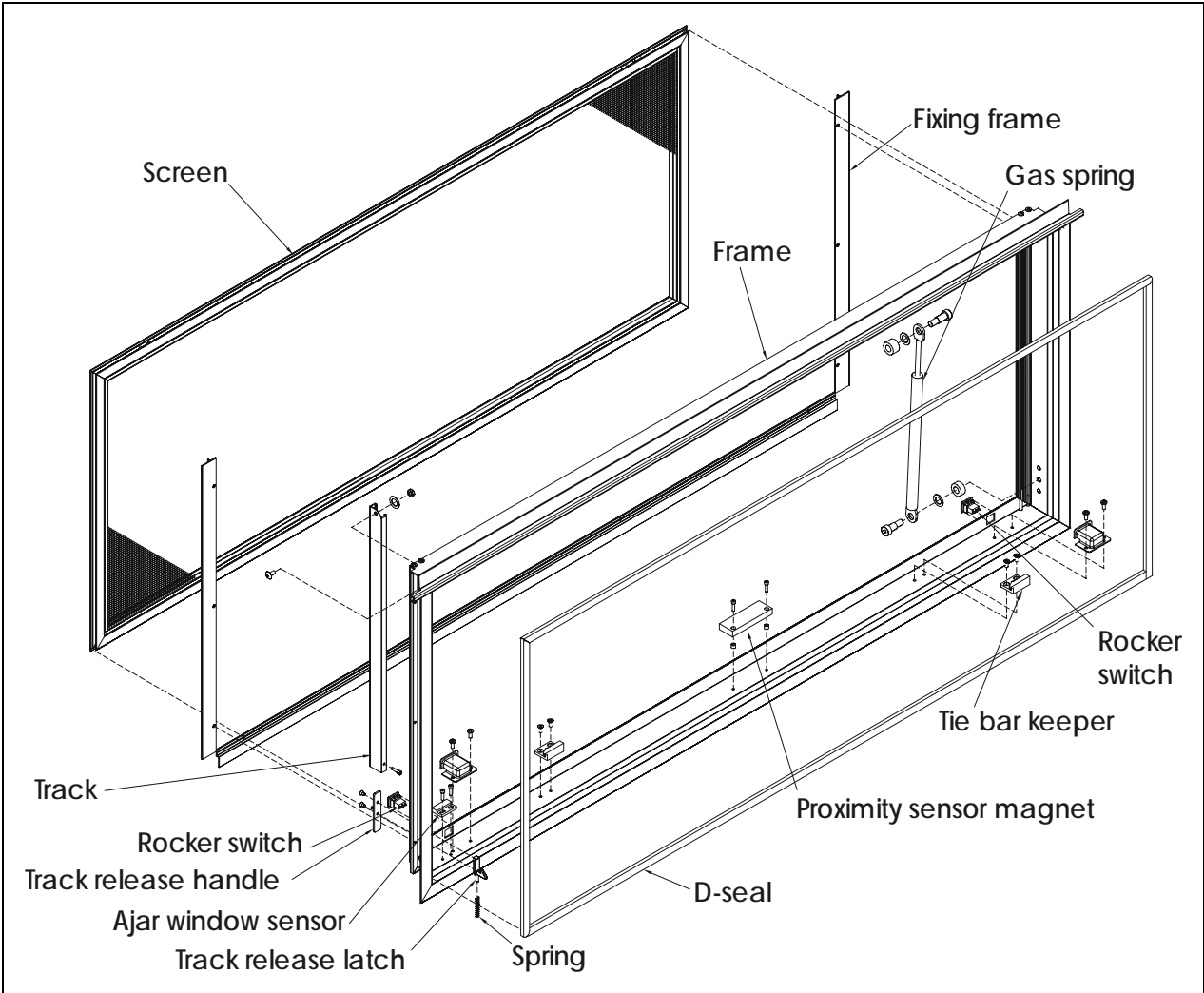


FIGURE 38: ELECTRIC AWNING WINDOW EXPLODED VIEW (FRAME)

18586

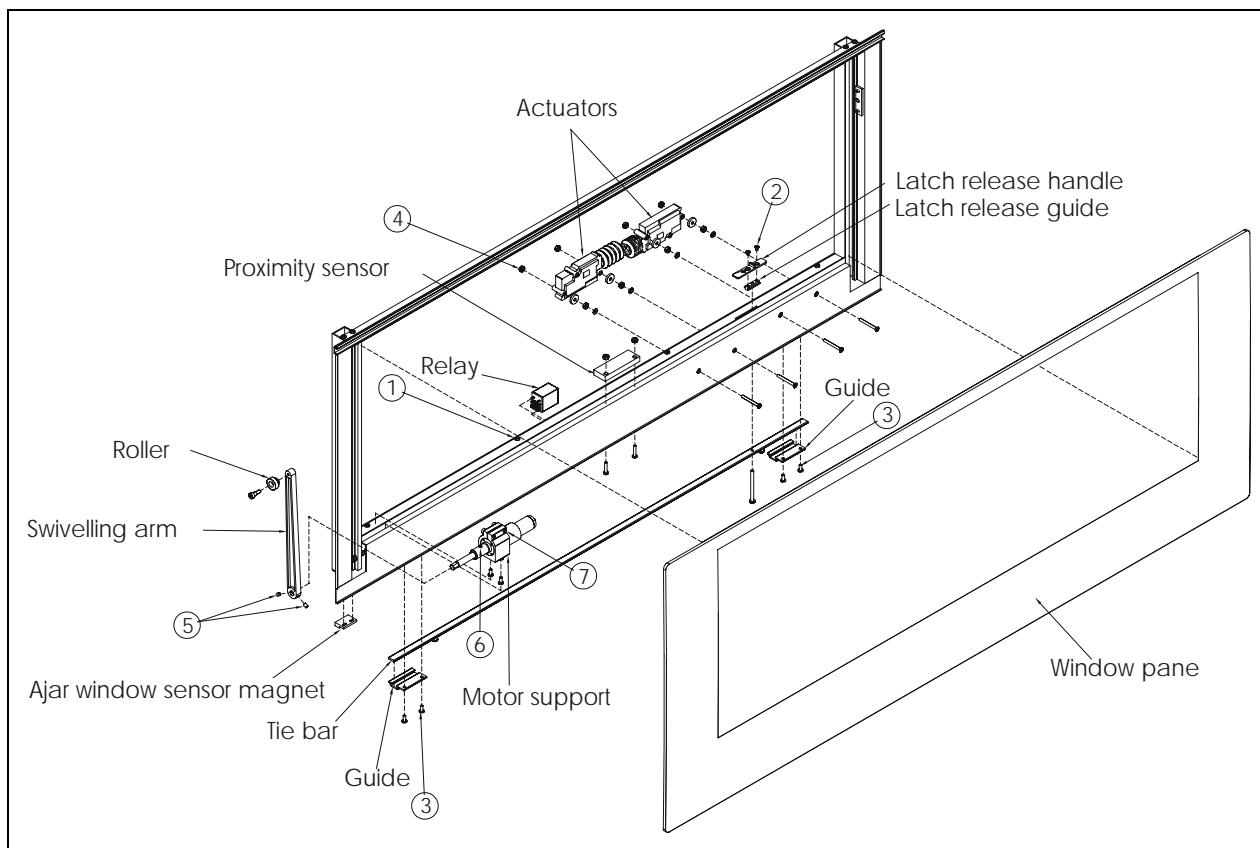


FIGURE 39: ELECTRIC AWNING WINDOW EXPLODED VIEW (SASH)

18583

14.3 ACTUATOR REPLACEMENT

1. Unlatch the window using the manual latch release handle and open the window by pushing downwards on the track release handle.
2. Remove actuator access cover by taking out screws #1 (8x).
3. Take out screws #2 (2x) and remove latch release handle and guide.
4. Take out the guide screws #3 (4x) and remove tie bar.
5. Unplug connector C3 or C4 from problem actuator, unscrew nuts #4 (2x) and remove the actuator.
6. Reverse operations for reinstallation.

14.4 MOTOR REPLACEMENT

1. Open the window and push downwards on the track release handle to release the track from the window frame.

2. Take out the screw at the lower end of the track to let free the swiveling arm roller.
3. Remove actuator access cover by taking out screws #1 (8x).
4. Loosen the set screws #5 (rotate the arm to get to the second set screw) and disengage the swiveling arm from the motor shaft extension.
5. Unplug motor connector C2 and dismount motor and support assembly.
6. The shaft extension is glued to the motor shaft. It has to be heated to break the binding to permit removal. Loosen set screw #6 and remove the shaft extension. Also loosen screw #7 and remove motor from the support.
7. Reverse operations for reinstallation.

ELECTRIC AWNING WINDOW – CONVERTER CHECKLIST	
Check the electrical circuit & proximity sensor	<p>A: The latching system will not operate without power.</p> <p>Is there electrical power to the latching circuit? The manual latch release handle, on the sill sash will be seen to move if there is power on this circuit, or it can be checked with an electrical tester. If there is no power to this circuit when the window is closed and either rocker switch are switched "ON", there is a problem with the electrical system.</p> <p>B: The Proximity Sensor on the sash may not be switching power to the latching circuit if the magnet is not getting close enough to the switch OR the Proximity Sensor may be broken (or stuck in one position).</p> <p>Is the proximity sensor switching when the window is closed?</p>
Check the release force required to operate the manual latch release handle	<p>A: If the pull force required to move the latch release is more than 20lbs the window will not latch properly. Average pull force during testing by manufacturer is 12lbs -15lbs.</p> <p>What is the force required to release the handle? Check using a force gauge (same test done by manufacturer).</p>
Check Installation	<p>A: If the window is too tightly installed OR if the sequence for tightening the clamping frame screws is incorrect the window may not close properly.</p> <p>Was the window installed correctly?</p> <p>Was the correct sequence (see below) used when tightening the clamping frame screws?</p> <p>B: Removing the shipping blocks before the window is installed can create major problems.</p> <p>Were the shipping blocks in place during installation?</p> <p>C: Failure to remove the shipping blocks after installation can create interference between sash and frame.</p> <p>Have the shipping blocks been removed after installation?</p> <p>D: The window is misaligned or not installed squarely.</p> <p>Is there interference with any coach parts?</p> <p>Is there proper clearance between the bottom of the outer glass and the belt-line trim / seal?</p>
Check for missing parts or misaligned parts	<p>A: The frame and sash are misaligned.</p> <p>Is there any interference between the sash and frame?</p> <p>Is there clearance between the sash and the rocker switch covers?</p> <p>B: Tie-bar guides are missing.</p> <p>Check that the tie-bar guides are installed. There should be 4 installed on H windows, and 3 installed on XL2 windows.</p>

15. WINDSHIELD

The windshield is single-glazed AS-1 laminated safety glass. Each windshield side is laced to a flange around an opening in the front structure by means of a one-piece black rubber extrusion

and locked with two filler strips. Proper installation of the windshield is necessary to ensure watertightness. Since glass varies in fit depending on the supplier, we recommend installing a replacement windshield obtained from Prevost Parts to ensure proper fit.

Windshields obtained from other sources should be checked for proper size and curvature.

Note: For more information on windshield removal or installation, a video is available from Prevost Parts Inc.

15.1 REMOVAL

Warning: Windshield removal and installation must be performed by more than one person. To avoid personal injury, wear protective gloves when handling the windshield glass.

1. Remove the wiper arms of the affected windshield.
2. To ease damaged windshield removal, remove the two top rubber filler strips from the rubber extrusion, then the two rubber filler strips on each side. Finally, remove the rubber filler strip located on top of rubber extrusion bottom section. Leave the bottom filler strip in place.

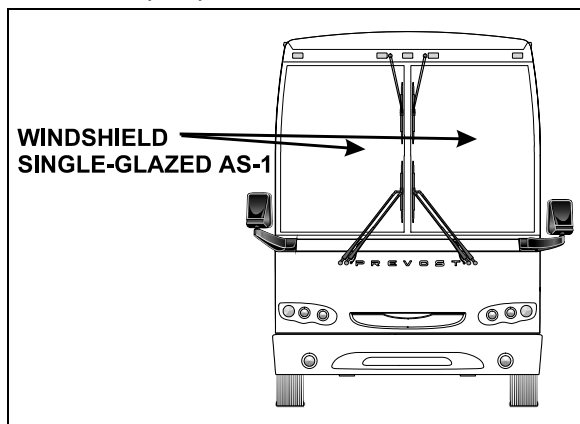


FIGURE 40: WINDSHIELD

18495

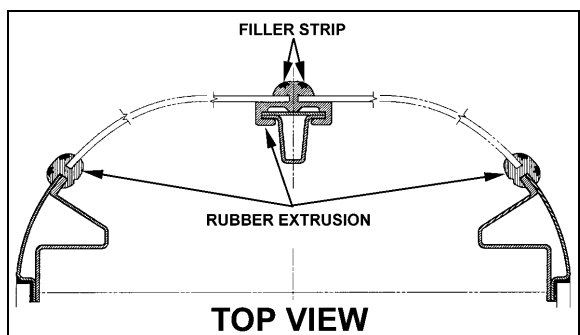


FIGURE 41: WINDSHIELD INSTALLATION TOP VIEW

18098

3. From inside of vehicle, push against the top L.H. side corner of windshield for the removal of a R.H. side windshield. If the L.H. side windshield had to be removed, you would have to push against the top R.H. side corner.

Note: We are referring to the L.H. and R.H. side as viewed from the inside of the vehicle.

4. At the same time, another person gradually lifts the rubber lip from the vehicle exterior using a plastic spatula from top to bottom.
5. Remove the entire damaged windshield and broken glass if applicable.
6. Clean the rubber extrusion channel with Sika 205. Refer to heading "Windshield Installation Only" in this section for instructions on how to reinstall windshield.

Note: If the rubber extrusion is damaged, remove and discard it, then clean the windshield opening with Sika 205. Refer to heading "Installation of Rubber Extrusion and Windshield" in this section for complete instructions.

15.2 WINDSHIELD INSTALLATION ONLY

1. Spray rubber extrusion with soapy water to ease windshield insertion.
2. Insert rope into rubber extrusion leaving enough length at each corner to make a loop. Spray soapy water onto rope and rubber extrusion (Fig. 41).
3. Slide windshield into rubber extrusion groove starting with the bottom curved side edge. Using a plastic spatula, move the rubber extrusion lip aside to gradually insert the windshield into the groove.

Note: Spray lubricant on a regular basis to ease windshield insertion.

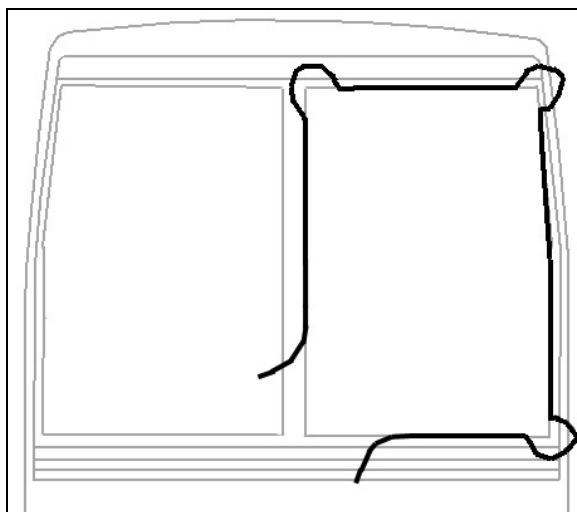


FIGURE 42: WINDSHIELD INSTALLATION USING ROPE

4. Using the same type of plastic spatula, repeat the same operation from inside of vehicle, gradually inserting the windshield into the groove.

Note: Make sure windshield bottom edge is well inserted into the rubber extrusion groove before proceeding with the sides.

5. Then, working from both sides of windshield bottom to top, gradually move the rubber extrusion lip aside to insert the windshield into the groove. Use also lubricant on the inside of vehicle to insert the windshield into the rubber extrusion groove.

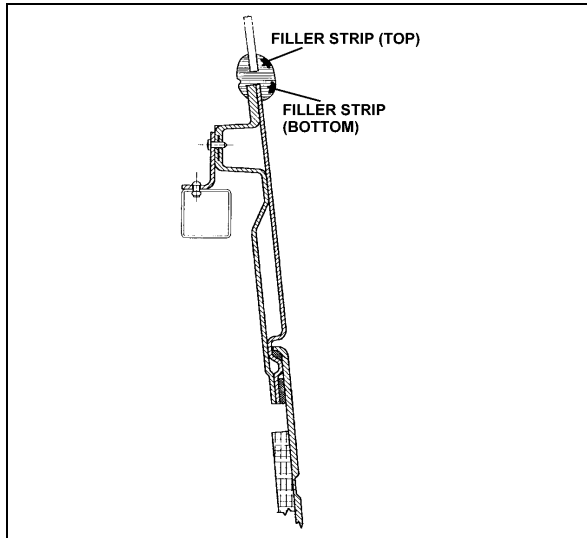


FIGURE 43: WINDSHIELD INSTALLATION SIDE VIEW 8099

6. Insert the top curved corner then finish with the top of windshield.
7. At the top of windshield, clean surface between fiberglass and rubber extrusion using Sika 205 (Fig. 44).

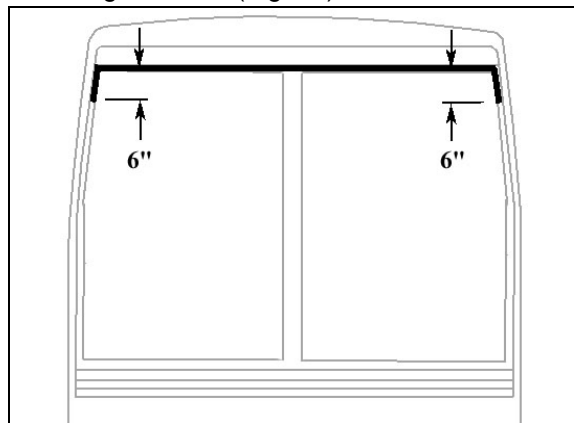


FIGURE 44: APPLICATION OF SIKA 221 BLACK

8. Apply Sika 221 black between fiberglass and rubber extrusion.

9. Spray filler strip and rubber extrusion groove generously with lubricant.

Note: Filler strips retract with time. Install ends of filler strips as tight as possible in the V-channel.

10. Using the special filler insertion tool, insert the filler into the bottom rubber extrusion groove. Gradually insert filler ensuring to leave a 2 inch excess length at the filler extremity.
11. Every 6 inches or so, it is important to compress the filler due to its tendency to contract during drying process.
12. When filler insertion is almost complete, cut filler at a 45° angle leaving ¼" of excess length to thwart filler contraction over time then insert filler into groove.
13. Continue with side filler strips and finish with top ones.
14. Reinstall windshield wiper and destination sign if applicable.

15.3 INSTALLATION OF RUBBER EXTRUSION AND WINDSHIELD

Caution: The black rubber extrusion securing the windshield in the opening fits correctly in only one position. Find the correct position of the rubber extrusion now, and make reference marks with a china marker to avoid searching for the correct position later in the procedure.

1. Clean the windshield opening sealing surfaces with Sika 205 and let dry 1 to 2 minutes.
2. Clean the rubber extrusion with wiping towels soaked with Sika 205 and let dry 1 to 2 minutes.

Note: Force the soaked towels in the channels for good cleaning in these critical areas.

3. Find the reference marks made earlier and install the rubber extrusion in the windshield opening.
4. Install windshield as per paragraph 10.2: "Windshield Installation Only".

16. BODY PANELS AND DOORS

Each of the doors should be checked for proper operation. This includes latching. Also, inspect

Section 18: BODY

each of the doors for damage, missing, or loose parts. Repair or replace those parts as needed.

Unless otherwise noted, body panels and doors should be aligned and centered with surround-

ing panels. In general, a gap of 1/4 inch (6 mm) is desirable between panels. Refer to figure 44 for specified gaps.

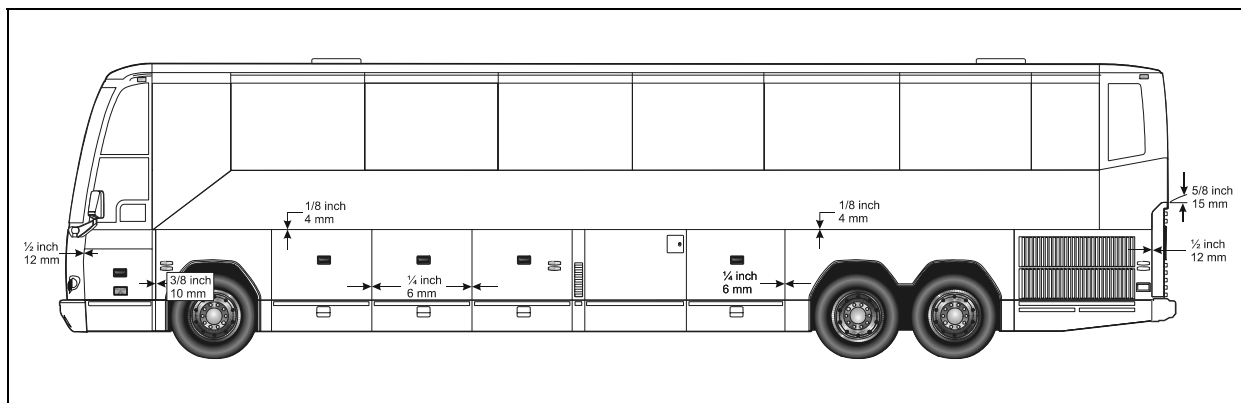


FIGURE 45: BODY PANEL SPACING

18496

17. BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOORS

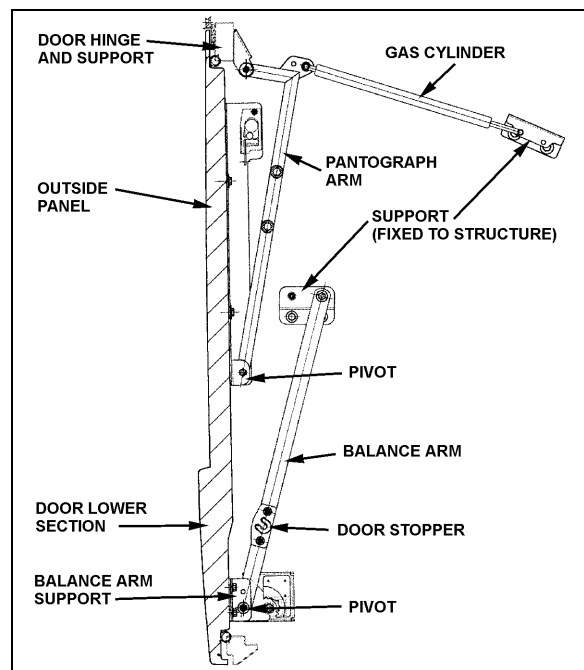


FIGURE 46: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR

18061

There are 6 pantograph doors serving as baggage compartment doors on the H3-41, while there are 8 on the H3-45 and the V.I.P (depending on options, VIP model may have even more pantograph doors). Each of these doors is of identical design. A centrally mounted, key-lockable door handle unlatches the door which can then be pulled out and raised up in a path parallel to the side of the vehicle. The door is held in open position by two fully extended

gas-charged cylinders, giving clear access to the opening of the baggage compartment.

From its fully open position, the door can be closed by pulling down on the door panel, and letting go when you sense the door will close on its own. The door will easily hinge its way back in the contour of the compartment opening and will be held closed by two latches. Each door can be opened by lifting the centrally mounted handle to unlatch the door and lifting it all the way up. If the door does not remain in the fully open position, one or both cylinders on that door is (are) defective. To test the cylinders, first support the door in the fully open position with proper equipment. Disconnect the rod end of one cylinder and try to retract the rod. If strong resistance is felt, the cylinder is in good condition and can be reinstalled. If the rod retracts with little effort, the cylinder is defective and should be replaced at once (Prévost #980024). Test the other cylinder on that door the same way.

Note: In case of malfunctioning or in specific situations, use door stoppers to secure the door in the open position.

17.1 PANTOGRAPH ADJUSTMENT

Warning: Park vehicle safely, apply parking brake, stop engine and set batteries master switches to the "OFF" position prior to working on the vehicle.

Note: Refer, if needed, to figure 45 for identification of door components.

If the door bends when opening or if pantograph does not function properly, it is probably because the pantograph arms are misadjusted.

The pantograph arms should measure the same length. Measure distance between a pantograph arm end and a straight edge resting on structure. Repeat procedure for the other arm. The distance on each side should be equal. If not, bend appropriate arm until desired measure is obtained. (Fig. 47 and 48). Doors can be adjusted by bending the arms as follows:

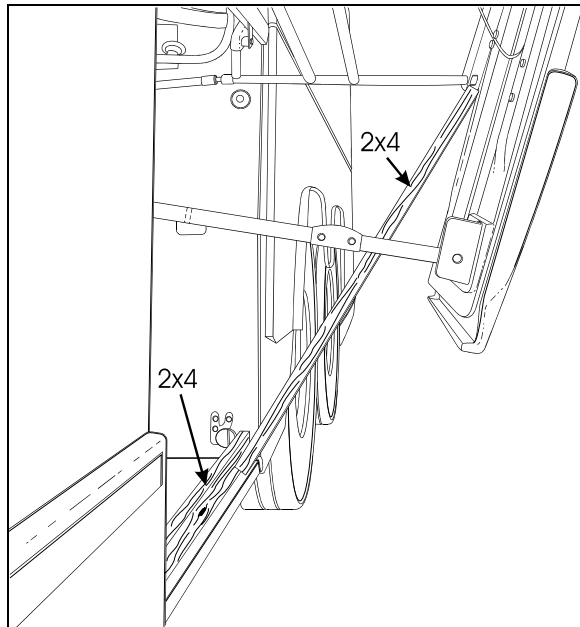


FIGURE 47: PANTOGRAPH ADJUSTMENT

18319

1. Open the door halfway up.
2. Install a piece of wood (a 2x4 will do) along the bottom of the baggage compartment. Arrange so it rests against the striker pins and is prevented from sliding further in the compartment.
3. Install another piece of 2x4 between the first piece and the bottom of the pivot of the lowest (or shortest) pantograph arm, (Fig. 46).
4. Pull down on the opposite side of the door to bend the door around the pantograph arm pivot (prevented from moving by the 2x4).
5. When the door is straight, remove the 2x4's and check door operation and fit. A difference of $\frac{3}{32}$ " (2mm) between both sides is accepted (Fig. 48).
6. Repeat as necessary.

When the pantograph is correctly adjusted, the distance between the vertical steel member and the lateral edge of the door should be $1\frac{3}{8}$ " (35 mm).

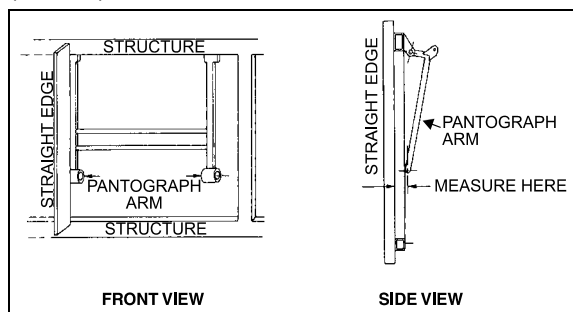


FIGURE 48: PANTOGRAPH DOOR ADJUSTMENT

18062

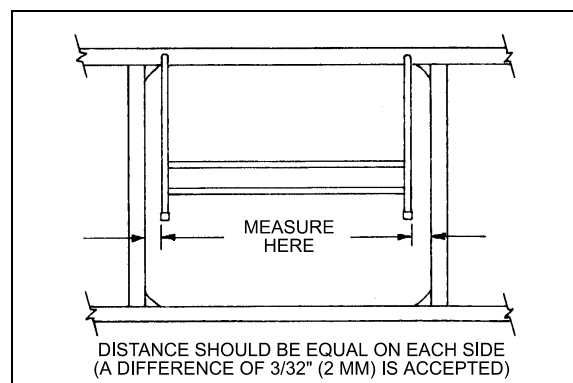


FIGURE 49: PANTOGRAPH DOOR ADJUSTMENT

18063

17.2 DOOR ADJUSTMENT

If the door is misaligned at front or rear posts, at top, or at bottom adjust as follows:

1. Unscrew and remove both striker pins. Loosen bolts retaining door to pantograph and balance arm supports. With door closed, adjust height so the top of the door fits flush with the adjacent doors. Then, complete tightening the four bolts retaining door to each pantograph arm support. A gap of $\frac{1}{8}$ " (3 mm) between the top of the door and the stainless steel support is given as a guide (Fig. 50).

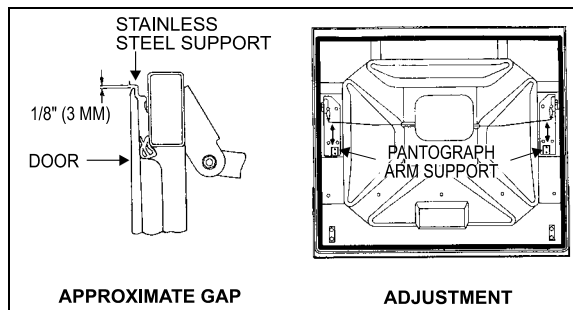


FIGURE 50: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR 18064

2. Slightly open the door, position it to obtain a gap of 4" (100mm) between structure and door panel upper lip, maintain door in this position while an assistant completes tightening the two bolts retaining door to each balance arm support (Fig. 51).

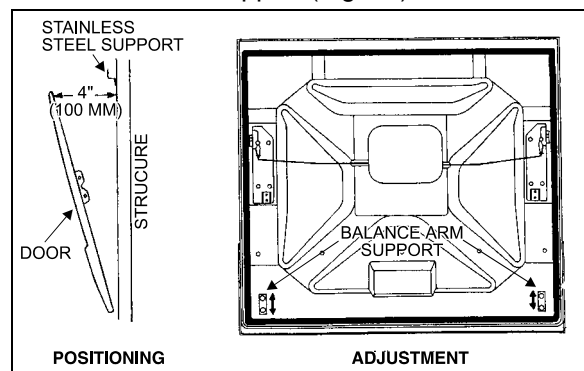


FIGURE 51: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR 18065

3. Fully open the door, loosen the two bolts retaining each gas cylinder support to structure, position door parallel with adjacent doors and complete tightening bolts. A measure of 6" \pm 1/4" (150mm \pm 7mm) between door panel lip (at level of upper edge of lower section) and the lateral panel is given as a guide.

Caution: For converted vehicles provided with "Awning" windows, fully open window then adjust door opening angle so the door does not interfere with window.

4. With door slightly open, pull door handle while an assistant checks that both latches release simultaneously. If not, with latch engaged, gently bend the appropriate latch control rod until proper timing is achieved (Fig. 52).

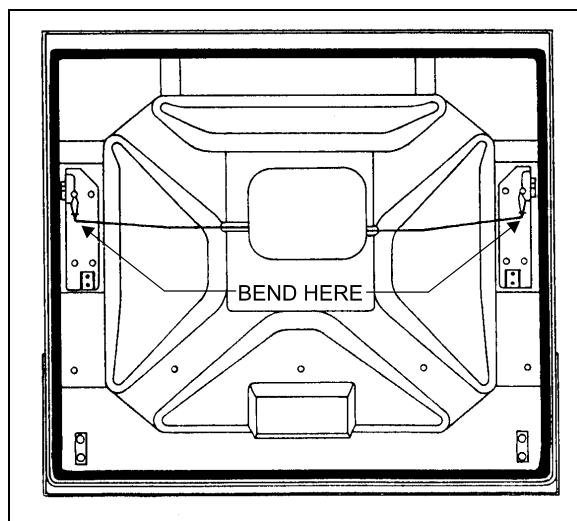


FIGURE 52: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR 18067

5. Install both striker pins, bring the door close to them, and adjust the height of pins so they are well centered with latches (Fig. 53).

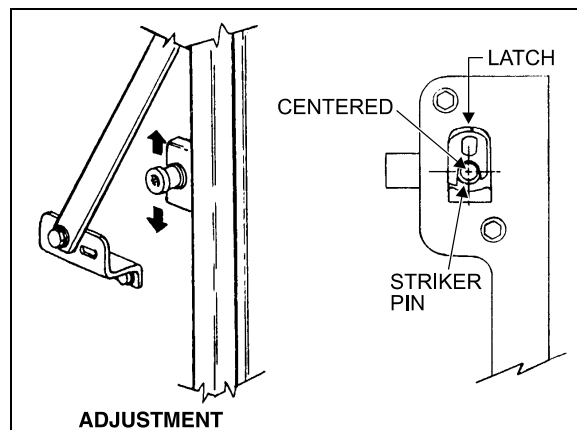


FIGURE 53: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR 18068

Note: Before proceeding with the following step, mark the position of striker pins on structure to avoid upsetting the vertical adjustment of the pin.

6. Loosen the striker pins just enough to allow them to be moved with a hammer. Working from inside compartment and with the door closed (lower catches engaged), hit the pin washers to horizontally move the pins and consequently the door, while an outside assistant checks the fit. A gap of 1/16" +3/64", -1/64" (1,5mm +1mm, -0,5mm) between the stainless steel support for the lateral panel and the door panel lip is recommended (Fig. 54).

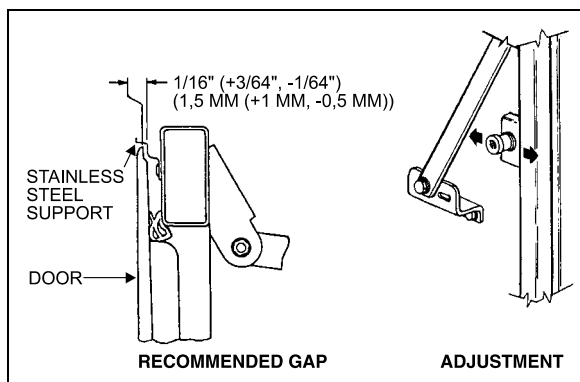


FIGURE 54: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR 18069

7. With door shut, it should have a gap of $3/8'' \pm 5/64''$ ($10\text{mm} \pm 2\text{mm}$) between door panel lip (at level of upper edge of lower section) and structural post. If not, move pins horizontally until correct gap is obtained. Fully tighten the pins after adjustment is achieved (Fig. 55).

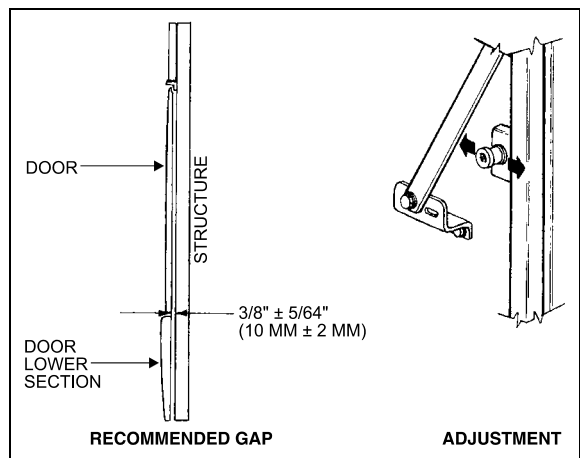


FIGURE 55: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR 18070

8. Recheck gap mentioned in step 6. If gap has changed, correct by adjusting arm support fixed to structure. Loosen the bolt supporting the balance arm on door lower section and close the door, gap adjustment will automatically result. Tighten the bolt from inside the compartment (Fig. 56).

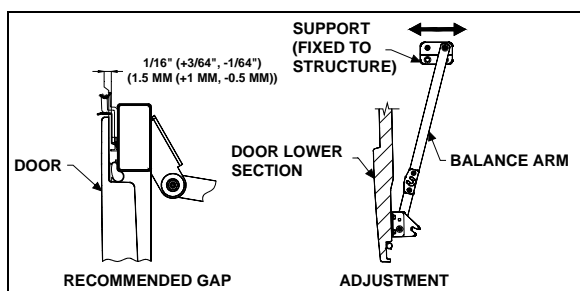


FIGURE 56: BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOOR 18071

Once the adjustment procedure is achieved, ensure that all bolts are securely tightened.

18. DOOR HANDLES

Compartment door handles are non serviceable. When a door handle has to be removed, proceed as follows:

1. Unscrew the four (4) retaining screws;
2. Remove the two (2) wires connecting the handle to the door latch locking mechanisms.
3. To install a new handle, reverse the procedure.

19. ENGINE COMPARTMENT DOOR

The engine compartment rear door (Fig. 57) rises in the same way as the baggage compartment doors and is held open by three gas-charged cylinders (Prevost # 980024). The engine compartment opens by lifting a handle accessed from the R.H. side of the engine compartment.

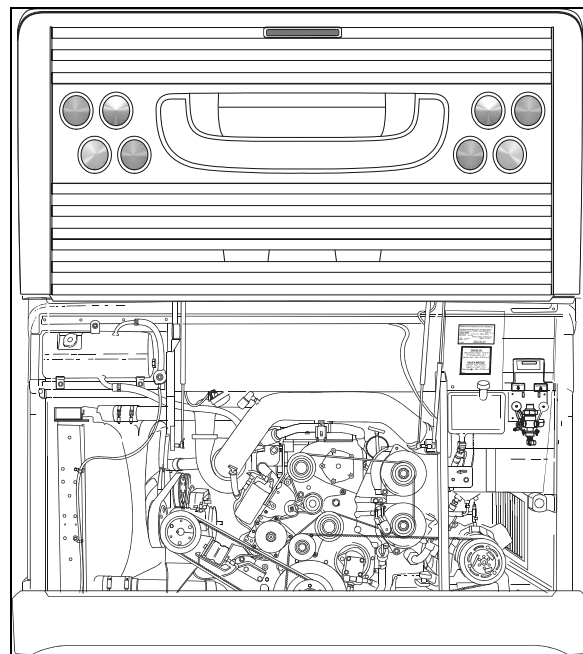


FIGURE 57: ENGINE COMPARTMENT DOOR 18497

When pushed up, the handle pulls on two steel wires, each steel wire connected to its respective door latch locking the rear door. Both steel wires are looped at the release handle and can be adjusted to proper length to ensure

positive release of both catches when the handle is raised.

19.1 ENGINE DOOR ADJUSTMENT

As indicated above, the engine door mechanism is similar to the baggage door mechanism using a pantograph and 3 gas cylinders to move the door up and down.

For a minor horizontal or vertical adjustment:

1. Open the door mid-height;
2. With the help of an assistant, pull down one side of door while holding up the other side to bend the pantograph arms in the desired position;
3. Close the door and check the top edge parallelism between the door and the vehicle end cap structure. The space may be somewhere between 10 and 15 mm;
4. Repeat until satisfied.

19.2 MINOR TOP EDGE DEPTH ADJUSTMENT

Two rubber spring loaded stops may be adjusted. They are located near the top edge on each side of the rear door.

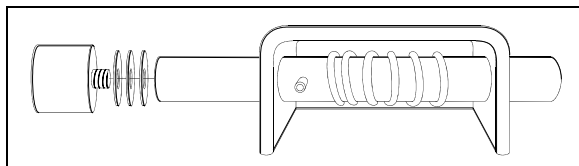


FIGURE 58: DOOR STOP

18324

To adjust:

1. Open door.
2. Unscrew rubber stop.
3. Add or remove washers as needed.
4. Firmly screw back rubber stop.

19.3 MINOR LOWER EDGE DEPTH ADJUSTMENT:

1. Open door.
2. Slightly loosen the striker pins on each side of door.
3. Using a hammer, strike striker pin gently in the desired direction (in or out).

4. Close the door slowly and check fit.
5. Repeat 3 and 4 to adjust the other striker pin.
6. When door depth is completed on the four corners, both vertical door sides should be parallel to the vehicle body structure.
7. Firmly tighten the striker pins (2) to lock them in position.

20. ENGINE AIR INTAKE GRILL

When needed, the engine air intake grill can be changed:

1. Cut the seal around the grill with a sharp edged knife.
2. Remove the grill from the vehicle.
3. On the vehicle grill opening, using the knife, remove as much adhesive as possible.
4. Sand the new grill backing edge to remove the glossy surface.
5. Clean with alcohol, wipe dry.
6. Apply SIKA 205 primer to the grill opening and the grill edges. Allow to dry at least 2 minutes for chemical evaporation.
7. Apply SIKA 255 FC adhesive on the grill edge.
8. Install the grill on the vehicle, adjust and fasten with masking tape. Allow 8 hours setting period.

21. RADIATOR DOOR ADJUSTMENT

21.1 DOOR HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

1. Using a pencil, draw a line onto the lateral panel in line with the balance arm.

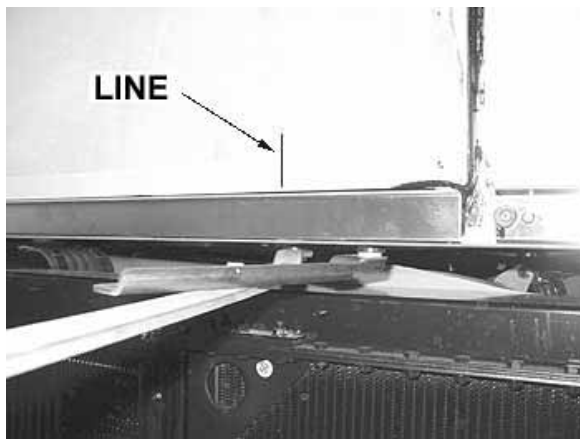


FIGURE 59: REFERENCE LINE

2. Using a rubber mallet, adjust the lower part of pantograph arm in order to get 4 ± 1 mm between lateral panel and engine door (Refer to figures 60 and 62).



FIGURE 60: PANTOGRAPH ARM ADJUSTMENT

3. Tighten the bolt.

21.2 DOOR LATERAL ADJUSTMENT

1. Using a rubber mallet, adjust radiator door positioning with reference to pantograph arm so that the door is parallel to the lateral panel and to the engine door.



FIGURE 61: DOOR LATERAL ADJUSTMENT

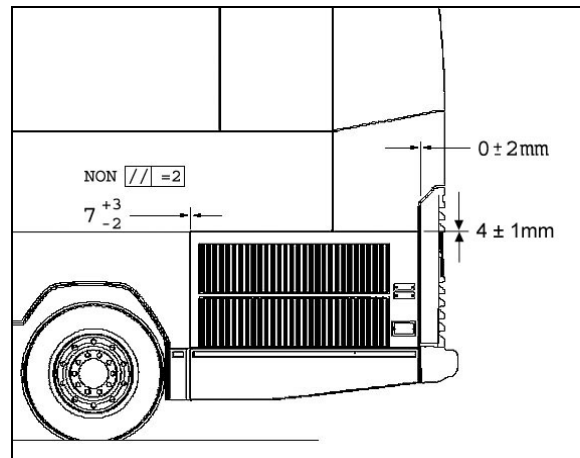


FIGURE 62: PROPER DOOR POSITIONING

2. Tighten the two bolts.

21.3 DOOR DEPTH ADJUSTMENT

1. Close radiator door.
2. Check parallelism between radiator door and rear fender (max. 0 ± 2 mm).

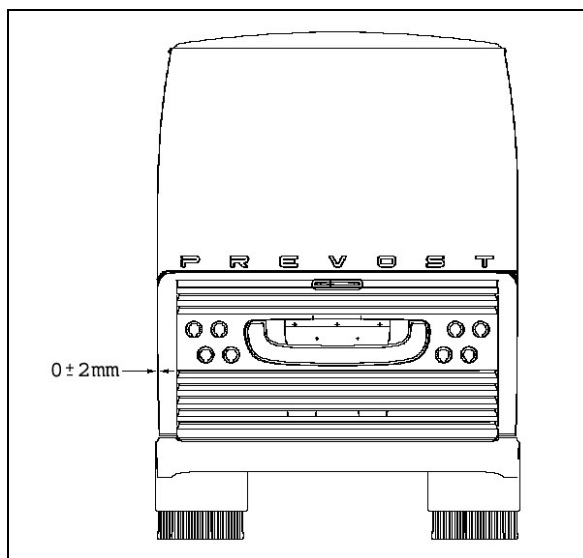


FIGURE 63: DOOR DEPTH ADJUSTMENT

3. If the door is too far inside, adjust using a rubber mallet (Refer to figure 64).
4. Tighten the bolt.



FIGURE 64: DEPTH ADJUSTMENT

5. Close the radiator door in order to verify that latches adjustment is proper. If the gap is too small or too big, adjust latch positioning.
6. Make sure that latch striker pin engages behind the strike plate at least 10 mm. Add or remove spacers if needed. Check door fit and operation. Tighten the latches bolts.

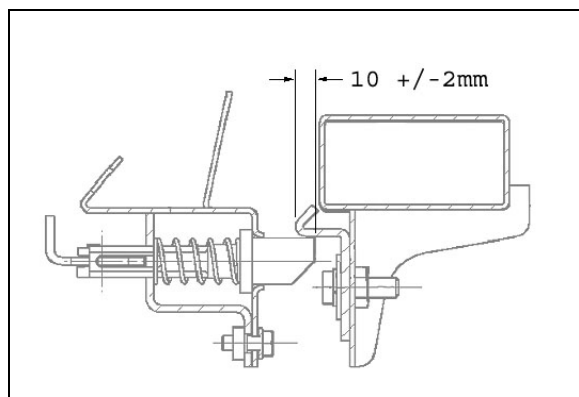


FIGURE 65: DOOR LATCHES ADJUSTMENT

22. CONDENSER DOOR ADJUSTMENT

1. Open the condenser door.
2. Loosen the nuts (1, Fig. 66) holding the hinge (3, Fig. 66) to hinge attachment (4, Fig. 66). Loosening nuts (1, Fig. 66) allows the condenser assembly to be shifted "LEFT or RIGHT" and "UP or DOWN".
3. Adjust condenser assembly position at the hinge.
4. Tighten the nuts.
5. Loosen bracket nuts holding the panel to condenser. Panel (6, Fig. 66) may be shifted "IN or OUT", "LEFT or RIGHT" and "UP or DOWN".
6. Adjust condenser panel at brackets (2, Fig. 66) and (5, Fig. 67).
7. Tighten the nuts.
8. Respect the required gap between exterior finishing panels (Fig. 45).
9. Check that the door swings freely and closes properly. It may be necessary to adjust the door latch to get proper fit and operation.

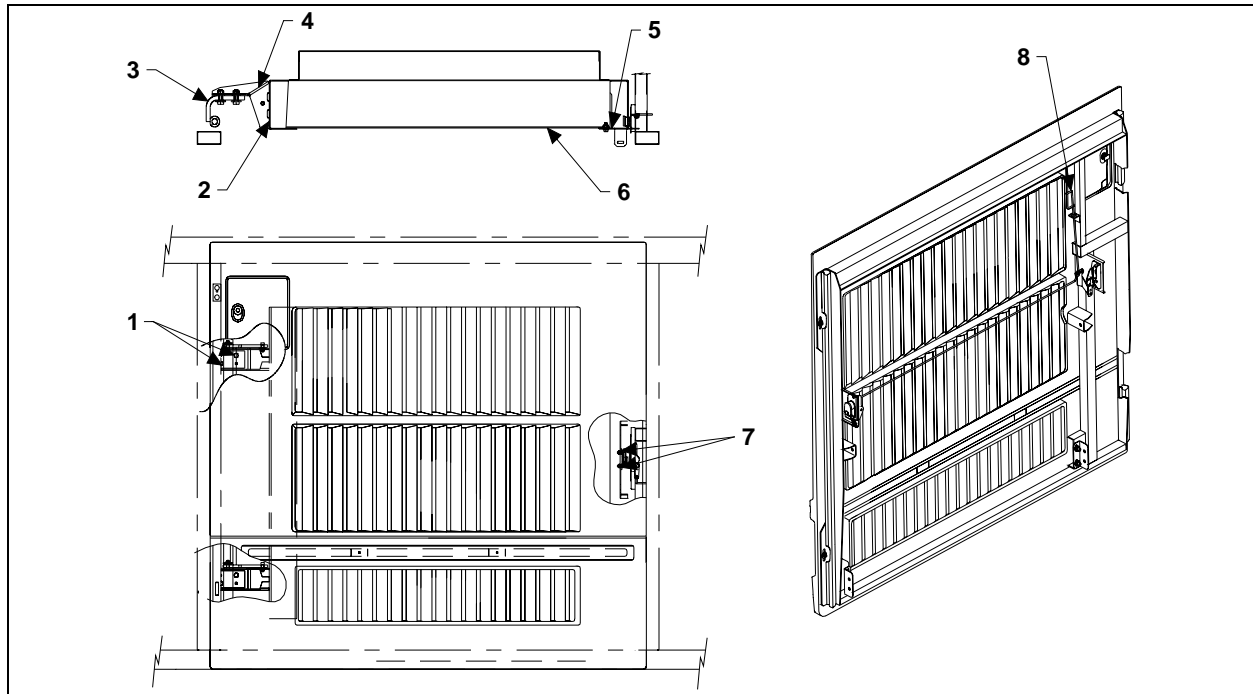


FIGURE 66: CONDENSER DOOR

D280201

23. FUEL FILLER DOOR

1. Open the fuel filler door (1, Fig. 67).
2. Loosen the screws (3, Fig. 67) holding the panel to hinge (2, Fig. 67) assembly.
3. Adjust the fuel filler door position according to distance required between exterior finishing parts (Fig. 45).
4. Tighten the nuts.
5. Check that the door swings freely and closes properly.

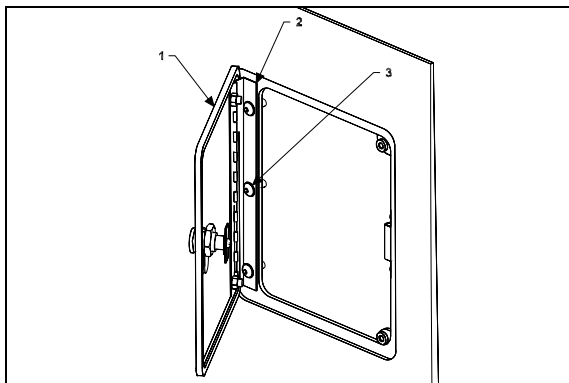


FIGURE 67: FUEL FILLER DOOR

1875003D

24. FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT

Adjustment of the front service compartment door can be done by following these steps:

1. Open the door.
2. Loosen nut (2, Fig. 68).

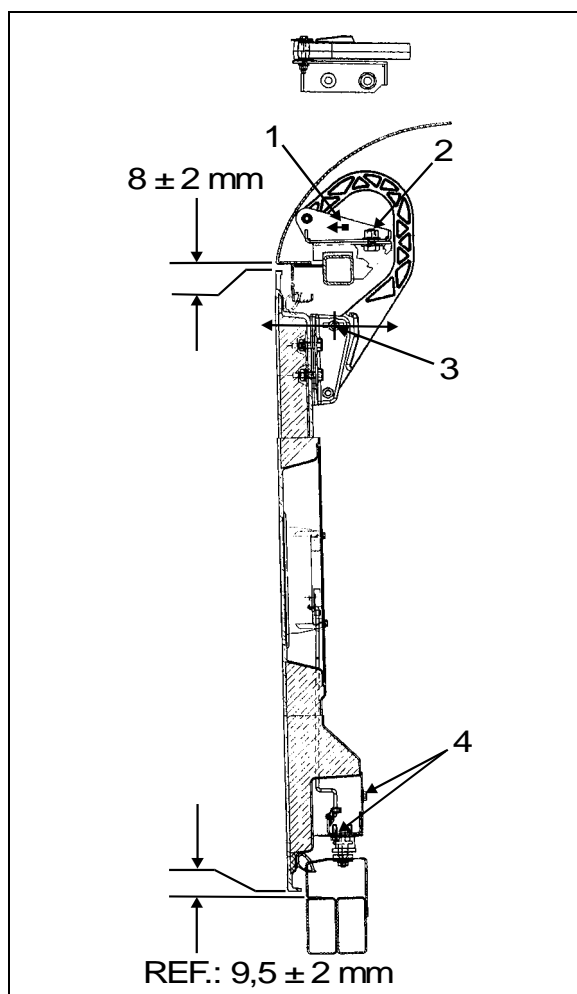


FIGURE 68: DOOR HINGE

18194

3. Move part (1, Fig. 68), as close as possible to exterior of coach, so as to have enough clearance for proper door opening.
4. Tighten nut (2, Fig. 68).
5. Loosen nut (3, Fig. 68). Hinge allows the door to be shifted "IN or OUT".
6. Adjust door panel to have the same gap space as neighboring panels or refer to figure 44 for specified gap space. Only if necessary, use the adjustment allowed by moving part 1, Fig. 68.
7. Loosen screws (5, Fig. 69) to allow the door to be shifted "UP or DOWN".
8. Adjust the door position.
9. Tighten the screws.
10. Check that the door swings freely and closes properly. It may be necessary to

adjust the door latch to get proper fit and operation.

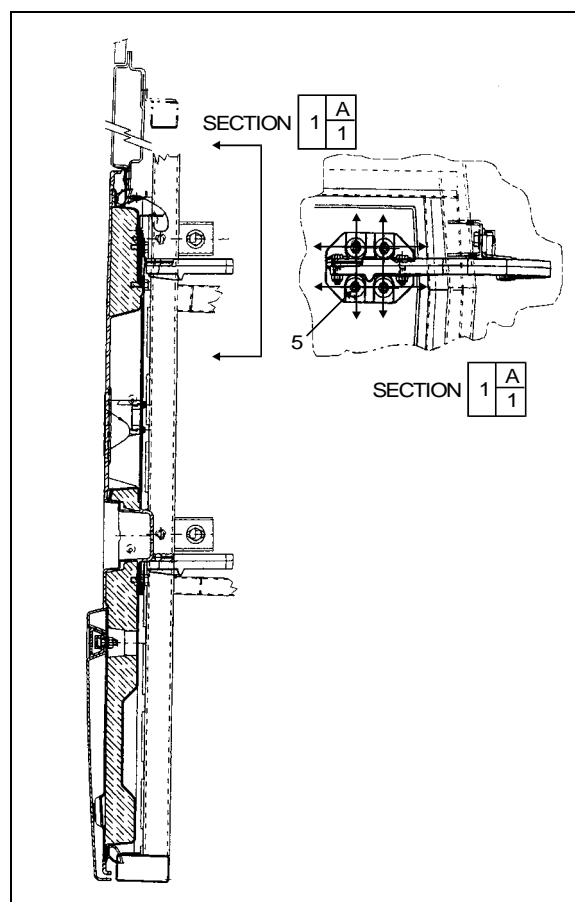


FIGURE 69: FRONT SERVICE DOOR

18195

24.1 LATCH MECHANISM ADJUSTMENT

To adjust the latch mechanism and the striker pin, open the door to access the striker pin. Slightly loosen the striker pin. Using a hammer, adjust the striker pin to center it in the door latch mechanism. Tighten the striker pin. Check door fit and operation.

25. ENGINE COMPARTMENT R.H. SIDE DOOR

The engine compartment R.H side door can be adjusted by following these steps:

1. Open the door.
2. Loosen nut (1, Fig. 70).
3. Move part (3, Fig. 70) as shown in figure for "LEFT or RIGHT" adjustment.
4. Tighten nut (1, Fig. 70).
5. Loosen nut (2, Fig. 70).

6. Hinge allows the door to be shifted "IN or OUT".
7. Adjust the door in accordance with the required distance between exterior finishing parts (Fig. 45).
8. Loosen screws (4, Fig. 71).
9. Screws allow the door to be shifted "UP or DOWN".
10. Adjust the door position according to the distance required between exterior finishing parts (Fig. 45).
11. Tighten the screws.

Check that the door swings freely and closes properly. It may be necessary to adjust the door latch to get proper fit and operation.

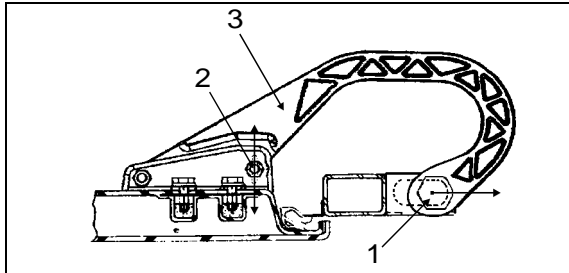


FIGURE 70: DOOR HINGE

18196

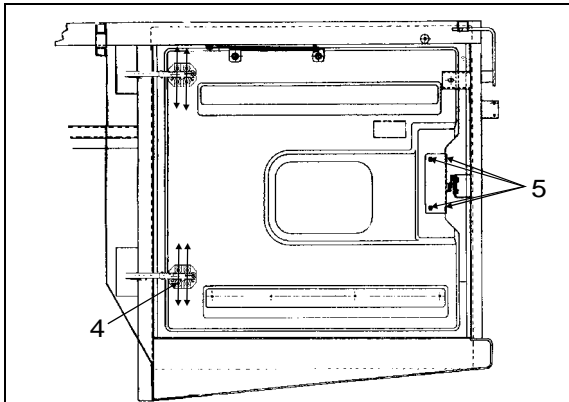


FIGURE 71: ENGINE COMPARTMENT R.H. DOOR

18197

25.1 LATCH MECHANISM ADJUSTMENT

To adjust the latch mechanism and the striker pin, open the door to access the striker pin. Slightly loosen the striker pin. Using a hammer, adjust the striker pin to center it in the door latch mechanism. Tighten the striker pin. Check door fit and operation.

26. EVAPORATOR DOOR ADJUSTMENT

1. Open the door.
2. Loosen nut (1, Fig. 72).
3. Move part as shown in figure for "LEFT or RIGHT" adjustment.
4. Tighten nut (1, Fig. 72).
5. Loosen nut (2, Fig. 72). Hinge allows the door to be shifted "IN or OUT".
6. Adjust the door in accordance with the required distance between exterior finishing parts (Fig. 45).
7. Loosen screws (3, Fig. 72). Screws allow the door to be shifted "UP or DOWN".
8. Adjust the door position according to the distance required between exterior finishing parts (Fig. 45).
9. Tighten the screws.

Check that the door swings freely and closes properly. It may be necessary to adjust the door latch to get proper fit and operation.

26.1 LATCH MECHANISM ADJUSTMENT

1. To adjust the latch mechanism and the striker pin:
2. Open the door to access the striker pin.
3. Loosen slightly the striker pin.
4. Using a hammer, adjust the striker pin to center it in the door latch mechanism.
5. Tighten the striker pin. Check door fit and operation.

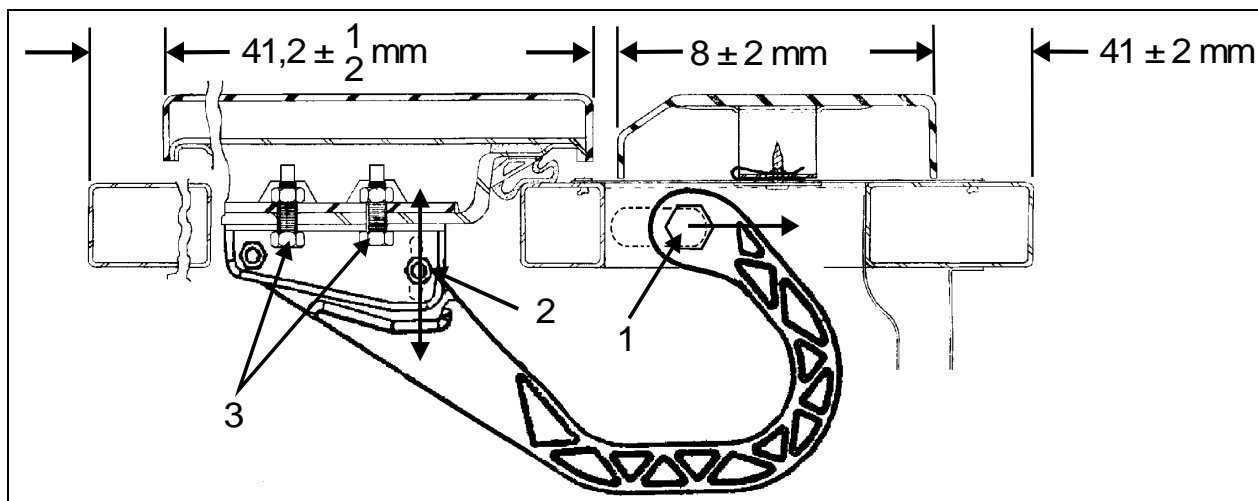


FIGURE 72: EVAPORATOR DOOR

18198

27. MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT

To adjust the main power compartment door:

1. Loosen nut (1, Fig. 73).

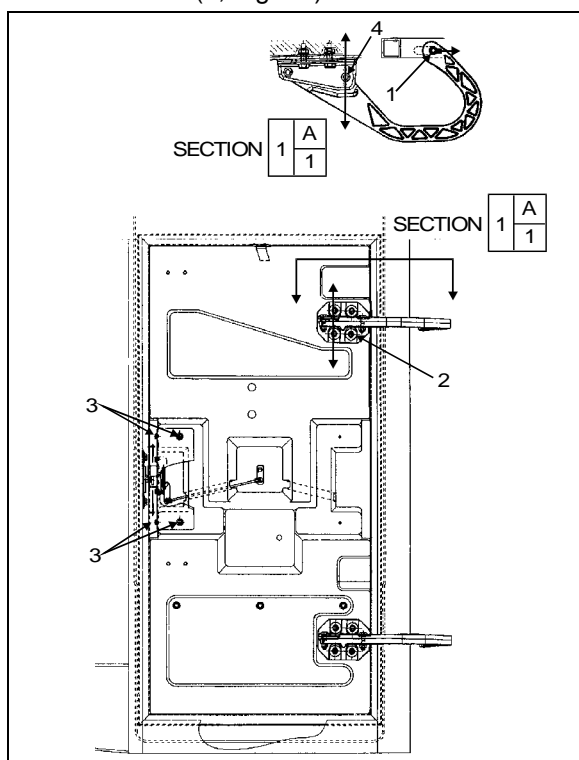


FIGURE 73: MAIN POWER COMP. DOOR

18199

2. Move part as shown in figure for "LEFT or RIGHT" adjustment.
3. Tighten nut (1, Fig. 73).
4. Loosen nut (4, Fig. 73).

5. Hinge allows the door to be shifted "IN or OUT".
6. Adjust door panel to have the same gap space as neighboring panels or refer to figure 45 for specified gap space
7. Loosen screws (2, Fig. 73). Screws allow the door to be shifted "UP or DOWN".
8. Adjust the door position.

Tighten the screws.

Check that the door swings freely and closes properly. It may be necessary to adjust the door latch to get proper fit and operation.

27.1 LATCH MECHANISM ADJUSTMENT

To adjust the latch mechanism and the striker pin:

1. Open the door to access the striker pin.
2. Loosen slightly the striker pin.
3. Using a hammer, adjust the striker pin to center it in the door latch mechanism.
4. Tighten the striker pin.

Check door fit and operation.

28. FENDERS

On the "H" series vehicle, all fenders are easily removable for maintenance on brakes and suspension. Each rear fender has three mechanical spring-loaded holding devices fixing it to the vehicle's structure.

28.1 REAR FENDER REMOVAL

1. Push the spring type rod sideways so that the lock disengages.
2. Support or have somebody hold the fender up.
3. As in 1, repeat to release both remaining holding devices.
4. Holding the fender firmly, pull it down until the top edge disengages from the holding plates.

To reinstall, reverse the procedure.

28.2 FRONT FENDER REMOVAL

1. At the bottom of fender, remove the retaining screws on one side of the fender.
2. Support or have someone hold the fender up.
3. Remove the screw on the other side of the fender.
4. Pull the fender down until the top edge disengages from the holding plates.

To reinstall, reverse the procedure.

29. REAR CAP

The fiberglass rear cap does not need any maintenance except painting as needed. For minor damages, refer to section 4 "Fiberglass

Repair" and section 5 "Painting". If the rear cap ever has to be replaced:

1. Remove all accessories.
2. Drill out the retaining pop rivets.
3. With a sharp edge blade, cut the seal joint and remove the rear cap.
4. With the sharp edge blade, remove as much of the remaining seal pieces as possible.
5. Sand with #120 or #150 sandpaper.
6. Wipe clean with alcohol
7. Prepare surface with Sika #205 and let dry for a minimum of 2 minutes.
8. Install a new seal using LOCTITE 414 glue.
9. Install the rear cap and fasten with pop rivets.

Caution: Do not attempt this procedure unless you are qualified and equipped to handle this job.

30. FRONT CAP

The front cap windshield frame does not need any maintenance. It is held in place with bolts and nuts. If it ever it has to be replaced, make an appointment at a Prévost service center near you.

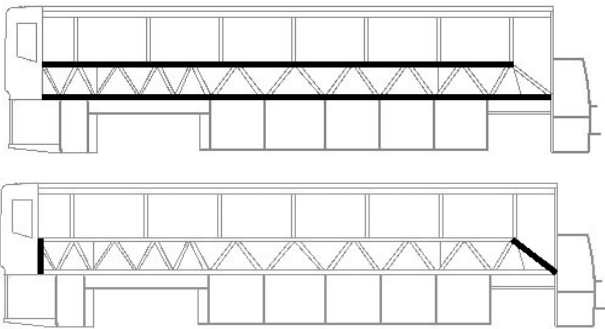
31. SIDE PANEL INSTALLATION PROCEDURE FOR COACHES AND VIP**Material:**

		Scotchbrite gray (680226)	√	Sika 206 G+P 1 liter (683446)	√
Anti-silicone (682989)	√				
Tack cloth	√				
CHIX cloth (682384)	√				
Blue cloth (682383)	√			Sika 252 black	√
Pure water	√	Masking tape	√		





Equipment:


Glue gun	√	
Compression roller	√	

SECTION #1 SIDE PANEL INSTALLATION

1.00	SS Body structure preparation A) Clean using anti-silicone. See PR000001 section A. Use Scotchbrite to sand structure. Use 1 side of Scotchbrite for 1 side of vehicle.	
------	--	--

PR000001 Section A Alcohol or Anti-silicone

	1. Apply 		2. Dry immediately 
3. Allow to dry			
Mandatory		Minimum time : Wait for product to evaporate	
		After 2 hours: Start cleaning operation again	
Before applying any other product		If surface seems dusty, greasy or with finger marks, start cleaning operation again.	

1.05	Fiberglass panel preparation (fiber side) A) Clean using tack cloth. Repeat if surface seems dusty. B) Clean using anti-silicone See PR000001 section A. C) Apply primer 206 G+P. See PR000001 section D.	
------	--	--

PR000001 Section D Sika Primer 206 G+P



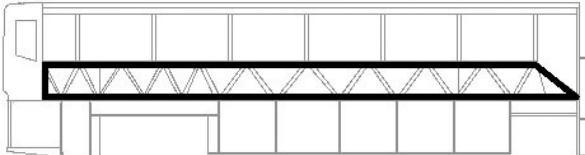
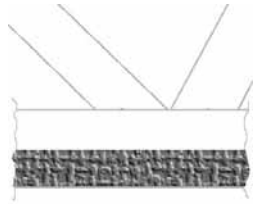
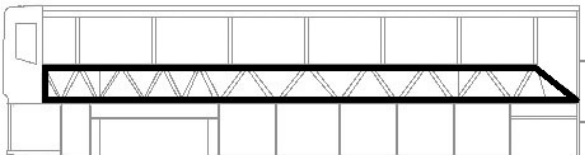
3. Shake bottle to mix product

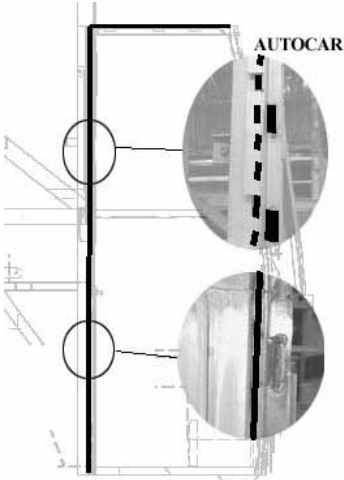


4. Apply a thin layer

CHIX cloth

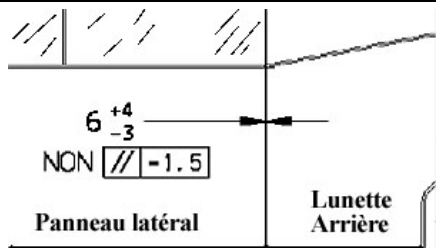
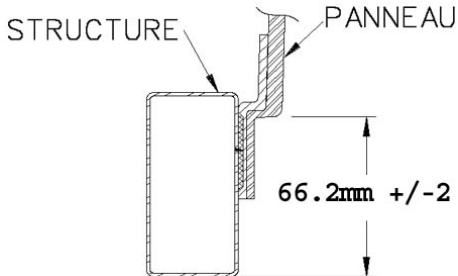



3. Allow to dry


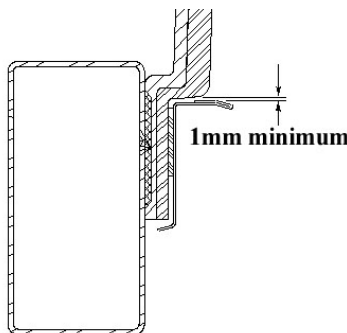
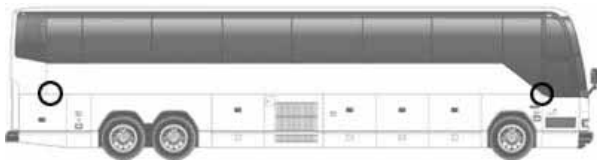
Mandatory	206 G+P	Minimum time : 10 minutes
		After 2 hours: Remove dust using damp cloth (pure water)
		After 8 days : Reactivate with Aktivator as per section "C"
Before applying any other product		If surface seems dusty, dust using damp cloth.
		If surface seems greasy or with finger marks, reactivate with Aktivator.

1.10	SS Body structure preparation		
	A)	Clean using anti-silicone. Clean structure at least twice. Repeat is necessary until cloth comes clean. See PR000001 section A.	
	B)	Apply 1 ¼" protective tape along bottom structural tubing.	
	C)	Apply 206 G+P onto structure. See PR000001 section D.	

1.15	Seal entrance door perimeter using Sika 252 black, Smooth down the excess.	
1.20	Install lateral panel supports onto bottom structural tubing. Install lateral panel onto supports to verify proper positioning.	
1.25	<p style="text-align: center;">Glue application</p> <p>A) Set (timer) or record time. ⌚ No more than 45 minutes should elapse between beginning of glue application and panel installation.</p> <p>B) Apply Sika 252 black onto structure</p> 	
1.30 *	<p>A) Install lateral panel onto supports and clamp panel in place using "C" clamps and square tubing to even out the pressure. Note: A maximum of clamps should be used (every 6 inches) to ensure proper bonding. Do not tighten too much.</p> <p>B) At the rear, adjust panel height so that it is level with rear cap</p>	

Section 18: BODY

	C)	Gap between lateral panel and rear cap must be 6mm +4/-3 and panels must be aligned within 1.5mm.	
	D)	Using a ruler, adjust front of lateral panel.	
	E)	 Verify if panel upper corner is in the middle of window post.	
1.55	Remove excess of glue using a spatula. Apply a bead of Sika 252 at the top of panel Spray pure water onto all the joints to speed up drying process		
1.60	Remove protective tape (installed at step 1.10b).		
1.70	Do not move the vehicle for 48 hours Make sure room temperature is superior to 20°C (68°F) before gluing Perform a visual inspection before installing side windows		

SECTION #2 DRIP MOLDING INSTALLATION			
2.00 *	A)	Clean using Anti-silicone See PR000001 section A.	
	B)	Apply Sika 206 G+P See PR000001 section D.	
2.05	Remove blue paper from drip molding. Remove protective tape from double-face self adhesive tape		
2.10	Glue drip molding. Allow a gap of 1mm minimum between top of drip molding and panel.		
2.15	Compress drip molding using the compression roller to increase adherence.		
2.20	Round off rear and front drip molding corners.		

SECTION #3 REPAIR		
4.00	Remove fiberglass from structure using a screwdriver. Use wedges if necessary to hold down panel during the work.	
4.05	Remove as much glue as possible. If primer is removed, apply primer 206 G+P locally. If primer is OK, reactivate as per PR000001 section D.	
4.10	Apply Ultrafast 2 glue (heated).	
4.15	Compress panel using clamps and a metal flat bar (for an even compression). Only use screws as a last resort to compress.	
4.20	Vehicle must not move for the next 12 hours.	

32. REAR VIEW MIRRORS (RAMCO)

Your vehicle is equipped with two exterior mirrors.

The mirrors may be equipped with an optional electric heating system which serves to minimize ice and condensation on the mirror glass in extreme weather conditions. Integral thermostats are installed in both mirrors to avoid continuous heating. Use the appropriate switch on the dashboard to activate the defroster system on both mirrors simultaneously. The mirrors can easily be adjusted by using the remote controls located on the L.H. side control panel. The mirrors have easy to replace glass in case of breakage. Remote control motors can also be replaced.

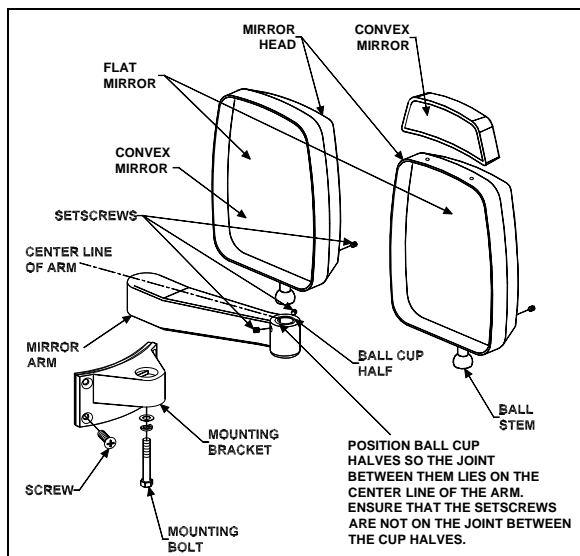


FIGURE 74: REAR-VIEW MIRROR (RAMCO)

18201

32.1 ADJUSTMENT

At the base of the mirror arm, loosen the mounting bolt to swing arm in or out.

To pivot the mirror head, loosen the setscrews on each side of the ball stub at the base of the mirror head to facilitate the adjustment.

32.2 DISASSEMBLY

At end of mirror arm, loosen the setscrews to relieve tension on the ball stem. Remove the ball stem from the arm.

Remove the four screws fastening the mirror arm base to the coach.

32.3 ASSEMBLY

Mount the mirror arm base to the coach.

Insert the ball stem into the mirror arm and tighten the socket setscrews.

Note: Position the ball cup halves so the joint between them lies on the centerline of the arm. Ensure that the setscrews are not on the joint between the cup halves.

32.4 REPLACEMENT OF MIRROR GLASS

Remove the broken glass.

Position new glass in mirror head and press to lock the Velcro in place.

32.5 HEATED / REMOTE CONTROLLED REAR VIEW MIRRORS

Heated/remote controlled external rear view mirrors may be provided to prevent the mirrors from frosting up in cold weather.

The remote controlled external rear view mirrors attach to support arms using a pivot collar secured by setscrews. Loosening the setscrews allows the whole head assembly to turn on the support arm for initial adjustment. A mounting bolt and washer hold the arm support to the mounting bracket. The arm support can be moved to position the mirror head into or away from the coach body.

The mirror heat switch is located to the left of the driver on the dashboard. This switch must be activated before the mirror heating element will energize. Once energized, the mirror heating element is kept at a sustained temperature (between 60-80°F) by a thermostat. Refer to wiring diagram annexed in the technical publication box.

Caution: Do not attach stick-on type convex mirror accessories to the heated mirror glass. This could impede uniform heat distribution on the mirror surface which could break the mirror.

32.5.1 Mirror Control

The remote control pointer knob(s) for the mirrors is (are) mounted on the L.H. side control panel. The harness to the mirror head runs through the arm support. The remote motor is mounted to the mirror head behind the mirror glass.

Turn pointer knob to the left for mirror head adjustments and to the right for convex mirror adjustment, then push down on either of the button's (4) sides to adjust the selected mirror viewing angle.

32.5.2 Disassembly

At end of mirror arm, loosen the setscrews to relieve tension on the ball stud. Remove the ball stud. Remove the ball stud from the arm and gently pull the harness out until the connector is exposed.

Remove the four screws fastening the mirror arm base to the coach. Slide the harness free of the mirror arm base.

32.5.3 Assembly

Attach a stiff wire (snake) to the end of the harness and insert the wire through the mirror arm base and arm, gently pull the harness through the arm and disconnect the "snake".

Connect the mirror head harness. Insert the harness connector back into the mirror arm.

Insert the ball stud into the mirror arm and tighten the socket setscrews.

Note: Position the ball cup halves so the joint between them lies on the centerline of the arm. Ensure that the setscrews are not on the joint between the cup halves.

32.5.4 Convex & Flat Mirror Removal

The mirror glass assembly is mounted to the control mechanism or to mirror base with Velcro strips. Remove the mirror glass by gently pulling the lens to release the Velcro. Disconnect the heater grid at the two connectors.

Connect the connectors of the new mirror's grid to the harness. Install the lens by positioning the lens in the mirror frame and pressing to lock the Velcro in place.

33. VEHICLE JACKING POINTS

The vehicle can be lifted by applying pressure under body jacking points or front and drive axle jacking points (Fig. 75, 76, 77 & 78). When it is necessary to lift the vehicle, care should be taken to ensure that the pressure is applied only on the specified areas. Equipment for lifting the front of the vehicle must have a combined lifting capacity of at least 20,000 lb. (9 100 kg).

Equipment for lifting the rear of the vehicle must have a combined lifting capacity of at least 40,000 lb. (18 200 kg).

Warning: DO NOT tow or jack vehicle with people on board.

Warning: When it is necessary to raise the vehicle, care should be taken to ensure that pressure is applied only at the points indicated in figures 74, 75, 76 and 77.

Warning: Extra lift capacity may be required if luggage or any other type of load (e.g. conversion equipment) are onboard the vehicle.

Caution: The suspension of the vehicle must be in the normal ride position before jacking. The "Level Low" system on a motorcoach must be in the "DRIVE" position prior to turning the ignition key "OFF".

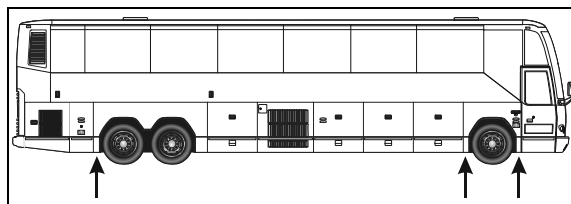


FIGURE 75: JACKING POINTS ON STRUCTURE 18480

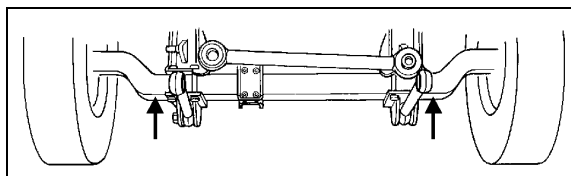


FIGURE 76: JACKING POINTS ON FRONT AXLE 18084

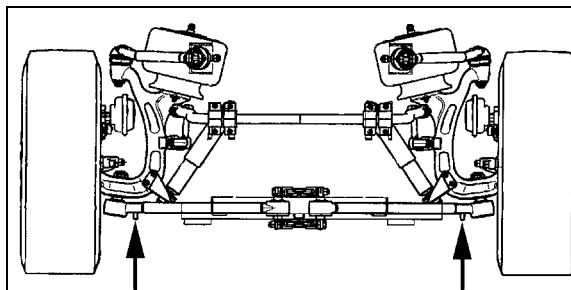


FIGURE 77: JACKING POINTS ON IND. SUSPENSION

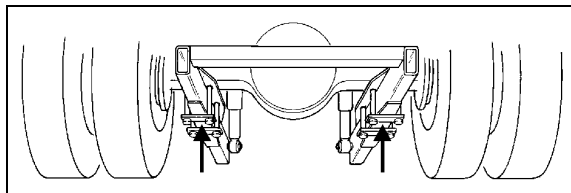


FIGURE 78: JACKING POINTS ON DRIVE AXLE 18085

Caution: Always unload or retract the tag axle before jacking the vehicle from the front and drive axle jacking points to prevent damage to suspension components.

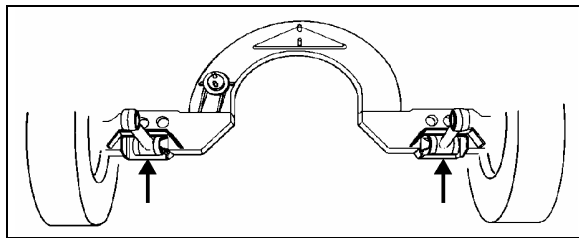


FIGURE 79: JACKING POINTS ON TAG AXLE 18086

Caution: The jacking points on the tag axle must be used for raising the tag axle only.

34. TOWING THE VEHICLE

The vehicle can be transported on a low bed semi-trailer of adequate gross axle weight capacity. When transporting a vehicle, apply parking brake and shut down the engine. Block all wheels and secure vehicle with tie-downs. Check that overall height will clear obstacles on the route to follow, and obtain required permits.

The vehicle can also be towed by lifting the front axle or by towing from the front with all wheels on the ground. These two methods are described below under their respective headings. Whatever the method used, the vehicle should be towed by truck operators authorized and experienced in towing highway coaches.

Observe normal precautions including, but not limited to, the ones listed below when towing the vehicle:

- Make sure the parking brake is released before towing.
- Do not allow passengers to ride onboard the towed vehicle.
- Tow the vehicle at a safe speed as dictated by road and weather conditions.
- Accelerate and decelerate slowly and cautiously.

34.1 LIFTING AND TOWING

The towed vehicle must be lifted from under the front axle only. The tow truck must be equipped with the proper lifting equipment to reach under the front axle since no other lifting points are recommended. Lifting and towing from any other

point are unauthorized as it may cause serious damage to the structure. Do not unload or raise the tag axle when lifting and towing to prevent overloading the drive axle.

1. Remove both drive axle shafts to prevent damage to the transmission. Plug axle tube to prevent oil loss. Refer to Rockwell's "Maintenance manual no.5" annexed at the end of Section 11, Rear axle, in this manual for correct procedure.

Caution: Transmission lubrication is inadequate when towing. With either automatic, semi-automatic or manual transmission, the drive axle shafts must be removed to avoid serious damage to the transmission.

2. Operate the engine when towing to maintain brake system air pressure. If the engine cannot be operated, connect an external air pressure line from the tow truck to the emergency fill valve in the engine compartment. The emergency fill valve in the front service compartment does not supply air pressure to the brake system. The air pressure must be a minimum of 75 psi (520 kPa), and the line should be attached to the air line with a clip-on chuck.

Caution: Do not tow the vehicle without external air pressure applied to the emergency fill valve if the engine does not operate. Without brake system air pressure, the brakes may apply automatically if system air drops below 40 psi (275 kPa). If failure prevents releasing the parking brakes with air pressure, disengage the parking brakes mechanically.

3. Lift the vehicle from under the front axle, and adequately secure the underside to the tow vehicle lifting attachment with chains.
4. Observe safety precautions when towing.

34.2 TOWING WITHOUT LIFTING

Caution: When towing vehicle without lifting, use only a tow truck with a solid link tow bar and related equipment. All other means of towing are unauthorized. Tow only from the front of the vehicle.

1. Remove both drive axle shafts to prevent damage to the transmission. Plug axle tube to prevent oil loss. Refer to Rockwell's "Maintenance manual no.5" annexed at the end of Section 11, Rear axle, in this manual for correct procedure.

Caution: Transmission lubrication is inadequate when towing. With automatic, semi-automatic or manual transmission, the drive axle shafts must be removed to avoid serious damage to the transmission.

2. Operate the engine when towing to maintain brake system air pressure. If the engine cannot be operated, connect an external air pressure line from the tow truck to the emergency fill valve in the engine compartment. The emergency fill valve in the front service compartment does not supply air pressure to the brake system. The air pressure must be a minimum of 75 psi (520 kPa), and the line should be attached to the air line with a clip-on chuck.

Caution: Do not tow the vehicle without external air pressure applied to the emergency fill valve if the engine does not operate. Without brake system air pressure, the brakes may apply automatically if system air drops below 40 psi (275 kPa). If failure prevents releasing the parking brakes with air pressure, disengage the parking brakes mechanically.

3. Position the tow truck so that the tow bar contacts the front bumper of the vehicle.
4. Attach the tow truck chains only in the tow eyes of the vehicle under the bumper and take up all the slack.
5. Attach safety chains as applicable.
6. Observe safety precautions when towing.

35. SPECIFICATIONS

Door cylinder

ManufacturerBimba
 Type Pneumatic
 I.D. 1½" (mm)
 Stroke..... 8" (mm)
 Prévoist number..... 780595

Damper

ManufacturerKoni
 Prévoist number..... 780565

Lock cylinder (upper)

ManufacturerBimba
 Type Air, single action, 1/8 NPT, hexagonal rod
 I.D. 7/8" (22 mm)
 Stroke..... 1" (25 mm)
 Supplier numberD-51127-A
 Prévoist number..... 641392

Lock cylinder (central)

ManufacturerBimba
 TypeAir, single action, ¼ NPT
 I.D. 1¾" (45 mm)
 Stroke..... 1" (25 mm)
 Supplier number 241-P
 Prévoist number..... 641209

Manifold solenoid

Section 18: BODY

Manufacturer Norgren
Type 4 ports, 1/8 NPT
Voltage 24 VDC
Power consumption 6 watts
Maximum pressure 150 psi (1035 kPa)
Prévost number 641448

Solenoid valve (Latching valve)

Manufacturer Humphrey
Model 310
Operating range 0 to 125 psi (0 to 860 kPa)
Voltage 24 VDC
Voltage tolerance +10%, -15% of rated voltage
Power consumption 4 watts
Leak rate (max allowed) 0.245 in³/min @ 100 psi (4cc/min @ 690 kPa)
Type of operation Direct solenoid
Lubrication Not required (factory pre-lubed)
Filtration 40 micron recommended
Prévost number 641412

Pressure switch assembly

Prévost number 452831

SECTION 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

CONTENTS

1. HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING	22-6
2. AIR CIRCULATION WITH CENTRAL SYSTEM.....	22-6
2.1 DRIVER'S AREA.....	22-6
2.1.1 Coaches	22-6
2.1.2 VIP	22-6
2.2 CENTRAL AREA (PASSENGER/CABIN)	22-6
3. AIR CIRCULATION WITH SMALL SYSTEM	22-8
3.1 AUXILIARY SYSTEM.....	22-8
4. SMALL HVAC SYSTEM OPERATION.....	22-8
4.1 AUXILIARY SYSTEM OPERATION	22-8
5. CENTRAL HVAC SYSTEM OPERATION.....	22-8
5.1 DRIVER'S AREA.....	22-8
5.2 CENTRAL AREA.....	22-9
5.3 PARCEL RACK A/C (H3 COACHES)	22-10
6. HVAC UNIT MAINTENANCE	22-10
6.1 COIL CLEANING.....	22-10
6.2 DRIVER'S HVAC UNIT AIR FILTERS	22-11
6.3 CENTRAL HVAC UNIT AIR FILTER.....	22-11
6.4 PARCEL RACK FAN AIR FILTER.....	22-12
7. DIAGNOSIS OF MAIN HVAC UNIT PROBLEMS.....	22-12
7.1 TROUBLESHOOTING MODE.....	22-12
7.2 CONTINUITY CHECK.....	22-13
8. EVAPORATOR MOTOR	22-13
8.1 REMOVAL.....	22-13
8.2 INSTALLATION	22-14
8.3 CHECKING OPERATION OF BRUSH IN HOLDER	22-14
8.4 BRUSH WEAR INSPECTION AND REPLACEMENT	22-14
8.5 BRUSH OLDER ADJUSTMENT	22-14
8.6 CHECKING COMMUTATOR	22-14
9. CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM.....	22-14
9.1 A/C CYCLE	22-15
9.2 REFRIGERANT.....	22-15
9.2.1 Procurement.....	22-15
9.2.2 Precautions in Handling Refrigerant	22-15
9.2.3 Treatment in Case of Injury.....	22-16
9.2.4 Precautions in Handling Refrigerant Lines.....	22-16
9.3 REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CLEAN-OUT AFTER COMPRESSOR FAILURE	22-17
9.3.1 Determining Severity of Failure	22-17
9.3.2 Clean-out after Minor Compressor Failure.....	22-17
9.3.3 Clean-out After Major Compressor Failure	22-17
9.4 PUMPING DOWN	22-18

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

9.5	ADDING REFRIGERANT (VAPOR STATE)	22-20
9.6	EVACUATING SYSTEM.....	22-20
9.6.1	<i>Double Sweep Evacuation Procedure</i>	22-20
9.7	CHARGING SYSTEM.....	22-21
10.	CENTRAL A/C SYSTEM COMPONENTS	22-22
10.1	COMPRESSOR (CENTRAL SYSTEM)	22-22
10.1.1	<i>Belt Replacement</i>	22-22
10.1.2	<i>Pulley Alignment</i>	22-23
10.1.3	<i>Longitudinal Compressor Alignment</i>	22-23
10.1.4	<i>Horizontal Compressor Alignment</i>	22-23
10.1.5	<i>Vertical Compressor Alignment</i>	22-23
10.1.6	<i>Compressor Maintenance</i>	22-23
10.1.7	<i>Troubleshooting Guide</i>	22-25
10.2	MAGNETIC CLUTCH	22-25
10.2.1	<i>HVAC Control Unit and Clutch Operation</i>	22-25
10.3	CONDENSER.....	22-26
10.3.1	<i>Condenser Fan Motors</i>	22-26
10.3.2	<i>Condenser Fan Motor Removal</i>	22-26
10.3.3	<i>Preliminary Disassembly</i>	22-26
10.3.4	<i>Disassembly</i>	22-27
10.4	RECEIVER TANK.....	22-27
10.5	FILTER DRYER	22-27
10.5.1	<i>Replacement</i>	22-27
10.5.2	<i>Moisture Indicator</i>	22-28
10.6	LIQUID REFRIGERANT SOLENOID VALVE.....	22-28
10.6.1	<i>Manual Bypass</i>	22-28
10.6.2	<i>Coil Replacement</i>	22-28
10.6.3	<i>Valve Disassembly</i>	22-28
10.6.4	<i>Valve Reassembly</i>	22-29
10.7	EXPANSION VALVE	22-29
10.7.1	<i>Central system</i>	22-29
10.7.2	<i>Driver's System</i>	22-32
10.8	TORCH BRAZING	22-32
10.9	TROUBLESHOOTING.....	22-33
10.9.1	<i>Expansion Valve</i>	22-33
10.9.2	<i>A/C</i>	22-34
10.10	TEMPERATURES & PRESSURES	22-36
10.11	LEAK TESTING.....	22-37
11.	VIP DRIVER'S AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM AND COMPONENTS	22-37
11.1	COMPRESSOR	22-37
11.2	MAGNETIC CLUTCH	22-37
11.3	MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS.....	22-37
11.3.1	<i>Work Area</i>	22-37
11.3.2	<i>Refrigerant Handling</i>	22-38
11.3.3	<i>PAG Oil Handling</i>	22-38
11.3.4	<i>Refrigerant Recovery</i>	22-38
11.3.5	<i>Compressor Handling</i>	22-38
11.4	COMPRESSOR REMOVAL.....	22-38
11.4.1	<i>When the compressor is operational</i>	22-38
11.4.2	<i>When the compressor is inoperable</i>	22-38

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

11.5	INSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS.....	22-39
11.6	COMPRESSOR OIL CHANGE.....	22-39
11.6.1	<i>Evacuating System Before Adding Refrigerant (Driver's or Auxiliary System)</i>	22-40
11.7	OIL ADDITION	22-40
11.8	COMPRESSOR OIL CONTAMINATION	22-41
11.9	OIL RETURN OPERATION	22-41
11.10	OIL CHECK INTERVAL	22-41
11.11	LEAK TEST PROCEDURE WITH COMPRESSOR REMOVED.....	22-41
11.12	TIGHTENING TORQUES	22-42
12.	HEATING SYSTEM	22-42
12.1	SMALL HEATING & AUX. SYSTEM	22-44
12.2	CENTRAL HEATING SYSTEM	22-44
12.3	DRAINING HEATING SYSTEM.....	22-44
12.3.1	<i>Draining Driver's Heater Core</i>	22-44
12.3.2	<i>Draining Main Heater Core</i>	22-44
12.4	FILLING HEATING SYSTEM.....	22-46
12.5	BLEEDING HEATING SYSTEM	22-46
12.6	SOLDERING	22-46
12.7	DRIVER'S WATER SOLENOID VALVE.....	22-46
12.7.1	<i>Improper Operation</i>	22-46
12.7.2	<i>Coil Replacement</i>	22-47
12.7.3	<i>Valve Disassembly</i>	22-47
12.7.4	<i>Valve Reassembly</i>	22-47
12.8	CENTRAL HOT WATER PNEUMATIC VALVE ASSEMBLY.....	22-49
12.8.1	<i>Description</i>	22-49
12.8.2	<i>Pneumatic Water Valve Disassembly</i>	22-49
12.8.3	<i>Pneumatic Water Valve Reassembly</i>	22-50
12.8.4	<i>Pilot Solenoid Valve</i>	22-50
12.8.5	<i>Valve Troubleshooting</i>	22-50
12.9	WATER RECIRCULATING PUMP	22-50
12.9.1	<i>Removal</i>	22-51
12.9.2	<i>Disassembly</i>	22-51
12.9.3	<i>Brushes</i>	22-51
12.9.4	<i>Bearings</i>	22-53
12.9.5	<i>Commutator</i>	22-53
12.9.6	<i>Miscellaneous</i>	22-53
12.9.7	<i>Assembly</i>	22-53
12.9.8	<i>Installation</i>	22-54
12.10	WATER FILTER.....	22-54
12.10.1	<i>Maintenance</i>	22-54
12.10.2	<i>Filter Servicing</i>	22-54
12.11	BYPASS SOLENOID WATER VALVE (OPTIONAL)	22-55
12.11.1	<i>To Remove or Change the Coil</i>	22-55
12.11.2	<i>Valve disassembly and Reassembly</i>	22-55
13.	PREHEATING SYSTEM (OPTIONAL ON COACHES ONLY)	22-55
13.1	OPERATION	22-56
13.2	PREHEATING SYSTEM TIMER	22-57
13.2.1	<i>Timer operating instructions (Webasto)</i>	22-57
13.3	TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE	22-58
14.	SPECIFICATIONS	22-60

ILLUSTRATIONS

Figure 1: DRIVER'S AIR CIRCULATION.....	22-6
Figure 2: CENTRAL HVAC SYSTEM AIR CIRCULATION.....	22-7
Figure 3: PARCEL RACK VENTILATION SYSTEM.....	22-8
Figure 4: HVAC DASHBOARD CONTROL UNIT	22-8
Figure 5: HVAC DASHBOARD CONTROL UNIT	22-8
Figure 6: MAIN BREAKERS.....	22-9
Figure 7: LOCATION OF RELAYS AND RESISTORS	22-10
Figure 8: PARCEL RACK A/C INSTALLATION.....	22-10
Figure 9: EVAPORATOR COIL	22-10
Figure 10: CONDENSER COIL	22-11
Figure 11: DRIVER'S CONSOLE ACCESS GRILL	22-11
Figure 12: VIP CONSOLE ACCESS GRILL	22-11
Figure 13: DRIVER'S AREA AIR FILTERS	22-11
Figure 14: MAIN HVAC UNIT AIR FILTER.....	22-12
Figure 15: PARCEL RACK FAN AIR FILTER	22-12
Figure 16: HVAC COMPARTMENT	22-13
Figure 17: EVAPORATOR MOTOR ASSEMBLY	22-14
Figure 18: EVAPORATOR MOTOR	22-14
Figure 19: CENTRAL A/C SYSTEM COMPONENTS	22-19
Figure 20: DOUBLE SWEEP EVACUATION SET-UP.....	22-21
Figure 21: TENSIONING VALVE	22-22
Figure 22: TENSIONING AIR BELLOWS.....	22-22
Figure 23: COMPRESSOR ALIGNMENT	22-23
Figure 24: COMPRESSOR ALIGNMENT	22-23
Figure 25: EXPLODED VIEW OF 05G COMPRESSOR.....	22-24
Figure 26: CONDENSER FAN SPEED IN RELATION WITH HIGH SIDE PRESSURE.....	22-26
Figure 27: CONDENSER FAN MOTOR.....	22-26
Figure 28: A/C CONDENSER COMPARTMENT.....	22-27
Figure 29: REFRIGERANT SOLENOID VALVE	22-29
Figure 30: EXPANSION VALVE.....	22-29
Figure 31: SUPERHEAT ADJUST. INSTALLATION	22-30
Figure 32: HIGH & LOW SWING TEMPERATURE AT REMOTE BULB.....	22-31
Figure 33: SELTEC TM-16HD COMPRESSOR.....	22-37
Figure 34: COMPRESSOR REMOVAL	22-39
Figure 35: LOOSENING THE DISCHARGE SIDE CONNECTOR'S CAP	22-39
Figure 36: ROTATING MAGNETIC CLUTCH	22-39
Figure 37: COMPRESSOR INSTALLATION.....	22-39
Figure 38: COMPRESSOR OIL LABEL	22-39
Figure 39: DRAINING THE OIL	22-40
Figure 40: ADDING NEW COMPRESSOR OIL	22-40
Figure 41: ADDING OIL AFTER REPLACING A COMPONENT	22-40
Figure 42: DISCHARGE AND SUCTION CAPS.....	22-41
Figure 43: TIGHTENING TORQUES	22-42
Figure 44: SMALL A/C & HEATING SYSTEMS PLUS AUXILIARY SYSTEM COMPONENTS	22-43
Figure 45: CEILING OF SPARE WHEEL COMPART	22-44
Figure 46: DRIVER'S HVAC UNIT	22-44
Figure 47: CENTRAL HEATING SYSTEM COMPONENTS.....	22-45
Figure 48: HVAC COMPARTMENT	22-46
Figure 49: DRIVER'S WATER SOLENOID VALVE.....	22-48
Figure 50: CENTRAL HOT WATER PNEUMATIC VALVE ASSEMBLY	22-49
Figure 51: PNEUMATIC WATER VALVE.....	22-49

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Figure 52: VIP WATER RECIRCULATION PUMP INSTALLATION..... 22-50

Figure 53: WATER RECIRCULATING PUMP 22-52

Figure 54: WATER FILTER..... 22-55

Figure 55: WEBASTO PREHEATER (104,000 BTU) 22-56

Figure 56: WEBASTO 22-57

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

1. HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

The coach's interior is pressurized by its Heating, Ventilation, Air Conditioning (HVAC) units. Air flow and controls divide the vehicle in two sections: driver's and Central (passenger) sections. The interior of vehicle should always be slightly pressurized to prevent dust and moisture from entering vehicle. Each section has its own fresh air, returning air and discharge air ducting. The exhaust is mainly done through the lavatory ventilator and through normal airtightness losses.

2. AIR CIRCULATION WITH CENTRAL SYSTEM

2.1 DRIVER'S AREA

Fresh air is taken from a plenum behind the front bumper and enters the mixing box through an ON/OFF damper. Returning air is taken through a front dash panel into the mixing box. The driver's REcirculation button is located on the R.H. dashboard control panel (Fig. 4). Mixed air goes through cooling and heating coils, fans and discharge ducts.

Both right and left discharge ducts defrost one half of the windshield. The driver can also, with the "Main Windshield Defroster" control divert his air flow to the console, from which he can direct vent to his knees and/or upper body with adjustable HVAC register and to his feet with the appropriate button (see Fig. 1 and Operator's manual or Owner's manual).

2.1.1 Coaches

Two additional air outlets are supplied by the Central HVAC ducting system. One is located in the stepwell. The flow comes from the left side and is drawn from the first step riser. The other air outlet is located behind the driver, on his L.H. side. The air outlets can be rotated to direct Air flow. Optionally, the coach may be equipped with a de-icing system in the windshield upper-section, refer to paragraph: "Central Heating System" for more information.

2.1.2 VIP

VIP vehicles equipped with a central system have two additional registers located near the entrance door, at bottom of first lateral window.

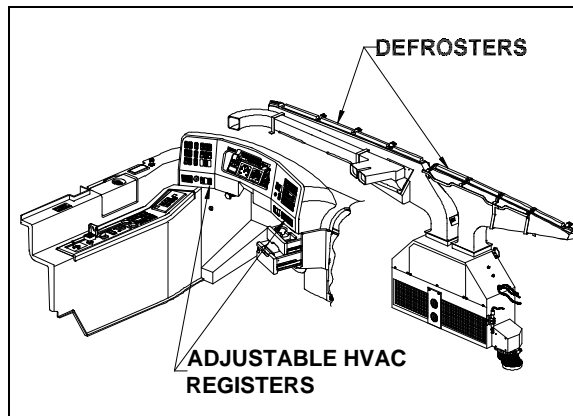


FIGURE 1: DRIVER'S AIR CIRCULATION

22121

2.2 CENTRAL AREA (Passenger/Cabin)

Fresh air is taken from the left side of vehicle through a two-position damper located at the left of the HVAC compartment. The thermal control damper can be fully opened for normal operation or partially closed for extreme weather or highly polluted areas. The "Recirc." push-button switch is located on the HVAC control unit. Press down the push-button to partially close the fresh air damper.

Note: Opening the entrance door also partially closes the fresh air damper.

Return air is drawn through the last entrance step riser and from the lower section of the floor ducts in two locations: one in the rear section of vehicle and the other in the front section of vehicle on the L.H. side (Fig. 2).

A double blower fan unit, which is activated by the evaporator motor, draws mixed air through an air filter, cooling and heating coils, then forces this air in the ventilation ducts (upper section) along the walls, and finally exhausts it at the bottom of the windows.

On coaches, the HVAC system includes a parcel rack ventilation system equipped with adjustable registers in the parcel racks to control air flow for the passenger seats. One register per seat direct air flow by pointing or rotating register. Open or close register to adjust air flow (Fig. 3).

Also on coaches, the lavatory ventilator acts as the main exhaust for the whole vehicle, eliminates odors, and finally heats or cools the lavatory with the vehicle's ambient air.

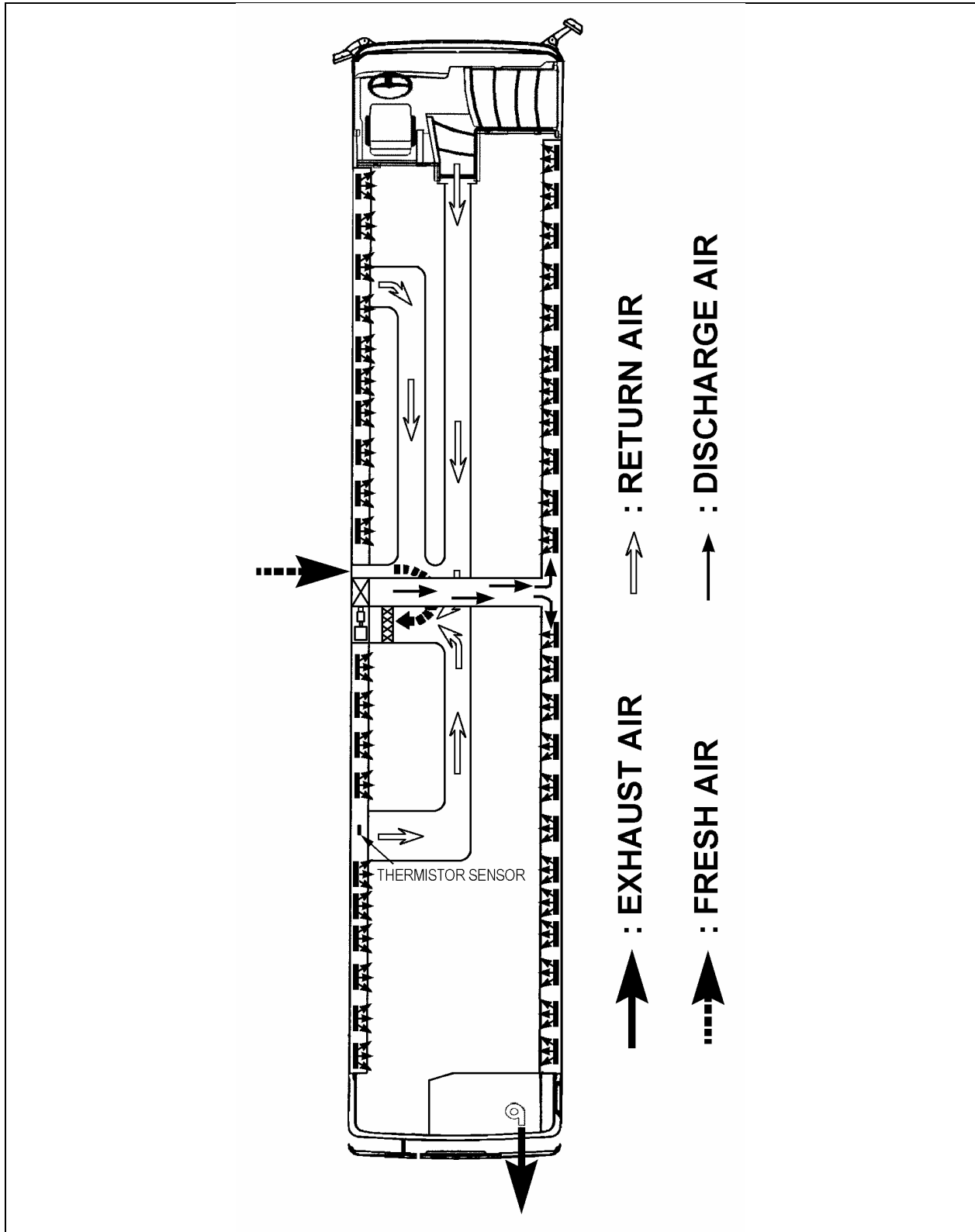


FIGURE 2: CENTRAL HVAC SYSTEM AIR CIRCULATION

22234

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

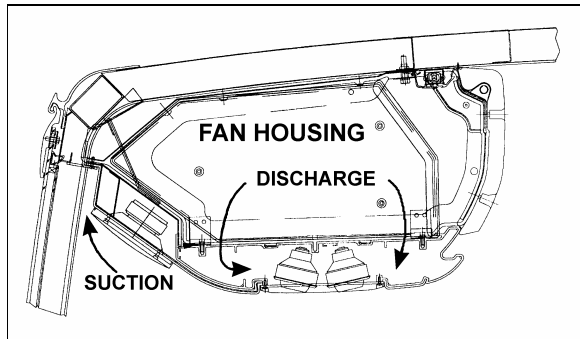


FIGURE 3: PARCEL RACK VENTILATION SYSTEM

3. AIR CIRCULATION WITH SMALL SYSTEM

Fresh air is taken from a plenum behind the front bumper and enters the mixing box through an adjustable damper. Returning air is taken through a front dash panel into the mixing box. The driver's RECirculation button is located on the R.H. dashboard control panel (Fig. 4). Mixed air goes through cooling and heating coils, fans and discharge ducts.

Both right and left discharge ducts defrost one half of the windshield. The driver can also, with the "Main Windshield Defroster" control divert his air flow to the console, from which he can direct vent to his knees and/or upper body with adjustable HVAC register and to his feet with the appropriate button (see Fig. 1 and Owner's manual).

3.1 AUXILIARY SYSTEM

VIP vehicles are equipped with an auxiliary system that provides five additional registers. Three are located behind the driver's seat and the other two are located near the entrance door, at bottom of first lateral window.

4. SMALL HVAC SYSTEM OPERATION

The temperature control in the driver's area is provided directly by the HVAC control unit mounted on the dashboard R.H. side.

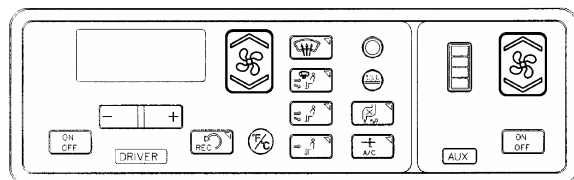


FIGURE 4: HVAC DASHBOARD CONTROL UNIT 22184

Using the Up/Down type switch sets the fan speed and the speed chosen is illustrated on the window display.

4.1 AUXILIARY SYSTEM OPERATION

The temperature control is provided by the small system HVAC control unit. The R.H. portion of the HVAC control unit enables to actuate the Aux. System and to regulate the fan speed. Using the Up/Down type switch sets the fan speed and the speed chosen is illustrated on the window display.

5. CENTRAL HVAC SYSTEM OPERATION

5.1 DRIVER'S AREA

The temperature control in the driver's area is provided directly by the L.H. portion of the HVAC control unit mounted on the dashboard R.H. side.

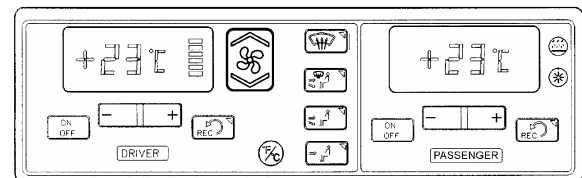
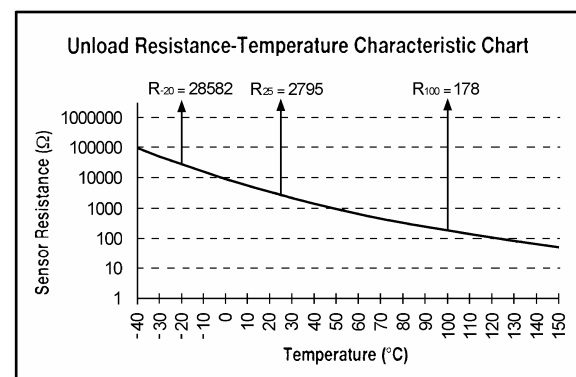


FIGURE 5: HVAC DASHBOARD CONTROL UNIT 22184

The driver's HVAC unit piping is paralleled with the main HVAC unit piping. Both units use the same refrigerant and coolant, and are linked to the same condenser and compressor, even if they are individually controlled. It requires the main HVAC unit to engage the A/C compressor magnetic clutch; consequently, the driver's unit cannot be operated alone in the A/C mode.

The following table and 2% error chart can be used to troubleshoot the driver's area air temperature sensor.



Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Temp °C	Temp °F	Resistance Ohms
-40	-40	100865
-35	-31	72437
-30	-22	52594
-25	-13	38583
-20	-4	28582
-15	5	21371
-10	14	16120
-5	23	12261
0	32	9399
5	41	7263
10	50	5658
15	59	4441
20	68	3511
25	77	2795
30	86	2240
35	95	1806
40	104	1465
45	113	1195
50	122	980
55	131	808
60	140	670
65	149	559
70	158	468
75	167	394
80	176	333
85	185	283
90	194	241
95	203	207
100	212	178
105	221	153
110	230	133
115	239	115
120	248	100
125	257	88
130	266	77
135	275	68
140	284	60
145	293	53
150	302	47

Using the Up/Down type switch sets the fan speed and the speed chosen is illustrated on the window display.

5.2 CENTRAL AREA

The R.H. portion of the HVAC control unit located on the dashboard R.H. side, enables the selection of the temperature in the main section (Refer to the H3 Owner's or Operator's Manual for details).

Temperature control is provided in conjunction with a thermistor sensor located inside return duct, on L.H. side of vehicle (Figs. 2).

The flow of water to the vehicle's main heater core is controlled by an electric water valve which varies the cycling rate depending on selected temperature. A red LED, located on HVAC control unit, illuminates when the valve is open. A green LED illuminates when compressor clutch is in operation.

The evaporator motor installed in HVAC compartment on the L.H. side of vehicle is protected by a 150 amp, manually-resettable (CB8) circuit breaker mounted in the main power compartment (refer to Section 06, "Electrical System" in this manual for details).

The condenser mounted on the opposite side of the evaporator is ventilated by two axial fans. Each axial fan motor is protected by a manually-resettable 40 amp circuit breaker (CB 77 & CB 78) mounted in the main power compartment on rear R.H. side of vehicle. (Fig. 6) Furthermore, the following relays and resistors are located in the Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning Compartment (HVAC) (Fig. 7). They are mounted on the control panel located on the R.H. side wall when facing the compartment:

- R39 – Condenser fan motor
- R40 – Condenser speed control HI
- R41 – Condenser speed control HI
- R50 – Evaporator fan LOW & HI speed
- R60 – Evaporator fan HI speed
- R63 – Time Delay
- RS36 – Current limit for relay
- RS37 – Current limit for relay

To operate the air conditioning system when coach is stationary, engine should run at fast idle. During operation of the air conditioning system, windows should be kept closed and door not left open longer than necessary. In order to prevent battery discharge, A/C-heating system will not operate if vehicle charging system is not working properly.

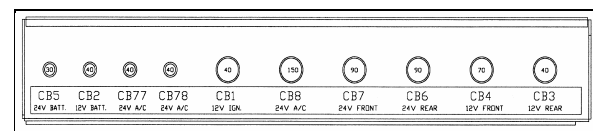


FIGURE 6: MAIN BREAKERS

06473

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

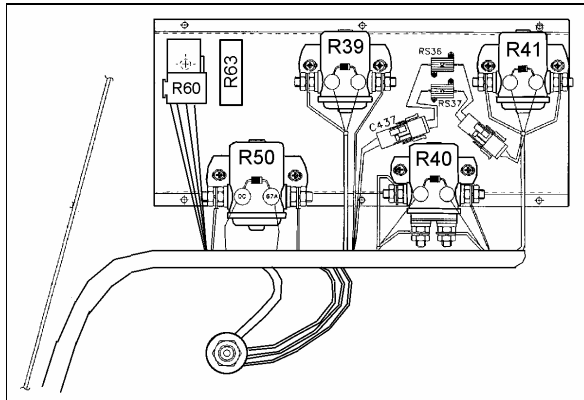


FIGURE 7: LOCATION OF RELAYS AND RESISTORS⁰⁶⁴⁸³

5.3 PARCEL RACK A/C (H3 COACHES)

Optional small A/C evaporator coils may be added to both parcel racks existing air system. This air system permits a wider temperature range in the passenger's area.

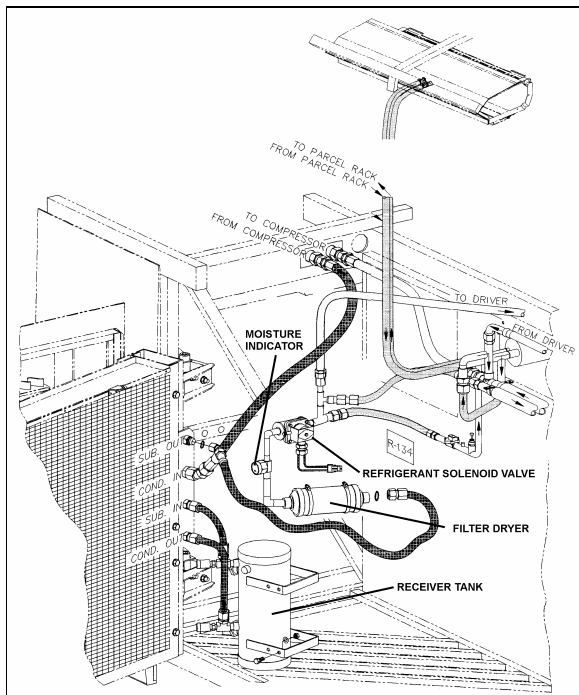


FIGURE 8: PARCEL RACK A/C INSTALLATION

22221

Note: Squeeze rubber hose located under the concerned compartment, to eliminate water and dirt when you make routine maintenance.

6.1 COIL CLEANING

Check the external surface of the coil at regular intervals for dirt or any foreign matter.

For the driver's HVAC unit, remove the grill and the access panels and back flush the evaporator coil from inside (Fig. 13).

For the optional windshield upper section defroster, remove the bottom access panel, remove the six bolts fixing the blower motor assembly. Use low air pressure to clean the coil.

For the central system evaporator coil, back flush the coil (Fig. 9) every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year whichever comes first and for the condenser, back flush the coil (Fig. 10) every 6,250 miles (10 000 km) or twice a year, whichever comes first.

Use a water jet or water mixed with low air pressure to clean the coil.

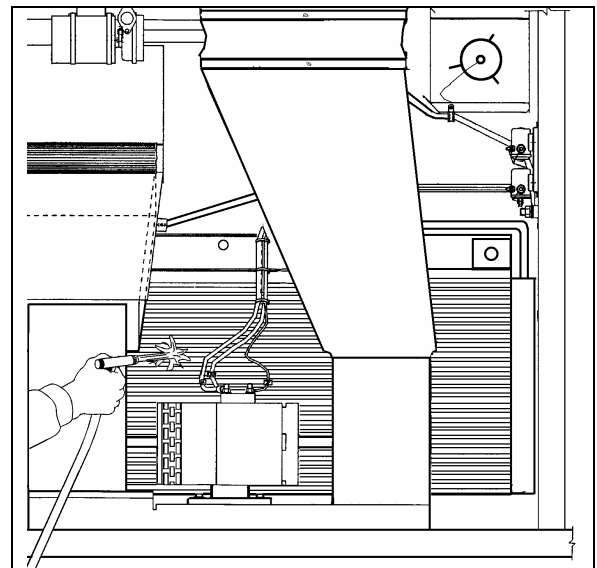


FIGURE 9: EVAPORATOR COIL

22226

6. HVAC UNIT MAINTENANCE

No special maintenance is required on the main and driver's units, with the exception of cleaning their respective coil air filters.

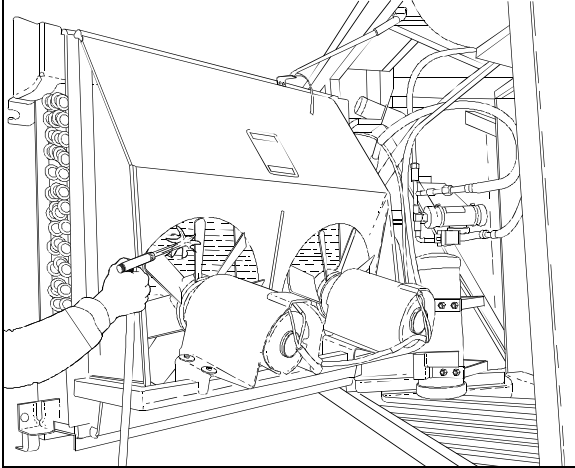


FIGURE 10: CONDENSER COIL

22170

Caution: Direct the pressure straight through the coil to prevent bending of fins and do not use extremely high pressure. Do not use hot water, steam or caustic soap.

6.2 DRIVER'S HVAC UNIT AIR FILTERS

The driver HVAC system is located behind the dashboard's R.H. side lateral plastic panel. To gain access to the A/C filters, unscrew the R.H. lateral console's grill located at the top step of the entrance door steps. Slide out the R/A and F/A filters. To clean filter back flush with water, then dry with air, every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first (Fig. 11, 12 & 13).

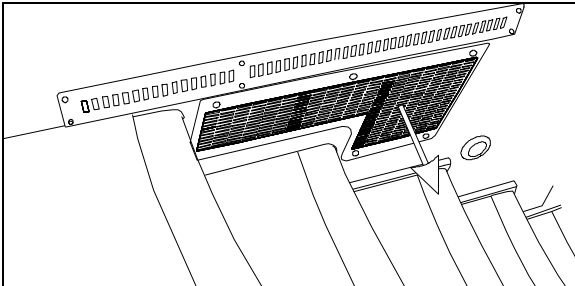


FIGURE 11: DRIVER'S CONSOLE ACCESS GRILL

18505

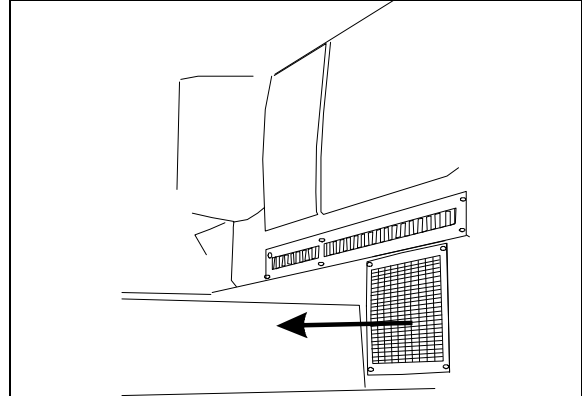


FIGURE 12: VIP CONSOLE ACCESS GRILL

22232

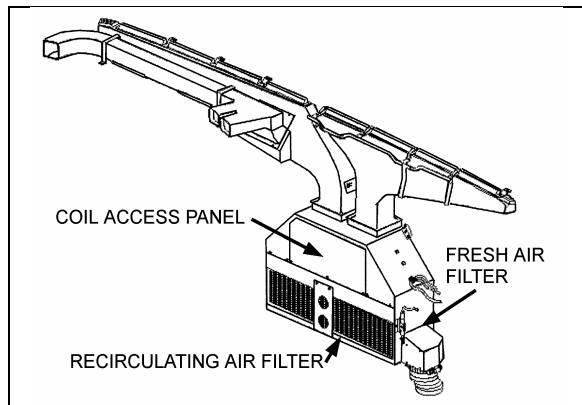


FIGURE 13: DRIVER'S AREA AIR FILTERS

22171

6.3 CENTRAL HVAC UNIT AIR FILTER

The main air filter is located in the HVAC compartment (Fig. 14). To access the filter, locate access panels in one of the baggage compartments adjacent to the HVAC compartments (L.H. side). Open panels by turning the three screws of either panel $\frac{1}{4}$ of a turn, unsnap both fasteners on top of filter, and slide out filter. To clean filter, back flush with water or soapy water, then dry with air every 12,500 miles (20 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

Caution: Do not use high pressure water jet to avoid damaging filter.

Caution: Be sure not to reverse filter upon installation.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

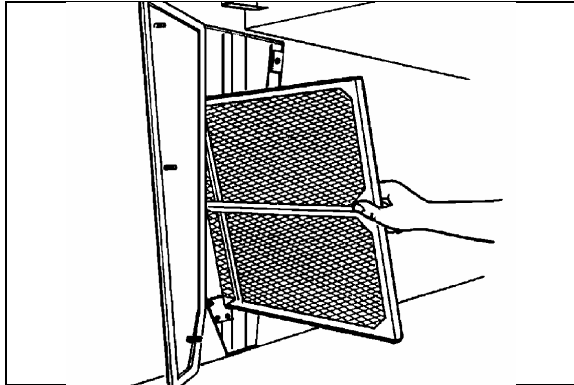


FIGURE 14: MAIN HVAC UNIT AIR FILTER

22100

6.4 PARCEL RACK FAN AIR FILTER

A/C evaporator coils may be installed in both parcel rack air systems. Only the air filters are serviceable. The air filters are accessible from inside the parcel racks. Slide out the filters, then back flush with water, dry with air and replace. This procedure should be done every 12,500 miles (20,000 km) or once a year, whichever come first.

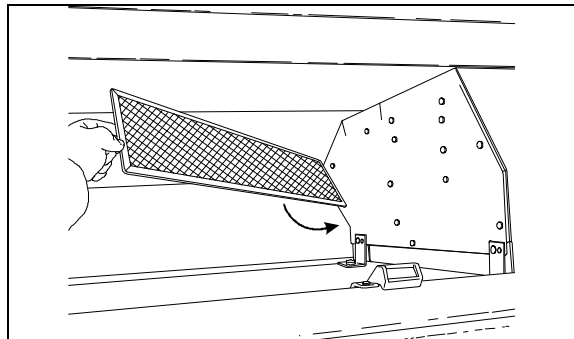


FIGURE 15: PARCEL RACK FAN AIR FILTER

22201

For A/C unit, ball valves are added on supply and return lines in the condenser compartment. They have service port to evacuate the A/C parcel rack circuit. When work has to be done on a evaporator coil unit, it will be easier to remove it and repair it on a bench.



7. DIAGNOSIS OF MAIN HVAC UNIT PROBLEMS

7.1 TROUBLESHOOTING MODE

Troubleshooting the HVAC system is made easier when entering the "Troubleshooting Mode". The Troubleshooting Mode is used while

driving the vehicle to diagnose a low or high pressure in the HVAC system.



To enter the Troubleshooting Mode, proceed as follows:

1. Check that HVAC system in passenger section is OFF.
2. First press  and hold, then press  and hold both buttons for 2 seconds.
3. Passenger section display should indicate 00 to show that Troubleshooting Mode is activated.

Note: To return to Normal Operating Mode, turn the HVAC system OFF in the passenger section.

Low Pressure



The Telltale panel located in center dashboard

should indicate  when pressing  on the passenger section panel if a low pressure condition is present.

Note: The telltale indicator will only illuminate if Troubleshooting Mode was entered and a low pressure condition is present.

High Pressure

The Telltale panel located in center dashboard

should indicate  when pressing  on the passenger section panel if a high pressure condition is present.

Note: The telltale indicator will only illuminate if Troubleshooting Mode was entered and a high pressure condition is present.

7.2 CONTINUITY CHECK

A continuity check is automatically performed at HVAC system start-up. If an open or short-circuit occurs, the corresponding switch LED or the display will blink for 10 seconds. The probes are checked at least every 5 minutes.

Circuit	Switch LED or Display
F/A damper driver	Driver Rec
Damper mix	Driver air 4 th switch
Driver "Liquid Solenoid Valve"	Driver display "Set Point" (AC)
Driver "Hot Water Valve"	Driver display "Set Point" (HE)
Passenger "Hot Water Valve"	Passenger display "Set Point" (HE)
A/C Clutch Relay	A/C Clutch
Exterior Probe	Display "Text". (---)
Driver interior probe	Driver display "Set Point" (---)
Passenger interior probe	Passenger display "Set Point" (

8. EVAPORATOR MOTOR

The evaporator motor is installed in the HVAC compartment (L.H. side of vehicle) (Fig. 16). It is a 27.5 volt, 2HP (1,5 kW) motor which activates a double blower fan unit.

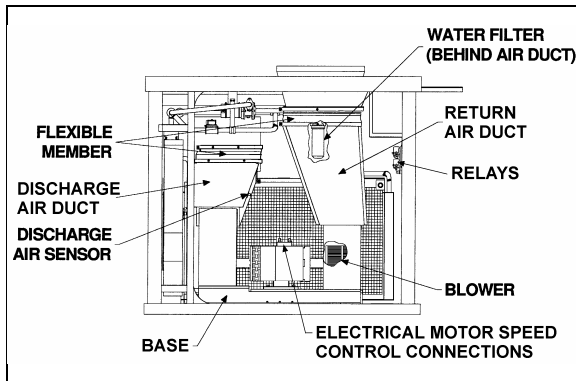


FIGURE 16: HVAC COMPARTMENT

22227

8.1 REMOVAL

- Set the battery safety switch to the "OFF" position.
- Open the last L.H. side baggage compartment door. Pull the black release button located on the L.H. side in order to unlock and open the HVAC compartment door.

- Identify the L.H. side discharge duct inside compartment and remove the Phillips head screws fixing the air duct to blower fan.
- Repeat step 3 for the R.H. side return air duct.
- Disconnect electrical motor speed control connections on the motor plate.
- From under the vehicle, remove the eight bolts fixing the double blower fan unit base. Remove the complete unit from the HVAC compartment (Fig. 17).

Caution: Never support evaporator motor assembly by its output shafts while moving it. Always use double blower fan unit base.

- Install on a work bench the complete unit, unfasten the fan square head set screws, the Phillips head screws retaining cages to base and slide out the assemblies from the evaporator motor output shaft.
- Remove motor from double blower fan unit base.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

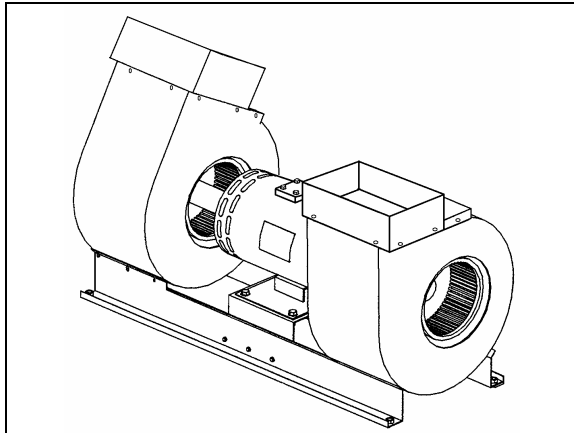


FIGURE 17: EVAPORATOR MOTOR ASSEMBLY 22228

8.2 INSTALLATION

To reinstall the evaporator motor, reverse "Evaporator Motor Removal" procedure.

8.3 CHECKING OPERATION OF BRUSH IN HOLDER

Lift brush slightly 1/8 inch (3 mm) and release it. Brush must produce a dry noise.

8.4 BRUSH WEAR INSPECTION AND REPLACEMENT

Caution: Only use replacement brushes recommended by the manufacturer. Not doing so will void warranty.

Replace the brushes if less than 3/4 inch (19 mm). New brush length is 1-1/4 inch. Clean brushes with a clean cloth impregnated with gasoline or alcohol.

Warning: Cleaning products are flammable and may explode under certain conditions. Always handle in a well ventilated area.

To replace brushes, proceed as follows:

1. Set battery safety switch to the "OFF" position.
2. Remove the protective screen band from the motor housing by pulling down the spring loaded fastener.
3. Lift the spring, remove and replace brushes as per the standard procedure.
4. For the installation, reverse procedure.

8.5 BRUSH OLDER ADJUSTMENT

Note: The brush holders are mounted on a support that can rotate. Rotating that support will move all the brush holders at the same time.

1. Remove the screws securing the grille and remove the grille. Locate the 2 bolts fixing the mechanism permitting the rotation of the brush holder support.
2. Loosen (do not remove) the bolts just enough to release the mechanism.
3. Move gently the exposed brush holder in order to have a distance of 10 mm (3/8") maximum between the brush holder face and a reference line passing through the center of the 2 bolts on the motor housing.

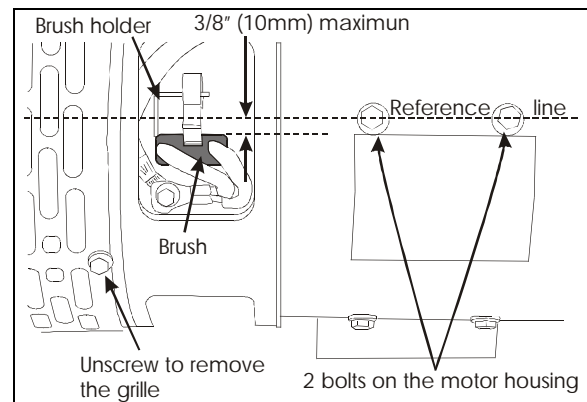


FIGURE 18: EVAPORATOR MOTOR

8.6 CHECKING COMMUTATOR

The surface must be polished. A brown-black colored surface is normal and indicates a good switching. Ensure there is no evidence of arcing or metal chips.

9. CENTRAL AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

The schematic of Figure 19 shows the central A/C system and its components. The central system is equipped with a 6 cylinder, 05G-134A Carrier compressor with an air conditioning capacity of 9 tons. The receiver tank and filter dryer are mounted inside the condenser compartment. The fuel filler door is a small door located at left of A/C condenser compartment door, allowing viewing of the filter dryer and the moisture indicator.

Note: For opening of the A/C condenser door, open the baggage compartment door at the right of the A/C condenser compartment door. The condenser compartment door must be unbolted to fully swing open.

9.1 A/C CYCLE

Refrigeration may be defined as "the transfer of heat from a place where it is not wanted to a place where it is unobjectionable". Components required for a closed circuit refrigeration system are shown in figure 19.

The air conditioning system used in the H3 series vehicle is the "Closed" type using "R-134a".

1. The refrigerant flowing to the compressor is compressed to high pressure and reaches a temperature higher than the surrounding air. It is passed through the air-cooled fins and tubes of the condenser causing the hot, high pressure gas to be condensed into a liquid form.
2. The liquid refrigerant flows to the receiver tank, then back to the condenser sub-cooler. It leaves the condenser and passes through a filter dryer where moisture, acids and dirt are removed and then through a moisture indicator which indicates if any moisture is present in the system.
3. By its own pressure, the liquid refrigerant flows through a thermal expansion valve where the pressure drop causes the refrigerant to vaporize in a vapor-liquid state at a low temperature pressure.
4. The cold low pressure refrigerant passes through the main and the driver's evaporator coils which absorb heat from the air passing over the fins and tubes, and changes into gas. In this form, the refrigerant is drawn into the compressor to repeat the air conditioning cycle.
5. The success of the air conditioning system depends on retaining the conditioned air within the vehicle. All windows and intake vents should be closed. An opening of approximately 8 in² (5162 mm²) could easily neutralize the total capacity of the system.

6. Other causes of inadequate cooling are dirty coils or filter. Dirt acts as insulation and also serves as a restriction to the air flow.
7. The refrigeration load is not constant and varies. It is also affected by outside temperature, relative humidity, passenger load, compressor speed, the number of stops, etc.
8. The compressor will load depending on operating conditions.

9.2 REFRIGERANT

The A/C system of this vehicle has been designed to use Refrigerant 134a as a medium. Regardless of the brand, only R-134a must be used in this system. The chemical name for this refrigerant is Ethane, 1, 1, 1, 2-Tetrafluoro.

Warning: Refrigerant in itself is nonflammable, but if it comes in contact with an open flame, it will decompose.

9.2.1 Procurement

Refrigerant is shipped and stored in metal cylinders. It is serviced in 30 and 100 pound (13,6 and 45 kg) cylinders. Approximately 25 pounds (11,4 kg) are used in the central system.

It will be impossible to draw the entire refrigerant out of the cylinder. However, the use of warm water when charging the system will assure the extraction of a maximum amount of refrigerant from the cylinder.

9.2.2 Precautions in Handling Refrigerant

1. Do not leave refrigerant cylinder uncapped.
2. Do not subject cylinder to high temperatures, do not weld or steam clean near system or cylinder.
3. Do not fill cylinder completely.
4. Do not discharge vapor into an area where a flame is exposed.
5. Do not expose the eyes to liquid refrigerant.

All refrigerant cylinders are shipped with a heavy metal screw cap. The purpose of the cap is to protect the valve and safety plug from damage. It is a good practice to replace the cap

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

after each use of the cylinder for the same reason. If the cylinder is exposed to the sun's radiant heat pressure increase resulting may cause release of the safety plug or the cylinder may burst.

For the same reason, the refrigerant cylinder should never be subjected to excessive temperature when charging a system. The refrigerant cylinder should be heated for charging purposes by placing it in 125°F (52°C) water. Never heat above 125°F (52°C) or use a blowtorch, radiator, or stove to heat the cylinder.

Welding or steam cleaning on or near any refrigerant line or components of the A/C system could build up dangerous and damaging pressures in the system.

If a small cylinder is ever filled from a large one, never fill the cylinder completely. Space should always be allowed above the liquid for expansion. Weighing cylinders before and during the transfer will determine the fullness of the cylinders

Warning: One of the most important precautions when handling refrigerant consists in protecting the eyes. Any liquid refrigerant which may accidentally escape is approximately -40°F (-40°C). If refrigerant comes in contact with the eyes, serious injury could result. Always wear goggles to protect the eyes when opening refrigerant connections.

9.2.3 Treatment in Case of Injury

If liquid refrigerant comes in contact with the skin, treat the injury as if the skin was frost-bitten or frozen. If liquid refrigerant comes in contact with the eyes, consult an eye specialist or doctor immediately. Give the following first aid treatment:

1. Do not rub the eyes. Splash eyes with cold water to gradually bring the temperature above the freezing point.
2. Apply drops of sterile mineral oil (obtainable at any drugstore) in the eyes to reduce the possibility of infection. The mineral oil will also help in absorbing the refrigerant.

9.2.4 Precautions in Handling Refrigerant Lines

1. All metal tubing lines should be free of kinks, because of the resulting restrictions

on the flow of refrigerant. A single kink can greatly reduced the refrigeration capacity of the entire system.

2. The flexible hose lines should never be allowed to come within a distance of 2-½" (6,3 cm) from the exhaust manifold.
3. Use only sealed lines from parts stock.
4. When disconnecting any fitting in the refrigeration system, the system must first be discharged of all refrigerant. However, proceed very cautiously, regardless of gauge readings. If there happens to be liquid refrigerant in the line, disconnect fittings very slowly, keeping face and hands away so that no injury can occur. If pressure is noticed when fitting is loosened, allow it to bleed off very slowly.

Warning: Always wear safety goggles when opening refrigerant lines.

5. In the event that any line is opened to the atmosphere, it should be immediately capped to prevent entrance of moisture and dirt.
6. The use of the proper wrenches when making connections on O-ring fittings is important. The use of improper wrenches may damage the connection. The opposing fitting should always be backed up with a wrench to prevent distortion of connection lines or components. When connecting the flexible hose connections, it is important that the swaged fitting and the flare nut, as well as the coupling to which it is attached, be held at the same time using three different wrenches to prevent turning the fitting and damaging the ground seat.
7. The O-rings and seats must be in perfect condition. The slightest burr or piece of dirt may cause a leak.
8. O-rings should be coated with refrigeration oil and installed on the line before the line is inserted into the fitting to prevent damaging the O-ring. If leaks are encountered at the couplings or connectors, no attempt should be made to correct the leaks by tightening the connections beyond the recommended torque. The O-rings are designed to seal at the specified torque and overtightening the connection does not result in a satisfactory

and permanently sealed connection. The connection must be disassembled and the cause of the leak (damaged O-ring, defective lines, etc.) corrected. Use new O-ring.

9.3 REFRIGERANT SYSTEM CLEAN-OUT AFTER COMPRESSOR FAILURE

Although the vast majority of reciprocating refrigerant compressors manufactured today are extremely reliable, a small percentage do fail. These failures usually result in minor or extensive system contamination depending on the severity of the failure. When an open type compressor becomes damaged internally, this provokes small particles of bearings, steel, brass, copper, and aluminum and, in severe cases, carbonized oil, which could contaminate the system. To prevent repeated failures, the problem which caused the failure should be corrected, and depending upon the severity of the failure, the system should be thoroughly cleaned out using one of the cleanout procedures mentioned.

9.3.1 Determining Severity of Failure

The severity of compressor failure can be categorized as minor or major. A failure is considered minor when the contamination is limited to the compressor with little or no system contamination. A major failure, or burnout, results in extensive system contamination as well as compressor damage. Extensive system contamination can be determined by withdrawing a small sample of compressor oil and checking its color, odor and acidity. A Virginia Chemical "TKO" one step acid test kit is one of several compressor oil test kits that may be used. A high acid content would indicate a major failure or burnout. A small amount of refrigerant gas may be discharged. A characteristic burned odor would also indicate severe system contamination.

9.3.2 Clean-out after Minor Compressor Failure

1. Be sure to correct the problem which caused the failure.
2. Change liquid line filter dryer.

3. Run the unit for 2 hours on high speed cool only.
4. Check compressor oil level to ensure compressor is not overcharged with oil. Sometimes a significant amount of oil is pumped out of the compressor to other parts of the system when a compressor fails. This oil will return to the replacement compressor when it is started, causing an overcharge of oil in the sump of the replacement compressor. In this case, it is important that the oil level be adjusted to the proper level.
5. Withdraw a sample of the compressor oil and check its color, odor, and acidity, using instructions supplied above. If the oil is contaminated, change the oil and filter dryer, and repeat the procedure until the system is clean.

9.3.3 Clean-out After Major Compressor Failure

1. Reclaim the refrigerant into a refrigerant bottle through a filter dryer to filter out contaminants.
2. Remove the failed compressor and repair it if possible.
3. Install new or repaired compressor.
4. Change the filter dryer.
5. Circulate clean R-134a with the reclaimer to clean out many of the contaminants collected in the coil valves, TXV (Thermal Expansion Valve), solenoid valves, check valves, and any other mechanical component that may have collected contaminants.
6. Evacuate and charge the system normally.
7. Run the unit for 8 hours and monitor the pressure drop across the filter dryer. Also check the liquid line dryer for signs of restriction. If the pressure drop across the filter dryer exceeds 12 to 14 psig (82,75 to 96,5 kPa) with a 40°F (5°C) evaporator coil temperature, stop the unit and change the liquid line and suction line filter dryer. After 4 or 5 hours of operation, stop the unit and replace the filter dryer.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

8. After 8 hours of operation, stop the unit and remove a sample of the compressor oil and check its color, odor, and acidity, using instructions supplied above. If the oil is contaminated, replace the oil and repeat step 7. If the oil is not contaminated, change the filter dryer again and replace the moisture-liquid indicator.
9. After approximately 7 days of operation, recheck the compressor oil for cleanliness and acidity.

9.4 PUMPING DOWN

This procedure is intended to reduce refrigerant loss by isolating it in the compressor and the receiver tank, as well as in their connecting line, in order to carry out repairs on other sections of the air conditioning system (lines and components).

Note: Before attempting any repair between compressor and receiver tank, use a recovery unit to remove refrigerant from the system.

Warning: When air conditioning system must be opened, refer to previous paragraph "Precautions In Handling Refrigerant" to prevent any injury.

Procedure

1. Energize passenger side liquid solenoid valve.
2. Run the system for 10 minutes, shut it OFF, then close the receiver tank outlet valve by turning it clockwise, backseat the suction service valve on the compressor, install an appropriate pressure gauge set, and turn the valve forward ¼ turn to enable a visual check of the suction pressure.
3. Disconnect the "Low Pressure Switch" connector (mounted near the A/C compressor, and install a jumper wire.

Note: This jumper wire will allow the clutch to remain engaged after pressure drops below 15 psi (103,5kPa).

4. Start the engine, press the "Passenger ON/OFF" switch then the A/C switch, adjust "A/C Temperature" control to maximum A/C.
5. Run the compressor until pressure reaches 1-2 psi (7-14 kPa).

Note: During this operation, care must be taken not to fill the receiver tank over the upper sight glass. If so, stop process immediately. Always allow refrigerant piping and units to warm up to the ambient air temperature before opening system or sweating will take place inside the lines.

5. Stop engine, and close compressor outlet valve by turning it clockwise until valve is properly seated.
6. Close compressor suction valve by turning it clockwise until it is properly seated.
7. Wait until pressure gauge reaches 1 to 2 psi (7 to 14 kPa). To accelerate procedure, lightly open compressor suction valve until pressure reaches this value.

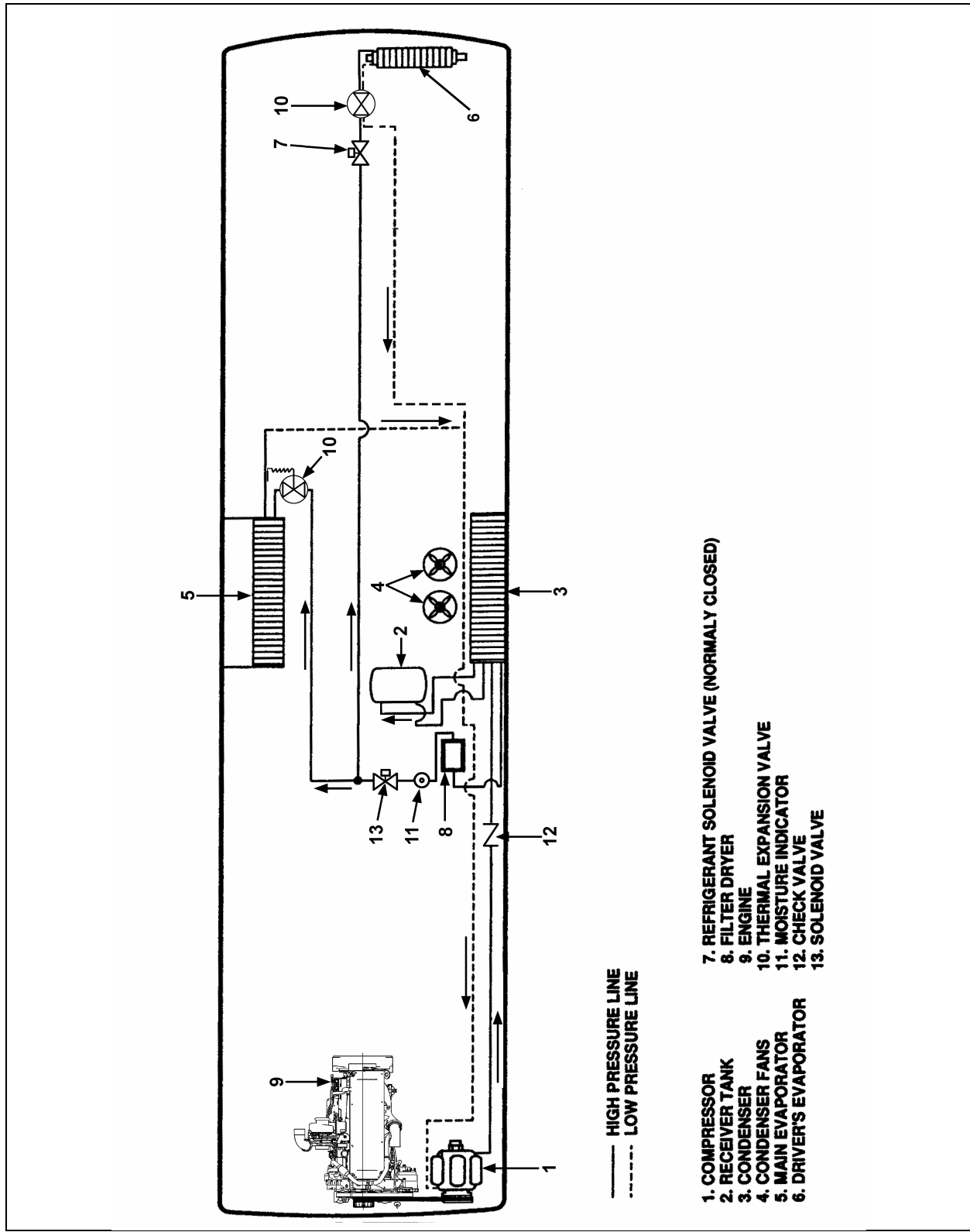


FIGURE 19: CENTRAL A/C SYSTEM COMPONENTS

22220

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

9.5 ADDING REFRIGERANT (VAPOR STATE)

Use the suction service valve on the compressor to add a small quantity of refrigerant to the system. Backseat the valve and connect a charging line from the refrigerant cylinder to the valve. Tighten connection at level of refrigerant cylinder and open tank end slightly to purge air from the charging line. Tighten the charging line at the compressor. Screw in the stem of suction valve approximately two turns. Start the engine and run at fast idle. Add sufficient refrigerant to bring the level in lower sight glass of receiver tank to mid-point. Always charge the system with the cylinder upright and the valve on top to avoid drawing liquid out of the cylinder. Fill liquid refrigerant at the receiver tank and completely charge, if necessary, using previous procedure.

9.6 EVACUATING SYSTEM

1. Open both receiver valves by turning "out" (normal position).
2. Remove the caps from the two 90° adapters on the suction, discharge valves and connect two hoses to the vacuum.
3. Place the two compressor valves, suction and discharge, in neutral position by turning each one 3 to 4 turns "in" from the "out" position.
4. Open the solenoid valve by energizing or manually bypass.
5. Start the vacuum pump. Open the large (suction) shutoff valve and close the small vacuum gauge valve.
6. The pressure will drop to approximately 29 inches vacuum (14.2 psi or 97,9 kPa) (the dial gauge only gives a general idea of the absolute system pressure).
7. Backseat the compressor valves by turning "out" all the way.
8. Shut down the vacuum pump.
9. Remove the hoses.
10. Reinstall the caps at the suction valve take-off points.

9.6.1 Double Sweep Evacuation Procedure

1. Remove any remaining refrigerant from the system using a refrigerant recovery machine.
2. Connect the evacuation manifold, vacuum pump, hoses and micron gauge to the unit.
3. With the unit service valves closed (back seated) and the vacuum pump and the thermistor valves open, start the pump and draw the manifold and hoses into a very deep vacuum. Shut the vacuum pump off and see if the vacuum holds. This is to check the setup for leaks.
4. Midseat the system service valves.
5. Open the vacuum pump and the thermistor valves. Start the pump and evacuate to a system pressure of 2000 microns.
6. Close the vacuum pump and the thermistor valves, turn off the vacuum pump (closing the thermistor valve protect the valve from damage).
7. Break the vacuum with clean refrigerant (or dry nitrogen) and raise the pressure to approximately 2 PSIG. Monitor the pressure with the compound gauge.
8. Remove the refrigerant with the recovery machine.
9. Repeat steps #5 – 8 one time.
10. After the second "sweep", change the filter drier (if you have not done so) and evacuate to 500 microns.
11. Evacuating the system below 500 microns on systems using the Carrier 05G compressor may risk drawing air into the system past the carbon shaft seal.
12. Check to insure that vacuum holds. (If the pressure continues to rise, it indicates a leak or moisture in the system).
13. Charge the system with the proper amount of refrigerant using recommended charging procedures.

Note: This method will aid in preventing unnecessary system failures by ensuring that the refrigeration system is free of contaminants.

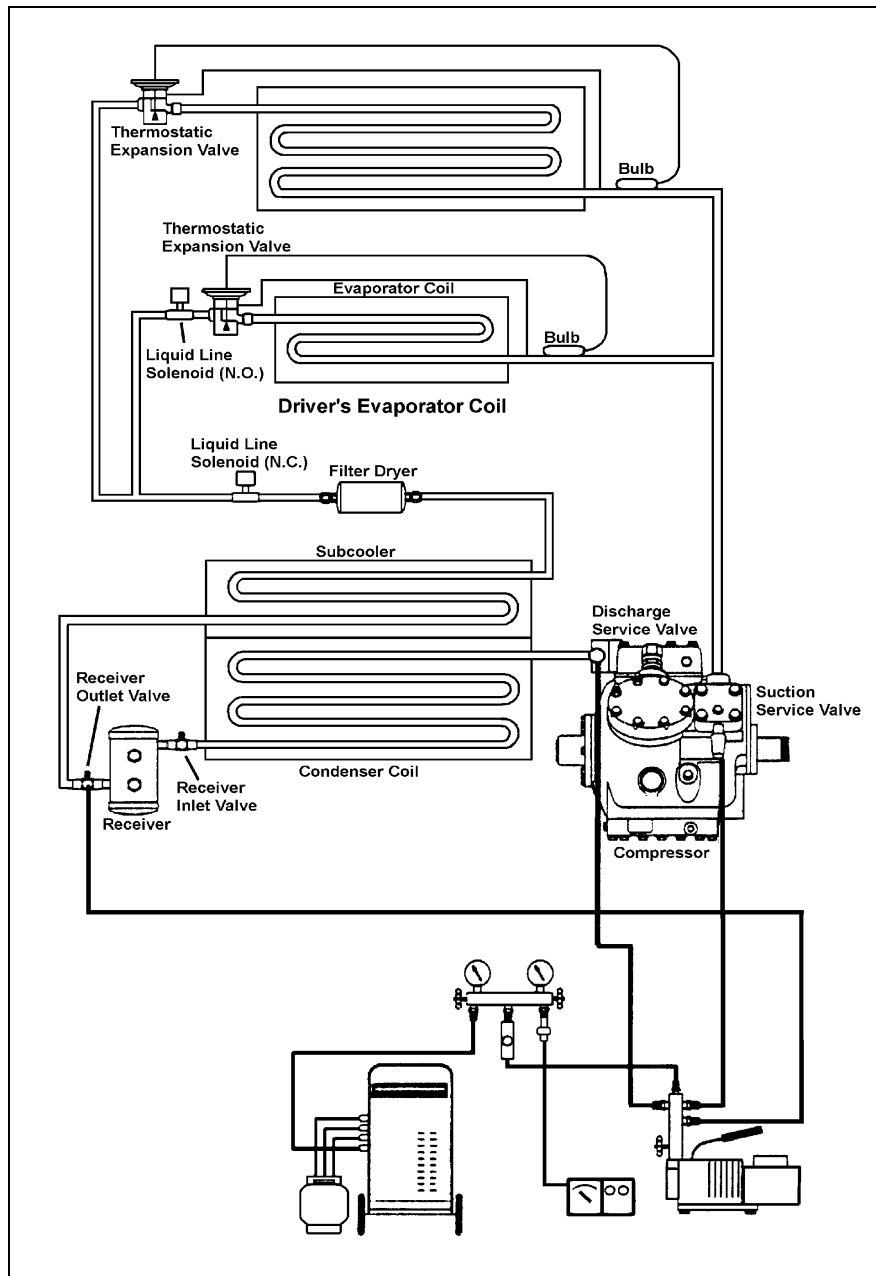


FIGURE 20: DOUBLE SWEEP EVACUATION SET-UP

9.7 CHARGING SYSTEM

When a system has been opened or if there are any questions about the air or moisture in the system, evacuate the system. Charging of an evacuated system may be accomplished by forcing liquid R-134a directly into the receiver tank.

When charging an empty system, weigh the amount of refrigerant put into the system.

This will eliminate any possibility of overfilling. A nominal charge requires 24 pounds (10,9 kg).

1. Backseat the two compressor shutoff valves ("out").
2. Install the test gauges at the shutoff valves noting that the 400 psi (2758 kPa) gauge is connected to the discharge.
3. Turn in the two shutoff valves 3 to 4 turns.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

4. Open the lower receiver valve by turning "out" all the way.
5. Backseat the upper receiver valve by turning out all the way.
6. Remove the cover cap from the service fitting in the top receiver valve.
7. Attach a charging hose to the R-134a tank. Open the tank valve slightly permitting R-134a to escape thus purging the hose of air.
8. Connect the charging hose to the service fitting.
9. Open the R-134a tank valve.
10. To build up pressure in the receiver tank, heat the receiver tank with a heating blanket.
11. Turn in the upper receiver valve several turns. The R-134a will now enter the system.
12. The proper charge of R-134a is 24 lbs (10.89 kg). When the scale indicates this amount of charge, backseat the receiver valve and close the R-134a tank valve.
13. Disconnect the charging hose. Replace the cover caps.
14. The system is now ready for operation.

Caution: The evacuation of the system must be made by authorized and qualified personnel only. Refer to local laws for R-134a recuperation.

10. CENTRAL A/C SYSTEM COMPONENTS

10.1 COMPRESSOR (CENTRAL SYSTEM)

10.1.1 Belt Replacement

Warning: Set the main battery disconnect switch to the "Off" position. For greater safety, set the engine starter selector switch in engine compartment to the "Off" position.

1. Open engine compartment rear doors and locate the belt tensioner two-way control valve (Fig. 21), mounted above the engine R.H. side door next to the pressure regulating valve, then turn handle

counterclockwise in order to release pressure and tension on belts.

2. Slip the old belts off and the new ones on.
3. Reset belt tensioning pressure control valve (Fig. 21). Pressure is factory set to 45 psi (310 kPa), periodically check proper pressure.

Note: Both belts must always be replaced simultaneously to ensure an equal distribution of load on each of them.

Note: For proper operation of the air bellows, adjust upper tensioning bracket to provide a $\frac{1}{4}$ " (7 mm) gap between stopper and bracket under normal pressure of 45 psi - 310 kPa. (Fig. 22).

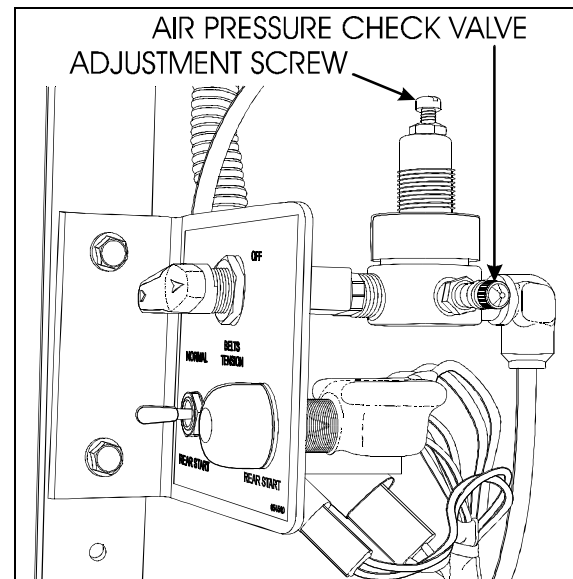


FIGURE 21: TENSIONING VALVE

01058

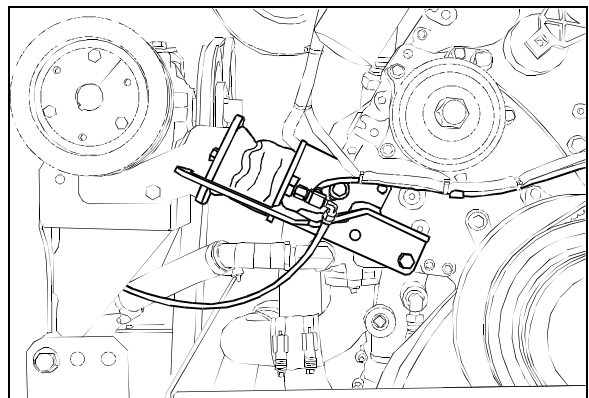


FIGURE 22: TENSIONING AIR BELLOWS

01059

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

10.1.2 Pulley Alignment

In order to avoid skipping, disengagement and a premature wear of compressor belt, it is necessary to align compressor pulley with the crankshaft pulley. Before performing the following procedure, release air from belt tensioners by means of the two-way control valve. After completing these procedures reset belt tensioning pressure control valve to 45 psi (310 kPa).

10.1.3 Longitudinal Compressor Alignment

1. Rest an extremity of a straight edge of approximately 46 inches (117 cm) against the upper part of the outer face of crankshaft pulley, positioning the other end close to the compressor clutch pulley (Figs. 23 & 24).
2. Check the distance between each extremity of straight edge (1, Fig. 23) and the first drive belt. If they are different, loosen the compressor support bolts and with a hammer, knock support to slide it in order to obtain the same distance; then tighten bolts.

10.1.4 Horizontal Compressor Alignment

1. Rest an extremity of the straight edge against the upper part of the outer face of compressor pulley, positioning the other end close to the crankshaft pulley.
2. Check the distance between each extremity of straight edge (1, Fig. 23) and drive belt. If they are different, loosen the pillow block compressor bolts and with a hammer, knock compressor pillow block to slide it, in order to obtain the same distance; then tighten bolts.

10.1.5 Vertical Compressor Alignment

Rest a short "angle and level indicator" on the outer side face of the crankshaft pulley, adjust the level indicator inclination at 0° and check if the compressor pulley is at same angle (Figs. 23 & 24). If it is not the same, shim under the appropriate pillow block in order to obtain the correct angle.

10.1.6 Compressor Maintenance

For the maintenance of the A/C compressor, see the "Carrier Compressor Operation and Service Manual" included at the end of this section.

Caution: Use only Castrol SW 68 (POE) oils with refrigerant 134a.

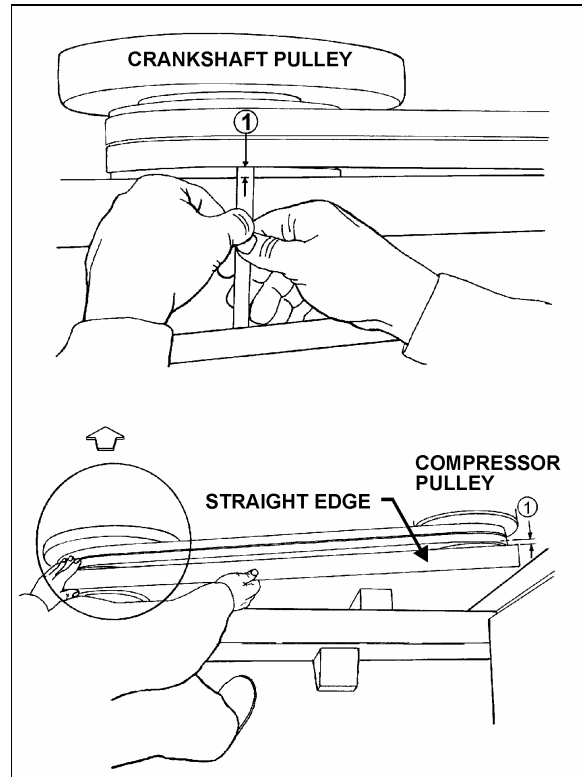


FIGURE 23: COMPRESSOR ALIGNMENT

22040

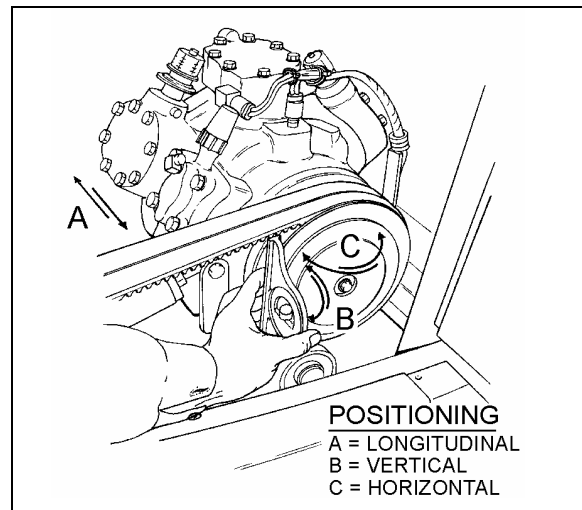


FIGURE 24: COMPRESSOR ALIGNMENT

22072

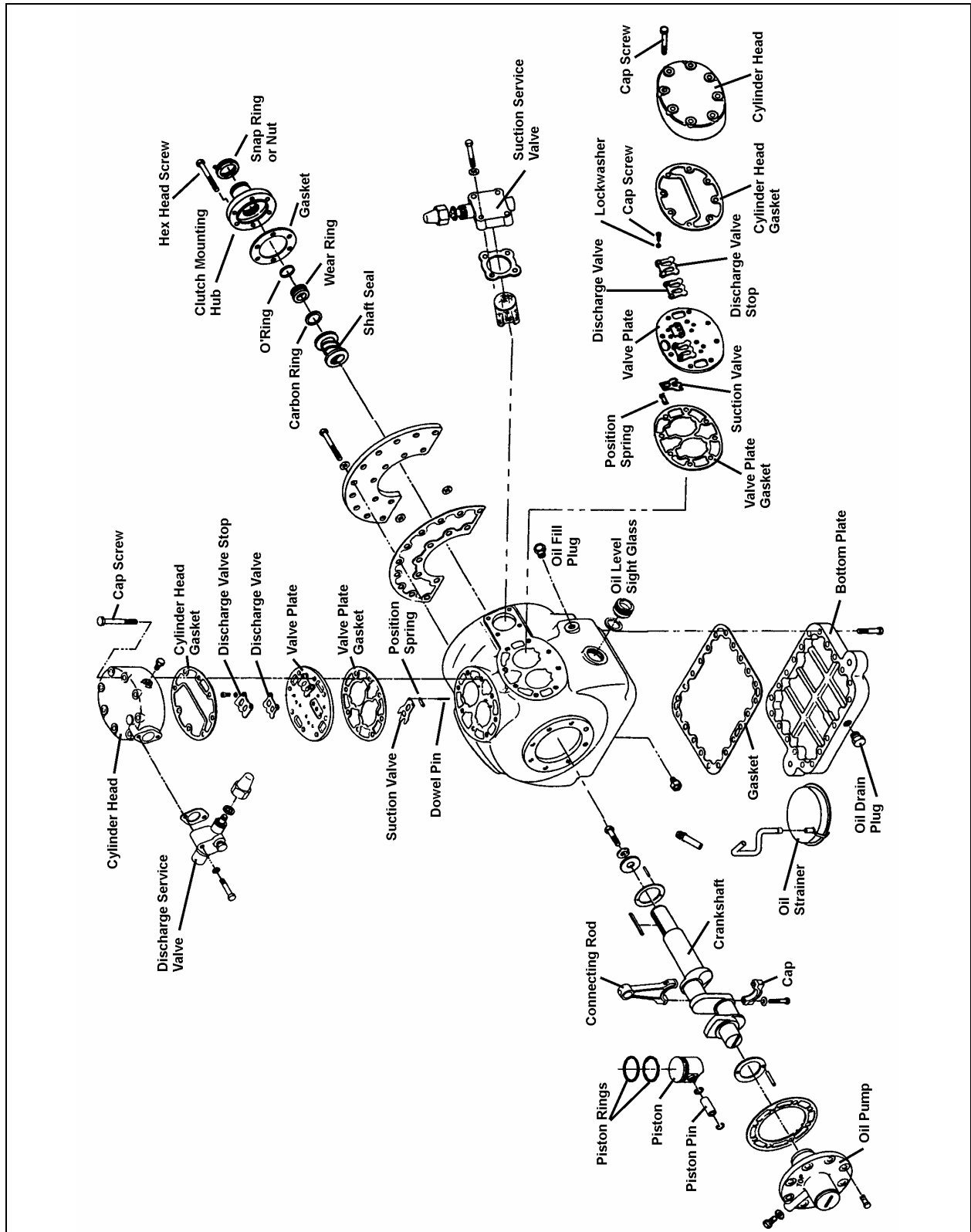


FIGURE 25: EXPLODED VIEW OF 05G COMPRESSOR

22214

10.1.7 Troubleshooting Guide

A preliminary check may be made by simply feeling the cylinder heads with the unit in operation at ambient temperatures of 35 °F (2°C) and over. The cylinder heads are internally divided into suction and discharge valves. The lower half of the cylinder head is the suction side, and it should be relatively cool to the touch, as opposed to the hot upper discharge side. If a valve plate or head gasket is blown, or a compressor unloader is stuck open, partially compressed refrigerant vapor will be circulated between the suction and discharge sides of the head. The affected cylinder head will then have a relatively even temperature across its surface and be neither as hot as the normal discharge temperature nor as cool as the normal suction temperature.

Blown Head Gaskets

Symptom:

- Loss of unit capacity at low temperature.
- Even cylinder head temperature.

Cause:

- Improperly torqued cylinder head bolts.
- Improperly positioned gasket at assembly.
- Warped cylinder head.
- Severe liquid refrigerant floodback.

Blown Valve Plate Gaskets

Symptom:

- Loss of unit capacity at medium and low temperatures.
- Very hot cylinder head surface.
- Higher than normal suction pressure.

Cause:

- Improperly torqued cylinder head bolts.
- Severe liquid refrigerant floodback.
- Oil slugging caused by an overcharge of oil or flood starts.

- Discharge valves not seated properly (liquid drainback during shutdown).

Broken Suction Valves

Symptom:

- Loss of unit capacity at all temperatures.
- Compressor unable to pull extremely low vacuum with suction service valve frontseated.

Cause:

- Repeated liquid refrigerant floodback.
- Flooded starts.
- Overcharge of oil.
- Discharge valves not seated properly (liquid drainback during shutdown).
- Expansion valve not controlling properly.

Unloader Valve Stuck Open

Symptom:

- Loss of unit capacity at all temperatures.
- Higher than normal suction pressure.
- Even cylinder head temperature.



Cause:

- Unloader body stem bent.
- Foreign material binding unloader piston or plunger.

10.2 MAGNETIC CLUTCH

Refer to Carrier service information entitled "Housing-Mounted Electric Clutch" at the end of this section for the description and maintenance of the magnetic clutch.

10.2.1 HVAC Control Unit and Clutch Operation

When A/C system is actuated using  switch, the corresponding switch LED will turn on, the A/C ON indicator LED  will turn on and the clutch will engage.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Note: If the outside temperature is inferior to 25°F (-4°C), the A/C ON indicator LED ☼ will turn off and the clutch will disengage. The indicator LED will turn back on and the clutch will reengage when the outside temperature reaches 35°F (2°C).

The A/C ON indicator LED ☼ will also turn off and the clutch will disengage if a low (5 – 30 psi) or a high pressure (350 – 245 psi) condition is present.

Note: You must first enter the Troubleshooting Mode to be able to visualize on the telltale panel the low or high pressure condition (refer to paragraph 7.1).

Note: The indicator LED will turn back on and the clutch will reengage 45 seconds after the low or high pressure condition was corrected.

10.3 CONDENSER

The central A/C system condenser coil is hinge mounted on the R.H. side of the vehicle on the A/C condenser door. Since condenser's purpose is to dissipate heat from the hot refrigerant, it is important to keep the cooling coils and fins clean. A clogged coil will cause high discharge pressure and insufficient cooling.

10.3.1 Condenser Fan Motors

Two axial fan motors are installed in condenser compartment on R.H. side of vehicle in order to ventilate the condenser coil. The fans pull outside air through the condenser coil and discharge it through an opening at bottom of compartment. Depending on pressure in receiver tank (Fig. 26), the fan motors may be operated at full rpm, half rpm or not operated at all. With low pressure in receiver tank, both fan motors are connected in series and then operate at half rpm and, with a high pressure in receiver tank, both fan motors are connected in parallel and operate at full rpm. For details about electrical wiring, refer to "A/C and Heat system" in the master wiring diagram.

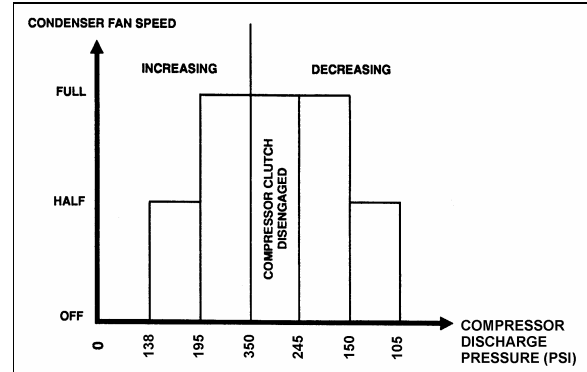


FIGURE 26: CONDENSER FAN SPEED IN RELATION WITH HIGH SIDE PRESSURE

22041

10.3.2 Condenser Fan Motor Removal

1. Set the main battery disconnect switch to the "Off" position.
2. Remove the two "Phillips" head screws retaining the fan motor protective cover to the square tubing.

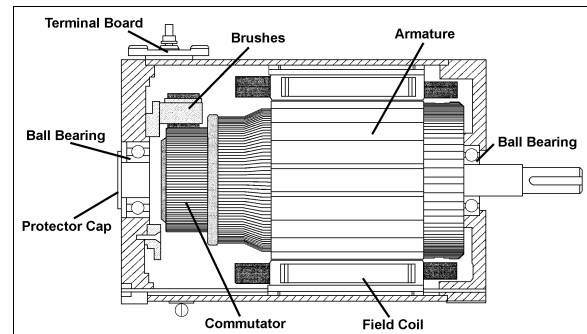


FIGURE 27: CONDENSER FAN MOTOR

22234

3. Disconnect wiring from terminals on motor. Tag each wire to aid in identification at time of reconnection.
4. Support motor, and remove bolts which attach motor to mounting bracket. Remove the motor.

10.3.3 Preliminary Disassembly

1. Remove the brushes.
2. Unscrew the flange retaining screws on the shaft end side (opposite to the commutator end frame), and separate flange from frame (Fig. 27).

3. Remove flange and rotor assembly by pushing bearing shaft toward the commutator end frame.
4. Separate flange from rotor.

10.3.4 Disassembly

1. Perform preliminary disassembly.
2. Carefully note the position of the brush holder ring and the connections on the flange support.
3. Unscrew and remove the flange on the commutator end frame.
4. Remove the brush holder ring.
5. Finally, separate the following parts: brush holders, brush boxes, terminal board, bearings, etc.

10.4 RECEIVER TANK

The receiver tank is located in the A/C condenser compartment (Fig. 28). The function of the receiver tank is to store the liquid refrigerant. During normal operation, the level of the refrigerant should be approximately at the mid-point of the lower sight glass.

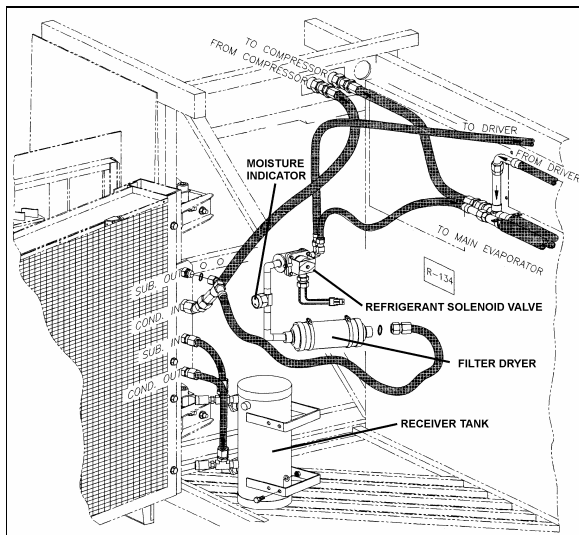


FIGURE 28: A/C CONDENSER COMPARTMENT

22219

In case of extreme pressure there will be a rise in the liquid receiver tank. A pressure relief valve will break at 450 psi (3103 kPa) and relieve the receiver tank pressure.

The receiver tank incorporates an inlet valve on the inlet side (upper section) which allows the tank to be isolated or serviced. An outlet valve on the outlet side (lower section) permits complete isolation from the rest of the system.

10.5 FILTER DRYER

A filter dryer, also located in the A/C condenser compartment, is installed on the liquid refrigerant line (near the receiver tank). It is used to absorb moisture and foreign matter from refrigerant before it reaches the expansion valves.

The filter should be replaced if the system has been opened to prolonged exposure as shown by the moisture indicator sight glass.

A filter dryer, located in the engine compartment near the radiator is installed on vehicles equipped with a driver's system only. Its function is similar to that of filter used on main systems. Replace only when system is opened or a problem occurs.

10.5.1 Replacement

The filter is of the disposable type. When replacement is required, remove and discard the complete unit and replace with a new unit of the same type according to this procedure:

1. Isolate the refrigerant in the receiver tank by following the "Pumping Down" procedure explained in this section
2. Change the filter dryer as a unit.
3. Add a small quantity of refrigerant R-134a to the low side of the system. Check for leaks. Return the system to normal operation.

Caution: Do not use carbon tetrachloride or similar solvents to clean parts. Do not use steam guns. Use mineral spirits or naphtha. All parts should be thoroughly cleaned. Use a stiff brush to wash dirt from grooves, holes, etc.

Warning: Cleaning products are flammable and may explode under certain conditions. Always handle in a well ventilated area.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

10.5.2 Moisture Indicator

The moisture sensitive element consists of a color changing ring which is reversible from yellow to green and vice versa as the moisture content in the refrigerant changes. Yellow indicates a wet refrigerant, yellow green (caution) and green indicates a dry refrigerant.

Since temperature changes affect the solubility, color change will also vary with the refrigerant temperature. The following table shows the color change for R-134a at various moisture levels and liquid line refrigerant temperatures.

COLOR INDICATOR			
Temperature	BLUE (ppm)	LIGHT VIOLET (ppm)	PINK (ppm)
75°F (24°C)	Below 5	5-15	Above 15
100°F (38°C)	Below 10	10-30	Above 30
125°F (52°C)	Below 15	15-45	Above 45
p.p.m.= parts per million (moisture content)			

A moisture level of less than 15 p.p.m. for R-134a indicated in the blue color range of the above table is generally considered dry and safe. A color indication of light blue to light violet indicates the caution range of moisture level. For positive protection, the drying of the system should be continued until the color of the element turns to deep blue.

The liquid refrigerant is readily visible through the center opening of the moisture element where the presence of bubbles indicates a shortage of refrigerant or restriction in line.

Moisture is one of the main causes of chemical instability or contamination in air conditioning systems. If moisture is present, it can corrode the valves, condenser and evaporator coils, compressor and other components causing a malfunction and eventually failure of the system. Uncontrolled moisture in the system can result in expensive multiple component replacements if not corrected at an early stage. The moisture indicator permits an early detection of moisture in the system and when corrected by a desiccant charge, system contamination is greatly minimized.

10.6 LIQUID REFRIGERANT SOLENOID VALVE

The flow of liquid refrigerant to both driver's and central evaporators is controlled by a normally-closed solenoid valve. The driver's solenoid valve is located on the ceiling of the spare wheel compartment and is accessible through the reclining bumper while the central system solenoid valve is located in the condenser compartment.

10.6.1 Manual Bypass

This type of solenoid valve is equipped with a manual operating stem. The 3/16" square stem located on the bonnet is exposed when the seal cap is removed. To manually open valve, turn stem ½ turn counterclockwise. To manually close valve, turn stem clockwise until tight against seat. Manual stem must be in closed position for automatic electrical operation.

10.6.2 Coil Replacement

1. Disconnect connector from the coil connector.
2. Take out the retaining screw at the top of the coil housing. The entire coil assembly can then be lifted off the enclosing tube.
3. Place the new coil and yoke assembly on the enclosing tube. Lay data identification plate in place.
4. Insert the coil retaining screw, rotate housing to proper position and tighten screw securely.
5. Connect connector from coil connector.

10.6.3 Valve Disassembly

1. Remove the coil as stated previously.
2. Pump down the system as stated earlier in this section.
3. Remove the four socket head screws which hold the body and bonnet together (Fig. 29).
4. Carefully lift off the bonnet assembly (upper part of the valve) so that plunger will not fall out. The diaphragm can now be lifted out.

Note: The previous procedure must be followed before brazing solder-type bodies into the line.

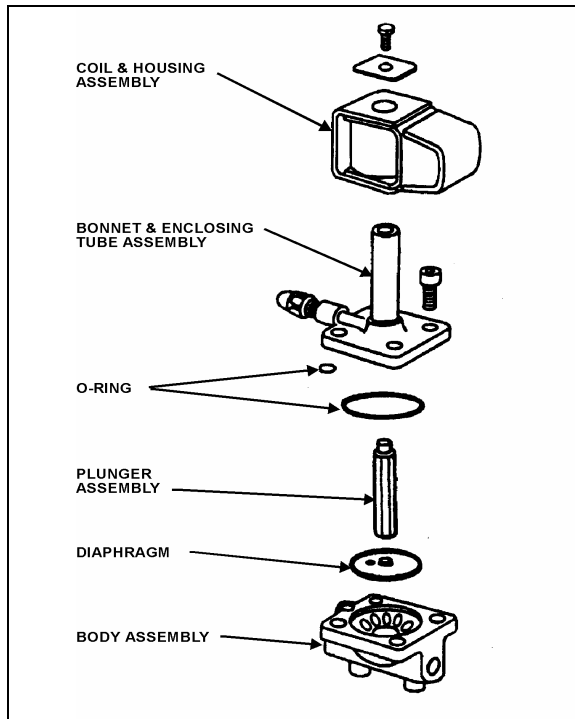


FIGURE 29: REFRIGERANT SOLENOID VALVE

22044

Caution: Be careful not to damage the machined faces while the valve is apart.

10.6.4 Valve Reassembly

1. Place the diaphragm in the body with the pilot port extension up.
2. Hold the plunger with the synthetic seat against the pilot port.
3. Make sure the bonnet O-rings are in place. Lower the bonnet assembly over the plunger, making sure that the locating sleeve in the bonnet enters the mating hole in the body.
4. Insert the four socket head screws and tighten evenly.
5. Replace the coil as stated previously.
6. Add a small quantity of refrigerant R-134a to the low side of the system. Check for leaks. Return the system to normal operation.

10.7 EXPANSION VALVE

10.7.1 Central system

The expansion valve for the main system is a thermo-sensitive valve with a remote control bulb head attached to the evaporator outlet line and is accessible by the evaporator filter access door (Fig. 19 & 30). The valve regulates the flow of refrigerant liquid into the evaporator coils and is controlled by the suction gas temperature leaving the evaporator. The bulb head senses the refrigerant gas temperature as it leaves the evaporator. High temperature will cause expansion and pressure on the power head and spring. Such action causes the assembly valve to open, allowing a flow of refrigerant liquid into the evaporator.

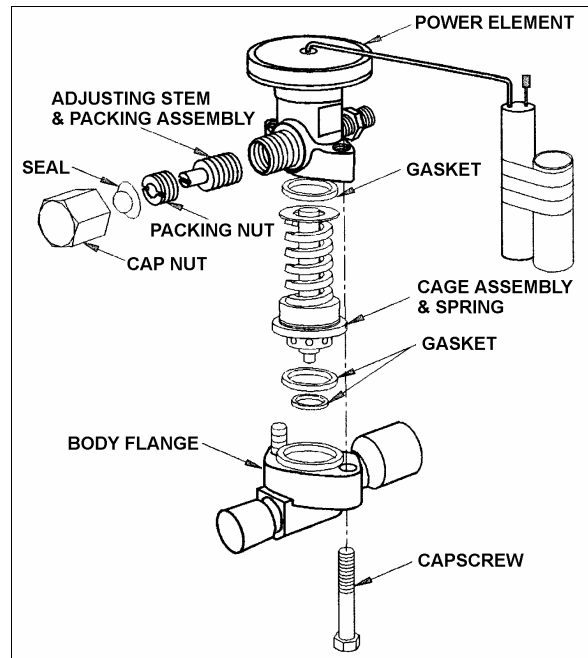


FIGURE 30: EXPANSION VALVE

22215

The remote bulb and power assembly is a closed system. The pressure within the remote bulb and power assembly corresponds to the saturation pressure of the refrigerant temperature leaving the evaporator and moves the valve pin in the opening direction. Opposed to this force, on the under side of the diaphragm and acting in the closing direction, is the force exerted by the superheat spring. As the temperature of the refrigerant gas at the evaporator outlet increases above the saturation temperature corresponding to the evaporator

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

pressure, it becomes superheated. The pressure thus generated in the remote bulb and power assembly surpasses the combined pressures of the evaporator pressure and the superheat spring, causing the valve pin to move in the opening direction. Conversely, as the temperature of the **refrigerant** gas leaving the evaporator decreases, the pressure in the remote bulb and power assembly also decreases and the combined evaporator and spring pressures cause the valve pin to move in the closing position.

As the operating superheat is raised, the evaporator capacity decreases, since more of the evaporator surface is required to produce the superheat necessary to open the valve. It is obvious, then, that it is most important to adjust the operating superheat correctly and that a minimum change in superheat to move the valve pin to full open position, is of vital importance because it provides savings in both initial evaporator cost of operation. Accurate and sensitive control of the refrigerant liquid flowing to the evaporator is necessary to provide maximum evaporator capacity under load conditions. The spring is adjusted to give 12 to 16° F (-11.1 to -8.8° C) of superheat at the evaporator outlet. This ensures that the refrigerant leaving the evaporator is in a completely gaseous state when drawn into the suction side of the compressor. Liquid would damage the compressor valve, piston and heads if allowed to return in the suction line.

A vapor is said to be superheated when its temperature is higher than the saturation temperature corresponding to its pressure. The amount of the superheat is, of course, the temperature increase above the saturation temperature at the existing pressure.

As the refrigerant moves along in the evaporator, the liquid boils off into a vapor and the amount of liquid decreases until all the liquid has evaporated due to the absorption of a quantity of heat from the surrounding atmosphere equal to the latent heat of vaporization of the refrigerant. The gas continues along in the evaporator and remains at the same pressure. However, its temperature increases due to the continued absorption of heat from the surrounding atmosphere. The degree to which the gas refrigerant is

superheated is related to the amount of refrigerant being fed to the evaporator and the load to which the evaporator is exposed.

Superheat Adjustment

The easiest method of adjusting the superheat is to unscrew completely the main evaporator expansion valve adjusting screw, and screw in 13 turns clockwise for 134A (Fig. 31). If this method does not provide an accurate superheat, the following procedure should be followed:

1. Operate coach for at least one-half hour at fast idle with temperature control set at 82°F (27.7°C). Then set temperature to minimum to keep the compressor on 6 cylinders.

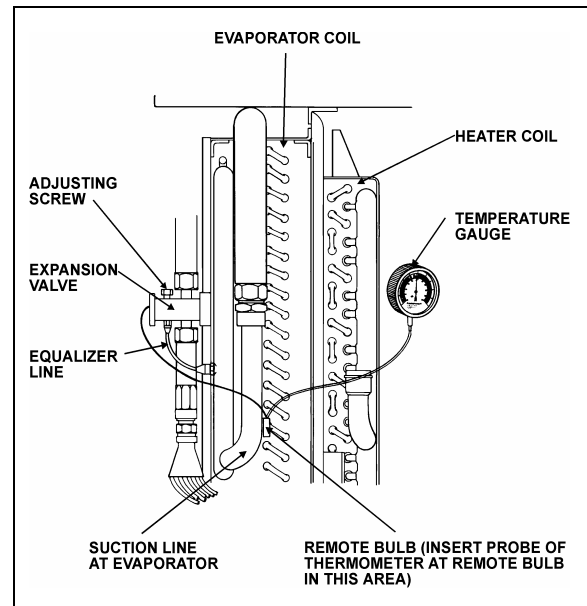


FIGURE 31: SUPERHEAT ADJUST. INSTALLATION 22046

2. Install pressure gauge at the evaporator suction header. You may install the pressure gauge at compressor suction, but then add 3 psi to reading.
3. Install a remote reading thermometer to the evaporator outlet line near the existing remote bulb (Fig. 31).
4. Apply thermostatic tape around the bulb and evaporator outlet line to get a true reading of the line temperature.
5. Block condenser if necessary to keep pressure over 150 psi.

6. Check approximately 5 readings of pressure at 2-minute intervals and convert to temperature using the vapor-pressure table (page 36). Likewise check the temperature reading at the remote bulb at the same 2-minute intervals and record the low and high swing readings of the needle (refer to Fig. 32).

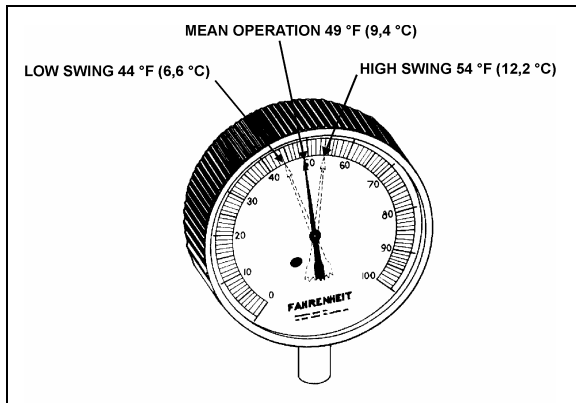


FIGURE 32: HIGH & LOW SWING TEMPERATURE AT REMOTE BULB

22047

Example of readings taken at fig. 32:

A/C pressure gauge converted to temperature at expansion valve fitting	Temperature on remote bulb	
40°F(4,4°C)	Low-swing 44°F (6,6°C)	High swing 54°F (12,2°C)
Formula for superheat 49°F-40°F=9°F (9,4°C-4,4°C = 5°C)	Average of low and high swing is 49°F (9,4°C)	

Note: The low swing of the superheat should be a minimum of 4°F (2,2°C) higher at the remote bulb and have an average of 8 to 12°F (4 to 6°C) higher range at the bulb than the fitting at the expansion valve.

Note: To reduce the superheat, flow of refrigerant is increased by turning adjusting screw of expansion valve lower evaporator temperature counterclockwise. To increase temperature or increase superheat, flow of refrigerant is reduced by turning adjustment screw of expansion valve clockwise.

7. Regulate suction pressure to temperature reading according to temperature chart or to the R-134a temperature scale on the pressure gauge.

Example: Suction pressure 30 psi (207 kPa) converted to 32°F (0°C) on chart. If temperature reading is 40°F (4,4°C), subtract 32°F (0°C) and the result will be 8°F (4,4°C) of superheat.

Caution: Before proceeding with the expansion valve adjustment, check for restriction on suction side for plugged filter dryer and partially open valves. These conditions will give a high superheat.

Maintenance

1. Pump down the system as previously indicated in this section.
2. Disconnect the external equalizer line from the under side of the power head, and unclamp the remote control bulb from the evaporator coil outlet line.
3. Remove the two cap screws holding the power assembly to the valve body flange. Lift off the power assembly and remove the cage assembly.
4. When reassembling, replace with the new gaskets in proper location. Make sure the two lugs on the cage assembly fit into grooves provided in the power assembly. Do not force the valves together. The cage must fit properly before tightening the body flange. Tighten bolts evenly.
5. Check for leaks.

Safety Instructions

1. Make sure the valve is installed with the flow arrow on the valve body corresponding to the flow direction through the piping system.
2. Before opening any system, make sure the pressure in the system is brought to and remains at the atmospheric pressure. Failure to comply may result in system damage and/or personal injury.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

10.7.2 Driver's System

The function and operation of the expansion valve for the driver" system are similar to the central system, but no superheat adjustment is required (see Fig. 30).

10.8 TORCH BRAZING

Use an electrode containing 35% silver.

Note: *A 3.5% silver low temperature brazing electrode can be used on low side pressure and liquid high side.*

Caution: *When using heat near a valve, wrap with a water saturated rag to prevent overheating of vital parts.*

Warning: *Before welding any part of refrigeration system, make sure the area is well ventilated.*

10.9 TROUBLESHOOTING

10.9.1 Expansion Valve

PROBABLE CAUSE	PROBABLE REMEDY
LOW SUCTION PRESSURE-HIGH SUPERHEAT	
EXPANSION VALVE LIMITING FLOW:	
Gas in liquid line due to pressure drop in the line or insufficient refrigerant charge.	Locate cause of line flash and correct by use of any of the following methods. Add R-134a. Replace or clean filter dryer.
Inlet pressure too low from excessive low condensing temperature. Resulting pressure difference across valve too small.	Increase head pressure. Verify pressure switch for fan speed control.
Superheat adjustment too high.	Adjust superheat as outlined under "Superheat Adjustment".
Power assembly failure or partial loss of charge.	Replace power assembly or replace valve.
Air filter screen clogged.	Clean or replace air filter screen.
Plugged lines.	Clean, repair or replace lines.
LOW SUCTION PRESSURE-LOW SUPERHEAT	
Uneven or inadequate evaporator loading due to poor air distribution or liquid flow.	Balance evaporator load distribution by providing correct air or liquid distribution.
HIGH SUCTION PRESSURE-HIGH SUPERHEAT	
Compressor discharge valve leaking.	Replace or repair valve.
HIGH SUCTION PRESSURE-LOW SUPERHEAT (DEFECTIVE UNLOADER)	
Valve superheat setting too low.	Adjust superheat as outlined under "Superheat Adjustment".
Compressor discharge valves leaking.	Replace or repair discharge valve.
Incorrect superheat adjustment.	Superheat adjustment 12 to 16°F.
FLUCTUATING DISCHARGE PRESSURE	
Insufficient charge.	Add R-134a to system.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

PROBABLE CAUSE	PROBABLE REMEDY
HIGH DISCHARGE PRESSURE	
Air or non-condensable gases in condenser.	Purge and recharge system.
Overcharge or refrigerant.	Bleed to proper charge.
Condenser dirty.	Clean condenser.

10.9.2 A/C

TROUBLE	CAUSE
Low suction pressure and frosting at dryer outlet.	Clogged filter.
Low Oil Level.	Check for oil leaks and for leaking oil seal. Do not attempt to check oil level unless system has been stabilized at least 20 minutes. See oil level verification.
Excessively cold suction line.	Loss of contact between the expansion valve bulb and the suction line or sticking of the expansion valve. Check for foreign matter and clean, repair or replace the valve.
Excessively cold suction line and noisy compressor.	Check superheat adjustment. Check remote bulb contact. Check expansion valve for sticking.
Compressor squeaks or squeals when running.	Check oil level. Replace oil seal.
Noisy or knocking compressor.	Check for broken internal parts. Overhaul if required.
Compressor vibrates.	Check and tighten compressor mounting bolts and belt tension.
Low refrigerant level	Check for refrigerant leaks and add refrigerant if required.
Suction pressure rises faster than 5 pounds per minute after shutdown.	Check compressor valve for breakage or damage.
Insufficient cooling.	Check for refrigerant leaks. Check condition of air filter and motors.
Insufficient air flow.	Dirty or iced evaporator. Dirty air filter. Blowers inactive. Clogged ducts.
No flow of refrigerant through expansion valve.	Filter dryer is clogged. Remote bulb has lost charge or expansion valve is defective.
Expansion valve hisses. Bubbles in moisture and liquid indicator.	Gas in liquid line. Add refrigerant.
Loss of capacity	Clogged filter. Obstructed or defective expansion valve.
Superheat too high.	Reset superheat adjustment. Check for clogged external equalizer line, or filter dryer.
Reduced air flow: a. Dirty or clogged air filter; b. Evaporator motor inoperative; or c. Plugged return air ducts.	Dirty or iced evaporator coil. Clean air filter screen. Check return ducts for obstructions. Check blower motor.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

TROUBLE	CAUSE
Frequent startings and stoppings on low pressure control switch.	Lack of refrigerant. Check for leaks. Recharge.
Compressor intermittently starts and stops.	Intermittent contact in electrical control circuit. Compressor valves not in operating position.
Non-condensable in the refrigeration system.	<p>Leak on system, system in vacuum in low temp. Specific symptom, pressure in system will not correspond to ambient temperature on shutdown. Only non-condensable will cause this.</p> <p>(Example: Pressure of idle R-134a system in 80°F (26.6°C) room should be 86.4 psi (595.7 kPa). See temperature chart in this section.)</p> <p>An evaporator just does a proper cooling job without sufficient air. Shortage of air can be caused by the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Dirty filters; or ● Dirty coils.
<p>Testing condenser pressure.</p> <p>Note: R-134A pressure is function of the temperature variation.</p> <p>Example, for an exterior temperature of 100°F. Exterior temperature (100°F) + 30°F = 130°F. Refer to paragraph "10.11 Temperature & Pressure". Note the corresponding pressure for a temperature of 130°F., 199.8 psi. Read the condenser pressure, example 171.9 psi. 171.9 psi 199.8 psi, the pressure in the condenser is inferior to the pressure corresponding to the exterior temperature, then condenser pressure may be to low. Check for refrigerant leaks and add refrigerant if necessary. If the pressure corresponding to the condenser temperature is superior to the pressure corresponding to the exterior temperature, then air cooled condenser pressure may be to high. Most frequent causes are:</p> <p>Reduced air quantity. This may be due to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Non-condensable in system; ● Dirt on the coil; ● Restricted air inlet or outlet; ● Dirty fan blades; ● Incorrect rotation of fan; ● Fan speed too low; ● Fan motor going out on overload; or ● Prevailing winds. ● Too much refrigerant in system. Remove refrigerant if necessary. 	

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

10.10 TEMPERATURES & PRESSURES

VAPOR-PRESSURE			
TEMPERATURE		PRESSURE	
°F	°C	psi	kPa
-100	-73.3	27.8	191.7
-90	-67.8	26.9	185.5
-80	-62.2	25.6	176.5
-70	-56.7	23.8	164.1
-60	-51.1	21.5	148.2
-50	-45.6	18.5	127.6
-40	-40.0	14.7	101.4
-30	-34.4	9.8	67.6
-20	-29	3.8	26.2
-10	-23	1.8	12.4
0	-18	6.3	43.4
10	-12	11.6	80
20	-7	18.0	124.1
30	-1	25.6	176.5
40	4	34.5	237.9
50	10	44.9	309.6
60	16	56.9	392.3
70	21.1	70.7	487.5
80	27	86.4	595.7
90	32.2	104.2	718.5
100	38	124.3	857.0
110	43.3	146.8	1012.2
120	49	171.9	1185.3
130	54.4	199.8	1377.6
140	60	230.5	1589.3
150	65.6	264.4	1823.0
160	71	301.5	2078.8
170	76.7	342.0	2358.1
180	82.2	385.9	2660.8
190	87.8	433.6	2989.7
200	93.3	485.0	3344.1
210	98.9	540.3	3725.4

10.11 LEAK TESTING

Some methods such as nitrogen pressure and soap, and electronic sniffer can be used for leak testing. However, the most common method used is a "Halide" torch consisting of an acetylene tank, a burner and a suction test hose. Proceed as follows:

Warning: Do not inhale fumes from leak detector.

The flow of acetylene to the burner causes a depression in the test line. Any gas refrigerant present will be drawn through the hose and into the burner where it decomposes into free acids.

These acids come in contact with the hot copper reaction plate in the burner, causing color reaction in the flame. A small concentration is indicated by a green tint and a large concentration by an intense blue. Do not confuse this change in color with the change caused by shutting off the air supply through the hose by holding the end too close to an object.

The procedure for testing is:

1. Adjust flame so that the top of the cone is approximately level or within one-half inch above the plate.
2. Probe end of suction test tube around all joints, valves, etc. When a leak has been found at a soldered joint, this specific section of the system must be pumped down. Do not solder as pressure will force hot solder out. If the system is empty, it is more economical to put in just enough R-134a to produce about 15 psi (103 kPa). The pressure can be raised to about 150 psi (1034 kPa) with dry nitrogen.

Note: This gas is put into the suction and discharge shutoff valves at the compressor. The receiver valves must be opened. If no leaks are found, dump this mixture, evacuate the system and fill with refrigerant.

11. VIP DRIVER'S AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM AND COMPONENTS

11.1 COMPRESSOR

MODEL

TM-16HD

TYPE	Swash-plate type
Number of cylinders	6
Bore	36 mm (1.42")
Stroke	26.7 mm (1.05")
Displacement	163 cm ³ (10cu.in)
Permissible speed	700-6000 rpm
Refrigerant	HFC-134a
Lubricant	ZXL100PG
	180 cm ³
Mass	4.9 kg (10.9 lbs)

11.2 MAGNETIC CLUTCH

TYPE	Electromagnetic single-plate dry clutch
Rated Voltage	24/12 volts DC
Current consumption	3.75 amperes (max)
Stalling torque	49 Nm (36.1 Lbf-ft) min
Rotation	CW/CCW
Mass	2.2 kg (4.9 lbs)

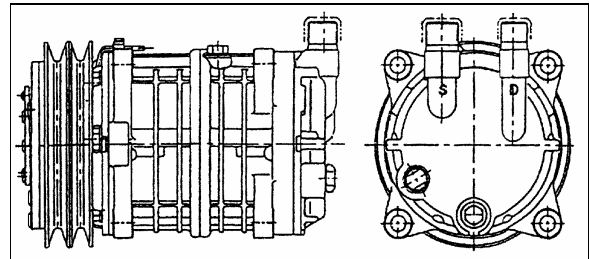


FIGURE 33: SELTEC TM-16HD COMPRESSOR

11.3 MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

11.3.1 Work Area

Because the components of air conditioning systems are especially sensitive to moisture, dirt and dust, always observe the following procedures:

- Work indoors whenever possible.
- Select a level work area.
- Keep work area clean.
- Select a work area with adequate ventilation.

Warning: Refrigerant itself is not harmful, but excessive accumulation in a closed area can cause oxygen deficiency.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

- Keep open flame and flammables away from the vehicle in which the air conditioning system is being serviced. **Open flame is especially dangerous during Freon leak testing.**

Warning: *Contact with flame and high temperatures can generate toxic gases.*

11.3.2 Refrigerant Handling

Never directly heat refrigerant cylinder or put in hot water heated above 40°C (104°F) since it may cause release of the safety plug or the cylinder may burst. When it is necessary to heat refrigerant cylinder for charging in cold weather, use warm water at a temperature below 40°C (104°F).

Warning: *Do not put the charge valve in warm water.*

- Never store refrigerant cylinder in direct sunlight, near flame, or where the temperature exceeds 40°C (104°F). Always store refrigerant cylinder in a cool dry place.
- Never throw or strike refrigerant cylinder and never handle roughly.

11.3.3 PAG Oil Handling

Whenever a part replacement has to be done on the system, additional task about PAG oil will have to be performed.

The compressor has little reserve and is lubricated by the oil refrigerant mixture. To perform correctly, the compressor needs the mixture to be from 3% to 6% of Poly Alkaline Glycol (PAG) oil.

When a compressor has to be top off due to a severe loss, the amount of oil to be added should be evaluated with the refrigerant charge or a compressor oil change should be performed to rise up the compressor oil charge to 180 ml or the written charge on the nameplate.

- The oil should be free from moisture, dust, metal shavings, etc.
- Do not mix with other oils.

- The moisture content of the oil increases when exposed to the air for prolonged period. Therefore, after use, seal the container immediately.

DO NOT MIX PAG AND POE OR MINERAL OILS!

11.3.4 Refrigerant Recovery

Some air conditioning system refrigerant compounds are chlorofluorocarbons, and therefore may be damaging the earth's ozone layer. Consequently, the release of refrigerant into the atmosphere must be avoided. Whenever refrigerant is to be released from the air conditioning system, a refrigerant recovery unit must be used to recover the refrigerant. This refrigerant can then be recycled and reused, which is both environmentally safe and economical.

For complete system recovery, any of the High and Low service ports can be used (Refer to fig. 19 & 20). Energize liquid solenoid valve and measure the quantity of oil recovered. For the compressor only, use the service valve port and close the valves. The service valves open permits full flow of refrigerant to service port. Service valve closed permits flow of refrigerant from compressor to service port.

11.3.5 Compressor Handling

Do not strike, drop or turn the compressor upside down. If the compressor is knocked over or turned upside down, rotate the compressor's magnetic clutch 5 to 6 times by hand to circulate the oil which has settled in the cylinder. Sudden rotation with oil in the cylinder can cause valve damage and adversely affect durability.

11.4 COMPRESSOR REMOVAL

11.4.1 When the compressor is operational

- Perform the "OIL RETURN OPERATION" (Refer to paragraph 11.9).

11.4.2 When the compressor is inoperable

- Perform the "Refrigerant Recovery" operation (Refer to paragraph 11.3.4).
- Remove the compressor.

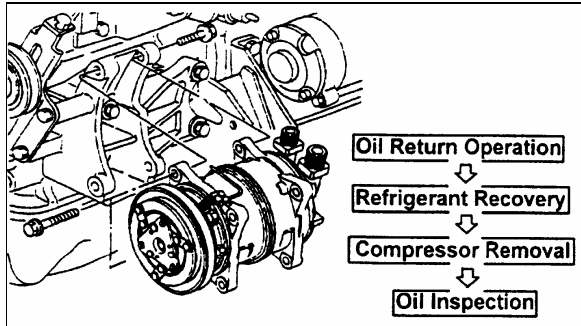


FIGURE 34: COMPRESSOR REMOVAL

11.5 INSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS

The new compressor is filled with the specified quantity of compressor oil and nitrogen gas (N²). When mounting the compressor on the vehicle, take the following steps:

- Loosen the discharge side connector's cap and gently release N² from compressor (Refer to figure 35).

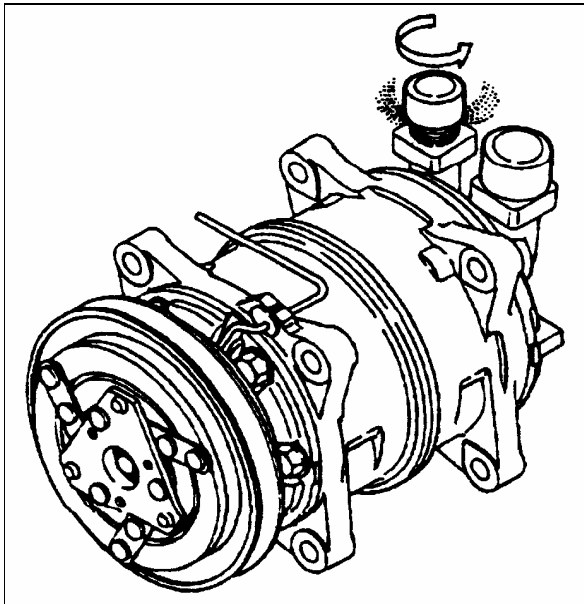


FIGURE 35: LOOSENING THE DISCHARGE SIDE CONNECTOR'S CAP

Note: Take care not to let the oil escape.

- Slowly rotate the compressor's magnetic clutch several times by hand to distribute the oil which has settled in the cylinders (Refer to figure 36).

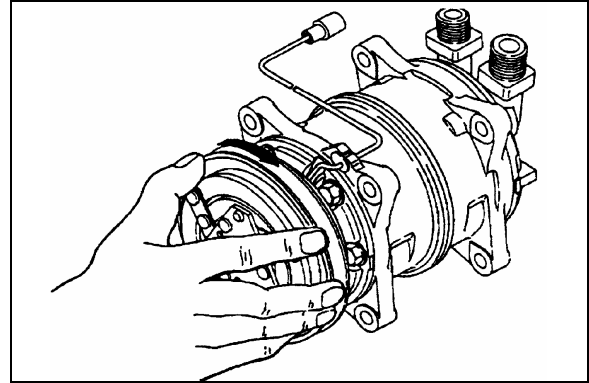


FIGURE 36: ROTATING MAGNETIC CLUTCH

- When using the old compressor in the system, the compressor should be installed after changing the oil.

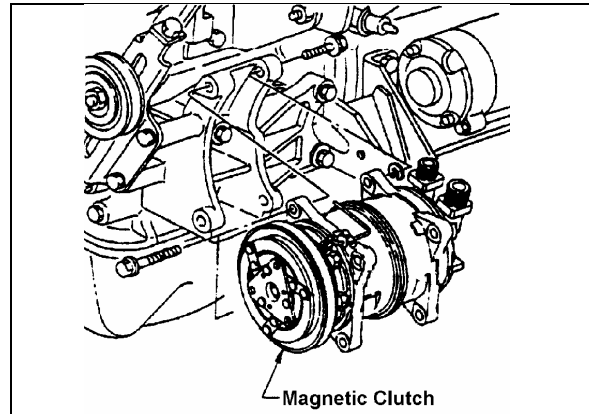


FIGURE 37: COMPRESSOR INSTALLATION

11.6 COMPRESSOR OIL CHANGE

Each compressor is delivered filled with the specified quantity of compressor oil, depending on the type of air conditioning system. A label describing the amount/type of compressor oil is attached to the compressor.

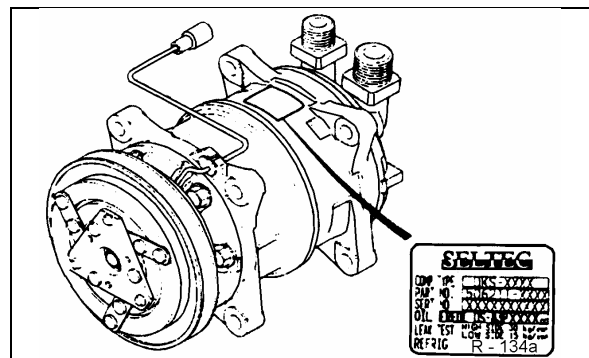


FIGURE 38: COMPRESSOR OIL LABEL

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

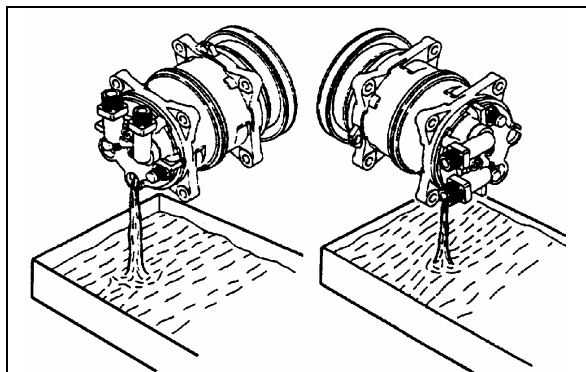


FIGURE 39: DRAINING THE OIL

- Check oil for contamination. Refer to PARAGRAPH 11.8: "COMPRESSOR OIL CONTAMINATION".
- Tighten the oil drain plug with a new o-ring lightly coated with clean compressor oil to specified torque.

Torque: 13-15 Nm (9.4-10.8 Lbf-ft)

- Add new compressor oil through the suction-side connector with the amount specified on the label (180 ml).

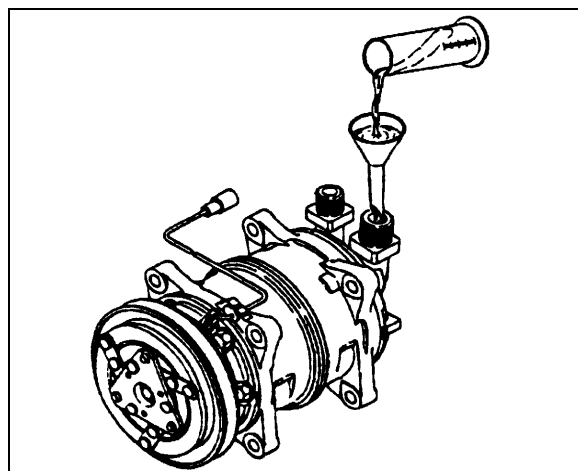


FIGURE 40: ADDING NEW COMPRESSOR OIL

11.6.1 Evacuating System Before Adding Refrigerant (Driver's or Auxiliary System)

When a system has been opened for repairs, change the filter dryer and evacuate the system. VIPs equipped with a driver's system must use high-pressure service port located on the other side of check valve and low-pressure port located alongside rear truss. (Fig. 19 and 20). It

would be good practice to open the solenoid valve.

1. Connect two hoses equipped with a micron gauge between the high-pressure service port, the low-pressure service port and the vacuum pump.
2. With the unit service valves open and the vacuum pump valves open, start the pump and draw the manifold and hoses into a very deep vacuum (700 microns).
3. Close manifold valve
4. Shut down the vacuum pump.
5. Check to insure that vacuum holds. (If the pressure continues to rise, it indicates a leak or moisture in the system).
6. Charge the system with the proper amount of refrigerant through the service port near the check valve using recommended charging procedures.
7. Remove the hoses.

11.7 OIL ADDITION

The chart below shows the approximate amount of oil to be added to the system when replacing a component.

Component replaced	Typical amount of oil
Evaporator	50 cm ³ (1.7 ozs)
Condenser	30 cm ³ (1.0 ozs)
Filter-Dryer	10 cm ³ (0.3 ozs)

The amount of oil recovered with the refrigerant recovery should be added at the same time.

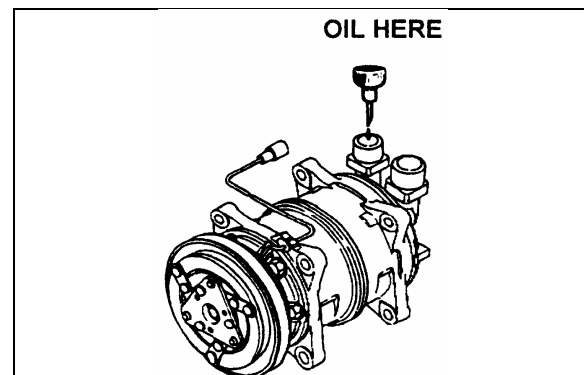


FIGURE 41: ADDING OIL AFTER REPLACING A COMPONENT

11.8 COMPRESSOR OIL CONTAMINATION

Unlike engine oil, no cleaning agent is added to the compressor oil. Even if the compressor is run for a long time, the oil never becomes turbid as long as there is nothing wrong with the compressor or its method of use. Inspect the extracted oil for any of the following conditions:

- Dirt in the oil.
- Change to a varnish color.
- Presence of foreign substance, metal shavings, etc. in the oil. When the oil extracted from the compressor is as described above, replace the oil as follows:
 1. Clean the interior of the system with approved method.
 2. Replace the filter-dryer.
 3. Supply with new oil as specified in paragraph 11.6: "COMPRESSOR OIL CHANGE".

11.9 OIL RETURN OPERATION

There is a close affinity between oil and refrigerant. During normal operation, part of the oil recirculates with the refrigerant in the system. Therefore, when checking the amount of oil in the system or replacing any system component, the compressor must be run in advance to ensure return. This procedure is as follows:

- If the amount of refrigerant in the system has decreased, charge to the proper amount.
- Start the engine and select fast idle.
- Set the fan speed to full air/full A/C and let run for 20 minutes.

11.10 OIL CHECK INTERVAL

Unlike engine oil, it is not necessary to frequently check or change the compressor oil. However, it is necessary to check and replenish or replace the compressor oil in the following cases:

- Whenever the compressor, evaporator, condenser or filter-dryer is replaced.
- Whenever refrigerant has leaked from the system, evaluate the amount of oily spot.

- Whenever refrigerant is suddenly released from the cooling cycle, replenish the compressor (180 ml) plus 150 ml.
- Whenever any oil-related problems occur in the cooling cycle.

11.11 LEAK TEST PROCEDURE WITH COMPRESSOR REMOVED

When a compressor is repaired, it must be checked prior to installation.

- Install the discharge and suction caps to the connector.

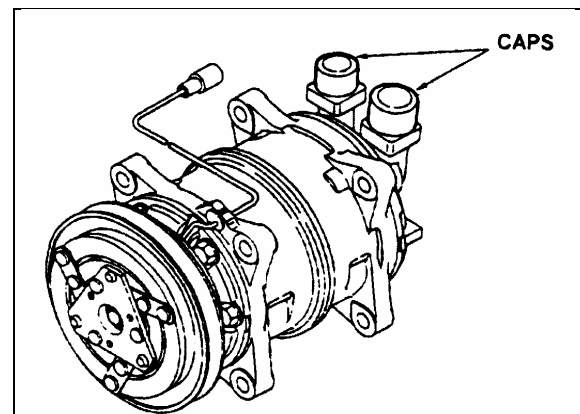


FIGURE 42: DISCHARGE AND SUCTION CAPS

- Fill the compressor with refrigerant through connector's suction port raising the pressure to at least 0.5 Mpa (70 psi).
- Check the compressor for leaks using a leak detector.

Note: Never leave the compressor upside down for longer than 30 seconds. This is because the oil inside the compressor will enter the cylinders, causing liquid compression which will damage the compressor's suction and delivery valves.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

11.12 TIGHTENING TORQUES

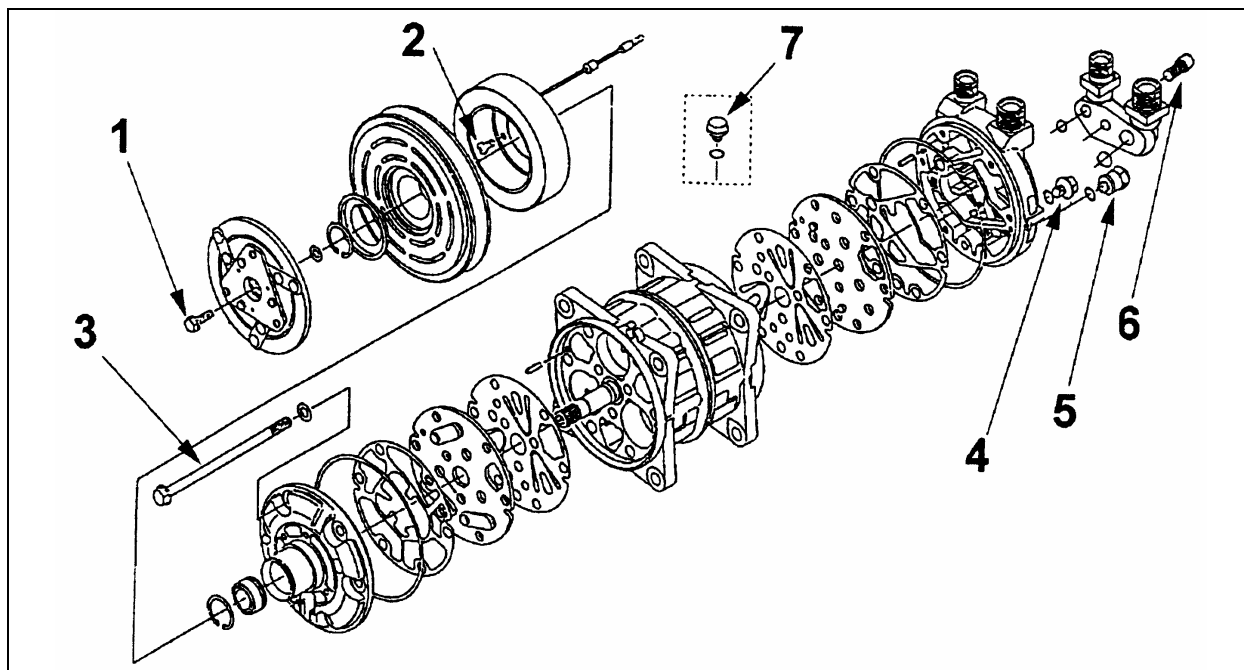


FIGURE 43: TIGHTENING TORQUES

PART	THREAD SIZE	TIGHTENING TORQUE
1. Bolt Armature	M6 x 1.0	12 - 14 Nm (8.7 - 10.1 Lbf-ft)
2. Field Coil Screw	M5 x 0.8	4 - 6 Nm (2.9 - 4.3 Lbf-ft)
3. Body Bolt	M8 x 1.25	20 - 24 Nm (14.5 - 17.3 Lbf-ft)
4. Oil Drain Plug	M8 x 1.25	13 - 15 Nm (9.4 - 10.8 Lbf-ft)
5. Pressure Relief Valve	3/8 - 24UNF	13 - 15 Nm (9.4 - 10.8 Lbf-ft)
6. Connector Bolt	M8 x 1.25	20 - 24 Nm (14.5 - 17.3 Lbf-ft)
7. Oil Filler Plug	M8 x 1.25	13 - 15 Nm (9.4 - 10.8 Lbf-ft)

12. HEATING SYSTEM

The schematics of Figures 44 and 47 show respectively, the small heating and A/C systems and the central heating system with their components.

In addition to the normal heating provided by the engine, a preheating system (104,000 Btu/hr) (optional on coaches only) may have been installed in the vehicle.

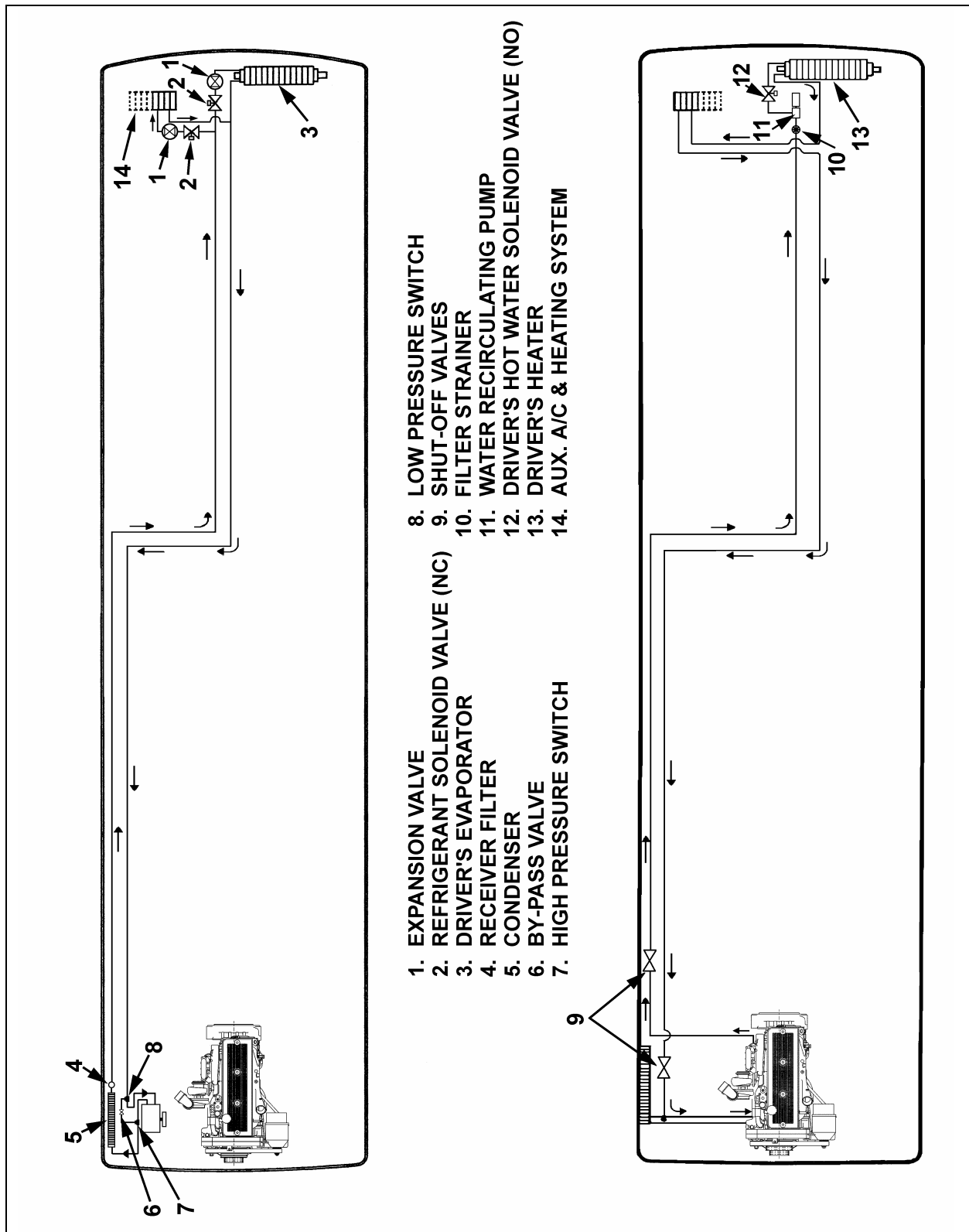


FIGURE 44: SMALL A/C & HEATING SYSTEMS PLUS AUXILIARY SYSTEM COMPONENTS

22233

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

12.1 SMALL HEATING & AUX. SYSTEM

For vehicles equipped with small heating & auxiliary systems only, refer to figure 44. The small system is similar to the driver's portion of central system, except that the recirculating pump and the strainer are located on the ceiling of the spare wheel compartment. For more information on components, refer to paragraph "12.2: CENTRAL HEATING SYSTEM".

Furthermore, an auxiliary system is added in series on the return line of the small system, it increases the whole system heating capacity and gives the driver more options.

12.2 CENTRAL HEATING SYSTEM

The schematic of Figure 47 shows the central heating system and its components.

On coaches only, in addition to the normal heating provided by the engine, an optional preheating system (100,000 Btu/hr) may have been installed above the rear wheelhousing on the L.H. side.

12.3 DRAINING HEATING SYSTEM

To drain the entire system, refer to Section 05, "Cooling". If only the driver's or main heater core must be drained, refer to the following instructions.

12.3.1 Draining Driver's Heater Core

1. Stop engine and allow engine coolant to cool.
2. Locate the normally open water solenoid valve on the ceiling of the spare wheel compartment (Fig. 45), disconnect its wiring connector, then connect a 24-volt external power source, using jumper cables, to close valve.

Warning: Before proceeding with the following steps, check that coolant has cooled down.

3. Loosen hose clamp, install an appropriate container to recover coolant, and disconnect silicone hose from water solenoid valve.
4. From inside of vehicle, remove the grill and the access panels. Open the purge valve located inside the HVAC unit on the driver's side (Fig. 46) to ensure an efficient draining.

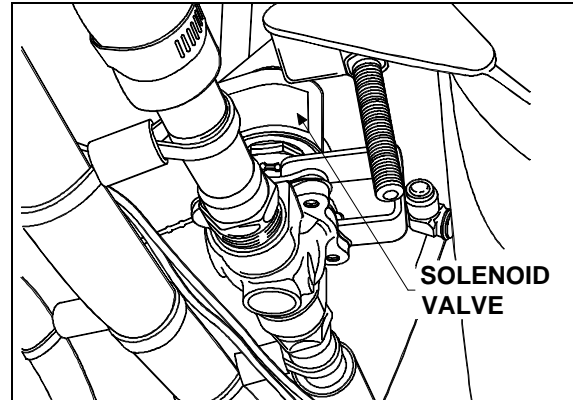


FIGURE 45: CEILING OF SPARE WHEEL COMPART. 22127

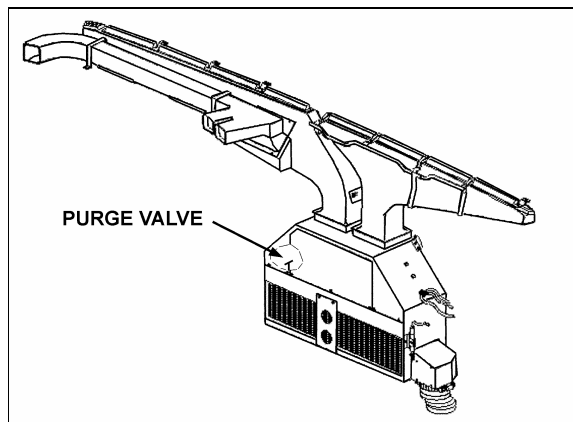


FIGURE 46: DRIVER'S HVAC UNIT 22171PV

12.3.2 Draining Main Heater Core

1. Stop engine and allow engine coolant to cool.
2. Close both heater line shutoff valves. One is located in the engine compartment under the radiator fan gearbox, while the other one is located behind the L.H. hinged rear fender near the preheater. Refer to "Preheater System" in this section to gain access to the heater line shutoff valve.
3. Open the last L.H. side baggage compartment door, then pull the black release button located on the L.H. side in order to unlock and open the HVAC compartment door.

Warning: Before proceeding with the following step, check that coolant has cooled down.

4. Open drain cock in bottom of heater core, then open purge valve located on top of heater core (Fig. 48) in order to allow air to enter while draining.

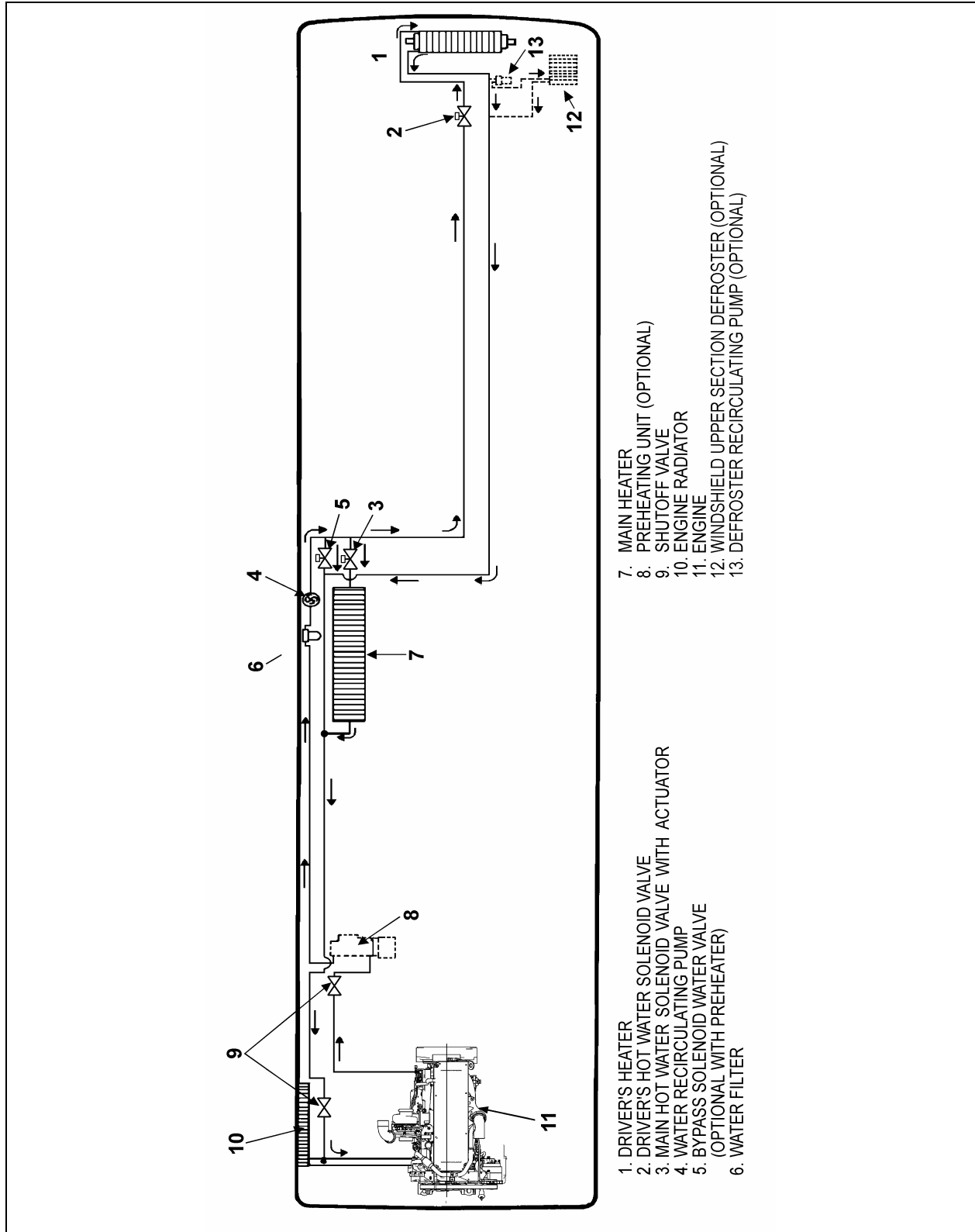


FIGURE 47: CENTRAL HEATING SYSTEM COMPONENTS

22262

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

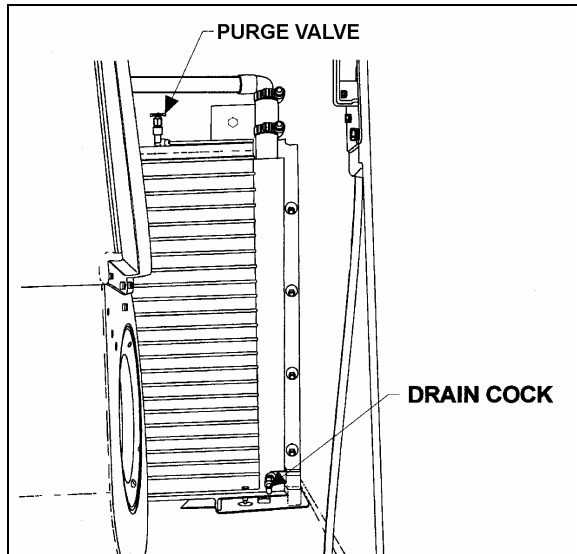


FIGURE 48: HVAC COMPARTMENT

22229

12.4 FILLING HEATING SYSTEM

1. Ensure that the drain hose is reconnected and the purge valves and drain cock are closed.
2. Open the surge tank filler cap and slowly fill the system to level of filler neck.
3. After initial filling, the water valves should be open and the water recirculating pump should be energized to assist in circulating coolant through the heating system. To perform this operation, start the engine, switch on the HVAC control unit, both driver and passenger sections, and set temperature to their maximum positions in order to request the heating mode in each of these sections.
4. When coolant level drops below the surge tank filler neck, slowly fill the system to level of filler neck.
5. If vehicle is equipped with a windshield upper section defroster, open front baggage compartment R.H. side door. Locate recirculating pump on top of front wheelhousing, momentarily pinch the hose located between the recirculating pump suction and the defroster outlet connector to ensure windshield upper section defroster complete filling.
6. Once the level has been stabilized, replace cap.

12.5 BLEEDING HEATING SYSTEM

Whenever the heating system has been drained and refilled, or the system has run low on coolant and coolant has been added, it is necessary to bleed air from heating system. Locate the purge valve illustrated in Figures 46 and 48, and open them momentarily until no air escapes from the lines

12.6 SOLDERING

Before soldering any part of the system, make sure the area is well ventilated. Use (stay clean) flux sparingly and apply solder (95-5 round wire 1/8 inch [3,1 mm]). After completing repairs, test for leaks.

When using heat at or near a valve, wrap with a water saturated rag to prevent overheating of vital parts.

12.7 DRIVER'S WATER SOLENOID VALVE

A two-way normally open, internal pilot-operated solenoid valve designed for smooth closing is used to control the coolant flow through the driver's heating unit. It is mounted on the coolant inlet line of the driver's heating unit, and is accessible through the spare wheel compartment (see fig. 45). The valve cannot be manually bypassed.

12.7.1 Improper Operation

1. Faulty control circuit: Check the electric system by energizing the solenoid. A metallic clicking noise indicates that the solenoid is operating. Absence of clicking indicates a loss of power or a defective solenoid. Check for open breaker, open-circuited or grounded coil, broken lead wires.
2. Burned-out coil: Check for open-circuited coil. Replace coil if necessary.
3. Low voltage: Check voltage across the coil leads. Voltage must be at least 85% of nameplate rating.
4. Excessive leakage: Disassemble valve and clean all parts. Replace worn or damaged parts with a complete repair kit for best results.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

12.7.2 Coil Replacement

Turn off electrical power supply and disconnect lead wires. Proceed in the following manner:

1. Remove retaining clip, spacer, name plate and cover.
2. Slip spring washer and coil off the housing.
3. Coil is now accessible for replacement. Reassemble by reversing sequence of disassembly. Refer to exploded view (Fig. 52) for identification and location of parts.

Note: Solenoid must be completely reassembled, as the cover and internal parts complete the magnetic circuit.

Caution: When metal retaining clip disengages, it springs upwards.

12.7.3 Valve Disassembly

1. Drain driver's heating unit as previously explained in this section under paragraph "Draining Heating System".
2. Disconnect connector from coil connector.
3. Disassemble valve in an orderly fashion paying careful attention to exploded view (Fig. 49) provided for identification of parts.
4. Remove retaining clip and slip the entire solenoid enclosure off the solenoid base.

Caution: When metal retaining clip disengages, it springs upwards.

5. Unscrew solenoid base and remove core, plugnut gasket, plugnut assembly and gasket.
6. Remove the four bonnet screws and valve bonnet, disc holder, spring, diaphragm assembly and body gasket.
7. All parts are now accessible for cleaning or replacement. Replace worn or damaged

parts with a complete repair kit for best results.

Caution: Do not damage valve seat in any manner, as its sealing feature will be affected, thus resulting in continuous leakage.

12.7.4 Valve Reassembly

1. Reassemble in reverse order of disassembly, paying careful attention to exploded view provided for identification and placement of parts (Fig. 48).
2. Replace body gasket and diaphragm assembly. Locate bleed hole in diaphragm, located approximately 45° from valve outlet.
3. Replace disc holder spring and disc holder.
4. Replace valve bonnet screws. Torque bonnet screws in a criss-cross manner to 95 ± 10 inch-pounds.
5. Install gasket, plugnut assembly and plugnut gasket. Position core on plugnut assembly.
6. Replace solenoid base and torque to 175 ± 25 inch-pounds.
7. Refill heating system as previously stated under paragraph "Filling Heating System", then bleed air from the driver's heating unit as stated previously under paragraph "Bleeding heating system".
8. After maintenance, operate the valve a few times to be sure of proper opening and closing.

Note: Should diaphragm assembly become disassembled, be sure to replace the diaphragm spring support with lip facing upward towards the valve bonnet.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

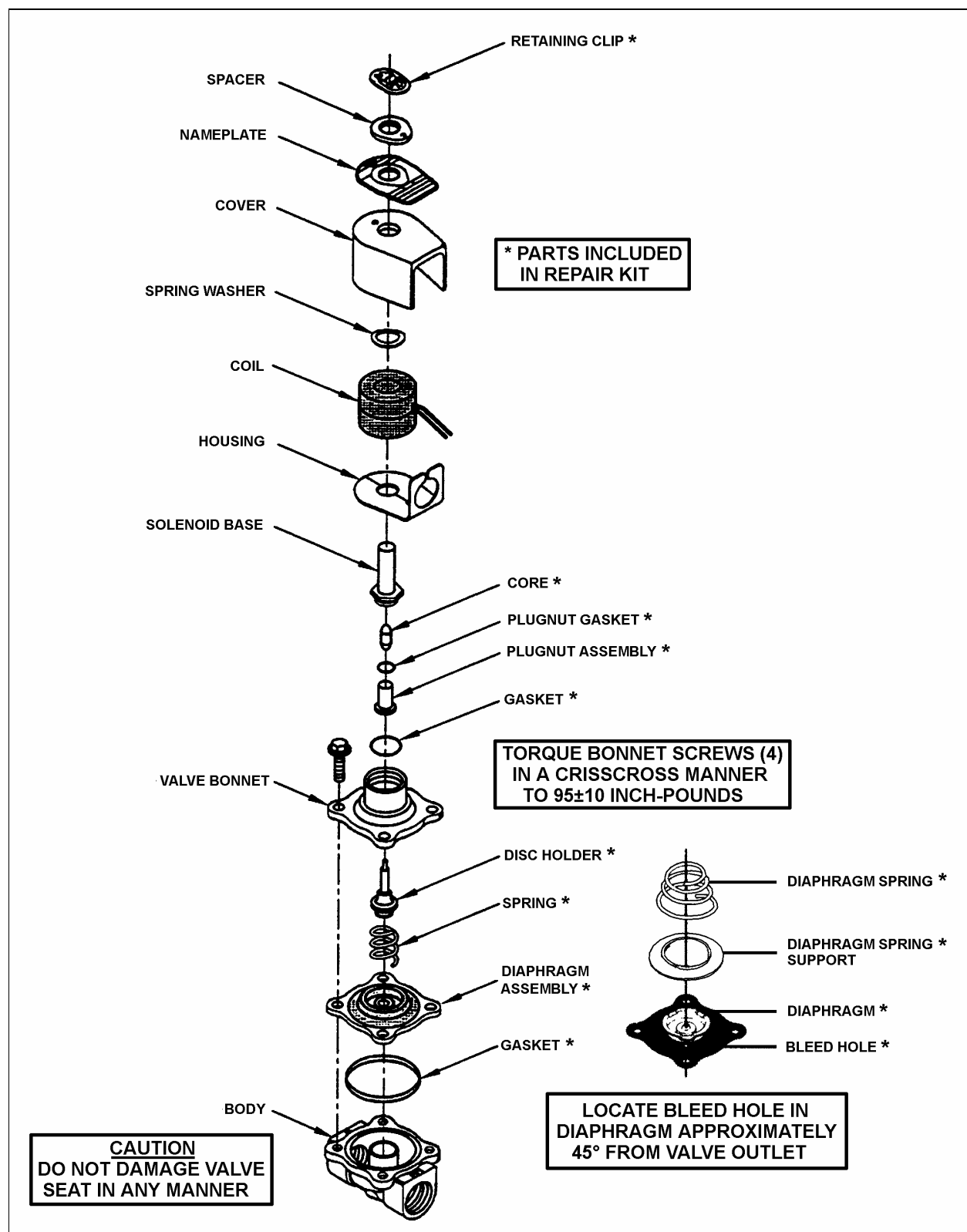


FIGURE 49: DRIVER'S WATER SOLENOID VALVE

22216

12.8 CENTRAL HOT WATER PNEUMATIC VALVE ASSEMBLY

12.8.1 Description

The flow of hot water to the vehicle's central heater core is controlled by a NO pneumatic water valve assembly. The valve, located in the evaporator compartment, is designed so that the pilot solenoid valve, which is part of the assembly opens and closes a port which directs air pressure to the actuator casing, thereby opening or closing the valve.

When the vehicle is operating with no current to the pilot solenoid valve, no air pressure is admitted to the actuator casing, the cylinder spring pushes up against the cylinder, thereby keeping the water valve open.

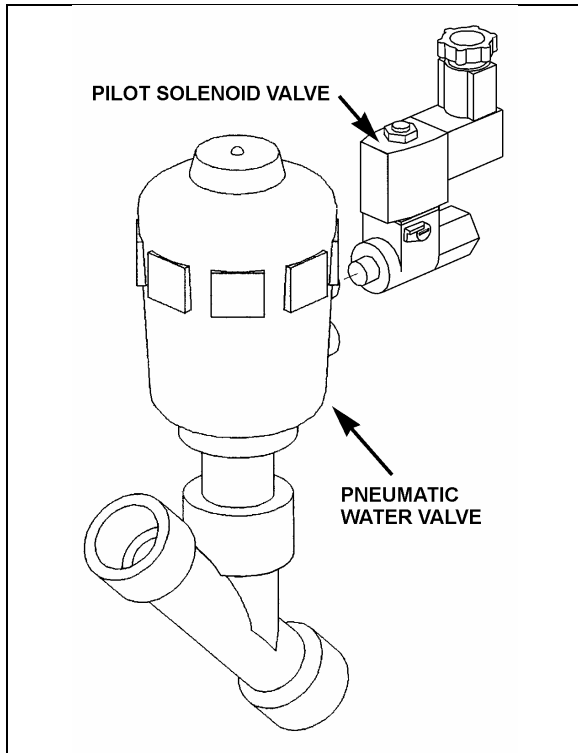


FIGURE 50: CENTRAL HOT WATER PNEUMATIC VALVE ASSEMBLY

22240

The central heater water valve requires a minimum amount of maintenance. The valve should be free of dirt sediment that might interfere with its operation. No other maintenance is needed unless a malfunction occurs.

12.8.2 Pneumatic Water Valve Disassembly

1. Shut off air supply pressure and electrical current to the pilot solenoid valve. Disconnect wires.
2. The water valve need not be removed from the line. Unscrew nipple, the actuator casing, tube, spindle and closure member can be removed (Fig. 51).
3. Remove the snap ring using a pair of pliers.
4. You can now access all seals for replacement

Pneumatic water valve replacement seal kits:

- Water Side: 871311
- Actuator Side: 871312

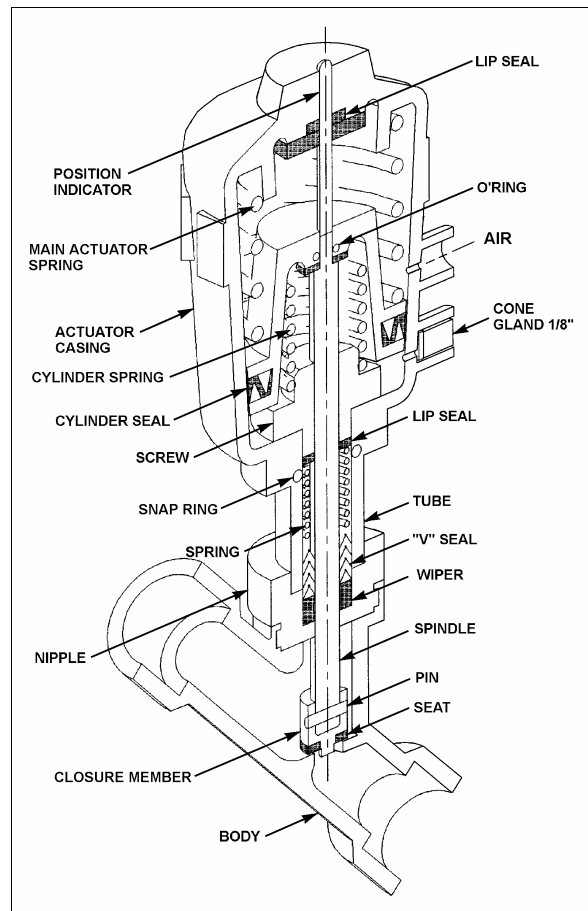


FIGURE 51: PNEUMATIC WATER VALVE

22241

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

12.8.3 Pneumatic Water Valve Reassembly

1. Assemble the actuator casing, tube, nipple, spindle and closure member.
2. Tighten the nipple in place in the body cavity as per figure 51. Fasten pilot solenoid valve to the pneumatic water valve. Reconnect air supply pressure and electrical current to the pilot solenoid valve.
3. Check for proper operation.

12.8.4 Pilot Solenoid Valve

1. No maintenance is needed unless a malfunction occurs.
2. A pilot solenoid valve replacement seal kit is available: 871311.

12.8.5 Valve Troubleshooting

PROBLEM	PROCEDURE
Valve fails to close.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Check electrical supply with a voltmeter. It should agree with nameplate rating.2. Check pressure at pilot solenoid valve inlet. It must be at least equal to the minimum pressure stamped on the nameplate. It should not go below minimum while valve is operating.
Valve fails to open.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Check that the closure member assembly, and that main actuator and cylinder springs are free to travel.2. Check that there is no restriction to the air escaping from the actuator casing.3. Make sure that pilot solenoid valve operates properly.

12.9 WATER RECIRCULATING PUMP

This vehicle is provided with a water recirculating pump which is located in the HVAC compartment (Fig. 52) or on the ceiling of the spare wheel compartment for VIP converted vehicles equipped with a small A/C. The water recirculating pump consists of a centrifugal pump and an electric motor which are mounted on a common shaft in a compact assembly.

The motor is equipped with pre-lubricated sealed ball bearings which require no maintenance. A self-adjusting mechanical shaft seal is incorporated in this assembly to prevent coolant leakage between the pump cavity and armature shaft. This seal derives its lubrication from the liquid pumped, and **it will be destroyed if permitted to operate dry.**

The pump requires no periodic maintenance other than replacement of motor brushes. Replacement of motor brushes can be performed without removing the pump assembly.

Visual inspection of the pump should be made while the pump is in operation to determine if the shaft seal is intact. If there is evidence of coolant leakage, the unit must be disassembled for corrective measures. Disassembly of the pump will be necessary only in the case of a seal leak, bearing failure, or motor failure.

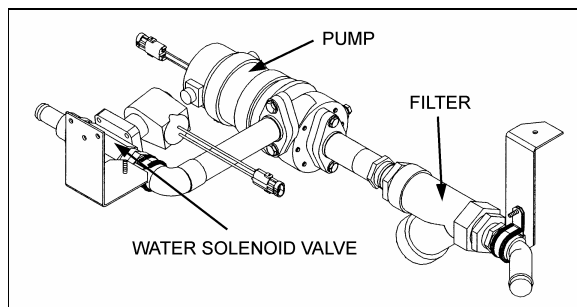


FIGURE 52: VIP WATER RECIRCULATION PUMP INSTALLATION

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

12.9.1 Removal

1. Stop engine and allow engine coolant to cool.
2. Close shutoff valves on the line located in the rear electric compartment. Refer to "Preheater System" in this section to gain access to the heater line shutoff valve.
3. Disconnect the electrical wiring from the motor.

Warning: Before proceeding with the following steps, check that coolant has cooled down.

4. Remove the drain plug at the bottom of the pump and place a container to recover the residual coolant in the line.
5. Disconnect water lines from the pump at the flange connections.
6. Remove the two clamps holding the pump motor to its mounting bracket. Remove the pump with the motor as an assembly.

12.9.2 Disassembly

Refer to figure 53

1. Remove two brush caps (16) and two brush assemblies (15). When removing brushes, note the position of the brush in the tube. Brush life is significantly decreased if brushes are not replaced properly.
2. Remove the pump cover (2) by removing eight head screws. Remove cover carefully to prevent damage to gasket (3).
3. Remove gasket (3).
4. Remove two hex nuts and lock washers which hold pump assembly to the motor.
5. Remove the pump from the motor as follows.
 - a. Install puller tool assembly (MP Co. Part No. 24702 or equivalent) to pump body (12) using four screws removed from the pump cover (2).
 - b. Tighten the puller screw to press the motor shaft out of the impeller hub. The pump is now free from the motor.
6. Remove the puller tool.

7. Remove impeller (4) and components of the pump seal assembly (5).

Caution: Do not scratch or mar the sealing surface of this seat, as its sealing feature will be affected, thus resulting in continuous leakage

Inspection

Components removed from the recirculating pump and motor assembly should be compared with new parts to determine the degree of wear.

12.9.3 Brushes

- 1) When removing brushes, note the position of the brush in the tube. Brush life is shortened if the brushes are not replaced properly.
- 2) Examine brushes for the following:

a) Wear

Replace the brushes if less than 25% of the usable brush is left (less than 0.300 inch (8 mm)).

b) Chipped edges

Chips can be caused by improper handling or installation. Badly chipped brushes should be replaced regardless of their length.

c) Annealed brush spring

This can be detected by noting the resiliency of the spring. Annealing is caused by failing to tighten the brush caps properly, thus not providing a good low resistance contact between the terminal and the brush tube. Replace brushes showing evidence of annealed springs.

d) Frayed or broken pigtail

An improperly installed brush may have the pigtail (shunt) pinched under the terminal or between the coils of the spring. If the pigtail is badly frayed or broken, replace the brush.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

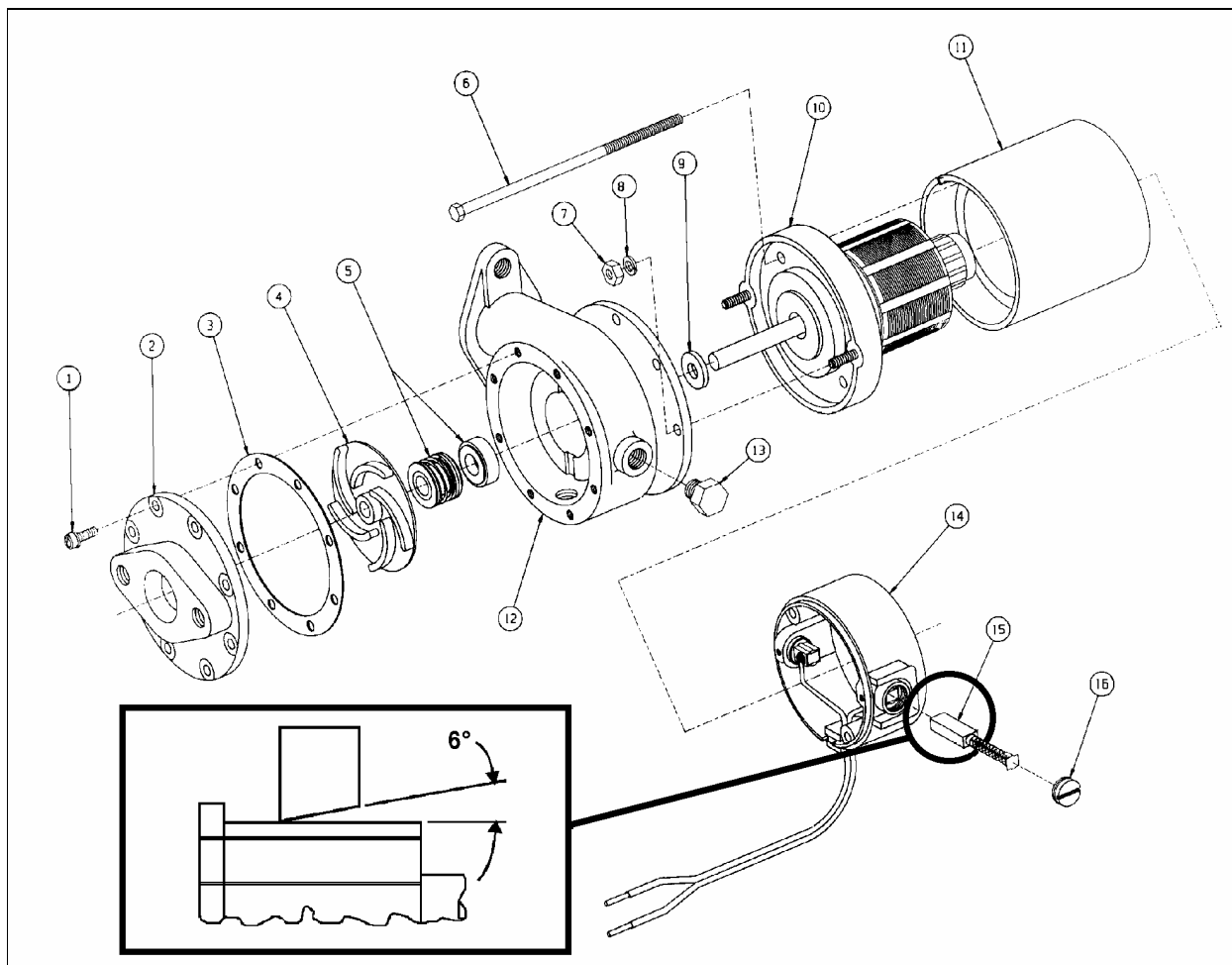


FIGURE 53: WATER RECIRCULATING PUMP

22056

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	QTY.	ITEM	DESCRIPTION	QTY.
MOTOR			IMPELLER		
	Motor Assembly	1	4	Impeller - Brass	1
11	Stator	1	HOUSING		
14	End Frame Assembly	1	12	Body - Brass	1
10	Armature adapter Assembly	1	2	Cover - Brass	1
15	Brush Assembly	2	1	Screw and Washer Assembly	8
16	Cap (brush holder)	2	3	Gasket	1
6	Case bolt 10-32 X 5	2	9	Slinger	1
7	10-32 Hex Nut	2	13	Drain Plug - 1/8" NPT Brass	2
8	#10 Lock Washer	2	SEAL		
			5	Seal Ass'y - Silicon Carbide/Carbon	1

- 3) Observe the following factors when replacing brushes
 - a. The face of a new brush is carefully cut to cause proper seating during the "wear-in" period.
 - b. Improper installation can harm both the brush and the commutator.
 - c. Replacement brushes should be of the proper grade.
 - d. New brushes have a six- (6) degree angle. The brush should always be inserted so that the angle is open away from the pump end of the assembly (inset, Fig. 53)
 - e. Brush performance will be affected if the spring and terminal are not properly placed in the brush tube. The spring should be free over its entire length and the terminal should make good contact with the metal brush tube insert.

12.9.4 Bearings

Refer to figure 53.

1. Rotate the motor shaft. If the ball bearings show evidence of wear, they should be replaced.
2. To use of a bearing puller is recommended when removing the bearings to help prevent damaging the armature winding or the commutator.
3. Replacement bearings should be pressed into the same exact location as the original bearings.
4. It is recommended that a suitable sealant (such as Locktite or equivalent) be used between the shaft and the bearing, if the fit is not tight enough to prevent the shaft from spinning inside the inner race.
5. After replacing the bearings, check the position of the commutator in the motor by looking down into the brush tube. Neither the riser nor the edge of the commutator should be visible.

12.9.5 Commutator

1. The commutator is a precise assembly. Although it is solidly built and made of a fairly tough material, careless handling can easily ruin it.
2. The commutator should be refinished only on equipment that provides good concentricity and the proper finish.
3. The commutator should be refinished if a micrometer reading shows a difference between "in track" and "off track" diameter of 0.187 inch (4,7 mm) or more.
4. The commutator should be carefully undercut with a 0.025 inch (0,6 mm) or less slot width.
5. A 25 to 50 micromesh finish is desirable on a new or refinished commutator.
6. The commutator should not be touched with the fingers since sweat and body oils will rapidly discolor and oxidize its surface.

12.9.6 Miscellaneous

Refer to figure 53.

1. Check the shaft slinger (9) to make sure it is tight on the motor shaft. If the slinger slips on the shaft, it should be replaced.
2. Inspect seal assemblies (5) to determine wear. If the seal has leaked, or is badly worn, it is recommended that a complete new seal assembly be installed.
3. The impeller (4) is a press fit on the armature shaft. This press fit must be maintained to prevent the impeller from slipping. Install a new impeller if necessary.

12.9.7 Assembly

Refer to figure 53.

1. Install slinger (9) on the motor shaft.
2. Assemble body (12) to the motor.
3. Install seal assembly (5).
4. Install impeller (4) in the following manner:

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

- a) Place the impeller on a flat surface with the vanes against the flat surface.
 - b) Invert the motor and pump body assembly, then pilot the pump shaft into the impeller bore. **DO NOT HAMMER** on the motor shaft extension at rear of motor.
 - c) Press on motor and pump body until the machined face of the pump body is flush with the face of the flat surface on which the impeller is resting. The face of the impeller vanes must now be flush with the machined face of the pump body.
5. Install gasket (3). This gasket serves both to seal the cover and to establish the proper clearance between the face of the impeller and the pump cover.
 6. Attach cover (2) to the pump body using eight head screws (1).
 7. Install motor brushes assembly (15) and brush caps (16).

12.9.8 Installation

1. Apply gasket cement to the pump body line adapter and to the line flanges, put the two gaskets in place, and connect water lines from the pump at the flange connections. Position the pump and motor assembly on the mounting bracket. Position the mounting clamps over the motor and secure with mounting bolts.
2. Apply pipe sealant on threads of drain plug, and screw it in place.
3. Connect electrical wiring to the pump motor.
4. Open shutoff valve located behind the L.H. Side hinged rear fender (near the preheater). Refer to "Preheater System" in this section to gain access to the heater line shutoff valve.
5. Fill the cooling system as previously instructed in this section under "*Filling Heating System*", then bleed the system as previously instructed in this section under "*Bleeding Heating System*".

12.10 WATER FILTER

This vehicle is provided with a cleanable water filter, which is located in the HVAC compartment (refer to Fig. 16 and 54 (behind the right air duct)).

12.10.1 Maintenance

Filter maintenance consists in changing the element at break-in 3000 miles (4 800 km), and subsequently every 50,000 miles (80 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

Note: *Each time soldering is performed on any water pipe of the heating system, operate heating system a few minutes so that any foreign matter will be routed to the filters. Clean filters.*

12.10.2 Filter Servicing

1. Stop engine and allow engine coolant to cool.
2. Close shutoff valve on the line located in the rear electric compartment. Refer to "Preheater System" in this section to gain access to the heater line shutoff valve.

Warning: *Before proceeding with the following steps, check that coolant has cooled down.*

3. Rotate bowl (6) counterclockwise and remove.
4. Remove element (5) from housing. Discard all disposable elements. These elements are not cleanable (Fig. 54).
5. Place new, clean element in housing, centering it on location in the head.
6. Inspect bowl seal and replace if necessary.
7. Replace bowl. Rotate clockwise and hand-tighten.
8. Correct coolant level in surge tank as instructed previously in this section under "*Filling Heating System*".

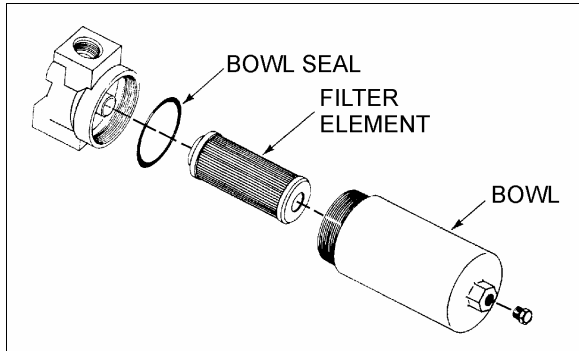


FIGURE 54: WATER FILTER

22057

12.11 BYPASS SOLENOID WATER VALVE (OPTIONAL)

This valve is optional and is installed on the vehicle equipped with a preheater. The valve is located in the HVAC compartment (Fig. 16). This valve is similar to the driver's liquid solenoid valve. Refer to Fig. 49 for part names.

12.11.1 To Remove or Change the Coil

- Stop engine and allow engine coolant to cool.
- Close shutoff valve on the line located in the rear electric compartment. Refer to "Preheater System" in this section to gain access to the heater line shutoff valve.

To remove the solenoid coil:

First take out the retaining screw at the top of the coil housing. The entire coil assembly can be lifted off the enclosing tube.

To reassemble:

Make sure that the parts are placed on the enclosing tube in the following order:

Be sure to change electrical data plate according to coil specifications change.

1. Place coil and yoke assembly on the enclosing tube. Lay data identification plate in place.
2. Insert the coil retaining screw, rotate housing to proper position and tighten screw securely.

12.11.2 Valve disassembly and Reassembly

Disassembly:

This valve may be taken apart by removing the socket head screws which hold the body and bonnet together. After removing the screws, carefully lift off the bonnet assembly (upper part of the valve). Don't drop the plunger. The diaphragm can now be lifted out. Be careful not to damage the machined faces while the valve is apart.

Note: The above procedure must be followed before brazing solder type bodies into the line.

Reassembly:

Place the diaphragm in the body with the pilot port extension up. Hold the plunger with the synthetic seat against the pilot port. Make sure the bonnet O-rings are in place, the bonnet assembly over the plunger, and that the locating sleeve in the bonnet enters the mating hole in the body. Insert body screws and tighten uniformly.

13. PREHEATING SYSTEM (OPTIONAL ON COACHES ONLY)

The preheater is located over the rear wheelhousing, behind the vehicle's L.H. side rear fender.

To gain access to the preheater and the heater line shutoff valve, remove the L.H side rear fender.

This Auxiliary Preheating System is used for preheating and retaining the heat of water-cooled engines. It can be used before starting the engine to ease it's starting and to provide immediate inside heat upon operation of the heating system. It can also be used with engine running to maintain coolant heat and maintain the set temperature inside vehicle.

The heater operates independently from the vehicle engine. It is connected to the cooling and heating circuits, the fuel system and the electrical system of the vehicle.

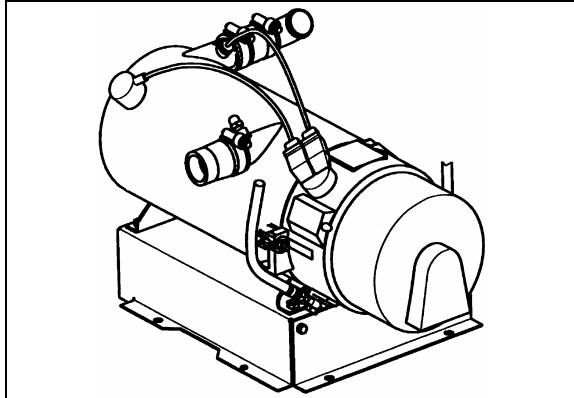


FIGURE 55: WEBASTO PREHEATER (104,000 BTU) 22224

The pilot lamp turns on when the heater is switched on. Combustion air flows in to flush out the combustion chamber and the water circulation pump is put into operation. The fuel metering pump conveys fuel in precise doses to the combustion chamber where fuel and combustion air form a combustible mixture which is ignited by the glow plug.

Once the flame sensor has signaled to the control unit that combustion has taken place correctly, the glow spark plug and ignition coil are switched off.

The hot combustion gases are diverted at the end of the flame pipe, then pass through the indirect heating surfaces of the heat exchanger and transmit their heat to the water passing through the heat exchanger.

The heat is thermostatically controlled and operates intermittently, i.e. the switched-on times of the burner vary depending on the heat requirement. The water temperature depends on the setting of the built-in water thermostat.

The water circulation pump remains in operation as long as the heater is operating, even in the regulation intervals and during the delayed cutout of the switched-off heater. The pump can also be operated independently from the heater by means of an appropriate circuit. The heater can be switched on at any time, even during the delayed cutout period. Ignition takes place once this delay time is over.

When the heater is switched off, the fuel supply is interrupted. The flame goes out, and at the same time a delayed cutout of some 2.5

minutes begins. The combustion air still flowing flushes the remaining combustion gases out of the chamber and cools off the hot parts on the exhaust side of the heat exchanger, while the water circulation pump, still running, transmits the heat present in the heat exchanger, thus preventing local overheats. Once the delayed cutout time is over, both the combustion air blower and the water circulation pump switch off automatically.

A cutout will take place in case of any failure of the preheater.

13.1 OPERATION

Switch on the heater. The operation indicator lamp comes on and the heater motor and circulating pump begin to run. After about 10-25 seconds the solenoid valve opens and fuel is sprayed into the combustion chamber. At the same time, the electronic ignition unit produces high voltage (8000 V) and the mixture of fuel and air in the combustion chamber is ignited by the spark on the ignition electrodes. The flame is indicated by the flame detector, then the electronic ignition unit stops producing high voltage and combustion continues by itself (spark on electrodes is required only to ignite the flame). At this moment, the heater is working and producing heat.

If the heater is switched off by the on/off switch, the solenoid valve interrupts fuel supply, combustion stops and indicator lamp turns off. Combustion air fan still blows air, cleaning the combustion chamber of any fumes and cooling down the combustion chamber. Coolant circulation pumps coolant, making a purge cycle for approximately 2-3 minutes, thus protecting the heater against overheating.

If the heater is not switched off by the on/off switch, the control thermostat will switch off the heater when coolant temperature reaches $165^{\circ} \pm 6^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($75^{\circ} \pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$) and turns it on at $154^{\circ} \pm 9^{\circ}\text{F}$ ($68^{\circ} \pm 5^{\circ}\text{C}$). During this time, the heater (combustion) is off and the indication lamp and coolant pump are on. Combustion air fan blows air for 2-3 minutes and then turns off.

13.2 PREHEATING SYSTEM TIMER

The timer, located on L.H. lateral console is used to program the starting and stopping time of the preheating system. The system indicator light, located on the timer, illuminates when the system is functional.

Caution: The preheating system should not operate for more than one hour before starting engine as this could discharge batteries.

Warning: Preheating system must not operate when vehicle is parked inside or during fuel fill stops.

Note: Preheating system uses the same fuel as the engine.

In case of failure:

1. Shut off and turn on again.
2. Check main circuit breaker and overheat fuse.
3. Have system repaired in a specialized shop.

13.2.1 Timer operating instructions (Webasto)

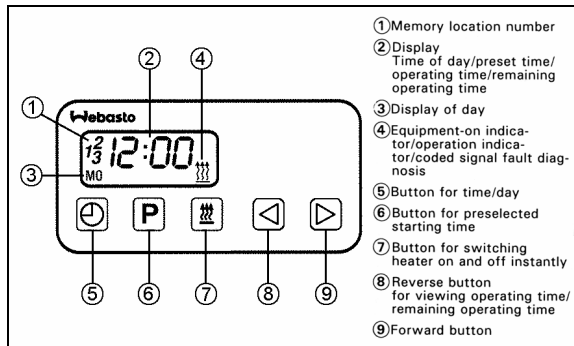


FIGURE 56: WEBASTO

22223

These instructions refer to the timer illustrated in figure 56. They are the same instructions provided in the Webasto instruction booklet, provided with your vehicle.

Remaining Operating Time

The remaining operating time refers to the period of time the heater still continues to remain in operation. It may be changed while the heater is in operation.

Setting the Digital Timer

After the power has been connected, all symbols on the digital display are flashing. The time of the day and the day of the week must be set.

All flashing symbols of the timer can be set by means of the Forward (9) or Reverse (8) buttons.

When buttons (8) and (9) are pressed for more than 2 seconds, the quick digit advance mode is activated.

Setting the Time and Day of the Week

1. Press button (5) for more than 2 seconds (time display flashes).
2. Press (8) or (9) button to set the time of day.
3. Wait 5 seconds. The time of day is stored (time of week flashes).
4. Press (8) or (9) button to set the correct day of week.
5. Wait 5 seconds. The day of week is stored.

Viewing the Time (Ignition ON)

Continuous display of current time and day of the week.

Viewing the Time (Ignition OFF)

Briefly press button (5) to display current time and day for 5 seconds.

Switching Heater ON (Instant Heating)

With Ignition ON:

Press button (7). Heater is switched on (continuous operation) and continues to operate until button (7) is pressed again or ignition is switched off.

Note: If the ignition is switched off while heater is in operation, the remaining operating time of 5 minutes flashes on the display and the heater will continue to operate for this period of time.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

With Ignition OFF:

Press button (7). Heater is switched on for preset operating time (the factory-set heater operating duration is 60 minutes).

Switching Heater OFF

Press button (7). The heater starts its after-run cycle and switches off thereafter.

Presetting Operating Duration

1. Press button (6). Memory location number flashes.

Note: By repeatedly pressing button (6), starting time 2 or 3 can be preset.

2. Press button (8) or (9) until correct startup time is set.
3. Wait 5 seconds. Preset starting time is stored and day of week flashes.
4. Press button (8) or (9) to select the correct startup day of week.
5. Wait 5 seconds. The startup day of week is stored.

The number of memory location remains on the display. The timer is now in the programmed mode and will switch the heater in at the preset time.

Note: We recommend that memory locations 1 and 2 be used for presetting times within 24 hours of setting the timer. Memory location 3 can be used for a starting time within the next 7 days of setting the timer.

Recalling Preset Times

Press (6) repeatedly until the desired memory location number and preset time are displayed.

Canceling Preset Time

Press button (6) repeatedly until no more memory location number is visible on the display.

Setting Operating Time

1. With heater off, press button (8). Operating time flashes.

2. Press button (8) or (9) to set the operating time (between 1 and 120 minutes).

3. Wait 5 seconds. Operating time is stored.

The heater remains in operation for the preset time (except for continuous operation).

Setting the Remaining Operating Time

1. With heater in operation, press button (8). Remaining operating time flashes.
2. Set remaining time with button (8) or (9).
3. Wait 5 seconds. Remaining operating time is stored.

Operational Failure Symptoms via Fault/Flash code

On heaters equipped with a fault diagnosis system using coded light signals, the equipment-on indicator/operation indicator flashes. Refer to the following table.

13.3 TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE

Refer to the Webasto manual for more information.

Note: If there are no heater faults, the heater will go through a normal start cycle and regulate based on thermostat setting.

Note: Switch on the preheating system briefly about once a month, even during the warm season.

Caution: When welding on the vehicle, disconnect the preheater module connector in order to protect this system from voltage surges.

Caution: To avoid running down the batteries, do not turn on the preheating system for more than one hour before starting the engine.

Warning: The preheating system uses the same fuel as the engine. Do not operate in a building or while refueling. Operate only in a well-ventilated area.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Failure Symptom	Probable Cause	Check and Correct
1X Flash (F 01) No combustion after completion of start up sequence.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Fuel system - Combustion air - Electronic ignition 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Fuel level - Type of fuel being used - Fuel filter - Fuel line connections (air bubbles in fuel lines) - Fuel nozzle plugged - Air intake or exhaust, restricted or plugged - Incorrect electrode gap
2X Flashes (F 02) Flame out during burner operation no restart possible	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Fuel supply (shortage of fuel) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Restriction in the fuel system - Fuel filter - Fuel line connections (air bubbles in fuel lines) - Type of fuel being used
3X Flashes (F 03) Low voltage for more than 20 seconds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Electrical system 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Load test batteries - Corrosion at connections - Loose connections
4X Flashes (F 04) Flame detector recognizes false flame signal during pre-start or shut-down cycle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Defective flame detector 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Replace flame detector
5X Flashes (F 05) Flame detector	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Wiring - Defective flame detector 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit - Replace flame detector
6X Flashes (F 06) Temperature sensor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Wiring - Defective temperature sensor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit - Replace temperature sensor
7X Flashes (F 07) Fuel solenoid valve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Wiring - Defective solenoid valve 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Damaged or corroded wiring, open or short circuit - Replace solenoid valve
8X Flashes (F 08) Combustion air fan motor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Wiring - Wrong RPM - Defective combustion air fan motor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit - Replace combustion air fan - Replace combustion air fan
9X Flashes (F 09) Circulation pump motor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Wiring - Defective circulation pump motor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit - Replace circulation pump motor
10X Flashes (F 10) Temperature limiter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Overheat condition - Coolant flow - Wiring - Defective temperature limiter 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Reset temperature limiter - Coolant level or flow restriction - Air trapped in coolant circuit - Damaged or corroded wiring, open or short circuit - Replace temperature limiter
11X Flashes (F 11) Electronic ignition coil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Wiring - Defective electronic ignition coil 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit - Replace electronic ignition coil
12X Flashes (F 12) Heater lock out	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 3 repeated faults/flame-outs or 5 repeated start attempts 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Reinitialize control unit by switching heater on and disconnecting power.

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

14. SPECIFICATIONS

Main evaporator motor

Make US MOTOR
Type T-17
Voltage 27.5 V DC
Current draw 68 amps
Horsepower 2
Revolution 1400 & 1800 rpm
Insulation Class F
Motor Life 20 000 hours
Brush life 10 000 hours
Motor supplier number D5092VPRC8
Motor Prevost number 563008
Brush supplier number EPB125BC0077
Brush Prevost number 562951

Condenser fan motors

Make US MOTOR
Type TF-12
Voltage 28.5 V DC
Current draw 25 amps
Horsepower 0.57
Revolution 1950 rpm
Insulation Class F
Motor 20 000 hours
Brush life 10 000 hours
Qty 2
Supplier number D591Y440PRC2
Prevost number 562579
Brush supplier number 9DB21003
Brush Prevost number 561914

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Main evaporator air filter

Make Permatron Corp.
Type Washable 1" X 23 3/8" X 43 1/2" Polypropylene filter
Supplier number MODEL IN-1
Prevost number 871051

Driver's unit evaporator motors

Make MCC
Voltage 24 V DC
Quantity 1
Supplier number 25-0250
Prevost number 871135

Driver's unit evaporator air filter

Make MCC
TYPE Recirculating air 6-1/4" x 28" Washable
Supplier number 260593
Prevost number 871147

Make MCC
TYPE Fresh air 3-5/8" X 5-1/4" Washable
Supplier number 260594
Prevost number 871144

Refrigerant

Type Optional R-22 and Standard R-134a
Quantity (standard) 24 lbs (10.89 Kg)
Quantity (with A/C unities Parcel Rack) 26 lbs (11.82 Kg)

Compressor (Central system)

Make Carrier Transicold
Capacity, option R-134a 41 CFM
Capacity, option R-22 37 CFM
Model, option R-134 05G-134A
Model, option R-22 05G-22

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

No. of cylinders.....6
Bore2" (50,8 mm)
Operating speed 400 to 2200 rpm (1750 rpm. Nominal)
Minimum speed (for lubrication)..... 400 rpm
Nominal horsepower 15
Oil pressure at 1750 rpm 15 to 30 psi (103-207 kPa)
Oil capacity..... 1.13 U.S. gal (4,3 liters)
Weight..... 142 lbs (64,5 kg)
Approved oils
-Castrol..... SW 68 (POE)
Supplier number, option R-134a 68PD541-104-38
Supplier number, option R-22 68PD537-104-39
Prevost number, option R-134a 950314
Prevost number, option R-22 950207

A/C Compressor (Small system)

Make.....Seltec
Model.....TM-16HD
Weight..... 10.9 lbs (4,9 kg)
Supplier number 18-00074-11
Prevost number 950372
Approved oilZXL100PG (PAG)
Prevost number 950382

Compressor unloader valve

Make Carrier Transicold
Type Electric (AMC)
Voltage 24 V DC
Watts..... 15
Supplier number (without coil) 17-40407-20
Prevost number (without coil) 950095
Coil supplier number.....22-50030 (1)
Coil Prevost number..... 950096

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Magnetic clutch

Make Carrier Transicold
Type Housing mounted 9" dia., 2-B grooves
Voltage 24 V DC
Coil resistance at 68 °F (20 °C) 5.15 – 5.69 ohms
Supplier number 50-01122-90
Prevost number 950204

Compressor V belts

Make Dayco
Model (matching set of 2) BX97
Prevost number (with Delco 270/300 Amp Alternator) 506664

Compressor V belt

Make Dayco
Model BX100
Prevost number (with two BOSH Alternators) 506681

Condenser coil

Make Carrier Transicold

Aluminium

Supplier number 68BC-509-114
Prevost number 452968

Copper

Supplier number 68BC-509---104-1
Prevost number 453013

Receiver tank (with sight glasses)

Make HENRY
Maximum pressure 450 psig
Supplier number ARL-1217
Prevost number 950261

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Filter Dryer assembly

Make AC&R HENRY
Supplier number 815031-XH9
Prevost number 950262

Moisture indicator

Make Henry
Supplier number MI-30-7/8S
Prevost number 950029

Driver's refrigerant liquid solenoid valve

Make Parker
Type Normally closed with manual bypass
Voltage 24 V DC
Amperage draw 0.67 amps
Watts 16
Supplier number (without coil) RB9MP3-MM
Prevost number (without coil) 95-0054
Coil supplier number R23MM 24 V DC-CB
Coil Prevost number 950055
Repair kit Prevost number 950056

Driver's hot water solenoid valve

Make Asco
Type Normally open (without manual bypass)
Voltage 24 V DC
Current draw 0.47 amp.
Watts 11.2
Pressure range 0 to 100 psi
Max. temperature 220°F
Supplier number (with coil) 106-269-1
Prevost number (with coil) 870812
Coil Prevost number 870960
Repair kit Prevost number 870872

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Main hot water valve actuator

Make Honeywell
Model ML 784
Voltage 24 V DC
Type Linear
Prevost number 641238
Supplier number ML784A207a
Repair kit Prevost number (packing, follower, spring stem assembly and disc) 641261
Repair kit supplier number 14 00 2695-005

Single-seated valve

Model V5011F
Prevost number 641239

Water recirculating pump

Make M.P. pumps
Voltage 24 V DC
Supplier number 28689
Prevost number 871052

Water filter (standard system)

Make Parker
Supplier number (with element) 15CN1238WP
Prevost number (with element) 871028
Element supplier number 925566
Element Prevost number 871029

Water filter (small A/C system)

Make BRAUKMANN
Supplier number T300B
Prevost number 870807

Driver's expansion valve

Supplier number, option R-134a 26-0190
Supplier number, option R-22 26-0384
Prevost number, option R-134a 950221
Prevost number, option R-22 950282

Section 22: HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Main expansion valve (with R-134A)

Make CARRIER
Supplier number 14-01104-43
Prevost number 95316

Main expansion valve (with R-22 option)

Make ALCO
Supplier number TCLE 10HW55
Prevost number 950292

Bypass solenoid water valve

Make Parker Hannifin
Bypass supplier number RB21ME7-MM
Bypass Prevost number 870886
Coil supplier number R-23MM24VDC-CB
Coil Prevost number 870886
Repair kit supplier number 76754
Repair kit Prevost number 870980

Preheating system

Make WEBASTO
Model THERMO 300
Capacity 104 000 Btu/h (30 kW)
Heating medium Coolant
Rated voltage 24 V DC
Operating voltage 20-28 V DC
Electric power consumption (without coolant recirc. Pump) 110 watts
Fuel consumption 1,2 US gallons/hr (4,5 liters/hr)
Supplier number 9002092A
Prevost number 871202

SECTION 23: ACCESSORIES

CONTENTS

1. AUDIO AND VIDEO EQUIPMENT DESCRIPTION	23-4
1.1 AMP-3000 (HIGH POWER AMPLIFIER)	23-5
1.1.1 Removal	23-5
1.2 AM/FM RADIO.....	23-5
1.2.1 AM/FM Radio / CD 1 Disc.....	23-5
1.2.2 Removal	23-6
1.3 CONTROL HEAD	23-6
1.3.1 Removal	23-6
1.4 VIDEO CASSETTE PLAYER (VCP).....	23-7
1.4.1 Removal	23-7
1.4.2 Installation	23-7
1.5 BOOM-TYPE MICROPHONE.....	23-7
1.5.1 Removal	23-7
1.5.2 Installation	23-7
1.6 HANDHELD PRIORITY MICROPHONE.....	23-8
1.7 WIRELESS MICROPHONE	23-8
1.8 TV TUNER	23-8
1.9 KARAOKE	23-8
1.9.1 Karaoke Panasonic Sound System – Mobile DVD Player DV1500	23-8
1.10 DRIVER'S SPEAKERS	23-8
1.11 MONITOR	23-8
1.11.1 Removal	23-9
1.11.2 Installation	23-9
1.12 SCENIC VIEWING SYSTEM.....	23-9
1.13 ROOF ANTENNA INSTALLATION	23-9
2. HUBODOMETER	23-10
2.1 DESCRIPTION	23-10
2.2 OPERATION	23-10
2.3 REMOVAL.....	23-10
2.4 INSTALLATION.....	23-10
3. BACK-UP CAMERA AND MONITOR.....	23-10
4. COLD STARTING AID (ETHER).....	23-10
4.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE	23-11
4.2 TROUBLESHOOTING (If SYSTEM Is NON-FUNCTIONING)	23-11
4.3 THERMAL CUTOUT VALVE QUICK TEST	23-12
5. DESTINATION SIGN	23-12
5.1 DESCRIPTION	23-12
5.2 MAINTENANCE	23-12
5.3 ELECTRIC MOTOR REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION.....	23-12
5.4 SIGN CURTAIN REPAIR.....	23-13
6. WINDSHIELD SUNSHADES	23-13
6.1 ADJUSTMENT.....	23-13

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

7. LAVATORY.....	23-13
7.1 DESCRIPTION	23-13
7.2 MAINTENANCE	23-14
7.3 VENTILATION FAN	23-14
7.3.1 Description.....	23-14
7.3.2 Maintenance	23-14
7.3.3 Removal and Installation	23-14
7.4 DOOR LOCK	23-14
7.5 LAVATORY LIGHT	23-15
7.6 LAVATORY NIGHT-LIGHT	23-15
7.7 EMERGENCY BUZZER	23-15
7.8 FRESH WATER TANK.....	23-15
7.8.1 Fresh Water Tank Heater (Optional)	23-15
7.8.2 Fresh Water Tank Draining	23-15
7.8.3 Fresh Water tank Filling	23-15
7.9 LIQUID SOAP DISPENSER	23-16
7.10 FLUSH PUSH-BUTTON	23-17
7.10.1 Pneumatic Timer Removal and Installation.....	23-17
7.10.2 Timer Adjustment.....	23-17
7.11 FLUSH PUMP	23-17
7.11.1 Flush Pump Pressure Adjustment	23-18
7.12 SUMP TANK.....	23-18
7.12.1 Sump Tank Draining	23-18
7.12.2 Sump Tank Filling	23-18
7.13 CLEANING CABINET	23-18
8. AIR HORN VALVE	23-18
8.1 AIR HORN VALVE MAINTENANCE	23-18
9. WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS	23-19
9.1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION	23-19
9.2 WIPER ARM.....	23-20
9.2.1 Sweep Adjustment.....	23-20
9.2.2 Removal	23-21
9.2.3 Installation	23-21
9.3 LOWER LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT	23-21
9.4 UPPER LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT	23-21
9.5 WINDSHIELD WIPER MOTORS	23-21
9.5.1 Lower Windshield Wiper Motor Replacement	23-21
9.5.2 Upper Windshield Wiper Motor Replacement	23-22
9.6 TROUBLESHOOTING.....	23-24
10. SPECIFICATIONS	23-33

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: SOUND SYSTEM JUNCTION PLATE	23-4
FIGURE 2: AMP-3000 AMPLIFIER.....	23-5
FIGURE 3: PANASONIC CP-DP101U	23-6
FIGURE 4: CONTROL HEAD	23-6
FIGURE 5: INSTALLATION IN PARCEL COMPARTMENT	23-7
FIGURE 6: VIDEO CASSETTE PLAYER	23-7
FIGURE 7: BOOM-TYPE MICROPHONE	23-7
FIGURE 8: HANDHELD PRIORITY MICROPHONE	23-7
FIGURE 9 WIRELESS MICROPHONE	23-8
FIGURE 10: TUNER CONTROLS DESCRIPTION	23-8
FIGURE 11: KARAOKE PANASONIC DVD-A300.....	23-8
FIGURE 12: MONITOR HOUSING REAR PANEL.....	23-9
FIGURE 13: INSTALLATION IN PARCEL COMPARTMENT	23-9
FIGURE 14: CAMERA INSTALLATION ON WINDSHIELD.....	23-9
FIGURE 15: HUBODOMETER	23-10
FIGURE 16: ENGINE	23-11
FIGURE 17: COLD STARTING AID	23-11
FIGURE 18: DESTINATION SIGN - ELECTRICAL.....	23-12
FIGURE 19: DESTINATION SIGN - ELECTRIC MOTOR	23-13
FIGURE 20: DESTINATION SIGN – ELECTRONIC	23-13
FIGURE 21: LAVATORY	23-14
FIGURE 22: VENTILATION FAN INSTALLATION.....	23-14
FIGURE 23: DOOR LOCK.....	23-15
FIGURE 24: FRESH WATER TANK SERVICE VALVES.....	23-16
FIGURE 25: LIQUID SOAP DISPENSER	23-16
FIGURE 26: FUNCTIONING OF LAVATORY	23-17
FIGURE 27: SUMP TANK	23-18
FIGURE 28: AIR HORN VALVE	23-18
FIGURE 29: WIPER MOTORS LOCATION	23-19
FIGURE 30: DASHBOARD.....	23-19
FIGURE 31: MULTIFUNCTION LEVER.....	23-19
FIGURE 32: WINDSHIELD WASHER RESERVOIR.....	23-19
FIGURE 33: LOWER WINDSHIELD WIPER	23-20
FIGURE 34: UPPER WINDSHIELD WIPER	23-20
FIGURE 35: LOWER WINDSHIELD WIPER INSTALLATION	23-22
FIGURE 36: UPPER WINDSHIELD WIPER INSTALLATION	23-23
FIGURE 37: TROUBLESHOOTING	23-25
FIGURE 38: TROUBLESHOOTING	23-26
FIGURE 39: TROUBLESHOOTING	23-27
FIGURE 40: TROUBLESHOOTING	23-28
FIGURE 41: TROUBLESHOOTING	23-29
FIGURE 42: TROUBLESHOOTING	23-30
FIGURE 43: TROUBLESHOOTING	23-31
FIGURE 44: TROUBLESHOOTING	23-32

1. AUDIO AND VIDEO EQUIPMENT DESCRIPTION

The power amplifier is mounted on a sound system junction plate which is located over the front wheel housing (Fig. 1), to access, open the first baggage compartment. In addition to the public address (PA) systems, options for AM/FM stereo radio and cassette player, CD changer, karaoke, wireless microphone, video system with monitors, scenic viewer and digital processor controller may be featured.

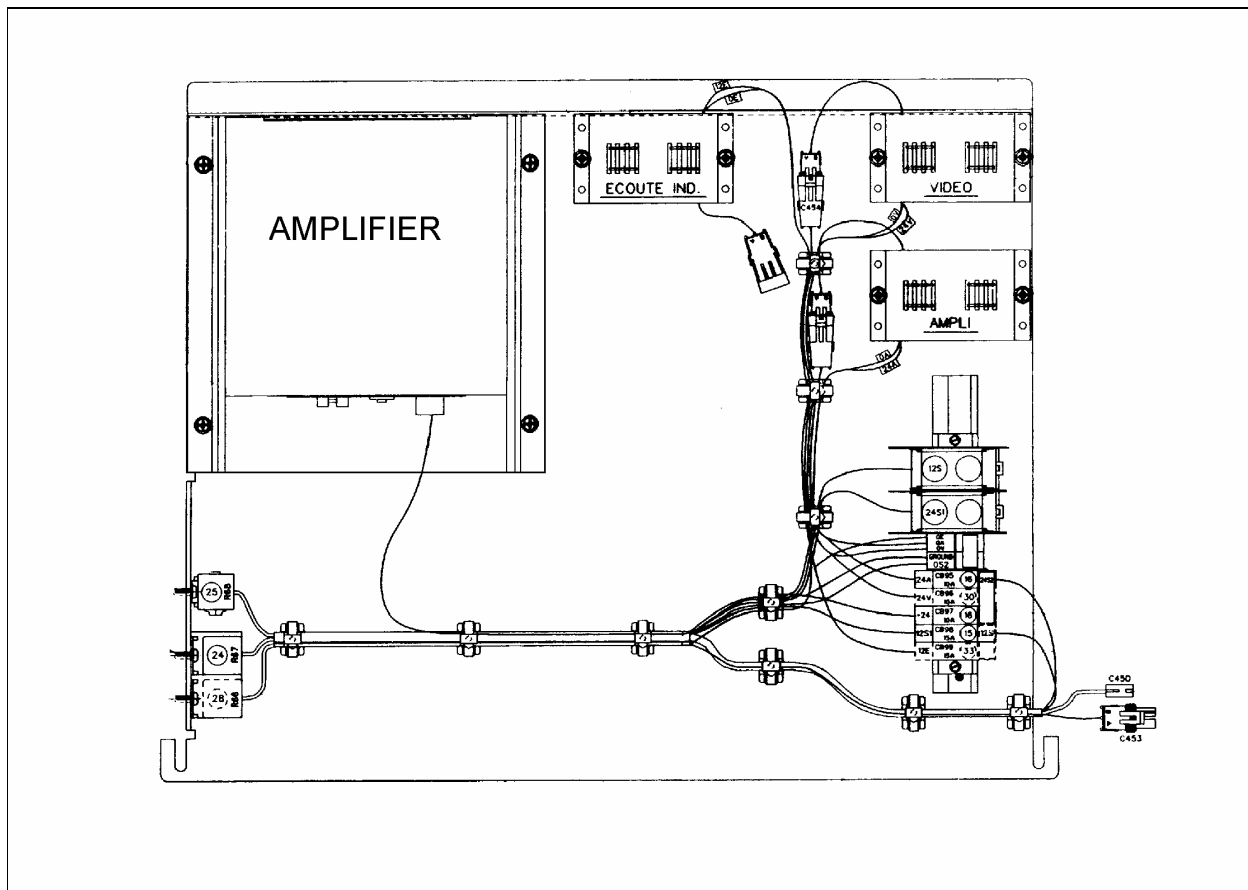


FIGURE 1: SOUND SYSTEM JUNCTION PLATE

23059

Each service module mounted to the underside of the parcel racks contains a 40-watt speaker. The speakers in the passenger section (twelve in H3-41 or sixteen in H3-45) are wired in stereo and are powered by the amplifier. A microphone outlet mounted in the driver's area is provided as standard equipment.

1.1 AMP-3000 (HIGH POWER AMPLIFIER)

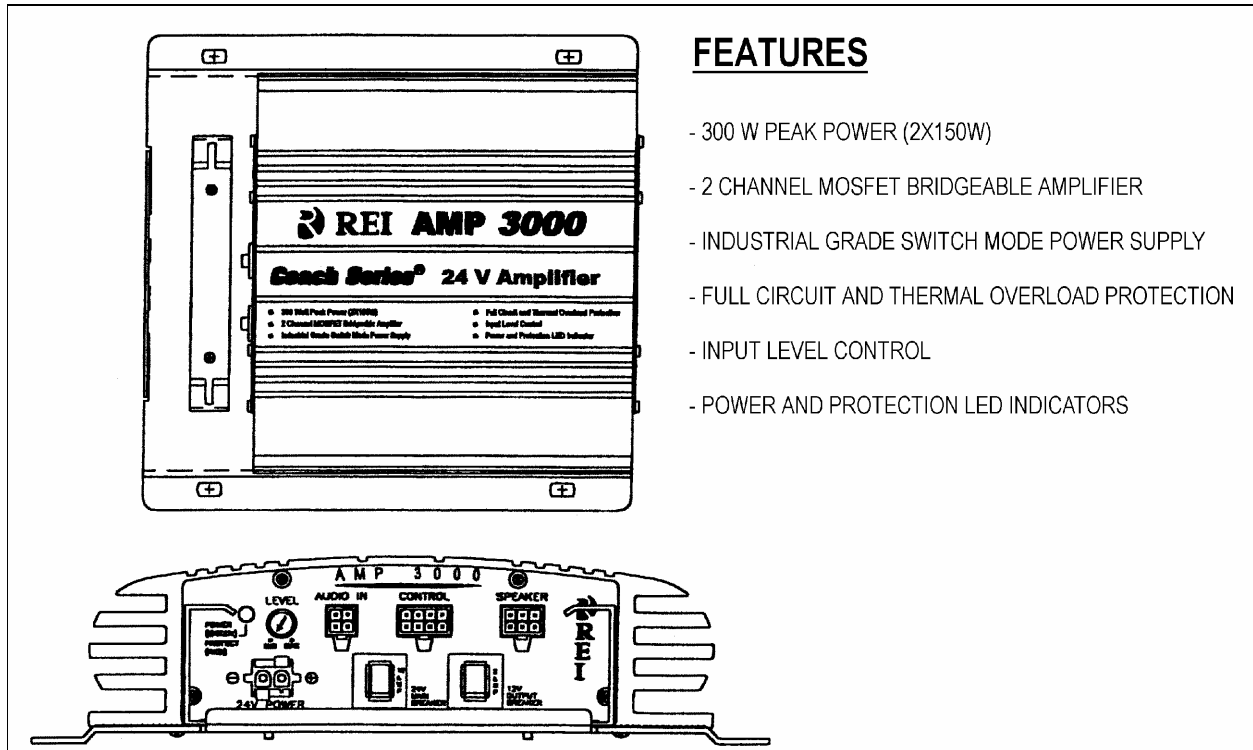


FIGURE 2: AMP-3000 AMPLIFIER

23318

FEATURES

- 300 W PEAK POWER (2X150W)
- 2 CHANNEL MOSFET BRIDGEABLE AMPLIFIER
- INDUSTRIAL GRADE SWITCH MODE POWER SUPPLY
- FULL CIRCUIT AND THERMAL OVERLOAD PROTECTION
- INPUT LEVEL CONTROL
- POWER AND PROTECTION LED INDICATORS

The AMP-3000 brings an added dimension to your stereo equipment and increases the total output of the system. The amplifier will perform with any unit operating in a 24-volt with negative ground electric system. The AMP-3000 is located over the front wheel housing. To access, open the first baggage compartment door.

Set the volume control on the radio, then adjust the input control on the amplifier for an average listening level. This gives the best balance between radio output and system signal-to-noise ratio (Fig. 2).

Caution: The low level input adjustment for this amplifier has been preset according to system specifications.

1.1.1 Removal

Remove the amplifier as follows:

1. Set the ignition switch to the "OFF" position. Refer to Section 6: "Electrical System" for switch location.

2. Remove the sound system junction plate from its location. To perform this step, disconnect wiring connectors, remove cable ties and remove the bolts retaining the sound system junction plate.
3. Remove the four screws retaining the amplifier to its sound system junction plate.
4. Reverse the removal procedure to install the amplifier.

1.2 AM/FM RADIO

1.2.1 AM/FM Radio / CD 1 Disc

This audio system is composed of an AM/FM radio CD player Panasonic model CP-DP101U (Fig. 3). Also, the vehicle may be equipped with two additional Hi-Fi speakers in the driver's area. A roof antenna as well as different microphone outlets, can be installed as optional equipment.

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

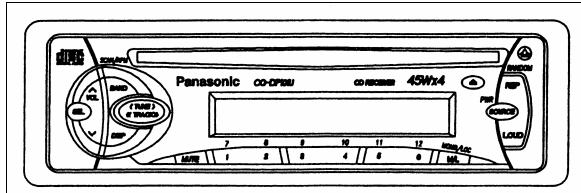


FIGURE 3: PANASONIC CP-DP101U

23317

Note: Before attempting to solve an electrical problem on the sound system, refer to the master wiring diagrams.

Instructions for proper use of the radio are included in the "Panasonic Owner's Manual" which is provided in the technical publication box delivered with the vehicle. The radio is a serviceable component and should only be serviced by a qualified electronics technician. Refer to "Panasonic Service Centers" guide included in the technical publication box.

1.2.2 Removal

To remove the radio from its location, proceed as follows:

1. Place the ignition switch in the "OFF" position.
2. Remove the dashboard panel cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical cable connectors from radio and unfasten back plate securing screw.
4. To separate the radio from its support, push in the dismounting pins included with the Panasonic Owner's Manual.
5. Push the unit through the front instrumentation panel.
6. Install a new unit by reversing the procedure.

1.3 CONTROL HEAD

The system 2000 (Fig. 4) is designed exclusively for coach operations. A complete system will control the following equipment:

- A specially designed 70 watt per channel RMS amplifier, capable of driving up to twenty-six, four ohm speakers.
- Six, custom designed ten-inch color monitors that incorporate a unique anti-theft

locking slide mount. This makes installation and removal very easy.

- A specially modified VHS video cassette player that allows the operator convenient control over its functions.
- A digital audio processor that incorporates a centralized system control. The system 2000 microprocessor allows the operator to control up to three audio selections, permitting custom tailoring of each channel's sound quality. The unit contains a separate video section for the VCP that allows the driver to control his own separate audio selections.

Instructions for proper use of the control head are included in the "REI Operator's Manual" which is provided in the technical publication box delivered with the vehicle.

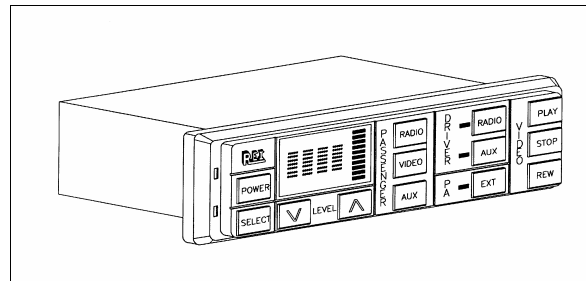


FIGURE 4: CONTROL HEAD

23070

1.3.1 Removal

To remove the control head from its location, proceed as follows:

1. Place the battery master switch in the "OFF" position.
2. Remove the dashboard panel cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical cable connectors from radio and unfasten back plate securing nut.
4. To separate the control head from its support, push in the dismounting pins included with the REI Operator's Manual.
5. Push the unit through the front instrumentation panel.
6. Install a new unit by reversing the procedure.

1.4 VIDEO CASSETTE PLAYER (VCP)

The VCP is located in the first parcel compartment on the driver's side (Fig 5 & 6). Instructions for proper use of the VCP are included in the "Operator's Manual" which is provided in the technical publication box.

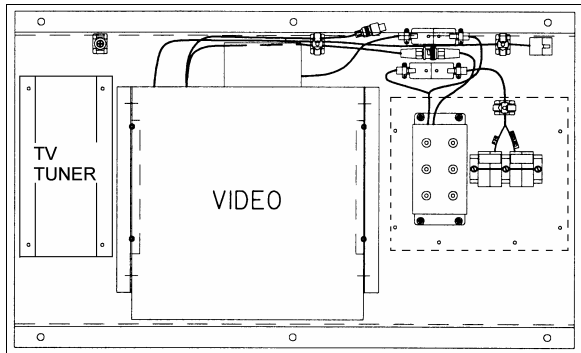


FIGURE 5: INSTALLATION IN PARCEL COMPARTMENT
23223

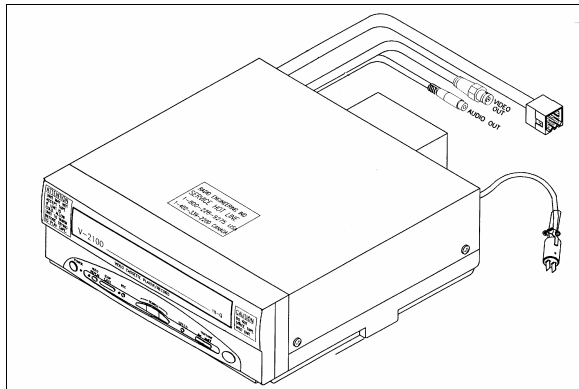


FIGURE 6: VIDEO CASSETTE PLAYER
23075

1.4.1 Removal

1. Place the ignition switch in the "OFF" position.
2. Remove the VCP/VCR mounting locknuts from rubber mounts.
3. Disconnect wiring.
4. Remove VCP/VCR unit from parcel compartment.

1.4.2 Installation

1. Install VCP/VCR unit into parcel compartment aligning rubber mount studs with mounting holes. Insert mount studs through mounting holes.
2. Install locknuts on mount studs.
3. Reconnect wiring.
5. Place the battery master switch in the "ON" position.

1.5 BOOM-TYPE MICROPHONE

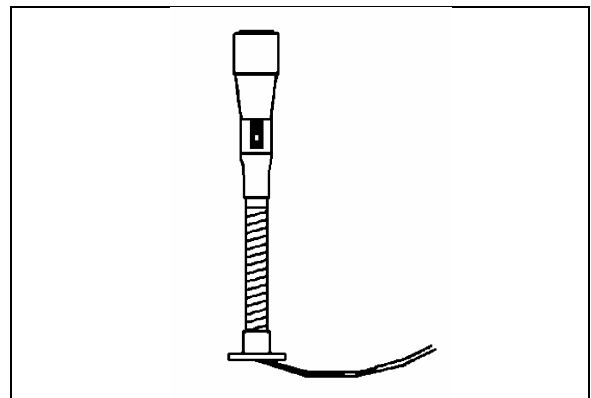


FIGURE 7: BOOM-TYPE MICROPHONE
23083

1.5.1 Removal

1. Place the ignition switch in the "OFF" position.
2. Remove the mounting screws at mounting flange.
3. Disconnect wiring.

1.5.2 Installation

1. Reconnect wiring.
2. Align mounting flange with holes and install screws.
3. Remove spacer block mounting screws.
4. Insert spacer block and install mounting screws.
5. Place the battery master switch in the "ON" position.

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

1.6 HANDHELD PRIORITY MICROPHONE

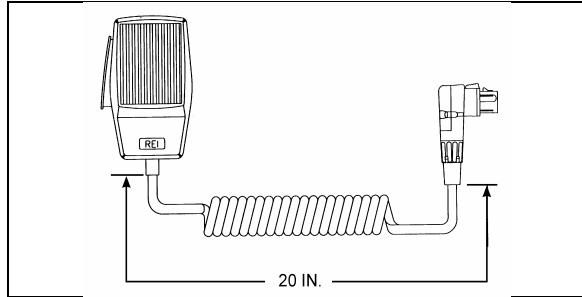


FIGURE 8: HANDHELD PRIORITY MICROPHONE 23216

1.7 WIRELESS MICROPHONE

The system 2000 16 channel wireless microphone, Receiver and Charging Cradle are custom designed units that allow for wireless PA communication from anywhere on the coach. The unit consists of a receiver mounted in the parcel area directly behind the driver, and a rechargeable hand-held microphone and charging unit. Instructions for proper use of the microphone are included in the "REI Operating Manual" which is provided in the technical publications box delivered with the vehicle.

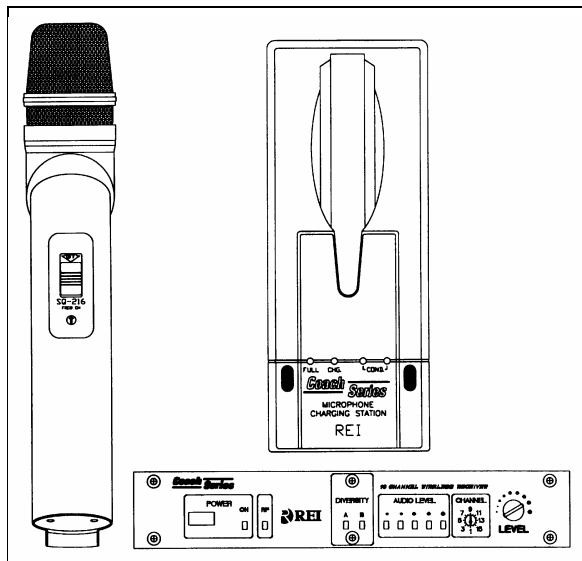


FIGURE 9: WIRELESS MICROPHONE

1.8 TV TUNER

For TV tuner control descriptions, refer to fig. 10.

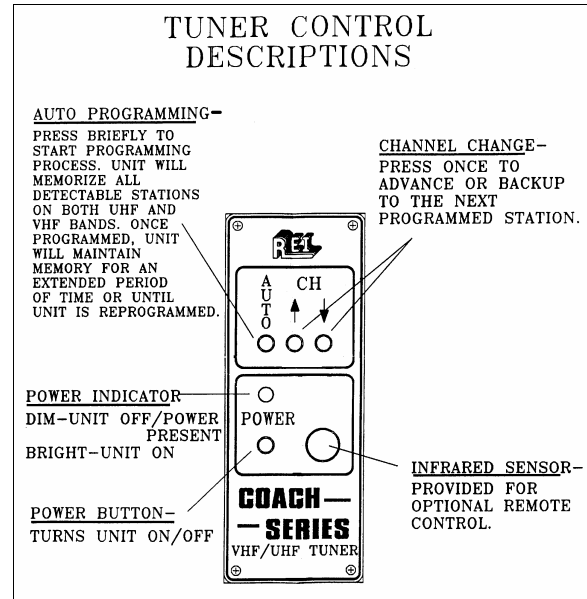


FIGURE 10: TUNER CONTROLS DESCRIPTION

1.9 KARAOKE

The modified Panasonic DVD Player powers up automatically when the video system is activated. The unit can be controlled with the plug-in remote control, or the control head, which has access to the PLAY and STOP commands.

If so equipped, instructions for proper use of the Karaoke system are included in the "Operating Manual" that is provided in the technical publications box delivered with the vehicle.

1.9.1 Karaoke Panasonic Sound System – MOBILE DVD PLAYER DV1500

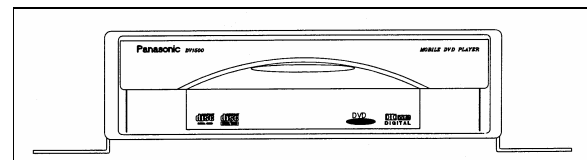


FIGURE 11: PANASONIC DV1500

1.10 DRIVER'S SPEAKERS

The driver's speakers are mounted one on each side. This arrangement provides the driver with clear stereo sound. Controls for the driver's audio allow selection between the radio and the auxiliary audio (independent of the passenger's speakers) or muting the speakers.

1.11 MONITOR

For monitor adjustment, refer to figure 12.

1.11.1 Removal

The front and side, ten-inch color monitors are slide mounted and retained by key locks. A LED indicator is provided on the back to indicate when the unit is "ON". The red button is the monitor ON/OFF switch and the pin style button is the circuit breaker reset button.

1. Place the ignition switch in the "OFF" position.
2. Unlock the monitor slide and pull towards the front of the monitor.
3. After removal, cover mount location using the monitor cover assembly and lock.

1.11.2 Installation

1. Remove monitor cover assembly located over mounting bracket if needed.
2. Align the monitor mount with the slide and slide monitor into place.
3. Lock the monitor or cover to prevent removal.

Note: Make sure connections are not bent or damaged. If monitor is not being replaced, immediately install the mounting cover.

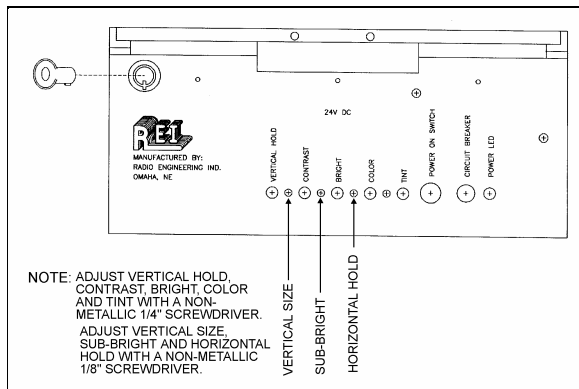


FIGURE 12: MONITOR HOUSING REAR PANEL

1.12 SCENIC VIEWING SYSTEM

The scenic viewing system enables the passengers to view the road ahead of the vehicle. This system is composed of a camera, a dashboard mounted ON/OFF switch and the audio – video switching box located in the first parcel compartment on the driver's side (Figs. 13 & 14).

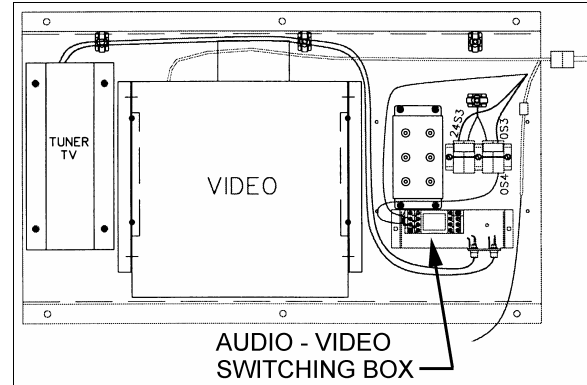


FIGURE 13: INSTALLATION IN PARCEL COMPARTMENT

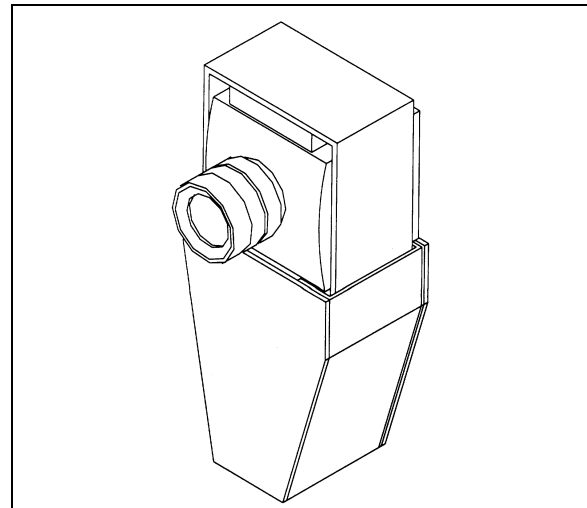


FIGURE 14: SCENIC VIEW CAMERA

23221

1.13 ROOF ANTENNA INSTALLATION

1. Find the desire location and drill a hole according to specification.
2. To remove dirt and grease, wash hole edge with alcohol.
3. If so equipped, remove foam padding ring from antenna to free the metal surface (foam can produce air bulbs in new rubber seal).
4. With SIKA 205, wash the vehicle hole edge and the antenna base surface, wait at least two (2) minutes for chemical evaporation.
5. Apply new seal SIKA 221 on both, vehicle hole edge and antenna base.
6. Fix the antenna in place.
7. Remove excess seal and complete a finishing joint all around the antenna base.

2. HUBODOMETER

2.1 DESCRIPTION

An optional wheel hubodometer (Fig. 15) may have been installed on the R.H. side of the drive axle. It indicates the total distance in miles or kilometers covered by the coach since it has left the factory, including road testing.

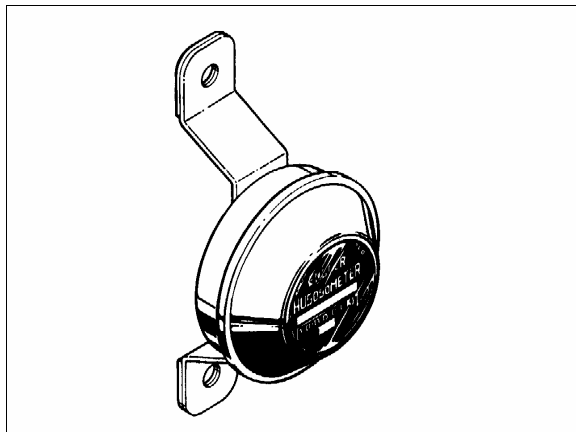


FIGURE 15: HUBODOMETER

23027

2.2 OPERATION

The hubodometer is calibrated for a specific wheel size (diameter). Wheel rotation causes a mechanism inside the hubodometer to record distance after a predetermined number of rotations. The unit should be serviced at a competent speedometer repair facility.

Note: Do not use paint, solvent or thinner on hubodometer face or on plastic hubcaps. Do not weld on hubodometer.

2.3 REMOVAL

To remove the unit, remove the two lock nuts and washers securing it to the wheel hub, and pull the unit off the studs.

2.4 INSTALLATION

Place the hubodometer unit over the wheel hub studs. Replace the lock washers and nuts. Torque stud nuts to 110-165 Lbf-ft (150-225 Nm).

3. BACK-UP CAMERA AND MONITOR

An optional back-up camera is available which provides the driver with visual assistance when backing-up. The camera is automatically activated when the transmission is put in reverse gear and the ignition switch is "ON". The TV monitor is mounted on top of the dashboard. Refer to the Owner's or the Operator's Manual for more information.

4. COLD STARTING AID (ETHER)

The vehicle can be equipped with an electrically-operated type ether cold starting aid designed to ease engine starting when temperature is below 35°F (2°C).

On vehicles equipped with cold starting aid, the system consists of the main following parts:

- Ether starting aid switch
- Ether cylinder
- Solenoid valve (24 V)
- Thermal cutout valve
- Atomizer

The control rocker switch is located on the dashboard. This switch is provided with a locking mechanism to avoid accidental use when engine is running. To activate the ether starting aid, proceed as follows:

1. Prior to cranking engine, press down rocker switch for three seconds to fill solenoid valve.
2. Release switch to discharge shot.
3. Allow three seconds for shot to discharge.
4. Start engine, use additional shots if necessary to keep engine running.

Caution: This practice should be performed only when absolutely necessary. Excessive use of fluid could result in serious engine damage.

The ether cylinder and solenoid valve assembly are mounted on the engine compartment wall and are accessible from the engine compartment R.H. side door.

The thermal cutout valve is mounted on the engine (radiator side). Its function is to prevent discharge of ether when engine is warm (over 90°F (32°C)). An atomizer is installed on top of the air intake duct (Fig. 16).

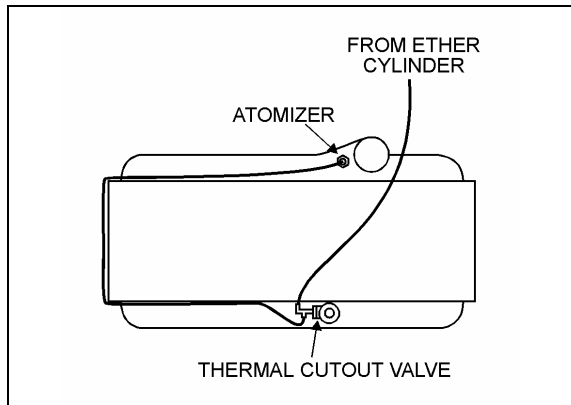


FIGURE 16: ENGINE

23032

4.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

During the summer months, remove cylinder to avoid high temperature actuation of the cylinder safety relief device. Always screw valve cap into solenoid valve opening to prevent entrance of road dirt. When removing cylinder, be careful to prevent dirt from entering the valve.

4.2 TROUBLESHOOTING (IF SYSTEM IS NON-FUNCTIONING)

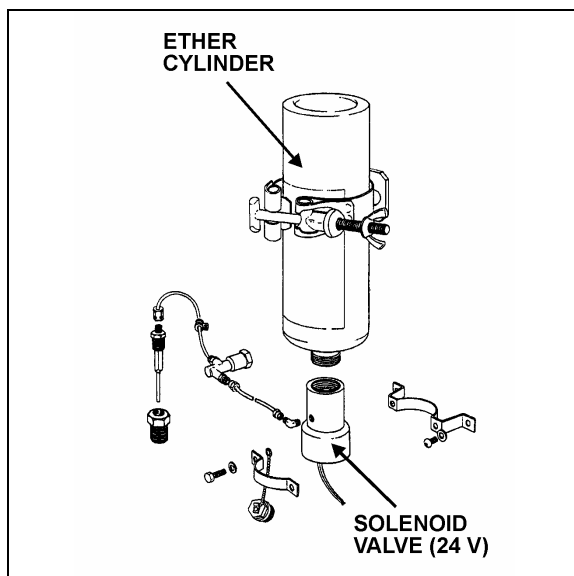


FIGURE 17: COLD STARTING AID

23048

Warning: During the following test, direct free end of tube away from personnel and all sources of ignition as this fuel is extremely flammable. Avoid breathing vapors and contacting fuel with skin. Never smoke during test.

1. Check cylinder for hand tightness and fuel supply (Fig. 17). Empty cylinder weight is approximately 17 oz (480 g); full cylinder weight is approximately 35 oz (990 g). If cylinder is empty, replace it. Before replacing cylinder, install new valve gasket in solenoid valve.
 2. If still not functioning, disconnect tubing at solenoid valve fitting. Actuate solenoid valve. (Ask an assistant to actuate solenoid valve using the rocker switch on the dash-board).
 - If solenoid valve is non-functioning, check electric circuit, (refer to wiring diagrams). If sound, remove and replace the solenoid valve. If not, repair electric circuit.
 - If valve is functioning, reassemble valve fitting and connect tube. Disconnect tube at thermal cutout valve from port "Tube from valve".
 3. Actuate the solenoid valve.
 - If fuel is not discharged from tube, remove tube and blow out or replace.
 - If fuel is discharged, connect tube to thermal cutout valve, and disconnect other tube.
 4. Actuate the solenoid valve.
 - If fuel is not discharged, replace the cutout valve.
- Note:** If engine coolant temperature is 90 °F (32°C) or over, it is normal that fuel is not discharged as the valve is in closed position.
- If fuel is discharged, connect tube to thermal cutout valve, and disconnect tube from atomizer.
 5. Actuate the solenoid valve.
 - If fuel is not discharged from tube, fuel line is clogged. Remove tube and blow out or replace.
 - If fuel is discharged, replace the atomizer.

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

4.3 THERMAL CUTOUT VALVE QUICK TEST

1. Engine coolant temperature must be below 90 F (32 C).
2. Temporarily disconnect tube at thermal cutout valve from port "Tube to atomizer".
3. Actuate solenoid valve (Ask an assistant to actuate solenoid valve by means of the rocker switch on the dashboard). Fuel should be discharged through the thermal cutout valve.

Warning: Avoid breathing vapors and contacting fuel with skin. Never smoke during test.

4. Reconnect tube to thermal cutout valve.
5. Start engine, using cold starting aid if necessary. Stop engine when it reaches operating temperature.
6. Disconnect tube at thermal cutout valve as in step 2, and repeat step 3. No fuel should be discharged.

5. DESTINATION SIGN

5.1 DESCRIPTION

The destination sign is located at upper front of the vehicle. Two models are available.

ELECTRICAL DESTINATION SIGN (Optional)

The lighting is provided with a fluorescent tube, which is activated by means of a rocker switch located on the dashboard. The destination sign is electrically operated, two rocker switches mounted side by side on the destination sign control its motor. The unwinding speed control switch determines the rolling speed without actuating it. The selecting switch (momentary type) controls and actuates the rolling direction (fig. 18).

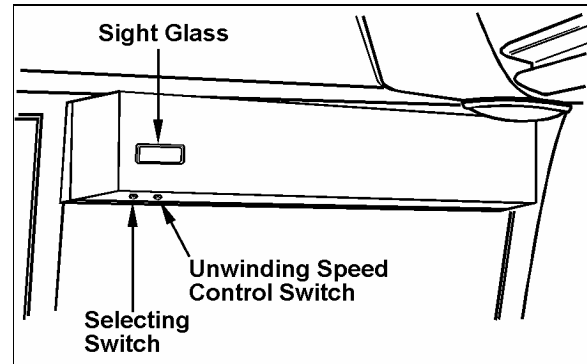


FIGURE 18: DESTINATION SIGN - ELECTRICAL

23122

5.2 MAINTENANCE

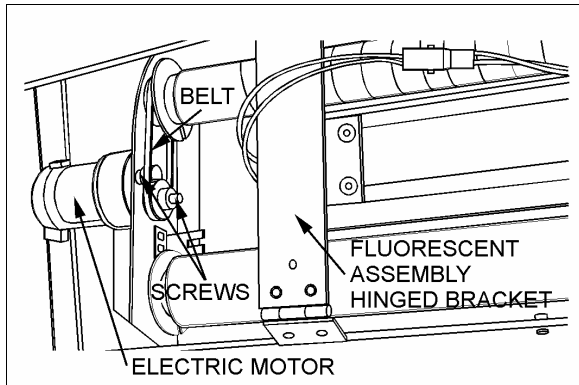
Inspect the following items regularly:

1. Check for free and easy mechanism movement.
2. Check for loose items on the sign mechanism, such as wire, loose clips, hanging tape, etc.
3. Check tension and condition of the two drive belts and replace as required.
4. Periodic lubrication is **NOT** recommended.

5.3 ELECTRIC MOTOR REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

To remove the electric motor:

1. Remove the six Phillips-head screws and washers retaining the destination sign cover, then carefully remove the cover from its location.
2. Disconnect wires from electrical motor.
1. Remove both screws retaining motor to destination sign frame (Fig. 19).
4. Slide motor upwards, then remove the drive belt.
5. Remove motor through the opening intended for this purpose.

FIGURE 19: DESTINATION SIGN-ELECTRIC MOTOR²³⁰³⁴

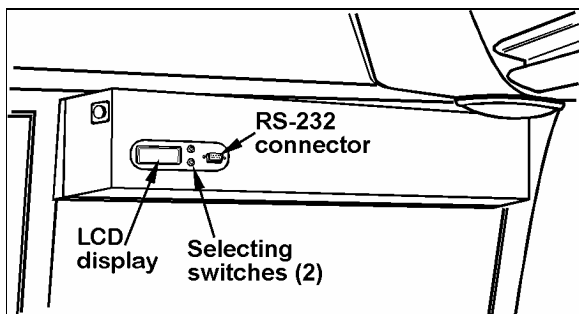
6. Install the motor by reversing the above procedure.

5.4 SIGN CURTAIN REPAIR

In the event a destination sign curtain is torn, it can be repaired with 3M polyester tape or any equivalent cellophane tape. When repairing a tear, the tape should be used on both sides of the curtain.

ELECTRONIC DESTINATION SIGN (Optional)

To change the destination, depress the selecting switches until the desired destination appears in the LCD display.

FIGURE 20: DESTINATION SIGN – ELECTRONIC²³¹²³

Note: The destination sign must be programmed with a computer connected to the RS-232 connector prior to first use. Follow the instructions on the computer disk to install and run the software.

Note: All destination sign models are equipped with lights (bulb light or fluorescent) which illuminates automatically when the headlight or fog light switch is activated.

6. WINDSHIELD SUNSHADES

Two electrically-operated sunshades are installed behind the windshields. Two rocker switches on the dashboard operate each shade individually. Refer to Operator's Manual: "Controls and Instruments" chapter for more information.

Caution: The electric sunshades should only be operated electrically. Pulling down manually may damage the mechanism.

6.1 ADJUSTMENT

The sunshades are pre-adjusted, under no circumstances try to operate by hand. In case adjustments have to be made, proceed as follows:

1. Push the two (black and yellow) buttons into lock position. This cancels the pre-adjusted stop positions.
2. Move the sunshade into the requested upper limit position by using the electric motor (do not operate by hand). Press the button which is shaped like an arrow showing upwards. The upper position is now adjusted.
3. Now move the sunshade into the requested lower limit position by using the electric motor (do not operate by hand). Press the button shaped like an arrow showing downwards. The lower stop position is now adjusted.

7. LAVATORY

7.1 DESCRIPTION

The lavatory is located in the rear R.H. corner of the coach. It is equipped with a chemical flush toilet, bathroom tissue dispenser, washbasin, towel dispenser, waste container, mirror, ashtray, and a cleaning cabinet. A liquid soap dispenser and moist towel dispenser are optional.

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

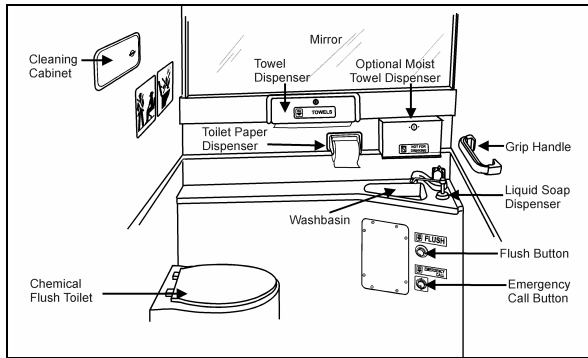


FIGURE 21: LAVATORY

Locking the lavatory door from the inside will illuminate a fluorescent light in the lavatory and two outside signs to indicate occupation. One sign is located on the outer wall of the lavatory and another sign is located over the windshield. An indicator light on the dashboard will illuminate to inform the driver when the lavatory is occupied. A night-light is permanently lit in the lavatory when the ignition switch is in the ON position.

7.2 MAINTENANCE

The servicing procedure for the lavatory is described in the "Operator's Manual" included in the technical publications box delivered with the vehicle.

7.3 VENTILATION FAN

7.3.1 Description

The lavatory ventilation fan, mounted in engine compartment over the oil reserve tank (Fig. 23), serves two purposes. It exhausts objectionable odors and provides a constant air circulation in the lavatory compartment by heating or cooling the lavatory with the vehicle ambient air. Air flows in the lavatory compartment through a vent grill located in the upper section of the lavatory door and exhausts through a grill located next to the toilet.

Note: This fan runs constantly when the ignition switch located on the dashboard is in the "ON" position.

7.3.2 Maintenance

The frequency of preventive maintenance should be determined according to vehicle mileage and operating conditions. However, it is recommended to check this item every 50,000 miles (80 000 km) or once a year, whichever comes first.

Remove fan and motor assembly. Check for fan housing wheel and motor free operation. When defective motor occurs, new motor must be installed.

7.3.3 Removal and Installation

1. With the engine compartment rear door opened, remove hose clamp securing duct to ventilation fan inlet, and disconnect duct.
2. Disconnect the ventilation motor wiring connector.
3. Remove the two bolts retaining the ventilation fan housing support to the square tubing. Remove the ventilation fan assembly from its location.
4. The unit can now be disassembled and motor replaced.
5. Reverse previous steps to reinstall ventilation fan assembly on vehicle.

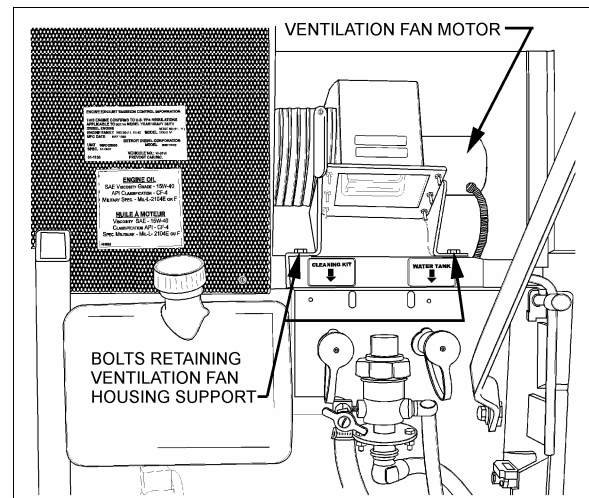


FIGURE 22: VENTILATION FAN INSTALLATION

7.4 DOOR LOCK

Lavatory door lock has inside and outside handles, as well as an inside latch to lock door from inside the compartment. If the lock fails to release, the door can be opened from the outside using a special key which is supplied to the driver. Lock assembly can be removed from the door, then readily disassembled and parts replaced, if necessary (Fig. 23). A thin coat of lubricant on all moving parts will ensure trouble-free operation.

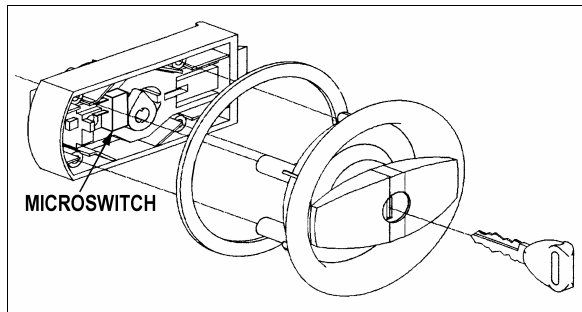


FIGURE 23: DOOR LOCK

23320

7.5 LAVATORY LIGHT

The lavatory light is installed on ceiling. A microswitch, which is mounted in the door exterior frame, is activated by the door lock mechanism upon locking to energize the circuit. This switch is readily serviced by removing the two Phillips-head screws securing the mounting plate to the door exterior frame. Proceed as Section 06, Electrical System, paragraph "13.6: Lavatory Light" for light replacement.

7.6 LAVATORY NIGHT-LIGHT

The lavatory night-light is illuminated as soon as the ignition switch is set to the "ON" position. See Section 06, Electrical System, paragraph "13.2: Stepwell Light and Lavatory Night-Light - Bulb Removal and Replacement" for lights replacement.

7.7 EMERGENCY BUZZER

The lavatory emergency buzzer is mounted on the alarm junction box in the front service compartment and sounds when the emergency call push-button switch in the lavatory compartment is activated. For specific wiring information, refer to wiring diagrams. To remove the emergency call push-button switch, proceed as follows:

1. Remove both Phillips-head screws retaining pushbutton switch plate to wall.
2. Remove steel plate located on L.H. side of pushbutton switch.
3. Remove switch through this opening, taking care to disconnect electric wires.

7.8 FRESH WATER TANK

The fresh water tank located at rear of lavatory wall (over cleaning cabinet), supplies water to the washbasin by gravity. Two tubes are connected in the upper section of tank (Fig. 24).

One serves as overflow as well as vent tube and runs along the wall to the underside of the lavatory close to the engine air filter housing, while the other tube is connected to the fresh water fill valve which is mounted besides the engine oil reserve tank.

A third tube connected in the lower section of fresh water tank is provided with a T-connector and allows fresh water to flow to the washbasin faucet and to the low temperature water safety valve for automatic or manual draining. An access panel, located at rear of last R.H. side row of seats and secured in place using 6 Phillips-head screws, allow access to the cleaning cabinet and fresh water tank tubing, fresh water tank heater and different wiring connectors.

7.8.1 Fresh Water Tank Heater (Optional)

A 75 watts, 110 volts AC immersion-type water heater may have been installed in the bottom of the fresh water tank. The heated portion of element must be immersed at all times to ensure proper heater life. The 110-120 volts in-station connector mounted on the engine compartment rear door provides the water heater power source.

7.8.2 Fresh Water Tank Draining

The fresh water tank can be drained by simply opening the fresh water drain cock (Fig. 24). Don't forget to close cock when draining is done.

Caution: If fresh water tank heater is inoperative or not installed on your vehicle, water should be drained from reservoir under cold weather conditions since it might freeze and damage both reservoir and connecting links.

7.8.3 Fresh Water tank Filling

Plug the fresh water supply hose to the fresh water tank fill connection (Fig. 24); fill the tank until the overflow tube leaks, signaling that tank is full.

Warning: Never put antifreeze in fresh water tank; antifreeze is toxic.

Warning: If tank has not been drained for an extended period of time, draining and filling operations must be repeated three (3) times in order to clean tank and eliminate contaminated water.

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

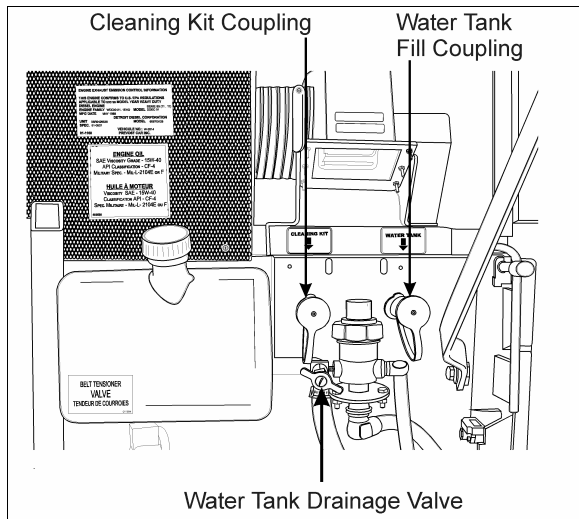


FIGURE 24: FRESH WATER TANK SERVICE VALVES

7.9 LIQUID SOAP DISPENSER

A liquid soap dispenser may have been installed as optional equipment. To refill dispenser, proceed as follows:

1. Turn cover slightly clockwise until it stops.
2. Insert projection at end of "BOBRICK" key into rectangular hole in cover (Fig. 25). Push straight in. While holding "BOBRICK" key in, turn cover counterclockwise about 1/8 turn.

Caution: Do not use "BOBRICK" key to turn cover.

3. Lift out piston and spout, cover and supply tube.
4. Fill dispenser with soap. This model can dispense vegetable oil soaps, synthetic detergents, and lotion soaps.

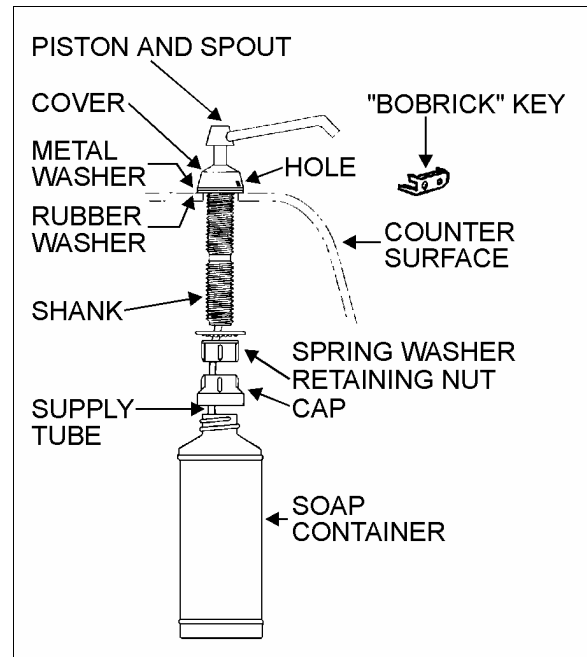


FIGURE 25: LIQUID SOAP DISPENSER

23039

Caution: Never use abrasive cleaners.

5. Replace supply tube, piston, and spout mechanism reversing the steps above.
6. Secure the cover by turning clockwise until lock snaps into position.

Note: The dispenser requires priming when extremely viscous lotion soaps are used. Remove piston and spout, cover and supply tube assembly. Pump water into assembly, then replace into dispenser.

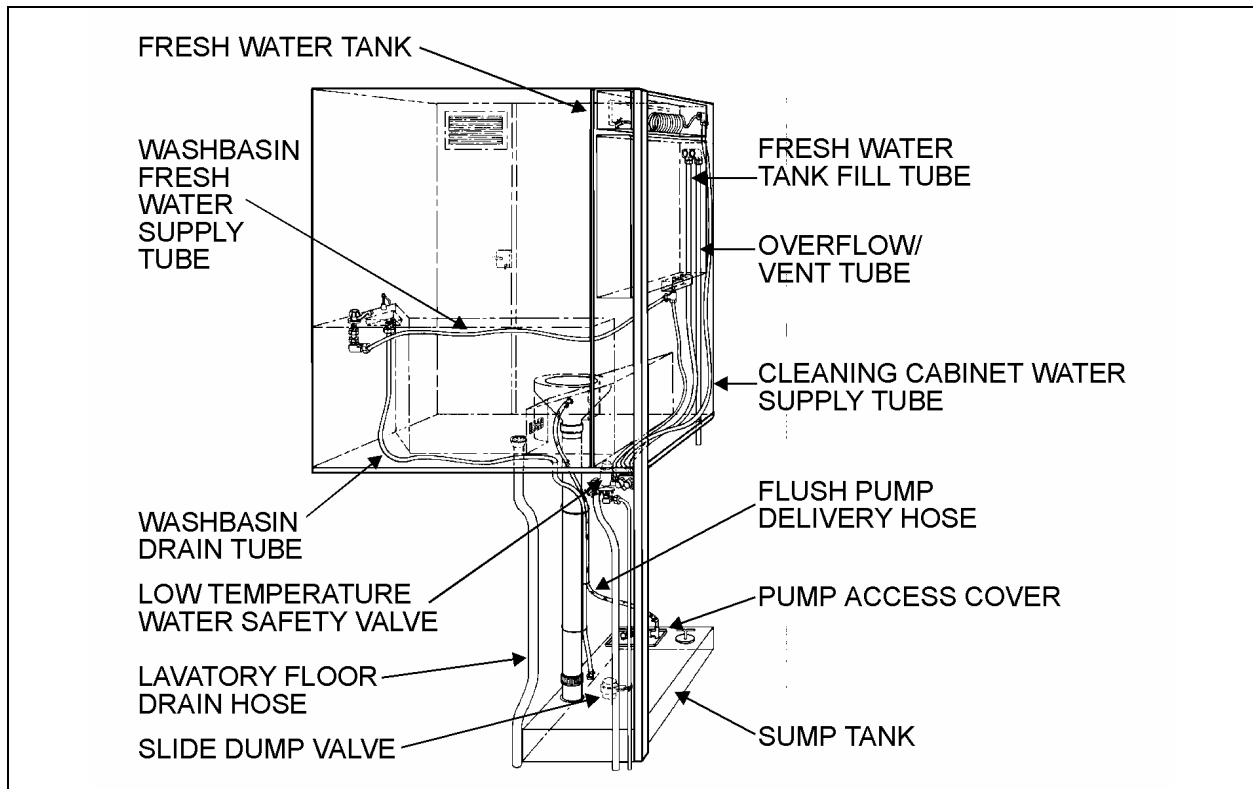


FIGURE 26: FUNCTIONING OF LAVATORY

23038

7.10 FLUSH PUSH-BUTTON

The green flush push-button is located near the toilet. Press on push-button to actuate a pneumatic timer located on the other side of wall. This timer allows an electric current flow during a preset time to a pump into the sump tank.

7.10.1 Pneumatic Timer Removal and Installation

1. Unscrew and remove the flush push-button locking ring.
2. Remove steel plate located on L.H. side of pushbutton switch.
3. Remove pneumatic timer through this opening, taking care to disconnect electric wires.

Note: Care must be taken to avoid losing the spacers installed on the mounting sleeve.

4. Reverse the above procedure to reinstall timer. The recommended torque for the lock nut is 15 Lbf-ft (21 Nm).

7.10.2 Timer Adjustment

Timer can be adjusted from 0.2 second to 3 minutes by turning the time adjustment screw clockwise to increase time, and counterclockwise to decrease time. To gain access to the time adjustment screw, repeat steps 1, 2 and 3 in the previous paragraph "6.10.1 Pneumatic Timer Removal and Installation".

7.11 FLUSH PUMP

The submersible-type flush pump is mounted inside an enclosure in the sump tank (Fig. 27). The enclosure is provided with a screened side which, serves as a strainer to prevent solid matters from entering the pump.

The pump requires no periodic maintenance other than cleaning of the strainer side using a water jet introduced through the circular cap opening, once the sump tank is completely drained. The pump can run dry periodically without damage. However, for maximum seal life, the run dry periods should be kept to a minimum.

Caution: If vehicle is stored for an extended period of time, make sure to clean the strainer as solid matter will tend to pack, and will necessitate replacement of strainer.

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

7.11.1 Flush Pump Pressure Adjustment

The flush pump is provided with a manually-adjustable control valve mounted on the flush pump enclosure cover and serves to limit the flush pump output pressure. To adjust, ask an assistant to activate the flush pushbutton and check the liquid projection while you manually adjust the control valve

7.12 SUMP TANK

7.12.1 Sump Tank Draining

To drain sump tank, unscrew cap a few turns then turn drain valve handle CCW. Flush tank and pump cage with clean water. Close drain valve by turning handle CW.

Caution: The lavatory should be serviced by maintenance personnel after emergency draining. Lavatory tanks should be serviced only at suitably equipped stations.

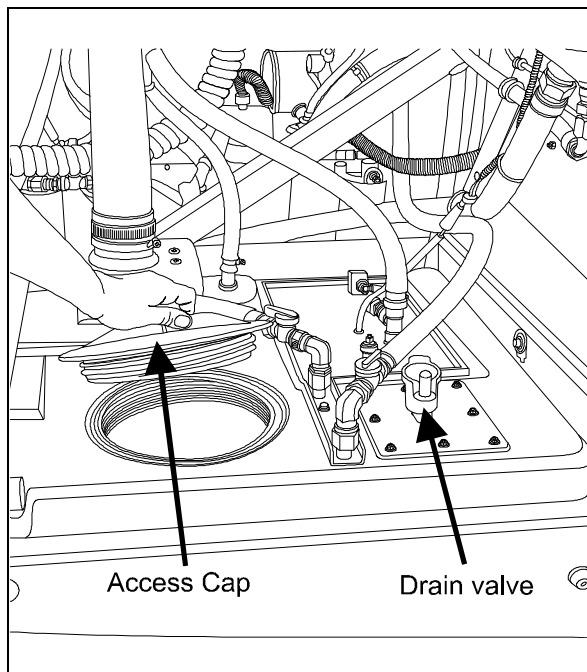


FIGURE 27: SUMP TANK

23294

7.12.2 Sump Tank Filling

Remove cap on sump tank. Fill Tank with 2 gallons (9 liters) of antifreeze and two gallons of water.

Caution: Do not overfill sump tank.

Note: The antifreeze solution in the sump tank will be diluted by fresh water coming from the lavatory sink. Regular maintenance of the sump tank is required to prevent freezing.

7.13 CLEANING CABINET

A coiled hose located in the cleaning cabinet above the toilet can be used during lavatory cleaning. To use, connect a fresh water supply to the "Hansen" quick-release coupling, identified as "Cleaning Kit", located besides the engine oil reserve tank (Fig. 24). To prevent freezing during cold weather, drain the hose after every use. To drain the hose, uncoil and open the nozzle near the lavatory floor drain. Have an assistant push on the spring ball of the quick-release coupling to allow air into the system.

8. AIR HORN VALVE

The air horn valve is located in the front service compartment and the air horn valve button is on the steering wheel center.

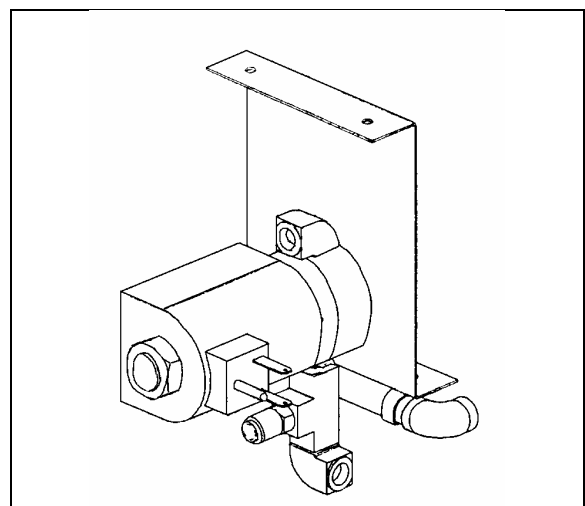


FIGURE 28: AIR HORN VALVE

23230

8.1 AIR HORN VALVE MAINTENANCE

When needed, the air horn valve can be serviced or replaced using the following procedure:

1. Unplug the cable connector;
2. Disconnect the air tubes;
3. Loosen the retaining bolts;
4. Service or replace the air horn valve;
5. Reinstall by reversing procedure.

9. WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

9.1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Note: When installing a wiper motor, arm or blade, follow recommended procedures to prevent misalignment, binding or malfunction. Check the windshield washer liquid hoses, fittings and connectors to be sure they are properly connected and seal with no restriction to the flow of washer liquid. Check that wiper arms have the proper sweep position and the washer nozzles are aimed so that spray is within the proper wiper pattern.

The windshield wipers are controlled by two electric wiper motors that are accessible for maintenance after raising the appropriate access panel at the front of the coach (refer to figure 29).

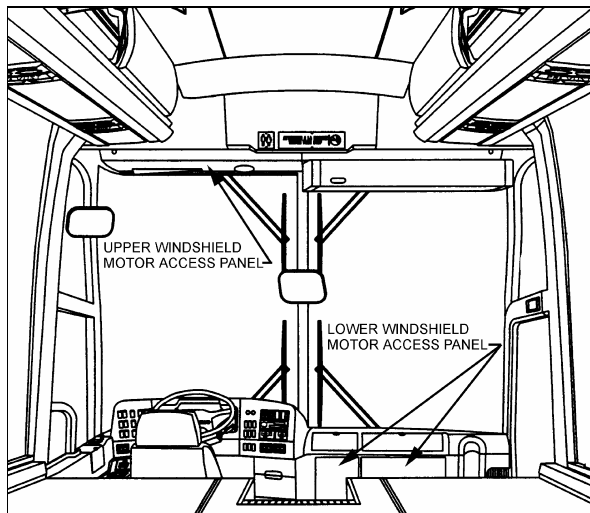


FIGURE 29: WIPER MOTORS LOCATION

23319

Each wiper motor is independently operated:

Depress the upper windshield wiper switch located on the dashboard L.H. side to the first position for intermittent wiping, and to the second position for continuous wiping (item 1, fig. 30).

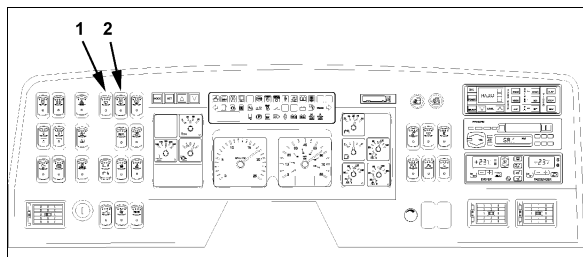


FIGURE 30: DASHBOARD

Turn the multifunction lever forward to activate lower windshield wipers (item 2, fig. 31). The first position operates the wipers at low speed and the second position operates the wipers at high speed. Turning the lever backwards will operate the wipers in the intermittent mode.

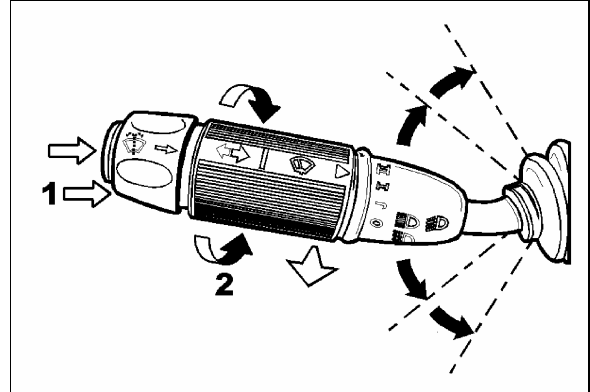


FIGURE 31: MULTIFUNCTION LEVER

23133

Each windshield washer pump is independently operated:

To activate the upper windshield washer pump, depress and hold the rocker switch on dashboard L.H. side (item 2, fig. 31). The upper wipers will come on automatically and will shut off a few seconds after releasing the rocker switch. The lower windshield washer pump is electrically operated and is controlled by a washer control ring on the multifunction lever (item 1, fig. 31).

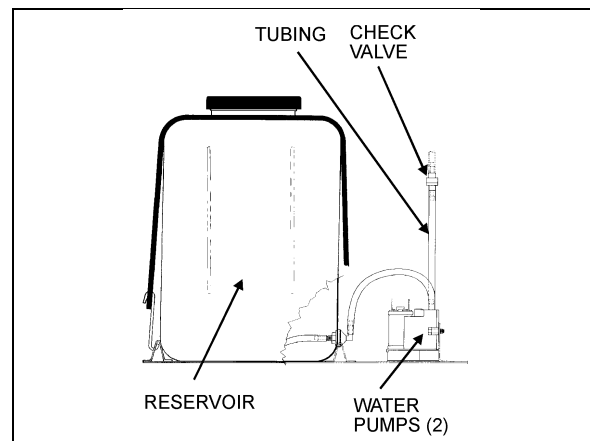


FIGURE 32: WINDSHIELD WASHER RESERVOIR

23085

The windshield washer reservoir is located in the front service compartment (Fig. 32). This unit pumps the washer liquid to the spray nozzles where it is dispersed across the windshield. Adjust nozzles with a flat tip screwdriver as needed to get proper spray coverage.

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

9.2 WIPER ARM

Check operation of the wipers for proper blade sweep and angle.

Caution: Do not attempt to manually move the wiper arms to make wiper blade sweep adjustments as damage to the wiper linkage or motor may occur. If it is necessary to adjust the sweep of blades, remove the arms and make adjustment by positioning the arms using serration on the wiper arm pivot shafts.

9.2.1 Sweep Adjustment

On a dry windshield, to avoid possible damage to the arm assembly or wiper motors, hold the wiper arms away from the windshield by inserting a small nail, or other such object, through the holes at the base of each wiper arm specially drilled for this purpose.

Sweep adjustment is a rough adjustment. It must be followed by lower and upper linkage adjustment. See paragraph "8.3 and 8.4".

In order to obtain the sweep adjustment, it may be necessary to remove and reposition the wiper arms, proceed as follows:

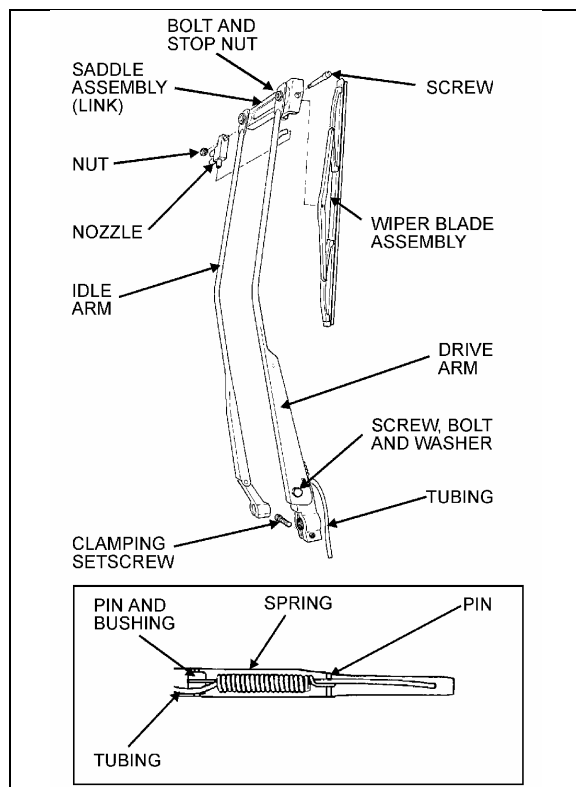


FIGURE 33: LOWER WINDSHIELD WIPER

23086

1. Remove the cap nuts from the wiper arm pivot shafts (Fig. 33 and 34);
2. Disconnect the windshield washer tubing at the base of the wiper arm (Fig 33 and 34);
3. Lower windshield wiper (Fig. 33): loosen the clamping set screw securing the drive arm to the knurled arm pivot shaft;
4. Remove the drive and idler arms (Fig. 33) or arm assembly (Fig. 34);
5. Relocate the drive arm (Fig. 33) or arm assembly (Fig. 34) on its knurled pivot shaft to obtain the desired position;
6. Lower windshield wiper (Fig. 33). Tighten the clamping set screw to secure the drive arm to the knurled shaft. Fit the idler arm onto the idler pivot shaft.
7. Install the cap nut pivot shafts.
8. Connect the windshield washer tubing at the base of the wiper arm (Fig. 33 and 34);
9. Check the adjustment on a wet windshield (Fig. 33 and 34).

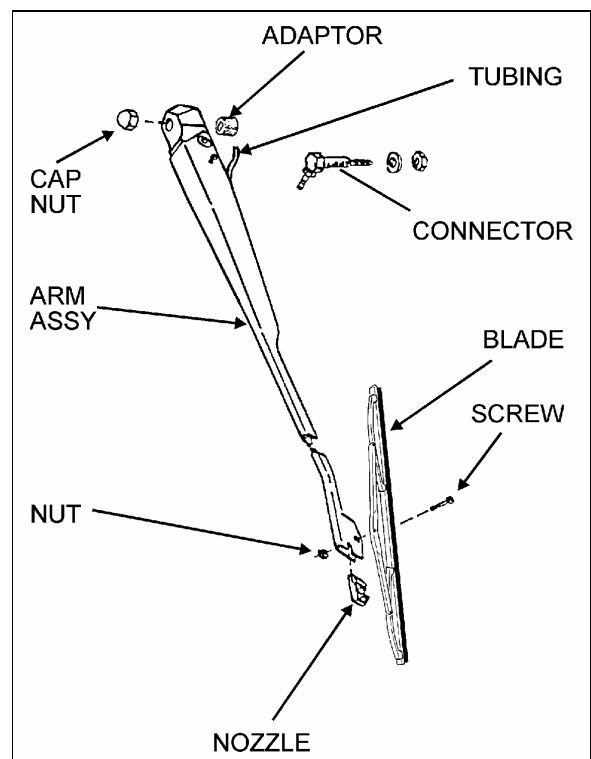


FIGURE 34: UPPER WINDSHIELD WIPER

23087

9.2.2 Removal

1. Remove the cap nuts from arms (Fig. 33 and 34);
2. Disconnect the windshield washer tubing at the base of the wiper arm (Fig. 33 and 34);
3. Mark the relationship of the arm head to the end of the knurled drive shaft to ensure the original position if the arm is to be reinstalled;
4. Lower windshield wiper (Fig. 33): loosen the clamping set screw on the base of the drive arm;
5. Remove the wiper arm assembly (Fig. 33 and 34).

9.2.3 Installation

1. Make sure the wiper motor is in the stop position. Lower windshield wiper (Fig. 33): position the wiper arm on the knurled drive shaft and idler arm on the pivot shaft. Upper windshield wiper (Fig. 34): position the wiper arm assembly on the knurled drive shaft;
2. If the original arm is reinstalled, align the marks made during removal;
3. Operate the wipers on a wet windshield to check the wiper blade sweep and angle. Readjust as necessary;
4. Lower windshield wiper (Fig. 33): Tighten clamping nut onto the drive arm. Install cap nuts onto the arm shafts (Fig. 33 and 34);
5. Connect the windshield washer tubing at the base of the wiper arm (Fig. 33 and 34);
6. Check the adjustment on a wet windshield (Fig. 33 and 34).

9.3 LOWER LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT

1. Make sure the wiper motor is in the stop position prior to working on the linkage.
2. Adjust the two pivot shafts vertically.
3. Adjust the rod length of the connecting pivot shafts. During rod length adjustment, maintain the pivot shafts in the vertical position.
4. Adjust the rod located between right pivot shaft and motor to a 40.5° angle (Fig. 35). The motor lever must be on the same axis as the rod.

5. Install the right wiper arm in its normal position (in the middle of the windshield (Fig. 30)). Refer to paragraph "9.2.1 Sweep Adjustment".
6. The right wiper arm final adjustment is made by adjusting the smallest rod length.
7. Install the left wiper arm in its normal position (in the middle of the windshield (Fig. 29)). Refer to paragraph "9.2.1 Sweep Adjustment".
8. The left wiper arm final adjustment is made by adjusting the longest rod length.
9. Check the adjustment on a wet windshield.

9.4 UPPER LINKAGE ADJUSTMENT

1. Make sure the wiper motor is in the stop position prior to working on the linkage.
2. Adjust rods length (Fig. 36).
3. Install the left wiper arm in its normal position (in the middle of the windshield (Fig. 30)). Refer to paragraph "9.2.1 Sweep Adjustment".
4. The left wiper arm final adjustment is made by adjusting the rod length to 8.46 inches (215 mm).
5. Install the right wiper arm in its normal position (in the middle of the windshield (Fig. 30)). Refer to paragraph "9.2.1 Sweep Adjustment".
6. The right wiper arm final adjustment is made by adjusting the rod length to 23.54 inches (598 mm).
7. Check the adjustment on a wet windshield

9.5 WINDSHIELD WIPER MOTORS

9.5.1 Lower Windshield Wiper Motor Replacement

The lower windshield wiper motor is located at lower front of the vehicle, behind the defroster panel. Refer to figure 29 for motor location.

Warning: Park vehicle safely, apply parking brake, stop engine and set battery master switch to the "OFF" position prior to working on the vehicle.

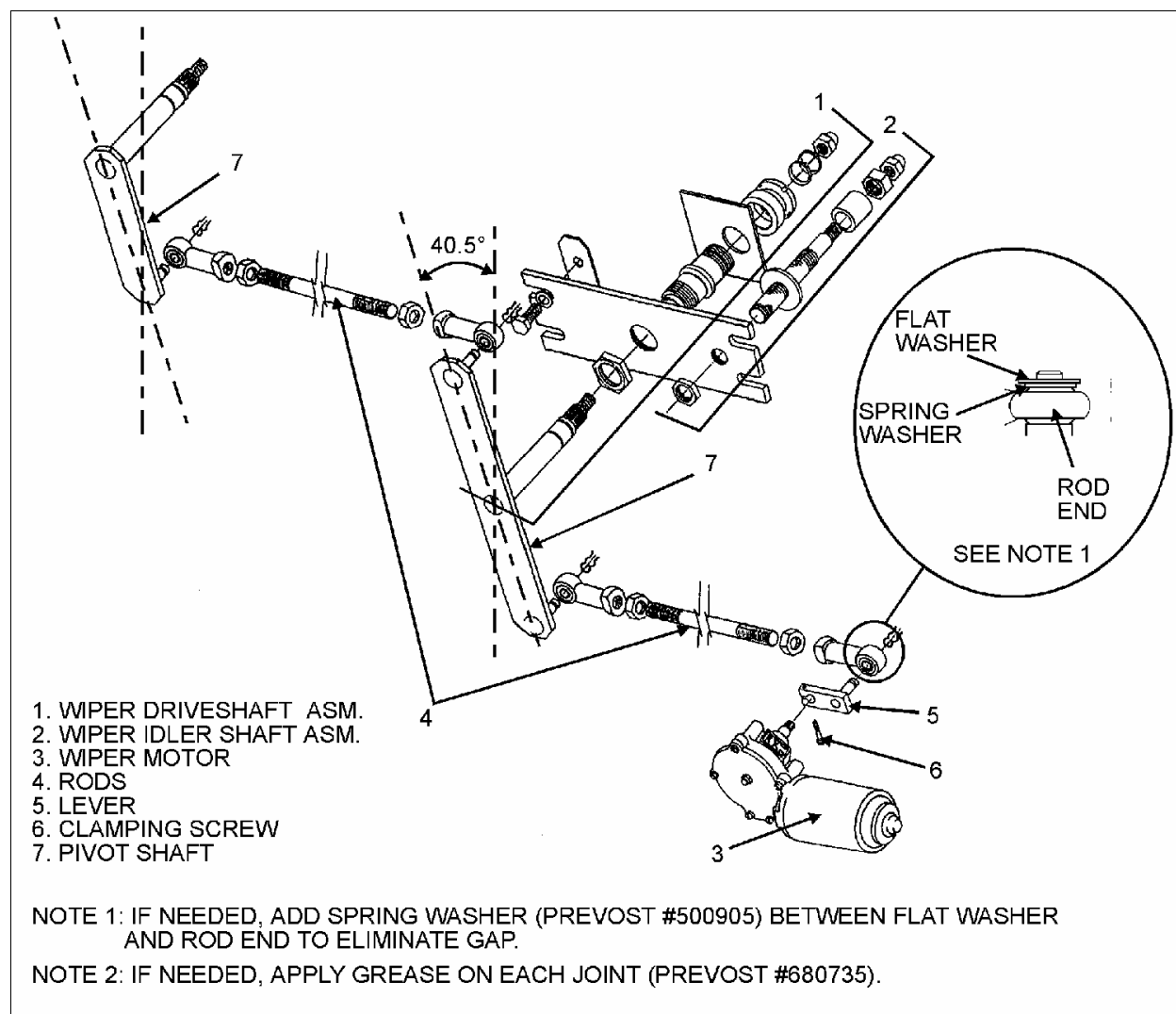


FIGURE 35: LOWER WINDSHIELD WIPER INSTALLATION

23088

1. Remove the two Phillips-head screws retaining the defroster panel, and remove panel.
2. Disconnect wiring connector from the windshield wiper motor.
3. Loosen clamping screw retaining the lever at the end of the motor driving shaft (Fig. 35).
4. Remove the three bolts holding the motor to the steel plate.
5. Remove the windshield wiper motor (Prévost #800304), reverse removal procedure to reinstall.

9.5.2 Upper Windshield Wiper Motor Replacement

The upper windshield wiper motor is located above L.H. upper windshield panel, refer to figure 29 for motor location. To remove the motor, it is necessary to remove left sun visor and upper windshield panel.

Warning: Park vehicle safely, apply parking brake, stop engine and set battery master switch to the "OFF" position prior to working on the vehicle.

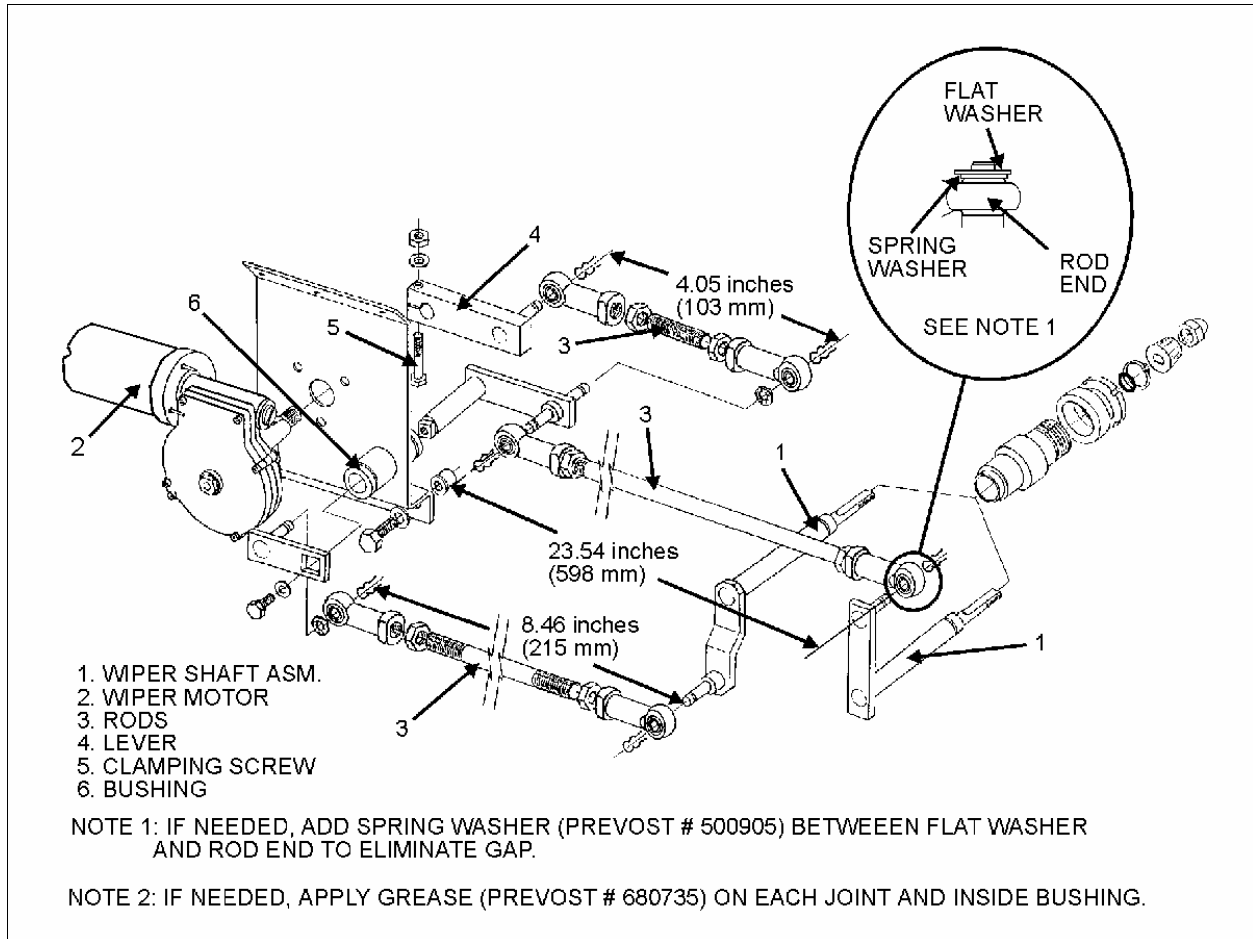


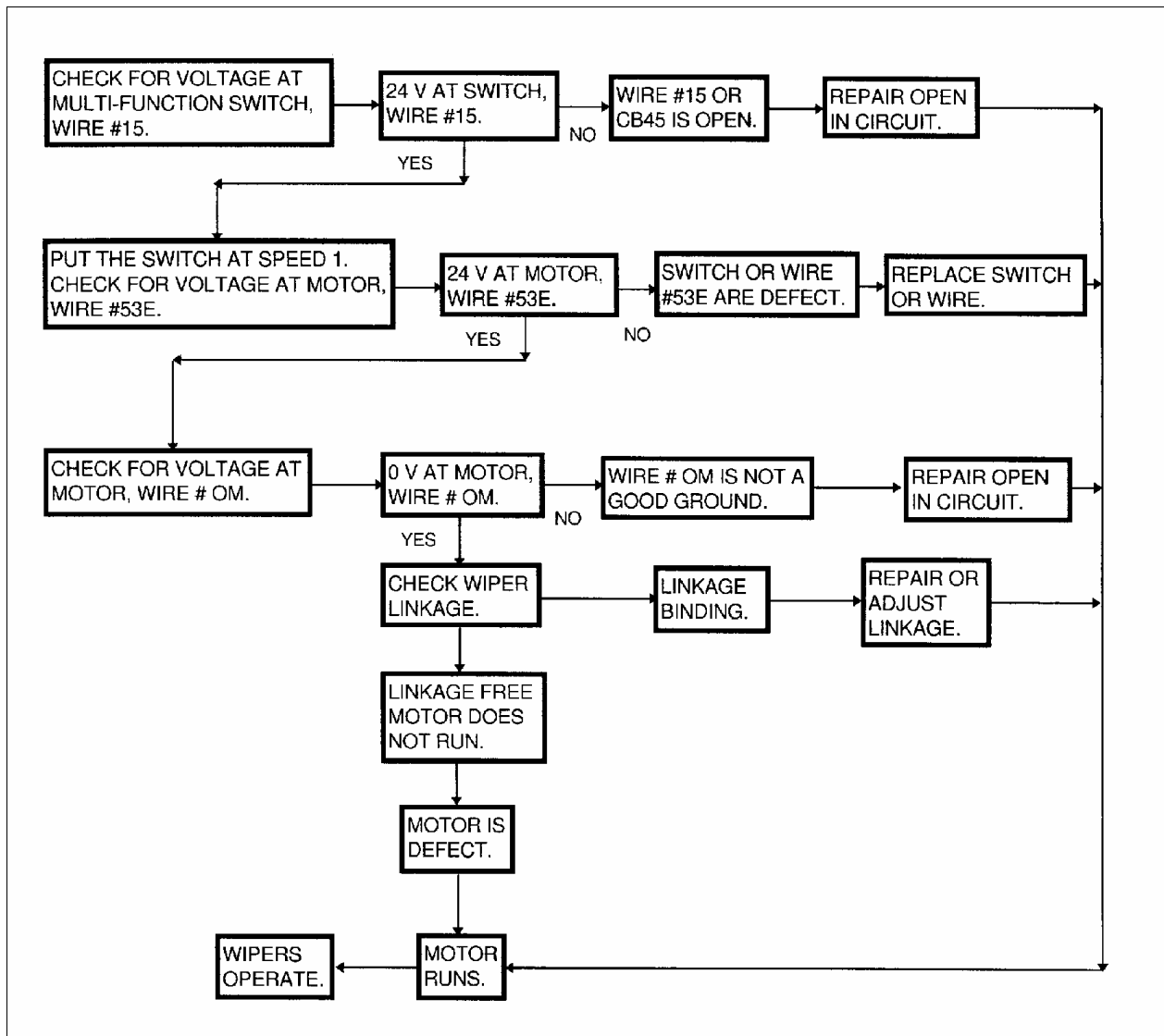
FIGURE 36: UPPER WINDSHIELD WIPER INSTALLATION

23089

1. Pull out the wiring connector (black and red wires) located on sun visor L.H. side and disconnect.
2. Remove the two Phillips-head screws at the bottom end of the sun visor arms.
3. Remove the two Phillips-head screws on each roller side, pull out the sun visor.
4. Remove the Phillips-head screws retaining the upper windshield panel.
5. If equipped with blower defroster, loosen hose clamp to remove air duct from hose.
6. Disconnect wiring connector from the windshield wiper motor.
7. Loosen the bolt retaining the lever at the end of the motor driving shaft (Fig. 36).
8. Remove the three bolts holding the motor to the steel plate.
9. Remove the windshield wiper motor (Prévost #800304), reverse removal procedure to reinstall.

9.6 TROUBLESHOOTING

SYMPTOM	PROBABLE CAUSE	REMEDY
FAIL TO SPRAY WASHER FLUID	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Reservoir empty. B. If below 32°F (0°C), improper washer fluid frozen. C. Contamination in tubing or nozzles. D. Tubing damage. E. Tubing bent (kinked) or off one or more connections. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Add proper fluid. B. Store coach or parts in heated area, then purge system with low-temperature solution. C. Remove with compressed air, if severely clogged, replace items. D. Replace section. E. Realign tubing and/or refit. Trim end to ensure proper fit or replace.
INADEQUATE SPRAYING	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Tubing failure. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Replace tubing.
SLOW OPERATION	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Improper solution. B. Jet stream improperly directed. C. Check if valve is stuck in the open position. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A. Replace with proper type solution. B. Reposition nozzles. C. Remove, clean or replace.

SYMPTOM: LOWER WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT FUNCTION**FIGURE 37: TROUBLESHOOTING**

23062

SYMPTOM: UPPER WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT FUNCTION

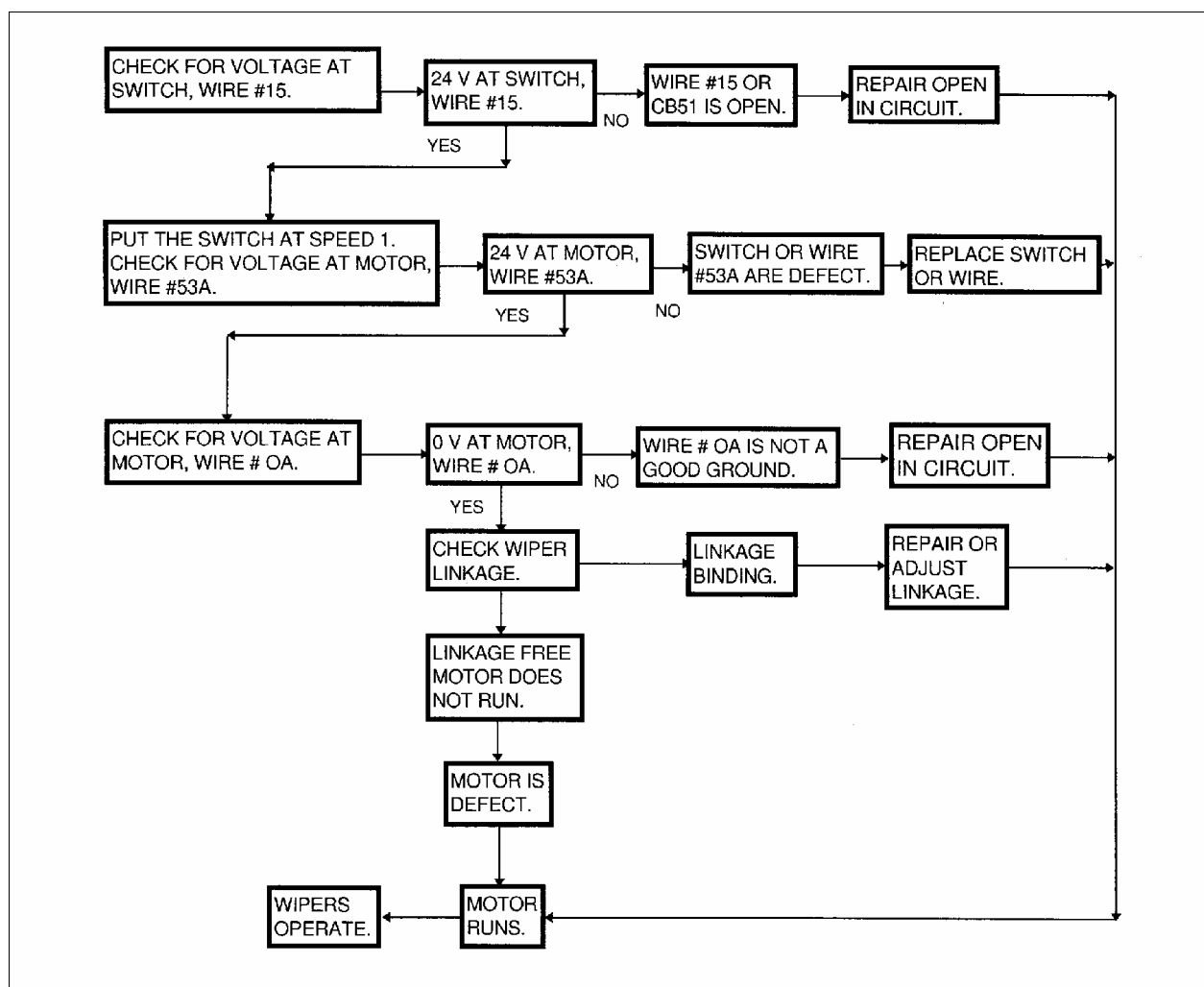
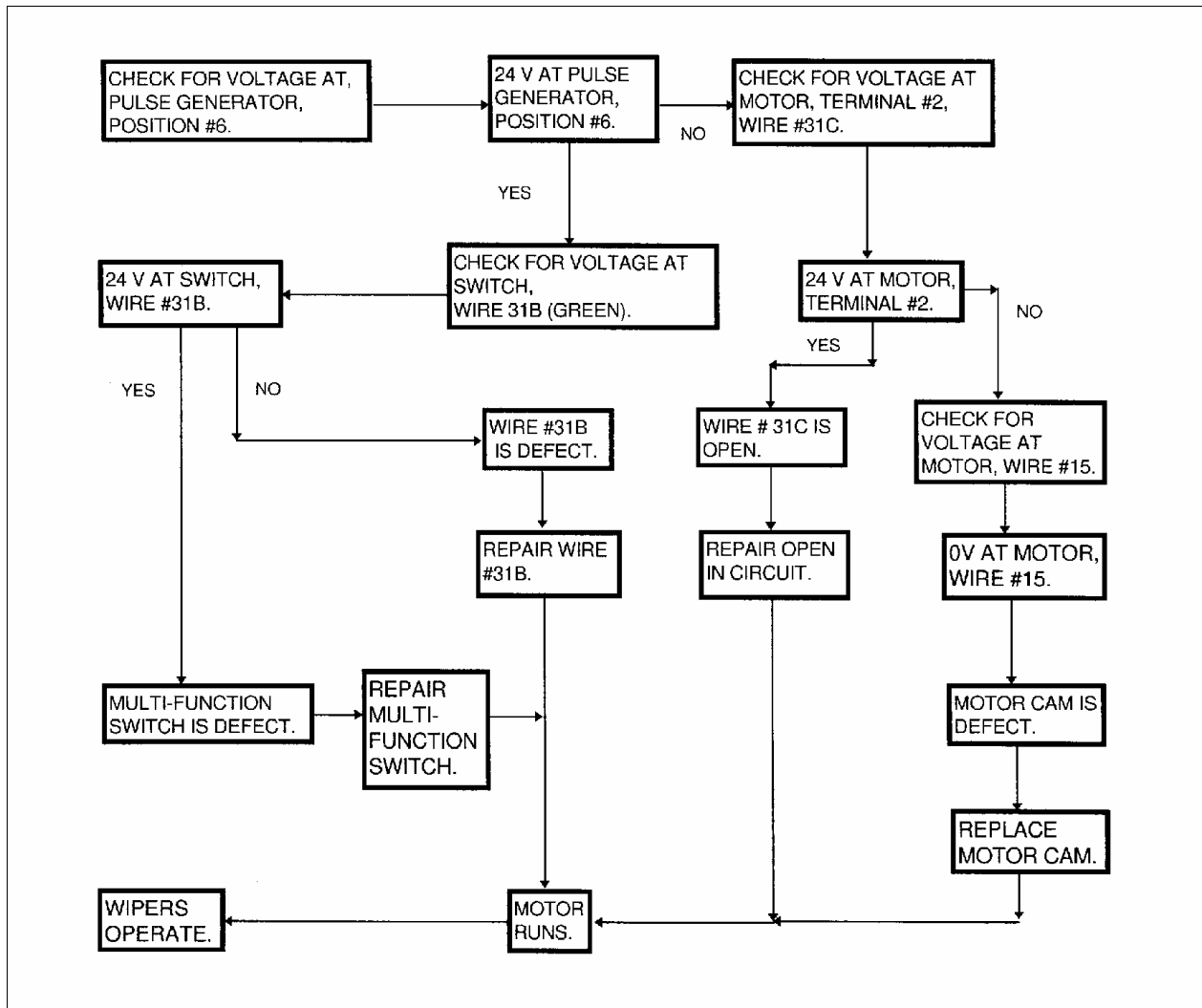


FIGURE 38: TROUBLESHOOTING

23063

SYMPTOM: LOWER WIPER DOES NOT RETURN TO INITIAL POSITION**FIGURE 39: TROUBLESHOOTING**

23064

SYMPTOM: UPPER WIPER DOES NOT RETURN TO INITIAL POSITION

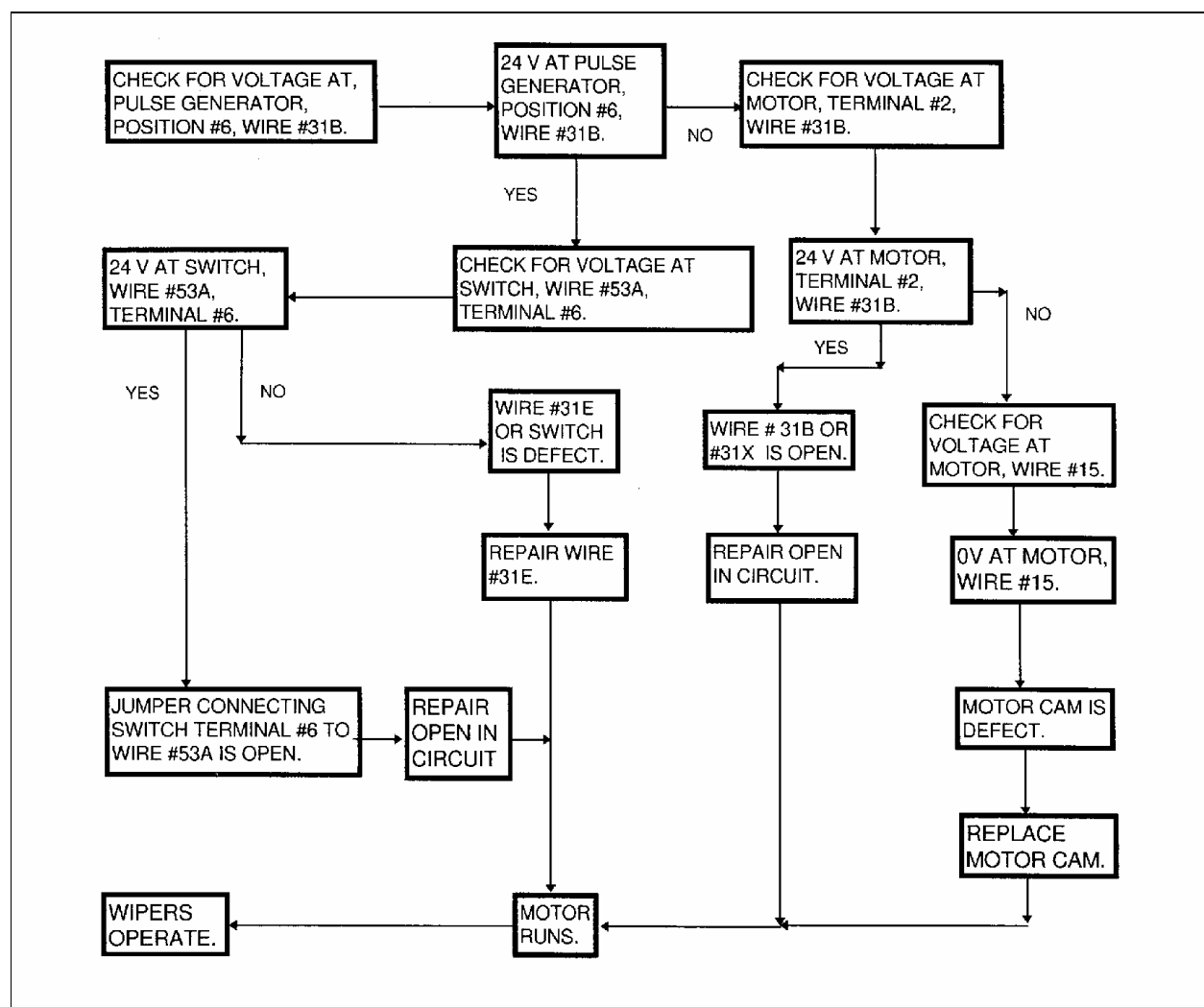
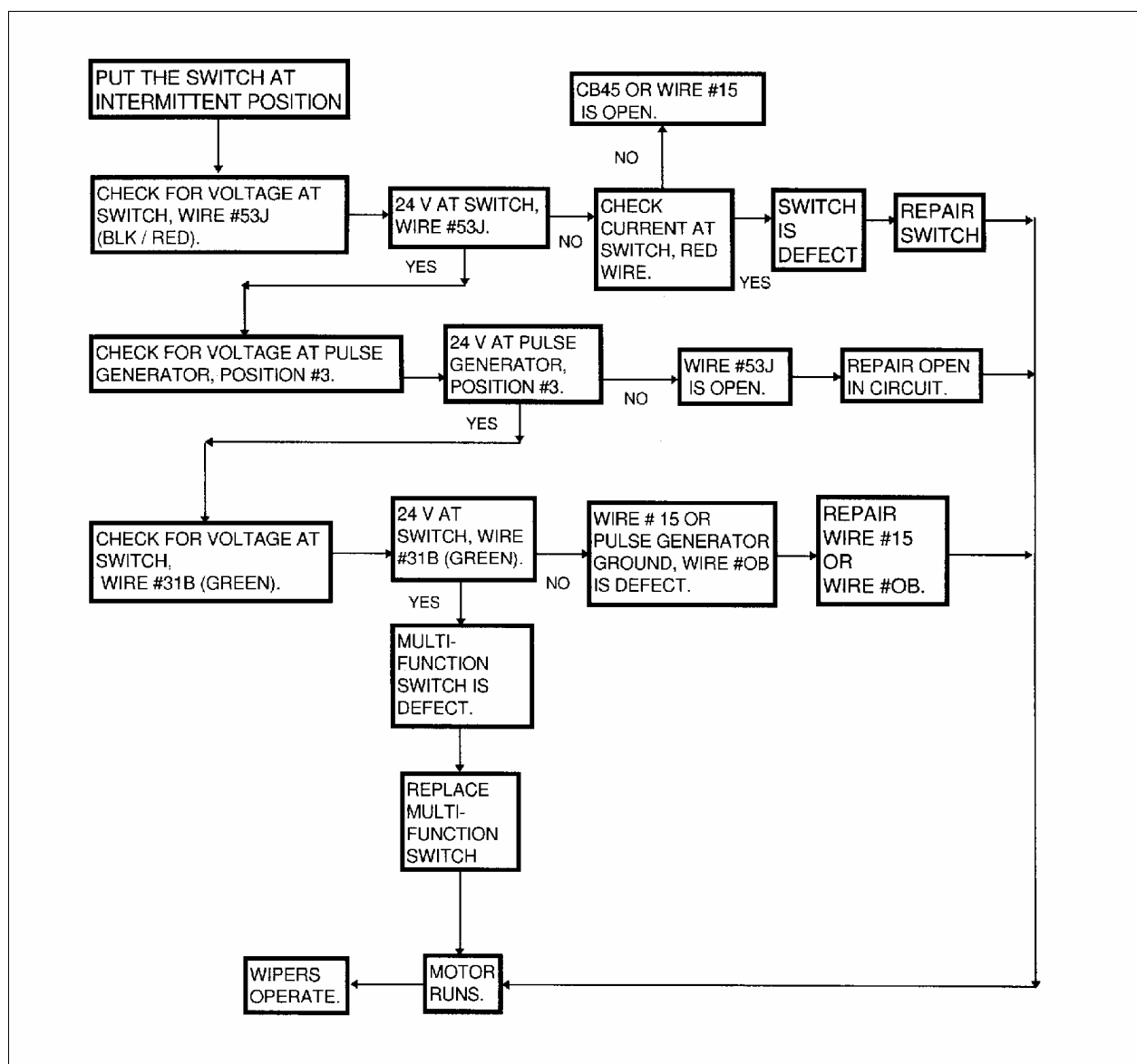


FIGURE 40: TROUBLESHOOTING

23065

SYMPTOM: LOWER WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT FUNCTION IN INTERMITTENT MODE**FIGURE 41: TROUBLESHOOTING**

23066

SYMPTOM: UPPER WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT FUNCTION IN INTERMITTENT MODE

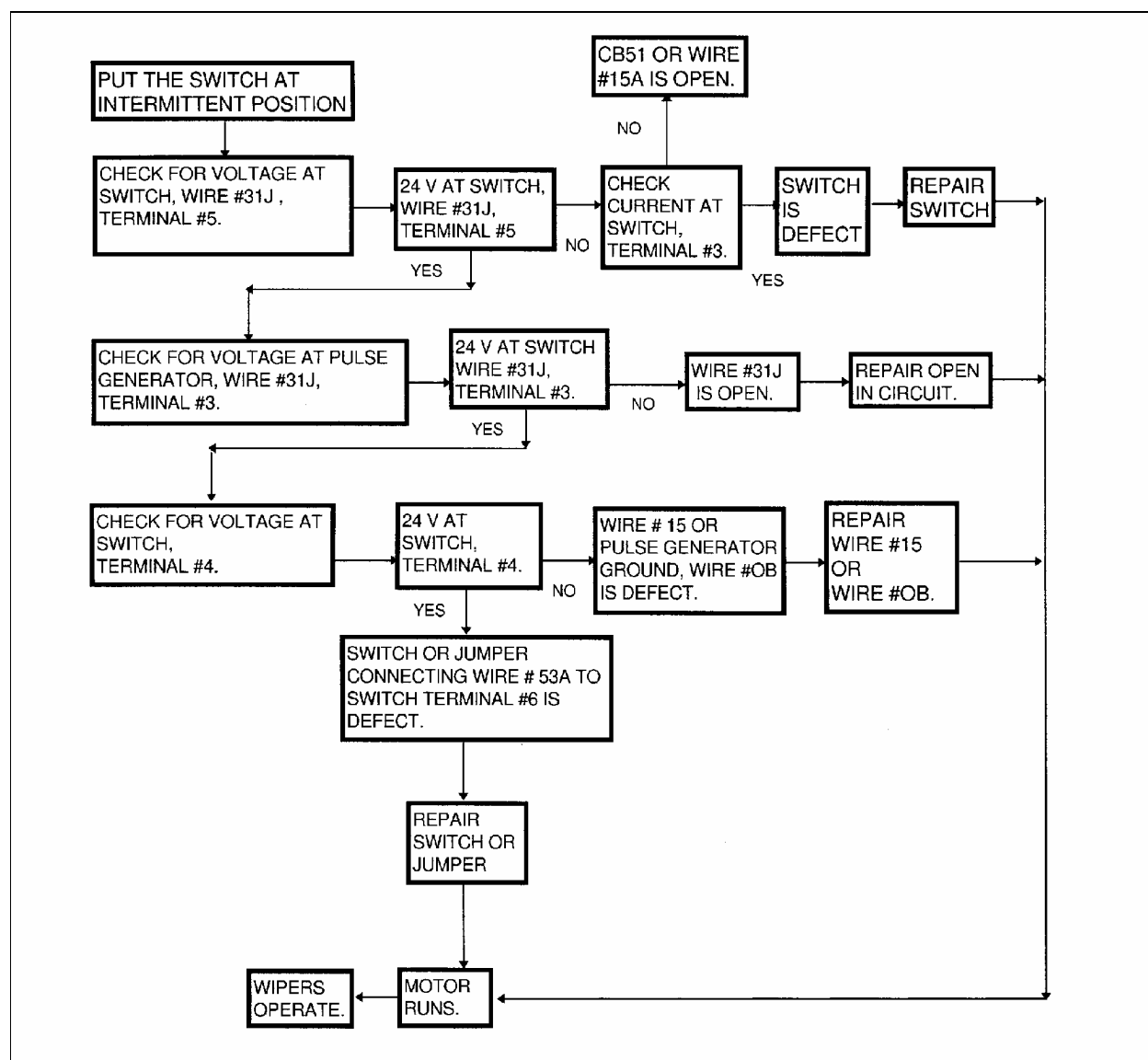


FIGURE 42: TROUBLESHOOTING

23067

SYMPTOM: LOWER WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT FUNCTION WHILE WINDSHIELD WASHER MOTOR IS ACTIVATED

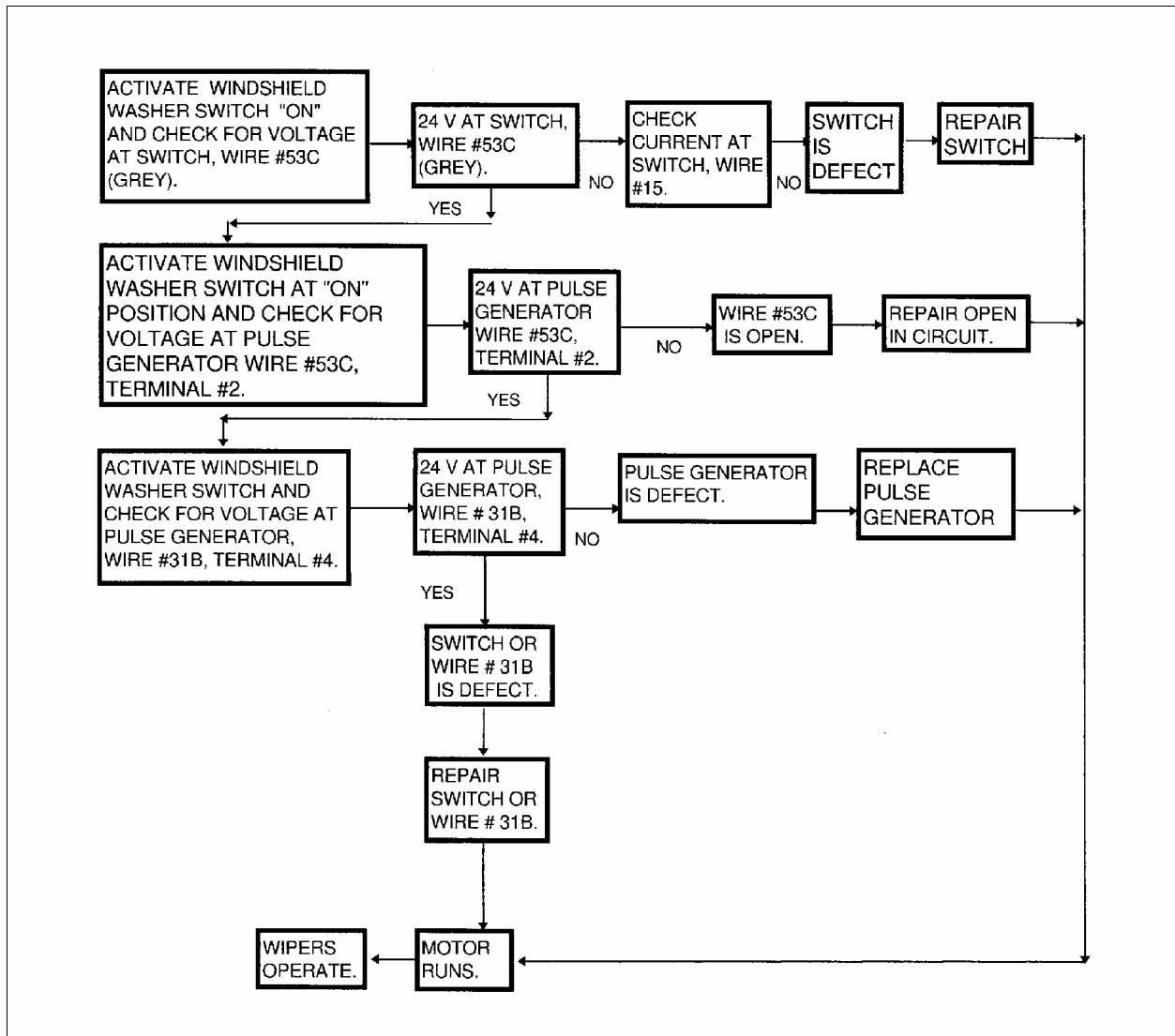


FIGURE 43: TROUBLESHOOTING

23068

SYMPTOM: UPPER WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT FUNCTION WHILE WINDSHIELD WASHER MOTOR IS ACTIVATED

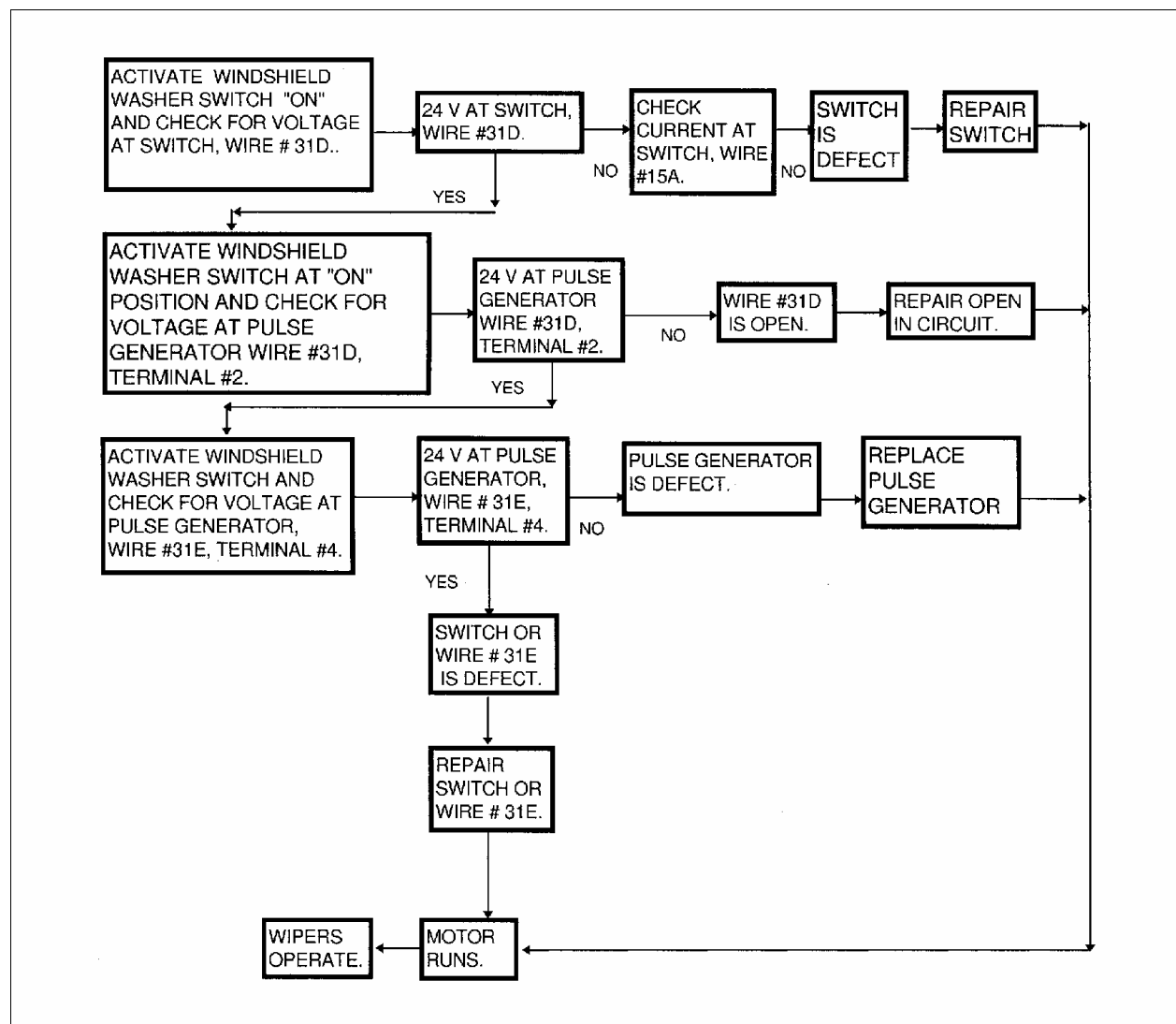


FIGURE 44: TROUBLESHOOTING

23069

10. SPECIFICATIONS**AMPLIFIER**

Make R.E.I.
 Model AMP-3000
 Power source..... 24 volts DC Negative ground
 Current 8 Amps maximum
 Frequency Response 10-30,000 Hz
 Output 90 watts/channel maximum power
 65 watts/channel RMS at 4 ohm @ 0.5 T.H.D.
 Signal to noise ratio 86 dB
 Supplier number 700771
 Prévost number 901056

8 DISC CD CHANGER

Make Panasonic CX-DP801
 Supplier number 700775
 Prévost number 901057

AM/FM RADIO CD PLAYER

Make Panasonic
 Model CP-DP102U
 Power source..... 12 volts
 Supplier number 700221
 Prévost number 901053

SPEAKER

Make REI
 Max. power..... 100 watts peak
 RMS power..... 50 watts
 Freq. response..... 55 Hz - 22 kHz
 Sensitivity..... 90 dB
 Impedance..... 4 ohms
 Supplier number 220067
 Prévost number 901057

CONTROL HEAD

Make R.E.I.
 Model C-2000
 Supplier number 700227
 Prévost number 900803

VIDEO TAPE RECORDER

Make R.E.I.
 Model SYS-2000
 Supplier number 700749
 Prévost number 901030

BOOM-TYPE MICROPHONE 33"

Make R.E.I.
 Supplier number 480076BK
 Prévost number 900763

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

HANDHELD PRIORITY MICROPHONE

Make R.E.I.
Supplier number 480015
Prévost number 900808

16 CHANNEL WIRELESS MICROPHONE

Make R.E.I.
Supplier number 700598
Prévost number 900954

16 CHANNEL WIRELESS MICROPHONE CHARGING STATION

Make R.E.I.
Supplier number 700532
Prévost number 900953

16 CHANNEL WIRELESS MICROPHONE RECEIVER

Make R.E.I.
Supplier number 700599
Prévost number 900952

TV TUNER

Make R.E.I.
Power source 24V
Supplier number 700471
Prévost number 900814

KARAOKE

Make Panasonic
Model DV1500
Supplier number 700761
Prévost number 901033

TV MONITOR

Make R.E.I.
Power source 24V
Supplier number 700800
Prévost number 901070

HUBODOMETER (US model: miles)

Make Stemco
Supplier number 650-0593
Prévost number 650002

HUBODOMETER (Canada model: km)

Make Stemco
Supplier number 650-0025
Prévost number 650117

ELECTRIC DESTINATION SIGN (FLUORESCENT TUBE)

Make General Electric
Length 30" (76 cm)
Outside diameter 1" (25 mm)
Wattage 20
Color Cool white
Quantity 1
Supplier number F30T8 CW4
Prévost number 830120

ELECTRONIC DESTINATION SIGN

Make Pocatec
 Supplier number 9000230
 Prévost number 940050

LAVATORY VENTILATION FAN MOTOR

Make Aurora
 Type RG500EF
 Voltage 24 volts DC
 Rotation R.H.
 Supplier number 131.40.50
 Prévost number 870844

EMERGENCY BUZZER SWITCH (PUSH BUTTON)

Make Cole Hersee Co.
 Voltage 24 V
 Supplier number 40224
 Prévost number 562117

FRESH WATER TANK

Make Prévost
 Capacity 18 US gal (68 liters)
 Prévost number 403030

FRESH WATER TANK HEATER

Make Hot Watt
 Wattage 75 watts
 Voltage 115 volts AC
 Supplier number EM 37-5
 Prévost number 562018

FLUSH PUSH BUTTON PNEUMATIC TIMER

Make McGill
 Type Resettable
 Time 0,2 to 180 seconds
 Supplier number 2610-1150
 Prévost number 563326
 Timer 563327

FLUSH PUMP

Make Jabsco
 Model number 30240-1024 24 V
 Power source 24 volts DC
 Capacity 1452 GPH
 Prévost number 900496

AIR HORN

Make Allied Signal Inc.
 Supplier number 101493
 Prévost number 640093

AIR HORN VALVE

Make Allied Signal Inc.
 Supplier number 228672
 Prévost number 640128

Section 23: ACCESSORIES

WINDSHIELD WIPER MOTOR

MakeSWF
Supplier number 403.195
Prévost number 800304

LOWER WIPER (BLADE)

MakeSprague device inc.
Supplier number S-1147-2-22
Prévost number 800284

UPPER WIPER (BLADE)

MakeSprague device inc.
Supplier number C-1140-2-20
Prévost number 800234

SECTION 24: LUBRICATION

CONTENTS

1. LUBRICATION	24-2
1.1 FIRST SERVICE ON NEW VEHICLE.....	24-2
1.1.1 <i>Differential</i>	24-2
1.1.2 <i>Coolant Strainer</i>	24-2
1.1.3 <i>Allison World Automatic Transmission</i>	24-2
1.1.4 <i>ZF-ASTRONIC Transmission</i>	24-2
1.1.5 <i>Engine</i>	24-2
2. LUBRICATION AND SERVICE SCHEDULE	24-3
2.1 ENGINE OIL CHANGE INTERVALS.....	24-3
2.1.1 <i>Engine Oil Reserve Tank</i>	24-3
2.2 COLD WEATHER OPERATION.....	24-3
2.3 FLEXIBLE HOSE MAINTENANCE	24-3
2.3.1 <i>Pre-Starting Inspection</i>	24-3
2.3.2 <i>Leaks</i>	24-4
2.3.3 <i>Service life</i>	24-4
2.4 WALK-AROUND INSPECTION.....	24-4
2.5 LUBRICANT AND COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS.....	24-7
2.6 PART NUMBER SPECIFICATIONS.....	24-8
2.7 LUBRICATION AND SERVICING SCHEDULE	24-8

ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1: ENGINE OIL RESERVE TANK.....	24-3
FIGURE 2: LUBRICATION AND SERVICING POINTS ON I-BEAM FRONT SUSPENSION VEHICLES (TYPICAL)	24-5
FIGURE 3: LUBRICATION AND SERVICING POINTS ON INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION VEHICLES (TYPICAL) ...	24-6

Section 24: LUBRICATION

1. LUBRICATION

The efficiency and life expectancy of mechanical equipment is largely dependant upon proper lubrication and servicing. All mechanical components rely on a lubricating film between moving parts to reduce friction, prevent wear and oxidation. Proper lubrication also helps cool the parts and keep dirt particles away from mating surfaces. Efficient lubrication depends upon using the right type of lubricant, at specified intervals and by filling to correct capacities. Past experience shows that many service problems can be traced to an improper lubricant or to incorrect lubrication procedures.

A comprehensive maintenance and lubrication program is important to ensure the long service life this vehicle was designed for and to avoid costly repairs and associated downtime caused by premature part failure.

A lubrication schedule is included in this section to give the location of key service points on the vehicle as well as the lubricant specifications for each component to be serviced. Specific instructions on how to check and service different components are covered in their respective sections in this maintenance manual.

The recommended lubrication intervals are based on normal operating conditions and mileage accumulation.

Shorten the intervals if your vehicle operates in more severe conditions. Severe conditions include heavy towing, high vehicle weight or operation in mountainous areas. Some parts and equipment referred to in this section may not be installed on your vehicle. Check your vehicle's "Coach Final Record" for equipment list.

Dispose of used lubricants and filters in an environmentally safe manner, according to federal and/or local recommendations.

1.1 FIRST SERVICE ON NEW VEHICLE

Perform the following maintenance procedures after the first 3,000 miles (4 800 km) of operation (unless otherwise specified). Once

initial maintenance is performed, refer to recommended intervals in the lubrication schedule.

Repeat a component's initial maintenance procedure when it has undergone a major repair.

1.1.1 Differential

Factory-filled oil in differential on new vehicle should be replaced after 3,000 miles (4 800 km) of initial operation or after major servicing.

1.1.2 Coolant Strainer

The coolant strainer is designed to recover the soldering residues trapped inside the coolant lines during their initial assembly; perform initial cleaning once vehicle has run approximately 3,000 miles (4 800 km), then according to the lubrication and servicing schedule.

Note: *If additional soldering has been performed on any point of coolant piping, clean coolant system strainer as outlined for a new vehicle at 3,000 miles (4 800 km).*

1.1.3 Allison World Automatic Transmission

Change oil and filter cartridges after first 5,000 miles (8000 km) of initial operation, then according to the lubrication and servicing schedule.

1.1.4 ZF-ASTRONIC Transmission

No initial oil or filter change necessary. Refer to regular lubrication and servicing schedule.

1.1.5 Engine

Since engine break-in has been done in factory, there is no special break-in, so oil should be changed according to the lubrication and servicing schedule intervals. Since some oil consumption by engine is normal, check oil level daily with engine stopped and add to FULL mark on dipstick if necessary. Furthermore, the engine oil filter should be replaced each time the engine oil is changed.

2. LUBRICATION AND SERVICE SCHEDULE

Following this service schedule is the most economical and easiest way to ensure your vehicle performs at its best, safest and longest. Also, unscheduled maintenance will be minimized since inspection should expose potential problems before they become major ones.

2.1 ENGINE OIL CHANGE INTERVALS

The engine oil change intervals are related to the operating conditions, such as vehicle load, speed, etc., and may vary. It is recommended however, that the oil change be performed after every 10,000 miles (16 000 km).

The drain intervals may then be gradually increased or decreased with experience on a specific lubricant, considering the recommendations of the oil supplier (analysis of drained oil can be helpful), until the most practical service condition has been established.

Solvents should not be used as flushing oils. Dilution of the fresh refill oil supply can occur, which may be detrimental for the engine.

Engine oil temperature should be checked every 25,000 miles (40 000 km) to determine oil cooler efficiency. This check should be made by inserting a steel jacketed thermometer in the dipstick opening, immediately after stopping a hot, loaded engine. If the oil temperature exceeds the coolant temperature by more than 60 °F (33 °C), the oil cooler may be clogged.

For detailed oil specifications, refer to *"Detroit Diesel Series 60 Service Manual"* under heading *"Lubricating Oil for Detroit Diesel Engines"*.

2.1.1 Engine Oil Reserve Tank

An oil reserve tank with a capacity of 2.2 US gallons (8,3 liters) is connected to the crankcase by a hose with a shutoff valve, allowing oil to be added to crankcase by opening valve. Comparison of oil levels in sight gauge, before and after adding oil to crankcase, shows approximately how much oil has been added.

Filling of this tank can be made by opening the rear engine door. The tank is mounted on R.H. side of engine compartment, over the A/C compressor.

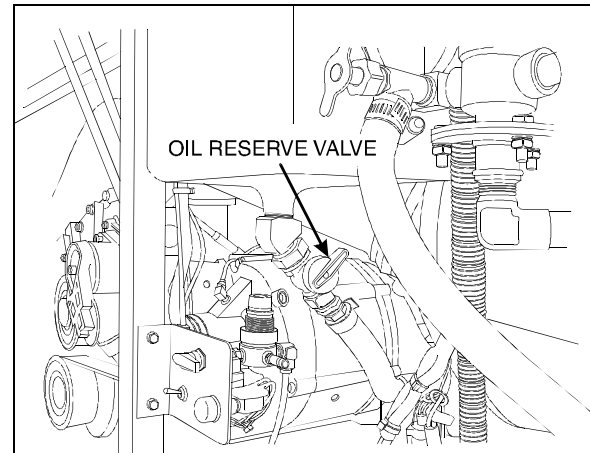


FIGURE 1: ENGINE OIL RESERVE TANK

01050

2.2 COLD WEATHER OPERATION

The proper selection of the engine oil grade will ease cold weather starting (refer to the lubrication and servicing schedule for the engine oil grade recommendation). Other practical considerations, such as the use of batteries, cables and connectors of adequate size, proper setting of voltage regulator, ether starting aid, oil and coolant heater systems, and proper fuel selection will ease cold weather starting.

2.3 FLEXIBLE HOSE MAINTENANCE

The performance of engine and equipment are greatly related to the ability of flexible hoses to supply lubricating oil, air, coolant, and fuel oil. Maintenance of hoses is an important step to ensure efficient, economical, and safe operation of the engine and related equipment.

2.3.1 Pre-Starting Inspection

Check hoses daily as part of the pre-starting inspection. Examine hose for leaks, and check all fittings, clamps, and ties carefully. Ensure that hoses are not resting on or touching shafts, couplings, heated surfaces including exhaust manifolds, any sharp edges, or other obviously damaging areas. Since all machinery vibrates and moves to a certain extent, clamps and ties

Section 24: LUBRICATION

can fatigue with time. To ensure proper support, inspect fasteners frequently and tighten or replace them as necessary.

2.3.2 Leaks

Investigate leaks immediately to determine if fittings have loosened or cracked, and also if hoses have ruptured or worn through. Take corrective action immediately. Leaks are not only potentially detrimental to machine operation, but can also result in added expenses caused by the need to replace lost fluids.

Caution: *Personal injury and/or property damage may result from fire due to the leakage of flammable fluids, such as fuel or lube oil.*

2.3.3 Service life

The limited service life of a hose is determined by the temperature and pressure of the gas or fluid within it, the time in service, its installation, the ambient temperatures, amount of flexing, and the vibration it is subjected to. With this in mind, it is recommended that all hoses be thoroughly inspected at least every 500 operating hours or after 15,000 miles (24 000 km). Look for surface damage or indications of damaged, twisted, worn, crimped, brittle, cracked, or leaking lines. Hoses having a worn outer surface or hoses with a damaged metal reinforcement should be considered unfit for further service.

It is also recommended that all hoses in this vehicle be replaced during major overhaul and/or after a maximum of five service years. Quality of replacement hose assemblies should always be equal to or superior to those supplied by the Original Equipment Manufacturer.

2.4 WALK-AROUND INSPECTION

It is good practice to make a basic visual inspection of key areas on the vehicle every day (or before every trip for private coaches) and to correct any problem found.

OUTSIDE THE VEHICLE	
ITEM*	DESCRIPTION
---	Check for leaks under vehicle and in engine compartment.
---	Check that baggage and service compartment doors close properly.
---	Inspect tires and wheels for correct tire pressure, wear or damage and for missing wheel studs and nuts.
1	Check windshield washer fluid level and add if necessary.
---	Check condition of windshield wiper blades.
---	Verify proper operation of all road lights, signal lights, brake lights, marker lights and back-up lights; Replace light bulbs as required.
2, 28	Drain accumulated water in accessory and wet air tanks.

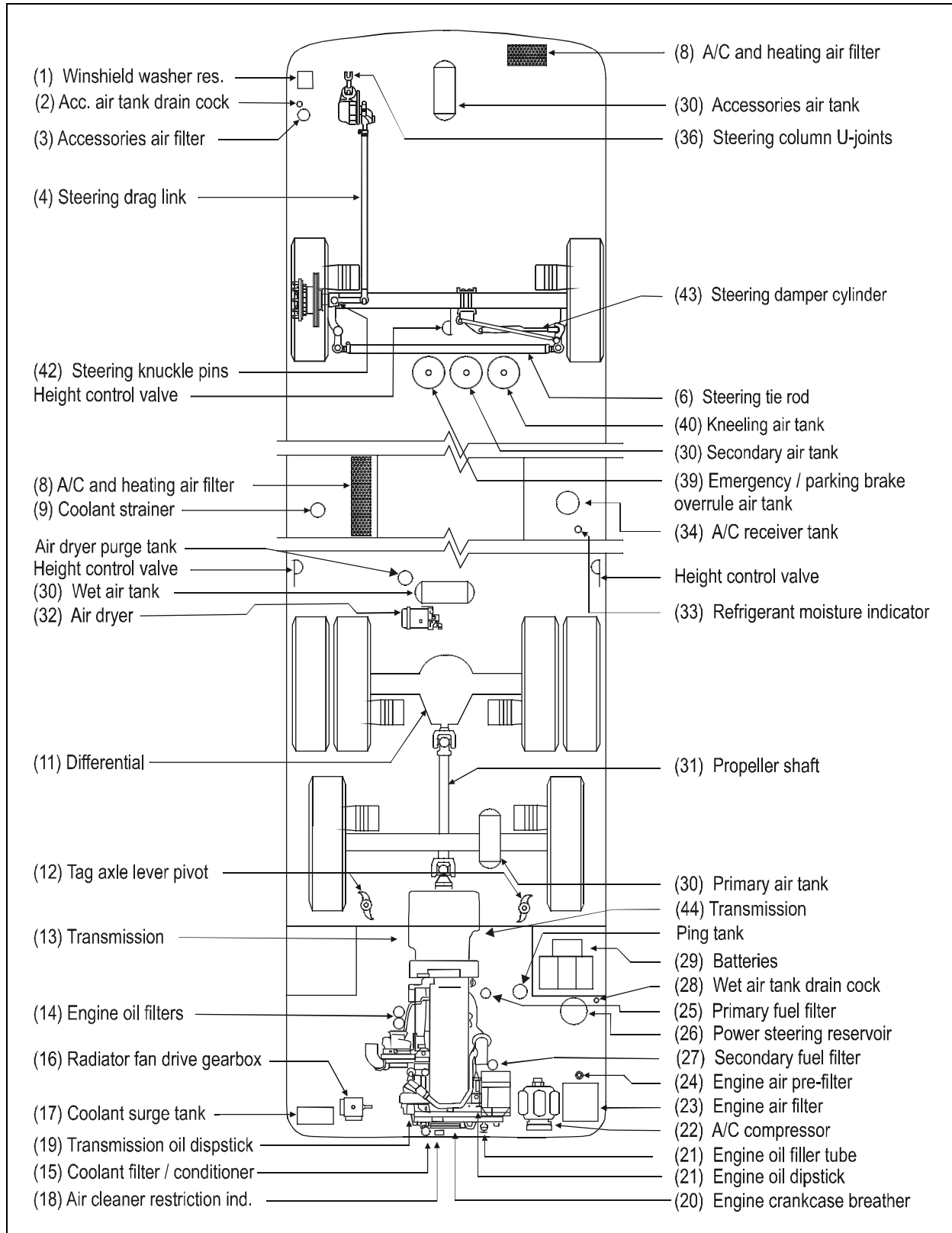


FIGURE 2: LUBRICATION AND SERVICING POINTS ON I-BEAM FRONT SUSPENSION VEHICLES (TYPICAL)

24019

Section 24: LUBRICATION

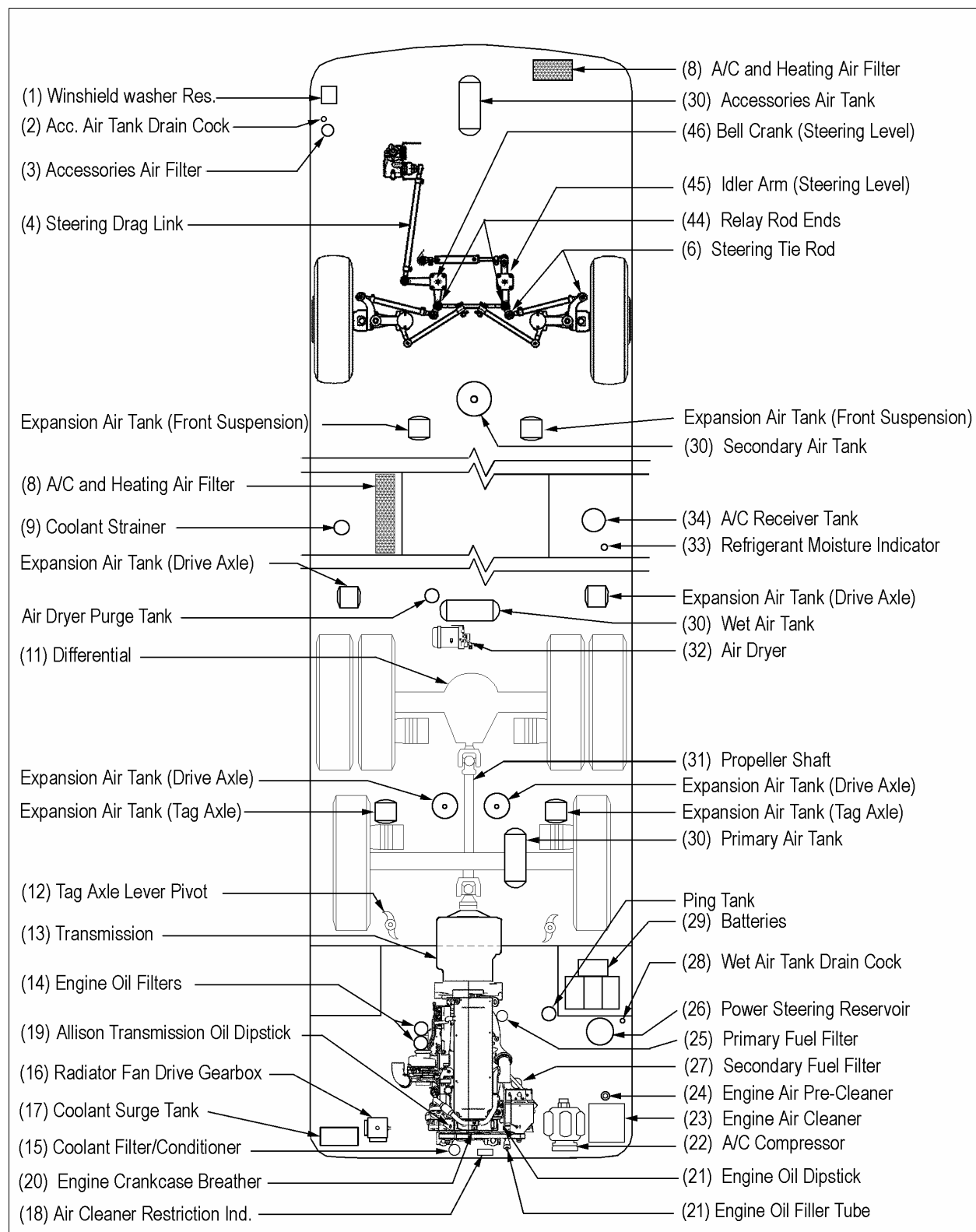


FIGURE 3: LUBRICATION AND SERVICING POINTS ON INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION VEHICLES (TYPICAL)

24005

ENGINE COMPARTMENT	
ITEM*	DESCRIPTION
21	Check engine crankcase oil level; Add if necessary.
19	Check Allison World transmission oil level (can be checked from push-button shift selector); Add if necessary.
26	Check power steering reservoir fluid level; Add if necessary.
17	Check coolant surge tank fluid level; Add if necessary.
25	Drain accumulated water in primary fuel filter/water separator (if equipped). Visually check fuel filter cartridge (Fuel-Pro 382 equipped vehicles only).
18	Check air cleaner restriction indicator; Replace air cleaner when red signals locks in full view.

INSIDE THE VEHICLE	
ITEM*	DESCRIPTION
---	Check for proper operation of the entrance door.
---	Check that emergency exit windows and roof escape hatches can be opened then close all windows and hatches securely.
---	Verify proper operation of windshield wiper/washer.
---	Adjust and clean mirrors as needed for adequate rear-view vision.
---	Start engine and check for proper operation of all gauges and indicator lights.
---	Check for proper operation of electric and air horns and back-up alarm.
---	Perform a brake test. Check both primary and secondary pressure gauges.

● Item numbers refer to figures 2 and 3.

2.5 LUBRICANT AND COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS

ITEM*	DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATIONS
21	Engine Oil	SAE Viscosity Grade: 15W40 API Classification: CI-4
26	Power Steering Oil	Automatic Transmission Oil (Dexron-II or Dexron-III)
17	Engine Coolant	Low silicate, ethylene glycol coolant 50% antifreeze/water solution is normally used Antifreeze concentration should be between 30% and 67%
22	A/C Compressor Oil	Polyolester Oil, HFC 134a compatible: Castrol SW-68 (POE) or equivalent
11	Differential Oil	Multigrade gear oil meeting MIL-L-2105-D: 85W140. If temperature drops below 10°F (-12°C), 80W90 should be used. Below -15°F (-26°C), 75W90 should be used. (In extreme conditions or for better performance, full synthetic gear oil can be used.)
16	Fan Gearbox Oil	Synthetic oil: ISO VG (viscosity grade) 460 Natural oil: Mobil SHC 630

Section 24: LUBRICATION

ITEM*	DESCRIPTION	SPECIFICATIONS
13	Allison Automatic Transmission Oil	Dexron-IIIE or Dexron-III, Castrol "TranSynd" Synthetic Transmission Fluid for Allison, specification TES-295
13	ZF-ASTronic Transmission Oil	Castrol Syntrans Grade SAE 75W-85 (Synthetic)
---	Multi Purpose Grease	Good quality lithium-base grease: NLGI No.2 Grade is suitable for most temperatures NLGI No.1 Grade is suitable for extremely low temperatures

● Item numbers refer to figures 2 and 3.

2.6 PART NUMBER SPECIFICATIONS

ITEM*	DESCRIPTION	PRÉVOST NO
---	Engine Oil Filters	#510458
26	Power Steering Reservoir Oil Filter	#660987
23	Engine Air Cleaner Filter	#530197
33	Refrigerant Filter Dryer Unit	#950332
25	Engine Primary Fuel Filter	#510137
25	Engine Primary Fuel Filter With Water Separator (Optional)	#531407
27	Engine Secondary Fuel Filter	#510128
27	Secondary "Racor" Fuel Filter	#531390
15	Engine Coolant Precharge Unit	#550629
15	Engine Coolant Filter/Conditioner	#550630
8	A/C And Heating Driver's Air Filter	#871147--871144
8	A/C And Heating Cabin's Air Filter	#871051
---	Parcel Rack Fan Air Filters	#871159
13	Automatic Transmission Oil Filter Kit	#571709
9	Coolant Strainer	#871029
3	Accessories Air Filter	#641340
32	Air Dryer Cartridge	#3097369

● Item numbers refer to figures 2 and 3.

2.7 LUBRICATION AND SERVICING SCHEDULE

For lubrication and servicing schedule, refer to table A.

LUBRICATION AND SERVICING SCHEDULE	Item	Months	DISTANCE TRAVELED ¹ (miles/km)																		LUBRICANT &/OR PART ²														
			6 250 / 10 000	12 500 / 20 000	18 750 / 30 000	25 000 / 40 000	31 250 / 50 000	37 500 / 60 000	43 750 / 70 000	50 000 / 80 000	56 250 / 90 000	62 500 / 100 000	68 750 / 110 000	75 000 / 120 000	81 250 / 130 000	87 500 / 140 000	93 750 / 150 000	100 000 / 160 000	106 250 / 170 000	112 500 / 180 000		118 750 / 190 000	125 000 / 200 000	131 250 / 210 000	137 500 / 220 000	143 750 / 230 000	150 000 / 240 000	156 250 / 250 000	162 500 / 260 000	168 750 / 270 000	175 000 / 280 000	181 250 / 290 000	187 500 / 300 000	193 750 / 310 000	200 000 / 320 000
GENERAL																																			
Flexible hoses, thoroughly inspect all hoses	-	12																																	
Front discharge tube, qty:2, check to see if clogged ³	-	3																																	
01 ENGINE																																			
Air cleaner, inspect, clean, replace element if required	23	6																																	
Air pre-cleaner, check discharge tube	24	6																																	
Engine, change oil and filters. Oil SAE 15W40, API CI-4	14	12																																	
Engine crankcase breather, clean breather steel mesh	20	12																																	
02 CLUTCH																																			
03 FUEL																																			
Change primary & secondary fuel filters, fill with clean fuel before installation	25 27	12																																	
05 COOLING																																			
Radiator fan drive gearbox,check oil level, add if necessary	16	6																																	
Radiator fan drive gearbox, change oil	16	12																																	
Coolant filter/Conditioner, replace element	15	12																																	
Coolant surge tank, test coolant solution	17	12																																	
Cooling system, drain, flush and refill	17	24																																	
06 ELECTRICAL																																			
Battery terminals, clean and coat terminals	29	12																																	
Bosh alternators, replace brushes and voltage regulator		24																																	
Bosh alternators, replace bearings		48																																	

¹ Proceed to maintenance operation at distance indicated on odometer or specified number of month, whichever comes first.

² See paragraph 2.5 & 2.6 of this section for lubricant and part number specifications.

³ Discharge tubes are rubber tubes located under vehicle

TABLE A

LUBRICATION AND SERVICING SCHEDULE	Item	Months	DISTANCE TRAVELED ¹ (miles/km)																																LUBRICANT &/OR PART ²
			6 250 / 10 000	12 500 / 20 000	18 750 / 30 000	25 000 / 40 000	31 250 / 50 000	37 500 / 60 000	43 750 / 70 000	50 000 / 80 000	56 250 / 90 000	62 500 / 100 000	68 750 / 110 000	75 000 / 120 000	81 250 / 130 000	87 500 / 140 000	93 750 / 150 000	100 000 / 160 000	106 250 / 170 000	112 500 / 180 000	118 750 / 190 000	125 000 / 200 000	131 250 / 210 000	137 500 / 220 000	143 750 / 230 000	150 000 / 240 000	156 250 / 250 000	162 500 / 260 000	168 750 / 270 000	175 000 / 280 000	181 250 / 290 000	187 500 / 300 000	193 750 / 310 000	200 000 / 320 000	
07 TRANSMISSION																																			
Allison Automatic transmission, change oil (standard oil) and filters	13	12	●	●			●			●				●				●			●		●			●		●				●		Oil Dexron-IIIE or Dexron-III Filters #571709	
Allison Automatic transmission, change oil (only if filled with TranSynd synthetic fluid) and filters ³	13	12						●								●								●									●	TranSynd Synthetic Fluid; Filters #571709	
Transmission oil cooler, replace unit if vehicle is equipped with transmission retarder	48	24																																Prévost #550712	
ZF-Astronic Automatic Transmission, change oil & filter after 185 000 miles (300 000 km)	13	24																														●	Castrol Syntrans grade SAE 75W-85		
09 PROPELLER SHAFT																																			
Grease one fitting on each universal joint and slip joint	31	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multipurpose grease	
10 FRONT AXLE																																			
Hub unit and swivel assembly, sec.10 Maintenance Manual	7	12						●								●							●										●	See GKN AXLE LTD Service Manual paragraph 1-Lubrication	
11 REAR AXLE																																			
Differential, check oil level, add if necessary	11	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multigrade gear oil	
Differential, change oil, clean breathers	11	24															●																●	Multigrade gear oil	
Tag axle lever pivot, grease one fitting on each pivot	12	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multi purpose grease	
12 BRAKE & AIR																																			
Air tanks, drain water from all tanks	30	12	●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●	-----	
Accessories air filter, change filter element	3	24															●																●	Filter #641340	
Air dryer, change cartridge	32	24															●																●	Cartridge #3097369	
Brake pads, check pad wear indicator and perform caliper slide check	-	12	●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●	Section 12 in Maintenance Manual	

¹ Proceed to maintenance operation at distance indicated on odometer or specified number of month, whichever comes first.

² See paragraph 2.5 & 2.6 of this section for lubricant and part number specifications.

³ When the transmission contains a mixture of fluids (defined as the quantity of non-TranSynd fluid remaining in the transmission after a fluid change combined with the quantity of TranSynd required to fill the transmission to the proper level), perform the fluid and filter change at 25 000 miles (40 200km) or 1 year, whichever comes first.

TABLE A

LUBRICATION AND SERVICING SCHEDULE	Item	Months	DISTANCE TRAVELED ¹ (miles/km)																																LUBRICANT &/OR PART ²
			6 250 / 10 000	12 500 / 20 000	18 750 / 30 000	25 000 / 40 000	31 250 / 50 000	37 500 / 60 000	43 750 / 70 000	50 000 / 80 000	56 250 / 90 000	62 500 / 100 000	68 750 / 110 000	75 000 / 120 000	81 250 / 130 000	87 500 / 140 000	93 750 / 150 000	100 000 / 160 000	106 250 / 170 000	112 500 / 180 000	118 750 / 190 000	125 000 / 200 000	131 250 / 210 000	137 500 / 220 000	143 750 / 230 000	150 000 / 240 000	156 250 / 250 000	162 500 / 260 000	168 750 / 270 000	175 000 / 280 000	181 250 / 290 000	187 500 / 300 000	193 750 / 310 000	200 000 / 320 000	
14 STEERING																																			
Drag link ends, grease one fitting at each end	4	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multi purpose grease
Relay rod ends, grease one fitting at each end	44	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multi purpose grease
Steering tie rod ends, grease one fitting at each end	6	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multi purpose grease
Idler arm, grease fitting	45	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multi purpose grease
Bell crank, grease fitting	46	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multi purpose grease
Steering damper cylinder, grease one fitting at rod end	43	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multi purpose grease
Steering knuckle pins, grease two fittings per knuckle	42	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Multi purpose grease
Power steering reservoir, replace oil and filter cartridges	26	12								●							●								●								●	Cartridge #660987	
16 SUSPENSION																																			
Upper A-Arm Ball Joint, grease fitting	47	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Molykote longterm 2/78 grease (preferably) or lithium NLGI no2 or no1
22 HEATING & AIR CONDITIONING																																			
A/C compressor, check oil level, add if necessary	22	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Polyolester oil
A/C receiver tank, check refrigerant level, add if necessary	34	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	HFC 134A
Refrigerant moisture indicator, replace filter dryer unit according to moisture indicator (as needed)	33	6	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	Filter #950332
A/C and Heating air filters, clean or replace all elements	8	6		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●	●	Driver #871147 , passenger #871051	
Parcel rack fan air filters, clean or replace	-	6		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●		●	●	Filter # 871159	
Coolant strainer, check, clean, change cartridge if required	9	12							●								●								●									●	Cartridge #871029
Condenser discharge tube, qty:2, check to see if clogged ³	-	3																																	-----
Evaporator discharge tube, qty:6, check to see if clogged ³	-	3																																	-----
Evaporator motor, condenser motor, recirculating pump drive motor, inspect brush, replace if necessary	-	12							●								●								●								●	Refer to parts manual	

¹ Proceed to maintenance operation at distance indicated on odometer or specified number of month, whichever comes first.

² See paragraph 2.5 & 2.6 of this section for lubricant and part number specifications.

³ Discharge tubes are rubber tubes located under vehicle

TABLE A

SECTION 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

CONTENTS

1. SLIDE-OUT	26-6
1.1 INNER STOPPER	26-6
1.1.1 Maintenance	26-6
1.1.2 Adjustment	26-6
1.2 EXTERIOR EXTRUSION	26-7
1.2.1 Maintenance	26-7
1.3 FRONT SLIDE-OUT REMOVAL	26-7
1.4 FRONT SLIDE-OUT INSTALLATION	26-8
1.5 REAR SLIDE-OUT REMOVAL	26-9
1.6 REAR SLIDE-OUT INSTALLATION	26-9
2. LOCKING PIN	26-9
2.1 MAINTENANCE	26-10
2.2 ADJUSTMENT	26-10
2.3 REPLACEMENT	26-11
2.4 SENSOR SWITCH ADJUSTMENT	26-11
2.5 PIN RECEPTACLE	26-12
2.5.1 Maintenance	26-12
2.5.2 Replacement	26-12
3. ROOF REINFORCING ROD	26-13
4. RACK	26-13
4.1 MAINTENANCE	26-13
4.2 UPPER RACK REPLACEMENT ON BOTH SLIDE-OUT	26-13
4.3 FRONT SLIDE-OUT LOWER RACK REPLACEMENT	26-14
4.4 REAR SLIDE-OUT LOWER RACK REPLACEMENT	26-14
5. PINION	26-14
5.1 MAINTENANCE	26-15
5.2 UPPER SHAFT PINION REPLACEMENT	26-15
5.3 FRONT SLIDE-OUT DRIVER SIDE LOWER SHAFT PINION REPLACEMENT	26-15
5.4 FRONT SLIDE-OUT MOTOR SIDE LOWER SHAFT PINION REPLACEMENT	26-16
5.5 REAR SLIDE-OUT LOWER SHAFT PINION REPLACEMENT	26-16
5.6 PINION SYNCHRONIZATION	26-17
5.7 GUIDE WHEEL	26-18
5.8 PLASTIC STOPPER	26-18
6. ELECTRIC MOTOR	26-18
6.1 MAINTENANCE	26-18
6.2 REPLACEMENT	26-18
7. SPEED REDUCTION GEARBOX	26-19
7.1 MAINTENANCE	26-19
7.2 GEARBOX REPLACEMENT	26-19
8. RIGHT ANGLE DRIVE	26-20
8.1 MAINTENANCE	26-20
8.2 LOWER SHAFT RIGHT ANGLE DRIVE REPLACEMENT	26-20
8.3 UPPER SHAFT RIGHT ANGLE DRIVE REPLACEMENT	26-20
9. JAW COUPLING	26-20

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

9.1 MAINTENANCE	26-20
9.2 REPLACEMENT	26-21
10.UHMW SLIDING PAD	26-21
10.1 MAINTENANCE	26-21
10.2 REPLACEMENT & ADJUSTMENT	26-21
11.VERTICAL SHAFT AND UNIVERSAL JOINT ASSEMBLY	26-21
11.1 MAINTENANCE	26-21
11.2 UNIVERSAL JOINT REPLACEMENT	26-21
11.3 VERTICAL SHAFT REPLACEMENT	26-22
12.SLIDE-OUT PNEUMATIC SYSTEM	26-22
12.1 DESCRIPTION	26-22
12.2 PNEUMATIC INTERCONNECTION WITH PREVOST VEHICLE	26-23
12.3 MAINTENANCE	26-23
12.4 SEAL	26-23
12.4.1 Maintenance	26-24
12.4.2 Seal assembly removal	26-24
12.4.3 Seal assembly installation	26-24
12.4.4 Slide-out 2" inside retraction	26-25
13.SLIDE-OUT ELECTRICAL SYSTEM	26-26
13.1 ELECTRICAL INTERCONNECTION WITH PREVOST VEHICLE	26-26
13.2 SLIDE-OUT BREAKERS/FUSE	26-26
13.3 ELECTRONIC CONTROLLERS	26-27
13.3.1 Motor controller replacement	26-28
13.3.2 Logic controller replacement	26-30
13.3.3 Safety controller replacement	26-30
13.3.4 Downloading program	26-30
13.4 SLIDE-OUT POSITION SENSOR	26-31
13.4.1 Maintenance and adjustment	26-31
14.SLIDE-OUT EXTERIOR FINISHING PANELS	26-32
14.1 SIDE PANEL REMOVAL	26-32
14.2 SIDE PANEL INSTALLATION	26-32
14.3 CORNER PANELS REMOVAL	26-32
14.4 CORNER PANELS INSTALLATION	26-33
14.5 TOP AND BOTTOM PANELS REMOVAL	26-33
14.6 TOP AND BOTTOM PANELS INSTALLATION	26-34
15.SLIDE-OUT FIXED, AWNING AND SLIDING WINDOWS	26-34
15.1 WINDOWS REMOVAL	26-34
15.2 WINDOWS INSTALLATION	26-35
16.WELDING PRECAUTION	26-35
17.TROUBLESHOOTING	26-40
17.1 SLIDE-OUT CONTROL SWITCH AND TELLTALE LIGHT ON VEHICLE DASHBOARD	26-40
17.2 MOTOR CONTROLLER	26-43
17.3 SLIDE-OUT OPERATION	26-45

18.SPECIFICATIONS.....	26-47
18.1 SLIDE-OUT MAXIMUM LOAD	26-47
18.2 TRANSTORQUE KEYLESS BUSHING	26-47
18.3 SPEED REDUCTION GEARBOX	26-49
18.4 POSITION SENSORS.....	26-49
18.5 RIGHT ANGLE DRIVE	26-49
18.6 ELECTRIC MOTOR	26-49
18.7 LOGIC CONTROLLER.....	26-49
18.8 MOTOR CONTROLLER	26-49
18.9 ELECTRICAL CONTROL SWITCH.....	26-50
18.10 CONVERSION CHECKLIST	26-50

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIGURE 1 : SLIDE-OUT MECHANICAL COMPONENTS	26-5
FIGURE 2 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT.....	26-6
FIGURE 3 : REAR SLIDE-OUT	26-6
FIGURE 4 : SIDE INNER STOPPER.....	26-6
FIGURE 5 : UPPER STOPPERS	26-6
FIGURE 6 : EXTERIOR EXTRUSION.....	26-7
FIGURE 7 : EXTERIOR PANEL EDGE	26-7
FIGURE 8 : UPPER SHAFT PILLOW BLOCK	26-7
FIGURE 9: SLIDE-OUT POSITION SENSORS PROTECTOR	26-8
FIGURE 10 : GUIDE WHEEL TRACK	26-9
FIGURE 11 : REAR SLIDE-OUT BED ROLLER	26-9
FIGURE 12 : LOCKING PIN MECHANISM.....	26-10
FIGURE 13 : LOCKING PIN INSTALLATION	26-11
FIGURE 14 : SENSOR SWITCH ADJUSTMENT	26-11
FIGURE 15 : PIN RECEPTACLE INSTALLATION.....	26-12
FIGURE 16 : PIN RECEPTACLE ON GLASS	26-12
FIGURE 17 : PIN RECEPTACLE ON STAINLESS STEEL PANELS	26-13
FIGURE 18 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT ROOF REINFORCING ROD	26-13
FIGURE 19 : BOTTOM RACK.....	26-13
FIGURE 20 : PILLOW BLOCK SUPPORTING PLATE	26-16
FIGURE 21 : KEYLESS BUSHING TIGHTENING	26-17
FIGURE 22 : TORQUE WRENCH FORMULA.....	26-17
FIGURE 23 : SLIDE-OUT ADJUSTABLE SHAFT ASSEMBLY	26-18
FIGURE 24 : ELECTRIC MOTOR	26-18
FIGURE 25 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT MOTOR ASSEMBLY.....	26-19
FIGURE 26 : REAR SLIDE-OUT MOTOR ASSEMBLY	26-19
FIGURE 27 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT SLIDING PAD LEVELLING	26-20
FIGURE 28 : REAR SLIDE-OUT SLIDING PAD LEVELLING.....	26-21
FIGURE 29 : TAG AXLE VALVE.....	26-22
FIGURE 30 : FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT	26-23
FIGURE 31 : SEAL ASSEMBLY	26-24
FIGURE 32 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT INFLATABLE SEAL AIR INLET	26-24
FIGURE 33 : REAR SLIDE-OUT INFLATABLE SEAL AIR INLET	26-24
FIGURE 34 : SLIDE-OUT 2" INSIDE – UPPER PART.....	26-25
FIGURE 35 : DASHBOARD SLIDE-OUT TELLTALE LIGHT	26-26
FIGURE 36 : BREAKERS IN MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT	26-26
FIGURE 37 : INSIDE MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT.....	26-27
FIGURE 38 : SLIDE-OUT ELECTRICAL PANEL (SMALL A/C).....	26-28
FIGURE 39 : SLIDE-OUT ELECTRICAL PANEL (FULL A/C)	26-28
FIGURE 40 : MOTOR CONTROLLER LED PANEL	26-29
FIGURE 41 : SLIDE-OUT BREAKERS.....	26-29

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

FIGURE 42 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT SENSORS.....	26-31
FIGURE 43 : REAR SLIDE-OUT SENSORS	26-31
FIGURE 44 : MAGNETS ON SLIDE-OUT UNDERBODY	26-31
FIGURE 45 : SLIDE-OUT PANELS AND WINDOWS.....	26-32
FIGURE 46 : CORNER PANEL INSTALLATION – UPPER PART.....	26-33
FIGURE 47 : CORNER PANEL INSTALLATION – LOWER PART	26-33
FIGURE 48 : TOP AND BOTTOM PANEL INSTALLATION	26-34
FIGURE 49 : TOP PANEL INSTALLATION	26-34
FIGURE 50 : WINDOWS ABOVE SIDE PANELS.....	26-35
FIGURE 51 : WINDOW LOCATED OVER THE CORNER PANEL.....	26-35
FIGURE 52 : PINION & PILLOW BLOCK ADJUSTMENT, REAR SLIDE-OUT	26-36
FIGURE 53 : PINION & PILLOW BLOCK ADJUSTMENT, FRONT SLIDE-OUT	26-36
FIGURE 54 : PNEUMATIC COMPONENT PANEL	26-37
FIGURE 55 : SLIDE-OUT LOGIC CONTROLLER LED PANEL	26-38
FIGURE 56 : LOCKING PIN ASSEMBLY	26-39
FIGURE 57 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT DEFLECTION	26-47
FIGURE 58 : WRENCHES FOR KEYLESS BUSHING INSTALLATION	26-47
FIGURE 59 : KEYLESS BUSHING INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION	26-48

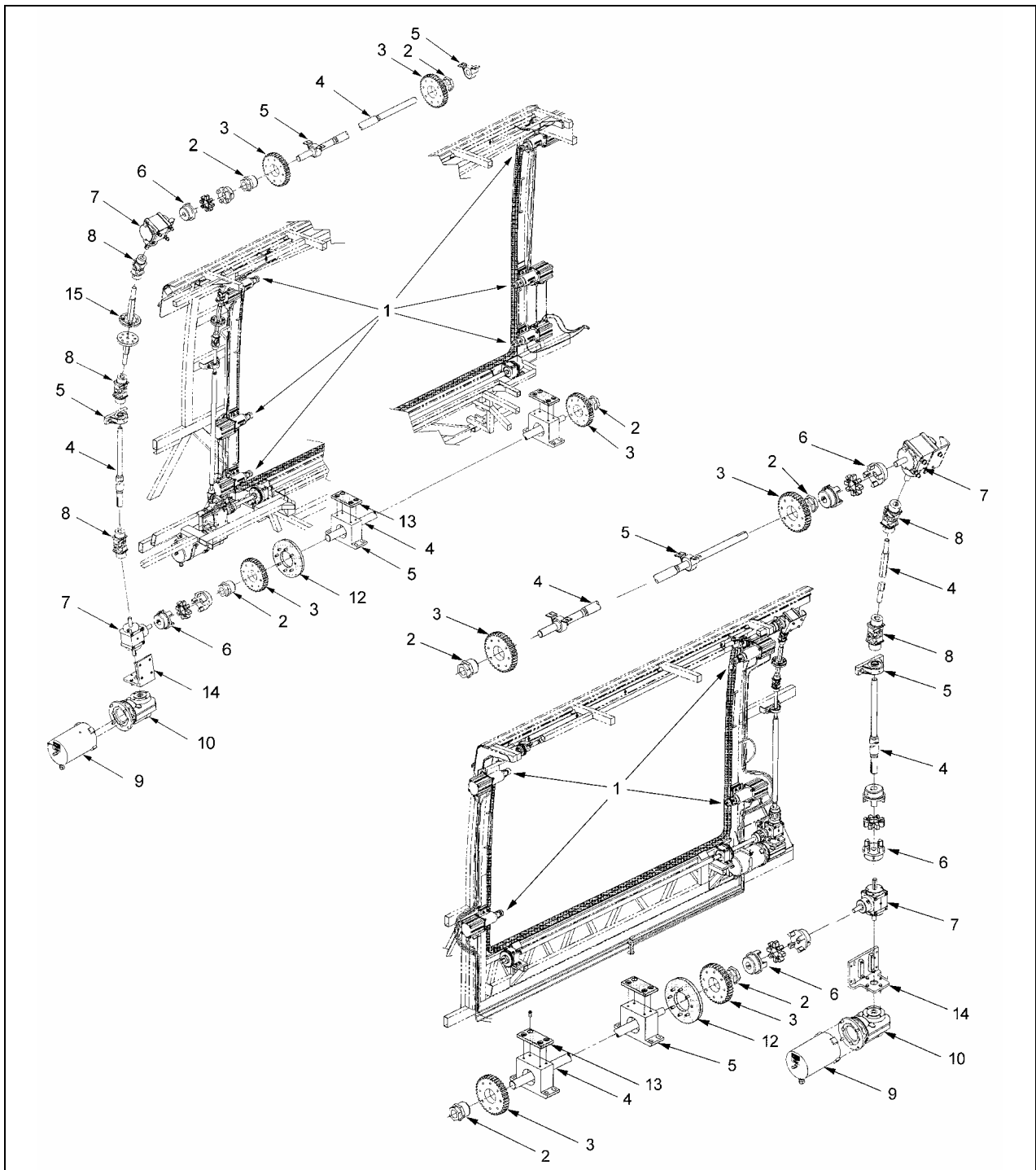


FIGURE 1 : SLIDE-OUT MECHANICAL COMPONENTS

1- LOCKING PIN
2- KEYLESS BUSHING
3- PINION
4- SHAFT
5- PILLOW BLOCK

6- JAW COUPLING
7- RIGHT ANGLE
8- UNIVERSAL JOINT
9- ELECTRIC MOTOR
10- GEARBOX

12- GUIDE WHEEL
13- UHMW SLIDING PAD
14- GEARBOX SUPPORT
15- ADJUSTABLE SHAFT ASSY

1. SLIDE-OUT

1.1 INNER STOPPER

The front slide-out is equipped with six inner stoppers laid out in the following way: two stoppers on the top horizontal member of the slide-out, and two stoppers on each vertical upright, while the rear slide-out is equipped with only three stoppers (figure 2 and figure 3). These stoppers are used to block the extension of the slide-out, and to provide a support to position perpendicularly the slide-out with the vehicle structure. It is thus of primary importance that the stoppers remain on the slide-out for the automatic operation. If not, nothing will stop the slide-out during its extension.

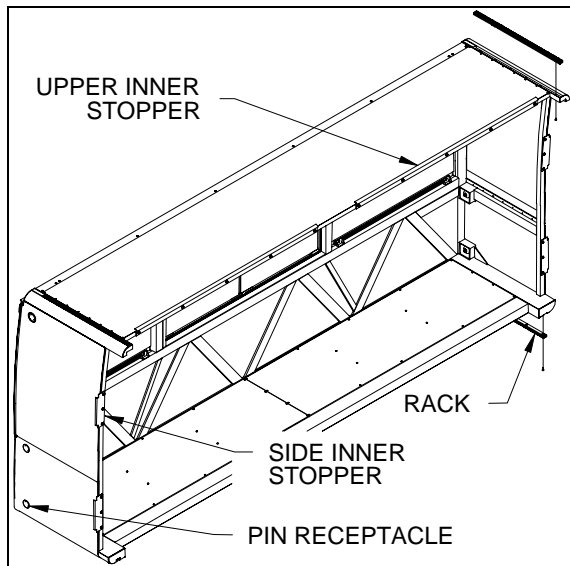


FIGURE 2 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT

1.1.1 Maintenance

Check that the inner stopper screws are tight and that no damage or deformation has taken place for both the side and the upper stoppers.

1.1.2 Adjustment

1. Adjust the side inner stoppers at 1/8" from the vehicle structure stoppers, and tighten the screws (figure 4).
2. Adjust the upper structure stopper at 1/4" from the slide-out structure and tighten the screws (figure 5).

3. Adjust the slide-out inner upper stoppers so they rest on structure stopper when the slide-out is extended (figure 6), and tighten the screws.

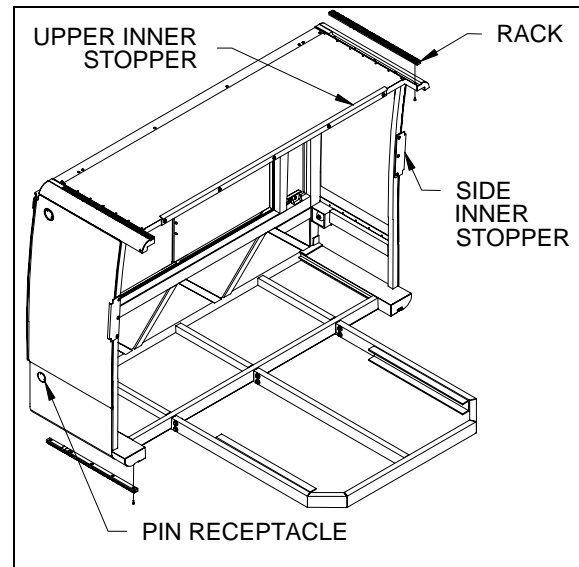


FIGURE 3 : REAR SLIDE-OUT

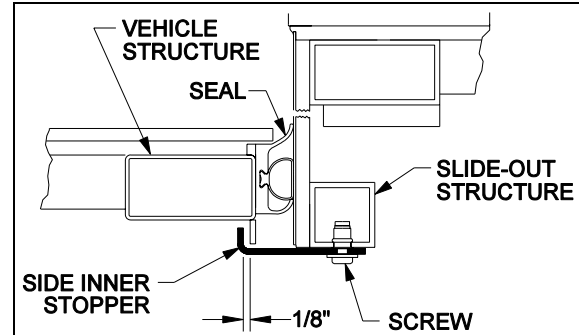


FIGURE 4 : SIDE INNER STOPPER

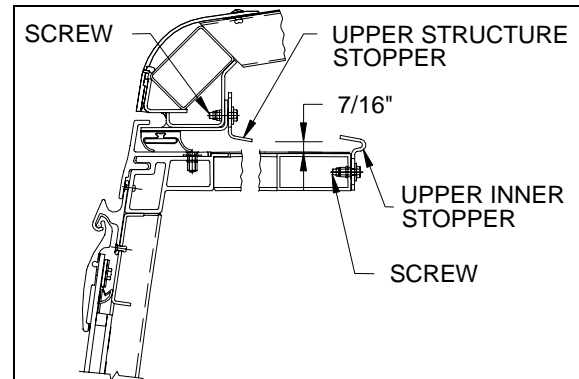


FIGURE 5 : UPPER STOPPERS

1.2 EXTERIOR EXTRUSION

The exterior extrusion function is to provide a leaning surface for the inflatable seal. When inflating, the seal leans against the extrusion and presses the roof structure upward until it rests on the inner side of the extrusion. This is to hold back the roof structure (figure 5 and figure 6).

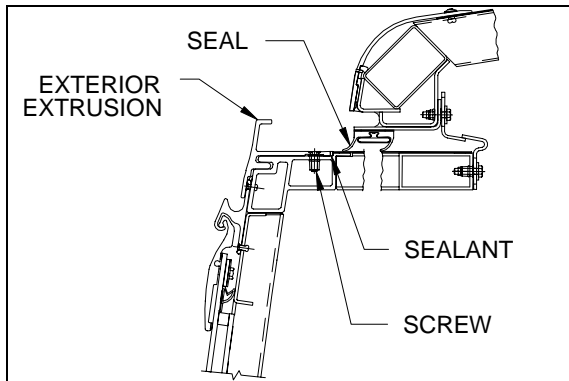


FIGURE 6 : EXTERIOR EXTRUSION

1.2.1 Maintenance

Inspect the exterior extrusion for any deformation or deterioration. Check that the screws are tight. Inspect the sealant condition on screw head and between the extrusion and the vehicle structure, and also at both ends of the extrusion. If needed, clean old sealant and replace with Sika 221 sealant or equivalent product.

1.3 FRONT SLIDE-OUT REMOVAL

1. Deflate the air seal completely to prevent any damage (see the slide-out operation manual).
2. Using the slide-out control switch and/or the manual override procedure, move the slide-out to its fully extended position.

Caution: Ensure suspension stabilization before using the height adjustable tables to prevent any damage to the vehicle or slide-out structure.

3. Support each end of the slide-out with height adjustable tables. Use plywood panels covered with soft material, such as carpet, to prevent any damage to the slide-out under panels and the exterior panel edge (figure 7). The supporting tables should not obstruct the slide-out bottom racks. Rise up the tables to support the slide-out without lifting it.

4. From inside the vehicle, loosen the upper shaft pillow block nuts and remove the shims behind the pillow blocks. Keep note of the shims position (figure 8).
5. Using the manual override procedure (see the operation manual), retract the slide-out a few inches to disengage the slide-out from its inner stoppers.

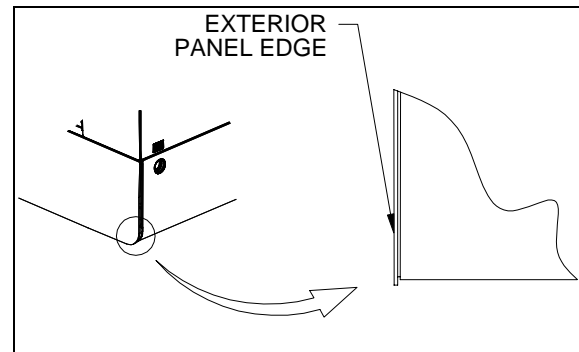


FIGURE 7 : EXTERIOR PANEL EDGE

Warning: The inner stoppers are used to stop and straighten the slide-out. The motor drive is controlled in overcurrent for three seconds after reaching its fully extended position. Never use the automatic control without the inner stoppers. The slide-out could fall down and cause serious damage and/or injury.

6. Unscrew and remove the slide-out inner upper and side stoppers. Loosen the upper structure stopper retaining screws and move this stopper to the upward position to allow the slide-out to come out freely (figure 5).

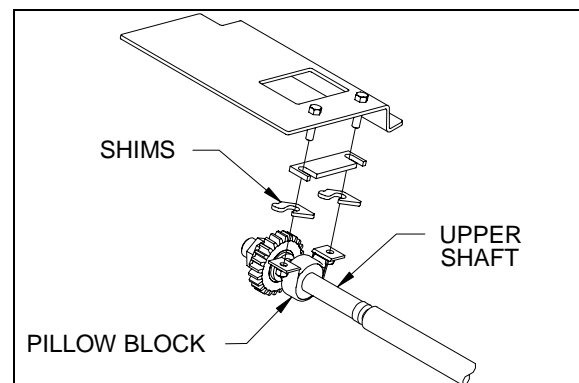


FIGURE 8 : UPPER SHAFT PILLOW BLOCK

7. Unscrew and remove the position sensors protector (figure 9).
8. Disengage both upper and lower shaft jaw couplings (figure 1 item 6).

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

9. Push the upper shaft to its highest position to allow the slide-out to be removed freely.

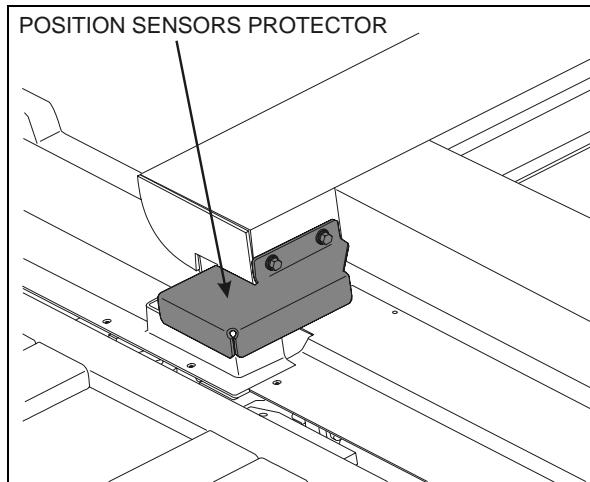


FIGURE 9: SLIDE-OUT POSITION SENSORS PROTECTOR

Caution: Be careful when moving the slide-out to prevent any damage to the slide-out itself and/or its seal. When moving the slide-out, check constantly its four corners from inside and outside the vehicle to avoid contact with the locking pins and/or the vehicle structure.

10. Slightly lift the slide-out and move it outside the vehicle on the supporting tables.
11. Take advantage of the situation to inspect internal mechanical components, UHMW sliding pads (section 10) and seal condition.

1.4 FRONT SLIDE-OUT INSTALLATION

Before proceeding with the front slide-out installation, check the following conditions:

- The air seal is completely deflated;
- The upper driving shaft pillow blocks are loose;
- The upper and lower shaft jaw couplings are disengaged;
- The upper and lower shaft keyless bushings located on the driver side are tight;
- The upper and lower shaft keyless bushings located on the motor side are free.

Note: The lower shaft keyless bushing located near the driver seat is not accessible unless the slide-out is removed completely from the vehicle, and does not need to be loosened.

Caution: Ensure suspension stabilization before using the height adjustable tables to prevent any damage to the vehicle or slide-out structure.

1. Using height adjustable tables, raise the slide-out and center it with the vehicle opening.

Caution: Be careful when moving the slide-out to prevent any damage to the slide-out itself and/or its seal. When moving the slide-out, check constantly its four corners from inside and outside to avoid contact with the locking pins and/or the vehicle structure.

2. Bring the slide-out close to the vehicle opening. Check from inside and outside that the four corners do not touch the vehicle structure.
3. Carefully put the slide-out on its UHMW sliding pads and the racks on their pinions (figure 1 item 3 and 13). Slide the free pinions to center them on their racks. Also, make sure that the guide wheel is in its track (figure 10 and figure 1 item 12).

Caution: Put soft material, such as carpet, on the floor of the vehicle in line with the lower racks to prevent slide-out contact when it will be pushed inside.

4. Slowly push the slide-out inside the vehicle keeping it straight. When the slide-out is well seated on its racks and pinions, hold it firmly to prevent it from falling outside or inside the vehicle, and remove the supporting tables. Push the slide-out inside and align the receptacles with the locking pins.

Caution: The slide-out receptacles must be perfectly aligned with the locking pins before locking them.

5. Using a compressed air nozzle, lock the pins one by one.

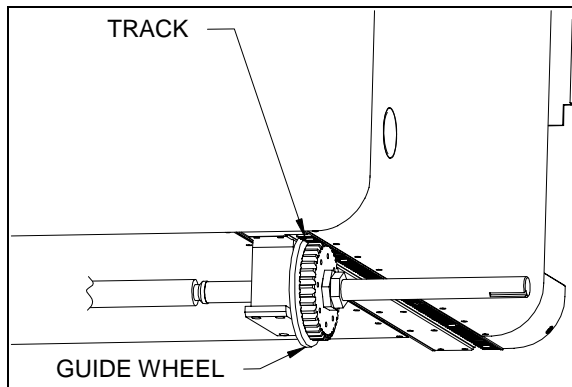


FIGURE 10 : GUIDE WHEEL TRACK

6. Reinstall the upper shaft pillow block shims in their original location (figure 8). Add or remove shims to leave no clearance between the pinion and the rack. Tighten the pillow block nuts.
7. Re-engage respectively the upper and lower shaft jaw couplings (figure 1 item 6). If necessary, realign the right angle drive (see section 8).
8. Tighten and synchronize the upper and lower shaft pinion as described in section 5.6.
9. Reinstall the slide-out side inner stoppers (section 1.1).

Caution: Make sure all keyless bushings are tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. Refer to section 5.6 for torque wrench settings.

10. Using a compressed air nozzle, manually unlock the pins.
11. Using the manual procedure, extend the slide-out until its interior stoppers come close to the vehicle structure for adjustment.
12. Adjust the slide-out stoppers as described in section 1.1.2.
13. Reinstall the position sensors protector.
14. Re-inflate the inflatable seal at 10 psi (see operating manual).

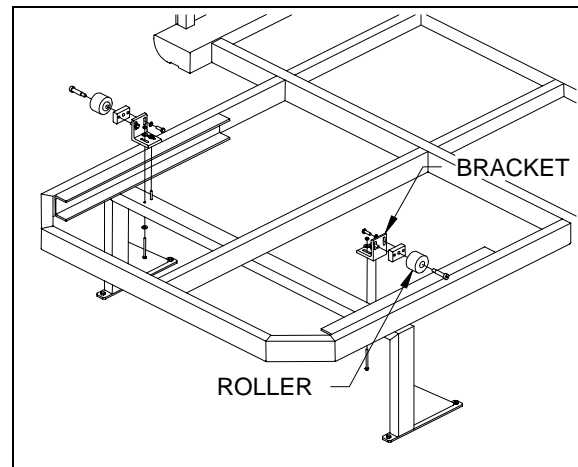


FIGURE 11 : REAR SLIDE-OUT BED ROLLER

1.5 REAR SLIDE-OUT REMOVAL

The rear slide-out removing procedure is almost the same as the procedure for the front slide-out. The only difference is the removal of the two rollers from the bed structure (figure 11), which must be done before step 9 of procedure 1.3.

1.6 REAR SLIDE-OUT INSTALLATION

The procedure for installing the rear slide-out is almost the same as the procedure for the front slide-out. Do not forget, the bed rollers must be reinstalled (figure 11).

2. LOCKING PIN

The locking pin system is used to lock the slide-out when in retracted position and link it with vehicle structure. This is to restore the vehicle structure integrity. This system consists of pneumatic cylinders connected to shafts with variable diameters which move segments located into a sleeve (see figure 12). During the extension of the cylinder, the sleeve penetrates partly into the slide-out receptacle to lock the slide-out. Then, the segments come to immobilize the part of the sleeve in the receptacle and also in the locking pin. Sensors installed on cylinders send a signal to a logic controller to indicate if the cylinder is in locked or unlocked position.

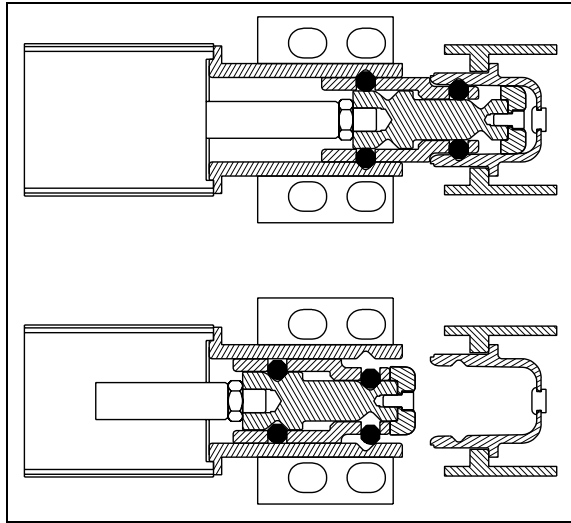


FIGURE 12 : LOCKING PIN MECHANISM

Note: The locking pin system optimal air pressure is 90 psi. Below 70 psi, pins may not lock or unlock completely.

2.1 MAINTENANCE

Caution: The locking pins may have to be adjusted after a load variation in the vehicle and/or the slide-out.

A load variation in the vehicle and/or the slide-out (ex: after the conversion) may affect structure deflection, therefore the locking pin adjustment, especially for the front slide-out.

After conversion process and twice a year, inspect the locking pins proper movement by manually activating the pins a few times when the slide-out is retracted. Check the inputs LED on each logic controller panel when activating the pins manually. Refer to LED description table (see figure 55).

A locking pin problem may be suspected if an error code is detected on the control switch. This probably means that a locking pin is not aligned or defective, and must be readjusted or fixed. Remove and disassemble the pin mechanism if a malfunction is suspected. Inspect the head, sleeve and segment for wear, deformation or rust, and replace defective parts (see figure 56).

A knocking sound may be heard when locking or unlocking the pins. This is normal because of the pneumatic system.

Inspect the locking pin cylinder and the fittings for air leaks. In case a locking pin refuses to

lock, check the inlet reducer fitting on the pin side cylinder port for any particle that would cause airflow restriction

2.2 ADJUSTMENT

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all the pins locked for pin adjustment.
2. Deflate the air seal completely to prevent any damage (see the slide-out operation manual).
3. **Front slide-out only:** Unload the tag axle using the manual switch located on the left-hand control panel, while the ignition key is switched to the "ON" position. When the tag axle is unloaded, switch the ignition to the "OFF" position.
4. Loosen the locking pin nuts.
5. Align the locking pin with the slide-out receptacle by putting shims between the locking pin base and the vehicle structure (figure 13). The shims must be inserted with a sliding fit. Make sure to put as many shims on the upper studs as on the lower studs to keep the locking pin base parallel to the vehicle structure.
6. Align horizontally the locking pin in the slide-out receptacle and tighten the four nuts.

Caution: The locking pin and the slide-out receptacle must be aligned before locking the pin. A locking pin not aligned with its receptacle may seriously damage the slide-out panels or windows.

7. Using a compressed air nozzle, lock and unlock manually a few times the locking pin to check that it does not knock. If it does, correct the alignment repeating step 2 to step 5. Make sure that the locking pin does not force the slide-out to move during all the procedure.
8. Make a final check by activating a few times manually (using compressed air) the locking pin to be sure of a perfect alignment.
9. Tighten the four locking pin nuts to 45 lb-ft.
10. Re-inflate the inflatable seal at 10 psi.

2.3 REPLACEMENT

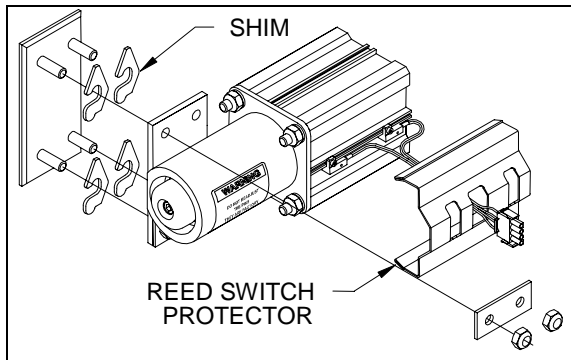


FIGURE 13 : LOCKING PIN INSTALLATION

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all pins locked for pin adjustment.
2. Deflate the inflatable seal completely to prevent any damage.
3. **Front slide-out only:** Unload the tag axle using the manual switch located on the left-hand control panel, while the ignition key is switched to the "ON" position. When the tag axle is unloaded, switch the ignition to the "OFF" position.
4. Note the pneumatic tubing position, then disconnect the tubing and the electric cable from the locking pin assembly (figure 13).
5. Using a compressed air nozzle, unlock the pin mechanism.
6. Remove the sensor switches. Unscrew and remove the locking pin unit. Keep the shims for further installation (figure 13).

Note: Adjust the locking pin sensor switch before installing the pin on the vehicle (refer to section 2.4).

7. Install the new locking pin on its support keeping it loose and lock it manually.
8. Adjust the locking pin as described in section 2.2.
9. Re-connect the tubing and the sensor switch electrical cable.

10. Re-inflate the inflatable seal at 10 psi.

2.4 SENSOR SWITCH ADJUSTMENT

1. Using a compressed air nozzle, manually extend the locking pin to be adjusted. Make sure the pin is full extended and locked in the receptacle.
2. Slide the pin locked sensor (PL) in the air cylinder groove (FIGURE 14 and FIGURE 56).
3. Place the PL sensor in the zone where it is activated. Move slowly the sensor toward the back side of the cylinder until it is deactivated. Bring back slowly the sensor (adjustment direction) and when it is activated again, continue to move it on 3/32" to 1/8". Tighten the sensor screw (figure 14).
4. Using a compressed air nozzle, manually retract the locking pin.
5. Slide the pin unlocked sensor (PU) in the air cylinder groove.
6. Place the PU sensor in the zone where it is activated. Move slowly the sensor toward the back side of the cylinder until it is deactivated. Bring back slowly the sensor (adjustment direction) and when it is activated again, continue to move it on 1/8" to 5/32". Tighten the sensor screw (figure 14).

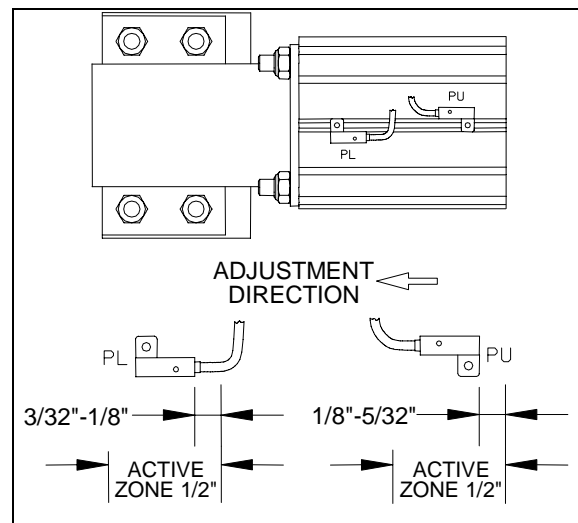


FIGURE 14 : SENSOR SWITCH ADJUSTMENT

Note: It is important to adjust the sensor following the adjustment direction (figure 14).

2.5 PIN RECEPTACLE

The front slide-out has six pin receptacles, and the rear slide-out has only four (figure 2 and figure 3). The pin receptacles installed on exterior panels are different from the pin receptacles installed on windows.

2.5.1 Maintenance

Inspect frequently all the pin receptacles to be sure they are not obstructed. The presence of metal chips in the receptacle may be a sign of a pin not aligned properly. Check for any rust on inner edges. Also, make sure the plastic cap is still there and not damaged.

2.5.2 Replacement

1. Extend the slide-out.
2. From inside the slide-out, unscrew one of the four screws of the pin receptacle. Keep the washer.
3. Screw an M10-1.5 x 75 threaded rod through the pin receptacle to hold the bolting plate in place and prevent it from moving.
4. Remove the other screws and replace them with threaded rods.
5. Remove the pin receptacle.
6. Remove the old sealant. Clean the panel or glass inner contact surfaces with alcohol.

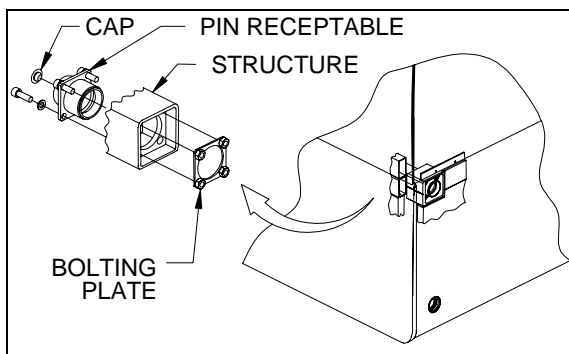


FIGURE 15 : PIN RECEPTACLE INSTALLATION

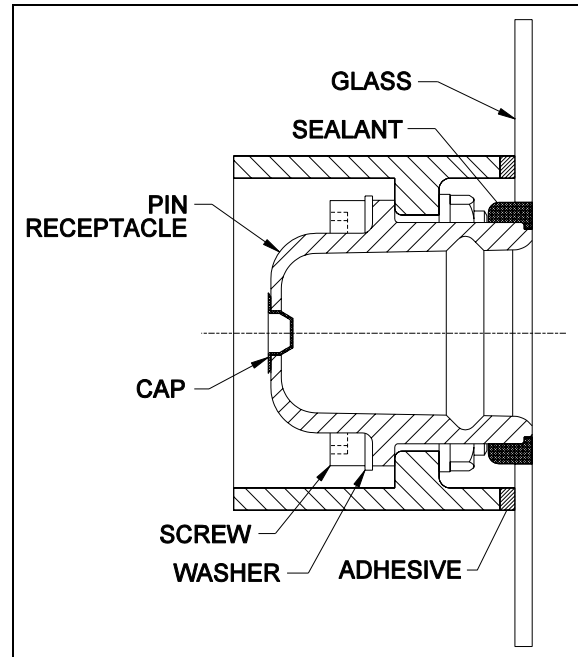


FIGURE 16 : PIN RECEPTACLE ON GLASS

7. Apply black Sika 222 UV or equivalent product on the glass surface contact with the pin receptacle (figure 16), and black Sika 221 or equivalent product on the panel surface contact with the pin receptacle (figure 17).
8. Install a pin receptacle on the threaded rods. Put the plastic cap back on.
9. One by one, replace the threaded rods with the washers and the screws.
10. Clean excess sealant with alcohol.
11. Readjust the locking pins as described in section 2.2 (if needed).

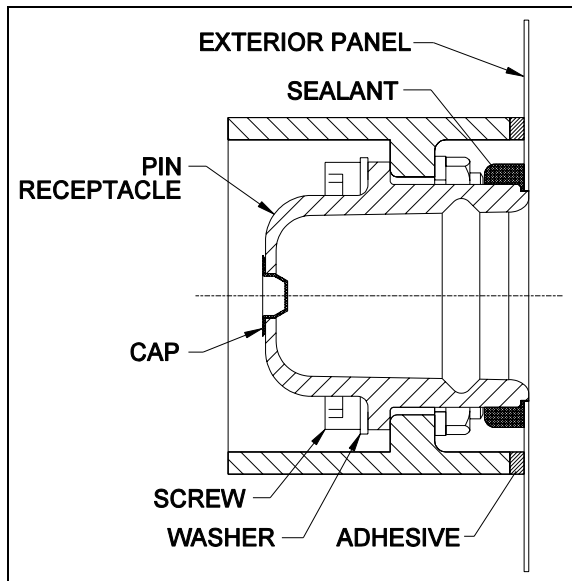


FIGURE 17 : PIN RECEPTACLE ON STAINLESS STEEL PANELS

3. ROOF REINFORCING ROD

Caution: The front slide-out roof reinforcing rod may have to be adjusted after a load variation inside the vehicle or on the top of the vehicle.

Caution: Always lock the turnbuckle using the jam nut to prevent loosening.

The roof reinforcing rod is located on the upper horizontal member of the front slide-out and is welded on the roof arches (figure 18).

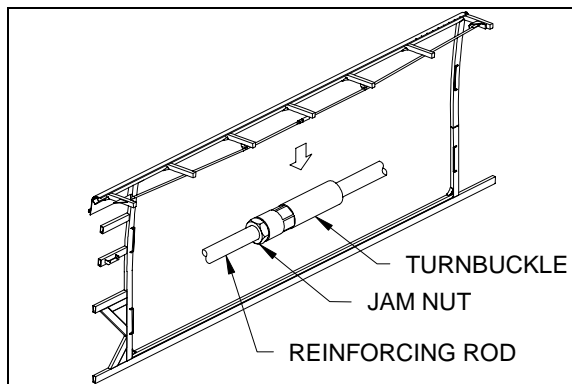


FIGURE 18 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT ROOF REINFORCING ROD

This rod allows an adjustment between the slide-out horizontal member and the roof. When screwing the turnbuckle, the roof is moved upward, and vice versa. Use this rod to adjust the horizontal member parallel to the slide-out. A member not parallel with the slide-out may cause the inflatable seal to leave the wiper seal.

4. RACK

Slide-out movements are made by a system of racks and pinions. There are four racks on each slide-out (figure 2 and figure 3). These racks are made of plastic. Because of that, the pinion should never have to be replaced, but only the racks.

4.1 MAINTENANCE

Once a year, check the racks for broken or worn tooth, especially the front slide-out racks. Also, check the bottom rack fastening hole teeth that are weaker and might break (figure 19). Replace the racks if excessive wear is present. Clean racks from sand or other debris. Check that the bolts are tight and check the backlash between the gear and the rack. Excessive backlash indicates rack wear.

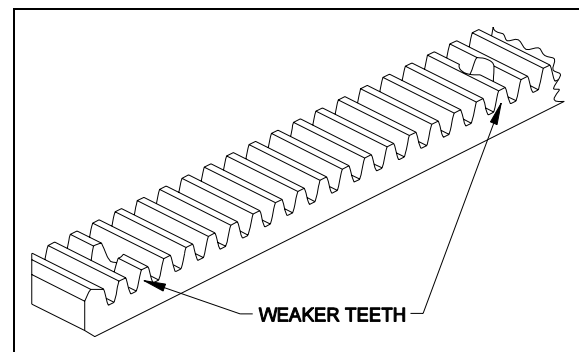


FIGURE 19 : BOTTOM RACK

4.2 UPPER RACK REPLACEMENT ON BOTH SLIDE-OUT

The procedure is the same for both units.

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all the pins locked.
2. Deflate the air seal completely to prevent any damage (see the slide-out operation manual).
3. Loosen the pinion keyless bushing of the rack to be changed and slip the bushing out of the pinion.
4. From inside the slide-out, unscrew all the rack screws (figure 2 and figure 3).
5. Move the pinion away from the rack and remove the rack from its location by pulling it out.

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

6. Remove the old waterproof material from the slide-out structural rack seat.
7. Apply Sika 221 sealant or equivalent product in the rack seat to prevent water infiltration.
8. Install a new rack in the rack seat. Apply sealant Sika 221 or equivalent product on screw thread before screwing them.
9. Reinstall the keyless bushing into the pinion. Tighten the pinion keyless bushing according to the procedure in section 5.6.

Caution: Make sure all keyless bushings are tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. Refer to section 5.6 for torque wrench settings.

10. Re-inflate the air seal at 10 psi.

4.3 FRONT SLIDE-OUT LOWER RACK REPLACEMENT

1. Remove the slide-out from the vehicle as described in section 1.3.
2. From under the slide-out, unscrew all the rack screws and remove the rack.

Note: The rack for the pinion and guide wheel assembly is narrower than the other one.

3. Install a new rack. Tighten the screws using Loctite 242 or equivalent product.
4. Reinstall the front slide-out inside the vehicle as described in section 1.4.

Caution: Make sure all keyless bushings are tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. Refer to section 5.6 for torque wrench settings.

4.4 REAR SLIDE-OUT LOWER RACK REPLACEMENT

1. Deflate the air seal completely to prevent any damage (see the slide-out operation manual).
2. Using the slide-out control switch and/or the manual override procedure, extend the slide-out about one foot.

3. From outside, unscrew and remove only the two first rack screws starting from the slide-out panel.
4. Using the manual override procedure only, retract the slide-out to its fully closed position. Lock all the locking pins.
5. Loosen the pinion keyless bushing of the rack to be changed.
6. From under the slide-out, unscrew all the rack screws and remove the rack.

Note: The rack for the pinion and guide wheel assembly is narrower than the other one.

7. Install a new rack between the slide out structural rack seat and the pinion. Tighten the screws accessible using Loctite 242 or equivalent product.
8. Tighten the pinion keyless bushing as described in section 5.6.

Caution: Make sure the keyless bushing is tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. Refer to section 5.6 for torque wrench settings.

9. Using the slide-out control switch and/or the manual override procedure, extend the slide-out about one foot.
10. Tighten the two remaining screws using Loctite 242 or equivalent product.
11. Using the slide-out control switch and/or the manual override procedure, retract the slide-out to its fully closed position. Lock all the locking pins.
12. Re-inflate the air seal at 10 psi.

5. PINION

Caution: The front slide-out upper shaft pinions may have to be readjusted and re-synchronized after a load variation in the slide-out (section 5.6).

Caution: Make sure all keyless bushings are tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. Refer to section 5.6 for torque wrench settings. A lower torque value

may cause the bushing to slip on the shaft, and a higher torque value may break the bushing.

5.1 MAINTENANCE

Note: One of the two lower shaft pinions is mounted with a plastic guide wheel. When replacing this pinion, it is important to put back the guide wheel (see section 5.7).

To tighten or loosen the keyless bushing, use those specific tools (see section 1.1):

- crowfoot wrench 1 ½";
- torque wrench;
- combination wrench 1 ¾";
- pipe wrench;
- drive extension 5";
- socket 1 ½".

5.2 UPPER SHAFT PINION REPLACEMENT

Note: The procedure is the same for the front and rear slide-out, except when specified.

1. Deflate the air seal completely to prevent any damage (see the slide-out operation manual).
2. Use the slide-out control switch and/or the manual override procedure to extend the slide-out completely.
3. **For the front slide-out only:** retract manually the slide-out on 1" from its fully extended position to release stopper contact.

Caution: Ensure suspension stabilization before using the height adjustable tables to prevent any damage to the vehicle or slide-out structure.

4. Support each end of the slide-out with height adjustable tables. Use plywood panels covered with soft material, such as carpet, to prevent any damage to the slide-out under panels and the exterior panel edge (figure 7). The supporting tables should not obstruct the slide-out bottom racks. Rise up the tables to support the slide-out without lifting it.
5. Loosen the upper shaft keyless bushing of the rack pinion to be changed.

6. For the motor side pinion, remove the upper jaw coupling and the upper right angle drive (see section 8).
7. From inside the vehicle, loosen the upper shaft pillow block nuts and remove the shims behind the pillow blocks. Keep note of the shims position (figure 8 and figure 1).
8. Remove the pinion with its keyless bushing.
9. Install the new pinion on the driving shaft. Check the keyless bushing condition before putting it back in place; use a new one when necessary. Pre-tighten the keyless bushing to 100 lb-ft, to be able to move the slide-out to its retracted position.
10. Reinstall the pillow blocks shims and tighten the nuts. Leave no clearance between the pinion and the rack. If necessary, use new shims to adjust.
11. Reinstall (when applicable) the angle drive and the universal joints taking care that both jaw couplings are aligned. Re-engage the jaw couplings.
12. With the slide-out on his supporting tables, use the manual override procedure to move it inside the vehicle to its retracted position.
13. Using a compressed air nozzle, lock all the locking pins one by one.
14. Synchronize the new pinion as described in section 5.6.
15. Re-inflate the air seal at 10 psi.

Caution: The slide-out receptacles must be perfectly aligned with the locking pins before locking them.

Caution: Make sure all keyless bushings are tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. Refer to section 5.6 for torque wrench settings.

5.3 FRONT SLIDE-OUT DRIVER SIDE LOWER SHAFT PINION REPLACEMENT

1. Remove the front slide-out as described in section 1.3.

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

2. Note, in relation with the structure, the exact position of the pinion located near the driver seat if it has to be changed.
3. Unscrew both lower shaft pillow blocks but:
 - do not change the base plate adjustment screws for the pillow block located near the electric motor (figure 27);
 - take note of the shim location for the pillow block located near the driver seat (figure 27).
4. Loosen the keyless bushing of the pinion to be replaced. Slip the pinion and its bushing out of the shaft. Check the keyless bushing and the guide wheel condition and replace them if needed (see section 5.7).
5. Reinstall the new pinion and the keyless bushing on the shaft without tightening the bushing.
6. Reinstall the driving shaft on the vehicle, making sure the pillow blocks are located at their same previous location and are both at the same distance from the structure. Replace the shims and tighten the bolts.
7. Reposition the pinion located near the driver seat and tighten its keyless bushing as described in section 5.6.
8. Reinstall the slide-out in the coach as described in section 1.4.

Caution: Make sure the keyless bushing is tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. Refer to section 5.6 for torque wrench settings.

5.4 FRONT SLIDE-OUT MOTOR SIDE LOWER SHAFT PINION REPLACEMENT

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all the pins locked.
2. Loosen the pinion keyless bushing.
3. Disengage the lower shaft jaw coupling.
4. From the baggage compartment, unscrew the pillow block supporting plate screw (figure 20). Do not change the plate

adjustment screws for the pillow block (figure 27).

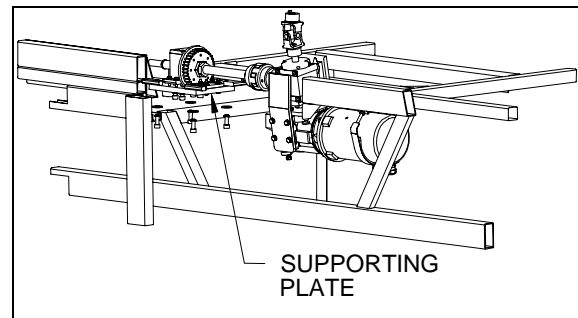


FIGURE 20 : PILLOW BLOCK SUPPORTING PLATE

5. Bend slightly the shaft and slip the jaw coupling and the keyless bushing out of the shaft. Slip the pinion and guide wheel assembly out of the shaft and replace them.
6. Replace the keyless bushing. Change it if damaged. Replace the jaw coupling on the shaft.
7. Screw back the pillow block supporting plate on the vehicle structure.
8. Re-engage the jaw coupling.
9. Synchronize the new pinion as described in section 5.6.

Caution: Make sure the keyless bushing is tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. Refer to section 5.6 for torque wrench settings.

5.5 REAR SLIDE-OUT LOWER SHAFT PINION REPLACEMENT

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all the pins locked.
2. Loosen the keyless bushing of the lower shaft pinion to be changed.
3. Disengage the lower shaft jaw coupling.
4. **For the motor side pinion only:** Remove the gearbox support (see section 7.2).
5. Remove the pinion and the keyless bushing from the shaft.

6. Check the keyless bushing and the guide wheel condition and replace them if needed (see section 5.7).
7. Reinstall the new pinion and the keyless bushing on the shaft without tightening the bushing.
8. Re-engage the jaw coupling and adjust the gearbox support if necessary.
9. Tighten the pinion keyless bushing as described in section 5.6.

Caution: Make sure all keyless bushings are tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. Refer to section 5.6 for torque wrench settings.

5.6 PINION SYNCHRONIZATION

Caution: The front slide-out upper shaft pinions may have to be readjusted and re-synchronized after a load variation in the slide-out.

The four pinions need to be synchronized for the slide-out to move straight when extending and retracting. This synchronization is possible with the use of Trantorque keyless bushings. These keyless bushings need a specific tightening torque value to ensure proper pinion transmitting torque. They also need specific tools to be tightened, as described in section 18.2.

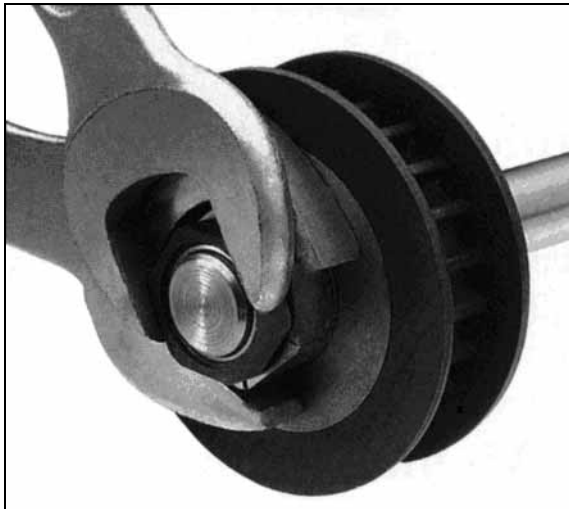


FIGURE 21 : KEYLESS BUSHING TIGHTENING

To tighten the keyless bushing, use a special open-end wrench to retain the yellow part and another wrench to tighten the black part. Figure 20 shows how to tighten the keyless bushing.

When tightening, make sure the pinion does not move or rotate.

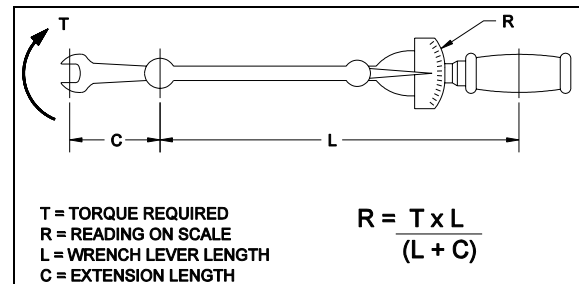


FIGURE 22 : TORQUE WRENCH FORMULA

Caution: Make sure all keyless bushings are tightened to 125 lb-ft before unlocking the pins or moving the slide-out. A lower torque value may cause the bushing to slip on the shaft, and a higher torque value may break the bushing. The torque may need to be recalculated depending of the wrench size. Refer to figure 22 for wrench size compensation.

REAR SLIDE-OUT PINIONS

To adjust and synchronize the rear slide-out pinions, tighten the keyless bushing to 125 lb-ft (refer to figure 22 for wrench size compensation) after having centered the pinion in its rack. Take note that when the keyless bushing nut is tightened, the pinion moves about 1/16" to 3/32" toward the slide-out center.

FRONT SLIDE-OUT PINIONS

A torque must be applied on the upper shaft to compensate the effect of the center of gravity of the slide-out when inside the vehicle. This gravity effect causes the slide-out to fall down inside the vehicle. The torque applied on the shaft forces the pinions to push the upper part of the slide-out outside the vehicle to counterbalance the gravity effect.

Note: The driver side keyless bushing located on the lower shaft is not accessible when the slide-out is installed. Therefore, it must be tightened before installing the slide-out.

Follow these steps to adjust and synchronize the front slide-out pinions.

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all the pins locked.
2. Make sure the adjustable shaft assembly is tightened (refer to figure 23).

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

3. On the driver side, tighten the upper shaft keyless bushing to 125 lb-ft (refer to figure 22 for wrench size compensation). Make sure the pinion is centered and fits well in its rack to eliminate any possible backlash. Take note that when the keyless bushing nut is tightened, the pinion moves about 1/16" to 3/32" toward the slide-out center.
4. Tighten the other side keyless bushing to 125 lb-ft by using the same procedure described in the previous step.
5. On the lower shaft, tighten the left-hand side keyless bushing to 125 lb-ft (refer to figure 22 for wrench size compensation).
6. Once all the keyless bushings are tightened, unplug the air tubing from the locking pins air valve to prevent movement of the slide-out during the verification of the pinion synchronization.

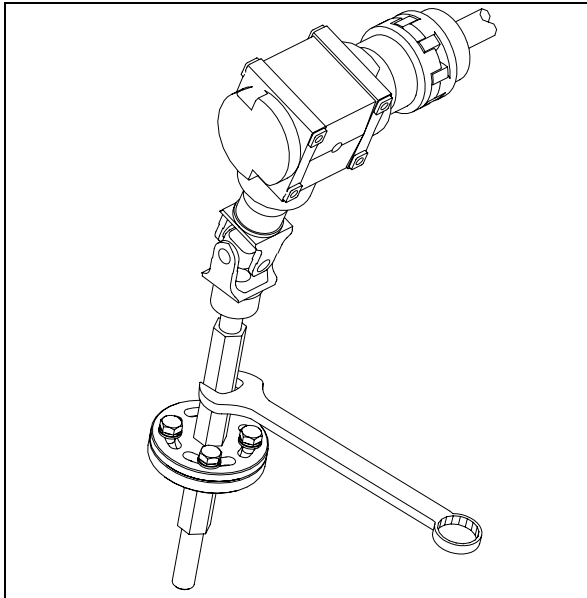


FIGURE 23 : SLIDE-OUT ADJUSTABLE SHAFT ASSEMBLY

7. Operate the slide-out and check if the exterior panels of the slide-out are parallel with the vehicle panels. If not, rotate the upper part of the adjustable shaft assembly as required to obtain proper alignment (refer to figure 23).

Caution: Make sure the adjustable shaft bolts are tightened to 25 lb-ft to ensure that the adjustable shaft assembly is properly locked.

5.7 GUIDE WHEEL

A plastic wheel is mounted on one of the lower shaft pinion on each slide-out. This wheel is used to guide the slide-out when extending or retracting. The wheel follows a track between the rack and the slide-out structure (figure 10). To replace this wheel, remove the pinion from the shaft and unscrew the guide wheel screws from the pinion (refer to section 5.4 and 5.5).

5.8 PLASTIC STOPPER

There is a UHMW plastic stopper used to block any axial movement of the front slide-out lower shaft (figure 27). This stopper must be adjusted 1/32" away from the pinion.

6. ELECTRIC MOTOR

The power is supplied by a 1/3 HP electric motor coupled with a speed reduction gearbox.

6.1 MAINTENANCE

Inspect the electrical connections and their watertightness. Check that the bolts and the holding metal strap are tight (figure 24).

6.2 REPLACEMENT

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all the pins locked.
2. Disconnect the electric wire cable from the motor. Release the motor holding metal strap (figure 24).

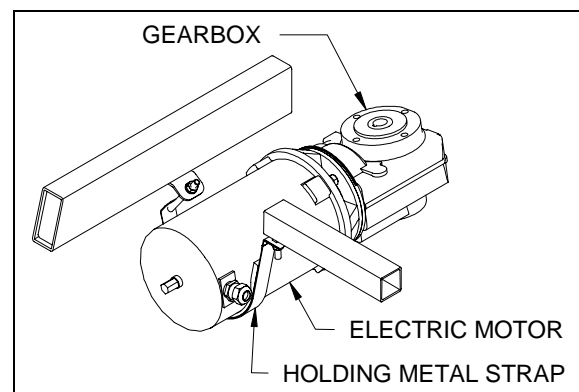


FIGURE 24 : ELECTRIC MOTOR

3. Remove the motor from the gearbox.
4. Fasten the new motor to the gearbox using screws.
5. Replace and tighten the motor holding metal strap (figure 24).

6. Re-connect the motor electric cable.

7. SPEED REDUCTION GEARBOX

The speed reduction gearbox used is a helical worm gear type. This gearbox has a 140:1 ratio and the output shaft is self-locking. See section 18.3 for gearbox specifications.

7.1 MAINTENANCE

Inspect the gearbox to check if there is any leakage or backlash in the box or between the keys and their keyseat. Replace the gearbox if excessive wear is present. Check that all bolts are tight.

Check the oil level. The gearbox is lubricated for life and the oil should not have to be changed.

Check the gearbox axle alignment with the right angle drive and adjust it if necessary (section 8).

7.2 GEARBOX REPLACEMENT

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all the pins locked.
2. Disengage the lower jaw coupling, and for the front slide-out, remove the universal joint from the right angle drive shaft (figure 1).
3. **For the front slide-out:** Remove the reinforcement plate from the gearbox (figure 25).

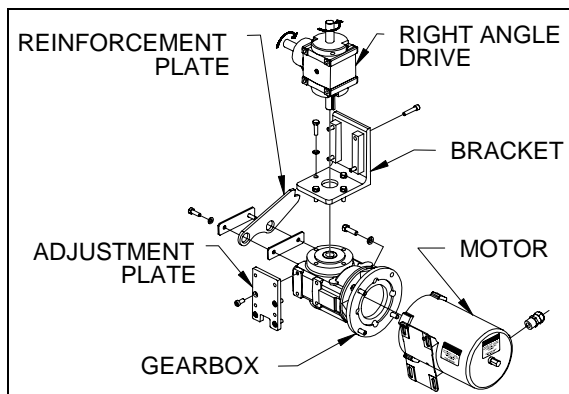


FIGURE 25 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT MOTOR ASSEMBLY

4. Remove the motor from the gearbox (see section 6.2).
5. Remove the gearbox assembly (figure 25 and figure 26). Note the shim position.

6. Unscrew the right angle drive from its bracket (figure 25 and figure 26).

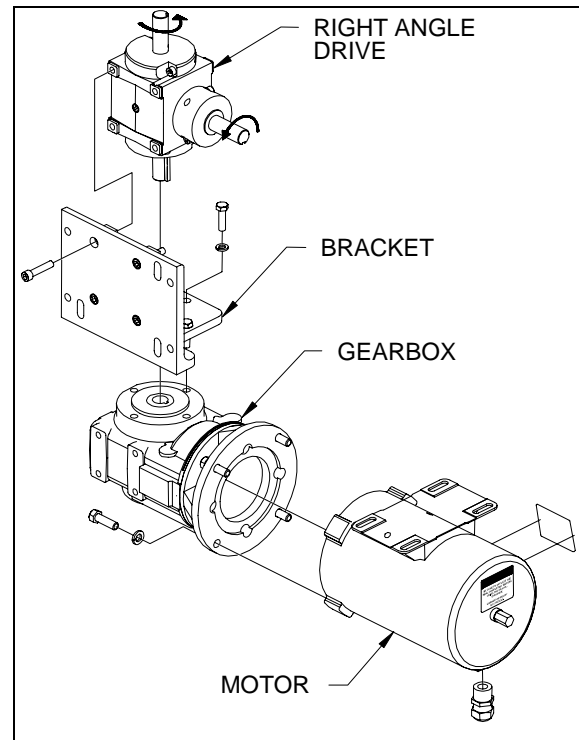


FIGURE 26 : REAR SLIDE-OUT MOTOR ASSEMBLY

7. Remove the right angle drive bracket and for the front slide-out, remove the adjustment plate from the speed reduction gearbox.
8. Install the right angle drive bracket on the new gearbox without tightening the screws. For the front slide-out, install the adjustment plate on the speed reduction gearbox using Loctite 242 or equivalent product.

Caution: The right angle lower vertical key must be welded on its keyseat to prevent it from moving or falling.

9. Check the right angle drive rotation (figure 25 and figure 26) before installing it on the bracket. Align the right angle drive shaft with the gearbox hollow shaft and tighten all screws.
10. Reinstall the speed reduction gearbox assembly on the vehicle mounting bracket without tightening the screws.
11. Using shims and, for the front slide-out, the vehicle mounting bracket adjustment screw, align the right angle drive shaft jaw coupling with the slide-out lower shaft jaw coupling.

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

12. Reinstall the motor on the speed reduction gearbox (see section 6.2).
13. Reinstall the universal joint and the jaw coupling on the right angle drive. Use the motor output shaft to align the keyseats.
14. **For the front slide-out:** Reinstall the reinforcement plate

8. RIGHT ANGLE DRIVE

Caution: The right angle lower vertical key must be welded or punched on its keyseat to prevent it from moving or falling.

The right angle drive simultaneously transmits the movement to the lower and upper driving shafts via a vertical shaft. To preserve the same rotating speed, before being transmitted to the upper shaft, the movement coming from the speed reduction gearbox passes through a second right angle drive, which has a 1:1.5 ratio. That is due to the fact that the lower shaft pinions have more teeth than those on the upper shaft.

8.1 MAINTENANCE

Inspect the right angle drive to check if there is any leakage or excessive backlash in the box or between the keys and their keyseat. Replace the keys or the right angle drive if excessive wear is present. When replacing, weld the lower vertical shaft key on its keyseat. Check that all bolts are tight.

Check the oil level and lubricate the right angle drive once every three years.

Check the right angle drive axle alignment with the driving shafts and adjust it if necessary, using the shims and/or the adjustment screw.

8.2 LOWER SHAFT RIGHT ANGLE DRIVE REPLACEMENT

Use the same procedure as for the speed reduction gearbox (section 7).

8.3 UPPER SHAFT RIGHT ANGLE DRIVE REPLACEMENT

Note: This procedure is the same for both slide-out.

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all the pins locked.
2. Disengage the jaw coupling and the universal joint from the right angle drive.
3. Remove the right angle drive and keep note of the shims position.

Caution: Make sure the new right angle drive revolves in the same direction before installing it.

4. Replace the right angle. Reinstall the half jaw coupling on the right angle drive shaft.
5. Screw without tightening the new right angle drive.
6. Using shims, align the right angle drive jaw coupling with the upper shaft jaw coupling.
7. Reinstall the universal joint and re-engage the jaw coupling.

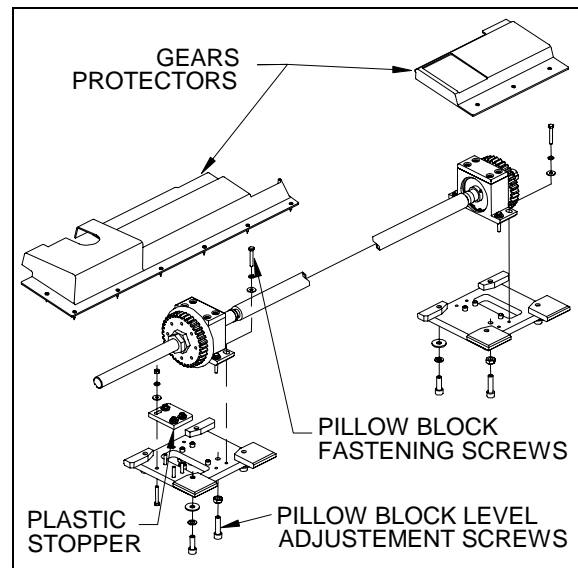


FIGURE 27 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT SLIDING PAD LEVELLING

9. JAW COUPLING

9.1 MAINTENANCE

Inspect the jaw couplings to check if there is backlash between the key and the keyseat, or between the coupling and the plastic spider. Also, check the spider condition. Check that the setscrews are tight.

9.2 REPLACEMENT

The jaw coupling replacement procedure is the same as for the right angle drive, section 8.2 and 8.3.

10. UHMW SLIDING PAD

The UHMW sliding pads support the slide-out, and offer a frictionless surface for the slide-out movement.

10.1 MAINTENANCE

Check the sliding pad for a non even or abnormal wear, or plastic deterioration. Adjust the sliding pad when its surface is not parallel with the slide-out under panels. Replace it when its thickness is below 11/32" or if the lower racks interfere with the lower shaft pinions.

10.2 REPLACEMENT & ADJUSTMENT

1. Remove the slide-out as described in section 1.3 and 1.5.
2. Unscrew and remove the used UHMW sliding pad from the pillow block.

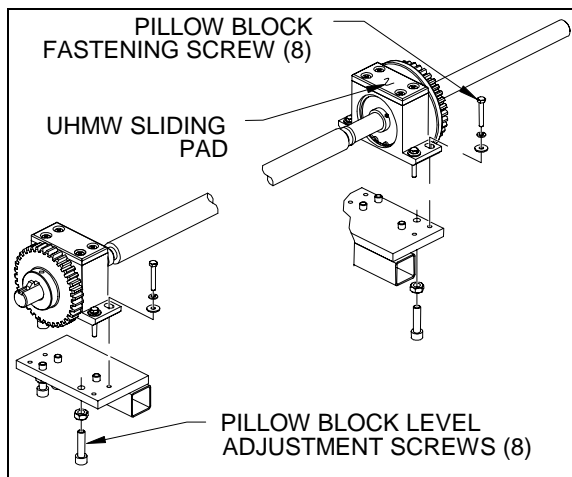


FIGURE 28 : REAR SLIDE-OUT SLIDING PAD LEVELLING

3. Check and make sure that the UHMW sliding pad and the vehicle frame structure are parallel and within a distance of 22.2mm (7/8") (figure 48). If not, an adjustment is needed. To adjust the rear slide-out UHMW sliding pads and the front slide-out motor side UHMW sliding pad, use the pillow block adjustment screws located under the fixation plates (figure 27 and figure 28). To adjust the front slide-out UHMW sliding pad located on the driver side, add or remove shims under the pillow block (figure 27).

4. Make sure both pillow blocks are at the same distance from the structure and tighten the pillow block fastening screws and the adjustment screw jam nut (figure 27 and figure 28).
5. Reinstall the slide-out in the vehicle (see sections 1.4 and 1.6).

11. VERTICAL SHAFT AND UNIVERSAL JOINT ASSEMBLY

11.1 MAINTENANCE

Note: The taper keys used on the vertical shaft assembly are specially made keys with a wider width. Do not replace them with standard taper keys.

Inspect the universal joints and the shafts to check if there is leakage or backlash between the keys and their keyseat. Replace the keys, the joint or the shaft if excessive wear is present. When replacing key, ensure to block the taper key against the shaft and the universal joint keyseats. Check that all setscrews are tightened.

11.2 UNIVERSAL JOINT REPLACEMENT

1. The slide-out must be retracted and all the pins locked.
2. Unscrew the setscrews and remove the universal joint.

For the bottom vertical shaft: unscrew the vertical pillow block keeping note of the shims position.

For the rear slide-out vertical shaft: disengage the coupling between the vertical shaft and the lower angle drive.

Note: If possible, use shafts and universal joints that provide same keyseat alignment to avoid pinion re-synchronization.

3. Install new universal joints.
4. Lock the taper keys against the shaft and the universal joint keyseats to prevent them from moving. Use Loctite 242 or equivalent product on all set screws.

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

5. Paint the universal joints to prevent rust.

11.3 VERTICAL SHAFT REPLACEMENT

Use the same procedure as for the universal joint (section 11.2).

12. SLIDE-OUT PNEUMATIC SYSTEM

The slide-out is controlled by a pneumatic and electric system. Mainly, the pneumatic system consists of electrical operating valves that control slide-out components and safety operations. Pneumatic schematic diagrams are annexed for better understanding of the system.

12.1 DESCRIPTION

AIR PRESSURE INLET VALVE

The slide-out air pressure comes from the air pressure inlet valve on the pneumatic panel in the front service compartment (figure 30).

LOCKING PIN VALVE

The locking pin movement is done using a 5-port 3-position manifold valve with open center. A manual locking override screw may be used to activate the pin manually in case of trouble. A protection plate covers the locking pin manual override screw to prevent accidental activation (figure 54).

INFLATABLE SEAL VALVE

The inflation and the deflation of the seal are done using a 5-port 2-position manifold valve with two coils. One coil is used to inflate the seal and the other one to deflate the seal. When one of the coils is activated (seal deflating valve), the valve will keep its state even if the coil is deactivated. The inflating valve coil is activated to re-inflate the seal when the slide-out reaches its inner or outer limit. The inflatable seal pressure is set at 10 psi and this pressure is always on the seal as long as the accessory air tank (which is the slide-out air supply) is not empty (figure 54).

VACUUM GENERATOR

A vacuum generator using Venturi principle is controlled by a 5-port 2-position manifold valve and is used to evacuate the air faster from the seal and to ensure that the seal surface does not stay in contact with the slide-out (figure 54).

VACUUM SWITCH

A vacuum switch is mounted on the vacuum generator output port and is used as an input signal when the vacuum reaches the 2" Hg set point. This input signal will detect an inflatable seal failure if the 2" Hg set point is not reached after an 8 seconds delay (figure 54).

TAG AXLE VALVE

The automatic control unloading tag axle valve is used to freely lock and unlock the front slide-out pins. The tag axle is not raised during this process. A 3-port 2-position normally closed valve is connected to the air spring valve operator. An air system schematic diagram is annexed to show the modifications. This valve is located in the compartment near the main power compartment (figure 29).

RACK CLEANING AIR NOZZLE

Both slide-out upper racks are not protected against foreign material and water when the slide-out is extended. To prevent damage to the rack and pinion mechanism, an air nozzle is placed above each upper rack to clean it when the slide-out is retracted. A 5-port 3-position manifold valve with open center is used to blow air to nozzles for both slide-out (figure 54).

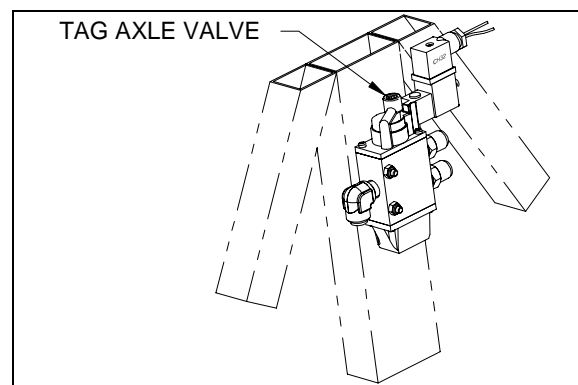


FIGURE 29 : TAG AXLE VALVE

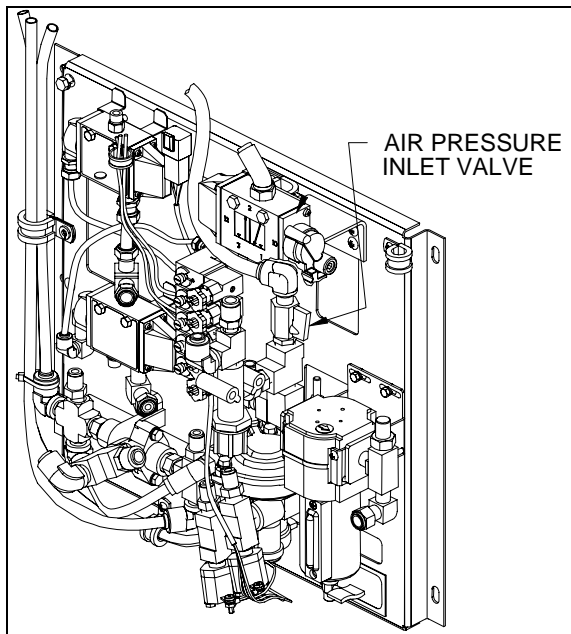


FIGURE 30 : FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT

12.2 PNEUMATIC INTERCONNECTION WITH PREVOST VEHICLE

The slide-out pneumatic system air supply comes from the converter air supply valve located on the pneumatic panel in the front service compartment (figure 30). A valve is also added on this panel for an interlock with the parking brake. Another valve is added on the middle structure over the rear axle accessible by the driver side rear suspension access panel (figure 29). This valve activates the tag axle unloading when locking or unlocking the front slide-out.

Pneumatic circuit modifications made on the vehicle are shown on pneumatic diagrams annexed.

12.3 MAINTENANCE

COMPRESSED AIR LINE

Inspect all compressed air line tubing for cut, swelling, kink or other damage or deterioration. Inspect the pneumatic fittings and components for any leak. The slide-out air supply is connected to the accessory air tank and the maintenance is specified in the "brake and air system" section from the Prevost maintenance manual.

INFLATABLE SEAL CIRCUIT

The efficiency of the seal could be affected by impurities, such as white powder in the pneumatic control valve. It is recommended to inspect the inflatable seal control components once a year to prevent malfunction. In this case, remove the seal valves and clean the interior valve components using a compressed air nozzle. Do the same thing with the vacuum generators.

The inflatable seal pressure must be set from 7 to 10 psi maximum. It is recommended to check the inflatable seal pressure once a month to ensure sealing efficiency and prevent any infiltration from outside.

VACUUM SWITCH

The vacuum switch used to control the vacuum generator valve may have to be adjusted if malfunction is suspected. The vacuum is factory pre-set to 2" Hg. To check the vacuum set point, use a vacuum gage adapter at the seal valve output. Operate the slide-out and check the maximum vacuum value. If needed, adjust the vacuum set point with the adjustment screw located between the electrical tab connectors. Turn the screw clockwise to lower the vacuum set point and counterclockwise to raise it.

12.4 SEAL

Note: Refer to the Prevost parts manual for descriptions of the sealant and adhesives used.

The slide-out sealing device is used to prevent any type of infiltration that may occur between the structure body and the slide-out itself. It is composed of an inflatable seal which is used as a primary sealing device for both retracted and extended slide-out position and a wiper seal as a secondary sealing device which is used to wipe water out and to ensure sealing during slide-out movement.

The front slide-out inflatable seal air inlet is located in the third baggage compartment on the driver side close to the front slide-out electric motor (figure 32). The rear slide-out inflatable seal air inlet is located on the structure post facing the rear of the vehicle (figure 33).

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

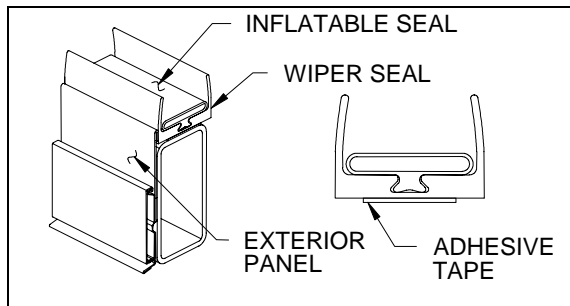


FIGURE 31 : SEAL ASSEMBLY

The seal deflation is done each time the slide-out moves. The deflating valve coil is activated before and during the slide-out movement. When the slide-out reaches its retracted or extended position, the deflating valve coil is deactivated before activate the inflating valve for 1 second to re-inflate the seal.

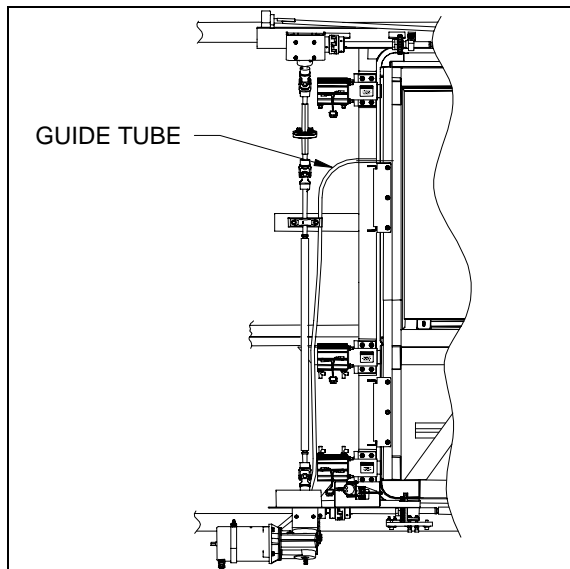


FIGURE 32 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT INFLATABLE SEAL AIR INLET

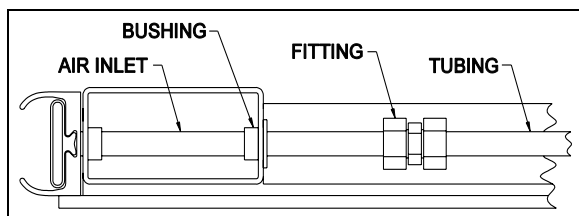


FIGURE 33 : REAR SLIDE-OUT INFLATABLE SEAL AIR INLET

Caution: Make sure the inflatable seal is deflated when manually moving the slide-out during service maintenance. Deflate both inflatable seals completely by turning clockwise the relieving shut-off valve (figure 54).

The vacuum generator valve is activated simultaneously with seal valve for 8 seconds. The vacuum switch will detect a vacuum valve or generator failure if the 2" Hg set point is not reached after an 8 seconds delay. The green LED on the slide-out control switch or the slide-out telltale will flash error code #13. Refer to the troubleshooting tables at the end of this section.

Caution: Check before using any cleaning or adhesive product on seal, panel or glass to prevent alteration or damage.

12.4.1 Maintenance

The inflatable seal pressure must be set from 7 to 10 psi maximum with the pressure regulator. It is recommended to check the inflatable seal pressure once a month to ensure sealing efficiency and prevent any infiltration from outside. Check both seals for air leaks or cracks. Check the sealant between the inflatable seal and the exterior panels and glasses. Add sealant if necessary.

12.4.2 Seal assembly removal

Warning: Always wear the appropriate safety equipment. Maintain adequate ventilation at all time.

1. Retract the slide-out 2" inside the vehicle (section 12.4.1).
2. Unplug the tubing from the inflatable seal air inlet (figure 32 and figure 33). Keep the bushing.
3. Unstick and remove the wiper seal from the structure.
4. Scrape remaining tape from the structure. Remove old sealant that was between the wiper seal and the exterior panels and glasses.

12.4.3 Seal assembly installation

Note: This procedure is to install the inflatable seal assembly on the structure.

Warning: Always wear the appropriate safety equipment. Maintain adequate ventilation at all time.

Caution: Always apply product in the same direction to prevent dirt from being brought back.

Caution: Check before using any cleaning or adhesive product on seal, panel or glass to prevent alteration or damage.

Note: Refer to the slide-out parts manual for descriptions of primer, cleaner, sealant and adhesives used.

Note: Refer to the product specification for drying time.

1. Retract the slide-out 2" inside the vehicle (section 12.4.1).
2. Clean the part of the structure that will receive the inflatable seal and also the back of the exterior panel and glasses with a chix cloth and thinner. Use another cloth to dry the surfaces. Wait at least 2 minutes for drying.
3. Rub the structure and also the back of the exterior panel and glasses with a Scotch Brite (or equivalent product).
4. Clean another times the structure and the back of the exterior panel and glasses with a chix cloth and thinner. Use another cloth to dry the surfaces. Wait at least 2 minutes for drying.
5. Clean the structure and the back of the exterior panel and glasses with appropriate cleaner. Wait until the product is dry before proceeding.
6. Seal the gap between the structure and the exterior panels and the gap between the glasses and the fiberglass panels with appropriate sealant. Make sure not to put sealant on the structure surface where the inflatable seal will be placed. Wait until the product is dry before proceeding.
7. Install the inflatable seal on the structure, placing it as close as possible from the exterior side of the structure. Position the air inlet first. Then remove locally the inflatable seal adhesive tape protection, and press the upper corners on the structure and hold them in place for 90 to 120 seconds. Install the lower corners next, then the straight section. Press the straight inflatable seal sections on the structure for at least 15 seconds. Use a small roller to ensure a good adhesive contact on the structure.

8. Seal the gap between the inflatable seal and the exterior panels and the gap between the glasses and the fiberglass panels with appropriate sealant. Wait until the product is dry before proceeding. Remove excess sealant with appropriate cleaner.
9. Replace the bushing and plug the pneumatic tubing on the inflatable seal air inlet (figure 32 and figure 33).

12.4.4 Slide-out 2" inside retraction

1. Manually deflate the seal completely by turning clockwise the relieving shut-off valve (figure 54).
2. Using the manual override procedure, extend the slide-out a few inches so the exterior extrusion screws located on the top of the slide-out are accessible from outside (figure 6).
3. Using a knife cut the sealant between the extrusion and the roof (figure 6). Unscrew and remove the central exterior extrusion and the two end extrusion screws.

Caution: Do not use the automatic retraction system to move the slide-out 2" inside the vehicle, because the limits are not recognized over the closed position. The slide-out will not stop and damage may occur.

4. Turn the ignition to the off position. Using the manual override procedure, move the slide-out 2" inside the vehicle, so the seal is accessible from outside (figure 34).

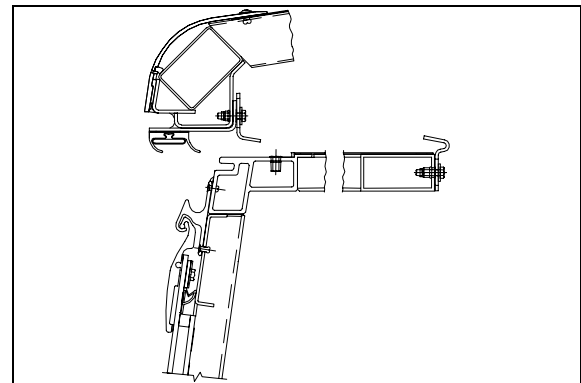


FIGURE 34 : SLIDE-OUT 2" INSIDE – UPPER PART

5. To reinstall the exterior extrusion, inverse the procedure sequence. Apply appropriate sealant on the exterior extrusion screws and between the extrusion, the roof and the edges to prevent water infiltration (figure 6).

13. SLIDE-OUT ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Warning: Never modify the slide-out electrical wiring without the Prevost Car approval. Any modifications may cause an unexpected slide-out action and could result in personal injuries.

The slide-out electrical system is mainly composed of three electronic controllers for each slide-out. The main controller named “logic controller” is used to manage a predefined logic sequences. The second controller is the “motor controller”, and is used to supply power to the electric motor. Both pairs of controllers are linked by a multiplexed communication network to share input signal conditions. The third controller is the “safety controller”, and is used to prevent unexpected actions from the logic controllers.

The slide-out electrical system is interconnected with the Prevost vehicle electrical system to supply electric power and safety signals to the slide-out control system.

Warning: Before working on the slide-out electrical system, turn the ignition key to the “OFF” position.

13.1 ELECTRICAL INTERCONNECTION WITH PREVOST VEHICLE

The slide-out power supply comes from the master switch control post (24 volts) in the main power compartment. The other interconnections are located on the pneumatic panel and the electrical panel in the front service compartment. All the interconnections are shown on the electrical diagrams of your vehicle.

The input signal coming from Prevost electrical system is:

- parking brake;

These input signals are required for a safe operation of the slide-out.

A signal is added on the driver console (figure 35) to indicate fault on the logic controller or to advise the driver that a structural pin is not locked.

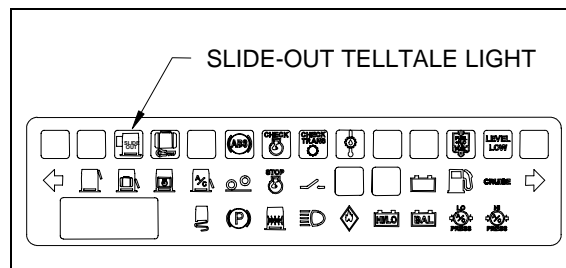


FIGURE 35 : DASHBOARD SLIDE-OUT TELLTALE LIGHT

Warning: If the dash slide-out telltale light starts blinking while on the road for 30 minutes, it means that one of the structural pins (4 bottom pins for the front slide or 2 bottom pins for the rear slide) is not properly inserted. Driving for a long period in this condition can damage the vehicle structure.

Caution: If the dash slide-out telltale light comes ON and stays ON (no blink) after 30 minutes on the road, it means that one of the 2 upper pins (not structural) are not properly inserted. Driving with the upper pins not inserted will not cause damage to the vehicle structure.

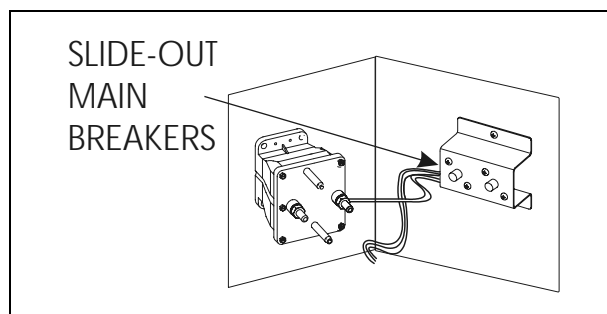


FIGURE 36 : BREAKERS IN MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT

13.2 SLIDE-OUT BREAKERS/FUSE

The main breakers (for both slide-out) are located in the main power compartment (figure 36). All other slide-out breakers are located on the slide-out electrical component panel located in the third baggage compartment on the driver side (figure 38 and figure 41). A relay is added to power the transmission inhibit system in the main power compartment.

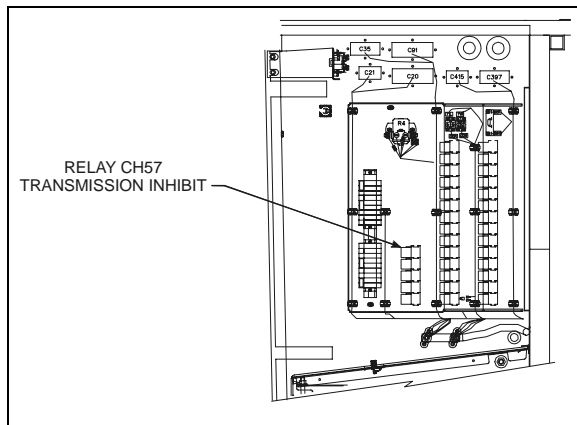


FIGURE 37 : INSIDE MAIN POWER COMPARTMENT

13.3 ELECTRONIC CONTROLLERS

Warning: Never modify the slide-out electrical wiring without the Prevost Car approval. Any modifications may cause an unexpected slide-out action and could result in personal injury.

The slide-out electronic control system consists of two electronic control modules for each slide-out. Each slide-out has a logic controller, a motor controller and a safety controller. They are located in the third baggage compartment on the driver side (see figure 38 and figure 39).

LOGIC CONTROLLER

The slide-out logic controller is used to analyze the input signal conditions and activate outputs like the pneumatic valves and a predefined sequence programmed in a flash memory microprocessor. An input signal comes from the inductive proximity sensor (pinion tooth sensor) to transmit the slide-out position and a second signal comes from a magnetic switch sensor to indicate the "in limit" end. The slide-out logic controller is also used to command the motor controller (drive) to transmit power to the slide-out electric motor.

A multiplexed communication network links both logic controllers and both motor controllers. The multiplexed communication allows moving away controllers and input signals sharing to reduce the overall hard wiring. Each controllers of the network must be identified by a specific number to communicate properly. The front slide-out logic controller is identified by ECU1 and the rear slide-out logic controller by ECU3. This identification set-up is done automatically each time a new logic controller is installed.

Both logic controllers are sharing common output (vacuum valve) and common input

(parking brake. The inputs are connected to the front and rear slide-out logic controller module. The inputs LED and outputs LED are visible on both front and rear slide-out logic controller modules.

The logic controller LED panel is clearly defined to make the troubleshooting easier (figure 55). The upper section indicates the state (locked or unlocked padlock) of each slide-out locking pin. Four buttons (A B C D) are used to set-up the logic controller module and to do diagnostic tests (button D). The inputs and outputs LED sections indicate the state condition of the inputs and outputs. Each LED of the controller panel refers to a connector number (J1 to J4) and is following by pin number of this connector (1 to 12).

The I/O LED section in the lower left corner is used to indicate :

- SLIDE IN: comes "ON" if slide-out is retracting.
- SLIDE OUT: comes "ON" if the slide-out is extending.
- FRONT S-O: "ON" if the logic controller is configured as the front slide-out.
- REAR S-O: "ON" if the logic controller is configured as the rear slide-out.

Each logic controller has a sticker to identify the following information for further tracking:

- Serial code number beginning by "CH" and followed by 4 numbers (XXXX);
- Hardware revision "RV:" and followed by a letter and a digit (L.X);
- Manufacturer software version beginning by "Vpr:" and followed by 3 digits (X.XX);
- Client software version beginning by "Vcl:" and followed by 3 digits (X.XX).

MOTOR CONTROLLER

The motor controller is a pulse width modulation (PWM) type controller. This electronic module controls the motor speed variation and the overload current protection.

The motor controllers for both slide-out are linked with the logic controllers by a multiplexed communication network. The front slide-out motor controller is identified by PR3474-1 and the rear slide-out by PR3474-2. Two part

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

numbers are used to identify the front and the rear slide-out motor controllers.

Each motor controller has a sticker to identify the following information for further tracking:

- Serial code number beginning by "BT" and followed by 4 (XXXX);
- Hardware revision "RV:" and followed by a letter and a digit (L.X);
- Software revision beginning by "V:" and followed by 3 digits (X.XX);
- Rear or front slide-out.

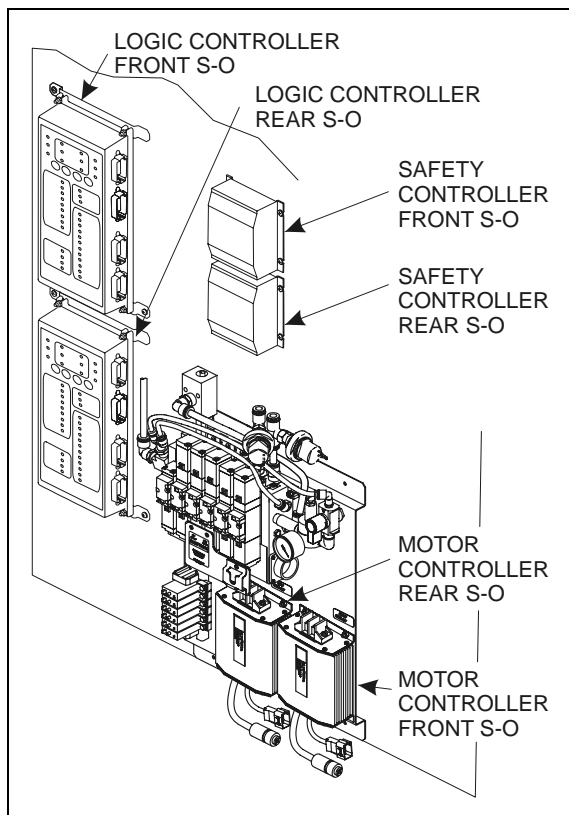


FIGURE 38 : SLIDE-OUT ELECTRICAL PANEL (SMALL A/C)

SAFETY CONTROLLER

The safety controller is used to prevent unexpected actions from the logic controllers. This controller uses relays to interlock the valves and the slide-out motor. Those relays are activated by either "Retracting" or "Extending" buttons. One contact relay cuts off the power to the motor. Two others relays cut off the power to the pin unlocking valve and to the tag axle valve.

With this protection, the slide-out cannot operate accidentally if either retracting or extending button is not pressed.

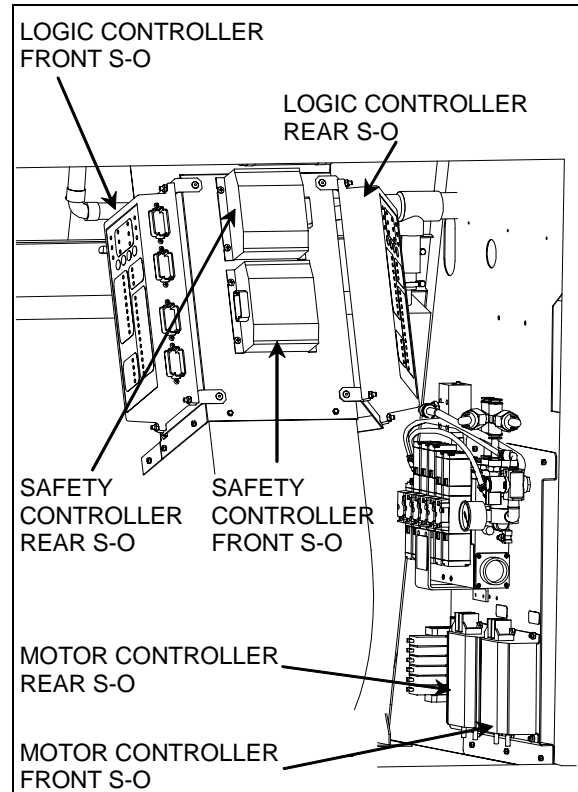


FIGURE 39 : SLIDE-OUT ELECTRICAL PANEL (FULL A/C)

13.3.1 Motor controller replacement

Caution: Be sure that all new motor controllers installed are identified with the part number #6000108 (front slide-out, Prevost #563318) or #6000109 (rear slide-out, Prevost #563319) to be compatible with the network logic controller module.

The procedure for replacement is the same for both motor controllers.

1. Turn the ignition key to the "OFF" position. For added security, trip the slide-out breakers (figure 41).
2. Take note of the electric cable localization and disconnect all of them from the motor controller.
3. Unscrew mounting nuts and remove the controller.

Caution: The power polarity must be respected to prevent permanent damage to the controller.

4. Reinstall the new motor controller by reversing the procedure.

5. Take note of the new serial number with revision (RV:) and version (V:) identifications to inform Prevost service department for controller tracking.

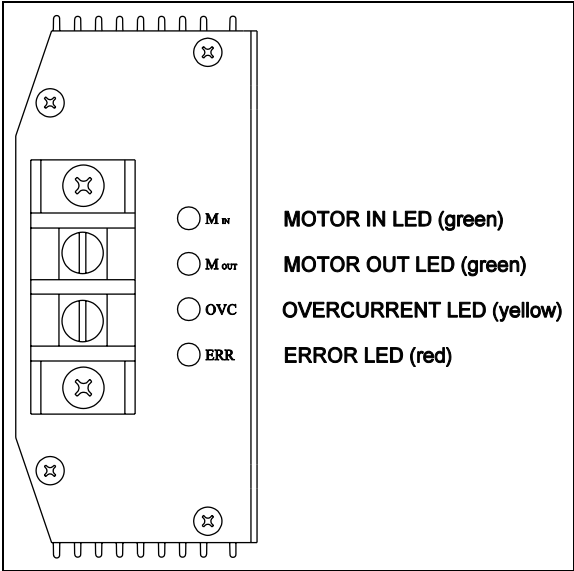


FIGURE 40 : MOTOR CONTROLLER LED PANEL

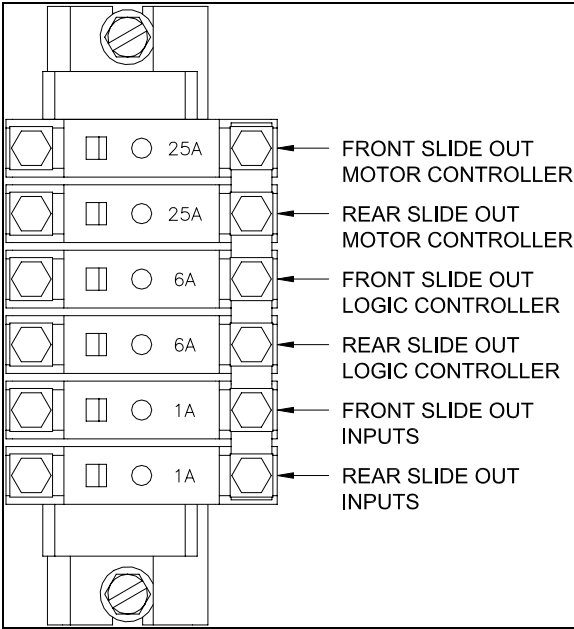


FIGURE 41 : SLIDE-OUT BREAKERS

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

13.3.2 Logic controller replacement

The procedure is the same for both slide-out logic controllers.

1. Turn the ignition key to the "OFF" position. For added security, trip the slide-out breakers (figure 41).
2. Disconnect all cable connectors located on the right side of the logic controller.
3. Loosen the two retaining nuts at the base of the controller. Unscrew the two nuts at the top of the controller.
4. Take note of the electric cable location. Remove the used logic controller and replace it by a new one.
5. To reinstall the new logic controller, reverse the procedure.
6. Take note of the new serial number with revision (RV:) and version (Vpr: and Vcl:) identifications to inform Prevost service department for controller tracking.
7. Reset all breakers to power on the slide-out controllers.

13.3.3 Safety controller replacement

The procedure is the same for both slide-out safety controllers.

1. Turn the ignition key to the "OFF" position. For added security, trip the slide-out breakers (figure 41).
2. Disconnect the connector located on the right side of the logic.
3. Loosen two metal screws on one side of the controller. Unscrew the other side screws. Remove the used safety controller and replace it by a new one.
4. To reinstall the new safety controller, reverse the procedure.
5. Take note of the new serial number with revision (RV:) to inform Prevost service department for controller tracking.
6. Turn the ignition key to the "ON" position. Reset all breakers to power on the slide-out controllers.

13.3.4 Downloading program

The program of the logic controller may be changed if necessary. The new program may be transferred to the logic controller by using a computer and a downloading kit made by the controller manufacturer.

Network link procedure:

1. Turn the ignition key to the "OFF" position.
2. Install the network inter-connection ("Y" wiring connection with 3 CPC connectors) between communications wiring of a motor controller. Those communication connectors (CH46 and CH47) are located below or next to the motor controllers.
3. Install the power wiring of the communication module (black box). Connect the red alligator terminal to the screw of the last breaker (1 amp) and ground the black alligator terminal to the chassis.
4. Link the communication module to the computer DB9 serial port.
5. Turn the ignition key to the "ON" position.
6. Retract and close both slide-out to prevent any errors.

Program downloading procedure:

1. Start "Visionplex" software. Execute "visionplex.exe" by opening the file beginning by "ich3174" and ending by ".VEH" extension.
2. Enter User PassWord "p" or the one that has been configured.
3. Select the program type to download. In the "Network menu", select "Client Code".
4. Select the logic controller module you wanted to change. The front slide-out module is ECU01 and the rear slide-out module is ECU03. In the "Module menu", select one of those ECU numbers. A window appears and displays the status of all the inputs and outputs of the controller.

Note: The inputs and outputs of the logic controller module have to be highlighted (square in line with the input/output). A highlighted color

means that the module and the Visionplex software are connected and the network communication is correct.

5. In the ECU module window, click the right mouse button. Then in the menu, select "Download Code". The "ProgFlashRom" window will appear.
6. In the right top corner of the "ProgFlashRom" window check the proper ECU number identified by "M: XX" (XX is the ECU number). Click on the ECU number with the right mouse button to modify.
7. Click the "#" button located on the top left corner. The "Configuration" window will appear. Click "Browse" button to select the program file to download in Flash-Rom (file ending by ".hex" extension). Click "Open" button and "Ok" to confirm the selection.
8. Click the "Erase" button. If the controller communication LED stop blinking, it means that the logic controller module have accepted the command. If the command is not working, try again.
9. Click the "Read" button to check if the flash has been erased. The green squares represent memory space. Wait until the end of the command.
10. Click the "WRITE" button. Wait until all the squares become blue (about 3 to 5 minutes). If you see one or many purple squares (bad memory), return to step 8. At the end of the writing step, the module is reset and the inputs and outputs squares become again highlighted.
11. Run tests using the slide-out control switch (automatic cycle) to be sure everything goes right.

13.4 SLIDE-OUT POSITION SENSORS

Two different types of sensors are used on each slide-out to define end limit and to keep track of the slide-out position. The "limit in" sensor detects two permanent magnets fixed on the slide-out underbody. The tooth sensor counts the pinion gear teeth to indicate the slide-out position to the slide-out logic controller (figure 42 and figure 43).

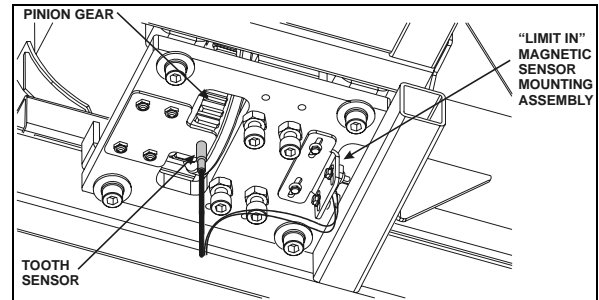


FIGURE 42 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT SENSORS

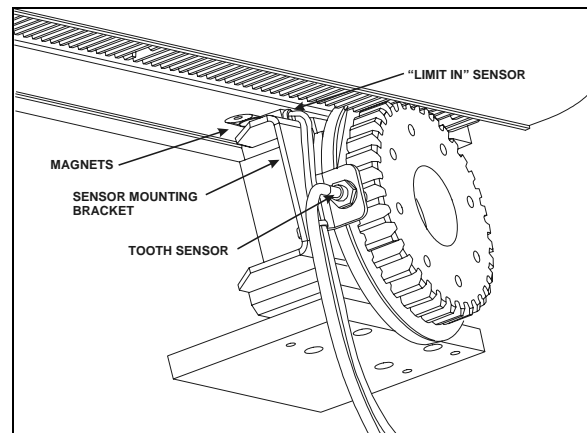


FIGURE 43 : REAR SLIDE-OUT SENSORS

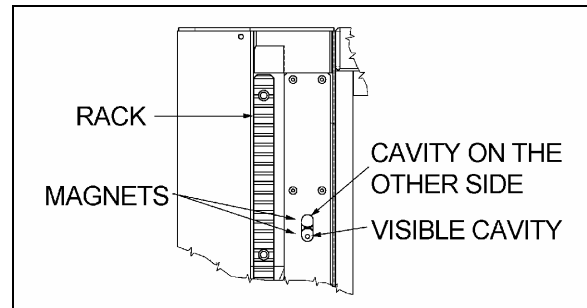


FIGURE 44 : MAGNETS ON SLIDE-OUT UNDERBODY

13.4.1 Maintenance and adjustment

The rear slide-out sensors are accessible from the inside of the vehicle while the front slide-out sensors can be reached from the 4th baggage compartment door. To replace the front slide-out "limit in" sensor, unscrew the mounting bracket from the pillow block supporting plate. The front slide-out tooth sensor can be unscrewed directly from its mounting bracket. Both rear slide-out sensors are mounted to the same bracket. To replace the sensors, remove the mounting bracket first. The tooth sensor can be unscrewed from the mounting bracket. Unsnap the "limit in" sensor to remove it.

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

The tooth sensor stable sensing distance is less than 0.118" (3mm). If the red LED is lit, the distance is not correctly adjusted and the sensor cannot detect the pinion teeth. With a pinion tooth directly in front of the sensor, screw the sensor into the threaded support until the LED turns green and remains stable. If the "limit in" sensor needs adjustment, just loosen the mounting bracket screws and slide the bracket.

14. SLIDE-OUT EXTERIOR FINISHING PANELS

Note: The removal and installation procedures are all based on standard service methods described in the body section of the Prevost maintenance manual. Refer to Prevost manual for procedures, tools, cleaner, adhesives and other product needed.

14.1 SIDE PANEL REMOVAL

Use the same procedure as described in the body section of Prevost service manual for MTH side panel removal, and:

- Keep the slide-out retracted and all pins locked;
- Make sure not to damage the finishing molding supports to be able to re-use them;
- Remove the old adhesive on the finishing molding supports and clean them before re-using;
- Check where adhesive, sealant and double face adhesive tape are on the structure and the panel back side, in order to be able to stick the new panel in the same way;
- Check the tape width and use same width tape when installing new panels.

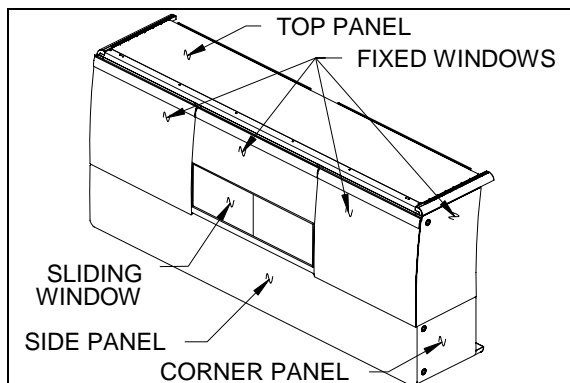


FIGURE 45 : SLIDE-OUT PANELS AND WINDOWS

14.2 SIDE PANEL INSTALLATION

For surface cleaning, and preparation, panel installation and products needed, use the same procedure as the MTH side panel installation described in Prevost service manual, and:

- Keep the slide-out retracted and all pins locked for panel alignment;
- Make sure to apply sealant between the side panels and the corner panels, and also between side panels and bottom and top panels. Apply sealant both inside and outside the slide-out panels.

14.3 CORNER PANELS REMOVAL

Note: The corner panels are made of aluminum, or of stainless steel in option.

Caution: Be careful not to damage the adjacent surfaces.

1. Remove the slide-out as described in section 1.3 and 1.5.
2. Remove all the pin receptacles as described in section 2.5.2.
3. Remove the fixed windows from the slide-out as described in section 15.1.
4. Remove panel upper rivets (figure 46) and lower rivets (figure 47) with a 1/8" drill bit, a hammer and a punch.
5. Insert a flat screwdriver between the panel and the slide-out structure, in the top left and right corners of the panel, and unstick the panel from the structure.
6. Use C-clamp to peel the panel from the slide-out structure.

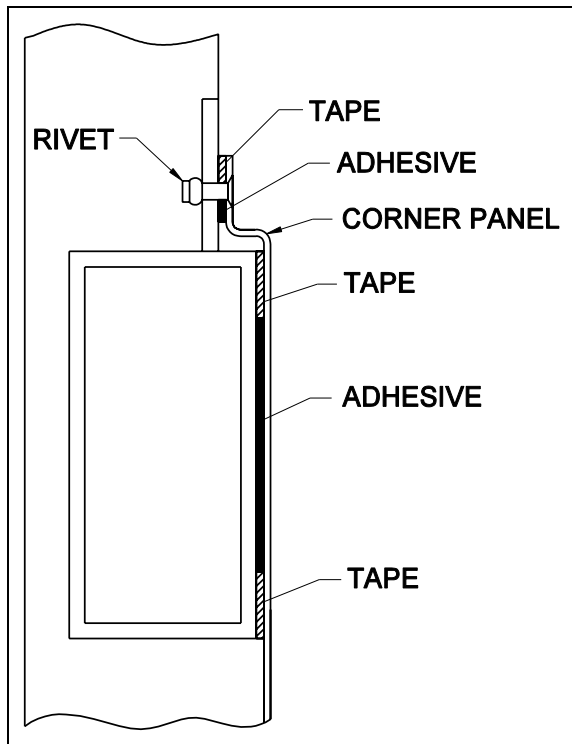


FIGURE 46 : CORNER PANEL INSTALLATION – UPPER PART

7. Check where adhesive, sealant and double face adhesive tape are on the structure and the panel back side, in order to be able to stick the new panel in the same way.
8. Check the tape width and use same width tape when installing new panels.

Caution: Make sure the heat gun nozzle tip is at least 4" from surface.

9. Use a heat gun and putty knife to remove the dried off adhesive and tape residue from the structure.

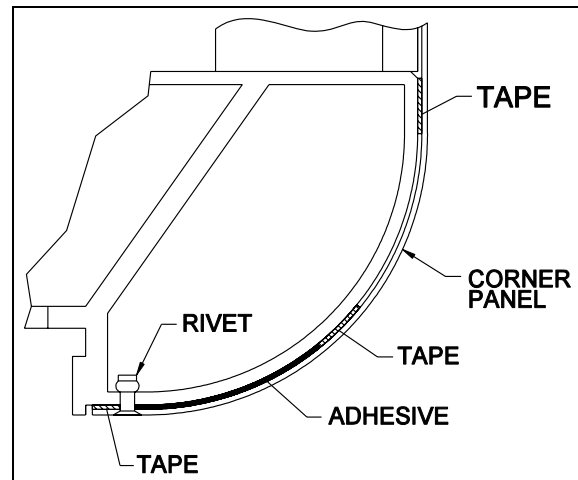


FIGURE 47 : CORNER PANEL INSTALLATION – LOWER PART

Warning: Because of the adhesive toxicity, never use a buffer or other sanding method to remove it.

14.4 CORNER PANELS INSTALLATION

Note: The corner panels are made of aluminum, or of stainless steel in option. Use rivet of same material as the panels.

For surface cleaning and preparation, panel installation, and products needed, refer to the MTH side panel installation procedure described in Prevost service manual, and:

- Protect adjacent surfaces with appropriate material;
- Make sure to apply sealant between the pin receptacles and the corner panels (figure 16 and figure 17);
- Make sure to apply adhesive around the pin receptacle
- Cut in the panel before installing the panel on the slide-out (figure 16 and figure 17);
- Refer to figure 46 and figure 47 for adhesive, tape and rivet position.

14.5 TOP AND BOTTOM PANELS REMOVAL

Note: The top and bottom panels are made of aluminum sheets.

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

1. Remove the slide-out as described in section 1.3 and 1.5.
2. Remove panel rivets with a 1/8" drill bit, a hammer and a punch (figure 48).
3. Insert a flat screwdriver between the panel and the slide-out structure, and unstick the panel from the structure.
4. Use C-clamp to peel the panel from the slide-out structure.
5. Check where adhesive, sealant and double face adhesive tape are on the structure and the panel back side, in order to be able to stick the new panel in the same way.
6. Check the tape width and use same width tape when installing new panels.
7. Use a heat gun and putty knife to remove the dried off adhesive and tape residue from the structure.

Warning: Because of the adhesive toxicity, never use a buffer or other sanding method to remove it.

14.6 TOP AND BOTTOM PANELS INSTALLATION

Note: The top and bottom panels are made of aluminum sheets and need aluminum rivet.

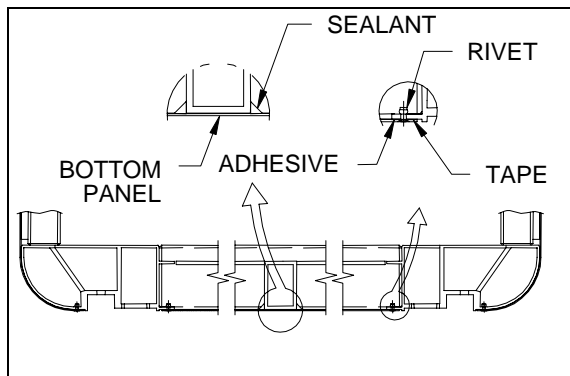


FIGURE 48 : TOP AND BOTTOM PANEL INSTALLATION

For surface cleaning and preparation, panel installation, and products needed, refer to the MTH side panel installation procedure described in Prevost service manual, and:

- Protect adjacent surfaces with appropriate material.

- See figure 48 and figure 49 for both bottom and top panel adhesive, sealant and tape position.

15. SLIDE-OUT FIXED, AWNING AND SLIDING WINDOWS

Note: The removal and installation procedures are based on standard service methods described in the body section of the Prevost maintenance manual. Refer to these procedures for tools and adhesives specifications.

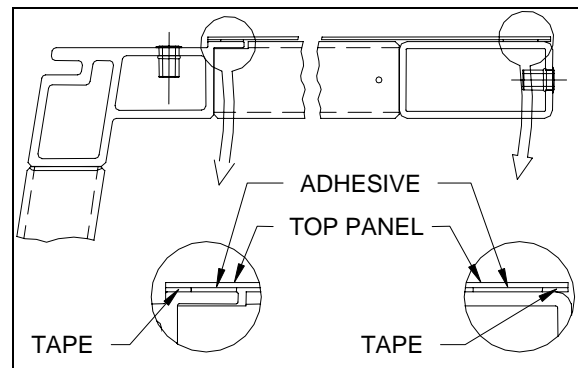


FIGURE 49 : TOP PANEL INSTALLATION

Warning: Always wear safety equipment when working with glass and chemical adhesives.

15.1 WINDOWS REMOVAL

1. Remove the slide-out as described in section 1.3 and 1.5.
2. If needed, remove the exterior extrusion as described in section 12.4.1 step 3.

Caution: Be careful not to damage the adjacent surfaces.

3. With a knife or a wire, cut the sealant and the adhesive between the windows and the structure. Make sure not to damage the rubber seal between the windows.
4. With a helper, remove the window from the slide-out.

For awning and sliding windows: unscrew the window frame from the structure, and cut the sealant. Remove the window.

15.2 WINDOWS INSTALLATION

Refer to procedures described in Prevost maintenance manual. Refer to figure 50 for tape, sealant and adhesive position.

1. Clean and prepare the windows and the slide-out structure surfaces with appropriate cleaner, abrasives and primers.
2. Apply appropriate double face self adhesive tape on the slide-out structure (figure 50).
3. Apply appropriate adhesive on the slide-out structure surfaces.

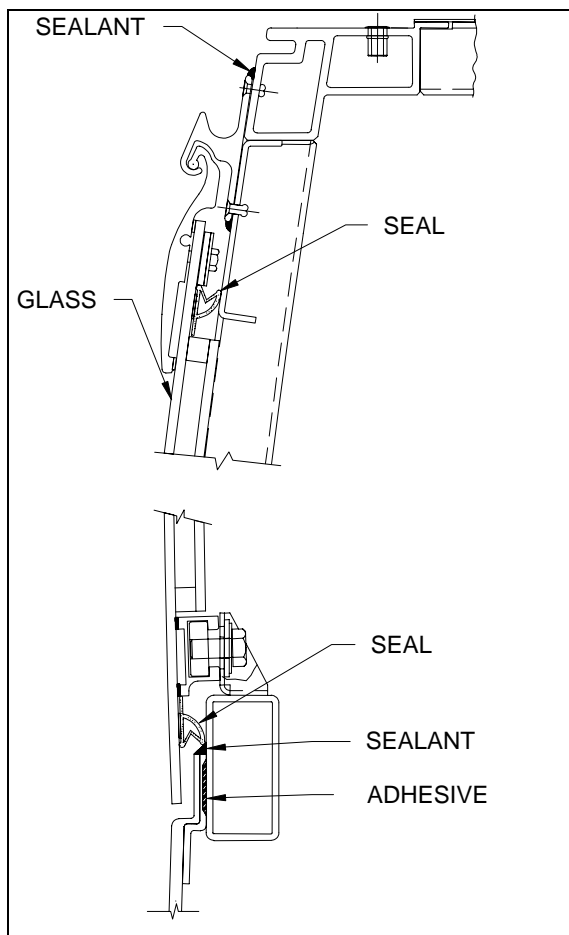


FIGURE 50 : WINDOWS ABOVE SIDE PANELS

4. Install the windows on the slide-out. Press the jigs on the windows and wait for the adhesive to dry.

For awning and sliding windows: install the window in its frame and screw it. Wait for the adhesive to dry.

5. From inside the slide-out, apply appropriate sealant between the windows and the structure.
6. Install the exterior extrusion as described in section 12.4.1 step 5.
7. Install the finishing molding supports and the molding.

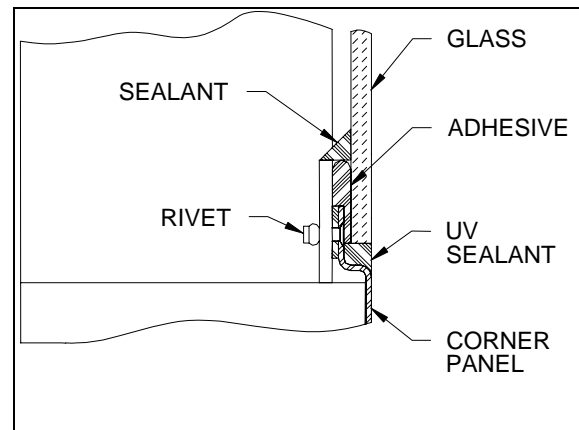


FIGURE 51 : WINDOW LOCATED OVER THE CORNER PANEL

16. WELDING PRECAUTION

Disconnect logic controller wiring connectors, the ground wire (black), and trip all breakers (figure 41).

Disconnect motor controller ground wire (black).

Refer to the welding precaution section in the maintenance manual.

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

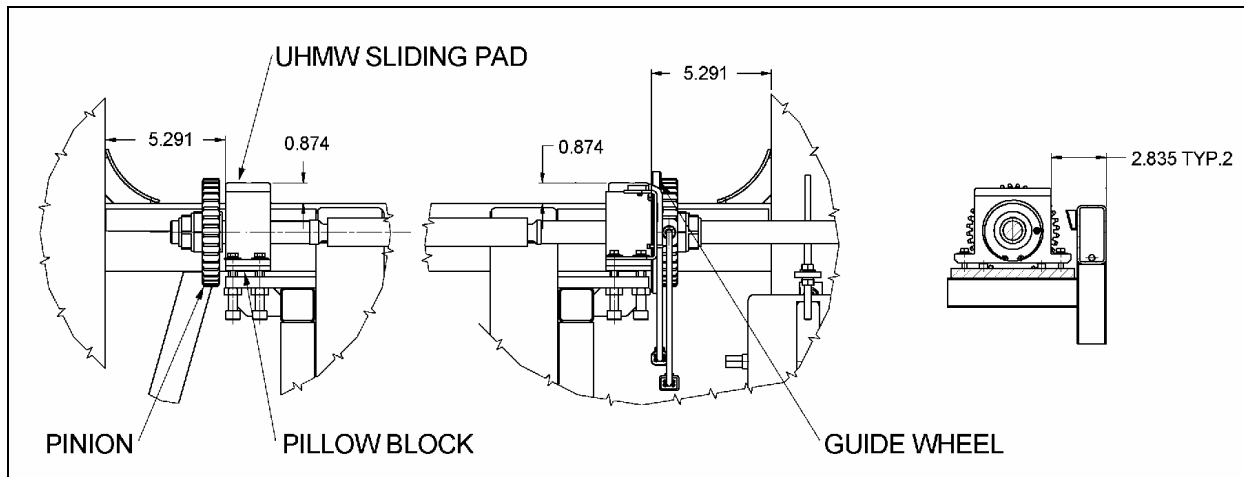


FIGURE 52 : PINION & PILLOW BLOCK ADJUSTMENT, REAR SLIDE-OUT (DIMENSIONS IN INCHES)

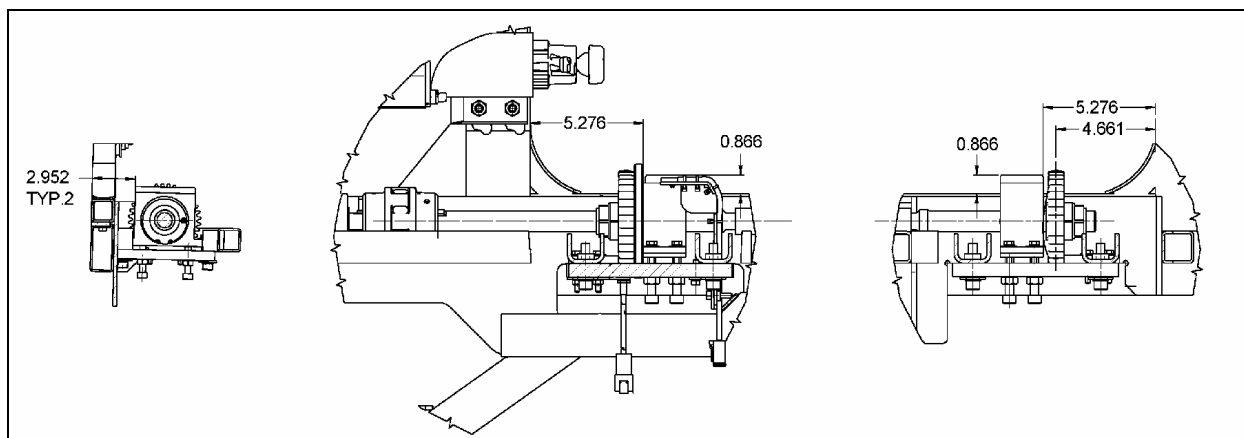


FIGURE 53 : PINION & PILLOW BLOCK ADJUSTMENT, FRONT SLIDE-OUT (DIMENSIONS IN INCHES)

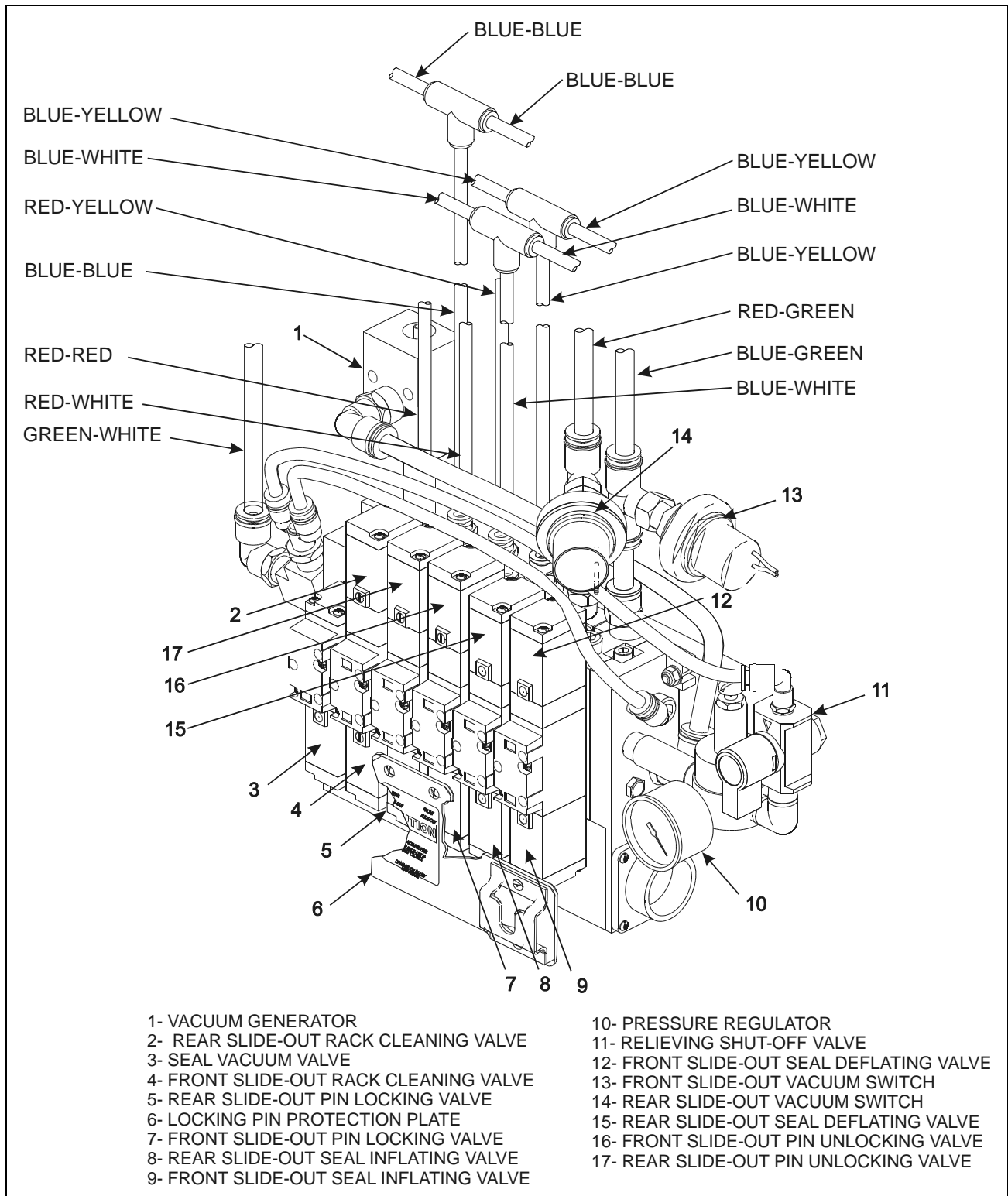


FIGURE 54 : PNEUMATIC COMPONENT PANEL

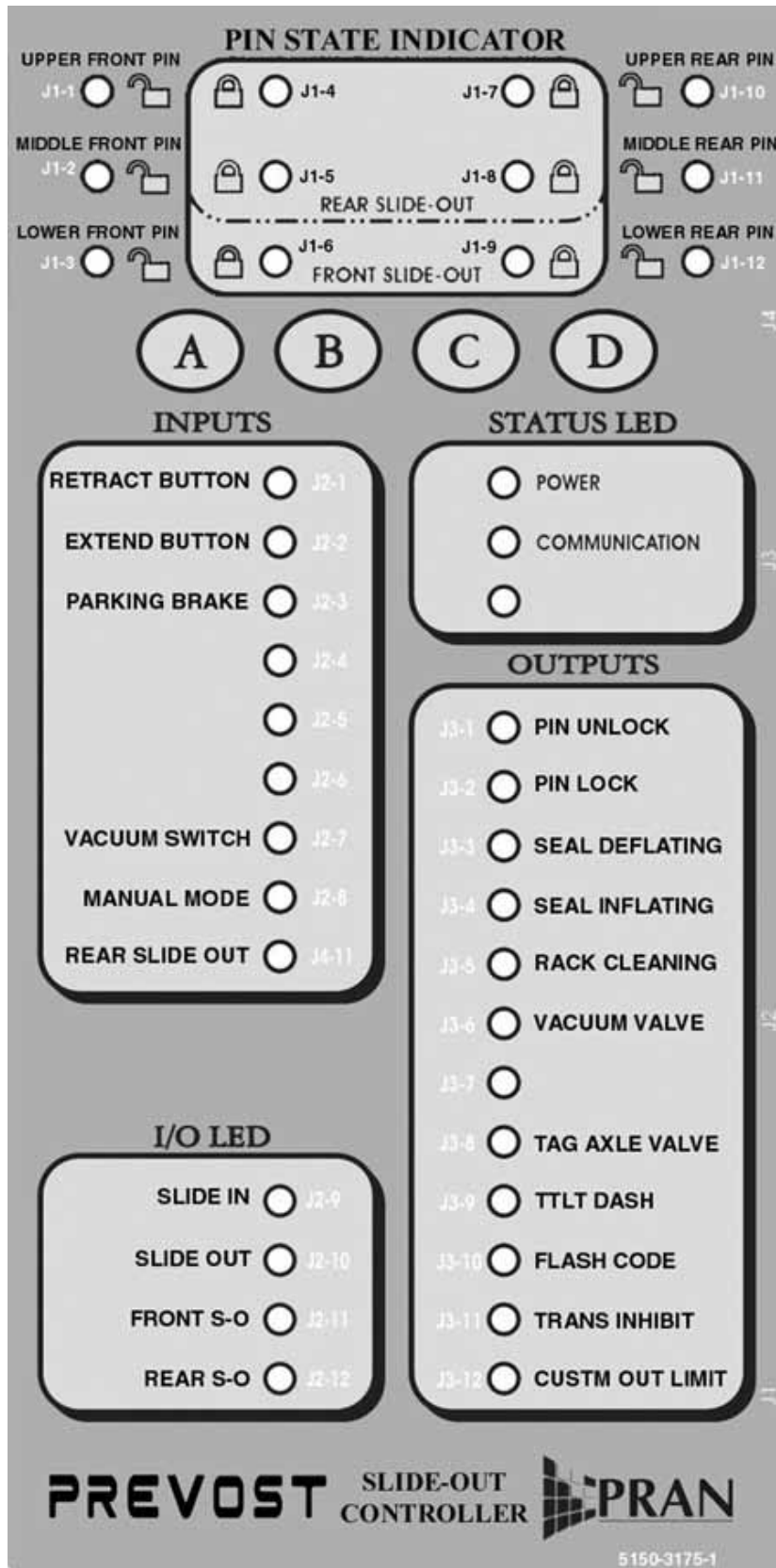


FIGURE 55 : SLIDE-OUT LOGIC CONTROLLER LED PANEL

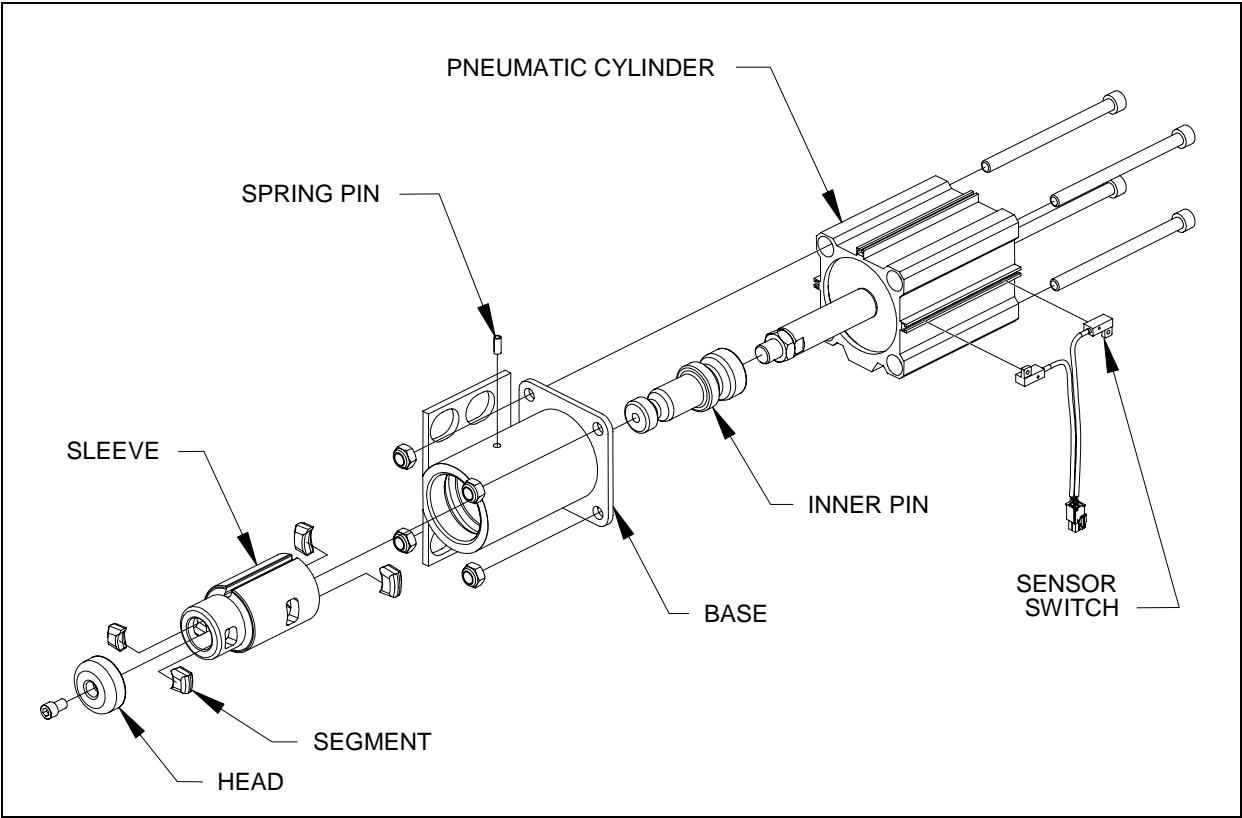


FIGURE 56 : LOCKING PIN ASSEMBLY

17. TROUBLESHOOTING

17.1 SLIDE-OUT CONTROL SWITCH AND TELLTALE LIGHT ON VEHICLE DASHBOARD

The flash codes are either displayed on the dashboard (telltale panel), on the handheld control or on the logic controller with the output LED identified "Flash Code".

In a case where both the front and rear slide-out are in error and flashing error codes on their respective remotes, the dash telltale will flash the front slide-out error code.

A flash code consists of two consecutive series of blinks separated by a one-and-one-half second pause. The first series of blinks identifies the first digit of the error number and the second series of blinks identifies the second digit of the error number. The flash code repeats itself after a pause of 4 seconds. All flash codes except 12, 31, 32 and 33 are repeating themselves for ever until cleared with the Ignition turned OFF and ON. The codes 12, 31, 32 and 33 will repeat three times and then stopped

Examples of codes:

Code #12

flashes 1 time, pause of 1,5 seconds, then flashes 2 times, pause of 4 seconds.

Code #23

flashes 2 times, pause of 1,5 seconds, then flashes 3 times, pause of 4 seconds.

Warning: If the dash slide-out telltale light starts blinking while on the road for 30 minutes, it means that one of the structural pins (4 bottom pins for the front slide or 2 bottom pins for the rear slide) is not properly inserted. Driving for a long period in this condition can damage the vehicle structure.

Caution: If the dash slide-out telltale light comes ON and stays ON (no blink) after 30 minutes on the road, it means that one of the 2 upper pins (not structural) are not properly inserted. Driving with the upper pins not inserted will not cause damage to the vehicle structure.

Clearing the flash code blink

Turning the ignition OFF and ON again, will stop the flash code blinking.

Bringing back the last flash code

Press and hold the handheld control rocker switch to the IN or OUT position for 2 seconds to see again an active flash code error that was cleared by turning the Ignition OFF and ON.

Code description

SIGNAL	PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTIVE ACTION
Code #12	The slide-out does not extend or retract	The parking brake is not seen as being active by the controller	Make sure the parking brake is applied Confirm parking brake application with the parking brake light on the telltale panel Check wiring
Code #13	The seal deflates but the slide-out does not extend or retract	Problem with the vacuum switch sensor or the seal deflating valve	Visually inspect the seal to confirm that it is deflated If seal deflates, check/replace the vacuum switch If seal does not deflate, check the seal deflating valve

SIGNAL	PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTIVE ACTION
Code #14	The seal deflates but the slide-out does not extend	The controller does not see all pins unlocked	Safety module not present or disconnected One of the unlock sensor wrongly positioned or broken Pin unlock valve defective
Code #21	When extending, the slide-out stops after having extended by 1 inch	The limit IN sensor is seen as active by the controller	Check the limit IN sensor
Code #22	When retracting, the slide-out went too far	The limit IN sensor is always seen as inactive by the controller	Check the limit IN sensor
Code #23	When extending, the slide-out stops after having extended by 8 inches	The controller does not see the tooth sensor	Check the tooth sensor
Code #24	The slide-out does not move out	Problem with the slide-out motor or motor drive controller module	Ensure the motor breaker is not tripped Check/replace the motor drive
Code #25	When retracting, the slide-out does not move at all or moves by 8 inches and stops	Tooth sensor not seen by the controller or a problem with the motor drive module or the motor itself	Check that the motor breaker is not tripped Check/replace the tooth sensor Check/replace the motor drive module
Code #26	The slide-out retracts but refuses to pin	The slide-out position has been moved manually, mixing-up the tooth sensor	Use the manual procedure to re-pin, it will reset the counter. If this problem comes back, check the tooth sensor adjustment
Code #31	One of the unlock sensor is defective and needs repair. No immediate impact on the slide-out operation	One of the unlock sensor is always seen active even when the pins are locked	Check the unlock sensors
Code #32	One of the lock sensor is defective and needs repair. No immediate impact on the slide-out operation	One of the lock sensor is always seen as active	Check the lock sensors
Code #33	The slide-out stopped in overcurrent	There is abnormal friction in the slide-out movement or the slide-out mechanical stopper before reaching full extension	Check the mechanical slides

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

SIGNAL	PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTIVE ACTION
Code #41	The slide-out is not working properly	The front and the rear logic controllers have the same ECU number	Check the wiring of the rear module, to make sure the input J4-11 is ON.
Code #42	The slide-out does not extend or retract	The battery voltage is too low	Start the engine and set the RPM to fast idle Connect to a battery charger capable to supply 40 Amps

17.2 MOTOR CONTROLLER

The motor controller has 4 LED to show the controller activity and indicate errors (FIGURE 40). The error LED flashes once every 3 seconds when the controller is in operation. When retracting the slide-out, the "Motor In" LED comes on, and when extending the slide-out, the "Motor Out" LED comes on. When the motor is in motion activity, the error LED is disabled. In that state, if a communication error is detected, the motor is stopped 2 seconds after the detection.

SIGNAL	PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTIVE ACTION
No flash on the ERR LED	A. No problem (the motor is in motion) B. Module error	A. - B. The module is not plugged	A. - B. Plug the module
Normal Error LED flashing (1 time every 2 seconds)	No problem		
"Error" LED fast flashing: two flashes every second	Communication error	A. Bad electrical connection with the logic controller; B. Logic controller turned off or defective;	A. Check the communication cable between the two controllers. B. Check the logic controller condition.
Error LED: one long flash every three seconds 1.5 sec ON .2 sec OFF	Electric motor or controller error	A. Opened connection to motor or power supply cable damaged B. Defective power transistor. C. Motor defective; D. Safety controller defective or bad electrical connections.	A. Check the power supply cable between the controller and the motor. B. Change the motor controller. C. Check the motor condition and replace if necessary (see section). D. Check the safety controller and the electrical connections conditions. Change the safety controller if necessary
"Overcurrent" LED comes on and stays on only one second.	Software protection activated	Software overcurrent detected (threshold at 34 A): A. Excessive weight; B. Obstruction to the slide-out movement; C. Mechanical component failure; D. Motor controller defective;	A. Reduce the weight in the slide-out. B. Remove any obstacle that may obstruct slide-out movement. C. Check the mechanical component condition. D. Change the motor controller (refer to section 13.3.1).
"Overcurrent" LED and "Error" LED come on and stays on only one second.	Hardware protection activated	Hardware overcurrent detected (threshold at 40 A): A. Excessive weight; B. Obstruction to the slide-out movement; C. Mechanical component failure;	A. Reduce the weight in the slide-out. B. Remove any obstacle that may obstruct slide-out movement. C. Check the slide-out driving component condition.

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

SIGNAL	PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTIVE ACTION
		D. Motor controller defective; Overheat detected (threshold at 120°C): E. Controller internal temperature over 120°C (248°F).	D. Change the motor controller (refer to section 13.3.1). E. Check the controller compartment for abnormal temperature. Reset the power on the controllers.

17.3 SLIDE-OUT OPERATION

PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTIVE ACTION
Slide-out does not retract or extend when depressing the control switch.	A. Driving mechanism failure; B. Electrical problem;	A. Check driving mechanical components. B. Refer to section 17.1 to 17.2.
Slide-out is not straight when retracting or extending .	A. Slide-out inner stopper loosened or not correctly aligned; B. Slide-out exterior extrusion interference with structure; C. Pinion bad synchronization (pinion keyless bushing loosened); D. Pinion keyless bushing slipping; E. Driving mechanism failure;	A. Check stopper adjustment and condition (refer to section 1.1.2). B. Check exterior extrusion and roof reinforcing rod adjustment (refer to section 1.2 and section 3). C. Tighten or re-synchronize the pinion (refer to section 5.6). D. Change faulty keyless bushing (refer to section 5). E. Check driving mechanical components.
Slide-out is not straight once retracted or extended .	A. Pinion bad synchronization or absence of synchronization after significant load variation;	A. Re-synchronize the pinion (refer to section 5.6).
Slide-out vibrating when extending or retracting.	A. Upper racks worn or damaged; B. Too many shims on upper shaft pillow block; C. UHMW sliding pad worn or damaged; D. Objects in upper racks;	A. Replace the upper racks (refer to section 4.2). B. Remove shim and readjust the pillow block (refer to section 5.2). C. Replace the UHMW sliding pad (refer to section 10.2). D. Clean the upper racks and check the rack cleaning air nozzle orientation and condition.
Transmission DRIVE range or REVERSE cannot be selected.	A. No locking pin locked on either slide-out; B. No air pressure in the cylinder pins of both slide-out; C. No air pressure in the slide-out pneumatic system;	A. Check the information given by the logic controller LED section "Pin state indicator" (refer to figure 55). B. Check pin valve operation on both slide-out () C. Check the slide-out air pressure inlet valve condition and the accessory air tank pressure.
Watertightness problem	A. Inflatable seal and/or wiper seal damaged or unstuck; B. Insufficient air pressure in the seal; C. No air pressure in the slide-out pneumatic system; D. Sealant missing;	A. Check both seals condition. B. Check the pressure regulator, the relieving shut-off valve and the seal valve condition. C. Check the slide-out air pressure inlet valve condition and the accessory air tank pressure. D. Check the racks, the exterior extrusion,

Section 26: VIP SLIDE-OUT

PROBLEM	CAUSE	CORRECTIVE ACTION
	<p>E. Windows or exterior panel damaged;</p> <p>F.</p>	<p>the windows and the exterior panels sealant condition. Check the racks and the exterior extrusion screws.</p> <p>E. Check the windows and exterior panels condition.</p>
Inflatable seal damaged or removed, or wiper seal unstuck from the structure.	<p>A. Slide-out retracted or extended with the manual procedure without having deflated the inflatable seal;</p> <p>B. Vacuum switch malfunction or bad set-up;</p> <p>C. Excessive load on roof or bad roof reinforcing rod adjustment;</p> <p>D. Guide wheel excessive wear;</p> <p>E. Plastic stopper bad adjustment;</p> <p>F. Seal valve malfunction;</p> <p>G. Excessive seal air pressure (over 10 psi);</p> <p>H. Excessive load in the slide-out;</p> <p>I. Slide-out not centered in the structure opening;</p> <p>J. Object or ice on the slide-out exterior panels;</p>	<p>A. Always deflate the seal when manually retracting or extending the slide-out.</p> <p>B. Check the vacuum switch condition for replacement or adjustment (refer to section 12.3).</p> <p>C. Readjust the roof reinforcing rod (refer to section 3).</p> <p>D. Replace the guide wheel (refer to section 5.7).</p> <p>E. Readjust the plastic stopper (refer to section 5.8).</p> <p>F. Check the seal valve condition.</p> <p>G. Check the air pressure regulator adjustment (refer to section 5.8).</p> <p>H. Respect the slide-out load capacity.</p> <p>I. Reinstall and readjust the slide-out in the vehicle.</p> <p>J. Remove ice and objects before retracting the slide-out.</p> <p>For all situations, check the seal condition. Refer to the seal section annexed for replacement.</p>

18. SPECIFICATIONS

18.1 SLIDE-OUT MAXIMUM LOAD

Front slide-out:

Maximum load (retracted or extended).....2000 lb

Maximum load when moving.....1200 lb*

Rear slide-out:

Maximum load (retracted or extended)2000 lb

Maximum load when moving.....1200 lb*

* When the load is distributed in the slide-out to prevent a deflection of the inside lower member over 1/4" that could damage the seal.

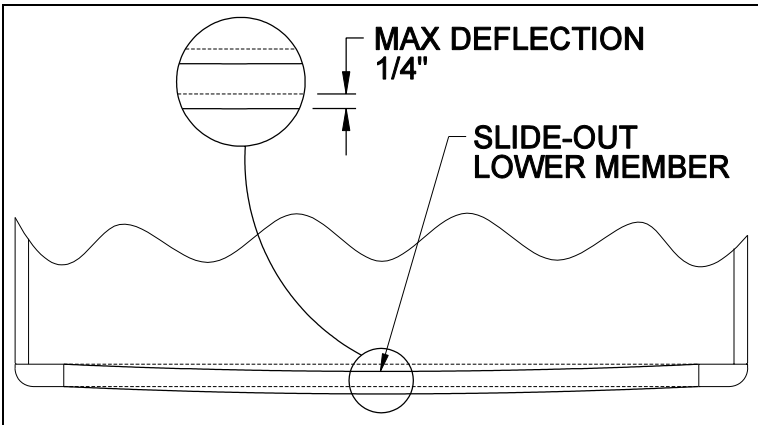


FIGURE 57 : FRONT SLIDE-OUT DEFLECTION

18.2 TRANTORQUE KEYLESS BUSHING

Make.....Fenner Drives

Type.....Trantorque GT

Shaft size.....1"

Installation torque max.....125 lb-ft

**Style C
Installation Nut**

WRENCHES FOR INSTALLATION

Fenner Drives offers a complete line of high-quality crowfoot wrenches for installation and to provide counter-torque. These wrenches are much narrower than earlier designs and are specifically for use with Trantorque GT units. It is recommended that both wrenches be used when installing a Trantorque GT unit.

1/2" SQUARE DRIVE

Shaft Size	Part Number	Wrench Style	Dimensions (inches)			
			A	h	w	t
13/16 to 1	6202990024	C	1-1/2	3.44	2.75	0.75

FIGURE 58 : WRENCHES FOR KEYLESS BUSHING INSTALLATION

INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

A Trantorque GT Keyless Bushing offers flexible and easy installation while providing exceptional holding power. To ensure a Trantorque GT unit performs as specified, it must be installed properly.

Warning: Use no lubricants in this installation.

1. Shaft and component bore must be within $\pm 0.003"$ ($\pm 0.08\text{mm}$) [$\pm 0.0015"$ ($\pm 0.04\text{mm}$) Mini Series] of stated bore diameter and must have a surface finish of 32-125 Ra (roughness average). If the surface finish is outside these specified values, consult Fenner Drives.

2. Both shaft and component bore must be completely free of paint, grease, oil, and dirt. If necessary, clean the surfaces with a non-petroleum based solvent, such as isopropyl alcohol.

Warning: Do not lubricate the Trantorque GT bushing or shaft. The use of any lubricant on the contact surfaces could result in bushing failure and will void all warranties.

3. Insert the Trantorque GT unit into the component to be mounted, making sure the mating hub is flush against the shoulder at the hex flats.

4. Position the assembly at the desired location on the shaft and hand-tighten the nut (clockwise) until the assembly becomes snug on the shaft.

Warning: Do not hammer or use any type of impact to force the Trantorque GT assembly along the shaft.

Warning: The shaft must fully engage the shaft gripping area (Figure 1) of the Trantorque GT unit. Figure 2 illustrates minimum shaft engagement.

5. Using a torque wrench, tighten the nut to the proper installation torque. See table for torque value. (Note: Fenner Drives has available crowfoot wrenches for square drives in sizes from 1/2" to 3-1/2".) The hex flats on the outer ring are provided for counter-torque, eliminating the need to hold the component or shaft while applying installation torque.

Note: At full installation torque, the assembly will have moved approximately $\pm 0.075"$ ($\pm 1.9\text{mm}$) [$\pm 0.045"$ ($\pm 1.1\text{mm}$) Mini Series] axially along the shaft away from the nut. If axial position is critical it may be necessary to loosen the nut and reposition the assembly.

Warning: Over-tightening the nut could damage the Trantorque GT unit and/or the mounted component.

Do not use an impact wrench in the installation.

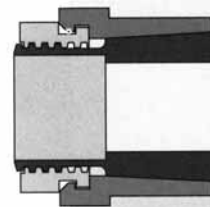


Figure 1

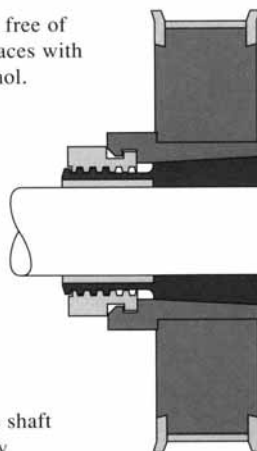


Figure 2

Installation Torque on Nut

	Inch Pound System		Metric System	
	Shaft Size	In. Lbs.	Shaft size	N-m
MINI SERIES	3/16-1/4	125	5-6mm	14.1
	5/16-3/8	150	7-9mm	17.0
	7/16-1/2	175	10-12mm	19.8
	9/16-5/8	200	14-16mm	22.6
	3/4	700	17mm	80.0
STANDARD SERIES	5/8-3/4	1200	15-19mm	136
	1-1/16-1	1500	20-25mm	170
	1-1/16-1-1/4	2000	28-32mm	225
	1-5/16-1-1/2	2300	34-38mm	260
	1-9/16-1-3/4	2800	40-42mm	316
LARGE SERIES	1-13/16-2	4900	45-50mm	554
	2-1/16-2-1/4	5300	55mm	600
	2-5/16-2-1/2	5600	60mm	635
	2-9/16-2-3/4	6000	65-70mm	680
	2-13/16-3	6600	75mm	750

FIGURE 59 : KEYLESS BUSHING INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION

18.3 SPEED REDUCTION GEARBOX

Make.....David Brown
 Type.....Series C Radicon helical worm gear
 Unit size.....C0320
 Ratio.....140 : 1

Lubrication

Oil grade.....6G (polyglycol
 synthetic)
 Temperature range.....14°F to 86°F
 Quantity.....0.6 Litres
 Oil change.....Lubricated for life

18.4 POSITION SENSORS

LIMIT IN SENSOR

MakeHoneywell
 TypeSeries SR13D-A1 Hall effect
 Supply voltage.....3.8 to 30
 VDC
 Current consumption.....13
 mA
 Operating temperature.....-40°C to
 150°C

TOOTH SENSOR

MakeOmron
 TypeShort barrel inductive prox
 Part number.....E2E-X2D1
 Seeing
 distance.....2mm
 Size.....
 M8
 Supply voltage.....10 to 30
 VDC
 Operating temperature.....-25°C to 70°C

18.5 RIGHT ANGLE DRIVE

Lower right angle drive

Make.....Curtis Machine
 Type.....Series 200M, spiral bevel gear
 Ratio for lower right angle drive.....1.5 : 1
 Ratio for upper right angle drive.....1 : 1

Lubrication

Oil grade.....AGMA 5EP
 Quantity.....Refilling cap level
 Oil change.....Every three years
 (If greaseLubricated for life)

18.6 ELECTRIC MOTOR

Make.....Leeson
 TypePermanent magnet 24 volts DC
 Power1/3 HP
 RPM.....1800
 Frame.....Nema S56C

18.7 LOGIC CONTROLLER

The heart of this unit is constituted of a micro-controller with a permanent memory in which the tasks of the function are implanted.

TECHNICAL AND PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

- Power supply range: 9 Vdc up to 32 Vdc;
- 21 inputs configurable high side, low side or analog;
- 12 high side outputs rated to 2A max.;
- 4 input/output configurable high side, low side or analog input or high side output by serial network;
- PWM of adjustable frequency is available on each outputs;
- I/O and network activity status LED;
- Reverse polarity protection included;
- Programmable via serial network;
- Flash technology microprocessor;
- Operating temperature range -40°C to +85°C;
- Thermal dissipation enhanced available;
- Communication protocol: SAE J1708 (RS-485) or J1939.
- 5 volts reference voltage available;
- Protection against reversed polarity power connection, load dump occurrences, faulty ground connection and communication loss;
- Splash proof and shock proof.

18.8 MOTOR CONTROLLER

This unit is a high pulsed current drive with PWM variable speed control. It is in communication with the logic controller.

TECHNICAL AND PHYSICAL DESCRIPTION

- Power supply range: 15V DC up to 28V DC;

- Maximum output current drive: 30A (4 minutes continuous), 60A peak repetitive (20KHz);
- Variable speed capability with PWM drive;
- Hardware overcurrent protection: 40A;
- Programmable software overcurrent protection;
- Overheat protection: +85°C;
- Motor direction activity, overcurrent and network activity status LED;
- Communication protocol: SAE J1708 (RS-485);
- Operating temperature range: -40°C to 70°C.

18.9 ELECTRICAL CONTROL SWITCH

Type.....Momentary contract
(ON-OFF-ON)
Rating.....1A @ 28V DC

- Make sure the front slide-out lower member deflection is within 1/4". If not, redistribute the slide-out load.
- Check the whole slide-out mechanism good functioning. The slide-out should retract and extend smoothly without vibration.

Final check:

- Make sure the slide-out air pressure inlet valve is completely opened.
- Check the inflatable seal air pressure on the pressure regulator. The pressure should be between 7 and 10 psi.
- Clean the upper racks of any sand, dust or other foreign material. Check the rack cleaning air nozzle alignment and proper functioning

18.10 CONVERSION CHECKLIST

The converter should check these points before closing the walls covering the locking pins, the roof reinforcing rod and the pinions:

- Make sure all the pins are locking and unlocking properly by checking the pin sensor switches, the logic controller LED (see figure 55).
- Check that the front slide-out exterior panels are parallel with the vehicle panels when retracted. If not, re-synchronize the upper shaft pinion.
- Make sure the slide-out does not move when locking or unlocking the pins. If necessary, readjust the locking pins.
- Make sure the pin receptacle plastic caps are present and properly installed.
- Check that the slide-out is straight when completely extended, and that it leans against all inner stoppers.
- Make sure the vehicle upper member is parallel with the front slide-out structure. If not, readjust the roof reinforcing rod. This may be affected by the loading on the roof.